



A
V O Y A G E

TO THE

PACIFIC OCEAN;

UNDERTAKEN BY COMMAND OF HIS MAJESTY,

FOR MAKING

D I S C O V E R I E S

IN THE

NORTHERN HEMISPHERE;

PERFORMED UNDER THE DIRECTION OF

CAPTAINS COOK, CLERKE, AND GORE,

In the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, 1780.

V O L. II.

N E W C A S T L E :

PRINTED BY M. BROWN, AT THE BIBLE, IN THE FLESH-MARKET,

M.DCC.LX.

NW
970P.
C771
1st-3d
Newcastle
1790
v.2

Cap
co
to
an
N
the

O
hoisted
comm
three h
the ser
mand c
Clerke
board t
world.
These
Deptfor
Pacific O
The R
Vol. II.-

CAPTAIN COOK's THIRD VOYAGE.

Captains Cook and Clerke appointed to the Resolution and Discovery—Preparations for the Voyage—Sail from Deptford to Long Reach—Are Visited there by the Earl of Sandwich and others—Proceed to Plymouth—Employments there—Number of Officers and Men in each Ship—Departure of the Resolution.

ON the 10th of February, 1776, Captain Cook went on board his Majesty's sloop the Resolution, and hoisted the pendant, having received a commission to command her the preceding day. The Discovery, of three hundred tons, was, at the same time, prepared for the service, and Captain Clerke appointed to the command of her. It may be necessary to observe, that Capt. Clerke had been Captain Cook's Second Lieutenant on board the Resolution in his second voyage round the world.

These two ships were then equipping in the dock at Deptford, for a voyage to make farther discoveries in the Pacific Ocean, under the direction of Captain Cook.

The Resolution was hauled into the river on the 9th of

CAPTAIN COOK'S THIRD VOYAGE.

of March to complete her rigging, and take in stores and provisions for the voyage. Both ships, indeed, were abundantly supplied with every thing requisite for a voyage of such duration. We sailed on the 29th of May, and arrived the next day at Long Reach, where our powder and shot, and other ordnance stores, were received.

On the 8th of June, while we lay in Long Reach, we had the satisfaction of a visit from the Earl of Sandwich Sir Hugh Palliser, and others of the Board of Admiralty to examine whether every thing had been completed pursuant to their orders, and to the convenience of those who were to embark. They honoured Captain Cook with their company to dinner on that day; and were saluted, on their coming on board, and on their going ashore, with seventeen guns and three cheers.

To convey some permanent benefit to the inhabitants of Otaheite, and of the other islands which we might happen to visit, his Majesty commanded some useful animals to be taken out. On the 10th we took on board a bull, two cows with their calves, and some sheep with hay and corn for their support. We were also furnished with a sufficient quantity of our valuable European garden seeds, which might add fresh supplies of food to the vegetable productions of our newly-discovered islands.

Both the ships, by order of the Board of Admiralty were amply supplied with an extensive assortment of iron tools and trinkets, to facilitate a friendly commerce and intercourse with the inhabitants of such new countries as we might discover. With respect to our own wants nothing was refused us that might be conducive to health, comfort, or convenience.

Those at the head of the naval department were equally solicitous to render our voyage of public utility; accordingly we received on board, the next day, various of astronomical and nautical instruments, which the Board of Longitude intrusted to Captain Cook and King, his Second Lieutenant: they having engaged
sup

ke in stores and
indeed, were
requisite for a
n the 29th of
Reach, where
ce stores, were

ong Reach, we
rl of Sandwich
d of Admiralty
een complete
venience of thof
Captain Cook
day; and wen
on their goin
eers.

the inhabitant
hich we might
ed some ufe
e took on board
d some sheep
We were al
f our valuab
d fresh suppl
our newly-d

d of Admiralty
e affortment
ndly commer
h new countr
our own wan
lucive to heal

partment w
f public utili
ext day, vari
nts, which
Cook and
ing engage
sup

supply the place of a professed obfervator. The Board, likewise, put into their poffeffion the time-keeper, which Captain Cook had carried out in his laft voyage, and which had performed fo well. It was conftituted by Mr Kendal, and was a copy of Mr Harrifon's. Another time-keeper, and the fame affortment of aftronomical and other inftruments, were put on board the Difcovery, for the ufe of Mr William Bailey, a diligent and fkilful obfervator, who was engaged to embark with Captain Clerke.

Mr Anderson, Surgeon to Captain Cook, added to his professional abilities a great proficiency in natural hiftory. He had already vifited the South-Sea Iflands in the fame fhip, and enabled the Captain to enrich his relation of the preceding voyage with ufeful and valuable remarks.

Though feveral young men, among the fea-officers, were capable of being employed in conftituting charts, drawing plans, and taking views of the coafts and headlands, Mr Webber was engaged to embark with Captain Cook, for the purpofe of fupplying the defects of written accounts, by taking accurate and mafterly drawings of the moft memorable fcenes of our tranfactions.

The neceffary preparations being completed, Captain Cook received orders to proceed to Plymouth, and to take the Difcovery under his command. In confequence of which, he ordered Captain Clerke to carry his fhip alfo round to Plymouth.

The Refolution, with the Difcovery in company, failed from Long Reach on the 15th of June, and anchored at the Nore the fame evening. The Difcovery proceeded the next day in obedience to Captain Cook's order, and the Refolution remained at the Nore till Captain Cook who was then in London, fhould join her.

It being our intention to touch at Otaheite and the Society Iflands, it had been determined to carry Omai back to his native country: accordingly Captain Cook and he fet out from London early on the 24th, and reached

reached Chatham between ten and eleven o'clock, where they dined with Commissioner Proby, who afterwards ordered his yacht to convey them to Sheerness, where the Captain's boat was waiting to take them on board the Resolution.

Though Omai left London with some degree of regret, when he reflected upon the favours and indulgencies he had received, yet, when mention was made of his own islands, his eyes sparkled with joy. He entertained the highest ideas of this country and its inhabitants; but the pleasing prospect of returning home, loaded with what would be deemed invaluable treasures there, and of obtaining a distinguished superiority among his countrymen, operated so far as to suppress every uneasy sensation; and when he got on board the ship, he appeared to be quite happy.

Omai was furnished, by his Majesty, with quantities of every article that were supposed to be in estimation at Otaheite. He also received several presents from Lord Sandwich, Mr Banks, and many others. Every method had, indeed, been employed, during his abode in England, and at his departure, to make him the instrument of conveying to his countrymen, an exalted opinion of British greatness and generosity.

About noon on the 25th we weighed anchor, and sailed for the Downs, with a gentle breeze at N. W. by W. At nine the same day we anchored, with the North Foreland bearing S. by E. and Margate Point S. W. by S.

On the 26th, at two o'clock, we weighed, and stood round the Foreland; and at eight o'clock the same morning anchored in the Downs. Here Captain Cook received two boats on board, which had been built for him at Deal; and the next day at two o'clock in the afternoon, we got under sail, but the breeze soon died away, and we anchored again. At ten o'clock the same night we weighed again, and proceeded down the channel.

We anchored at Plymouth Sound on the 30th, at three

o'clock, where three o'clock in the afternoon. The Discovery had arrived there three days before. We saluted Admiral Boscawen, whose flag was flying on board the Ocean, and he returned the compliment.

We were employed on the 1st and 2d of July in replacing the water and provisions we had expended, and in receiving on board a supply of port wine. On the 3d Captain Cook received his instructions for the voyage, and an order to proceed to the Cape of Good Hope with the Resolution; with directions also to leave an order for Captain Clerke to follow him, as soon as he should join his ship, he being at that time in London.

The officers and men on board the Resolution (including marines) were one hundred and twelve, and those on board the Discovery were eighty.

On the 10th of July the proper persons came on board, and paid the officers and crew up to the 30th of last month. The petty officers and seamen received also two months' wages in advance. Such indulgence to the latter is customary; but the payment of what was due to the superior officers, was in consideration of our peculiar situation, to enable us to defray the expence of furnishing ourselves with necessaries for a voyage of such uncommon duration.

In the morning of the 11th, Captain Cook delivered into the hands of Mr Burney, First Lieutenant of the Discovery, Captain Clerke's sailing orders; a copy of which he also left with the commanding officer of his Majesty's ships at Plymouth, to be delivered to the Captain on his arrival. In the afternoon we weighed with the ebb, and got out beyond all the shipping in the Sound, where we were detained most of the following day. At eight o'clock in the evening, we weighed again, and stood out of the Sound, with a gentle breeze at N. W. by W.

The

30th, at
three

CAPTAIN COOK'S THIRD VOYAGE.

The Resolution proceeds to Teneriffe—Reception there—Cook visits the Governor.—Description of Santa Cruz Road.—Ample Supplies to be obtained.—Some Account of the Island, and of the Cities of Santa Cruz and Laguna.—Agriculture.—Natural History—Air—Climate—Produce—Description of the Inhabitants.

SOON after we came out of Plymouth Sound, the wind came more westerly, and blew fresh, which obliged us to ply down the channel; and we were not off the Lizard till the 14th at eight in the evening.

On the 16th, at noon, the light-house of St Agnes, on the Isles of Scilly, bore N. W. by W. distant about seven or eight miles; and on the 17th and 18th, we were off Ushant.

On the 19th we stood westward till eight o'clock in the morning, when the wind shifted, and we tacked and stretched to the southward: here we beheld nine sail of large ships, which we supposed to be French men of war. On the 22d, at ten in the morning, we saw Cape Ortegal about for leagues distant.

We had calm weather on the 22d and 23d, and on the afternoon of the 24th, we passed Cape Finisterre, with a fine gale at N. N. E.

Captain Cook determined to touch at Teneriffe, to get a supply of hay and corn for the subsistence of his animals on board, as well as the usual refreshments for ourselves. We saw Teneriffe on the 31st of July, at four in the afternoon; and at day-light on the 1st of August, we sailed round the east point of that island, and anchored on the south side, in the road of Santa Cruz,

Cruz, about eight o'clock, in twenty-three fathoms water.

There were riding in this road, a French frigate, two French brigantines, an English brigantine, and fourteen sail of Spanish ships.

Reception there—Capt
Description of Santa Cruz
ed.—Some Account of
Cruz and Laguna.—
Climate—Produc
South Sound, the
few fresh, which
and we were not
the evening.
of St Agnes, on
ant about seven
th, we were off
eight o'clock in
we tacked and
eld nine sail of
h men of war.
w Cape Orte-
23d, and on
e Finisterre,
Teneriffe, to
tence of his
thments for
of July, at
the 1st of
that island,
of Santa
Cruz,

Immediately after we had anchored, we received a visit from the master of the port, who asked the ship's name. Upon his retiring, Captain Cook sent an officer ashore, to present his respects to the Governor, and ask his permission to take in water, and to purchase such articles as were thought necessary. The Governor very politely complied with Captain Cook's request, and sent an officer on board to compliment him on his arrival. In the afternoon Captain Cook waited upon him, accompanied by some of his officers; and, before he returned to his ship, bespoke some corn and straw, ordered a quantity of wine, and made an agreement for a supply of water.

The road of Santa Cruz is situated on the south-east side of the island, before the town of the same name. It is said to be the principal road of Teneriffe for shelter, capacity, and the goodness of its bottom.

The water to supply the shipping, and for the use of the inhabitants of Santa Cruz, is derived from a rivulet that runs from the hills, which is conveyed into the town in wooden troughs. As these troughs were at this time repairing, fresh water was extremely scarce.

From the appearance of the country about Santa Cruz, it might naturally be concluded that Teneriffe is a barren spot: we were convinced, however, from the ample supplies we received, that it not only produced sufficient to supply its own inhabitants, but also enough to spare for visitors. Though wine is the chief produce of the island, beef may be had at about three-pence sterling a pound; the oxen, however, are small, lean, and boney. Sheep, goats, hogs, and poultry, may be had on terms equally reasonable. A great variety of fruits are to be had in plenty, as pears, figs, grapes, mulberries,

ries, musk melons, &c. besides others that were not then in season. The pumpkins, potatoes, and onion which grow here, are excellent.

Indian corn is produced on this island, and is sold at about three shillings and six-pence per bushel: the fruit and vegetables are, in general, very cheap. Though the inhabitants are but indifferently supplied with fish by the adjoining seas, they are engaged in a considerable fishery on the coast of Barbary, and the produce of it sells at a very moderate price.

Teneriffe is certainly a more eligible place than Madeira, for ships to touch at which are bound on long voyages; but the wine of the latter is infinitely superior to that of the former: the difference of their prices is almost as considerable as their qualities, for the best Teneriffe wine was sold for twelve pounds a pipe, whereas a pipe of the best Madeira was worth considerably more than double that sum.

Behind the town of Santa Cruz, the country rises gradually to a moderate height; afterwards it continues to rise south westward towards the celebrated peak of Teneriffe. But we were much disappointed in our expectations with respect to its appearance*.

The island, eastward of Santa Cruz, appears perfectly barren. Ridges of high hills run towards the sea, between which are deep vallies, terminating at mountains that run across and are higher than the former.

On the 1st of August in the forenoon, Mr Anderson (Captain Cook's surgeon) went on shore to one of these vallies, intending to reach the top of the remoter hills, but time would not permit him to get farther than their

* In Sprat's History of the Royal Society, page 200, &c. is an account of a journey to the top of the peak of Teneriffe. A modern traveller, viz. the Chevalier de Borda, who measured the height of this mountain in August 1776, makes it 12,340 English feet.

VOYAGE.

ers that were not
atoes, and onions

and, and is sold at
r bushel: the fruits
cheap. Though
supplied with fish
d in a considerable
the produce of it

gible place than
e bound on long
ninitely superior
of their prices is
ies, for the best
pounds a pipe,
worth consider-

ne country rises
ards it continues
ebrated peak of
nted in our ex-
*.
pears perfectly
ds the sea, be-
g at mountains
ormer.

Mr Anderson
to one of these
remoter hills,
her than their

200, &c. is an
ffe. A modern
d the height of
glish feet.

foot,

CAPTAIN COOK'S THIRD VOYAGE.

foot. The lower hills produce great quantities of the
euphorbia canariensis. The people on the spot imagine its
juice to be so caustic as to erode the skin; but Mr An-
derfon convinced them to the contrary, by thrusting his
finger into a plant full of it. The inhabitants dry the
bushes of *euphorbia*, and carry them home for fuel.

Santa Cruz, though not large, is a well-built city.
Their churches have not a magnificent appearance
without, but they are decent and tolerably handsome
within.

Almost facing the stone pier, which runs into the sea
from the town, is a marble column, lately erected, en-
riched with human figures which reflect honour on the
statuary.

On the 2d of August, in the afternoon, Mr Anderson
and three others hired mules to ride to the city of La-
guna, about the distance of four miles from Santa Cruz.
They arrived there between five and six in the evening,
but the sight of it did not reward us for our trouble, as
the roads were very bad, and our cattle but indifferent.
Though the place is extensive, it hardly deserves to be
dignified with the name of a city. There are some good
houses, but the disposition of the streets are very irregu-
lar. Laguna is larger than Santa Cruz, but much in-
ferior to it in appearance.

The road from Santa Cruz to Laguna, runs up a
steep barren hill; but, lower down, we saw some fig-
trees and corn-fields. The corn, however, is not pro-
duced here without great labour, the ground being
greatly encumbered with stones. Nothing else present-
ed itself, deserving notice, except a few aloe plants in
flower on the side of the road.

The laborious work in this island is chiefly performed
by mules, horses being scarce, and reserved for the use
of the officers. Oxen are also much employed here.
Some hawks and parrots were seen, which were natives
of the island; as also the sea-swallow, sea-gulls, par-
tridges, swallows, canary-birds, and blackbirds. There

are also lizards, locusts, and three or four sorts of dragon flies.

Mr Anderson was informed, by a gentleman of acknowledged veracity, that a shrub is common here, agreeing exactly with the description given by the Linnæus of the tea shrub, as growing in China and Japan. It is considered as a weed, and large quantities are rooted out of the vineyards every year. The Spaniards, however, who inhabit the island, sometimes make use of it, and ascribe to it all the qualities of the tea imported from China.

The same gentleman mentioned to Mr Anderson another botanical curiosity, which is called the *impregnated lemon*. It is a distinct and perfect lemon enclosed within another.

A certain sort of grape growing here, is deemed an excellent remedy in phthical complaints. The air and climate are remarkably healthful, and particularly adapted to afford relief in such complaints. By residing at different heights in the island, it is in the power of any one to procure such a temperature of air as may be best suited to his constitution. He may continue where it is mild and salubrious, or he may ascend till the cold becomes intolerable. No person, it is said, can live comfortably within a mile of the perpendicular height of the peak, after the month of August.

Smoke continually issues from near the top of the peak, but they have had no earthquake or eruption since 1704, when the port of Garrachica was destroyed, being filled up by the rivers of burning lava that flowed into it; and houses are now built, where ships formerly lay at anchor.

The trade of Teneriffe is very considerable, forty thousand pipes of wine being annually made there; which is consumed in the island, or made into brandy, and sent to the Spanish West Indies. Indeed the wine is the only considerable article of the foreign commerce of Teneriffe, unless we reckon the large quantities of filtering stores brought from Grand Canary.

The

Th
ards
peop
their
being
men
bitant
civil;
those
not of
the Sp
there v
did not
that the
men.

The race of inhabitants found here when the Spaniards discovered the Canaries, are no longer a distinct people, having intermarried with the Spanish settlers; their descendants, however, may be known, from their being remarkably tall, strong, and large-boned. The men are tawny, and the women are pale. The inhabitants, in general, of Teneriffe, are decent, grave, and civil; retaining that solemn cast which distinguishes those of their country from others. Though we are not of opinion that our manners are similar to those of the Spaniards, yet Omai declared, he did not think there was much difference. He said, indeed, that they did not appear to be so friendly as the English; and that their persons nearly resembled those of his countrymen.

Departure

The

*Departure from Teneriffe.—Danger of the Ship from the
funken Rocks near Bonavista.—Isle of Mayo.—Necessary
Precautions against Rain and Heat in the Neighbourhood
of the Equator.—Position of the Coast of Brazil.—Arrival
at the Cape of Good Hope—Captain Cook's Reception there
—Loses some of his Sheep—Other Transactions at the Cape.
—Junction of the Discovery.—Account of Mr Anderson's
Journey up the Country.*

HAVING got our water and other articles on board, we weighed anchor on the 4th of August, quitted Teneriffe, and proceeded on our voyage.

On the 10th, at nine o'clock in the evening, we saw the island of Bonavista bearing south, distant about a league; though we then thought ourselves much farther off, but it soon appeared that we were mistaken; for, after hauling to the eastward, to clear the funken rocks that lie near the S. E. point of the island, we found ourselves close upon them, and barely weathered the beakers. Our situation was, for some minutes, so very alarming, that Capt. Cook did not chuse to found, as that might have increased the danger, without any possibility of lessening it.

Having cleared the rocks, we steered between Bonavista and the island of Mayo, intending to look into Port Praya for the Discovery, as Captain Cook had told Captain Clerke that he should touch there. At one o'clock we saw the rocks S. W. of Bonavista, bearing S. E. distant three or four leagues.

On Monday the 12th, at six o'clock in the morning, the isle of Mayo bore S. S. E. distant four or five leagues.

leagu
thom
island
nothi
brow
torrid
Du
gentle
and so
mornin
St Jag
brigant
there, y
We
the Cap
which b
terval,
rally ble
squalls.
tion. B
weather
much, th
filled the
Every
these rain
them. C
the air b
oblige the
portunity.
board th
the advan
Captain C
was very
weather ha
water passe
gun-room v
that came th
dry in his b
these defects

leagues. We sounded, and found ground at sixty fathoms. At the distance of three or four miles from this island, we saw not the least appearance of vegetation; nothing presented itself to our view, but that lifeless brown, so common in unwooded countries under the torrid zone.

During our continuance among these islands, we had gentle breezes of wind, varying from the S. E. to E. and some calms. On the 13th, at nine o'clock in the morning, we arrived before Port Praya, in the island of St Jago, where two Dutch East India ships, and a small brigantine, were at anchor. The Discovery not being there, we did not go in, but stood to the southward.

We lost the N. E. trade wind, the day after we left the Cape de Verde islands; and, on the 30th, got that which blows from the S. E. The wind, during this interval, was principally in the S. W. quarter. It generally blew a gentle breeze, but sometimes fresh, and in squalls. We had few calms, and those of short duration. Between the latitude of 12 d. and of 7 d. N. the weather was very gloomy, and frequently rainy; inso-much, that we were enabled to save as much water as filled the greatest part of our empty casks.

Every bad consequence is to be apprehended from these rains, and the close sultry weather accompanying them. Commanders of ships ought carefully to purify the air between decks with fires and smoke, and to oblige the people to change their cloaths at every opportunity. These precautions were strictly observed on board the Resolution and Discovery; and we enjoyed the advantage of it, having fewer sick than on either of Captain Cook's former voyages. Our ship, however, was very leaky in all her upper works. The sultry weather had opened her seams so wide, that the rain-water passed through as it fell. The officers in the gun-room were driven from their cabins, by the water that came through the sides, and hardly a man could lie dry in his bed. The caulkers were employed to repair these defects, as soon as we got into fair settled weather; but

but Captain Cook would not trust them over the sides while we were at sea.

On the 1st of September, we crossed the equator, in the longitude of 27 d. 38 m. W. and passed the afternoon in performing the old ceremony of ducking those, who had not crossed the equator before. On the 8th, we were a little to the southward of Cape St Augustine. We proceeded on our voyage, without any remarkable occurrence, till the 6th of October. Being then in the latitude of 35 d. 15 m. S. longitude 7 d. 45 m. W. we alternately met with light airs and calms for three successive days. For some days before we had seen albatrosses, and pintadoes, and we then saw three penguins. In consequence of this we sounded, but found no ground with a line of one hundred and fifty fathoms. We shot a few birds, one of which was a black petrel, about the size of a crow.

In the evening of the 8th, a bird, which the sailors call a noddy, settled on our rigging, and was taken. It was larger than a common English black-bird, and nearly of the same colour, except the upper part of the head, which was white. It was web-footed, had black legs, and a long black bill. Though it is said these birds never venture far from land, we knew of none nearer our station than Gough's or Richmond Island, which could not be less than one hundred leagues. But, as the Atlantic Ocean, southward of us, has been but little frequented, there may possibly be more islands than we know of.

A fresh gale from the N. W. succeeded this calm weather, which continued two days. Afterwards we had variable light airs for about twenty-four hours, when the N. W. wind returned, and blew fresh. On the 17th we saw the Cape of Good Hope, and, on the 18th, anchored in Table Bay, in four fathoms water.

After receiving the usual visit from the master attendant and the Surgeon, Captain Cook sent an officer to Baron Plettenberg, the governor, and saluted the garrison with thirteen guns, and was complimented, in re-

turn,

tur
shi
hor
A
con
Go
Con
Cap
vern
assist
retur
to be
On
next
in or
rate,
and
both
as the
they v
The
on the
The
Benco
On
S. E.
was th
without
The
6th the
Cook
ing, the
Plymou
with us
blown
from E
board.
ple, and
Vol. II.

turn, with the same number. Two French East-India ships were in the bay, the one outward, and the other homeward-bound.

After having saluted, Capt. Cook went on shore, accompanied by some of his officers, and waited on the Governor, the Lieutenant-Governor, the Fiscal, and the Commander of the troops. These gentlemen received Captain Cook with the greatest civility; and the Governor, in particular, voluntarily promised him every assistance that the place afforded. Before Capt. Cook returned on board, he ordered fresh meat, greens, &c. to be provided every day for the ship's company.

On the 22d we fixed our tents and observatory; the next day we began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to discover whether the watch had altered its rate. The caulkers were set to work to caulk the ship; and Capt. Cook had concerted measures for supplying both ships with such provisions as were wanted; and, as the several articles for the Resolution were got ready, they were immediately conveyed on board.

The homeward-bound French ship sailed for Europe on the 26th, and by her we sent letters to England. The next day the Hampshire East-India ship, from Bencoolen, anchored in the bay.

On the 31st of October; it blew excessively hard at S. E. and continued for three days. The Resolution was the only ship in the bay that rode out the gale without dragging her anchors.

The storm ceased on the 3d of November, and on the 6th the Hampshire sailed for England, in which Capt. Cook sent home an invalid. On the 10th, in the morning, the Discovery arrived in the bay. She sailed from Plymouth on the 1st of August, and would have been with us a week sooner, had not the late gale of wind blown her off the coast. Capt. Clerke, on his passage from England, lost one of his marines, by falling over board. No other accident happened among his people, and they arrived in perfect health.

The next day, the *Discovery* wanting caulking, Capt. Cook sent all his workmen on board her, and lent every other assistance to the Captain to expedite his supply of provisions and water.

Having, by the Governor's permission, taken our cattle on shore, on the night preceding the 14th, some dogs got in amongst the sheep, forced them out of the pen, killed four, and dispersed the rest. We recovered six of them the next day; but among those which were missing, were two rams, and two of the finest ewes in the whole stock. Though the Dutch frequently boast of the police at the Cape, yet the Captain's sheep evaded all the vigilance of the Fiscal's officers and people. At length, after much trouble and expence, by employing some of the lowest fellows of the place, we recovered all but the two ewes. One of the rams, however, was so miserably torn by the dogs, that we thought he would never recover.

Mr Hemmy, the Lieutenant-Governor, very obligingly offered to make up this loss, by giving Capt. Cook a Spanish ram, out of some he had sent for from Lisbon; but the Captain declined the offer, thinking it would equally answer his purpose to take with him some of the Cape rams: in this, however, the Captain was mistaken. Mr Hemmy had endeavoured to introduce European sheep at the Cape; but all his attempts were frustrated by the obstinacy of the country people, who highly esteem their own breed, on account of their large tails; the fat of which sometimes produces more money than the whole carcase besides. Indeed, the most remarkable thing in the Cape sheep is the length and thickness of their tails, which weigh from ten to fifteen pounds.

While the ships were repairing for the prosecution of our voyage, Mr Anderson, and some of our officers, made an excursion, to take a survey of the neighbouring country. Mr Anderson relates their proceedings to the following effect:

In the forenoon of Saturday the 16th of November, he,

he
of
ca
ref
At
som
plan
seve
imp
T
mou
Tow
neat
plant
deser
orcha
cellen
the un
At
but fev
He an
ing, an
Saturda
sent the
tained b
pitality.
which
which i
In the
some lar
a farm h
vated tra
Drakenst
contains f
Plants a
but there
naturally
country.
On Tue

he, and five others, set out in a waggon, to take a view of the country. They crossed the large plain to the eastward of the town, which is entirely a white sand, resembling that which is commonly found on beaches. At five in the afternoon they passed a large farm-house, some corn-fields and vineyards, situated beyond the plain, where the soil appeared worth cultivating. At seven they arrived at Stellenbosh, a colony, in point of importance, next to that of the Cape.

The village stands at the foot of the range of lofty mountains, above twenty miles to the eastward of Cape Town, and consists of about thirty houses, which are neat and clean: a rivulet, and shelter of some large oaks, planted at its first settling, form a rural prospect in this desert country. There are some thriving vineyards and orchards about the place, which seem to indicate an excellent soil, though, perhaps, much may be owing to the uncommon serenity of the air.

At this season of the year, Mr Anderson could find but few plant in flower, and insects were very scarce. He and his companions left Stellenbosh the next morning, and soon arrived at the house they had passed on Saturday; Mr Cloeder, the owner of which, having sent them an invitation to visit him, they were entertained by this gentleman with great politeness and hospitality. They were received with a band of music, which continued playing while they were at dinner; which in that situation, might be reckoned elegant.

In the afternoon they crossed the country, and passed some large plantations. In the evening they arrived at a farm house, which is said to be the first in the cultivated tract called the *Pearl*. Here they had a view of Drakenstein, the third colony of this country, which contains several little farms or plantations.

Plants and insects were as scarce here as at Stellenbosh, but there was a greater plenty of shrubs, or small trees, naturally produced, than they had before seen in the country.

On Tuesday the 19th, in the afternoon, they went to see

see a remarkable large stone, called by the inhabitants the Tower of Babylon, or the Pearl Dimond. It stands upon the top of some low hills, and is of an oblong shape, rounded on the top, and lying nearly S. and N. The E. and W. sides are nearly perpendicular. The S. end is not equally steep, but its greatest height is there; whence it declines gently to the N. part, by which they ascended, and had a very extensive prospect of the whole country.

The circumference of this stone is about half a mile, as they were half an hour walking round it, including allowances for stopping and a bad road. Its height seems to equal the dome of St Paul's church. Except some few fissures, it is one uninterrupted mass of stone. The stone is of that sort which mineralogists call *Saxum Conglutinatum*.

On the 20th, in the morning, they set out from the Pearl, and going a different road, passed through an uncultivated country to the Tyger Hills, where they beheld some tolerable corn-fields. About noon, they stopped in a valley for refreshment, where they were plagued with a vast number of musquitoes; and, in the evening, arrived at Cape Town.

On Saturday the 23d, we got the observatory, clock, &c. on board. From the result of several calculations and observations, we had reason to conclude, that the watch, or time-piece, had performed well all the way from England.

The R.

See

scrip

Arri

cover

CAP

He also

two heif

some ew

Both f

sufficient

necessary

Clerke a

in the mo

S. E. at fi

and stood

anchored.

weighed a

did not g

morning.

On Thu

the mizen

other to re

then in the

tude of 2

water of a

water that

small anim

semble cray

The

*The Resolution and Discovery leave the Gape of Good Hope—
See two Islands, named Prince Edward's Islands—Description of their Appearance—Visit Kerguelen's Land—
Arrive at Christmas Harbour—Take in Water there—Discover an Inscription.—Description of Christmas Harbour.*

CAPT. COOK fearing a second disaster, got his sheep and other cattle on board as soon as possible. He also increased his stock by purchasing two bulls, two heifers, two stone horses, two mares, two rams, some ewes and goats, some poultry, and some rabbits.

Both ships being supplied with provisions and water sufficient for two years and upwards, and every other necessary article, and Captain Cook having given Capt. Clerke a copy of his instructions, we repaired on board in the morning of the 30th. A breeze sprung up at S. E. at five in the afternoon, with which we weighed, and stood out of the Bay; at nine it fell calm, and we anchored. At three o'clock the next morning, we weighed and put to sea, with a light breeze at S. but did not get clear of land till the 3d of December in the morning.

On Thursday the 5th, a squall of wind carried away the mizen top-mast of the Resolution, but we had another to replace it. On the evening of the 6th, being then in the latitude of 30 d. 14 m. S. and in the longitude of 23 d. 56 m. E. we observed several spots of water of a reddish hue. Upon examining some of this water that was taken up, we perceived a number of small animals, which the microscope discovered to resemble cray fish.

We

We continued to the S. E. followed by a mountainous sea, which occasioned the ship to roll exceedingly, and rendered our cattle troublesome. Several goats, especially the males, died, and some sheep. We now began to feel the cold in a very sensible degree.

On Thursday the 12th, at noon, we discovered land extending from S. E. by S. to S. E. by E. We, at length, discovered it to be two islands. That which lies most to the south, appeared to be about fifteen leagues in circuit; and the most northerly one, about nine leagues in circuit.

We passed at equal distance from both islands, and could not discover either tree or shrub on either of them.

They seemed to have a rocky shore, and excepting the S. E. parts, a ridge of barren mountains, whose sides and summits were covered with snow.

These two islands, and four others more to the E. were discovered by Captains Marion du Fresne and Crozet, French navigators, in January 1772, on their passage from the Cape of Good Hope to the Philippine Islands. As they have no names in the French chart of the southern hemisphere, Captain Cook named the two we now saw Prince Edward's Islands, and the other four by the name of Marion's and Crozet's Islands.

We had, now, in general, strong gales, and very indifferent weather. After leaving Prince Edward's Islands, we shaped our course to pass to the southward of the four others, to get into the latitude of the land discovered by Monsieur de Kerguelen.

Captain Cook had received instructions to examine this island, and endeavour to discover a good harbour. On the 16th we saw numbers of penguins and divers and rock-weed floating in the sea; and on the 21st we saw a very large seal. The weather was now very foggy, and as we hourly expected to fall in with the land, our navigation was both dangerous and tedious.

On the 24th, at six in the morning, the fog clearing away a little, we saw land, bearing S. S. E. which we afterwards found to be an island of considerable height

and ab-
covered
to the e-
ones.
was feel-
tioned:
Captain
de Kerg-
knew no
of the air
animal.

The w-
tacked, an-
enabled to
48 d. 29
passed it at
Presently
o'clock it
about four
Cook judg-
in the Fren-
Francois, te-
he right on-
Towards
an inlet; bu-
bending o-
round Cape
Having g-
he southwar-
therefore, fu-
on discover-
presently
thoms wate-
ter. Mr B-
harbour; wh-
Early in th-
aving wroug-
thoms wate-
the afterno-

and

CAPTAIN COOK'S THIRD VOYAGE.

and about three leagues in circuit. We soon discovered another of equal magnitude, about one league to the eastward; and, between these two, four smaller ones. In the direction of S. by E. another land was seen. We did but just weather the island last mentioned: it was a high round rock, named Bligh's Cap. Captain Cook supposed this to be the same that Monsieur de Kerguelen called the Isle of Rendezvous; but he knew nothing that could rendezvous at it but the fowls of the air, for it was certainly inaccessible to every other animal.

The weather beginning to clear up about eleven, we tacked, and steered in for the land. At noon we were enabled to determine the latitude of Bligh's Cap to be 48 d. 29 m. S. and its longitude 68 d. 40 m. We passed it at three o'clock, with a fresh gale at W.

Presently after we clearly saw the land, and at four o'clock it extended from S. E. to S. W. by S. distant about four miles. The left extreme, which Captain Cook judged to be the northern point of this land, called in the French chart of the southern hemisphere Cape Francois, terminated in a high perpendicular rock; and the right one in a high indented point.

Towards the middle of the land there appeared to be an inlet; but, on our approaching it, we saw it was only bending on the coast: we, therefore, bore up to go round Cape Francois.

Having got off the Cape, we observed the coast, to the southward, much indented by points and bays, and, therefore, fully expected to find a good harbour. We soon discovered one, into which we began to ply; but presently fell calm, and we anchored in forty-five fathoms water: the Discovery also anchored there soon after. Mr Bligh, the master, was ordered to sound the alarm; who reported it to be safe and commodious. Early in the morning of the 25th we weighed, and having wrought into the harbour, we anchored in eight fathoms water. The Discovery got in at two o'clock the afternoon; when Captain Clerke informed us, that

that had with difficulty escaped being driven on the S. point of the harbour, his anchor having started before he could shorten in the cable. They were, therefore, obliged to set sail, and drag the anchor after them, till they had room to heave it up, when they perceived that one of its palms was broken off.

Immediately after we had anchored, Captain Cook ordered all the boats to be hoisted out and the empty water casks to be got ready. In the mean time he landed, to search for a convenient spot where they might be filled, and to observe what the place afforded.

He found vast quantities of penguins, and other birds, and seals, on the shore. The latter were not numerous, but so insensible of fear, that we killed as many as we chose, and made use of their fat and blubber to make oil for our lamps, and other purposes. Fresh water was exceedingly plentiful; but not a single tree or shrub was to be discovered, and but little herbage of any kind; though we had flattered ourselves with the hope of meeting with something considerable growing here, having observed the sides of some of the hills to be of a lively green.

Before Captain Cook returned to his ship, he ascended a ridge of rocks, rising one above another, expecting, by that means, to obtain a view of the country; but before he had reached the top, so thick a fog came on, that it was with difficulty he could find his way down again. Towards the evening we hauled the seine at the head of the harbour, but caught no more than half a dozen small fish; nor had we any better success the next day, when we tried with hook and line. Our only resource, therefore, for fresh provisions, was birds, which were innumerable.

Though it was both foggy and rainy, on Thursday the 26th, we began to fill water, and to cut grass for our cattle, which we found near the head of the harbour. The rivulets were swelled to such a degree by the rain that fell, that the sides of the hills, bounding the

the
wat
T
days
allow
rest,
man
to th
in th
a qu
the n
to a
parch

It is
the fir
Cook
guehe
1772,
this la
taken;
in the
comme
Capt
this ha
as follo

* T
Vol. II.

the harbour, appeared to be covered with a sheet of water.

The people having laboured hard for two successive days, and nearly completed our water, Captain Cook allowed them the 27th day of December as a day of rest, to celebrate Christmas. In consequence of which, many of them went on shore, and made excursions into the country, which they found desolate and barren in the extreme. In the evening one of them presented a quart bottle to Captain Cook, which he had found on the north side of the harbour, fastened with some wire to a projecting rock. This bottle contained a piece of parchment, with the following inscription :

*Ludovico XV. Galliarum
rege, et d* de Boynes
regi a Secretis ad res
maritimas annis 1772 et
1773.*

It is evident, from this inscription, that we were not the first Europeans who had visited this harbour. Capt. Cook supposes it to have been left by Monsieur de Boisgughehenne, who went on shore the 13th of February, 1772, the day that Monsieur de Kerguelen discovered this land ; but the Captain appears to be for once mistaken ; for how could Monsieur de Boisgughehenne, in the beginning of 1772, leave an inscription which commemorates a transaction of the following year ?

Captain Cook, as a memorial of our having been in this harbour, wrote on the other side of the parchment as follows :

*Navis Resolution
et Discovery
de Rege Magnæ Britannia
Decembris 1776.*

* The *d* is probably a contraction of the word *Domino*.

He then put it again into the bottle, accompanied with a silver two-penny piece of 1772, covered the mouth of the bottle with a leaden cap, and placed it the next morning in a pile of stones, erected for that purpose on an eminence, near the place where it was first found. Here Capt. Cook displayed the British flag, and named the place *Christmas Harbour*, it being on that festival we arrived in it.

It is the first inlet that we meet with on the south-east side of Cape Francois, which forms the north side of the harbour, and is the northern point of this land. The situation sufficiently distinguishes it from any of the other inlets; and, to make it still more remarkable, its south point terminates in a high rock, perforated quite through, forming an appearance like the arch of a bridge. The head of the harbour lies open to only two points of the compass, and these are covered by islands in the offing, so that a sea cannot fall in to hurt a ship. It is high water here about ten o'clock at the full and change days, and the tide rises about four feet.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr King, his Second Lieutenant, went upon Cape Francois, expecting from this elevation to have had a view of the sea-coast, and the islands lying off it. But they found every distant object below them, hid in a thick fog. The land even with them, or of a greater height, was visible enough, and appeared exceedingly naked and desolate; except some hills to the southward, which were covered with snow. When they returned to the ship, they found her unmoored, and ready to put to sea; but we did not weigh anchor till five o'clock the next morning.

Depart

A View of Christmas Harbour in Kerguelen's Land.

Cook's Voyages



A View of CHRISTMAS HARBOR in Kerguelen's Land.

D

O
a fine
ed, a
lets e
going
fathom

We
called
It lies
Christ
Cape
which
was g
small
ward
the br
no bot

Afte
the fo
league
berlan
Captai
a com

Depart from Christmas Harbour—Range along the Coast.—Cape Cumberland, Cumberland Bay, Point Pringle, Howe's Foreland, &c. described.—Remarkable Beds of Rock-weed.—Danger from Shoals.—Arrive at Port Palliser.—Cape George described.—Mr Anderson's Natural History of the Animals, Plants, Soil, &c. of Kerguelen's Land.

ON the 29th of December we sailed out of Christmas Harbour, steering S. E. along the coast, with a fine breeze and clear weather. This was unexpected, as, for some time past, fogs had prevailed more or less every day. Though we kept the lead constantly going, we seldom struck ground with a line of sixty fathoms.

We were off a promontory, which Captain Cook called Cape Cumberland, about seven or eight o'clock. It lies about a league and a half from the south point of Christmas Harbour; between them is a good bay. Off Cape Cumberland is a small island, on the summit of which is a rock, resembling a sentry box, which name was given to the island on that account. A group of small islands and rocks lies two miles farther to the eastward: we sailed between these and Sentry-box Island, the breadth of the channel being full a mile. We found no bottom with forty fathoms of line.

After passing through this channel, we saw a bay on the south side of Cape Cumberland, running in three leagues to the westward. It is formed by Cape Cumberland to the north, and by a promontory to the south. Captain Cook named this promontory Point Pringle, as a compliment to Sir John Pringle, President of the

Royal Society. The bottom of this bay was called Cumberland Bay.

The coast is formed into a fifth bay, to the southward of Point Pringle. In this bay, which obtained the name of White Bay, are several lesser bays or coves, which appeared to be sheltered from all winds. Off the S. point, several rocks raise their heads above water, and probably there are many others that do not.

The land which first opened off Cape Francois, in the direction of S. 53 d. E. we had kept on our larboard-bow, thinking it was an island, and that we should discover a passage between that and the main; but we found it to be a peninsula, joined to the rest of the coast by a low isthmus. The bay, formed by this peninsula, Captain Cook named Repulse Bay. The northern point of the peninsula was named Howe's Foreland, in honour of Lord Howe.

Drawing near it, we observed some rocks and breakers not far from the N. W. part, and two islands to the eastward of it, which, at first, appeared as one. We steered between them and the foreland, and were in the middle of the channel by twelve o'clock. The land of this foreland or peninsula, is of a tolerable height, and of a hilly and rocky substance. The coast is low, and almost covered with sea-birds. We also saw some seals upon the beaches.

Having cleared the rocks and islands before-mentioned we perceived the whole sea before us to be chequered with large beds of rock-weed, which was fast to the bottom. There is often found a great depth of water upon such shoals, and rocks have, as often, raised their heads almost to the surface of the water. It is always dangerous to sail over them, especially when there is no surge of the sea to discover the danger. We endeavoured to avoid the rocks, by steering through the winding channels by which they were separated. Though the the lead was continually going, we never struck ground with a line of sixty fathoms: this encreased the danger,

as w
migt
the
the
to m
W
How
this
weed
tween
shoals
extric
plung
necess
especi
hende
See
Capt
the Re
mediat
several
fathom
ing di
fifteen
No f
blow f
strike t
tinued
ing di
soon, th
dered t
dispatch
part of
desired
channel
other bo
and lan
could be

as we could not anchor, however urgent the necessity might be. At length we discovered a lurking rock, in the middle of one of these beds of weeds, and even with the surface of the sea. This was sufficiently alarming, to make us take every precaution to avoid danger.

We were now about eight miles to the southward of Howe's Foreland, across the mouth of a large bay. In this bay are several rocks, low islands, and beds of seaweed; but there appeared to be winding channels between them. We were so much embarrassed with these shoals, that we hauled off to the eastward, in hopes of extricating ourselves from our difficulties; but this plunged us into greater, and we found it absolutely necessary to secure the ships, if possible, before night, especially as the weather was hazy, and a fog was apprehended.

Seeing some inlets to the S. W. Captain Cook ordered Captain Clerke (the *Discovery* drawing less water than the *Resolution*) to lead in for the shore, which was immediately attempted: after running over the edges of several shoals, on which was found from ten to twenty fathoms water, Captain Clerke made the signal for having discovered an harbour, in which we anchored in fifteen fathoms water, about five o'clock in the evening.

No sooner were the ships secured, than it began to blow so very strong, that we deemed it necessary to strike top-gallant yards. The weather, however, continued fair, and it presently became clear, the wind having dispersed the fog that had settled on the hills. As soon, therefore, as we had anchored, Captain Cook ordered two boats to be hoisted out; in one of which he dispatched Mr Bligh, the master, to survey the upper part of the harbour, and look out for wood. He also desired Captain Clerke to send his Master to sound the channel, south of the small isles, and went himself, in his other boat, accompanied by Mr Gore and Mr Bailey, and landed on the north point, to see what discovery could be made from thence.

From

From an hill over the point, they had a view of the sea-coast, as far as Howe's Foreland. Several small islands, rocks, and breakers, were scattered along the coast, and there appeared no better channel to get out of the harbour, than that by which they had entered it.

While Captain Cook and Mr Bailey were making these observations, Mr Gore encompassed the hill, and joined them at the place where the boat was attending for them. There was nothing to obstruct their walk, except some craggy precipices; the country being, if possible, more barren and desolate than that about Christmas Harbour. There was neither food nor covering for cattle of any sort, and, if any had been left, they must inevitably have perished. In the little cove, where their boat was waiting for them (which Captain Cook called Penguin Cove, from the immense number of those birds appearing there) is a fine river of fresh water, which he could approach without difficulty. Some large seals, shags, and a few ducks were seen here; and Mr Bailey had a glance of a very small land bird, but it flew among the rocks, and they lost it.

At nine o'clock they got on board, and Mr Bligh returned soon after. He reported that he had been four miles up the harbour; that its direction was W. S. W. that its breadth near the ships did not exceed a mile; that the soundings were from thirty-seven to ten fathoms; and that, having landed on both shores, he found the land barren and rocky, without a tree or shrub, or hardly any appearance of verdure.

The next morning we weighed anchor, and put out to sea. This harbour was named Port Palliser, in honour of Admiral Sir Hugh Palliser. In getting out to sea, we, in general, steered through the winding channels among the shoals, though we sometimes ventured to run over some of them, on which we never found less than eighteen fathoms water; they would not, therefore, have been discovered, had it not been for the sea-weed growing upon them.

Having

fou
rou
isla
Cap
bell
at th
tle n
T
mou
leavi
Camp
comp
with
the va
At
point
proved
named
Cape L
several
weed g
Banks
Thoug
a man's
of sixty
At on
the north
intention
our view
as possib
by, it tre
Captain
nour of
In the
Cape Di
Prince o
that, in t

Having got three or four leagues from the coast, we found a clear sea, and about nine o'clock, discovered a round hill, like a sugar-loaf, bearing S. E. and a small island to the northward of it, distant about four leagues. Captain Cook named the sugar-loaf hill Mount Campbell; at noon it bore S. 47 d. W. a low point bore S. E. at the distance of about twenty miles; and we were little more than two leagues from the shore.

The land here, in general, is low and level. The mountains end about five leagues from the low point, leaving a great extent of low land, on which Mount Campbell is situated. These mountains seemed to be composed of naked rocks, whose summits were covered with snow; and nothing but sterility was to be seen in the vallies.

At noon we perceived low land, opening off the low point just mentioned, in the direction of S. S. E. It proved to be the eastern extremity of this land, and was named Cape Digby. Between Howe's Foreland and Cape Digby, the shore forms one great bay, extending several leagues to the S. W. A vast quantity of seaweed grows over it, which seemed to be such as Mr Banks distinguished by the name of *fucus giganteus*. Though the stem of this weed is not much thicker than a man's thumb, some of it grows to the amazing length of sixty fathoms.

At one o'clock, seeing a small bending in the coast, on the north side of Cape Digby, we steered for it, with an intention to anchor there; but, being disappointed in our views, we pushed forward, in order to see as much as possible of the coast before night. From Cape Digby, it trends nearly S. W. by S. to a low point, to which Captain Cook gave the name of Point Charlotte, in honour of our amiable Queen.

In the direction of S. S. W. about six leagues from Cape Digby, is a pretty high projecting point, called the Prince of Wales's Foreland; and six leagues beyond that, in the same direction, is the most southerly point of

of the whole coast, which in honour of his Majesty, was distinguished by the name of Cape George.

Between Point Charlotte, and the Prince of Wales's Foreland, we discovered a deep inlet, which was called Royal Sound; and, advancing to the S. we saw another inlet into the Royal Sound, on the S. W. side of the Prince of Wales's Foreland.

On the S. W. side of the Royal Sound, all the land to Cape George consists of elevated hills, gradually rising from the sea to a considerable height; they were naked and barren, and their summits cap't with snow. Not a vestige of a tree or shrub was to be seen. Some of the low land about Cape Digby seemed to be covered with a green turf, but a considerable part of it appeared quite naked. Penguins, and other oceanic birds, were numerous on the beaches, and flocks innumerable kept flying about our ships.

Desirous of getting the length of Cape George, Capt. Cook continued to stretch to the S. till between seven and eight o'clock; when, seeing no probability of accomplishing his design, he took the advantage of the wind, which had shifted to W. S. W. (the direction in which we wanted to go) and stood away from the coast.

Cape George now bore S. 53 d. W. distant about seven leagues. We saw no land to the S. of it, except a small island that lies off the pitch of the Cape; and a S. W. swell, which we met when we brought the Cape to bear in this direction, almost convinced us that there was no more in that quarter.

The French discoverers imagined Cape Francois to be the projecting point of a southern continent. The English have discovered that no such continent exists, and that the land in question is an island of small extent; which, from its sterility, might properly be called the Island of Desolation; but Captain Cook was unwilling to rob Monsieur de Kerguelen of the honour of its bearing his name.

Mr Anderson, who, during the short time we lay in Christmas

Ch
co
tic

ph
ster
a fr
ped
live
sem
spre
mig
that

A
feet,
cliv
it ha
the a
from
like
it acq
feeds
duced

Ne
other
like g
mild:
and fe

Son
small
our ca
not ex
lichen,
pearan

Amo
which
being
come o

Vol. I

Christmas Harbour, lost no opportunity of searching the country in every direction, relates the following particulars.

No place, says he, hitherto discovered in either hemisphere, affords so scanty a field for the naturalist as this sterile spot. Some verdure, indeed, appeared when at a small distance from the shore, which might raise the expectation of meeting with a little herbage; but all this lively appearance was occasioned by one small plant, resembling saxifrage, which grew upon the hills in large spreading tufts on a kind of rotten turf, which, if dried, might serve for fuel, and was the only thing seen here that could possibly be applied to that purpose.

Another plant, which grew to near the height of two feet, was pretty plentifully scattered about the boggy declivities: it had the appearance of a small cabbage when it has shot into seeds. It had the watery acrid taste of the antiscorbutic plants, though it materially differed from the whole tribe. When eaten raw, it was not unlike the New Zealand scurvy-grass; but when boiled, it acquired a rank flavour. At this time, none of its seeds were ripe enough to be brought home, and introduced into our English kitchen-gardens.

Near the brooks and boggy places were found two other small plants, which were eaten as salad; the one like garden cresses, and very hot; and the other very mild: the latter is a curiosity, having not only male and female, but also androgynous plants.

Some coarse grass grew pretty plentifully in a few small spots near the harbour, which was cut down for our cattle. In short, the whole catalogue of plants did not exceed eighteen, including a beautiful species of lichen, and several sorts of moss. Nor was there the appearance of a tree or shrub in the whole country.

Among the animals, the most considerable were seals, which were distinguished by the name of sea-bears; being the sort that are called the urline seal. They come on shore to repose and breed. At that time they

were shedding their hair, and so remarkably tame, that there was no difficulty in killing them.

No other quadruped was seen ; but a great number of oceanic birds, as ducks, shags, petrels, &c. The ducks were somewhat like a widgeon, both in size and figure ; a considerable number of them were killed and eaten : they were excellent food, and had not the least fishy taste.

The Cape petrel, the small blue one, and the small black one, or Mother Cary's chicken, were not in plenty here ; but another sort, which is the largest of the petrels, and called by the seamen Mother Carey's goose, is found in abundance. This petrel is as large as an albatross, and is carnivorous, feeding on the dead carcasses of seals, birds, &c.

The greatest number of birds here were penguins, which consist of three sorts. The head of the largest is black, the upper part of the body of a leaden-grey, the under part white, and the feet black ; two broad stripes of fine yellow descend from the head to the breast ; the bill is of a reddish colour, and longer than in the other sorts. The second sort is about half the size of the former. It is of a blackish grey on the upper part of the body, and has a white spot on the upper part of the head. The bill and feet are yellowish. In the third sort the upper part of the body and throat are black, the rest white, except the top of the head, which is ornamented with a fine yellow arch, which it can erect as two crests.

The shags here were of two sorts, viz. the lesser corvorant, or water-crow, and another with a blackish back and a white belly. The sea-swallow, the tern, the common sea-gull, and the Port Egmont hen, were also found here.

Large flocks of a singular kind of white bird flew about here, having the base of the bill covered with a horny crust. It had a black bill and white feet, was somewhat larger than a pigeon, and the flesh tasted like that of a duck.

The

The seine was once hauled, when we found a few fish about the size of a small haddock. The only shell fish we saw here, were a few limpets and muscles.

Many of the hills, notwithstanding they were of a moderate height, were at that time covered with snow, though answering to our June. It is reasonable to imagine that rain must be very frequent here, as well from the marks of large torrents having rushed down, as from the appearance of the country, which, even on the hills, was a continued bog or swamp.

The rocks consist principally of a dark blue and very hard stone, intermixed with particles of glimmer or quartz. Some considerable rocks were also formed here from a brownish brittle stone.

Passage of the Ships from Kerguelen's to Van Diemen's Land.

—*The Resolution damaged by a Squall.—Arrive in Adventure Bay.—Various Interviews with the Inhabitants—Description of their Persons, Dress, Manners, and Customs. Mr Anderson's Remarks on the Character and Language of the Natives, and on the various Productions of the Country.*

CAPT. COOK intending, pursuant to the instructions he had received, to proceed next to New Zealand, to take in wood and water, and provide hay for the cattle, steered E. by N. from Kerguelen's Land. The 31st of December, our longitude, by observation of the sun and moon, was 72 d. 33 m. 36 f. E. and on the first day of the year 1777, we were in the latitude of 48 d. 41 m. S. longitude 76 d. 50 m. E. Till the 3d of January the weather was tolerably clear, with fresh gales from the W. and S. W. but now the wind veered to the N. and continued in that quarter eight days; during which, though there was at the same time a thick fog, we ran upwards of three hundred leagues, chiefly in the dark; the sun indeed sometimes made its appearance, but very rarely. On the 27th, Captain Cook dispatched a boat with orders to Captain Clerke, fixing their rendezvous at Adventure Bay, in Van Diemen's Land, if the ships should happen to separate before they arrived there. However, we had the good fortune not to lose company with each other. On Sunday the 12th, the northerly winds were succeeded by a calm, which was soon followed by a southerly wind. Our latitude was now 48 d. 40 m. S. longitude 110 d. 26 m. E. The wind blew from the S. a whole day, and then veering

veering
weath

On
solution
which
mast.
part of
we had
we disc
ing N.
disperse
the Me
S. long
three le
the Ed
eastward
resembla
rocks m
distance,
water.

creeks th
was care
most pro

The 2
gave Cp
design of
we ancho
fathoms
shore.

in separa
wooding
plenty of
next mor
the cond
bay, to c
them as
appeared
the ships
employe

veering to the W. and N. W. brought on some fair weather.

On the 19th, a sudden squall carried away the Resolution's fore-top-mast, and main-top-gallant-mast, which occasioned some delay in fitting another top-mast. The former was repaired without the loss of any part of it. The wind still remaining at the west point, we had clear weather; and on the 24th, in the morning, we discovered the coast of Van Diemen's Land, bearing N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. Several islands and elevated rocks lie dispersed along the coast, the most southerly of which is the Mewstone. Our latitude, at noon, was 43 d. 47 m. S. longitude 147 d. E. the S. E. or S. cape being near three leagues distant. Captain Cook gave the name of the Eddystone to a rock that lies about a league to the eastward of Swilly Isle or Rock, on account of its striking resemblance to Eddystone light-house. These two rocks may, even in the night, be seen at a considerable distance, and are the summits of a ledge of rocks under water. On the N. E. side of Storm Bay, are some creeks that seem tolerably sheltered; and if this coast was carefully examined, several good harbours would most probably be found.

The 26th, at noon a breeze sprung up at S. E. which gave Captain Cook an opportunity of executing his design of carrying the ships into Adventure Bay, where we anchored at four o'clock in the afternoon in twelve fathoms water, about three quarters of a mile from the shore. The Captains Cook and Clerke then went, in separate boats, in search of convenient spots for wooding, watering, and making hay. They found plenty of wood and water, but very little grass. The next morning Captain Cook detached two parties, under the conduct of Lieutenant King, to the E. side of the bay, to cut wood and grass, some marines attending them as a guard, though none of the natives had yet appeared. He also sent the launch to provide water for the ships; and afterwards paid a visit to the parties thus employed.

In the evening we drew the seine, and caught a great quantity of fish, with which this bay abounds; and we should have procured more, if the net had not broken. Every one now came on board with the supplies they had obtained; but next morning, the wind not being fair for sailing, they were again sent on shore on the same duty; and Mr Roberts, one of the Mates, was dispatched in a boat to examine the bay. We had observed columns of smoke in different parts, from the time of our approaching the coast; but we saw none of the natives till the afternoon of the 28th, when eight men and a boy surprised us with a visit at our wooding place. They approached us with the greatest confidence, none of them having any weapons except one, who had a short stick pointed at one end. They were of a middling stature, and somewhat slender; their hair was black and wooly, and their skin was also black. They were entirely naked, with large punctures or ridges, some in curved, and others in straight lines, on different parts of their bodies. Their lips were not remarkably thick, nor their noses very flat: their features, on the contrary, were not unpleasing, their eyes pretty good, and their teeth tolerably even and regular, though exceedingly dirty. The faces of some of them were painted with a red ointment, and most of them smeared their hair and beards with the same composition. When we offered them presents, they received them without any apparent satisfaction. They either returned, or threw away, some bread that was given them, without even tasting it: they likewise refused some elephant fish; but when we gave them some birds, they kept them. Two pigs having been brought on shore to be left in the woods, they seized them by the ears, and seemed inclined to carry them off, with an intention, as we supposed, of killing them.

Captain Cook wishing to know the use of the stick which one of the savages held in his hand, made signs to them to shew him; upon which one of them took aim at a piece of wood placed as a mark, about the distance

of twenty
wide of
of our w
which un
into the
them was
axe which
to the pla
tering; b
the air, th

Immed
dered the
to be carri
himself sav
natives sho
tended to
some goats
design, bei
them; whi
if they sho
soon becom
it is probab
tle could n
savages, as
place.

We were
dead calm,
Cook, ther
grass as ut
himself. S
joined us, o
his deformi
and the feet
ever, we co
saw differed
of the hair,
of this coun
first voyage
of the kang

of twenty yards; but, after several essays, he was still wide of the mark. Omai, to shew the great superiority of our weapons, immediately fired his musquet at it, which unexpected noise so alarmed them, that they ran into the woods, with uncommon speed; and one of them was so terrified, that he let fall two knives and an axe which he had received from us. They then went to the place where the crew of the Discovery were watering; but the officer of that party firing a musquet in the air, they fled with great precipitation.

Immediately after they had retired, Captain Cook ordered the two pigs, one a male and the other a female, to be carried about a mile within the woods, and he himself saw them left there, taking care that none of the natives should observe what was passing. He also intended to have left a young bull and a cow, besides some goats and sheep; but he soon relinquished that design, being of opinion that the natives would destroy them; which he supposed would be the fate of the pigs, if they should chance to find them out. But as swine soon become wild, and are fond of being in the woods, it is probable that they were preserved. The other cattle could not have remained long concealed from the savages, as they must have been put into an open place.

We were prevented from sailing on the 29th by a dead calm, which continued the whole day. Captain Cook, therefore, sent parties on shore to cut wood and grass as usual; and he accompanied the wooding party himself. Soon after our landing, about twenty of them joined us, one of whom was distinguished not only by his deformity, but by the drollery of his gesticulations, and the seeming humour of his speeches, which, however, we could not understand. Those whom we now saw differed in some respects, particularly in the texture of the hair, from the natives of the more northerly parts of this country, whom Captain Cook met with in his first voyage. Some of our present company had a slip of the kangooroo skin round their ancles; and others wore

wore round their necks some small cord, made of fur. They seemed not to value iron, but were apparently pleased with the medals and beads that were given them. They did not even appear to know the use of fish-hooks, though it is more than probable, that they were acquainted with some method of catching fish.

Their habitations were small hovels or sheds built of sticks, and covered with the bark of trees. We had also good reason to suppose, that they sometimes took up their residence in the trunks of large trees, hollowed out by fire.

Captain Cook, on leaving the wooding party, went to the grass cutters, and having seen the boats loaded with hay, returned on board. He had just quitted the shore, when several women and children appeared, and were introduced to Lieutenant King by the men who accompanied them. These females wore a kangaroo skin fastened over their shoulders, the only use of which seemed to be, to support their children on their backs, for it left those parts uncovered which modesty directs us to conceal. Their bodies were black, and marked with scars like those of the men; from whom, however, they differed in having their heads shaved; some of them being completely shorn, others only on one side, while the rest of them had the upper part of their heads shaved, leaving a very narrow circle of hair all round. They were far from being handsome; however, some of our gentlemen paid their addresses to them, and made liberal offers, but without effect.

In the afternoon Captain Cook went again on shore, and found the grass cutters on Penguin Island, where they had met with excellent grass in the greatest abundance. The different parties laboured hard till the evening, and then, having provided a sufficient quantity of what was most wanted, returned on board.

During our continuance in Van Diemen's Land, we had either light airs from the E. or calms: we therefore lost little or no time by touching on this coast. This land was discovered in November, 1642, by Tasman, who

w
ta
fo
lar
the
hil
wh
the
Its
147
N
him
ance
and
ducti
Ther
at the
by th
sand
ing a
out of
trout.
are an
ble by
land, a
sifts of
clay; b
This co
ing ver
neral bo
sand-sto
vegetabl
rest-tree
they bea
plants w
weed, be
of fern.
species o
The kan
Vol. II.

who gave it the name of Van Diemen's Land. Captain Furneaux touched at it in March 1773. It is the southern point of New Holland, which is by far the largest island in the known world, and almost deserves the name of a continent. The land is diversified with hills and vallies, and well wooded. The only wind to which Adventure Bay is exposed, is the N. E. and upon the whole, this may be considered as a very safe road. Its latitude is 43 d. 21 m. 20 s. S. and its longitude 147 d. 29 m. E.

Mr Anderson, surgeon of the Resolution, employed himself in examining the country during our continuance in Adventure Bay. His remarks on the inhabitants and their language, and his account of the natural productions of the country, are to the following purport. There is a beautiful sandy beach, about two miles long, at the bottom of Adventure Bay, formed to all appearance by the particles which the sea washes from a fine white sand stone. This beach is very well adapted for hauling a seine. Behind it is a plain, with a brackish lake, out of which we caught, by angling, some bream and trout. The parts adjoining the bay are mostly hilly, and are an entire forest of tall trees, rendered almost impassable by brakes of fern, shrubs, &c. The soil on the flat land, and on the lower part of the hills, is sandy, or consists of a yellowish earth, and in some parts of a reddish clay; but farther up the hills, it is of a grey tough cast. This country, upon the whole, bears many marks of being very dry, and the heat appears to be great. No mineral bodies, nor stones of any other kind than the white sand-stone, were observed by us; nor could we find any vegetables that afforded subsistence for man. The forest-trees are all of one kind, and generally quite straight: they bear clusters of small white flowers. The principal plants we observed were wood-sorrel, milk-wort, cudweed, bell-flower, gladiolus, samphire, and several kinds of fern. The only quadruped we saw distinctly was a species of opossum, about twice the size of a large rat. The kangaroo, found further northward in New Holland,

land, may also be supposed to inhabit here, as some of the inhabitants had pieces of the skin of that animal.

The principal sorts of birds in the woods are brown hawks or eagles, crows, large pigeons, yellowish paroquets, and a species which we called *motacilla cyanea*. from the beautiful azure colour of its head and neck. On the shore were several gulls, black oyster-catchers, or sea-pies, and plovers of a stone colour.

We observed in the woods some blackish snakes that were pretty large, and we killed a lizard which was fifteen inches long and six round, beautifully coloured with yellow and black.

Among a variety of fish we caught some large rays, nurfes, leather-jackets, bream, soles, flounders, gurnards, and elephant-fish; besides a sort which we did not recollect to have seen before, and which partakes of the nature both of a round and a flat fish. Upon the rocks are muscles and other shell-fish; and upon the beach we found some pretty Medusa's heads. The most troublesome insects we met with were the musquitoes, and a large black ant, whose bite inflicts extreme pain.

The inhabitants seemed mild and chearful, with little of that wild appearance that savages in general have. They are almost totally devoid of personal activity or genius, and are nearly upon a par with the wretched natives of Terra del Fuego. They display, however, some contrivance in their method of cutting their arms and bodies in lines of different directions, raised above the surface of the skin. Their indifference for our presents, their general inattention, and want of curiosity, were very remarkable, and testified no acuteness of understanding. Their complexion is a dull black, which they sometimes heighten by smutting their bodies, as we supposed, from their leaving a mark behind on any clean substance. Their hair is perfectly woolly, and is clotted with grease and red ochre, like that of the Hot-tentots. Their noses are broad and full, and the lower part of the face projects considerably. Their eyes are of a moderate size, and though they are not very quick

or

That
from th
thern p
they dif
reasonab
tions, of
tion, and
As the
sprung fr
peculiar i
of the illa
some real
have come
the Pacific
found mea
express col
Otaheite; t
recede, and t

or piercing, they give the countenance a frank, cheerful, and pleasing cast. Their teeth are not very white, nor well set, and their mouths are too wide: they wear their beards long, and clotted with paint. They are, upon the whole, well proportioned, though their belly is rather protuberant. Their favourite attitude is to stand with one side forward, and one hand grasping, across the back, the opposite arm, which, on this occasion, hangs down by the side that projects.

Near the shore in the bay, we observed some wretched constructions of sticks covered with bark; but these seemed to have been only temporary, and they had converted many of their largest trees into more comfortable and commodious habitations. The trunks of these were hollowed out, to the height of six or seven feet, by means of fire. That they sometimes dwell in them, was manifest, from their hearths in the middle made of clay, round which four or five persons might sit. These places of shelter are rendered durable, by their leaving one side of the tree sound, so that it continues growing with great luxuriance.

That the natives of Van Diemen's Land originate from the same stock with those who inhabit the northern parts of New Holland, seems evident. Though they differ in many respects, their dissimilarity may be reasonably accounted for, from the united considerations of distance of place, length of time, total separation, and diversity of climate.

As the inhabitants of New Holland seem all to have sprung from one common source, there is nothing very peculiar in them; for they greatly resemble the savages of the islands of Tanna and Manicoba. There is even some reason for supposing, that they may originally have come from the same place with all the natives of the Pacific Ocean: for, of about ten words which we found means to get from them, that which is used to express *cold*, is very similar to that of New Zealand and Otaheite; the first being *mallareede*, the second *makka'reede*, and the third *ma'reede*. The remainder of our

scanty vocabulary of Van Diemen's Land is as follows, viz.

Quadne,	<i>a woman.</i>
Eve'rai,	<i>the eye.</i>
Muidje,	<i>the nose.</i>
Ka'my,	<i>the teeth, mouth, or tongue.</i>
Lae'renne,	<i>a small bird, living in the woods here.</i>
Koy'gee,	<i>the ear.</i>
Tegera,	<i>to eat.</i>
No'onga,	<i>elevated scars on the body.</i>
Toga'rago,	<i>I will go, or I must be gone.</i>

It will probably be found, upon a diligent enquiry, and an accurate comparison drawn from the affinity of languages, that all the people from New Holland, eastward to Easter Island, are of the same extraction.

Course

Cour
So
D
the
St
kill
Bo
Ne

O
 ventu
 becam
 veerin
 gan to
 tolera
 nuanc
 In
 one o
 drow
 the c
 nine l
 afterv
 the r
 Sound
 casks,
 the m
 ships
 ventu
 extrac
 of th

Course to New-Zealand—Transactions in Queen Charlotte's Sound—Intercourse with the New Zealanders—Their Dexterity in building Huts—Information with regard to the Massacre of Captain Furneaux's People—Two violent Storms—Account of Kaboora, who headed the Party that killed our People—Of the two Youths who accompany us on Board—Captain Cook's Observations on the Inhabitants of New Zealand.

ON the 30th of January, in the morning, we weighed anchor with a light westerly breeze, from Adventure Bay. Soon after we had put to sea, the wind became southerly, and produced a perfect storm; but veering in the evening to the E. and N. E. its fury began to abate. This wind was attended with almost intolerable heat, which, however, was of so short a continuance, that some of our company did not perceive it.

In the night, between the 6th and 7th of February, one of the Discovery's marines fell overboard and was drowned. On the 10th, in the afternoon, we descried the coast of New Zealand, at the distance of eight or nine leagues. We then steered for Cape Farewell, and afterwards for Stephen's Island; and in the morning of the 12th, anchored in Ship Cove, Queen Charlotte's Sound. We soon after landed many empty water-casks, and cleared a place for two observatories. In the mean time several canoes came along-side of our ships; but very few of those who were in them would venture on board. This shyness appeared the more extraordinary, as Captain Cook was well known to all of them; and as one man in particular among the present

sent group, had been treated by him with distinguished kindness during a former voyage. This man, however, could not by any means be prevailed on to come aboard. We could only account for this reserve by supposing, that they were apprehensive of our revenge, the death of Captain Furneaux's people who had been killed here. But, upon Captain Cook's assuring them of the continuance of his friendship, and that he should not molest them on that account, they soon laid aside all appearance of suspicion and distrust. The next day we pitched two tents, and erected the observatories, in which Mess. King and Bailey immediately commenced their astronomical operations. Two of our men were employed in brewing spruce beer; while others filled the water-casks, collected grass for the cattle, and cut wood. Those who remained on board were occupied in repairing the rigging, and performing the necessary duty of the ships. A guard of marines was appointed for the protection of the different parties on shore, and arms were given to all the workmen, to repel all attacks from the natives, if they had been inclined to molest us; but this did not appear to be the case.

During the course of this day, many families came from various parts of the coast, and erected their huts close to our encampment. The facility with which they build these temporary habitations, is remarkable. They have been seen to erect above twenty of them on a spot of ground, which was covered with plants and shrubs not an hour before. Captain Cook was present when a number of savages landed, and built a village of this kind. They had no sooner leaped from the canoes, than they tore up the shrubs and plants from the ground they had fixed upon, or put up some part of the framing of a hut. While the men were thus employed, the women took care of the canoes, secured the provisions and utensils, and gathered dry sticks, to serve as materials for a fire. These huts are sufficiently calculated for affording shelter from the rain and wind. The same tribe

tribe
build
ally
W
com
were
we g
had
celery
the w
drink
feury
it. B
invali
We
those
were f
were f
to a g
to the
that he
he cou
it, beca
occasio
headed
ple. H
men, s
to kill
bation
of the
red to u
solicited
Capta
for grass
the S. W
no inhab
marks o
palisades
left vesti

tribe or family, however large, generally associate and build together; so that their towns and villages are usually divided by palisades into separate districts.

We received considerable advantage from the natives coming to live with us; for, every day, some of them were occupied in catching fish, a good share of which we generally procured by exchanges. Besides fish, we had other refreshments in abundance. Scurvy-grass, celery, and portable soup, were boiled every day with the wheat and pease; and we had spruce beer for our drink. Such a regimen soon removed all seeds of the scurvy from our people, if any of them had contracted it. But indeed, on our arrival here, we had only two invalids in both ships.

We were occasionally visited by other natives, besides those who lived close to us. Their articles of traffic were fish, curiosities, and women; the two first of which were speedily disposed of, but the latter did not come to a good market, as our crew had conceived a dislike to them. Captain Cook observes upon this occasion, that he connived at a connection with women, because he could not prevent it; but that he never encouraged it, because he dreaded its consequences. Among our occasional visitors was a chief called Kahoora, who headed the party that cut off Captain Furneaux's people. He was far from being beloved by his countrymen, some of whom even importuned Captain Cook to kill him, at the same time expressing their disapprobation of him in the severest terms. A striking proof of the divisions that prevail among these people occurred to us; for the inhabitants of each village, by turns, solicited our Commodore to destroy the other.

Captain Cook, on the 15th, went in a boat to search for grass, and visited the hippah, or fortified village, at the S. W. point of the island of Motuara. He observed no inhabitants at this village, though there were evident marks of its having been lately occupied, the houses and palisades being in a state of good repair. Not the smallest vestige remained of the English garden-seeds which had

had been planted at this hippah in 1773, during Capt. Cook's second voyage. They had probably been all rooted out to make room for buildings; for, at the other gardens then planted, we found radishes, onions, leeks, cabbages, purslain, potatoes, &c. Though the natives of New Zealand are fond of the last-mentioned root, they had not planted a single one, much less any of the other articles we had introduced among them.

Early in the morning of the 16th, the Captains Cook and Clerke, and several of the officers and sailors, accompanied by Omai and two New Zealanders, set out in five boats, to collect fodder for the cattle. Having proceeded about three leagues up the Sound, they landed on the east side, where they cut a sufficient quantity of grass to load the two launches. On their return down the Sound, they paid a visit to Grass Cove, the place where Captain Furneaux's people had been massacred. They here met with Captain Cook's old friend, Pedro, who is mentioned by him in the history of his second voyage. He and another New Zealander, received them on the beach, armed with the spear and patoo, though not without manifest signs of fear. Their apprehensions, however, were quickly dissipated by a few presents, which brought down to the shore two or three others of the family.

During the continuance of our party at this place, the Commodore, being desirous of enquiring into the particular circumstances relative to the massacre of our countrymen, fixed upon Omai as an interpreter for that purpose, as his language was a dialect of that of New Zealand. Pedro, and the other natives who were present, none of whom had been concerned in that unfortunate transaction, answered every question without reserve. Their information imported, that while our people were at dinner, some of the natives stole, or snatched from them, some fish and bread, for which offence they received some blows: a quarrel immediately ensued, and two of the savages were shot dead, by the only two musquets that were fired; for, before a third was dis-

It a
blood
too ha
voided
that he
regard
pieces
carried
Our
and the
scarcely

Vol. II

discharged, the natives rushed furiously upon our people, and being superior in number, destroyed them all. Pedro and his companions also pointed out the very spot where the *fracas* happened, and the place where the boat lay, in which a black servant of Capt. Furneaux had been left to take care of it.

According to another account, this negro was the occasion of the quarrel; for, one of the natives stealing something out of the boat, the black gave him a violent blow with a stick. His countrymen hearing his cries at some distance, imagined he was killed, and immediately attacked our people, who, before they could reach the boat, or prepare themselves against the unexpected assault, fell a sacrifice to the fury of the exasperated savages.

The former of these accounts was corroborated by the testimony of many other natives, who could have no interest in disguising the truth. The latter account rests upon the authority of the young New Zealander, who quitted his country for the sake of going away with us, and who, therefore, could not be supposed to be inclined to deceive us. As they all agreed that the fray happened while the boat's crew were at dinner, both the accounts may be true; for it is by no means improbable, that while some of the islanders were stealing from the man who had been left to guard the boat, others might take equal liberty with those who were on shore.

It appears, that there was no pre-meditated plan of bloodshed, and that if these thefts had not been rather too hastily resented, all mischief would have been avoided; for Kahoorá's greatest enemies acknowledged, that he had no previous intention of quarrelling. With regard to the boat, some said, that it had been pulled to pieces and burnt; while others asserted, that it had been carried off by a party of strangers.

Our party continued at Grafs Cove till the evening, and then embarked to return to the ships. They had scarcely left the shore, when the wind began to blow violently

violently at N. W. so that it was not without difficulty that they could reach the ships, where some of the boats did not arrive till the next morning; and it was very fortunate that they got on board then, for soon afterwards a perfect storm arose. Towards the evening, however, the wind veering to the E. brought on fair weather.

On Tuesday the 18th, Pedro and his whole family came to reside near us. The proper name of this chief was Matahouah; but some of Captain Cook's people had given him the appellation of Pedro in a former voyage. On the 20th we had another storm, of less duration than the former, but more violent; in consequence of which, both our ships struck their yards and top-masts. These tempests are frequent here; and the nearer the shore, the more sensible are their effects.

On Friday the 21st, a tribe or family of about thirty persons came from the upper part of the Sound to visit us. Their chief was named Tomatongeaunooranuc: he was about the age of forty-five, and had a frank, cheerful countenance; and indeed the rest of his tribe were, upon the whole, the handsomest of all the New Zealanders that Captain Cook had ever seen. By this time upwards of two thirds of the natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound had settled near us, numbers of whom daily resorted to the ships, and our encampment on shore; but the latter was most frequented, during the time when our people there were making seal blubber; for the savages were so fond of train oil, that they relished the very dregs of the casks, and skimmings of the kettle, and considered the pure stinking oil as a most delightful feast.

When we had procured a competent supply of hay, wood, and water, we struck our tents, and the next morning, which was the 24th, weighed out of the Cove. But the wind not being so fair as we could have wished, we were obliged to cast anchor again near the Isle of Motuara. While we were getting under sail, Tomatongeaunooranuc, Matahouah, and many others of the natives,

nati
havi
form
two
goat
to de
Furn
that t
ed, b
with
session
Bef
veral
carrie
this pl
Omai
solicite
be him
pay us
little in
the nex
ly. O
sion to
the cabi
fearing
former
soon, he
was unh
on the f
England
killed ten
argumen
Commoe
land chie
people;
down his
tation of i
fured of

natives, came to take leave of us. These two chiefs having requested Captain Cook to present them with some hogs and goats, he gave to Tomatongeauroanuc two pigs, a boar and a sow; and to Matahouah two goats, a male and female, after they had promised not to destroy them. As for the animals, which Captain Furneaux had left here, Captain Cook was now told, that they were all dead; but he was afterwards informed, by the two New Zealand youths who went away with us, that Tiratœ, a popular chief, had in his possession many cocks and hens, besides a sow.

Before we had been long at anchor near Motuara, several canoes, filled with natives, came towards us, and carried on a brisk trade with them for the curiosities of this place. In one of these canoes was Kahoorā, whom Omai immediately pointed out to Captain Cook, and solicited him to shoot that chief: he also threatened to be himself his executioner, if he should ever presume to pay us another visit. These menaces of Omai had so little influence upon Kahoorā, that he returned to us the next morning, accompanied with his whole family. Omai, having obtained Captain Cook's permission to ask him to come on board, introduced him into the cabin, "There is Kahoorā; dispatch him." But, fearing perhaps that he should be called upon to put his former threats in execution, he instantly retired. He soon, however, returned; and perceiving that the chief was unhurt, he earnestly remonstrated to Captain Cook on the subject, saying, that if a man killed another in England, he was hanged for it; but that Kahoorā had killed ten, and therefore justly deserved death. These arguments, however plausible, had no weight with our Commodore, who desired Omai to ask the New Zealand chief, why he had destroyed Captain Furneaux's people; Kahoorā, confounded at this question, hung down his head, folded his arms, and seemed in expectation of immediate death: but, as soon as he was assured of safety, he became cheerful. He appeared,

however, unwilling to answer the question which had been put to him, till after repeated promises that no violence should be offered to him. He then ventured to inform us, that one of the natives having brought a stone hatchet for the purpose of traffic, the person to whom it was offered took it, and refused either to return it, or give any thing in exchange; upon which the owner of it seized some bread by way of equivalent; and this gave rise to the quarrel that ensued. He also mentioned, that he himself, during the disturbance, had a narrow escape; for a musquet was levelled at him, which he found means to avoid by skulking behind the boat; and another man, who happened to stand close to him, was shot dead: upon which Kahoora attacked Mr Rowe, the officer who commanded the party, who defended himself with his hanger, with which he gave the chief a wound in the arm, till he was overpowered by superiority of numbers. Mr Burney, whom Captain Furneaux dispatched the next day with an armed party in search of his people who were missing, had, upon discovering the melancholy proofs of this catastrophe, fired several volleys among the natives who were still on the spot, and were probably partaking of the horrid banquet of human flesh. It was reasonable to suppose that this firing was not ineffectual; but upon enquiry it appeared, that not a single person had been killed, or even hurt, by the shot which Mr Burney's people had discharged.

Most of the natives we had met with, expected that Captain Cook would take vengeance on Kahoora for his concern in the massacre; and many of them not only wished it, but testified their surprise at the Captain's forbearance and moderation. As the chief must have known this, it was a matter of astonishment that he so often put himself in the power of our Commodore. His two last visits, in particular, were made under such circumstances, that he could not have flattered himself with a prospect of escaping, had the Captain

been

been
fears,
from
the ca
his ow
ber ha
of imp
and wa
in him
declarat
friend t
sentime
wife; th
treatmen
happene
ture to r
rest assur
Before
pressed a
his own
tifying hi
the only
him, and
caused it
that if the
turn. Th
day before
came to re
same eveni
of the tend
no more, a
morning, v
Taweiha
remained c
cern. A b
Taweiha
was present
parted with

been inclined to detain him: and yet, when his first fears, on being questioned, had subsided, so far was he from entertaining uneasy sensations, that, on seeing in the cabin a portrait of a New Zealander, he desired that his own likeness might be taken, and sat till Mr Webster had finished his portrait, without the smallest token of impatience. Captain Cook admired his courage, and was pleased with the confidence which he reposed in him; for he placed his whole safety in the uniform declarations of the Captain, that he had always been a friend to the natives, and would continue in the same sentiments till they gave him reason to behave otherwise: that he should think no more of their barbarous treatment of our countrymen, as that transaction had happened long ago; but that, if they should ever venture to make a second attempt of that kind, they might rest assured of meeting with an adequate punishment.

Before our arrival in New Zealand, Omai had expressed a desire of taking one of the natives with him to his own country. He soon had an opportunity of gratifying his inclination, for a youth named Tawehiarooa, the only son of a deceased chief, offered to accompany him, and took up his residence on board. Capt Cook caused it to be made known to him and all his friends, that if the youth departed with us, he would never return. This declaration, however, had no effect. The day before we quitted the Cove, Tiratoutou, his mother, came to receive her last present from Omai; and the same evening she and her son parted, with all the marks of the tenderest affection. But she said she would weep no more, and faithfully kept her word; for the next morning, when she returned to take her last farewell of Tawehiarooa, she was quite cheerful all the time she remained on board, and departed with great unconcern. A boy of about ten years of age accompanied Tawehiarooa as a servant; his name was Kokoa. He was presented to Captain Cook by his own father, who parted with him with such indifference, as to strip him, and

and leave him entirely naked. The Captain having in vain endeavoured to convince these people of the great improbability of these youths ever returning home, at length consented to their going.

The inhabitants of New Zealand seem to live under continual apprehensions of being destroyed by each other; most of their tribes having, as they think, sustained injuries from some other tribe, which they are ever eager to revenge: and it is not improbable, that the desire of a good meal is frequently a great incitement. They generally steal upon the adverse party in the night, and if they chance to find them unguarded, which is seldom the case, they kill every one without distinction, without sparing even the women and children: when they have completed the inhuman massacre, they either gorge themselves on the spot, or carry off as many dead bodies as they can, and feast on them at home, with the most horrid acts of brutality. If they are discovered before they have time to execute their sanguinary purpose, they usually steal off again, and sometimes they are pursued and attacked by the adverse party, in their turn. They never give quarter, or take prisoners, so that the vanquished must trust to flight alone for safety. From this state of perpetual hostility, and this destructive mode of carrying it on, a New Zealander derives such habitual vigilance and circumspection, that he is scarce ever off his guard: and, indeed, these people have the most powerful motives to be vigilant, as the preservation of both soul and body depends on it: for it is a part of their creed, that the soul of the man whose flesh is devoured by his enemies, is condemned to an incessant fire; while the soul of him whose body has been rescued from those that slew him, as well as the souls of those who die a natural death, ascend to the mansions of the gods. Capt. Cook having asked them, whether they eat the flesh of such friends as had lost their lives in war, but whose bodies had been prevented from falling into the enemy's hands, they

they answered in the negative, and expressed their abhorrence of the idea.

Their ordinary method of disposing of their dead is to commit their bodies to the earth; but when they have more of their slain enemies than they can conveniently eat, they throw them into the sea. There are no *morais*, or other places of public worship among them; but they have priests, who pray to the gods for the success of their temporal affairs. The principles of their religion, of which we know but little, are strongly instilled into them from their infancy. We observed a remarkable instance of this in a youth, who abstained from eating during the greatest part of the day, merely on account of his hair being cut, though every method was practised that could induce him to change his resolution. He said that the *eatooa*, or deity, would kill him if he eat any thing on that day. Towards the evening, however, his religious scruples gave way to the importunate cravings of appetite, and he eat, though sparingly.

Notwithstanding the divided state in which these people live, travelling strangers, whose designs are honourable, are well received and entertained; but it is expected that they will remain no longer than their business requires. It is thus that a trade for green talc, which they call *poenammoo*, is carried on. They informed us, that none of this stone is to be found, except at a place which bears its name, near the head of Queen Charlotte's Sound. We were told many fabulous and improbable stories concerning this stone, one of which is, that it is originally a fish, which they strike with a spear in the water, and having tied a rope to it, drag it to the shore, to which they fasten it, and it afterwards hardens into a stone. As it is fished out of a large lake, it is probable that it may be brought from the mountains, and deposited in the water, by means of the torrents. This lake is called by the inhabitants *Tavai Poenammoo*, the water of green talc.

The

The New Zealanders have adopted polygamy among them ; and it is common for one man to have two or three wives. The women are ripe for marriage at an early age ; and those who are unmarried, find difficulty in procuring subsistence.

These people seem perfectly contented with the small degree of knowledge they possess, for they make no attempts to improve it. They are not remarkably curious, nor do new objects strike them with much surprise, for they scarce fix their attention for a moment. Omai, indeed, being a great favourite with them, would sometimes attract a circle about him ; but they listened to his speeches with very little eagerness.

On our inquiring of Tawehiaroo, how many ships resembling ours, had ever arrived in Queen Charlotte's Sound, or in its neighbourhood, he gave us an account of one entirely unknown to us. This vessel, he said, had put into a harbour on the N. W. coast of Teerawitte, a few years before Captain Cook arrived in the Sound in the Endeavour. He further informed us, that the Captain of her during his continuance here, had cohabited with a female of the country, who had borne him a son that was still living. He also mentioned, that this ship first introduced the venereal disease among the natives of New Zealand. This dreadful disorder is now but too common among them. The only method they put in practice as a remedy, is to give the patient the use of a kind of hot bath, produced by the steam of certain green plants placed over hot stones.

Tawehiaroo's intelligence induced us to believe, that a ship had really been at Teerawitte previous to Capt. Cook's arrival in the Endeavour, as it corresponded with what the Captain had formerly heard ; for, towards the latter end of 1773, some of the natives informed him of a ship's having put into a port on the coast of Teerawitte.

We had another piece of information from Tawehiaroo, importing that there are here snakes and lizards

amy among
ave two or
riage at an
nd difficul-

th the small
make no at-
kably curi-
ch surprife,
nt. Omai,
ould some-
ened to his

many ships
Charlotte's
an account
l, he said,
of Teera-
ved in the
ed us, that
e, had co-
nad borne
oned, that
mong the
ler is now
thod they
atient the
steam of

ieve, that
to Capt.
esponded
, towards
nformed
coast of

aweihā-
d lizards
of

CAPTAIN COOK'S THIRD VOYAGE.

59

of an enormous size. The latter were described by him as being eight feet long, and equal to a man's body in circumference. He said that they burrow in the ground; that they sometimes seize and devour men, and are killed by making fires at the mouths of their holes. We could not misunderstand him with respect to the animal; for, in order to shew us what he meant, he drew, with his own hand, very good representations of a lizard and snake on a piece of paper.

Though much has been said concerning this country and its inhabitants, in the accounts of Captain Cook's two former voyages, yet the remarks of Mr Anderson, being the result of accurate observation, must not be considered as altogether superfluous. The reader will find them in the succeeding chapter.

The longitude of Ship Cove, by lunar observations, is 174 d. 25 m. 15 s. E. its latitude 41 d. 6 m. S.

Vol. II.—N° 28.

*

H

The

The Country near Queen Charlotte's Sound described—The Fertility of the Soil—Temperature of the Climate—Rain and Winds—Plants—Birds—Fish—Animals—Description of the Persons of the Inhabitants—Dress—Ornaments—Buildings—Canoes or Boats—Food, and Method of Cookery—Arts—Weapons—Horrid Cruelty to their Enemies, whose Bodies they mangle and eat—Various other Customs.

ABOUT Queen Charlotte's Sound the land is uncommonly mountainous, rising immediately from the sea into large hills. At remote distances are vallies, terminating each towards the sea in a small cove, with a pebbly or sandy beach; behind which are flat places, where the natives usually build their huts. This situation is the more convenient, as a brook of fine water runs through every cove, and empties itself into the sea.

The bases of these mountains, towards the shore, are constituted of a brittle yellowish sandy stone, which acquires a blewish cast where it is laved by the sea. At some places it runs in horizontal, and, at others, in oblique strata. The mould or soil by which it is covered resembles marle, and is in general a foot or two in thickness.

The luxuriant growth of the productions here, sufficiently indicates the quality of the soil. The hills, except a few towards the sea, are one continued forest of lofty trees, flourishing with such uncommon vigour, as to afford an august prospect to the admirers of the sublime and beautiful works of nature.

This extraordinary strength in vegetation is, doubtless, greatly assisted by the agreeable temperature of the climate;

cli
m
be
tha
ref
our
the
in t
rem
leav
T
time
neve
short
earth
the w
per fo
for cu
the pl
The
forts.
grows
place o
decocti
and this
Americ
maple,
fuel; th
too heav
A grea
peaches :
of prunes
and the o
f them h
people an
On the
species o
oit like

climate; for at this time, though answering to our month of August, the weather was not so warm as to be disagreeable; nor did it raise the thermometer higher than 66 d. The winter also seems equally mild with respect to cold; for in the month which corresponds to our December, the mercury was never lower than 48 d. the trees at the same time retaining their verdure, as if in the height of summer. It is supposed their foliage remains, till pushed off in spring by the succeeding leaves.

Though the weather is generally good, it is sometimes windy, with heavy rain; which, however, is never excessive, and does not last above a day. In short, this would be one of the finest countries upon earth, were it not so extremely hilly; which, supposing the woods to be cleared away, would leave it less proper for pasturage than flat land; and infinitely less so for cultivation, which could never be effected here by the plough.

The large trees on the hills are principally of two sorts. One of them, of the size of our largest firs, grows nearly after their manner. This supplied the place of spruce in making beer; which we did, with a decoction of its leaves fermented with sugar or treacle; and this liquor was acknowledged to be little inferior to American spruce-beer. The other sort of tree is like a maple, and often grows very large, but is fit only for fuel; the wood of that, and of the preceding, being too heavy for masts, yards, &c.

A greater variety of trees grow on the flats behind the beaches: two of these bear a kind of plumb, of the size of prunes; the one, which is yellow, is called karraca, and the other, which is black, called maitao; but neither of them had a pleasant taste, though eaten both by our people and the natives.

On the eminences which jut out into the sea, grows a species of philadelphus, and a tree bearing flowers almost like myrtle. We used the leaves of the philadel-

phus as tea, and found them an excellent substitute for the oriental sort.

A kind of wild celery, which grows plentifully in almost every cove, may be reckoned among the plants that were useful to us; and another that we used to call scurvy-grass. Both sorts were boiled daily with wheat ground in a mill, for the people's breakfast, and with their pease-soup for dinner. Sometimes also they were used as sallad, or dressed as greens. In all which ways they are excellent; and, together with the fish, with which we were amply supplied, they formed a most desirable refreshment.

The known kinds of plants to be found here are bindweed, night shade, nettles, a shrubby speedwell, fow-thistles, virgin's bower, vanelloe, French willow, euphorbia, crane's-bill, cudweed, rushes, bulrushes, flax, all-heal, American night-shade, knot-grass, brambles, eye-bright, and groundsel; but the species of each are different from any we have in Europe.

There are a great number of other plants, but one in particular deserves to be noticed here, as the garments of the natives are made from it. A fine silky flax is produced from it, superior in appearance to any thing we have in this country, and perhaps as strong. It grows in all places near the sea, and sometimes a considerable way up the hills, in bunches or tufts, bearing yellowish flowers on a long stalk.

It is remarkable, that the greatest part of the trees and plants were of the berry-bearing kind; of which, and other seeds, Mr Anderson brought away about thirty different sorts.

The birds, of which there is a tolerable good stock are almost entirely peculiar to the place. It would be difficult and fatiguing to follow them, on account of the quantity of underwood, and the climbing plants; yet any person, by continuing in one place, may shoot many in a day as would serve seven or eight persons. The principal kinds are large brown parrots, with green heads, green parroquets, large wood pigeons, and two

for
th
is
hi
on
di
er
th
of
sea
lou
blu
A
of
I
fish
plie
a fi
the
fish
from
fort
tives
fish
othe
a bla
ral a
and
G
the r
Man
beach
very
winc
beaut
place
lent c
Inf
butter

sorts of cuckoos. A gross beak, about the size of a thrush, is frequent; as is also a small green bird, which is almost the only musical one to be found here; but his melody is so sweet, and his notes so varied, that any one would imagine himself surrounded by a hundred different sorts of birds, when the little warbler is exerting himself. From this circumstance it was named the mocking bird. There are also three or four sorts of smaller birds, and among the rocks are found black sea-pies with red bills, and crested shags of a leaden colour. About the shore, there are a few sea-gulls, some blue herons, wild ducks, plovers, and some sand-larks. A snipe was shot here, which differs but little from that of Europe.

Most of the fish we caught by the seine were elephant fish, mullets, soles, and flounders; but the natives supplied us with a sort of sea-bream, large conger eels, and a fish of five or six pounds weight, called a mogge by the natives. With a hook and line we caught a blackish fish, called cole-fish by the seamen, but differing greatly from that of the same name in Europe. We also got a sort of small salmon, skate, gurnards, and nurfes. The natives sometimes furnished us with hake, paracutas, parrot fish, a sort of mackarel, and leather jackets; besides another, which is extremely scarce, of the figure of a dolphin, a black colour, and strong bony jaws. These in general are excellent to eat; but the small salmon, cole-fish, and mogge, are superior to the others.

Great quantities of excellent muscles inhabit among the rocks; one sort of which exceeds a foot in length. Many cockles are found buried in the sand of the small beaches; and, in some places, oysters, which, though very small, have a good flavour. There are also periwinkles, limpets, wilks, sea-eggs, star-fish, and some beautiful sea-ears, many of which are peculiar to the place. The natives also furnished us with some excellent cray-fish.

Insects here are not very numerous: we saw some butterflies, two sorts of dragon flies, some small grasshoppers,

hoppers, several sorts of spiders, some black ants, and scorpion flies innumerable, with whose chirping the woods resounded. The sand fly, which is the only noxious one, is very numerous here, and is almost as disagreeable as the musquitoe. The only reptiles we saw here, were two or three sorts of inoffensive lizards.

In this extensive land, it is remarkable that there should not even be the traces of any quadruped, except a few rats, and a kind of fox dog, which is kept by the natives as a domestic animal.

They have not any mineral deserving notice, but a green jasper or serpent stone, of which the tools and ornaments of the inhabitants are made. This is held in high estimation among them; and they entertain some superstitious notions about the mode of its generation, which we could not comprehend: they say it is taken from a large river far to the southward; it is disposed in the earth in detached pieces like flints, and, like them, the edges are covered with a whitish crust.

The natives in general are not so well formed, especially about the limbs, as the Europeans, nor do they exceed them in stature. Their sitting so much on their hams, and being deprived, by the mountainous disposition of the country, of using that kind of exercise which would render the body straight and well-proportioned, is probably the occasion of the want of due proportion. Many of them indeed are perfectly formed, and some are very large boned and muscular; but few among them were corpulent.

Their features are various, some resembling Europeans, and their colour is of different casts, from a deepish black to an olive or yellowish tinge. In general, however, their faces are round, their lips rather full, and their noses, though not flat, large towards the point. An aquiline nose was not seen among them: their eyes are large, and their teeth are commonly broad, white, and regular. Their hair in general is black, strong, and straight;

straight; it is commonly cut short on the hinder part, and the rest tied on the crown of the head. Some, indeed, have brown hair, and others a sort that is naturally disposed to curl. The countenance of the young is generally free and open; but, in many of the men, it has a serious or sullen cast. The men are larger than the women; and the latter are not distinguished by peculiar graces, either of form or features.

Both sexes are clothed alike; they have a garment, made of the silky flax already mentioned, about five feet in length, and four in breadth. This appears to be their principal manufacture, which is performed by knotting. Two corners of this garment pass over the shoulders, and they fasten it on the breast with that which covers the body: it is again fastened about the belly with a girdle made of mat. Sometimes they cover it with dog-skin or large feathers. Many of them wear coats over this garment, extending from the shoulders to the heels. The most common covering, however, is a quantity of the sedge plant above-mentioned, badly manufactured, fastened to a string, and thrown over the shoulders, whence it falls down on all sides to the middle of the thighs. When they sat down in this habit, they could hardly be distinguished from large grey stones, if their black heads did not project beyond their coverings.

They adorn their heads with feathers, combs of bone or wood, with pearl shell, and the inner skin of leaves. Both men and women have their ears slit, in which are hung beads, pieces of jasper, or bits of cloth. Some have the *sceptum* of the nose bored in its lower part, but we never saw any ornament wore in that part; though a twig was passed through it by one of them, to shew that it was occasionally used for that purpose.

Many are stained in the face with curious figures, of a black or dark blue colour; but it is not certain whether this is intended to be ornamental, or as a mark of particular distinction: the women are marked only on their

their lips and chins ; and both sexes besmear their heads and faces with a greasy reddish paint. The women also wear necklaces of shark's teeth, or bunches of long beads ; and a few of them have small triangular aprons, adorned with feathers or pieces of pearl shells, fastened about the waist with a double or treble set of cords.

They live in the small coves already mentioned, sometimes in single families, and sometimes in companies of perhaps forty or fifty. Their huts, which are in general most miserable lodging places, are built contiguous to each other. The best we saw was built in the manner of one of our country barns and was about six feet in height, fifteen in breadth, and thirty-three in length. The inside was strong and regular, well fastened by means of withes, &c. and painted red and black. At one end it had a hole serving as a door to creep out at, and another considerably smaller, seemingly for the purpose of letting out the smoke. This, however, ought to be considered as one of their palaces, for many of their huts are not of half the size, and seldom are more than four feet in height.

They have no other furniture than a few small bags or baskets, in which they deposit their fishing-hooks and other trifles. They sit down in the middle round a small fire, and probably sleep in the same situation, without any other covering than what they have worn in the day.

Fishing is their principal support, in which they use different kinds of nets, or wooden fish-hooks pointed with bone ; but made in so extraordinary a manner, that it appears astonishing how they can answer such a purpose.

Their boats consist of planks raised upon each other, and fastened with strong withes. Many of them are fifty feet long. Sometimes they fasten two together with rafters, which we call a double canoe: they frequently carry upwards of thirty men, and have a large head, ingeniously carved and painted, which seems intended

Th
which
tity of
their
vermin
of skin
eagerly
only e
cotton
Van D
these p
even w
In po
vilized
out the
by which
warlike
Vol. II.

tended to represent a man enraged. Their paddles are narrow, pointed, and about five feet long. Their sail, which is very little used, is a mat formed into a triangular shape.

They dress their fish by roasting, or rather baking them, being entirely ignorant of the art of boiling. It is thus they also dress the root of the large fern-tree, in a hole prepared for that purpose: when dressed, they split it, and find a gelatinous substance within, somewhat like sago powder. The smaller fern-root seems to be their substitute for bread, being dried and carried about with them, together with great quantities of dried fish, when they go far from their habitations.

When the weather will not suffer them to go to sea, muscles and sea-ears supply the place of other fish. Sometimes, but not often, they kill a few penguins, rails, and shags, which enable them to vary their diet. Considerable numbers of their dogs are also bred for food; but they depend principally on the sea for their subsistence, by which they are most bountifully supplied.

They are as filthy in their feeding as in their persons, which often emit a very offensive effluvia, from the quantity of grease about them, and from their never washing their cloaths: their heads are plentifully stocked with vermin, which they sometimes eat. Large quantities of stinking train oil, and blubber of seals, they would eagerly devour. When on board the ships, they not only emptied the lamps, but actually swallowed the cotton with equal voracity. Though the inhabitants of Van Diemen's Land would not even taste our bread, these people devoured it with the greatest eagerness, even when it was rotten and mouldy.

In point of ingenuity, they are not behind any uncivilized nations under similar circumstances: for, without the assistance of metal tools, they make every thing by which they procure their subsistence, cloathing, and warlike weapons, with neatness, strength, and convenience.

nience. Their principal mechanical tool is formed in the manner of an adze, and is made of the serpent-stone or jasper: their chissel and gouge are furnished from the same material, though they are sometimes composed of black solid stone. Carving, however, is their master-piece, which appears upon the most trifling things: the ornaments on the heads of their canoes, not only display much design, but execution. Their cordage for fishing lines is not inferior to that in this country, and their nets are equally good. A shell, a bit of flint, or jasper, is their substitute for a knife; and a shark's tooth, fixed in the end of a piece of wood, is their auger. They have a saw made of some jagged fishes teeth, fixed on a piece of wood nicely carved; but this is used for no other purpose, than to cut up the bodies of those whom they kill in battle.

Though no people are more ready to resent an injury, yet they take every opportunity of being insolent, when they apprehend there is no danger of punishment; whence it may be concluded, that their eagerness to resent injuries, is rather an effect of a furious disposition, than genuine bravery. They are naturally mistrustful and suspicious, for such as are strangers never venture immediately to visit our ships, but keep at a small distance in their boats, observing our motions, and hesitating whether they should risk their safety with us. They are to the last degree dishonest, and steal every thing within their reach, if they suppose they can escape detection; and, in trading, they seem inclined to take every possible advantage; for they never trust an article out of their hands for examination, and seem highly pleased if they have over-reached you in a bargain.

Such conduct indeed is not surprising, when it is considered that there appears to be but little subordination, and few, if any, laws for the punishment of transgressors. No man's authority extends beyond his own family; and when they join, at any time, for mutual defence or safety, those among them who are most eminent for valour and prudent conduct, are directors.

Their

med in
erpent-
rnished
ometimes
ever, is
trifling
es, not
ir cor-
coun-
bit of
and a
ood, is
jagged
arved ;
up the

injury,
when
ment ;
s to re-
osition,
rustful
enture
all dif-
hesita-
They
thing
pe de-
o take
article
highly
n.

is con-
nation,
ngres-
own fa-
aal de-
t emi-
s.
Their



A NATIVE OF OTAHEITE



A NEW ZEALAND WARRIOR

Their war is t
number
Their a
times sto
made of
eighteen
handle n
their pri
about liv
a carved
the other

Before
the exact
to a frant
tortions o
deter their
that is mo
ture, whic
not perfec
after roaste
pleasure an

It might
be capable
tute of ever
loss of their
fectionate.
their relati
miserable o
in their che
flint, till the
tears. The

figure, and
those who v
ceremony o
turn of a fri

The pract
the children

Their public contentions are almost perpetual, for war is their principal profession, as appears from their number of weapons, and their dexterity in using them. Their arms are spears, patoos, and halberts, and sometimes stones. The first are from five to thirty feet long, made of hard wood and pointed. The patoo is about eighteen inches long, of an elliptical shape, with a handle made of wood, stone, &c. and appears to be their principal dependance in battle. The halbert is about five or six feet in length, tapering at one end with a carved head, and broad or flat, with sharp edges at the other.

Before the onset, they join in a war song, keeping the exactest time; and by degrees work themselves into a frantic fury, accompanied with the most horrid distortions of their tongues, eyes, and mouths, in order to deter their enemies. To this succeeds a circumstance that is most horrid, cruel, and disgraceful to human nature, which is mangling and cutting to pieces (even when not perfectly dead) the bodies of their enemies; and, after roasting them, devouring the flesh with peculiar pleasure and satisfaction.

It might naturally be supposed, that those who could be capable of such excess of cruelty, must be totally destitute of every humane feeling; and yet they lament the loss of their friends in a manner the most tender and affectionate. Both men and women, upon the death of their relations or friends, bewail them with the most miserable cries; at the same time cutting large gashes in their cheeks and foreheads, with shells, or pieces of flint, till the blood flows copiously, and mixes with their tears. They also carve a resemblance of an human figure, and hang it about their necks, as a memorial of those who were dear to them. They also perform the ceremony of lamenting and cutting for joy, at the return of a friend who has been some time absent.

The practices of the fathers, whether good or bad, the children are at an early age instructed in; so that

you find a child of either sex, of the age of nine or ten years, able to imitate the frightful motions and gestures of the men. They also sing, and with some degree of melody, the traditions and actions of their forefathers, with which they are immoderately delighted, and pass much of their time in these amusements, accompanied sometimes with a kind of flute.

Their language is neither harsh nor disagreeable. Whatever qualities are requisite to make a language musical, obtain to a considerable degree in this, if we may judge from the melody of their songs. It is not, indeed, so comprehensive as our European languages, which owe their perfection to long and gradual improvement.

Course
on
the
his
The
ing-
Island

Course

IN the
Sou
the 27
distant,
E. As
young
turous
as far
Both in
rows in
praises
were n
They o
length
their se
wore o
less free
friends,
be firm
On t
17 m. S
tacked a
at E, N

Course of the Voyage—Behaviour of the two New Zealand Youths on board—The Island of Mangeea discovered—Account of the Persons and Dress of the Inhabitants—Mourooa and his Companion described—Figure of a Mangecan Canoe.—The Coast of the Island examined—Impracticability of landing—Transactions with the Natives—Description of the Island—Disposition and Manners of the Mangeeans.

IN the morning of the 25th of February, we left the Sound, and made sail through Cook's Straits. On the 27th, Cape Palliser bearing W. about seven leagues distant, we had a fine gale, and steered towards the N. E. As soon as we had lost sight of land, our two young New Zealanders heartily repented of the adventurous step they had taken. Though we endeavoured, as far as lay in our power, to sooth them, they wept both in public and private; and gave vent to their sorrows in a kind of song, which seemed to express their praises of their country and people, from which they were now in all probability to be for ever separated. They continued in this state for several days, till at length the agitation of their minds began to subside, and their sea-sickness, which had aggravated their grief, wore off. Their lamentations then became less and less frequent; their native country, their kindred and friends, were gradually forgotten, and they appeared to be firmly attached to us.

On the 28th at noon, being in the latitude of 41 d. 17 m. S. and in the longitude of 177 d. 17 m. E. we tacked about and stood to the S. E. with a gentle breeze at E. N. E. which afterwards veered to N. E. in which point

Course

point the wind remained two days, sometimes blowing a fresh gale with squalls and rain. On the 2d of March it shifted to N. W. and afterwards to S. W. between which point and the N. it continued to blow, sometimes very moderately, and at other times a strong gale. With this wind we steered N. E. by E. and E. with all the sail we could carry, till Tuesday the 11th, when it veered to N. E. and S. E. we then stood to the N. and the S. E. as the wind would permit, till the 16th, when having a gale from the N. we stood to the E. The next day we proceeded to the N. E. but, as the wind frequently veered to the E. and E. N. E. we often made no better than a northerly course. The hopes, however, of the wind coming more southerly, or from the westward, a little without the Tropic of Capricorn, encouraged the Commodore to continue this course. It was indeed necessary that we should run all hazards, as our proceeding to the N. this summer, in prosecution of the principal object of the expedition, entirely depended on our having a quick passage to Otaheite, or the Society Isles.

We crossed the Tropic on the 27th, the wind, for a considerable time before, having remained almost invariably fixed at E. S. E. In all this run, we observed nothing that could induce us to suppose we had sailed near any land, except occasionally a tropic bird. In the latitude of 34 d. 20 m. longitude 199 d. we passed the trunk of a tree, which appeared much weather-beaten, and was covered with barnacles. On the 29th, as we were standing to the N. E. the Discovery made the signal of seeing land. We soon found it to be a small island, and stood for it till the evening, when it was at the distance of two or three leagues. The next morning, at day-break, we bore up for the west side of the island, and saw several people wading to the reef, where, as they observed the ship leaving them quickly, they remained. But others, who soon appeared, followed her course; and some of them assembled in small bodies, making great shouts,

Upon

Upon our nearer approach to the shore, we saw many of the natives running along the beach, and by the assistance of our glasses, could perceive that they were armed with long spears and clubs, which they brandished in the air with signs of threatening, or, as some of us supposed, with invitations to land. Most of them were naked, except having a kind of girdle, which was brought up between their thighs; but some of them wore about their shoulders pieces of cloth of various colours, white, striped, or chequered; and almost all of them had about their heads a white wrapper, in some degree resembling a turban. They were of a tawny complexion, robust, and about the middle size.

A small canoe was now launched from the most distant part of the beach, and a man getting into it, put off, as with a view of reaching the ship; but his courage failing, he quickly returned towards the beach. Another man soon after joined him in the canoe; and then both of them paddled towards us. They seemed, however afraid to approach, till their apprehensions were partly removed by Omai, who addressed them in the language of Otaheite. Thus encouraged, they came near enough to receive some nails and beads, which, being tied to some wood, were thrown into the canoe. They however put the wood aside without untying the things from it, which may perhaps have proceeded from superstition; for we were informed by Omai, that when they observed us offering presents to them, they requested something for their *Eatooa*. On Omai's asking them whether they ever eat human flesh, they replied in the negative, with equal abhorrence and indignation. One of them, named Mourooa, being questioned with regard to a scar on his forehead, said it was the consequence of a wound he had received in fighting with the natives of an island lying towards the N. E. who sometimes invaded them. They afterwards laid hands on a rope, but would not venture on board, telling Omai, that their countrymen on shore had suggested to them this caution; and had likewise directed them to enquire

Upon

quire whence our ship came, and to procure information of the name of the Captain. Their chief, they said, was called Orooaeka. Upon our enquiring the name of the island, they told us it was *Mangya*, or *Mangeea*, to which they sometimes added, *nooe, nai, naiwa*.

The features of Mourroa were agreeable, and his disposition, to all appearance, was no less so; for he exhibited some droll gesticulations, which indicated humour and good nature. He also made others of a serious kind, and repeated some words with an air of devotion, before he would venture to take hold of the rope at the stern of the ship. He was lusty and well made, though not tall. His complexion was nearly of the same cast with that of the natives of most southern parts of Europe. His companion was not so handsome. They both had strong, straight, black hair, tied together on the top of their heads with a piece of white cloth. They had long beards; and the inside of their arms, from the elbow to the shoulder, and some other parts, were tattooed or punctured. The lobe of their ears was slit to such a length, that one of them stuck there a knife and some beads, which we had given him. The same person had hung about his neck, by way of ornament, two polished pearl shells, and a bunch of human hair, loosely twisted together. They wore a kind of girdles, which we found were a substance manufactured from the *morus papyrifera*, and glazed like those used in the Friendly Islands. They had on their feet a sort of sandals, made of a grassy substance interwoven, which we observed were also worn by those whom we had seen on the beach. The canoe in which they came was the only one we saw. It was very narrow, and not above ten feet long, but strong and neatly made. The lower part was of white wood; but the upper part was black, and their paddles were made of wood of the same colour; these were broad at one end, and blunted, and about three feet long. The fore part had a flat board fastened over it, which projected out, to prevent the water from getting in. It had an upright stern, five feet

ation
d, was
me of
rea, to

his dif-
e exhi-
umour
serious
votion,
e at the
though
me cast
parts of

They
ther on
e cloth.
ir arms,
er parts,
ears was
e a knife
The same
ornament,
nan hair,
f girdles,
red from
ed in the
ort of fan-
which we
had seen
e was the
not above
The lower
was black,
same co-
ed, and a
flat board
event the
tern, five
feet

A WOMAN OF LAOO.



A MAN OF MANGEA.



Cook's Voyages.

Dodgson

feet
The
war
A
Coo
nien
self,
two
when
fitatio
tain,
could
But w
either
unless
were
as we
of the
ty fath
Wh
the na
Mour
Cook,
deterre
As man
a perfo
misund
island.
from th
without
keeping
fering v
when-t
left us
nifest in
on board
jects th
surprize
about h

Vol. I

feet high, which terminated at the top in a kind of fork. They paddled indifferently either end of the canoe forward.

As soon as the ships were in proper station, Captain Cook sent out two boats to endeavour to find a convenient place for landing. In one of them he went himself, and had no sooner put off from the ship, than the two men in the canoe paddled towards his boat; and when they were come alongside, Mourrooa, without hesitation, stepped into her. Omai, who was with the Captain, was desired to enquire of the islander where we could land; upon which he directed us to two places. But we soon observed, with regret, that the attempt at either place was impracticable, on account of the surf, unless at the risque of having our boats destroyed. Nor were we more successful in our search for anchorage, as we could find no bottom till within a cable's length of the breakers, where we met with from forty to twenty fathoms depth, over sharp rocks of coral.

While we thus reconnoitred the shore of Mangeea, the natives thronged down upon the reef, all armed. Mourrooa, who still remained in the boat with Captain Cook, thinking, perhaps, that this warlike appearance deterred us from landing, commanded them to retire. As many of them complied, we imagined that he was a person of some consequence: indeed, if we did not misunderstand him, he was brother to the king of the island. Several of them, instigated by curiosity, swam from the shore to the boats, and came on board them without reserve. We even found some difficulty in keeping them out, and could scarce prevent their pilfering whatever they could lay hands upon. At length, when they observed us returning to the ships, they all left us except Mourrooa, who, though not without manifest indications of fear, accompanied the Commodore on board the Resolution. The cattle and other new objects that he saw there did not strike him with much surprize; his mind, perhaps, being too much occupied about his own safety, to allow him to attend to other

things. He seemed very uneasy, and gave us but little new intelligence : and therefore, after he had continued a short time on board, Captain Cook ordered a boat to carry him towards the land. In his way out of the cabin, happening to stumble over one of the goats, he stopped, looked at the animal, and asked Omai what bird it was ; but not receiving an immediate answer from him, he put the same question to some of the people who were upon deck. The boat having conveyed him near the surf, he leaped into the water, and swam ashore. His countrymen, eager to learn from him what he had seen, flocked round him as soon as he had landed ; in which situation they remained, when we lost sight of them. We hoisted in the boat as soon as she returned, and made sail to the northward. Thus were we obliged to leave this fine island unvisited, which seemed capable of supplying all our necessities.

It is situate in the longitude of 201 d. 53 m. E. and in the latitude of 21 d. 57 m. S.

Those parts of the coast of Manglea which fell under our observation, are guarded by a reef of coral rock, against which a heavy surf is continually breaking. The island is about five leagues in circumference, and though of a moderate and pretty equal height, may be seen in clear weather at the distance of ten leagues. In the interior parts, it rises into small hills, whence there is an easy descent to the shore, which, in the S.W. part, is steep, though not very high, and has several excavations made by the dashing of the waves against a brownish sand stone, of which it consists. The descent here abounds with trees of a deep green, which seem to be all of one sort, except nearest the shore, where we observed numbers of that species of *dracana* found in the woods of New Zealand. The shore, on the N. W. part, terminates in a sandy beach, beyond which the land is broken into small chasms, and has a broad border of trees which resemble tall willows. Further up, on the ascent, the trees were of the deep green above-mentioned, which some of us imagined to be the

rima,

rima,
for
on
ed
diff
app
a bo
T
fed,
as th
Our
hogs
anim
fruit.
nodd
Th
Otaho
They
quesa
ral dif
first-m
chearf
culatio
We ha
milar
portun
served
constru
appeare
ty in le
ellipse,
situated
Thes
taking t
they ru
It is wor
New Ph
the dista
a similar

rima, intermixed with cocoa palms, and a few other forts. Some trees of a higher sort were thinly scattered on the hills, the other parts of which were either covered with something like fern, or were bare, and of a reddish colour. The island upon the whole has a pleasing appearance, and might, by proper cultivation, be made a beautiful spot.

The natives appearing to be both numerous and well fed, it is highly probable, that such articles of provision as the island produces are found in great abundance. Our friend Mourroa informed us, that they had no hogs nor dogs, though they had heard of both those animals; but that they had plantains, taro, and bread-fruit. The only birds we observed, were some terns, noddies, white egg-birds, and one white hern.

The language of the Mangeeans is a dialect of that of Otaheite; but their pronunciation is more guttural. They resemble the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Marquesas in the beauty of their persons; and their general disposition also seems to correspond with that of the first-mentioned people; for they are not only lively and cheerful, but are acquainted with all the lascivious gesticulations practised by the Otaheiteans in their dances. We had likewise reason to suppose, that they have similar methods of living: for though we had not an opportunity of seeing many of their habitations, we observed one house near the beach, which, in its mode of construction, differed little from those of Otaheite. It appeared to be seven or eight feet high, and about thirty in length, with an open end, which represented an ellipse, or oval, transversely divided. It was pleasantly situated in a grove.

These people salute strangers by joining noses, and taking the hand of the person whom they accost, which they rub with some force upon their mouth and nose. It is worthy of remark, that the inhabitants of the Palaos, New Philippine, or rather Caroline Islands, though at the distance of near 1500 leagues from Mangeea, have a similar method of salutation.

An Island named Watecoo discovered—Visits from the Inhabitants on board the Ships—Their Persons and Dress described—The Coast of the Island described—Lieutenants Gore and Burney, Mr Anderson and Omai, sent on Shore—Mr Anderson's Account of their Reception—They are introduced to three Chiefs—Dance of twenty young Women described—Omai's Apprehensions of being roasted—The Islanders send Provisions on board—Further Description of the Natives—Of their double Canoes, Trees, and Plants—Omai's Expedient to prevent being detained on Shore—He meets with three of his Countrymen—Account of their distressful Voyage—Additional Remarks relative to Watecoo.

WE quitted Mangeea in the afternoon of 30th of March, and proceeding on a northerly course, we again discovered land, on the 31st, at the distance of nine or ten leagues. The next morning we were abreast of its north end, within four leagues of it. It now appeared to us to be an island nearly of the same extent with that which we had just left. Another island, much smaller, was also descried right ahead. Though we could soon have reached this, we preferred the larger one, as being most likely to furnish food for the cattle. We therefore made sail to it; but there being little wind, and that unfavourable, we were still about two leagues to the leeward at eight o'clock the succeeding morning. The Commodore soon after dispatched three armed boats, under the command of Mr Gore, his First Lieutenant, in search of a landing place and anchoring ground. Meanwhile we plied up under the island with
the

th
ral
to
aft
can
nar
flat
four
kniv
coco
them
chan
traffi
board
They
from
arrive
tains
return
terwar
sent fr
canoe,
us. O
in conc
the wo
solemn
chief.
ance, a
the ship
piece of
when he
These
and con
some obj
their atte
cows and
conceptio
to underst

the ships. As our boats were putting off, we saw several canoes coming from the shore, which repaired first to the Discovery, as that ship was the nearest. Not long after three of these canoes, each conducted by one man, came alongside of the Resolution. They are long and narrow, and are supported by outriggers: the head is flat above, but prow-like below; and the stern is about four feet high. We bestowed on our visitors some knives, beads, and other trifles: and they gave us some cocoa nuts, in consequence of our having asked for them; but they did not part with them by way of exchange, as they seemed to have no idea of barter or traffic. One of them, after a little persuasion, came on board; and the other two soon followed his example. They appeared to be perfectly at their ease, and free from all apprehension. After their departure, a man arrived in another canoe, bringing a bunch of plantains as a present to Captain Cook, who gave him in return, a piece of red cloth and an axe. We were afterwards informed by Omai, that this present had been sent from the king of the island. Soon after a double canoe, containing twelve of the islanders, came towards us. On approaching the ship they recited some words in concert, by way of chorus, one of them first giving the word before each repetition. Having finished this solemn chant, they came alongside, and asked for the chief. As soon as Captain Cook had made his appearance, a pig and some cocoa nuts were conveyed into the ship; and the Captain was also presented with a piece of matting, by the principal person in the canoe, when he and his companions had got on board.

These new visitors were introduced into the cabin, and conducted to other parts of the ship. Though some objects seemed to surprise them, nothing could fix their attention. They were afraid to venture near the cows and horses, of whose nature they could form no conception. As for the sheep and goats, they gave us no understanding that they knew them to be birds. It is a matter

matter of astonishment, that human ignorance could ever make so ridiculous a mistake, as there is not the smallest resemblance between any winged animal and a sheep and a goat. But these people seemed unacquainted with the existence of any other terrestrial animals, than hogs, dogs, and birds; and as they saw that our goats and sheep were very different from the two former, they absurdly inferred, that they must belong to the latter class, in which they knew there was a great variety of species. Though the Commodore bestowed on his new friend what he supposed would be the most acceptable present, yet he seemed somewhat disappointed. The Captain was afterwards informed that he eagerly wished to procure a dog, of which kind of animals this island was destitute, though the natives knew that the race existed in other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke had received a similar present, with the same view, from another man, who was equally disappointed in his expectations.

The islanders whom we had seen in those canoes were in general of the middle stature, and not unlike the Mangeeans. Their hair either flowed loosely over their shoulders, or was tied on the crown of the head; and though in some it was frizzled, yet that, as well as the straight sort, was long. Some of the young men were handsome. Like the inhabitants of Mangeea, they wore girdles of glazed cloth, or fine matting, the ends of which were brought between their thighs. Their ears were bored, and they wore about their necks, by way of ornament, a sort of broad grass, stained with red, and strung with berries of the nightshade. Many of them were curiously marked or tattooed from the middle downwards, particularly upon their legs; which made them appear as if they wore boots. Their beards were long, and they had a kind of sandals on their feet. They were frank and cheerful in their deportment, and very friendly and good-natured.

Lieutenant Gore returned from his excursion in the afternoon, and informed Captain Cook, that he had examined

amined the west side of the island, without being able to find a place where the ships could ride in safety, or a boat could land, the shore being bounded by a steep coral rock, against which a continual surf broke with extraordinary violence. But as the inhabitants seemed extremely friendly, and as desirous of our landing as we ourselves were, Mr Gore was of opinion, that they might be prevailed upon to bring off to the boats beyond the surf such articles as we were most in need of. As we had little or no wind, the delay of a day or two was of small consideration; and therefore the Commodore resolved to try the experiment the next morning. We observed, soon after day-break, some canoes coming towards the ships; one of which directed its course to the Resolution. There were in it some cocoa nuts and plantains, and a hog, for which the natives demanded a dog from us, refusing every other thing that we offered by way of exchange. Though one of our gentlemen on board had a dog and a bitch, which were great nuisances in the ship, and which might have served to propagate a race of so useful an animal in this island, yet he could not be prevailed upon to part with them. However, to gratify these people, Omai gave them a favourite dog he had brought from Great Britain; with which acquisition they were highly pleased.

The same morning, which was the 3d of April, Capt. Cook detached Mr Gore with three boats to make trial of the experiment which that officer had proposed. Two of the natives who had been on board accompanied him; and Omai served as an interpreter. The ships being a full league from the island when the boats put off, and the wind being inconsiderable, it was twelve o'clock before we could work up to it. We then perceived our three boats just without the surf, and an amazing number of the islanders on the shore, abreast of them. Concluding from this that Lieutenant Gore and others of our people had landed, we were impatient to know the event. With a view of observing their motions, and being ready to afford them such assistance as they

they might occasionally require, the Commodore kept as near the shore as was consistent with prudence. He was convinced, however, that the reef was a very effectual barrier between us and our friends who had landed, and put them completely out of the reach of our protection. But the natives, in all probability, were not so sensible of this circumstance as we were. Some of them now and then brought a few cocoa nuts to the ships, and exchanged them for whatever was offered them. The occasional visits diminished the Captain's solicitude about our people who had landed; for, though we could procure no intelligence from our visitors, yet their venturing on board seemed to imply, that their countrymen on shore had made no improper use of the confidence reposed in them. At length, towards the evening, we had the satisfaction of seeing the boats return. When our people got on board, we found that Mr Gore, Mr Anderson, Mr Burney, and Omai, were the only persons who had landed. The occurrences of the day were now fully reported to the Commodore by Mr Gore. Mr Anderson's account of their transactions, which was very circumstantial, and included some observations on the island and its inhabitants, was to the following purport.

They rowed towards a sandy beach, where a great number of the natives had assembled, and came to anchor at the distance of a hundred yards from the reef. Several of the islanders swam off, bringing cocoa-nuts with them; and Omai gave them to understand, that our people were desirous of landing. Soon after two canoes came off; and to inspire the natives with a greater confidence, Mr Gore and his companions resolved to go unarmed. Mr Anderson and Lieutenant Burney went in one canoe, a little before the other; and their conductors watching with great attention the motions of the surf, landed them safely on the reef. A native took hold of each of them, with a view of supporting them in walking over the rugged rocks to the beach, where several others, holding in their hands the

bought

Vol. II.

thoughts of a species of *mimosa*, met them, and saluted them by the junction of noses. They were conducted from the beach amidst a vast multitude of people, who flocked around them with the most eager curiosity; and being led up an avenue of cocoa palms, soon came to a number of men, arranged in two rows, and armed with clubs. Proceeding onward among these, they found a person who appeared to be a chief, sitting cross-legged on the ground, and cooling himself with a kind of triangular fan, made from the leaf of the cocoa palm, with a polished handle of black wood. He wore in his ears large bunches of beautiful feathers of a red colour; but had no other mark to distinguish him from the rest of the people. Our two countrymen having saluted him as he sat, marched on among the men armed with clubs, and made to a second chief, adorned like the former, and occupied like him in fanning himself. He was remarkable for his size and corpulence, though he did not appear to be above thirty years of age. They were conducted in the same manner to a third chief, who seemed older than the two former: he also was sitting, and was ornamented with red feathers. After they had saluted him as they had done the others, he desired them both to sit down; which they willingly consented to, being greatly fatigued with walking, and with the extreme heat they felt amidst the surrounding multitude.

The people being ordered to separate, Mess. Anderson and Burney saw, at a small distance, about twenty young women, adorned like the chiefs with red feathers, engaged in a dance, which they performed to a slow and solemn air, sung by them all. Our two gentlemen rose up, and walked forward to see these dancers, who, without paying them the smallest attention, still continued their dance. They seemed to be directed by a man, who, in the capacity of a prompter, mentioned the several motions they were to make. They never changed the spot, as Europeans do in dancing; and though their feet were not entirely at rest, this exercise consisted more in moving their fingers very nimbly, holding

holding their hands at the same time in a prone position near the face, and occasionally clapping them together.* Their dancing and singing were performed in the exactest concert. They had probably been instructed with extraordinary care, and selected for this ceremony, being superior in beauty to most of those who were in the crowd. They were in general rather stout, and of an olive complexion, with black hair flowing in ringlets down their necks. Their shape and limbs were elegantly formed; for their dress consisting only of a piece of glazed cloth tied round the waist, which scarcely reached so low as the knees, our gentlemen had an opportunity of observing almost every part. Their features were rather too full to constitute a perfect beauty. Their eyes were of a deep black, and their countenances expressed a great degree of modesty and complacency.

Before these beauteous females had finished their dance, our two countrymen heard a noise, as if some horses had been galloping towards them; and on turning their eyes aside, they saw the people armed with clubs, who had been desired to entertain them, as they supposed, with an exhibition of their mode of fighting which they now did, one party pursuing another who ran away.

Lieutenant Burney and Mr Anderson began now to look about for Mr Gore and Omai, whom they at length found coming up, as much incommoded by the crowds of people as themselves had been, and introduced in the same manner to the three chiefs; the names of whom were Otteroo, Taroa, and Fatouweera. Each of these expecting a present, Mr Gore gave them such things as he had brought with him for that purpose; after which he informed the chiefs of his view in coming on shore, but was desired to wait till the next day before he should have what was wanted. The

* The dances here described, bear a great resemblance to those of the natives of the Caroline Islands.

now from a circle at one and wished refused pilfered and on he justified Mr Anderson to detain asked for him some quidding mentioned by descended Mr Burney was, the try whether attempted sed by some to the place they found had, as he having observed for an over assign no coast and ask them they were that custom Thus we greatest part sometimes frequently of the sight of they at the new; and o

now seemed to endeavour to separate our gentlemen from each other, every one of whom had his respective circle to surround, and gaze at him. Mr Anderson was, at one time, upwards of an hour apart from his friends; and when he told the chief, who was near him, that he wished to speak to Omai, his request was peremptorily refused. At the same time he found that the people pilfered several trifling things which were in his pocket; and on his complaining of this treatment to the chief, he justified their behaviour. From these circumstances, Mr Anderson began to apprehend that they designed to detain our party among them. In this situation he asked for something to eat; upon which they brought him some cocoa nuts, bread fruit, and a sort of sour pudding; and when he complained of the heat occasioned by the multitude of people, the chief himself condescended to fan him.

Mr Burney going to the place where Mr Anderson was, the latter informed him of his suspicions; and to try whether they were well founded or not, they both attempted to get to the beach: but they were soon stopped by some of the natives, who said they must return to the place which they had left. On their coming up, they found Omai under the same apprehensions; but he had, as he imagined, an additional motive of terror; for having observed that they had dug a hole in the ground for an oven, which they were now heating, he could assign no other reason for it, than that they intended to roast and devour our party: he even went so far as to ask them whether that was their intention, at which they were much surprised, asking in return, whether that custom prevailed among us.

Thus were Mr Anderson and the others detained the greatest part of the day, being sometimes separated, and sometimes together; but continually in a crowd, who frequently desired them to uncover parts of their skin, the sight of which struck the islanders with admiration. They at the same time rifled the pockets of our countrymen; and one of them snatched from Mr Gore a bayonet,

net, which hung by his side. This being represented to one of the chiefs, he pretended to send a person in search of it, but probably countenanced the theft; for Omai soon after had a dagger stolen from his side in the same manner. They now brought some green boughs, as emblems of friendship, and sticking the ends of them in the ground, desired that our party would hold them as they sat, giving them to understand, that they must stay and eat with them. The sight of a pig lying near the oven which they had prepared and heated, removed Omai's apprehensions of being put into it himself, and made him think that it might be intended for the repast of him and his three friends. The chief also sent some of his people to provide food for the cattle, and they returned with a few plantain trees, which they conveyed to the boats. In the mean time, Messrs Burney and Anderson made a second attempt to get to the beach; but on their arrival, they found themselves watched by people who seemed to have been stationed there for that purpose; for when Mr Anderson endeavoured to wade in upon the reef, one of them dragged him back by his clothes. They also insisted upon his throwing down some pieces of coral that he had picked up, and on his refusal to comply, took them from him by force. Nor would they suffer him to retain some small plants which he had gathered. They likewise took a fan from Mr Burney, which, on his coming ashore, he had received as a present. Finding that obedience to their will was the only method of procuring better treatment, the gentlemen returned to the place they had quitted; and the natives now promised, that after they had partaken of a repast which had been prepared for them, they should be furnished with a canoe to carry them off to their boats. Accordingly the second chief to whom they had been presented, having seated himself on a low stool, and directed the multitude to form a large ring, made them sit down by him. A number of cocoa nuts were now brought, with a quantity of baked plantains, and a piece of the pig that had

been dressed in fatigue, had they eaten now near the remainder be carried prepared toatives did wthe canoe iof her, whiAnderson, the highest the bag. Tboats, withvisions; and

The restraint very little cthey were se they had bee were confin thing that a people whic Except a few were all of ar that our gen dignity of d whiter. In long and bla of the young a delicate co them, corpor a remarkable consisted of a but some had with black an out sleeves; v core of a coc ears, which

bec

been dressed, was placed before each of them. Their fatigue, however, had taken away their appetites; but they eat a little to please their entertainers. It being now near sun-set, the islanders sent down to the beach the remainder of the provisions that had been dressed, to be carried to the ships. Our gentlemen found a canoe prepared to put them off to their boats, which the natives did with great caution; but as they were pushing the canoe into the surf, one of them snatched a bag out of her, which contained a pocket-pistol belonging to Mr Anderson, who calling out to the thief with marks of the highest displeasure, he swam back to the canoe with the bag. The islanders then put them on board the boats, with the cocoa-nuts, plantains, and other provisions; and they immediately rowed back to the ships.

The restrained situation of these gentlemen gave them very little opportunity of observing the country: for they were seldom a hundred yards from the place where they had been introduced to the chiefs, and consequently were confined to the surrounding objects. The first thing that attracted their notice, was the number of people which must have been at least two thousand. Except a few, those who had come on board the ships were all of an inferior class; for a great number of those that our gentlemen met with on shore, had a superior dignity of demeanor, and their complexion was much whiter. In general, they had their hair, which was long and black, tied on the crown of the head. Many of the young men were perfect models in shape, and of a delicate complexion. The old men were, many of them, corpulent; and they, as well as the young, had a remarkable smoothness of skin. Their general dress consisted of a piece of cloth wrapped about the waist, but some had pieces of mats, most curiously variegated with black and white, formed into a kind of jacket without sleeves; while others wore conical caps made of the core of a cocoa nut, interwoven with beads. In their ears, which were pierced, they hung pieces of the
mem-



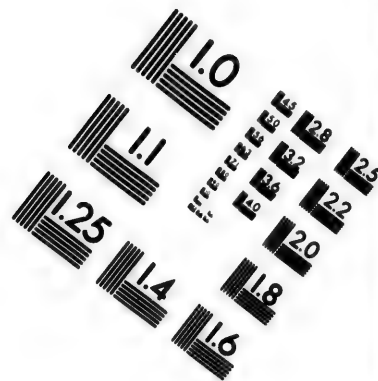
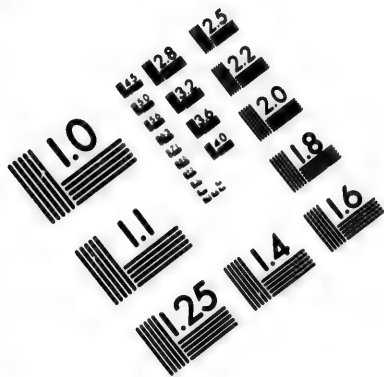
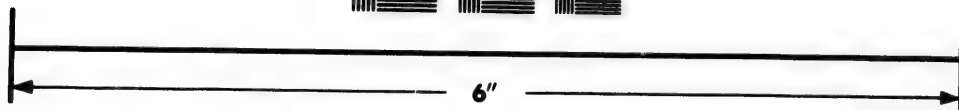
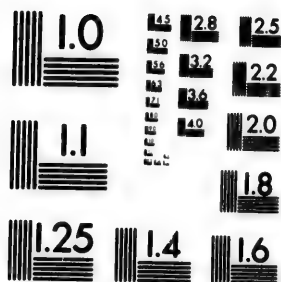


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

28 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
E 28
E 32
E 25
E 22
E 20
18

ri
oi
01

membraneous part of some plant, or stuck there some odoriferous flower. The chiefs, and other persons of rank, had two little balls, with a common base, made of bone, which they hung round their necks with small cord. Red feathers are here considered as a particular mark of distinction; for none but the chiefs, and the young women who danced, assumed them. Some of the men were punctured all over the sides and back, and some of the women had the same ornaments (if it deserves that name) on their legs. The elderly women had their hair cropped short, and many of them were cut all over the fore-part of the body in oblique lines. The wife of a chief appeared with her child, laid in a piece of red-cloth, which had been presented to her husband; she suckled the infant much after the manner of our women. Another chief introduced his daughter, who was young, beautiful, and modest. No personal deformities were observed in either sex, except in a few individuals who had scars of broad ulcers remaining on the face and other parts.

Many of the natives were armed with spears and clubs, the latter of which were generally about six feet long, made of a hard black wood, neatly polished. The spears were formed of the same wood, simply pointed, and were in general twelve feet long; but some were so short as to seem intended for darts.

They preserved their canoes from the sun under the shade of various trees. Our gentlemen saw eight or ten of them, all double ones; that is, two single ones fastened together by rafters lashed across. They were about four feet deep, and in length about twenty feet, and the sides were rounded with a plank raised upon them. Two of these canoes were curiously stained all over with black, in innumerable small figures, as triangles, squares, &c. and were far superior to any thing of the kind Mr Anderson had ever seen at any other island in the South Sea. The paddles were almost elliptical, and about four feet long.

Most

M
coc
mar
latte
are
conv
ther
had
the f
steep
for m
no f
The
differ
steep
with
rather
of the
The
of enr
ding p
unattai
mentio
It ha
upon t
perhap
He wa
country
told the
country
which
of such
them;
shot. A
ledged t
former;
great ea
and ever
this cou

Most of the trees observed by Mr Anderson, were cocoa palms, some species of *bibiscus*, a sort of *euphorbia*, many of the same kind he had seen at Mangeea. The latter are tall and slender, resembling a cypress; and are called by the natives *etoo*. He also saw a species of *convolvulus* and some treacle mustard; besides which, there are doubtless other plants and fruit trees which he had not an opportunity of seeing. The soil, towards the sea, is nothing more than a bank of coral, generally steep and rugged, which, though it has probably been for many centuries exposed to the weather, has suffered no further change than becoming black on its surface. The reef or rock, with which the shore is lined, runs to different breadths into the sea, where it resembles a high steep wall; it is of a brownish colour, and nearly even with the surface of the water; and though its texture is rather porous, it is capable of withstanding the washing of the surf which constantly breaks upon it.

Though the landing of our gentlemen was the means of enriching the narrative of the voyage with the preceding particulars, the principal object in view was partly unattained; for we scarce procured any thing worth mentioning from the island.

It has been already mentioned, that Omai was sent upon this expedition as Mr Gore's interpreter; which perhaps was not the only service he performed this day. He was questioned by the natives concerning us, our country, our ships, and arms; in answer to which, he told them, among many other particulars, that our country had ships as large as their island, on board of which were implements of war (describing our guns) of such dimensions, as to contain several people within them; one of which could demolish the island at one shot. As for the guns in our two ships, he acknowledged they were but small in comparison with the former; yet even with these, he said, we could with great ease, at a considerable distance, destroy the island and every soul in it. On their enquiring by what means this could be done, Omai produced some cartridges from

from his pocket, and having submitted to inspection the balls, and the gunpowder by which they were to be set in motion, he disposed the latter upon the ground, and, by means of a piece of lighted wood, set it on fire. The sudden blast, the mingled flame and smoke, that instantaneously succeeded, filled the natives with such astonishment, that they no longer doubted the formidable power of our weapons. Had it not been for the terrible ideas they entertained of the guns of our ships, from this specimen of their mode of operation, it was imagined that they would have detained the gentlemen the whole night; for Omai assured them, that if he and his friends did not return on board the same day, they might expect that the Commodore would fire upon the island.

Though this island had never before been visited by Europeans, there were other strangers now residing in it; and it was entirely owing to Omai's accompanying Mr Gore, that this remarkable circumstance came to our knowledge. He had scarcely landed on the beach, when he found, among the crowd, three of his own countrymen, natives of the Society Isles. At the distance of about two hundred leagues from those islands, an immense ocean intervening, with such miserable sea boats as their inhabitants make use of, such a meeting, at such a place, so accidentally visited by us, may be considered as one of those extraordinary and unexpected situations, which strike a curious observer with wonder and amazement. The mutual surprize and pleasure with which Omai and his countrymen engaged in conversation, may easily be imagined. Their story, as related by themselves, is a very affecting one. About twelve persons, male and female, had embarked in a canoe at Otaheite, with an intention of crossing over to Ulietea; but they were prevented by contrary winds from reaching the latter, or returning to the former island. Their stock of provisions being soon exhausted, they suffered inconceivable hardships. They passed many days without sustenance, in consequence of which

their

Vol. II.—

their number gradually diminished, worn out by famine and fatigue. Only four men survived, when their canoe was overfet. The destruction of this small remnant now seemed inevitable; however, they continued hanging by the side of the vessel, during some of the last days, till they providentially came in sight of the inhabitants of this island, who sent out canoes and brought them on shore. One of these four had since died. The other three were so well satisfied with the generous treatment they met with here, that they refused the offer made them by our gentlemen, at the request of Omai, of taking them on board our ships, and restoring them to their native islands. They had arrived upon this coast at least twelve years ago. Their names were Tavee, Otirraoa, and Orououte: the former was born at Huaheine, the second at Ulietea, and the latter at Otaheite. The application of the preceding narrative is obvious. It will serve to explain in a more satisfactory manner than the flimsy conjectures of some speculative reasoners, how the detached parts of the world, and in particular the islands of the Pacific Ocean, may have been first peopled; those especially which lie at a considerable distance from each other, or from any inhabited continent.

The natives of this island call it by the name of Watecoo. It is situated in the longitude of 201 d. 45 m. E. and in the latitude of 20 d. 1 m. S. and is about six leagues in circuit. It is a beautiful spot, with a surface covered with verdure, and composed of hills and plains. The soil in some parts, is light and sandy: but further up the country, we saw from the ship, by the assistance of our glasses, a reddish cast on the rising grounds. There the islanders build their houses, for we could perceive several of them, which were long and spacious. Its produce is nearly the same with that of Mangcea Noce Nainaiwa, the island we had last quitted.

If we may depend on Omai's report of what he learned from his three countrymen in the course of conversation, the manners of the people of Watecoo, their ge-

neral habits of life, and their method of treating strangers, greatly resemble those that prevail at Otaheite, and its neighbouring islands. There is also a great similarity between their religious opinions and ceremonies. From every circumstance indeed it may be considered as indubitable, that the inhabitants of Wateoo derive their descent from the same stock, which has so remarkably diffused itself over the immense extent of the Southern Ocean. Omai assured us, that they dignified their island with the pompous appellation of *Wenooa no te Eatooa*, implying *a land of Gods*; esteeming themselves a kind of divinities, possessed with the spirit of the *Eatooa*. Their language was equally well understood by Omai, and by our two New Zealanders who were on board: its peculiarities, when compared with the other dialects, we cannot point out; for the memorandum book, in which Mr Anderson had put down a specimen of it, was stolen by the natives.

Otakeotai

C A
the east
from W
place, f
for our
lingly g
had disc
We g
when C
with two
ence for
here, as a
the rocks
the island
attendant
they had
farther as
a lading c
ill three
was sent a

Otakootaia visited—Description of the Island, and its Produce—Birds—Fish—Visit Hervey's Island—Discover it to be inhabited—The Inhabitants refuse to come on board—Their Propensity to Theft—Their Manners, Persons, Dress, Canoes, &c.—Make a fruitless Attempt to land—Bear away for the Friendly Islands—Two Islets of Palmerston's Island touched at—Description of the Islets, their Produce, &c.—Refreshments procured there—Proceed to the Friendly Islands.

CALMS and light airs having alternately prevailed all the night of the 3d of April, before day-break the easterly swell had carried the ships some distance from Wateoo; but having failed of procuring at that place, some effectual supply, there appeared no reason for our continuing there any longer; we therefore willingly quitted it, and steered for the island which we had discovered three days before.

We got up with it about ten o'clock in the morning, when Captain Cook immediately dispatched Mr Gore with two boats, to see if he could land, and get subsistence for our cattle. Though a reef surrounded the land here, as at Wateoo, and a considerable surf broke against the rocks, our boats no sooner reached the west side of the island, but they ventured in, and Mr Gore and his attendants arrived safe on shore. Captain Cook seeing they had so far succeeded, sent a small boat to know if farther assistance was required. She waited to take in the lading of the produce of the island, and did not return till three o'clock in the afternoon: being cleared, she was sent again for another cargo; the jolly boat was

also dispatched upon the same business, with orders for Mr Gore to return with the boats before night, which orders were punctually observed.

The supply obtained here was about two hundred cocoa nuts for ourselves, and for our cattle some grass, and a quantity of the leaves and branches of young cocoa trees, and the pandanus.

This island lies about three or four leagues from Wa-tecoo, the inhabitants of which call it Otakootaia. It is in the latitude of 19 d. 15 m. S. and the longitude of 201 d. 37 m. E. and is supposed not to exceed three miles in circuit.

This island is entirely destitute of water. Cocoa palms were the only common trees found there, of which there were several clusters, and great quantities of the *wharra*, or *pandanus*. There were also the *callophyllum*, *suriana*, with a few other shrubs; also a sort of *bind-weed*, *treacle-mustard*, a species of *spurge*, and the *morinda citrifolia*; the fruit of which is sometimes eaten by the natives of Otaheite. Omai, who landed with the party, dressed some of it for their dinner, but they thought it very indifferent.

A beautiful cuckoo, of a chestnut colour, variegated with black, was the only bird seen amongst the trees; but, upon the shore, were a small sort of curlew, blue and white herons, some egg birds, and numbers of noddies.

One of the company caught a lizard running up a tree; though small, it had a most forbidding aspect. Many of another sort were also seen. Infinite numbers of a kind of moth, elegantly speckled with black, white and red, frequented the bushes towards the sea. Some other sorts of moths and pretty butterflies were seen.

At this time there were no fixed inhabitants upon the island; but we discovered a few empty huts, which convinced us of its being, at least, occasionally visited. Monuments, consisting of several large stones, were also

erected

ere
for
clo
We
pa
fron
visit
Mr
for t
TH
north
Illa
durin
break
three
and o
towar
circum
seen w
might
prevent
Adva
canoes
men in
throw f
difficulty th
but they
board.
cate a di
attempte
and stru
They also
over the
it, though
from the
behaved
of hooks
to rob us
blowing to

erected under the shade of some trees : there were also some smaller ones, with which several places were inclosed, where we supposed their dead had been buried. We found in one place a great many cockle-shells, of a particular sort, finely grooved, and larger than the fist; from which it was conjectured, that the island had been visited by persons who sometimes feed on shell-fish. Mr Gore left some nails and a hatchet in one of the huts, for the use of those who might visit the island in future.

The boats being hoisted in, we made sail again to the northward, resolving to try our fortune at Hervey's Island, which was discovered by Captain Cook in 1773, during his last voyage. We got sight of it about day-break in the morning of the 6th, at the distance of about three leagues. We approached it about eight o'clock, and observed several canoes coming from the shore towards the ships. We were rather surprised at this circumstance, as no traces or signs of inhabitants were seen when the island was first discovered : this, indeed, might be owing to a brisk wind that then blew, and prevented their canoes venturing out.

Advancing still towards the island, six or seven double canoes immediately came near us, with from three to six men in each of them. At the distance of about a stone's throw from the ship they stopped, and it was with difficulty that Omai prevailed on them to come along-side; but they could not be induced to trust themselves on board. Indeed, their disorderly behaviour did not indicate a disposition to trust us, or to treat us well. They attempted to steal some oars out of the Discovery's boat, and struck a man for endeavouring to prevent them. They also cut away a net containing meat, which hung over the stern of that ship, and at first would not restore it, though they afterwards permitted us to purchase it from them. Those who were about the Resolution, behaved equally disorderly and daring; for, with a sort of hooks made of a long stick, they openly endeavoured to rob us of several things, and actually got a frock belonging to one of our people. It appeared that they had

had a knowledge of bartering, for they exchanged some fish for some of our small nails, of which they were extravagantly fond, and called them *goore*. Pieces of paper, or any other trifling article that was thrown to them, they caught with the greatest avidity; and if what was thrown fell into the sea, they immediately plunged in to swim after it.

Though the distance between Hervey's Island and Watecoo is not very great, the inhabitants differ greatly from each other, both in person and disposition. The colour of the natives of Hervey's Island is of a deeper cast, and several of them had a fierce savage aspect, like the natives of New Zealand, though some were fairer. Their hair was long and black, either hanging loose about their shoulders, or tied in a bunch on the top of the head. Some few, indeed, had it cropped short, and, in two or three of them, it was of a red or brownish colour. Their cloathing was a narrow piece of mat, bound several times round the lower part of the body, and passing between the thighs. We saw a fine cap of red feathers lying in one of the canoes, and some amongst them were ornamented with the shell of a pearl oyster, polished, and hung about the neck.

The mode of ornament, so prevalent among the natives of this ocean, of puncturing or tatooing their bodies, not one of them had adopted; but though they were singular, in this respect, their being of the same common race is not to be doubted. Their language more resembled the dialect of Otaheite, than that of Mangea or Watecoo. Like the natives of those islands, they enquired from whence we came, whither bound, the ship's name, the name of our chief, and the number of men on board. Such questions as we proposed to them, they very readily answered. They informed us, among other things, that they had before seen two large ships, like ours, but had not spoken to them as they passed. These were, doubtless, the *Resolution* and *Adventure*. They acquainted us that the name of their island

isla
sub
and
isla
can
are
blan
W
o'clo
could
our b
tenan
conn
out, th
pushin
near us
The
inform
age for
farther
a quart
of the n
long pik
ing; th
to our p
and, no
the won
supply o
Captai
the ships
would be
disappoi
Zealand,
been una
vain to th
latitudes o
were then
for our op

island was Terouggemou Atooa; and that they were subject to Teerevatooeah, King of Wateoo.

Their food, they said, consisted of cocoa nuts, fish, and turtle; being destitute of dogs and hogs, and the island not producing bread fruit or plantains. Their canoes (near thirty of which appeared one time in sight) are tolerably large, and well built, and bear some resemblance to those of Wateoo.

We drew near the N. W. part of the island about one o'clock. This seemed to be the only part where we could expect to find anchorage, or a landing-place for our boats. Captain Cook immediately dispatched Lieutenant King, with two armed boats, to sound and reconnoitre the coast. The boats were no sooner hoisted out, than our new visitors suspended their traffic with us, pushing for shore as fast as possible, and came no more near us.

The boats returned at three o'clock, and Mr King informed Captain Cook, that he could find no anchorage for the ships; and that the boats could advance no farther than the outer edge of the reef, which was almost a quarter of a mile from the dry land. That a number of the natives came upon the reef, armed with clubs and long pikes, meaning as he supposed, to oppose his landing; though, at the same time, they threw cocoa nuts to our people, and requested them to come on shore; and, notwithstanding this seeming friendly treatment, the women were very active in bringing down a fresh supply of darts and spears.

Captain Cook considered that, as we could not bring the ships to an anchor, the attempt to procure grass here would be attended with delay and danger. Being thus disappointed in all the islands after our leaving New Zealand, and having, from variety of circumstances, been unavoidably retarded in our progress, it was in vain to think of doing any thing this year in the high latitudes of the northern hemisphere, from which we were then so far distant, though it was then the season for our operations there. Thus situated, it was necessary

to

to pursue such measures as appeared best calculated to preserve our cattle, and save the stores and provisions of the ships; the better to enable us to prosecute our northern discoveries, which could not now commence till a year later than was intended.

If we could fortunately have procured a supply of water and grass, at any of the islands we had lately visited, Captain Cook intended to have stood back to the south, till he had got a westerly wind. But without such a supply, the certain consequence of doing this, would have been the loss of the cattle, before it was possible for us to reach Otaheite, without gaining a single point of advantage respecting the grand object of our voyage.

The Captain therefore determined to bear away for the Friendly Islands, where he knew he could be well supplied with every thing he wanted: and it being necessary to run night and day, he ordered Captain Clerke to keep a league ahead of the Resolution; because his ship could best claw off the land, which we might possibly fall in with in our passage.

We steered W. by S. with a fine breeze. Captain Cook proposed to proceed first to Middleburgh, or Eooa, thinking we might perhaps have provision enough for the cattle, to last till we should arrive at that island. But the next day, about noon, those faint breezes that had so long retarded us, again returned; and we found it necessary to get into the latitude of Palmerston's and Savage Islands, which Captain Cook discovered in 1774; that, in case of necessity, recourse might be had to them.

In order to save our water, Captain Cook ordered the still to be kept at work a whole day; during which time we procured about fifteen gallons of fresh water.

These light breezes continued till Thursday the 10th when the wind blew some hours fresh from the N. and N. N. W. In the afternoon we had some very heavy rain, attended with thunder squalls. We collected a

mus

Vol. II.

much rain water as filled five of our puncheons. When these squalls had blown over, the wind was very unsettled, both in strength and in position, till the next day at noon, when it fixed at N. W. and N. N. W. and blew a fresh breeze.

We were thus persecuted with the wind in our teeth, and had the additional mortification to find those very winds here, which we had reason to expect farther south. At day-break, however, on the 13th, we perceived Palmerston's Island, bearing W. by S. at the distance of about five leagues; but did not get up with it till the next morning, at eight. Captain Cook then dispatched three boats from the Resolution, and one from the Discovery, with a proper officer in each, to search for a convenient landing place; we being now under an absolute necessity of procuring here some provender for our cattle, or we must certainly have lost them.

What is called Palmerston's Island, consists of a group of small islets, about nine or ten in number, connected together by a reef of coral rocks, and lying in a circular direction. The boats first examined the most southeasterly islet; and, not succeeding there, ran down to the second, where they immediately landed. Captain Cook then bore down with the ships, till we were abreast of the place, where we kept standing off and on, there being no bottom to be found to anchor upon. This, however, was of no material consequence, as there were no human beings upon the island, except the party who had landed from our boats.

At one o'clock one of the boats returned, laden with scurvy-grass and young cocoa trees, which was, at this time, a most excellent repast for our animals on board. A message was also brought from Mr Gore, who commanded the party upon this expedition, acquainting us that the island abounded with such produce, and also with the wharra-tree and cocoa nuts. In consequence of this information, Captain Cook resolved to get a sufficient supply of these articles before he quitted this station, and accordingly went ashore in a small boat,

accompanied by the Captain of the Discovery. The island does not exceed a mile in circumference, and is not elevated above three feet beyond the level of the sea. It consisted almost entirely of a coral sand, with a small mixture of blackish mould, which appeared to be produced from rotten vegetables.

This poor soil is, however, covered with the same kinds of shrubs and bushes as we had seen at Otakootaia or Wenooa-ette, though not in so great variety. We perceived a great number of man of war birds, tropic birds, and two sorts of boobies, which were then laying their eggs, and so exceedingly tame as to permit us to take them off their nests, which consist only of a few sticks loosely put together. These tropic birds differ essentially from the common sort, being of a beautiful white, slightly tinged with red, and having two long tail-feathers of a deepish crimson. Our people killed a considerable number of each sort, which, though not the most delicate kind of food, were highly acceptable to us, who had been a long time confined to a salt diet. We saw plenty of red crabs creeping about among the trees; and caught several fish, which, when the sea retreated, had been left in holes upon the reef.

At one part of the reef, which bounds the lake within, almost even with the surface, there was a large bed of coral, which afforded a most enchanting prospect. Its base, which was fixed to the shore, extended so far that it could not be seen, so that it appeared to be suspended in the water. The sea was then unruffled, and the refulgence of the sun exposed the various sorts of coral, in the most beautiful order; some parts luxuriantly branching into the water; others appearing in vast variety of figures; and the whole greatly heightened by spangles of the richest colours, glowing from a number of large clams, interspersed in every part. Even this delightful scene was greatly improved by the multitude of fishes, that gently glided along, seemingly with the most perfect security. Their colours were the most

beautiful

beau
&c.

The
creas
not p
accor
fo' aft
so fel

Ex
beach
ever b
ed fro
ver, a
island
for, un
ed in t

The
board,
on sho
ing.

The
lecting
tender
young
having
all the
he deter
ing, fro
nuts for
off and
mornin
landed,
ple im
cocoa n
it was a
being o
up to th
us, prese
supplied

The
and is
the sea.
a small
be pro-

ne same
akootaia
y. We
s, tropic
n laying
it us to
of a few
ds differ
beautiful
long tail-
ed a con-
not the
ble to us,
et. We
he trees;
retreated,

ke with-
large bed
prospect.
led so far
to be suf-
fled, and
s sorts of
luxuriat-
g in vast
ntened by
a number
Even this
multitude
with the
the most
beautiful

beautiful that can be imagined ; blue, yellow, black, red, &c. far excelling any thing that can be produced by art. The richness of this submarine grotto was greatly encreased by their various forms; and the whole could not possibly be surveyed without a pleasing transport, accompanied, at the same time, with regret, that a work so astonishingly elegant should be concealed in a place so seldom explored by the human eye.

Except a piece of a canoe that was found upon the beach, no traces were discoverable of inhabitants having ever been here; and probably that may have been drifted from some other island. We were surprised, however, at perceiving some small brown rats on this little island; a circumstance, perhaps, not easily accounted for, unless we admit the possibility of their being imported in the canoe, of which we saw the remains.

The boats being laden, Captain Cook returned on board, leaving Mr Gore and his party to pass the night on shore, to be ready for business early the next morning.

The 15th, like the preceding day, was spent in collecting subsistence for the cattle, consisting principally of tender branches of the wharra-tree, palm-cabbage, and young cocoa nut trees. A sufficient supply of these having been procured by sun-set, Captain Cook ordered all the people on board: but, having very little wind, he determined to employ the next day, by endeavouring, from the next island to leeward, to get some cocoa nuts for our people: for this purpose, we kept standing off and on all night; and, about nine o'clock in the morning, we went to the west side of the islands, and landed, from our boats, with little difficulty. The people immediately employed themselves in gathering cocoa nuts, which we found in the greatest plenty; but it was a tedious operation to convey them to our boats, being obliged to carry them half a mile over the reef, up to the middle in water. Omai, who accompanied us, presently caught, with a scoop-net, as many fish as supplied the party on shore for dinner, besides sending a

quantity to each ship. Men of war, and tropic-birds, were found here in abundance; so that we fared most sumptuously. In these excursions to the uninhabited islands, Omai was of the greatest service to us. He caught the fish, and dressed them, as well as the birds we killed, after the fashion of his country, with a dexterity and chearfulness that did him honour. Before night the boats made two trips, and were each time heavy laden: with the last, Captain Cook returned on board, leaving his Third Lieutenant, Mr Williamson, with a party to prepare another lading for the boats against the next morning.

Accordingly Capt. Cook dispatched them about seven o'clock, and by noon they returned laden. No delay was made in sending them back for another cargo, with orders for all to be on board by sun-set. These orders being punctually obeyed, we hoisted in the boats, and sailed to the westward, with a light air from the north.

The islet we last came from is somewhat larger than the other, and almost covered with cocoa palms. The other productions were the same as at the first islet. On the beach were found two pieces of board, one of which was rudely carved, and an elliptical paddle. These were perhaps a part of the same canoe, the remains of which we had seen on the other beach, the two islets being within half a mile of each other. There were not so many crabs here as at the last place, but we found some scorpions and other insects, and a much greater number of fish upon the reefs. Among the rest were some beautiful large spotted eels, which would raise themselves out of the water, and endeavour to bite their pursuers. There were also snappers, parrot fish, and a brown spotted rock fish, not longer than a haddock, so tame, that it would remain fixed, and gaze at us. If we had been really in want, a sufficient supply might easily have been had, for thousands of the clams stuck upon the reef, many of which weighed two or three pounds. There were also some other sorts of shell fish; and when the tide flowed, several sharks came with it,
some

some
prese
wate
M
shore
toes.
plove
at W
Th
ston's
coral
thoug
groun
Hav
order
winds,
The sh
quantit
supply
a mont
more tr
The
about a
close ra
be noxi
not the
ships.
We p
covered
25th; a
ing, we
bearing
ed to the
the appro
tain, we

some of which were killed by our people; but their presence rendered it, at that time, unsafe to walk in the water.

Mr Williamson and his party, who were left on shore, were much pestered in the night with musquitoes. Some of them shot two curlews, and saw some plovers upon the shore; one or two cuckoos, like those at Wenooa-ette, were also seen.

The islets comprehended under the name of Palmerston's Island, may be said to be the summits of a reef of coral rock, covered only with a thin coat of sand; though clothed with trees and plants, like the low grounds of the high islands of this ocean.

Having left Palmerston's Island we steered W. in order to proceed to Annamooka. We had variable winds, with squalls, some thunder, and much rain. The showers being very copious, we saved a considerable quantity of water; and as we could procure a greater supply in one hour, by the rain, than by distillation in a month, we laid the still aside, as being attended with more trouble than advantage.

The heat, which had continued in the extreme for about a month, became much more disagreeable in this close rainy weather, and we apprehended it would soon be noxious. It is, however, remarkable, that there was not then a single person sick on board either of the ships.

We passed Savage Island, which Captain Cook discovered in 1774, in the night between the 24th and 25th; and on the 28th, about ten o'clock in the morning, we saw the islands to the eastward of Annamooka, bearing N. by W. about five leagues distant. We steered to the S. and then hauled up for Annamooka. At the approach of night, the weather being squally, with rain, we anchored in fifteen fathoms water.

Barter with the Natives of Komango and other Islands, for Provisions, &c.—Arrival at Annamooka—Variety of Transactions there—A Visit received from Feenau, a principal Chief from Tongataboo—His Reception in the Island—Dines frequently on board the Resolution—Several Instances of the pilfering Disposition of the Natives—Punishments inflicted on them—Account of Annamooka—Proceed to Hapae.

WE had not long anchored, when two canoes paddled towards us, and came alongside without delay or hesitation: there were four men in one of the canoes, and three in the other. They brought with them some sugar cane, bread fruit, plantains, and cocoa nuts, which they bartered with us for nails. After these canoes had left us, we were visited by another; but as night was approaching, he did not long continue with us. The island nearest to us was Komango, which was five miles distant; this shews how these people disregard trouble or danger, to get possession of a few of our most trifling articles.

At four o'clock the next morning, Captain Cook dispatched Lieutenant King with two boats, to Komango, in order to procure refreshments; and at five, made the signal to weigh, to proceed to Annamooka.

As soon as day light appeared, we were visited by six or seven canoes, bringing with them two pigs, some fowls, several large wood pigeons, small rails, and some violet-coloured coots, besides fruits and roots of various kinds; which they exchanged with us for nails, hatchets, beads, &c. They had other articles of commerce,

merc
curio
plied
missic
Ab

hogs,
some
great
appear
joined
langee
pa, can
hog, as
bring so
The

and hav
namook
drawing

which o
the sout
found it
was dark
direction
farther of
and the w

We co
whole day
athoms w
E. N. E. f

greeable
Captain C
the differ
ty of fruit
rom the is
ny of their
At four t
at to be ho

merce, but Captain Cook gave particular orders that no curiosities should be purchased till the ships were supplied with provisions, and till they had obtained permission from him.

About noon, Mr King's boat returned with seven hogs, some fowls, a quantity of fruit and roots; and also some grass for our animals. His party was treated with great civility at Komango. The inhabitants did not appear to be numerous; and their huts, which almost joined to each other, were but indifferent. Tooboulangee, the chief of the island, and another, named Taipa, came on board with Mr King. They brought a hog, as a present to Captain Cook, and promised to bring some more the next day.

The boats being aboard, we stood for Annamooka; and having little wind, we intended to go between Annamooka-ette,* and the breakers at the S. E. but on drawing near, we met with very irregular soundings, which obliged us to relinquish the design, and to go to the southward. This carried us to leeward, and we found it necessary to spend the night under sail. It was dark and rainy, and we had the wind from every direction. The next morning, at day light, we were farther off than we had been the preceding evening; and the wind was now right in our teeth.

We continued to ply, to very little purpose, the whole day; and in the evening, anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water; the west point of Annamooka bearing E. N. E. four miles distant. Tooboulangee and Taipa, agreeable to their promise, brought off some hogs for Captain Cook: we obtained others, by bartering, from the different canoes that followed us, and a large quantity of fruit. It is remarkable, that those who visited us from the islands on that day, would hardly part with any of their commodities to any one but Captain Cook. At four the next morning, Captain Cook ordered a boat to be hoisted out, and the master to sound the south-

* Little Annamooka.

west side of Annamooka. When he returned, he reported that he had founded between Great and Little Annamooka, where he found ten and twelve fathoms depth of water; that the place was very well sheltered from winds; but that no fresh water was to be had but at a considerable distance inland, and that even there, it was neither plentiful nor good. For this very sufficient reason, Captain Cook resolved to anchor on the north side of the island, where, in his last voyage, he had found a convenient place for watering and landing.

Though not above a league distant, we did not reach it till about five o'clock in the afternoon, being retarded by the quantity of canoes that crowded round the ships, laden with abundant supplies of the produce of their island. Several of these canoes, which were double, had a large sail, and carried between forty and fifty men each. Several women too appeared in the canoes, incited perhaps by curiosity to visit us; though they were as earnest in bartering as the men, and used the paddle with equal skill and dexterity. We came to an anchor in eighteen fathoms water, the island extending from E. to S. W. about three quarters of a mile distant. Thus Captain Cook resumed the station, which he had occupied when he visited Annamooka three years before; and probably where Tasman, who first discovered this island, anchored in 1640.

The next day, during the preparations for watering, Captain Cook went ashore in the forenoon, accompanied by Captain Clerke and others, to fix on a place for setting up the observatories, the natives having readily granted us permission. They shewed us every mark of civility, and accommodated us with a boat house, which answered the purpose of a tent. Toobou, the chief of the island, conducted Captain Cook and Omai to his house, situated on a pleasant spot, in the centre of his plantation. It was surrounded with a grass plot, which he said was for the purpose of cleansing their feet, before they

the
clea
had
it to
pet
than
hou
W
and
were
came
every
In
party
weak
settled
ship in
the isla
and in
quarter
side of
Our
Some w
water c
the fam
equal la
time-ke
natives f
subject,
treat us,
island to
and occa
ions the
On th
power an
We we
aboo, wh
Taipa, as
as now
Vol. II.

they entered his habitation. Such an attention to cleanliness we had never observed before, wherever we had visited in this ocean; though we afterwards found it to be very common at the Friendly Islands. No carpet in an English drawing-room could be kept neater, than the mats which covered the floor of Toobou's house.

While we were on shore, we bartered for some hogs and fruit; and when we arrived on board, the ships were crowded with the natives. As very few of them came empty-handed, we were speedily supplied with every refreshment.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook landed again, with a party of marines; and such of the cattle as were in a weakly state, were sent on shore with him. Having settled every thing to his satisfaction, he returned to the ship in the evening, leaving Mr King in command upon the island. Taipa was now become our trusty friend, and in order to be near our party, had a house carried a quarter of a mile on men's shoulders, and placed by the side of the shed which our party occupied.

Our various operations on shore began the next day. Some were busied in making hay, others in filling our water casks, and a third party in cutting wood. On the same day, Messrs King and Bailey began to observe equal latitudes of the sun, in order to get the rate of our time-keepers. In the evening, Taipa harangued the natives for some time; but we could only guess at the subject, and supposed he was instructing them how to treat us, and advising them to bring the produce of the island to market. His eloquence had the desired effect, and occasioned us to receive a plentiful supply of provisions the next day.

On the 4th of May, the Discovery lost her small power anchor, the cable being cut in two by the rocks.

We were visited on the 6th, by a chief from Tongataboo, whose name was Feenou: he was introduced by Taipa, as king of all the Friendly Isles. Captain Cook was now informed, that on our arrival a canoe had been

immediately dispatched to Tongataboo with the news; which occasioned his coming to Annamooka. We were informed, by the officer on shore, that, on his arrival, all the natives were ordered out to meet him, who saluted him by bowing their heads as low as his feet, the soles of which they touched with the palm of each hand, and afterwards with the back part. A personage received with such extraordinary marks of respect, could not be supposed to be any less than a king.

Captain Cook, in the afternoon, went to pay a visit to this great man, having first received from him a present of two fish, brought on board by one of his attendants. As soon as the Captain landed, Feenou came up to him. He was tall and thin, and appeared to be about thirty years of age: his features were more of the European cast than any we had seen here. After the first salutation, Captain Cook requested to know if he was king; as he entertained some doubts on that score, perceiving that he was not the man whom he remembered to have seen in that character during his former voyage. Taipa eagerly answered for him, and mentioned no less than one hundred and fifty-three islands, of which he was the sovereign. Soon after, our grand visitor, attended by five or six servants, accompanied us on board. Captain Cook made them suitable presents, and entertained them in a manner which he thought would be most agreeable to them.

Towards the evening, the Captain attended them on shore in his boat, into which, by order of the chief, three hogs were conveyed, as a return for the presents he had received. We were then informed of an accident, the relation of which will convey some idea of the extent of the authority exercised here over the inferior people. While Feenou was on board the Resolution, an inferior chief ordered all the natives to retire from the post we occupied. Some of them, however, having ventured to return, he beat them most unmercifully, with a large stick. One in particular, received so violent a blow on the side of the face, that the blood gushed from his mouth.

more
time
The
certa
cum
not g
the fa
of da
On
bower
best b
'This c
on the
and for
permitt
his pre
count o
he had
table be
though
of eating
tice at th
A larg
y one o
Annamoo
is autho
that purp
that it wa
dinner.
ing how
some of th
profession.
ected in c
the spun-y
nder his
enced him
ill he paid
umstance,
ank, their

mouth and nostrils; and after lying motionless for some time, he was removed from the place in convulsions. The person who gave the blow, on being told that he certainly had killed the man, only laughed at the circumstance; and indeed it was very evident that he did not grieve for what had happened. We had afterwards the satisfaction to hear that the poor sufferer was out of danger.

On the 7th, the Discovery having found her small bower anchor, shifted her birth; but not till after her best bower cable had met with the fate of the other. This day Feenou dined with Captain Cook; and also on the next, when he was attended by Taipa, Toobou, and some other chiefs. None but Taipa, however, was permitted to sit at table with Feenou, or even to eat in his presence. The Captain was highly pleased on account of this etiquette; for before the arrival of Feenou, he had generally a larger company than he chose, his table being overflowed with visitors of both sexes. For though at Otaheite the females are denied the privilege of eating in company with the men, this is not the practice at the Friendly Islands.

A large junk axe having been stolen out of the ship by one of the natives, on the first day of our arrival at Annamooka, application was made to Feenou to exert his authority to get it restored; who gave orders for that purpose, which exacted such implicit obedience, that it was brought on board before we had finished our dinner. We had indeed many opportunities of remarking how expert these people were in thievery. Even some of their chiefs were not ashamed in acting in that profession. On the 9th of May, one of them was detected in carrying out of the ship, the bolt belonging to the spun-yarn winch, which he had carefully concealed under his clothes. For this offence Captain Cook sentenced him to receive a dozen lashes, and to be confined till he paid a hog for his liberty. Though after this circumstance, we were troubled with no more thieves of rank, their servants or slaves were constantly employed

in this dirty business ; and they received a flogging with as much seeming indifference, as if it had been upon the main-mast.

When any of them were caught in the act of thieving, instead of interceding in their behalf, their masters would often advise us to kill them. This being a punishment we were not fond of inflicting, they usually escaped without any kind of punishment : they were alike insensible of the shame and torture of corporal chastisement. At length, however, Captain Clerke contrived a mode of treatment, which we supposed had some effect. Immediately upon detection, he ordered their heads to be completely shaved, and thus pointed them out as objects of ridicule to their countrymen, and put our people upon their guard, to deprive them of future opportunities for a repetition of their thefts.

Feenou was so fond of our company, that he dined on board every day, though he did not always partake of our fare. On the 10th, his servants brought him a mess which had been dressed on shore, consisting of fish, soup, and yams ; cocoa nut liquor had been used instead of water, in which the fish had been boiled or stewed (perhaps in a wooden vessel with hot stones) and it was carried on board on a plantain leaf. Captain Cook tasted of the mess, and was so well pleased with it, that he afterwards ordered some fish to be dressed in the same way ; but though his cook succeeded tolerably well, it was much inferior to the dish he attempted to imitate.

Having, in a great measure, exhausted the island of almost every article of food, on Sunday the 11th of May, we removed from the shore the observatories, horses, and other things that we had landed ; intending to sail as soon as the Discovery should have found her best bower anchor. Feenou, hearing that the Captain meant to proceed to Tongataboo, earnestly entreated him to alter his plan ; expressing as much aversion to it, as if, by diverting him from it, he wished to promote some

ing with
pon the

ieving,
s would
ishment
escaped
like in-
chastise-
trived a
e effect.
heads to
ut as ob-
our peo-
e oppor-

he dined
partake
nt him a
isting of
een used
oiled or
t stones)
Captain
fed with
ressed in
tolerably
mpted to

island of
11th of
rvatories,
ntending
ound her
e Captain
entreated
ersion to
o promote
some

Cook's Voyages.



A VIEW at ANAMOOKA.

Benbow & Co. del. & sculp.

some
comm
the N
plenti
offere
of his
had n
veying
On
happil
we got
Tho
small i
geea an
rate he
of a sto
high, c
from th
centre c
mile an
rises wi
having
parts of
soil is e
clay; bu
found in
cultivate
parts app
the stren
saw the n
them ag
plantation
enclosed v
of less co
ing the
fruit and
regular o
the native

some particular interest of his own. He warmly recommended a group of islands, called Hapae, lying to the N. E. where he assured us we could be easily and plentifully supplied with every refreshment; and even offered to attend us thither in person. In consequence of his advice, Hapae was made choice of; and as it had not been visited by any European ships, the surveying it became an object to Captain Cook.

On Tuesday the 13th, Captain Clerke's anchor was happily recovered; and on the morning of the 14th, we got under sail, and left Annamooka.

Though this island is somewhat higher than the other small isles that surround it, yet it is lower than Mangeea and Wateoo; and even those are but of a moderate height. The shore, where our ships lay, consists of a steep, rugged, coral rock, about nine or ten feet high, except two sandy beaches, which are defended from the sea, by a reef of the same sort of rock. In the centre of the island there is a salt water lake, about a mile and an half in breadth, round which the ground rises with a gradual ascent, and we could not trace its having any communication with the sea. On the rising parts of the island, and especially towards the sea, the soil is either of a blackish loose mould, or a reddish clay; but there is not a stream of fresh water to be found in any part of the island. The land here is well cultivated, except in a few places; and though some parts appear to lie waste, they are only left to recover the strength exhausted by constant culture; for we often saw the natives at work upon these spots, in order to plant them again. Yams and plantains form their principal plantations; many of which are very extensive, and enclosed with fences of reed about six feet high. Fences of less compass were often seen within these, surrounding the houses of the principal people. The bread fruit and cocoa-nut trees are interspersed without any regular order, but principally near the habitations of the natives. The other parts of the island, especially towards

towards the sea, and round the lake are covered with luxuriant trees and bushes; among which there are a great many mangroves and fatanoo trees. All the rocks and stones about the island are of coral, except in one place, to the right of the sandy beach, where there is a rock of about twenty-five feet in height, of a calcareous stone, and of a yellowish colour; but even here some large pieces are to be seen of the same coral rock as that which composes the shore.

We sometimes amused ourselves in walking up the country and shooting wild ducks, resembling our wild-geon, which are very numerous on the salt lake, as well as on the pool where we procured our water. We found in these excursions, that the inhabitants frequently deserted their houses to repair to the trading place, without entertaining the least suspicion that strangers would take away or destroy any property that belonged to them. From this circumstance it might be supposed, that most of the natives were sometimes collected on the beach, and that there would be no great difficulty in forming an accurate computation of their number; but the continual resort of visitors, from other islands, rendered it impossible. However, as we never saw more than a thousand persons collected at one time, it may be reasonably supposed, that there are about thrice that number upon the island.

In the direct track to Hapae, whither we were now bound, to the N. N. E. of Annamooka, a great number of small isles are seen. Amidst the rocks and shoals adjoining to this group, we were doubtful whether there was a free passage for ships of such magnitude as ours; though the natives sailed through the intervals in their canoes: therefore, when we weighed anchor from Annamooka, we steered to go to the westward of the above islands, and N. N. W. towards Kao, and Toofoa, two islands remarkable for their height, and the most westerly of those in sight. Feenou, with his attendants, remained in the Resolution till about noon, and then entered the large sailing canoe, which had brought him from

from
island
Th
them
two o
Man
ka; f
beach
neral
are m
a beau
ther v
scene;
zation
islands
suppos
ly sand
on it.
In t
the N.
intende
before
water;
sail, tha
In th
Toofoa
day.
by Islan
call it K
were in
stones,
silet, w
the inh
did. V
the isla
ten leag
inhabite
At da

from Tongataboo, and stood in amongst the cluster of islands, of which we were now abreast.

They are scattered at unequal distances, and most of them are as high as Annamooka. Some of them are of two or three miles in length, and others only half a mile. Many of them have steep rocky shores, like Annamooka; some have reddish cliffs, and others have sandy beaches, extending almost their whole length. In general they are entirely clothed with trees, among which are many cocoa-palms, each having the appearance of a beautiful garden placed in the sea. The serene weather we now had contributed greatly to heighten the scene; and the whole might convey an idea of the realization of some fairy land. It appears that some of these islands had been formed, as Palmerston's Island was supposed to have been; for one of them is now entirely land, and another has but a single bush or tree upon it.

In the afternoon, about four o'clock, we steered to the N. leaving Toofoa and Kao on our larboard. We intended to have anchored for the night, but it arrived before we could find a place in less than fifty fathoms water; and we rather chose to spend the night under sail, than come to in such a depth.

In the afternoon we had been within two leagues of Toofoa, and observed the smoke of it several times in the day. There is a volcano upon it, of which the Friendly Islanders entertained some superstitious notions, and call it *Kollofeea*, saying, it is an Otooa, or divinity. We were informed, that it sometimes throws up very large stones, and the *crater* is compared to the size of a small skillet, which has not ceased smoking in the memory of the inhabitants; nor have they any tradition that it ever did. We sometimes saw the smoke from the centre of the island, even at Annamooka, the distance of at least ten leagues. We were told that Toofoa was but thinly inhabited, but that the water upon it was excellent.

At day-break, on the 15th, we were not far from Kao,

Kao, which is a large rock of a conic figure ; we steered to the passage between Footooha and Hafaiva, with a gentle breeze at S. E. About ten o'clock, Feenou came on board, and continued with us all day. He brought with him a quantity of fruit and two hogs ; and in the course of the day, several canoes came to barter quantities of the former article, which was very acceptable to us, as our stock began to be low. At noon our latitude was 19 d. 49 m. 45 f. S. and we had made seven miles of longitude from Annamooka.

After having passed Footooha, we met with a reef of rocks, and there being but little wind, it was attended with some difficulty to keep clear of them. Having passed this reef, we hauled up for Neeneeva, a small low isle in the direction of E. N. E. from Footooha, in hopes of finding an anchorage, but were again disappointed : for notwithstanding we had land in every direction, the sea was unfathomable. We plainly saw, in the course of this night, flames issuing from the volcano upon Toofoa.

At day-break on the 16th, we steered, with a gentle breeze at S. E. for Hapae, which was now in sight ; and perceived it to be low land, from the trees only appearing above the water. At nine o'clock we saw it plainly forming three islands, nearly equal in size ; and soon after a fourth appeared to the southward of these, as large as any of the others. Each of the islands appeared to be of a similar height and appearance, and about six or seven miles in length. The most northern of them is called Haanno, the next Foa, the third Lefooga, and the fourth Hoolaiwa ; but they are all four included under the general name of Hapae.

By sun-set we got up with the northernmost of these isles, where we experienced the same distress for want of anchorage, that we did the two preceding evenings having another night to spend under sail, with land and breakers in every direction. Feenou, who had been on board all day, went forward to Hapae in the evening

all

and took Omai with him in the canoe. He was not unmindful of our disagreeable situation, and kept up a good fire the whole night, by way of a land mark.

At the return of day-light, on the 17th, being then close in with Foa, we perceived it was joined to Haano, by a reef running from one island to the other, even with the surface of the sea. Captain Cook dispatched a boat to look for anchorage; and a proper place was found, abreast of a reef which joins Lefooga to Foa, having twenty-four fathoms depth of water. In this station, the northern point of Hapae bore N. 16 d. E. We were not above three quarters of a mile from the shore; and as we lay before a creek in the reef, it was convenient landing at all times.

Vol. II.—N^o 29.

P

Arrival

Arrival at Hapae—Friendly Reception there—Taipa harangues the People—Exhorts them not to steal, &c.—Presents and Solemnities—Entertainment—Single Combats with Clubs—Wrestling—Boxing—Female Boxing—Marines exercised—A Dance by Men—Fire-Works—Night Entertainments, consisting of Singing and Dancing by Men and Women.

AS soon as we had anchored, we were surrounded by a multitude of canoes, and our ships were presently filled with the natives. They brought with them hogs, fowls, fruit, and roots, which they exchanged for cloth, knives, beads, nails, and hatchets. Feenou and Omai having come on board, early in the morning, in order to introduce Captain Cook to the people of the island, he soon accompanied them on shore for that purpose.

The Chief conducted the Captain to a hut, situated close to the sea beach, which was brought thither but a few minutes before for his reception. In this Feenou, Omai, and Capt. Cook were seated. The other chiefs and the multitude appeared fronting them on the outside; and they also seated themselves. Captain Cook being asked how long he intended to stay, answered five days. Taipa was therefore ordered to sit by him and declare this to the people. He then harangued them in words nearly to the following purport, as we afterwards were informed by Omai. He exhorted both old and young to look upon Captain Cook as a friend who meant to continue with them a few days; and that during his stay among them, they would not steal any thing.

ba ha-
—Pre-
ts with
ines ex-
Enter-
ten and

rounded
ere pre-
ith them
nged for
enou and
rning, in
e of the
for that

, situated
her but a
s Feenou,
her chiefs
n the out-
tain Cook
answered
t by him
narangua
e, as we af
orted both
s a friend
; and the
ot steal any
thin.

Cook's Voyages



th
H
b
th
en
dr
Co
sh
illa
gay
Th
oth
self
Fee
Tai
But
con
F
fit b
whic
Th
quest
called
deed
our
found
to be
Feend
they
fat do
tain c
receiv
and a
provis
tering
ther w
On
and O
on bo

thing from him, or offend him in any other manner. He informed them that it was expected they should bring hogs, fowls, fruit, &c. to the ships; for which they would receive in exchange, such articles as he enumerated. Soon after Taipa had delivered his address to the assembly, Feenou left them; on which Capt. Cook was informed, by Taipa, that it was necessary he should make a present to Earoupa, the chief of the island. The Captain being not unprepared for this, gave him such articles as far exceeded his expectation. This liberality created similar demands from two chiefs of other isles who were present, and even from Taipa himself. Soon after he had made the last of these presents, Feenou returned, and expressed his displeasure with Taipa for suffering him to be so lavish of his favours. But this was doubtless a finelle, as he certainly acted in concert with the others.

Feenou now resumed his seat, ordering Earoupa to sit by him, and harangue the people as Taipa had done, which he did nearly to the same purpose.

These ceremonies over, the chief, at the Captain's request, conducted him to three stagnant pools of what he called fresh water; in one of which the water was indeed tolerable, and the situation convenient for filling our casks. On his return to his former station, he found a baked hog and some yams, smoking hot, ready to be conveyed on board for his dinner. He invited Feenou, and his friends to partake of the repast, and they embarked for the ship, though none but himself sat down with us at table. Dinner being over, the Captain conducted them on shore; and before he returned, received as a present from the chief, a fine large turtle, and a quantity of yams. We had a plentiful supply of provisions, for in the course of the day, we got, by bartering with the natives, about twenty small hogs, together with a large quantity of fruit and roots.

On Sunday the 18th, early in the morning, Feenou and Omai, who now slept on shore with the chief, came on board, to request Captain Cook's presence upon the

the island. He accompanied them, and upon landing, was conducted to the place where he had been seated the preceding day, and where he beheld a large concourse of people already assembled. Though he imagined that something extraordinary was in agitation, yet he could not conjecture what, nor could Omai give him any information.

Soon after he was seated, about an hundred of the natives appeared, and advanced, laden with yams, plantains, bread fruit, cocoa nuts, and sugar canes; their burdens were deposited on our left. A number of others arrived soon after, bearing the same kind of articles, which were collected into two piles on the right side. To these were fastened two pigs, and half a dozen fowls; and to those upon the left, six pigs, and two turtles. Earoupa seated himself before the articles on the left side, and another chief before those upon the right; they being, it was supposed, the two chiefs who had procured them by order of Feenou, who was as implicitly obeyed here, as he had been at Annamooka, and who had probably laid this tax upon the chiefs of Hapae for the present occasion.

When this munificent collection of provisions was placed in order, and advantageously disposed, the bearers of it joined the multitude, who formed a circle round the whole. Immediately after, a number of men, armed with clubs, entered this circle, or area; where they paraded about for a few minutes, and then one-half of them retired to one side, and the other half to the other side, seating themselves before the spectators. Presently after they successively entertained us with single combats; one champion from one side challenging those of the other side, partly by words, but more by expressive gestures, to send one of their party to oppose him. The challenge was in general accepted; the two combatants placed themselves in proper attitudes, and the engagement began, which continued till one of them yielded, or till their weapons were broken. At the conclusion of each combat, the victor squatted himself down

standing,
seated
ge con-
ne ima-
gitation,
ai give

of the
s, plan-
s; their
nber of
of arti-
ne right
a dozen
and two
ticles on
pon the
efs who
as as im-
oka, and
s of Ha-

ons was
the bear-
le round
en, arm-
ere they
ne-half of
the other

Present-
ngle com-
g those of
expressive
ole him.

two com-
, and the
e of them
At the
d himself
down



A BOXING-MATCH in HARAE

Bliss and Son

the
j
n
e
lo

th
w
ed
dif
of
mo
men
for,
up.
spe
bata
disap
not h
who
had n
given
land
exhibi
perfec
champ
mult
The
Captai
were
making
atende
eniend
Four
reenou
look h
the illan
the, the

down before the chief, then immediately rose up and retired. Some old men, who seemed to preside as judges, gave their plaudit in a very few words; and the multitude, especially those on the side of the conquerer, celebrated the glory he had acquired in two or three loud huzzas.

This entertainment was sometimes suspended for a short space, and the intervals of time were filled up with wrestling and boxing matches. The first were performed in the method practised at Otaheite, and the second differed very little from the English manner. A couple of stout wenches next stepped forth, and, without ceremony, began boxing with as much dexterity as the men. This contest, however, was but of short duration, for, in the space of half a minute, one of them gave it up. The victorious heroine was applauded by the spectators, in the same manner as the successful combatants of the other sex. Though we expressed some disapprobation at this part of the entertainment, it did not hinder two other females from entering the lists; who seemed to be spirited girls, and, if two old women had not interposed to part them, would probably have given each other a good drubbing. At least three thousand spectators were present when these combats were exhibited, and every thing was conducted with the most perfect good humour on all sides; though some of the champions, of both sexes, received blows which they must have felt the effect of for some time after.

The diversions being finished, the chief informed Captain Cook that the provisions on our right hand were a present to Omai; and that those on our left (making about two thirds of the whole quantity) were intended for him, and that he might suit his own convenience in taking them on board.

Four boats were loaded with the munificence of Teenou, whose favours far exceeded any that Captain Cook had ever received from the sovereigns of any of the islands which he had visited in the Pacific Ocean. He, therefore, embraced the first opportunity of convincing

vincing Feenou that he was not insensible of his liberality, by bestowing upon him such commodities as he supposed were most valuable in his estimation. Feenou was so highly pleased with the return that was made him, that he left the Captain still indebted to him, by sending him two large hogs, some yams, and a considerable quantity of cloth.

Feenou having expressed a desire to see the marines perform their exercise, Captain Cook ordered them all ashore on the morning of the 20th of May. After they had gone through various evolutions, and fired several volleys, which seemed to give pleasure to our numerous spectators, the chief, in his turn, entertained us with an exhibition, which was performed with an exactness and dexterity, far surpassing what they had seen of our military manœuvres. It was a kind of dance, performed by men, in which one hundred and five persons were engaged: each having an instrument in his hand, resembling a paddle, two feet and an half long, with a thin blade, and a small handle. With these instruments various flourishes were made, each of which was accompanied with a different movement, or a different attitude of the body. At first, the dancers ranged themselves in three lines, and so changed their stations by different evolutions, that those who had been in the rear came into the front. At one part of the performance, they extended themselves in one line; afterwards they formed themselves into a semi-circle; and then into two square columns. During the last movement, one of them came forward, and performed an antic dance before Captain Cook, with which the entertainment ended.

The music that accompanied the dances was produced by two drums, or rather hollow logs of wood, from which they forced some varied notes by beating on them with two sticks. The dancers, however, did not appear to be much assisted or directed by these sounds; but by a chorus of vocal music, in which all the performers joined.

The

Their song was rather melodious, and their corresponding motions were so skilfully executed, that the whole body of dancers appeared as one regular machine. Such a performance would have been applauded even on an European theatre. It far exceeded any attempt that we had made to entertain them; insomuch that they seemed to plume themselves on their superiority over us. They esteemed none of our musical instruments, except the drum, and even thought that inferior to their own. They held our French-horns in the highest contempt, and would not pay the smallest attention to them, either here or at any other of the islands.

To give them a more favourable opinion of the amusements and superior attainments of the English, Captain Cook ordered some fireworks to be prepared; and after it was dark, exhibited them in the presence of Feenou, and a vast multitude of people. They were highly entertained with the performance in general; but our water and skyrockets, in particular, astonished them beyond all conception. They now admitted that the scale was turned in our favour.

This, however, served only as an additional stimulus to urge them to proceed to fresh exertions of their singular dexterity. As soon as our fireworks were ended, a succession of dances, which Feenou had prepared for our entertainment, began. A band of music, or chorus, consisting of eighteen men, seated themselves before us, in the centre of a circle formed by the numerous spectators. About four or five of the performers had each pieces of large bamboo, from three to six feet in length, each played on by one man, who held it almost vertically; the upper end of which was open, but the other closed by one of the joints. They kept constantly striking the ground, though slowly, with the close end, and thus produced variety of notes, according to the different lengths of the instruments, but all were of the base or hollow kind; which was counteracted by a person who struck nimbly a piece of the same substance, split, and

The

and lying upon the ground ; furnishing a tone as acute, as the others were grave and solemn. The whole of the band (including those who performed upon the bamboo) sung a slow soft air, which so finely tempered the harsher notes of the instruments, that the most perfect judge of the modulation of sweet sounds could not avoid confessing the vast power, and pleasing effect of this simple harmony.

About a quarter of an hour after the concert began, twenty women entered the circle, whose heads were adorned with garlands of crimson flowers ; and many of their persons were decorated with leaves of trees, curiously scoloped, and ornamented at the edges. They encircled those of the chorus, with their faces towards them, and began by singing a soft air, to which responses were made by the chorus ; and those were alternately repeated. The women accompanied their song with many graceful motions of their hands, and continually advancing and retreating with one foot, while the other remained fixed. After this, they turned their faces to the assembly, and having sung some time, retreated slowly in a body, and placed themselves opposite the hut, where the principal spectators sat. One of them next advanced from each side, passing each other in the front, and progressively moving till they came to the rest. On which two advanced from each side, two of whom returned, but the other two remained ; and to these from each side, came one by intervals, till they all had once more formed a circle about the chorus.

Dancing to a quicker measure now succeeded, in which the performers made a kind of half-turn by leaping ; then clapping their hands, and snapping their fingers, repeated some words in unison with the chorus. As they proceeded in the dance, the rapidity of the music increased ; their gestures and attitudes were varied with wonderful dexterity ; and some of their motions would, by an European, be thought rather indecent.

cent

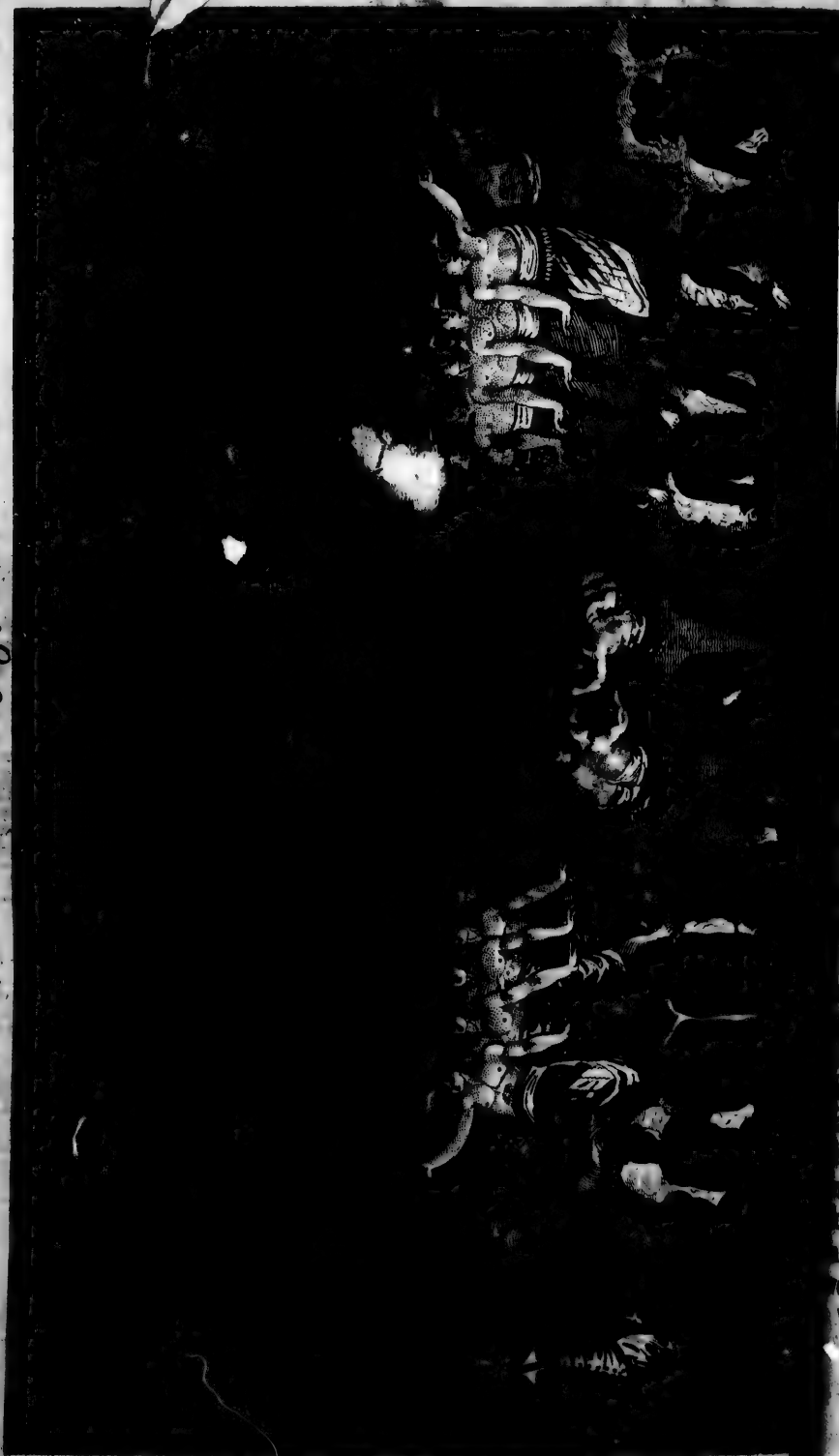
e as acute,
whole of
upon the
y temper-
t the most
nds could
asing effect

cert began,
heads were
and many
of trees, cu-
ges. They
es towards
which re-
ose were al-
anied their
hands, and
n one foot,
, they turn-
fung some
d themselves
ectators sat.
ide, passing
moving till
anced from
ther two re-
e one by in-
circle about

ceeded, in
urn by leap-
pping their
the chorus
dity of their
des were va-
of their mo-
rather inde-
cent



Book's Vignette.



cent
aston

TH
by fir
time
agility
at the
with t
their
at the
side, h
other;
ward.
swered
measur
quicken
chusion,
increase
distingu

This
val, twe
double r
stationed
tences to
ers and
and grad
succeeded

The ne
men, who
placed his
first of the
its joine
ame man
ruck her
stantly n
own wit
rried aw
women fr

Vol. II.—

cent; though perhaps they meant only to display the astonishing variety of their movements.

This famous ballet was succeeded by one performed by fifteen men; and though some of them were old, time seemed to have robbed them of but little of their agility. They were disposed in a sort of circle, divided at the front. Sometimes they sung slowly, in concert with the chorus, making several graceful motions with their hands, but differing from those of the women; at the same time inclining the body alternately to either side, by raising one leg outward, and resting on the other; the arm of the same side being also stretched upward. Then they recited sentences, which were answered by the chorus; and occasionally increased the measure of the dance, by clapping the hands, and quickening the motions of the feet. Towards the conclusion, the rapidity of the music and dancing so much increased, that the different movements were hard to be distinguished.

This dance being ended, after a considerable interval, twelve other men advanced, placing themselves in double rows, fronting each other. On one side was stationed a kind of prompter, who repeated several sentences to which responses were made by the performers and the chorus. They sung and danced slowly; and gradually grew quicker, like those whom they had succeeded.

The next who exhibited themselves were nine women, who sat down opposite the hut where the chief had placed himself. A man immediately rose, and gave the first of these women a blow on the back with both his fists joined. He treated the second and third in the same manner; but when he came to the fourth, he struck her upon the breast. Upon seeing this, a person instantly rising up from among the crowd, knocked him down with a blow on the head, and he was quietly carried away. But this did not excuse the other five women from so extraordinary a discipline; for they

were treated in the same manner by a person who succeeded him. When these nine women danced, their performance was twice disapproved of, and they were obliged to repeat it again. There was no great difference between this dance and that of the first women, except that these sometimes raised the body upon one leg and then upon the other, alternately, by a sort of double motion.

Soon after a person unexpectedly entered, making some ludicrous remarks on the fireworks that had been exhibited, which extorted a burst of laughter from the crowd. We had then a dance by the attendants of Feenou: they formed a double circle of twenty-four each round the chorus, and joined in a gentle soothing song, accompanied with motions of the head and hands. They also began with slow movements, which gradually became more and more rapid, and finally closed with several very ingenious transpositions of the two circles.

The festivity of this memorable night concluded with a dance, in which the principal people assisted. In many respects it resembled the preceding ones, but they increased their motions to a prodigious quickness, shaking their heads from shoulder to shoulder, insomuch that they appeared in danger of dislocating their necks. This was attended with a clapping of the hands, and a kind of savage holla! or shriek. A person, on one side, repeated something in a truly musical recitative, and with an air so graceful, as might put some of our applauded performers to the blush. He was answered by another, and this was repeated several times by the whole body on each side; and they finished by singing and dancing, as they had begun.

The two last dances were universally approved by all the spectators. They were perfectly in time, and some of their gestures were so expressive, that it might justly be said, they spoke the language that accompanied them.

Th

Th
space a
placed
Thoug
numbe
afterno
At that
might
but Cap
rated ac

The theatre for these performances was an open space among the trees, bordering on the sea, with lights, placed at small intervals, round the inside of the circle. Though the concourse of people was pretty large, their number was much inferior to that assembled in the afternoon, when the marines performed their exercise. At that time many of our gentlemen supposed there might be present five thousand persons, or upwards; but Captain Cook supposes that to be rather an exaggerated account.

Q2

Captain

Th

Captain Cook makes an Excursion into Lefooga—Description of that Island—Occurrences there—A false Report propagated—A Female Oculist—Singular Method of shaving—The Ships are removed to another Station—A remarkable artificial Mount and Stone—Description of Hoolaiwa—Account of Poulabo, King of the Friendly Isles—The Commodore accompanies him on Shore—Departure from the Hapae Islands—Kotoo described—The Ships return to Annamooka—Meeting of Poulabo and Feenou—Both the Ships strike on the Rocks—Arrival at Tongatahoo.

THE next day, which was the 21st of May, Captain Cook made an excursion into the Island of Lefooga on foot, which he found to be in some respects superior to Annamooka, the plantations being not only more numerous, but also more extensive. Many parts of the country, near the sea, are still waste; owing, perhaps, to the sandiness of the soil. But in the interior parts of the island the soil is better; and the marks of considerable population, and of an improved state of cultivation, are very conspicuous. Many of the plantations are enclosed in such a manner, that the fences running parallel to each other, form spacious public roads. Large spots, covered with the paper mulberry trees, were observed; and the plantations in general were abundantly stocked with such plants and fruit trees as the island produces. To these the Commodore made some addition, by sowing the seeds of melons, pumpkins, Indian corn, &c. At one place was a house about four times as large as the ordinary ones, with an extensive area of grass before it, to which the people probably

* In Captain Cook's time, the chief is said to have come from Latool, and to be the first of his rank or

probably resort on some public occasions. Near the landing place we observed a mount two or three feet high, on which stood four or five little huts, wherein the bodies of some persons of distinction had been interred. The island is but seven miles in length; and its breadth in some places is not above three miles. The east side has a reef, projecting considerably, against which the sea breaks with great violence. It is a continuation of this reef that joins Lefooga to Foa, which is but half a mile distant; and at low water the natives can walk upon this reef from one island to the other. The shore is either a sandy beach or a coral rock.

When the Captain returned from his excursion, and went on board, he found a large sailing canoe fastened to the stern of the Resolution. In this canoe was Latooliboula, whom the Commodore had seen, during his last voyage, at Tongataboo, and who was then supposed by him to be the king of that island.* He could not be prevailed upon to come on board, but continued sitting in his canoe with an air of uncommon gravity. The islanders called him *Areekee*, which signifies King; a title which we had not heard any of them give to Feenou, however extensive his authority over them had appeared to be. Latooliboula remained under the stern all the evening, and then departed. Feenou was on board the Resolution at that time; but neither of these chiefs took the smallest notice of the other.

The next day some of the natives stealing a tarpawling and other things, Captain Cook applied to Feenou, desiring him to exert his authority, for the purpose of getting them restored; but this application was of no effect.

On

* In Captain Cook's narrative of that voyage, the name of this chief is said to be *Kobages-too Fallangou*, which is totally different from Latooliboula. This may perhaps be accounted for by supposing it to be the name of the person, and the other the description of his rank or title.

On the 23d, as we were preparing to leave the island, Feenou and his prime minister Taipa came alongside in a canoe, and informed us that they were going to Vavaoo, an island situate, as they said, about two days sail to the northward of Hapae. They assured us, that the object of their voyage was to procure for us an additional supply of hogs, besides some red-feathered caps for Omai to carry with him to Otaheite; and desired us not to sail till their return, which would be in four or five days; after which Feenou would accompany us to Tongataboo. Captain Cook consented to wait the return of this chief, who immediately set out for Vavaoo.

On the 24th, a report was industriously spread about by some of the islanders, that a ship resembling ours had arrived at Annamooka since we left it, and was now at anchor there. It was also reported, that Toobou, the chief of that island, was hastening thither to receive these new visitors. After enquiry, however, it appeared, that this report was totally void of foundation. It is difficult to conjecture, what purpose the invention of this tale could answer; unless we suppose it was contrived with a view of getting us removed from one island to the other.

On Sunday the 25th, Captain Cook went into a house where a woman was dressing the eyes of a child, who seemed blind. The instruments used by this female oculist were two slender wooden probes, with which she brushed the eyes so as to make them bleed. In the same house he found another woman shaving a child's head with a shark's tooth, stuck into the end of a stick: she first wetted the hair with a rag dipped in water, and then making use of her instrument, took off the hair as close as if a razor had been employed. Captain Cook soon after tried upon himself one of these remarkable instruments, which he found to be an excellent substitute. The natives of these islands, however, have a different method of shaving their beards, which operation they perform with two shells; one of which they place under a part of the beard, and with the other, ap-
plied

plie
they
tedic
to p
sailo
the r
on b
Ca
the if
termi
return
still m
26th,
island,
bay, th
the fou
looner
lution,
statione
tenant C
look for
west sid
of confi
measuri
bottom
and a ha
and they
than half
Tanga
mount ra
approach
on board
ay, in w
water, w
Lefoog

* Tanga
ing.

plied above, they scrape off that part: in this manner they can shave very close, though the process is rather tedious. There are among them some men who seem to profess this trade: for it was as common for our sailors to go ashore to have their beards scraped off after the mode of Hapace, as it was for their chiefs to come on board to be shaved by our barbers.

Captain Cook finding that little or nothing of what the island produced was now brought to the ships, determined to change his station, and to wait Feenou's return in some other anchoring place, where we might still meet with refreshments. We accordingly on the 26th, made sail to the southward along the reef of the island, and having passed several shoals, hauled into a bay, that lies between the north end of Hoolaiva, and the south of Lefooga, and there anchored. We had no sooner cast anchor, than Mr Bligh, Master of the Resolution, was sent to sound the bay where we were now stationed; and Captain Cook accompanied by Lieutenant Gore, landed on the southern part of Lefooga, to look for fresh water, and examine the country. On the west side of the island, they observed an artificial mount of considerable antiquity, about forty feet high, and measuring fifty feet in the diameter of its summit. At the bottom of this mount was a stone fourteen feet high, two and a half thick, and four broad, hewn out of coral rock; and they were informed by the islanders, that not more than half its length was seen above ground. They called it *Tangata Areekee**; and said it had been set up, and the mount raised, in memory of one of their kings. On the approach of night, the Captain and Mr Gore returned on board, and Mr Bligh came back from sounding the bay, in which he found from fourteen to twenty fathoms water, with a bottom principally of sand.

Lefooga and Hoolaiva are separated from each other by

* *Tangata*, in the language of these people, is man; *Areekee*,

by a reef of coral rocks, dry at low water. Some of our gentlemen, who landed in the last mentioned island, found not the smallest mark of cultivation, or habitation, upon it, except a single hut, in which a man employed to catch fish and turtle resided. It is remarkable that it should remain in this desolate condition, since it communicates so immediately with Lefooga, which is so well cultivated. The west side of it has a bending, where there seems to be good anchorage; and the east side has a reef, as well as Lefooga. Uninhabited as Hoolaiva is, an artificial mount has been raised upon it, equal in height to some of the surrounding trees.

On Tuesday the 27th, at break of day, the Commodore made the signal to weigh; and as he intended to attempt, in his way to Tongataboo, a passage to Annamooka, by the S. W. among the intermediate isles, he sent Mr Bligh in a boat to sound before the ships. But before we got under sail, the wind became so variable and unsettled, as to render it unsafe to attempt a passage with which we were so little acquainted: we therefore lay fast, and made signal for the Master to return. He and the Master of the Discovery were afterwards sent each in a boat, to examine the channels. Toward noon, a large sailing canoe came under our stern, in which was a person named Poulaho, or Futtasaihe, both; who was said, by the natives then on board, to be king of Tongataboo, Annamooka, Hapae, and all the neighbouring islands. We were surprised to find a stranger dignified with this title, which we had been taught to believe appertained to another: but they persisted in their assertions, that the supreme dignity belonged to Poulaho; and now for the first time acknowledged, that Feenou was not the king, but a subordinate chief, though of great power. Poulaho was now invited by the Captain on board, where he was not an unwelcome guest, as he brought with him two fat hogs way of present. This great personage, though not very tall, was extremely unwieldy, and almost shapeless by corpulence. He appeared to be about forty; his

ome of our
ed island,
habitation,
employed
able that it
nce it com-
ch is so well
ling, where
east side has
Hoolaiva is,
it, equal in

he Commo-
intended to
ge to Anna-
iate isles, he
ships. But
e so variable
npt a passag-
we therefor
return. He
erwards sent
s. Toward
our stern, i
Futtasaihe, c
n board, to b
ee, and all t
ised to find
we had be
but they pe
ne dignity b
t time ackno
ut a subordin
was now invi
not an unw
two fat hogs
though not v
st shapeless w
t forty; his

was straight, and his features considerably different from those of the majority of his people. We found him to be a man of gravity and good sense. He viewed the ship, and the various new objects, with particular attention; and asked many pertinent questions. When he had gratified his curiosity in looking at the cattle, and other novelties, he was requested to walk down into the cabin; to which some of his retinue objected, saying, that, if he should go down thither, it would doubtless happen that people would walk over his head; a circumstance that could not be permitted. Though the Captain offered to obviate this objection, by ordering that no one should presume to walk over the cabin, Poulaho waved all ceremony, and went down without any previous stipulation. He now appeared to be no less solicitous than his people were, to convince us that he was sovereign, and not Feenou. He sat down to dinner with us, but eat and drank very little; and afterwards desired our Commadore to accompany him on shore. Omai was asked to be one of the party; but he was too faithfully attached to Feenou, to shew much respect to his competitor, and therefore declined the invitation. Captain Cook attended the chief in his own boat, having first made him such presents as exceeded his expectations; in return for which, Poulaho ordered two more hogs to be sent on board. The chief was then carried out of the boat, by his own subjects, on a board resembling a hand barrow; and immediately seated himself in a small house near the shore. He placed the Captain at his side; and his attendants formed a semi-circle before them, on the outside of the house. An old woman sat close to the chief, with a kind of fan in her hand, to prevent his being incommoded by the flies. The various articles which his people had procured by trading on board the ships, being now displayed before him, he attentively looked over them all, inquired what they had given in exchange, and, at length, ordered every thing to be returned to the respective owners, except a glass-bowl, which he reserved for himself.

himself. Those who brought these things to him, first squatted themselves down before him, then deposited their purchases, and instantly rose and retired. They observed the same ceremony in taking them away; and not one of them presumed to speak to him standing. His attendants, just before they left him, paid him obeisance, by bowing their heads down to the sole of his foot, and touching it with the upper and under side of the fingers of each hand. Captain Cook was charmed with the decorum that was maintained on this occasion, having scarce seen the like any where, even among more civilized nations.

When the Captain arrived on board, he found the Master returned from his expedition, who informed him, that, as far as he had proceeded, there was a passage for the ships, and tolerable anchorage; but that, towards the S. and S. E. he observed numerous shoals, breakers, and small isles. In consequence of this report, we relinquished all thoughts of a passage that way; and being resolved to return to Annamooka by the same route which we had so lately experienced to be a safe one, we should have sailed the next morning, which was the 28th, if the wind had not been very unsettled. Poulaho came early on board, bringing a red feathered cap as a present to Captain Cook. These caps were greatly sought after by us, as we knew they would be highly valued at Otaheite: but not one was ever brought for sale, though very large prices were offered; nor could a person in either ship make himself the proprietor of one, except the two Captains and Omai. They are composed of the tail feathers of the tropic bird, intermixed with the red feathers of the parroquet; and are made in such a manner, as to tie on the forehead without any crown, and have the form of a semi-circle, whose radius is eighteen or twenty inches. But the best idea of them will be conveyed by Mr Webber's representation of Poulaho, ornamented with one of these caps or bonnets. The chief left the ship in the evening;

but

but his brother whose name also was Futtasaihe, and some of his attendants, remained all night on board.

On the 29th at day break, we weighed with a fine breeze at E. N. E. and made sail to the westward, followed by several sailing canoes, in one of which was Poulaho the king, who, getting on board the Resolution, enquired for his brother, and the others who had continued with us all night. We now found that they had staid without his permission, for he gave them such a reprimand as brought tears from their eyes: however, he was soon reconciled to their making a longer stay; for, on his departure from the ship, he left his brother, and five attendants, on board. We were also honoured with the company of a chief named Tooboueitoa, just then arrived from Tongataboo; who, as soon as he came, sent away his canoe, declaring, that he, and five others who came with him, would sleep on board; so that Captain Cook now had his cabin filled with visitors. This inconvenience he the more willingly endured, as they brought with them plenty of provisions as presents to him, for which they met with suitable returns.

In the afternoon the easterly wind was succeeded by a fresh breeze at S. S. E. Our course being now S. S. W. we were obliged to ply to windward, and barely stretched the northern side of Footooha by eight o'clock in the evening. The next day we plied up to Lofanga, and got soundings, under the lee or N. W. side, in forty fathoms water; but the bottom being rocky, and a chain of breakers lying to leeward, we stretched away for Kotoo, expecting to find better anchorage there. It was dark before we reached that island, where finding no convenient place to anchor in, we passed the night in making short boards. On the 31st, at break of day, we stood for the channel which is between Kotoo, and the reef of rocks lying to the westward of it; but, on our approach, we found the wind insufficient to lead us through. We therefore bore up on the outside of the reef, and stretched to the S. W. till near twelve o'clock, when, perceiving that we made no progress to windward,

and being apprehensive of losing the islands while we had so many of the natives on board, we tacked and stood back, and spent the night between Footooha and Kotoo. The wind now blew fresh, with squalls and rain; and, during the night, the Resolution, by a small change of the wind, fetching too far to the windward, was very near running full upon a low sandy isle, named Pootoo Pootooa, encompassed with breakers. Our people having fortunately been just ordered upon deck, to put the ship about, and most of them being at their respective stations, the necessary movements were performed with judgment and alertness; and this alone preserved us from destruction. The Discovery, being astern, incurred no danger.

This narrow escape so alarmed the natives who were on board, that they were eagerly desirous of getting ashore: accordingly, on the return of day light, a boat was hoisted out, and the officer who commanded her was ordered, after landing them at Kotoo, to sound for anchorage along the reef that projects from that island. During the absence of the boat, we endeavoured to turn the ships through the channel between the reef of Kotoo and the sandy isle; but meeting with a strong current against us, we were obliged to desist, and cast anchor in fifty fathoms water, the sandy isle bearing E. by N. about the distance of one mile. Here we remained till the 4th of June, being frequently visited by the king, Tooboueitoa, and by people who came from the neighbouring islands to traffic with us. Mr Bligh was, in the mean time, dispatched to sound the channels between the islands situate to the eastward; and Captain Cook himself landed on Kotoo, to take a survey of it. The island, on account of the coral reefs that environ it, is scarcely accessible by boats. Its N. W. end is low; but it rises suddenly in the middle, and terminates at the E. end in reddish clayey cliffs. It produces the same fruits and roots with the adjacent islands, and is tolerably cultivated, though thinly inhabited. It is about ten miles in length. While the Commodore was walk-

all over it, our people were occupied in cutting grass for the cattle; and we planted some melon seeds. On our return to the boat, we passed by some ponds of dirty brackish water, and saw a burying place, which was considerably neater than those of Hapae.

We weighed in the morning of the 4th, and, with a fresh gale at E. S. E. made sail towards Annamooka, where we anchored the next morning, nearly in the same station which we had so lately occupied. Captain Cook soon after went on shore, and found the islanders very busy in their plantations, digging up yams for traffic. In the course of the day, about two hundred of them assembled on the beach, and traded with great eagerness. It appeared, that they had been very diligent, during our absence, in cultivating; for we now observed several large plantain fields, in places which, in our late visit, we had seen lying waste. The yams were now in the highest perfection; and we obtained a good quantity of them, in exchange for iron. Before the Captain returned on board, he visited the several places where he had sown melon and cucumber seeds; but found, to his great regret, that most of them had been destroyed by vermin; though some pine-apple plants, which he had also left, were in a thriving condition.

On Friday the 6th, about noon, Feenou arrived from Vavaoo, and informed us, that several canoes, laden with hogs and other provisions, had sailed with him from that island, but had been lost in the late tempestuous weather, and every person on board of them had perished. This melancholy tale did not gain much credit with us, as we were by this time sufficiently acquainted with the character of the relater. The truth perhaps was, that he had been unable to procure at Vavaoo the expected supplies; or, if he obtained any there, that he had left them at Hapae, which lay in his way back, and where he must have heard that Pouaho had come to visit us; who, therefore, he knew would,

would, as his superior, reap all the merit and reward of procuring these supplies, without having had any participation of the trouble. The invention, however, of this loss at sea was not ill imagined; for we had lately had very stormy weather. On the succeeding morning, Poulaho, and some other chiefs, arrived; at which time Captain Cook happened to be ashore with Feenou, who now appeared to be sensible of the impropriety of his conduct, in arrogating a character to which he had no just claim; for he not only acknowledged Poulaho as sovereign of Tongataboo and the adjacent isles, but affected to insist much on it. The Captain left him, and went to pay a visit to the king, whom he found sitting with a few of the natives before him; but great numbers hastening to pay their respects to him, the circle increased very fast. When Feenou approached, he placed himself among the rest that sat before Poulaho, as attendants on his majesty. He at first seemed to be somewhat confused and abashed; but soon recovered from his agitation. Some conversation passed between these two chiefs, who went on board with the Captain to dinner; but only Poulaho sat at table. Feenou, after having made his obeisance in the usual mode, by saluting the foot of his sovereign with his head and hands, retired from the cabin; and it now appeared, that he could neither eat nor drink in the king's presence.

On the 8th, we weighed anchor, and steered for Tongataboo, with a gentle breeze at N. E. We were accompanied by fourteen or fifteen sailing vessels belonging to the islanders, every one of which out-ran the ships. The royal canoe was distinguished from the rest by a small bundle of grass, of a red colour, fastened to the end of a pole, and fixed in the stern of the canoe in the same manner as our ensign staffs. At five in the afternoon we descried two small islands, at the distance of four leagues to the westward; one was called Hoonga Hapae, and the other Hoonga Tonga. They are situated of 20 d. 36 m. S. about ten leagues from the western

reward of
any par-
wever, of
had lately
ng morn-
rived; at
shore with
he impro-
aracter to
acknow-
o and the
it. The
the king,
ves before
ir respects
en Feenou
est that sat
y. He at
shed; but
nversation
on board
who sat at
nce in the
eign with
and it now
nk in the
d for Ton-
e were ac-
els belong-
n the ships.
e rest by a
ned to the
noe in the
the after-
distance of
d Hoonga
They are
s from the
western

Western point of Annamooka. According to the information of two islanders who had been sent on board by Feenou as pilots, only five men resided on Hoonga Hapae, and Hoonga Tonga had no inhabitants. We still proceeded on a S. W. course, and on the 9th saw several little islands, beyond which Eooa and Tongataboo appeared. We had at this time twenty-five fathoms water, the bottom consisting of broken coral and sand; and the depth gradually decreased, as we approached the above-mentioned small isles. Steering by the direction of our pilots, for the widest space between those isles, we were insensibly drawn upon a large flat, on which lay innumerable rocks of coral, below the surface of the sea. Notwithstanding our utmost care and attention to avoid these rocks, we were unable to prevent the ship from striking on one of them: nor did the Discovery, though behind us, keep clear of them. It fortunately happened that neither of the ships stuck fast, nor sustained any damage. We still continued our course, and the moment we found a place where we could anchor with any degree of safety we came to; and the Masters were dispatched with the boats to sound. Soon after we had cast anchor, several of the natives of Tongataboo came to us in their canoes; and they, as well as our pilots, assured us, that we should meet with deep water further in, free from rocks. Their intelligence was true; for about four o'clock the boats made a signal of having found good anchoring ground. We therefore weighed, and stood in till dark, when we anchored in nine fathoms water, with a clear sandy bottom. During the night we had some rain; at early in the morning, the wind becoming southerly, and bringing on fair weather, we weighed again, and worked towards the shore of Tongataboo. While we were plying up to the harbour, the king continued sailing round us in his canoe; and at the same time there was a great number of small canoes about the ships. Two of these not getting out of the way of his royal

royal vessel, he ran quite over them with the greatest unconcern. Among those who came on board the Resolution, was Otago, who had been so useful to Captain Cook when he visited Tongataboo in his last voyage; and one Toobou, who had at that time attached himself to Captain Furneaux. Each of them brought some yams and a hog, in testimony of friendship; for which they received a suitable return.

We arrived at our intended station about two o'clock in the afternoon of the 10th of June. It was a very convenient place, formed by the shore of Tongataboo on the S. E. and two little isles on the E. N. E. Here both our ships anchored over a sandy bottom, where the depth of water was ten fathoms. Our distance from the shore exceeded a quarter of a mile.

Favourable

W

compar
found t
conduc
with an
that it w
island.
large cir
teated th
plant be
plit into
exes, w
of their
and a qu
ided in
ome of
ained

Vol. II.

the greatest
and the Re-
Captain
voyage;
shed him-
ought some
for which

two o'clock
was a very
Tongataboo
E. Here
m, where
distance from

Favourable Reception at Tongataboo—Distribution of Pork, Tams, and Kava among the King's Attendants—The Ships supplied with Water---The Observatory erected—The Natives flock to our People from all Quarters—Excursion of our Captains to see Mareewagee—Their Disappointment—Description of the Village where the Chiefs reside---Interviews with Mareewagee and Toubou---Presents from the King's Son—A curious Work of Art---Process of Manufacturing Cloth---A grand Haiva given by Mareewagee---Exhibition of Fire-works---Wrestling—Boxing---Presents of Animals to the Chiefs---Poulaho, Feenou, &c. confined—The King's Present and Haiva.

WE had not been long at anchor off Tongataboo, when Captain Cook landed on the island, accompanied by some of the officers and Omai. They found the king waiting for them on the beach, who conducted them to a small neat house near the woods, with an extensive area before it, and told the Captain, that it was at his service during his continuance in the island. Before they had been long in the house, a large circle of the natives assembled before them, and seated themselves upon the area. A root of the kava plant being brought to the king, he commanded it to be split into pieces, and distributed to several people of both sexes, who began to chew it, and soon prepared a bowl of their favourite liquor. Mean while, a baked hog, and a quantity of baked yams, were produced, and divided into ten portions. These shares were given to some of those who were present, except one, which remained undisposed of, and which was probably reserv-

Favourable

ed for the king himself. The liquor was next served out ; and the first cup being brought to his majesty, he ordered it to be given to a person who sat near him : the second was also brought to him, which he kept : the third was given to Captain Cook ; but their mode of preparing the liquor having given him a distate for it, it was brought to Omai. The remainder of it was distributed to the different people ; and one of the cups being carried to Poulaho's brother, he retired with this, and with his share of the provisions. Some others also withdrew from the circle with their portions, because they could neither eat nor drink in his majesty's presence : but there were others of an inferior rank, of both sexes, who both eat and drank before him. Soon afterwards the greater part of them went away, carrying with them what they had not eat of their share of the feast. It is worthy of remark, that the servants who distributed the meat and the kava, delivered it sitting not only to the king, but to the others.

Captain Cook, before he returned on board, went in search of a watering place, and was conducted to some ponds, in one of which the water was tolerable, but it was at some distance inland. Being informed that the small island of Pangimodoo, near which the ships were stationed, could better supply this important article, he went over to it the next morning, and found there a pool containing fresher water than any he had met with among these islands. This pool being extremely dirty, he caused it to be cleaned ; and here it was that we filled our water casks. The same morning a tent was pitched near the house which the king had assigned for our use. The horses, cattle, and sheep, were then landed, and a party of marines stationed there as a guard. The observatory was set up at an inconsiderable distance from the other tent ; and Mr King took up his residence on shore, to direct the observations, and superintend all other necessary business. A party was occupied in cutting wood for fuel, and planks for the ships ; and the gunners were appointed to conduct the traffic with

the inhabitants, who flocked from all parts of the island with hogs, yams, cocoa nuts, and other articles, in so much that our land station resembled a fair, and our ships were remarkably crowded with visitants. Feenou residing in our neighbourhood, we had daily proofs of his opulence and generosity, by the continuance of his valuable donations. Poulaho was equally attentive to us in this respect, as scarcely a day passed without his favouring us with considerable presents. We were now informed that a person of the name of Mareewagee was of very high rank in the island, and was treated with great reverence; nay, if our interpreter Omai did not misunderstand his informers, that he was superior to Poulaho himself; but that, being advanced in years, he lived in retirement, and therefore was not inclined to pay us a visit. This intelligence exciting the curiosity of Captain Cook, he signified to Poulaho his intention of waiting upon Mareewagee; and the king having agreed to accompany him, they set out the next morning in the pinnace, Captain Clerke joining them in one of his own boats. They proceeded to the eastward of the little isles which form the harbour, and then, turning towards the S. entered a spacious bay, up which they rowed about three miles, and landed amidst a great concourse of people, who received them with shouts and acclamations. The crowd instantly separated, that Poulaho might pass, who took our gentlemen into a small enclosure, and changed the piece of cloth he wore, for a new piece, very neatly folded: an old woman assisted in dressing him, and put a large mat over his north. Being now asked where Mareewagee was, he said, to the great surprize of the gentlemen, that he was gone down to the ships. However, he requested them to accompany him to a malae, or house of public resort; and when they came to a large area before it, he seated himself in the path, while they, at his desire, walked up to the house, and sat down in the front. After waiting a little while, they repeated their enquiries, by the medium of Omai, whether they were to be

introduced to Mareewagee? But receiving no satisfactory answer, and being inclined to suspect that the aged chief was purposely concealed from them, they returned to their boats much piqued at their disappointment. It afterwards appeared, that Mareewagee had not been there; and that, in this affair, some gross mistakes had been made, Omai either having been misinformed, or having misunderstood what was told him concerning the old chief.

The place our gentlemen went to was a very pleasant village, delightfully situated on the banks of the bay or inlet, where most of the principal persons of the island reside. Each of these has his house in the midst of a small plantation, with a kind of out-houses, and offices for servants. These plantations are neatly fenced round and in general have only one entrance, which is by a door fastened on the inside with a prop of wood. Between each plantation there are public roads and narrow lanes. A considerable part of some of these enclosures is laid out in grass-plots, and planted with such things as seem less adapted for use than for ornament. In such other plantations as were not the residence of persons of high rank, every article of the vegetable produce of the island was in great plenty. Near the public roads are some large houses, with spacious grass-plots before them, which were said to belong to the king, and are probably the places where their public meetings were held.

On Friday the 13th, about twelve o'clock, Mareewagee came within a small distance of our post on the shore, attended by a great number of people of all ranks. In the course of the afternoon the two Captains, and one of our gentlemen, accompanied by Feenou, went ashore to visit him. They found a person sitting under a tree with a piece of cloth, about forty yards long, spread before him, round which numbers of people were seated. They imagined that this was the great personage, but were undeceived by Feenou, who informed them, that another, who was sitting on a piece of mat, was Ma

wagee. To him they were introduced by Feenou; and he received them very graciously, and desired them to sit down by him. The chief who sat under the tree, was named Toobou, whom we shall for the future call Old Toobou, to distinguish him from his namesake, who has been already mentioned as Capt. Furneaux's friend. Both he and Mareewagee were venerable in their appearance. The latter was slender in his person, and seemed to be near seventy years of age. Old Toobou was somewhat corpulent, and almost blind from a disorder in his eyes: he was younger than Mareewagee. Captain Cook, not expecting on this occasion to meet with two chiefs, had brought on shore a present for one only: this, therefore, he was obliged to divide between them; but as it happened to be considerable, both of them appeared to be satisfied. Our party now entertained them about an hour with the performance of two French horns and a drum; but the firing off a pistol that Captain Clerke had in his pocket, seemed to please them most. Before our gentlemen took their leave of the two chiefs, the large piece of cloth was rolled up, and presented to Captain Cook, together with a few cocoa nuts.

The next morning, Old Toobou came on board to return the Commodore's visit: he also visited Captain Clerke; and if our former present was not sufficiently considerable, the deficiency was now supplied. In the mean time, Mareewagee went to see our people who were stationed on shore; and Mr King shewed him whatever we had there. He was struck with admiration at the sight of the cattle; and the cross-cut saw rivetted his attention. Towards noon, Poulaho came on board, bringing with him his son, who was about twelve years of age. He dined with Captain Cook; but the son, though present, was not permitted to sit down with him. The Captain found it very convenient to have him for his guest; for, whenever he was present, (which was frequently the case) every other native was excluded from the table, and few of them would continue

tinue in the cabin: whereas, if neither he nor Feenou were on board, the chiefs of inferior rank were very importunate to be of the dining party, or to be admitted at that time into the cabin, which became consequently very much crowded. The king was soon reconciled to our cookery, and was fond of our wine. He now resided at the *malae* near our tent, where he this evening entertained our people with a dance, in which he himself, though so corpulent and unwieldy, engaged.

On the 15th Captain Cook received a message from Old Toobou, importing, that he was desirous of seeing him on shore. He and Omai accordingly waited on that chief, whom they found sitting, like one of the ancient patriarchs, under the shade of a tree, with a large piece of cloth, the manufacture of the island, spread out before him. He desired them to place themselves by him; after which he told Omai, that the cloth, with some cocoa nuts, and red feathers, constituted his present to Capt. Cook. The latter thanked him for the donation, and requested him to go on board with him. Omai, being sent for by Poulaho, now left the Captain, who was informed by Feenou, that young Fattafaihe, the king's son, desired to see him. He immediately obeyed the summons, and found the young prince and Omai seated under a canopy of fine cloth, with a piece of a coarser kind, seventy-six yards long, and seven and a half broad, spread before them and under them. On one side was a quantity of cocoa nuts; and, on the other, a large board. A multitude of people sat round the cloth; and among them was Mareewagee, with other persons of rank. The Captain was requested to seat himself by the prince; and then Omai informed him, that he had been instructed by Poulaho to tell him, that as his Majesty and the Captain were friends, he hoped that his son Fattafaihe might be comprehended in this friendship; and that the Captain, as a testimony of his consent, would accept of the prince's present. Captain Cook readily agreed to this proposal, and invited them all to dine with him on board. Accordingly, the young prince, Old Toobou,

Feenou very im-
mitted at
quently
nciled to
now re-
evening
he him-
ed.
ge from
of seeing
waited on
of the an-
th a large
pread out
selves by
oth, with
his present
e donation,
Omai, be-
n, who was
the king's
ed the sum-
mai seated
of a coarser
half broad,
he side was
large boar.
and among
s of rank.
the prince;
ad been in-
Majesty and
son Fatta-
dship; and
sent, would
ook readily
o dine with
prince, Old
Toobou,

Toobou, Mareewagee, three or four subordinate chiefs, and two old ladies of high rank, accompanied the Commodore to the ship. Mareewagee was dressed in a new piece of cloth, with six patches of red feathers on the skirts of it. This dress was probably made on purpose for this visit; for, as soon as he arrived on board, he put it off, and presented it to Captain Cook. When dinner was served up, not one of them would even sit down, or eat a morsel of any thing, as they were all *taboo*, they said; which word, though it has a very comprehensive meaning, generally signifies that a thing is prohibited. Why they were thus restrained at present, was not accounted for. Having made presents to them all, and gratified their curiosity by shewing them every part of the ship, the Captain conducted them ashore. When the boat had reached the land, Feenou and several others immediately stepped out; and the young prince following them, was called back by Mareewagee, who now paid the heir apparent the same obeisance which the king was accustomed to receive; and when Old Toobou, and one of the old ladies, had honoured him with the same marks of respect, he was suffered to land. After this ceremony, the old people stepped out of the boat into a canoe, which was waiting to convey them to their place of residence. Captain Cook was pleased at being present on this occasion, as he was thus furnished with the most convincing proofs of the supreme dignity of Poulaho and his son. By this time, indeed, he had gained some certain information with regard to the relative situation of several of the chiefs. He now knew, that Old Toobou and Mareewagee were brothers. Both of them were men of very considerable property, and in high estimation with the people: Mareewagee, in particular, had obtained the honourable appellation of *Motooa Tonga*, which implies, father of Tonga, or of his country. We also now understood, that he was the king's father-in-law, Poulaho having espoused one of his daughters, by whom he had young Fattafaihe; so that Mareewagee was grandfather to the prince. As for

for Feenou, he was one of the sons of Mareewagee, and Toobooeitoa was another.

Captain Cook on his landing, found Poulaho in the house adjoining to our tent, who immediately made him a present of a quantity of yams and a hog. Towards evening a number of the islanders came, and having seated themselves in a circle, sung in concert with the music of bamboo drums, which were placed in the centre. Three of them were long ones, and two were short. With these they struck the ground end-wise. There were two others that lay side by side on the ground, one of which was partly split: on these a person continued beating with two sticks. They sung three songs while the Captain staid; and the entertainment lasted, after he left them, till ten o'clock. They burned the leaves of the wharra palm for a light.

In the mean time, Mr Anderson, with several others, made an excursion into the country, which furnished him with observations to the following effect. Westward of the tent, the country for about two miles is entirely uncultivated, though covered with trees and bushes growing naturally with the greatest vigour. Beyond this a pretty large plain extends itself, on which are cocoa trees, and some small plantations. Near the creek, which runs west of the tent, the land is perfectly flat, and partly overflowed every tide by the sea. When the water retires, the surface is seen to consist of coral rock interspersed with holes of yellowish mud; and near the edges, where it is rather more firm, are various numbers of little openings, whence issue innumerable small crabs, which swarm upon the spot, but are so very nimble, that, when approached, they instantaneously disappear, and baffle all the dexterity of the natives who endeavour to catch them. At this place is a work of art, which testifies some degree of ingenuity and perseverance: on one side is a narrow causeway, which gradually increasing in breadth, rises with a gentle ascent to the height of ten feet, where its breadth is five paces, the whole length being about seventy-four paces. A

gee, and
o in the
ly made
g. To-
and hav-
cert with
ced in the
two were
end-wife.
de on the
nese a per-
They sung
the enter-
en o'clock.
for a light.
veral others,
h furnished
fect. West-
o miles is en-
es and bushes
ur. Beyond
on which are
Near the
d is perfectly
e sea. When
onstist of cora
h mud; and
firm, are val
e innumerabl
out are so ver
astantaneousl
e natives wh
is a work
ity and perf
eway, which
a gentle asce
h is five paces.
r paces. A

acent to this is a kind of circus, thirty paces in diameter, about one or two feet higher than the causeway that joins it; and in the middle of this circus some trees are planted. On the opposite side, another causeway descends, which is partly in ruins, and not above forty paces in length. The whole is built of large coral stones, with earth on the surface, which is overgrown with shrubs and low trees. From its decaying in several places, it is probably of some antiquity. It seems to be of no service at present, whatever may have been its use in former times. All the intelligence concerning it, that Mr Anderson could procure from the natives, was, that it was called *Etchee*, and belonged to the king.

In the morning of the 16th, Captain Cook and Mr Gore took a walk into the country; in the course of which they met with an opportunity of seeing the whole process of making cloth, the principal manufacture of these islands, as well as of many others in the South Sea. An account of this operation, as performed here, may not improperly be subjoined. The manufacturers, who are of the female sex, take the slender stalks or trunks of the paper mulberry, which rarely grows more than seven feet in height, and about the thickness of four fingers. From these stalks they strip the bark, and scrape off the exterior rind; after which the bark is rolled up, and macerated for some time in water; it is then beaten with a square instrument of wood, full of coarse grooves, but sometimes with a plain one. The operation is often repeated by another person; or the bark is folded several times, and beat longer, which is probably intended to close rather than divide its texture. It is then spread out to dry; the pieces being from four to six or seven feet in length, and about half as broad. These pieces are joined by smearing part of them with the glutinous juice of a berry called *tooo*; and, after being thus lengthened, they are placed over a large piece of wood, with a sort of stamp, composed of a fibrous substance, laid beneath them. The manufacturers then take a bit of cloth, and having dipped it in a juice ex-

pressed from the bark of a tree called *kokka*, rub it briskly over the piece that is making. This leaves upon the surface a dry gloss, and a dull brown colour; and the stamp makes, at the same time a slight impression. Thus they proceed, joining and staining by degrees, till a piece of cloth, of the requisite length and breadth, is produced. They generally leave a border, about a foot broad, at the sides, and rather longer at the ends, unstained. If any parts of the original pieces have holes, or are too thin, they glue spare bits upon them, till their thickness equals that of the rest. Whenever they are desirous of producing a black colour, they mix the juice of the *kokka* with the foot procured from an oily nut called *doedooe*. They assert, that the black cloth, which is usually most glazed, makes a cold dress; but the other a warm one.

The Commodore and Mr Gore meeting with Feenou, on their return from their excursion, took him, and another chief, on board to dinner; which being served up, neither of them would eat a morsel, alledging that they were *taboo avy*; but when they found, that, in dressing a pig and some yams, no *avy* (water) had been made use of, they both sat down, and eat very heartily, and drank some wine, on being assured that there was no water in it. From this circumstance we inferred, that they were at this time, for some particular reason, forbidden to use water; or that, perhaps, they did not like the water we then used, it being taken out of one of the places where the islanders bathed.

The following day, which was the 17th, was fixed upon by Mareewagee for giving a grand *haiva*, or entertainment, at which we were all invited to attend. Before the temporary hut of this chief, near our landing station, a large space had been cleared for that purpose. In the morning, vast numbers of the natives came in from the country, every one of whom bore on his shoulder a long pole, at each end of which a yam was suspended. These poles and yams being deposited on each side of the open space, or area, formed two large
heap

heaps, decorated with small fish of different kinds. They were Mareewagee's present to the Captains Cook and Clerke. The necessary preparations being made, the islanders began, about eleven o'clock, to exhibit various dances, which they call *mai*. The band of music at first consisted of seventy men as a chorus, amidst whom were placed three instruments that we called drums, though they did not much resemble them. They are cylindrical pieces of wood, from three to four feet in length, some of them twice as thick as a man of ordinary size, and some not so large. They are entirely hollow, but close at each end, and open only by a chink, about the breadth of three inches, running nearly the whole length of the drums. By this opening, the rest of the wood is hollowed; which must be an operation of some difficulty. This instrument is called by the natives *nassa*; and, having the chink turned towards them, they sit and beat vigorously upon it, with two cylindrical pieces of wood, as thick as the wrist, and about a foot in length; by which means a rude, but loud and powerful sound, is produced. They occasionally vary the strength and rate of their beating; and likewise change the tones, by beating towards the end, or in the middle of the instrument.

There were four ranks, of twenty-four men each, in the first dance. These held in their hands a small thin wooden instrument, above two feet in length, resembling in its shape an oblong paddle. With these instruments, which are called *pagge*, they made many different motions; such as pointing them towards the ground on one side, and inclining their bodies that way at the same instant; then shifting them to the opposite side in the same manner; passing them with great quickness from one hand to the other, and twirling them about with remarkable dexterity; with various other manœuvres. Their motions, which were slow at first, quickened as the drums beat faster; and they repeated sentences the whole time in a musical tone, which were answered by the chorus; but, in a short time, they all joined, and ended

ended with a shout. After a cessation of a few minutes, they began as before, and continued with short intervals upwards of a quarter of an hour; and then the rear rank dividing, moved slowly round each end, met in the front, and formed the first rank; during which time the whole number continued to recite sentences. The other ranks successively did the same, till that which was the foremost became the rear; and this evolution did not cease till the last rank regained its former situation. A much quicker dance, though slow at first, was then begun, and they sung for ten minutes, when the whole body, in a two-fold division, retreated, and then advanced, forming a kind of circular figure, which concluded the dance; the chorus retiring, and the drums being removed at the same time.

In the second dance, there were forty men as a chorus, with only two drums; and the dancers (or rather actors) consisted of two ranks, the foremost of which had seventeen persons, and the other fifteen. Teenou was in the middle of the first rank, which is considered on these occasions as the principal place. They danced and repeated sentences with very short intervals, for half an hour, some times slowly, and at other times quickly, with the highest degree of exactness and regularity. Towards the close, the rear-rank divided, came round, and occupied the place of the front, which afterwards resumed its pristine situation. This dance being finished, the drums were taken away, and the chorus retired, as in the preceding dance.

Three very large drums were now brought in, and seventy men served as a chorus to the third dance. This consisted of two ranks, of sixteen men each, having young Toobou at their head, who was splendidly ornamented with a kind of garment covered with red feathers. These persons danced, sung, and twirled the pagge, so as to meet with the continual applauses of the spectators, who were particularly pleased with a motion in which they held the face aside, as if ashamed, with the pagge before it. The hindmost rank closed before

minutes, inter-
 en the
 d, met
 which
 tences.
 t which
 volution
 er situa-
 irst, was
 when the
 and then
 hich con-
 ne drums
 a chorus,
 or rather
 of which
 . Feenou
 considered
 hey danced
 ervals, for
 other times
 fs and regu-
 vided, came
 , which af-
 is dance be-
 and the cho-
 ught in, and
 third dance
 n each, hav-
 as splendid
 red with re-
 d twirled th
 plauses of th
 with a motio
 hamed, wit
 closed before
 the front one, which soon after resumed its place, as in
 the first and second dances : then beginning again, they
 formed a triple row, divided, retreated to each end of
 the area, and left the ground in a great measure clear.
 Two men rushing in at that instant, began to exercise
 the clubs which they make use of in battle. They first
 twirled them in their hands, and made circular strokes
 before them with great quickness, managing with such
 skill, that though they stood close to each other, they
 never interfered. They shifted the clubs, with un-
 common dexterity, from one hand to the other ; and
 after some time, kneeled down, and made various mo-
 tions, tossing up their clubs in the air, and catching them
 as they fell. They then retired as hastily as they had
 entered. They had pieces of white cloth about their
 heads, fastened at the crown with a wreath of foliage
 round their fore-heads : and that they might be free
 from all incumbrance, they had only a very small piece
 of cloth tied round the waist. A man, armed with a
 spear then rushed in, and put himself in a menacing
 attitude, as if he intended to strike with his weapon at
 one of the people in the crowd ; at the same time bend-
 ing the knee a little, and trembling as it were with fury.
 He continued in this position near a minute, and then
 moved to the other side, where, having stood in the
 same posture, he hastily retreated from the area. Du-
 ring all this time the dancers, who had divided them-
 selves into two parties, continued to repeat something
 lowly ; and they now came forward and joined again,
 concluding the dance with general applause. This
 dance was probably considered as a capital performance,
 as some of the principal people were engaged in it ; one
 the drums being beat by Futtasaihe, the king's bro-
 ther, another by Feenou, and the third by Mareewagee
 himself.
 In the fourth and last dance, there were forty men as
 a chorus, with two drums. The performers were six-
 teen men, arranged in three rows, having twenty-four in-
 strument. Before they commenced, we were entertained
 with

with a preliminary harangue, in which the whole number made responses to an individual speaker. They recited sentences alternately with the chorus, and made with the pagge many quick motions. They divided into two parties, with their backs to each other; formed again, shifted their ranks (as in the preceding dances) divided, and retreated, being succeeded by two men who exercised their clubs as before, after whom came two others; the dancers in the mean time repeating in their turns with the chorus: they then advanced, and terminated the dance.

These amusements continued from eleven o'clock till near three. The number of islanders who attended as spectators, together with those who were round the trading place at the tent, or straggling about, amounted to at least ten thousand, all within the compass of a quarter of a mile. If we had understood what was spoken in this entertainment, we might probably have gained much information with regard to the genius and customs of these people. Though the spectators constantly applauded the different motions, when we made, a considerable share of the pleasure they received seemed to arise from the sentimental part, or what the performers recited. However the mere acting part well deserved our notice, on account of the extensiveness of the plan, the variety of the motions, and the exact unity, ease, and gracefulness, with which they were performed.

In the evening we were entertained with the bonfire or night dances, on a large area before the temporary dwelling-place of Feenou. They continued three hours during which time about twelve of them were performed, nearly in the same manner as those at Hapa. In two of them, which were performed by women, a party of men came and formed a circle within the dance. In another, which consisted of twenty-four men, many motions that we had not before seen, were made with the hands, and met with great applause. The men

whole num-

. They re-
s, and made
they divided
ner; formed
ling dances)
y two men
whom came
repeating in
vanced, and

en o'clock til
o attended a
e round the
ut, amounte
compass of
d what wa
robably hav
ne genius an
pectators cor
, when we
they receive
t, or what th
ting part w
tenliveness
nd the exa
they were pe

ith the bom
the tempora
d three hour
em were p
ose at Hapa
by women
within the
our men, m
ere made w
e. The m

was once changed in the course of the evening; and in one of the dances, Feenou himself appeared at the head of fifty men: he was well dressed in linen, and some small pictures were hung round his neck.

Though the whole entertainment was conducted with better order than could reasonably have been expected, yet our utmost care and attention could not prevent our being plundered by the natives, in the most daring and insolent manner. There was scarcely any thing which they did not endeavour to steal. They once, in the middle of the day, attempted to take an anchor from off the *Discovery's* bows; but without effect. The only violence of which they were guilty, was the breaking the shoulder bone of one of our goats; in consequence of which she died soon after.

On Wednesday the 18th, an islander got out of a canoe into the *Resolution*, and stole a pewter basin; at being detected, he was pursued, and brought along-side the ship. Upon this occasion three old women in the canoe made loud lamentations over the prisoner, beating their faces and breasts with palms of their hands in a very violent manner, but without shedding a tear. In this mode of expressing sorrow occasions the mark which most of these people bear on the face, over their cheek bones; for the repeated blows inflicted by them on this part, abrade the skin, and cause some blood to flow out; and when the wound is recent it looks as if a hollow circle had been made by burning. On some occasions, they cut this part of the face with an instrument.

The same day Captain Cook bestowed some presents on a *Mareewagee*, in return for those which had been received from that chief the preceding day; and as the entertainments then exhibited called upon us to make an exhibition in return, he ordered all the marines to march through their exercise, on the spot where the late dances had been performed; and in the evening some *works* were also played off at the same place. The king,

king, the principal chiefs, and a vast multitude of people, were present. The platoon firing seemed to please them; but when they beheld our water-rockets, they were filled with astonishment and admiration. They did not much regard the fife and drum, or French horns, that were playing during the intervals. Poulaho sat behind every one, no person being permitted to sit behind him; and that his view might receive no obstruction, none sat immediately before him; but a lane, as it were, was made by the spectators from him, quite down to the space allotted for playing off the fire-works.

While the natives were in expectation of this evening exhibiton, they engaged, for the greatest part of the afternoon, in wrestling and boxing. When a person is desirous of wrestling, he gives a challenge by crossing the ground in a kind of measured pace, and clapping smartly on the elbow joint of one arm, which is bent, and sends forth a hollow sound. If no opponent steps forth, he returns and sits down; but if an antagonist appears, they meet with marks of the greatest good nature, generally smiling, and deliberately adjusting the piece of cloth that is fastened round the waist. They then lay hold of each other by this cloth, and he who succeeds in drawing his opponent to him, instantly endeavours to lift him upon his breast, and throws him on his back; and if he can turn round with him in that position two or three times before he throws him, he meets with great applause for his dexterity. If they are more equally matched, they quickly close, and attempt to throw each other by entwining their legs, or raising each other from the ground; in which struggles they display an extraordinary exertion of strength. When one of them is thrown, he immediately retires; while the conqueror sits down for near a minute, then rises and goes to the side from which he came, where the victory is proclaimed aloud. After sitting for a short time, he rises again, and challenges; and if several antagonists appear, he has the privilege of choosing wh

of them he pleases to engage with : he may also, if he should throw his competitor, challenge again, till he himself is vanquished ; and then the people on the opposite side chant the song of victory in favour of their champion. It frequently happens, that five or six rise from each side, and give challenges together ; so that it is not uncommon to see several sets engaged on the field at the same time. They preserve great temper in this exercise, and leave the spot without the least displeasure in their countenances. When they find that they are too equally matched, they desist by mutual consent ; and if it does not clearly appear which of them has had the advantage, both sides proclaim the victory, and then they engage again. But no one, who has been vanquished, is permitted to engage a second time with his conquerer.

Those who intend to box advance side-ways, changing the side at every pace, having one arm stretched out before, the other behind ; and holding in one hand a piece of cord, which they wrap closely about it, when they meet with an opponent. This is probably intended to prevent a dislocation of the hand or fingers. Their blows are dealt out with great quickness and activity, and are aimed principally at the head. They box equally well with either hand. One of their most dexterous blows is, to turn round on the heel, just after they have struck their adversary, and to give him another pretty violent blow with the other hand backward. In boxing matches, unless a person strikes his antagonist to the ground, they never sing the song of victory ; which shews, that this diversion is less approved among them than wrestling. Not only boys engage in both these exercises ; but it not unfrequently happens, that little girls box with great obstinacy. On all these occasions, they do not consider it as any disgrace to be overcome ; and the vanquished person sits down with as much indifference as if he had never engaged. Some of our people contended with them in both exercises, but were generally worsted.

Captain Cook intending to leave behind him some of the animals he had brought, thought proper to make a distribution of them before his departure. He therefore, on the 19th, assembled the chiefs before our house, and marked out his intended presents to them. To the king he gave a bull and a cow; to Mareewagee, a Cape ram, and two ewes; and to Feenou, a horie and a mare. He instructed Omai to tell them, that no such animals existed within several months sail of their island; that we had brought them, with a great degree of trouble and expence, for their use; that, therefore, they ought to be careful not to kill any of them till they had multiplied considerably; and finally, that they and their posterity ought to remember, that they had received them from the natives of Britain. Omai also explained to them their respective uses, as far as his limited knowledge in such points would permit him. The Captain had intended to give old Toobou two or three goats; but finding that chief indifferent about them, he added them to the share of Poulaho. It soon appeared, that some of the natives were dissatisfied with the allotment of our animals; for, the next morning, two of our turkey-cocks, and one kid, were missing. Our Commodore being determined to get them restored, seized on three canoes that were along-side the ships; then went on shore, and having found his majesty, his brother, Feenou, and some other chiefs, in our house, he immediately appointed a guard over them, and intimated to them, that they must continue under restraint, till not only the turkeys and the kid, but the other things of which we had been plundered at various times, were restored to us. They assured him, that the things in question should all be returned; and then sat down to drink *kava* with an appearance of unconcern. Soon afterwards, an axe, and an iron wedge, were brought to us. Some armed natives, in the mean time, began to assemble behind the house; but they dispersed when a part of our guard marched against them; and the chiefs, at the instigation

CAPTAIN COOK'S THIRD VOYAGE.

157

him some of
er to make a
le therefore,
r house, and
To the king
a Cape ram,
and a mare.
uch animals
island; that
e of trouble
, they ought
y had multi-
nd their pos-
ceived them
explained to
nited know-
The Captain
ee goats; but
e added them
that some of
ment of our
our turkey-
Commodore
ized on three
en went on
ther, Feenou
mediately ap-
to them, that
not only the
of which we
re restored to
in question
to drink *kava*
afterwards, at
to us. Some
assemble be-
a part of our
chiefs, at the
instigation

instigation of the Commodore, gave orders that no more should appear. When he invited them to dine with him on board, they readily consented. Some of them having afterwards objected to Poulaho's going, he rose up immediately, and declared that he would be the first man. Accordingly, the chiefs went on board with Captain Cook, and remained in the ship till near four o'clock. He then conducted them ashore; and, not long after, the kid and one of the turkeys were restored to him. On their promising that the other turkey should be brought back the next morning, he released both them and the canoes.

Captain Cook now walked out with Omai, with a view of observing how the natives in our neighbourhood fared; for this was the usual time of their meals. He found that they were, in general, ill supplied; a circumstance not to be wondered at, since most of the yams and other provisions that they brought with them, were disposed of to us; and they were unwilling to return to their own habitations, while they could procure any sustenance near our post. That particular part of the island, where our station was, being uncultivated, there were none of the natives who had a fixed residence within half a mile of us. Those therefore who were at our post, were obliged to live under trees and bushes, or in temporary sheds; and the cocoa trees were stripped of their branches, for the purpose of erecting huts for the chiefs.

Omai and the Captain, in the course of their walk, found six or seven women at supper together, two of whom were fed by the others. On their asking the reason of this circumstance, the women replied, *taboo*. Upon further enquiry it appeared, that one of them, about two months before, had washed the corpse of a chief, on which account she was not allowed to handle any food for five months; and that the other had performed the same office to the dead body of a person of inferior rank, and was therefore under a similar restriction, though not for so long a space.

On Sunday the 21st early in the morning, Poulaho came on board, to invite Captain Cook to an haiva or entertainment, which he designed to give the same day. He had already had his head besmeared with red pigments, in order to communicate a red colour to his hair, which was naturally of a dark brown. The Captain, after breakfast, attended him to the shore, and found the islanders very busy in two places, fixing in a square and upright position, four very long posts, at the distance of near two feet from each other. They afterwards filled up with yams the space between the posts; and fastened sticks across from one post to another, at the distance of every four feet, to prevent the posts from separating by the weight of the inclosed yams, and also to ascend by. As soon as the yams had reached the summit of the first posts, they continued to fasten others to them, till each pile was thirty feet or more in height. They placed on the top of one of the piles two baked hogs; and on the top of the other, a living one; and they tied another by the legs half way up. The facility and dispatch with which these two piles were raised was remarkable. After they had completed them, they accumulated some other heaps of yams and also of bread fruit, on each side of the area; to which a turtle and a great quantity of excellent fish were added. The whole of this, with some red feathers, a mat and a piece of cloth, composed the king's present to Captain Cook. About one o'clock the mai or dances were begun. The first of these very nearly resembled the first that was performed at Mareewagee's entertainment. The second was conducted by young 'Toobou and in this four or five women were introduced, who equalled the men in the exactness and regularity of the motions. Near the end the performers divided, in order to leave room for two champions, who exercised the clubs. In the third dance, which was the last, two other men with clubs exhibited their skill and activity. The dancers were succeeded by boxing and wrestling.

and one man entered the lists with a kind of heavy club, made from the stem of a cocoa leaf, but could meet with no opponent to engage him in so rough a diversion. Towards the evening, the bonnai or night dances, began, in which the king himself, apparelled in English manufacture, was a performer; but neither these, nor the dances in the day time, were so capital as those of Feenou, or Mareewagee.

The Commodore, in order to be present the whole time, dined on shore. Poulaho sat down with him, but neither eat nor drank, which was owing to the presence of a female, who had been admitted at his request to the dining party, and who, as we were informed in the sequel, was of superior rank to himself. This lady had no sooner dined than she walked up to Poulaho, who applied his hands to her feet; after which she retired. He immediately dipped his fingers into a glass of wine, and then all her attendants paid him obeisance. At his desire, some of our fire-works were played off in evening; but being damaged, they did not answer the expectations of the spectators.

Some

Some Officers plundered of their Muskets, and other Articles, by the Natives.—Omai complains to the King of this Outrage—Consequences that it was probable might attend it—A visit to Poulabo—Description of a Fiatooka—Country Entertainment at Poulabo's House—His Mourning Ceremony—Beastly Method of preparing Kava—Account of Oney—Messrs King and Anderson visit Futtafaihe—Entertained by him—Method of dressing Hogs, and carving them—Manner of passing the Night—Observations on the Country—Prepare for Departure—Description of the Island, its Animals, Vegetables, &c.

NO more entertainments being expected on either side, and the curiosity of the populace being in a great degree satisfied; most of them deserted us the day after Poulabo's haiva. Still, however, we had thieves among us, and had continual instances of their depredations.

Some of the officers of both ships, who had made an excursion into the interior parts of the island, returned the 22d of June, in the evening, after an absence of two days. They had taken their muskets and necessary ammunition with them, besides several small articles of the favourite commodities; the whole of which the natives had the dexterity to steal from them, in the course of their short journey. Inconvenient consequences were likely to have attended this affair; for when our plundered travellers returned, they employed Omai, without consulting Captain Cook, to complain to the king of the treatment they had received. He,

not

not knowing how the Captain would proceed in this affair, and apprehending that he might again lay him under restraint, set off early in the morning, and Feenou followed his example; so that not a chief of authority was now remaining in our neighbourhood. The Captain was offended at this business, and reprimanded Omai for having presumed to interfere in it. This reprimand induced him to endeavour to bring back his friend Feenou, and he succeeded in his negotiation, by assuring him that no violent measures would be pursued to oblige the natives to return what they had stolen. Trusting to this declaration, Feenou came back in the evening, and was favourably received. Poulaho also favoured us with his company the next day.

Upon this occasion the two chiefs very justly observed to Captain Cook, that whenever any of his people wanted to take an excursion into the country, they ought to be made acquainted with it, that they might order proper people to attend them, to prevent such outrages. And had this precaution been taken, it is not to be doubted but that a man and his property would have been as safe here as in other parts of the more civilized world. Though the Captain did not afterwards endeavour to recover the articles taken upon this occasion, the whole of them were returned, through the interposition of Feenou, except one musket, and a few other insignificant articles. By this time also, we recovered the tools and other matters that had been stolen from our workmen.

On Wednesday the 15th of June, two boats which Captain Cook had sent in search of a commodious channel to sea returned. The commanders of them reported, that the channel to the north, through which we came in, was imminently dangerous, being full of coral rocks; that there was a good channel to the eastward, though contracted in one place by the small sands; consequently a westerly wind would be necessary to get through it. We had now recruited our men, and repaired our sails, and had little more to expect

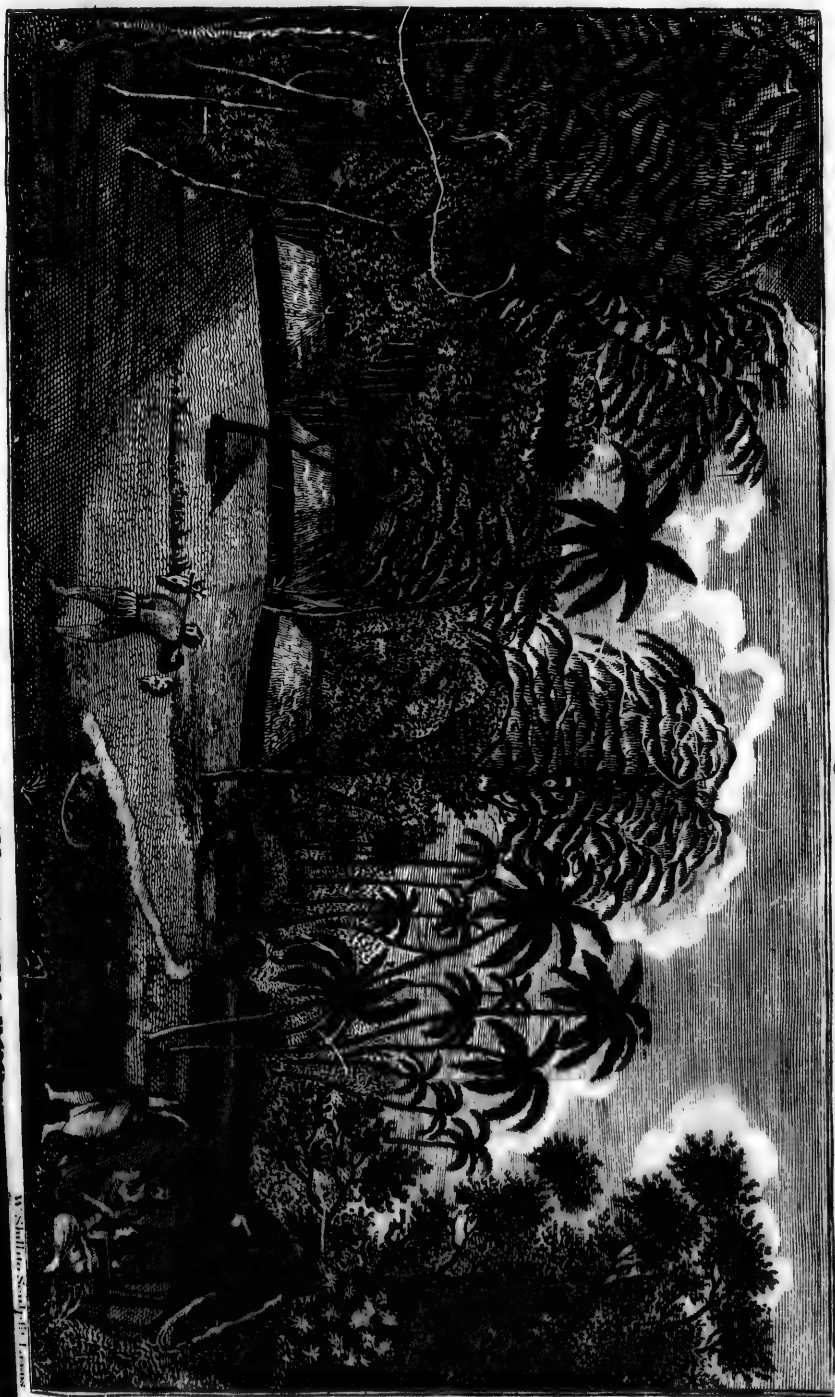
pect of the produce of the island; but as an eclipse of the sun was to happen on the 5th of July, the Captain determined to stay till that time to have a chance of observing it.

Having now some leisure before us, Captain Cook and a party of us, accompanied by Poulaho, set out the next morning in a boat for Mooa, a kind of village, where he and the other men of consequence usually reside. Rowing up the inlet, we saw fourteen canoes fishing in company; in one of which was Poulaho's son. They had then taken some fine mullets, about a dozen of which they put into our boat. They shewed us their whole method of fishing, which appeared to be an effectual one.

Taking leave of the prince and his fishing party, we were rowed to the bottom of the bay, and landed where we had done before, when we went to see Mareewagee. As soon as we got on shore, we were conducted to one of Poulaho's houses, which, though tolerably large, seemed to be his private place of residence, and was situated within a plantation. The king seated himself at one end of the house, and those who came to visit him sat down in a semi-circle at the other end. A bowl of kava was immediately prepared for us, and directions were given to bake some yams. While these were getting ready, some of us, together with a few of the king's attendants, and Omai as our interpreter, went to take a view of a *fiatooka*, or burying place, at a small distance from the habitation. It belonged to the king, and consisted of three largish houses, situated on a rising ground, with a small one not far off, all ranged longitudinally. The largest of the three first was the middle house, which was placed in a square, twenty-four paces by twenty-eight, and raised about three feet. The other houses were placed on little mounts. On the floors of these houses, as also on the tops of the mounts, were fine loose pebbles; and the whole was enclosed by large flat stones of coral rock. One of the houses was open on one side, and two wooden



Cook's Voyage.



A Flatboat on the Mississippi River.

W. Smith, Sculp. N. York.

wood
We
not e
us, th
been
of an
feldo
many

W
in ea
to be
canoe
was d
was a
plante
etooa.
very
plante

Afte
we ha
circuit
minift
low u
progre
of resp
part o
plantat
low, an
large q

We
ing to
was inc
and the
pools a
either b

In th
walk, a
of some
the culi

Vol. II

wooden busts of men, rudely carved, were within it. We enquired of the natives who followed us (but durst not enter here) what these images were; who informed us, that they were memorials of some chiefs who had been buried there, and not meant as the representatives of any deity. Such monuments, it is presumed, are seldom raised; for these appeared to have been erected many ages.

We were informed that dead bodies had been buried in each of these houses, but no marks of them were to be distinguished. The carved head of an Otaheite canoe, which had been driven ashore on their coast, was deposited in one of them. On the rising ground was a grass-plot, on which different large trees were planted; among which were several of those called etooa. They greatly resemble the cypress, and had a very solemn effect. A row of low palms was also planted near one of the houses.

After refreshing ourselves with some provisions, which we had brought from our ships, we took a pretty large circuit into the country, attended by one of the king's ministers, who would not suffer any of the rabble to follow us, and obliged those whom we met upon our progress, to sit down while we were passing; a mark of respect due only to their sovereigns. The greatest part of the country was cultivated, and most of their plantations fenced round. Some parts, indeed, lay fallow, and others in a state of nature; the latter afforded large quantities of timber.

We found many public and well-beaten paths, leading to different parts of the island. Travelling here was indeed very commodious, the roads being excellent, and the country level. We were conducted to several pools and springs of water, but they were in general either brackish or stinking.

In the dusk of the evening, we returned from our walk, and found our supper in readiness. It consisted of some fish and yams, and a baked hog, in which all the culinary arts of the island had been displayed. There

being nothing to amuse us after supper, we lay down to sleep, according to the custom of the country, on mats spread upon the floor, and had a covering of cloth. The king, who became happy with some wine and brandy which we had brought, also slept in the house, as did several others of the natives. Before day-break they all arose, and entered into conversation by moonlight. As soon as it was day, they dispersed different ways, but it was not long before they all returned, accompanied by several of their countrymen.

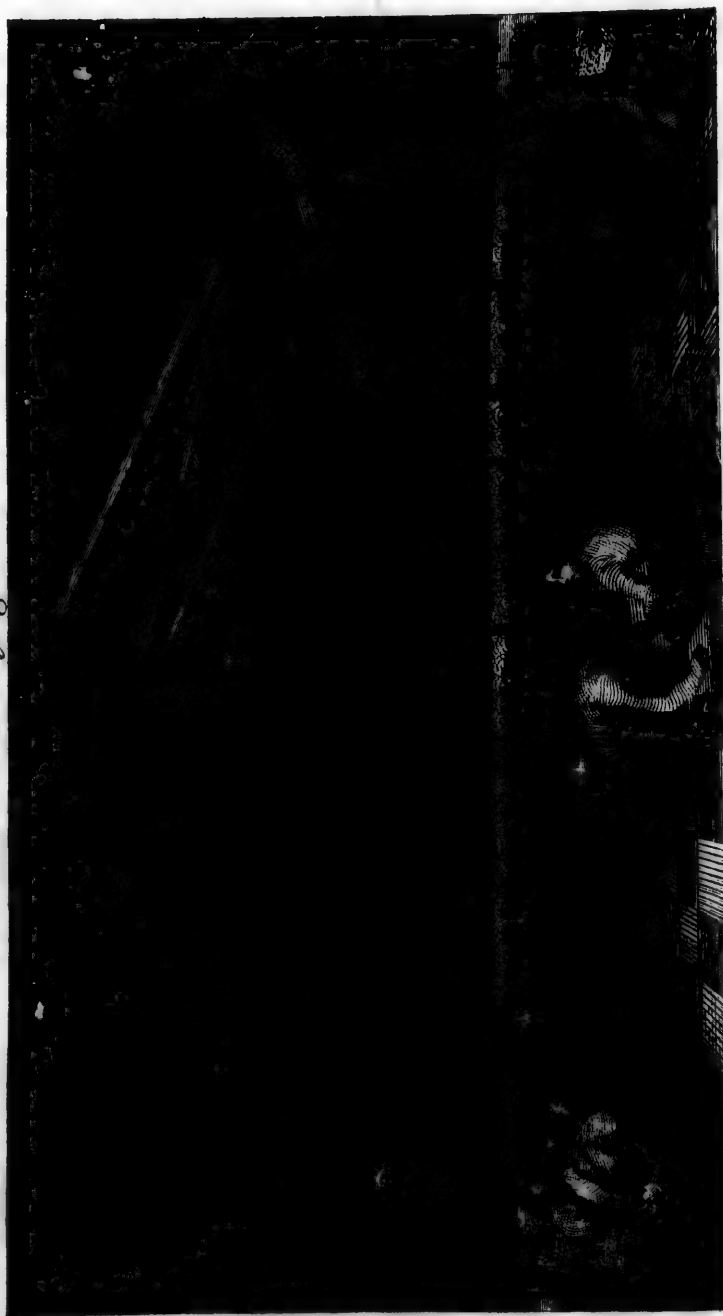
While they were preparing a bowl of kava, Captain Cook went to pay a visit to Toobou, Capt. Furneaux's friend, who had a house not far distant, which for size and neatness was hardly exceeded in the place. Here also we found a company preparing a morning draught. The chief made a present to the Captain of a living hog, and one that was baked; also a quantity of yams, and a large piece of cloth. Returning to the king, we found him and his attendants drinking the second bowl of kava. That business being performed, he informed Omai that he was immediately going to perform a mourning ceremony, called tooge, in memory of a son who had been some time dead, and desired us to accompany him. Naturally expecting to see somewhat new or curious, we readily complied with the request.

The king stepped out of the house, attended by two old women, and put on a new cloathing, over which was placed an old ragged mat, which might probably have served his grandfather upon a similar solemn occasion. His attendants were habited in the same manner, excepting that, in point of antiquity, none of their mats could vie with that of their master. Thus equipped, we marched off, proceeded by eight or ten persons in the same uniform, each of them having likewise a green bough about his neck. Foulaho, who held his bough in his hand till he approached the place of rendezvous, then also put it about his neck. We now entered a small inclosure, wherein was a neat house, and a man sitting before it. As the company entered, the

too

lay down
ntry, on
g of cloth.
wine and
the house,
day-break
by moon-
l different
urned, ac-

a, Captain
Furneaux's
ch for size
ce. Here
g draught.
of a living
y of yams,
e king, we
the second
ned, he in-
ng to per-
in memory
desired us to
e somewhat
he request
ded by two
over which
ht probably
solemn oc
e same man
none of the
Thus equip
r ten person
g likewise
who held h
place of re
We now en
at house, an
entered, the
too



POTLAHO King of the FRIENDLY ISLANDS Drinking KAVA.

Baily & Bewick Sculp.

took the way. T him in th fons, the cipally o scribed.

kava was capacious Many pe bowl was were emp leaves.

the king, the second the third w was given ed ; and th no one ap it was emp it was taken time the ch deal of gr other.

All this mourning d as soon as t dispersed ; to attend us

We had iflands, but is a species ticle, and c the young planted abo the height o much high jointed stalk

Only the Islands: after

took the branches from their necks, and threw them away. The king seated himself, and the others sat before him in the usual manner. By the arrival of other persons, the circle increased to upwards of an hundred, principally old men, all dressed in the manner above described. The company being assembled, a large root of kava was produced by one of the king's servants, and a capacious bowl that would contain five or six gallons. Many persons now began to chew the root, and the bowl was filled with liquor up to the brim. Others were employed in making drinking cups of plantain leaves. The first cup that was filled, being presented to the king, he ordered it to be given to another person; the second was also presented to him, and he drank it; the third was offered to Capt. Cook. Afterwards a cup was given to several others, till the liquor was exhausted; and though not half the company partook of it, no one appeared in the least dissatisfied. Each cup as it was emptied was thrown upon the ground, whence it was taken up, and carried to be filled again. All this time the chief, and his whole circle, sat with a great deal of gravity, hardly speaking a syllable to each other.

All this while we were in expectation of seeing the mourning ceremony begin, when, to our great surprize, as soon as the kava was drank out, they all rose up and dispersed; and Poulaho informed us, he was now ready to attend us to the ships.

We had sometimes seen the drinking of kava at other islands, but no where so frequently as here. The kava is a species of pepper, which they esteem a valuable article, and cultivate for this purpose, carefully defending the young plants from any injury; and it is usually planted about their houses. It does not often exceed the height of a man, though they are sometimes seen much higher. It has large heart-shaped leaves, and jointed stalks.

Only the root of the kava is used at the Friendly Islands: after being dug up it is given to the servants, who,

breaking it in pieces, scrape the dirt off, and each chews his portion, which he afterwards spits into a piece of plantain leaf. Those who are to prepare the liquor, collect these mouthfuls together, and deposit them in a large wooden bowl, adding a sufficient quantity of water to make it of a proper strength. It is then well mixed up with the hands, and wrung hard, in order to make it productive of as much liquid as possible.

About a quarter of a pint of this beverage is usually put into each cup. It has no perceptible effect upon these people, who use it so frequently; but on some of ours, it operated like our spirits, occasioning intoxication, or rather stupefaction.

The mourning ceremony being over, we left Mooa, and set out on our return to the ships. Rowing down the inlet, we met with two canoes returning from fishing. Poulaho ordered them to approach him, and took from them every fish and shell. He afterwards stopped two other canoes, searched them, and found nothing. He gave us some of the fish, and the rest were sold by his servants on board the ship. Proceeding down the inlet, we overtook a large sailing canoe, when every person on board her sat down till we had passed; even the man who steered, though he could not possibly manage the helm, but in a standing posture.

Having been informed by Poulaho and others, that there was some good water at Onevy, a small island about a league off the mouth of the inlet; we landed there in order to taste it, but found it to be extremely brackish. This island is quite in a natural state, and only frequented as a fishing place; having nearly the same productions as Palmerston's Island.

When we returned to the ship, Captain Cook was informed that every thing had been quiet during his absence; not a single theft having been committed; of which Feenou, and Futtafaihe, the king's brother, who had undertaken the management of his countrymen in the Captain's absence, boasted not a little. This evince

wha

what
execut
whatev
to the

The
some o
sequenc
one of
were ta
they we
behavio
fioned,
for till
fire arm
taken in
son, in a
with the
having b
Nothin

two days
an account
ed. On
accompa
is not far
Soon after
was effect
hair was t
of pieces
the same
had been
earth, the
the size
kindling
these ston
they filled
leaves to
of the san
crease w
stones, an

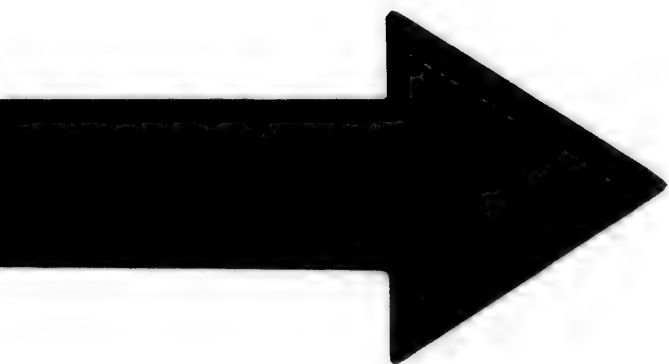
what power the chiefs have, when they are inclined to execute it; which is not often to be expected; for whatever was stolen from us, was generally conveyed to them.

The next day, six or eight of the natives assaulted some of our people who were sawing planks; in consequence of which they were fired on by the sentry; one of them was supposed to be wounded, and three were taken. The latter were confined till night, when they were punished, and set at liberty. After this their behaviour was very decent and circumspect; occasioned, as we imagined, by the man being wounded: for till this time, they had only heard of the effect of fire arms, but now they had felt it. We were not mistaken in our conjecture, for Mr King and Mr Anderson, in an excursion they took into the country, met with the very man, and found indubitable marks of his having been wounded with a musket ball.

Nothing worthy of notice happened at the ships for two days; we shall therefore fill up that interval with an account of Mr Anderson's excursion above-mentioned. On Monday the 30th of June, Mr King and he, accompanied Futtasaihe as visitors to his house, which is not far from that of his brother Poulaho, at Mooa. Soon after they arrived, a largish hog was killed, which was effected by repeated strokes upon the head. The hair was then curiously scraped off, with the sharp edge of pieces of split bamboo, and the entrails taken out by the same simple instrument. Previous to this, an oven had been prepared, which is a large hole dug in the earth, the bottom of which is covered with stones, about the size of a man's fist, which are made red hot by kindling a fire over them; then they wrapt up some of these stones in leaves of the bread fruit tree, with which they filled the hog's belly; stuffing in a quantity of leaves to prevent their falling out, and thrusting a plug of the same kind in the anus. This being done, the carcass was placed upon some sticks laid across the stones, and covered with plantain leaves. The earth

was





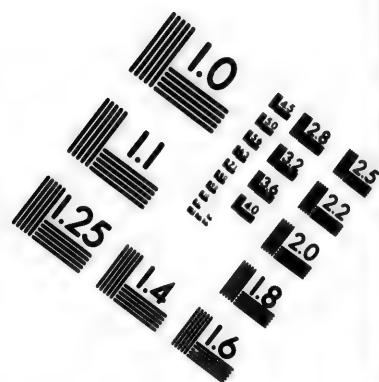
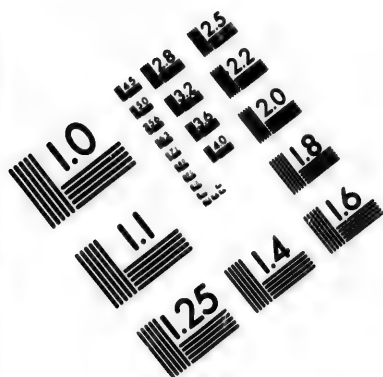
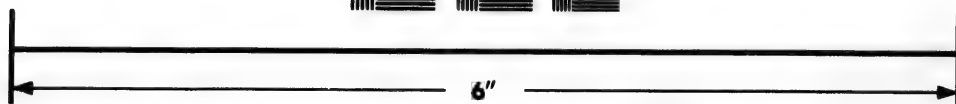
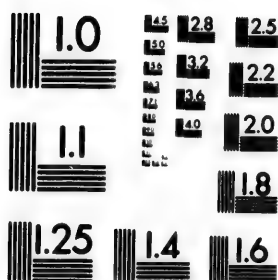


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18 20 22 25
28 32 36 40

10 01

was afterwards dug up all round ; and the oven being thus effectually closed the operation of baking required no farther aid.

They afterwards amused themselves by walking about the country, but saw nothing remarkable, except a fiatooka of about thirty feet high. At a small distance, there was a number of etooa trees, on which were vast quantities of Ternate bats, making a most horrible noise. Not having their muskets at this time, they could not kill any of them, but some, taken at Annamooka, measured almost a yard, when the wings were extended.

On their return to Futtafaihe's house, the baked hog was produced, accompanied with some cocoa nuts, and several baskets of baked yams. The person who prepared the hog in the morning, now cut it up in a very masterly manner, with a knife made of split bamboo. Though the weight of it was at least fifty pounds, the whole was placed before them ; when they took a small part, and desired the rest might be partaken of by the people sitting round. Futtafaihe could hardly be prevailed upon to eat a morsel.

Dinner being ended, they went with him and his attendants towards the spot where Poulaho's mourning ceremony was performed. They saw nothing but a kind of continuation of the same solemn rites, by way of condolence. Upon enquiring upon whose account it was now transacted, they were informed that it was in memory of a chief who had long since died at Vavaoo ; that they had practised it ever since, and should continue to do so for a considerable length of time to come.

They were entertained in the evening, with a pig for supper, dressed like the hog, and, like that, accompanied with yams and cocoa nuts. When the supper was over, a large quantity of cloth was brought for them to sleep in ; but they were disturbed of their repose, by a singular instance of luxury, in which their men of consequence indulge themselves ; that of being thumped or beat while they are asleep. Two women, who sat

oven being
ng required

alking about
except a fia-
all distance,
ch were vast
orrible noise.
y could not
hooaka, mea-
e extended.
e baked hog
oa nuts, and
n who pre-
up in a very
plit bamboo.
pounds, the
took a small
en of by the
rdly be pre-

n and his at-
s mourning
thing but a
tes, by way
e account it
at it was in
at Vavaoo;
should con-
of time to

with a pig for
t, accompa-
e supper was
for them to
repose, by
men of con-
ng thumpe-
men, who fa-
b

by Futtasaihe, performed this operation, which they call *tooge tooge*, by striking his body and legs with both fists, till he fell asleep, and, with some intervals, continued it the whole night. The person being fast asleep, they abate a little of the strength and briskness of the beating; but if they observe any appearance of his awaking, they resume it. In the morning they were informed, that Futtasaihe's women relieved each other, and went alternately to sleep. Such a practice as this, in any other country, would be supposed to be destructive of all rest; but here it operates like an opiate, and strongly shews what habit may effect.

They set out with Futtasaihe the next morning, and walked to the point, down the east side of the bay. The country all along this side appeared to be well cultivated, but not so much inclosed as at Mooa. They found, that, in travelling, Futtasaihe exercised a power, which shewed the great authority the principal men are invested with. To one place, he sent for fish; and to another, for yams; and his orders were as readily obeyed, as if he had been absolute master of all the people's property. They crossed the bay, in the evening, to their station, in a canoe procured by Futtasaihe, by exercising his authority in calling to the first that appeared; he had also a large hog at this place, and wanted them to accept of a bundle of cloth; but, the boat being small, they objected; and he ordered it to be taken to them the next day. Thus ends Mr Anderson's account of his excursion.

Captain Cook had prolonged his stay at this island, on account of the approaching eclipse; but, on looking at the micrometer, (on the 2d of July) he found some accident had happened to it, and that it was rendered useless, till repaired; which could not be done before the time it was intended to be used. We therefore got no board, this day, all the cattle and other animals, except those that were destined to remain. The Captain designed to have left a turkey-cock and hen, but two hens being destroyed by accident, and wishing to carry the breed

breed to Otaheite, he reserved the only remaining pair for that purpose.

We took up our anchor the next day, and moved the ships behind Pangimodoo, to be ready for the first favourable wind to take us through the narrows. The king, who this day dined with us, took particular notice of the plates; which the Commodore observing, made him an offer of one, either of pewter, or of earthen ware. He made choice of the first, and mentioned the several uses to which he intended to apply it; two of which were so very extraordinary that they deserve to be related.

Whenever he should visit any of the other islands, he said he would leave this plate behind him at Tongataboo, as his representative, that the people might, in his absence, pay it the homage due to himself in person. On being asked, how he had been usually represented in his absence, before he was in possession of this plate, he informed us, that this singular honour had always been conferred on a wooden bowl, in which he washed his hands. The other use to which he meant to apply the plate instead of the bowl, was to discover a thief. When any thing had been stolen, and the thief not detected, the people were assembled before him, when he washed his hands in this vessel. After this it was cleaned, and every man advanced, and touched it with his hand, in the same manner that they touch his foot when they offer him obeisance. If touched by the guilty person, he dropped down dead immediately; and, if any one refused to touch it, such refusal was considered as a sufficient proof of his guilt.

In the morning of Saturday the 5th of July, the day of the eclipse, the weather was cloudy, with some showers of rain. About nine o'clock, the sun broke out at small intervals for about half an hour, but was totally obscured just before the beginning of the eclipse. The sun again appeared at intervals till about the middle of the eclipse; but was seen no more during the remainder of the day, so that we could not observe the

end

Vol.

end. This disappointment was the less to be lamented, as the longitude was sufficiently determined by lunar observations.

The eclipse being over, we packed up the instruments, and every thing was conveyed on board. None of the natives having taken any care of the three sheep allotted to Mareewagee, the Commodore ordered them to be carried back to the ships. He was apprehensive that, if they had been left there, they would probably be destroyed by dogs. These animals did not exist upon the island in 1773, when the Commodore first visited it; but there is now a plenty of them; partly from the breed left by him, and partly from some imported from an island, called *Feejee*. At present, however, the dogs have not got into any of the Friendly Islands, except Tongataboo.

Mr Anderson has given us the following description of this island. Amsterdam, Tongataboo, or Tonga (as it is sometimes called by the natives) is about twenty leagues in circumference, rather oblong, though broadest at the east end, and its greatest length is from east to west. The south shore is straight, consisting of coral rocks of about eight or ten feet high, terminating perpendicularly, except in some few places, where there are sandy beaches. The west end is about five or six miles broad, and has a shore like that of the south side; but the north side is environed with shoals and islands; and the east side is, most probably, like the south.

This island may, with propriety, be called a low one; the only eminent part, to be observed from a ship, is the S. E. point, though many gently rising and declining grounds are perceivable by those who are on shore. Though the general appearance of the country does not exhibit that beautiful kind of landscape, produced by a variety of hills and vallies, rivulets and lawns, yet it conveys an idea of the most exuberant fertility. The surface, at a distance, seems entirely clothed with trees of various sizes: but the tall cocoa palms raise their tufted heads high above the rest, and are a noble ornament

to any country that produces them. The boogo, which is a species of the fig, is the largest sized tree upon the island; and the most common bushes and small trees, on the uncultivated spots, are the pandanus, the faitanoo, several sorts of hibiscus, and a few others.

The climate of Tongataboo, from the situation towards the tropic, is more variable than in countries far within that line; though that might, perhaps, be occasioned by the season of the year, which was now the winter solstice. The winds are generally from some point between S. and E. The wind, indeed, sometimes veers to the N. E. or even N. W. but never continues long, nor blows strong from thence, though often accompanied by heavy rain, and close sultry weather.

The vegetable productions are never so much affected, respecting the foliage, as to shed it all at once; but every leaf, as it falls, is succeeded by another, which causes the appearance of universal spring.

A coral rock appears to be the basis of the island, that being the only sort that presents itself on the shore. There was not the appearance of any other stone except some small blue pebbles about the fiatookas, and the smooth black stone, of which the natives make their hatchets; and these have perhaps been brought from other islands in the neighbourhood. Though in many places the coral projects above the surface, the soil is in most parts of a considerable depth. In cultivated places it is generally of a loose black colour, seemingly produced by the rotten vegetables.

The principal of the cultivated fruits in this island, are plantains, of which they have fifteen varieties; the jambu and the eeevee; the latter being a kind of plumb; and vast quantities of shaddocks, as often found in a natural state as planted.

Of yams there are two sorts; one black, and so large as to weigh from twenty to thirty pounds; the other white and long, seldom exceeding a pound in weight. There is a large root called kappe; another like our white potatoes, called mawhaha; the talo, and the jeejee.

They

They have vast numbers of cocoa nut trees, and three other sorts of palms. One is called beeco, growing almost as high as the cocoa tree, and having very large leaves, plaited like a fan. The other is a kind of cabbage tree, much resembling the cocoa, but rather thicker. A third sort is called ongo ongo; it seldom grows higher than five or six feet. Plenty of excellent sugar-cane is cultivated here; also gourds, bamboo, turmeric, and a species of fig, called matte; but the catalogue of uncultivated plants is too large to be enumerated.

There are no quadrupeds in this island, but hogs, dogs, and a few rats. Fowls of a large breed, are domesticated here.

Among the birds, are parrots, and parroquets, cuckoos, king-fishers, and a bird of the thrush kind, of a dull green colour, which is the only singing bird we could find here; but it compensates in a great degree for the want of others, by the force and melody of its voice.

Among the other land birds are rails about the size of a pigeon, of a variegated grey colour; a black sort with reddish eyes; large violet coots, with red bald crowns; two sorts of fly-catchers; a small swallow; and three sorts of pigeons.

Of water fowl, are the ducks seen at Annamooka; tropic birds; blue and white herons; noddies; white terns; a new species of a leaden colour; a small bluish curlew; and a large spotted plover.

Among the animals of the reptile or insect tribe, are sea snakes, (though often seen on shore) about three feet long, with alternate black and white circles; some scorpions, and centipedes: also green guanoes, about eighteen inches long, and two smaller sorts. Here are some beautiful moths and butterflies, and some very large spiders; together with others, making in the whole about fifty different sorts of insects.

Though the sea abounds with fish, the variety is less than might be imagined: those in the greatest plenty are mullets, silver fish, old wives, parrot fish, soles,

leather jackets, albigores, bonnetos, eels like those about Palmerston's Island, rays, a sort of pike, and some devil fish.

There are an endless variety of shell fish about the reefs and shoals; among which are the hammer oyster; a large indentated oyster, and many others; but none of the common sort; a gigantic cockle, panamas; cones; pearl-shell oysters, &c. Also several sorts of sea-eggs; many curious star-fish; crabs; cray-fish, &c. and several sorts of sponge.

Strange

fe about
ome de-

bout the
r oyster;
out none
anamas;
sorts of
fish, &c.

Strange

Cook's Voyages



This Natche. Ceremony in Honour of the King's Son. Tongatapu.

The
floc
wai
nate
T
pub
whi
peo
whe
us f
form
certa
his f
Al
Moo
atten
clou
bowl
to pa

Strange Solemnity at Mooa, called Natche, in Honour of the King's Son—Description of many extraordinary Processions and Ceremonies during the first Day—Manner of supping and spending the Evening at the King's House—Description of the second Day's Ceremony—Captain Cook ventures himself in the midst of the Assembly—His Reception there—Arrival at Eooa—Some Account of that Island—Weigh Anchor, and turn through the Channel.

THOUGH we were now ready to sail, we had not sufficient day-light to turn through the narrows; the morning flood falling out too early, and the evening flood too late. We were therefore under a necessity of waiting two or three days, unless we should be fortunate enough to have a leading wind.

This delay gave us an opportunity to be present at a public solemnity, to which the king had invited us, and which was to be performed on the 8th. He and all the people of consequence repaired to Mooa on the 7th, where the solemnity was to be exhibited. Several of us followed them the next morning. Poulaho had informed us, that his son was now to be initiated into certain privileges; one of which was that of eating with his father; an honour he had not hitherto enjoyed.

About eight o'clock in the morning we arrived at Mooa, where we found the king, with a number of attendants sitting before him, within a small dirty enclosure. They were, as usual, busied in preparing a bowl of kava. As this was not liquor for us, we went to pay a visit to some of our friends, and to observe what

THE NATCHE. CEREMONY IN HONOUR OF THE KING'S SON. TONGATAHOO.

what preparations were making for the ceremony, which was soon expected to begin.

About ten o'clock, the people assembled in a large area before the *malaee*, or great house. At the end of a road, opening into this area, stood several men with spears and clubs, incessantly reciting short sentences, in mournful accents, which conveyed an idea of distress. This was continued about an hour; during which time, many people came down the road, each having a yam tied to the middle of a pole, which they laid down before those who continued repeating the sentences. At length, the king and prince arrived, and seated themselves upon the area; and we were requested to sit down by them, to take off our hats, and to untie our hair. The bearers of the yams having all entered, each pole was taken up between two men, who carried it over their shoulders. They afterwards formed themselves into companies, of ten or twelve each, and marched across the place, with a rapid pace, each company headed by a man who had a club or spear, and defended, on the right, by several others, armed with different weapons. About two hundred and fifty persons walked in the procession, which was closed by a man carrying on a perch a living pigeon.

Omai was desired by Captain Cook to ask the chief where the yams were to be carried, with so much solemnity; but he seemed unwilling to give us the information we required; some of us, therefore, followed the procession, seemingly contrary to his inclination.

They stopped before a morai or fiatooka of one house standing upon a mount, about a quarter of a mile from where they first assembled. Here they deposited the yams, and gathered them into bundles; but for what purpose, we could not possibly learn. Our presence seeming to give them offence or uneasiness, we quitted them, and returned to Poulaho, who advised us to amuse ourselves by walking about, as nothing would be done for a considerable time. The fear of losing the sight of any part of the ceremony, prevented our being long absent. When we returned to the king, he desired Cap-

ceremony,

in a large
the end of a
men with
ntences, in
of distress.
which time,
ing a yam
own before
At length,
elves upon
n by them,
The bearers
as taken up
shoulders.

panies, of
place, with
n who had
by several
ot two hun-
tion, which
ing pigeon.
k the chief
uch solem-
ne informa-
ollowed the
ion.

f one house
mile from
oposited the
t for what
ur presence
we quitted
us to amuse
uld be done
the sight of
ng long ab-
elired Cap-
Cook

Cook to order the boat's crew not to presume to stir from the boat, for every thing would, very soon, be taboo; and if any of our people, or of their own, should be seen walking about, they would certainly be knocked down with clubs; nay mateed, that is, killed. He also informed us, that we could not be present at the ceremony; but that we should be placed in such a situation, as to be able to see every thing that passed. Our dress was particularly objected to, and we were told, that, to qualify us to be present, we must be naked as low as the breast, and our hats must be taken off, and our hair untied. Omai readily agreed to conform to these requisites, and immediately began to strip; but other objections were then started, and he was excluded equally with ourselves.

Not relishing this restriction, the Captain stole out, to see what might now be going forward. Very few people, however, were to be seen, except those who were dressed to attend the ceremony; some having in their hands small poles, about four feet in length, to the under part of which were fastened two or three other small sticks, about six inches long. These men were going towards the morai. Captain Cook took the same road, and was frequently stopped by them, all crying out taboo. However, he ventured to go forward till he came in sight of the morai, and of the people sitting before it. He was now strongly urged to go back, and, not knowing what might be the consequence of a refusal, he complied. He had observed, that those who carried the poles, passed the morai; and guessing, from this circumstance, that something was transacting beyond it, he had some thoughts of advancing, by making a round for this purpose; but he was so narrowly observed by three men, that he had no opportunity of putting his design in execution. In order to shake off these fellows, he returned to the malae, where he had parted from the boat, and afterwards made an elopement a second time; but he instantly met with the same three men, who had doubtless received instructions to watch him. He paid
no

no attention to them till he came within sight of the king's principal fiatooka or morai ; before which a great number of people were sitting, being those whom he had just before seen pass by the other morai, from which this was but a little distant. Seeing that he could observe the proceedings of this company from the king's plantation, he repaired thither, accompanied by several of his people.

The number of persons at the fiatooka, continued increasing for sometime ; and at length they quitted their sitting posture, and marched off in procession. They walked in pairs, every pair carrying, between them, one of the small poles on their shoulders. We were informed that the small pieces of sticks, fastened to the poles, were yams ; it is therefore probable that they were meant to represent this root emblematically. The hindmost man of each couple placed one of his hands to the middle of the pole, as if it were not strong enough to carry the weight that hung to it, and under which they all seemed to bend as they proceeded. This procession consisted of one hundred and eight pairs, and principally men of rank.

Having seen them all pass, we repaired to Poulaho's house, and saw him going out. We were not permitted to follow him ; but were immediately conducted to the place allotted to us, behind a fence adjoining to the area of the fiatooka where the yams had been deposited in the morning.

Arriving at our station, we saw two or three hundred people, sitting on the grass, near the end of the road opening into the area of the morai ; and others were continually joining them. At length arrived a few men, each carrying some small poles and branches, of leaves of the cocoa nut tree. As soon as they appeared an old man seated himself in the road, and pronounced a long oration in a serious majestic tone. He then retired, and the others advancing to the middle of the area, began to erect a small shed or hut ; employing for that purpose, the materials already mentioned.

The Vol. II.

Their work being finished, they all squatted down, for a moment, before it, then rose up, and joined the rest of the company. Poulaho's son arrived soon after, preceded by four or five men. After them appeared about twelve or fourteen women of the first rank, advancing slowly in pairs, each pair carrying between them a narrow piece of white cloth, about two or three yards in length. They approached the prince, squatted down before him, and wrapped some of the pieces of the cloth round his body; they then rose up, and retired in the same order, to some distance on his left, where they seated themselves. Poulaho now made his appearance, preceded by four men, walking two and two abreast, and sat down on his son's left hand, at a small distance from him. The young prince then quitted his first position, and seated himself under the shed, with his attendants; many others placed themselves on the grass before this royal canopy. The prince sat facing the people, with his back to the morai. Three companies, of about ten or a dozen men in each, started up from among the crowd, soon after each other, and, running hastily to the opposite side, sat down down for a few seconds; and then returned, in the same manner, to their former stations. To them succeeded two men, each having a small green branch in his hand, who rose and advanced towards the prince, sitting down, for a few seconds, three different times, as they approached; and retired in the same manner, inclining their branches to each other as they sat. Afterwards two others repeated the same ceremony.

The grand procession, which marched from the other morai, now began to come in. As they entered the area, they proceeded to the right of the shed, and having prostrated themselves on the grass, deposited their pretended heavy burthens (the poles) and faced round to the prince. They then rose up, and retired in the same order, closing their hands with the most serious aspect, and seated themselves along the front of the area. While this numerous band were entering, and depositing their poles

poles, three men, who sat with the prince, continued pronouncing separate sentences in a mournful melancholy tone.

A profound silence then ensued for a short time, after which a man who sat in the front of the area, began a kind of oration, during which, at several different times, he broke one of the poles which had been brought in. Having concluded his oration, the people, sitting before the shed, separated, to make a lane, through which the prince and his attendants passed, and the assembly closed.

Satisfied with what they had already seen, some of our party now returned to the ships; but Captain Cook, and some more of the officers, remained at Mooa, to see the conclusion of the solemnity, which was not to be till the day following. The small poles, which had been brought by those who walked in procession, being left on the ground, after the crowd had dispersed, the Commodore examined them, and found that, to the middle of each, two or three small sticks were tied, as has been related. They were probably intended as only artificial representations of small yams.

Our supper, consisting of fish and yams, was got ready about seven o'clock. The king supped with us, and drank so freely of brandy and water, that he retired to bed with a sufficient dose. We continued the whole night in the same house with him and his attendants.

All, except Poulaho himself, rose at day-break; soon after which, a woman, one of those who generally attended upon the chief, came in, and, sitting down by him, immediately began the same operation which had been practised upon Futtasaihe, tapping or beating gently, with her clinched fists, on his thighs. This, instead of adding to his repose, had the contrary effect, and he awoke.

Captain Cook and Omai now paid a visit to the prince who had parted from us early the preceding evening; for he did not lodge with the king, but in apartments of his own, at some distance from his father's house. We

found

found
ting
were
ry aff
W
levee
While
yams,
of whi
kava
We
chiefs
or they
we fou
tapping
he arose
lay down
the prin
ticles.
him a co
new ha
exhibit
Cook to
other w
the prin
present
manufact
It was
Captain
soon after
yams.
what he
bullets a
ended fo
are, fat
Dinner
mony wo
to ventur
ver, to

found him with a circle of boys about his own age sitting before him ; and an old man and woman. There were others of both sexes employed about their necessary affairs, who probably belonged to his household.

We then returned to the king, who had a crowded levee before him, consisting principally of old men. While a bowl of kava was preparing, a baked hog and yams, smoking hot, were introduced ; the greatest part of which fell to our share, for these people, especially the kava drinkers, eat very little in a morning.

We afterwards walked out, and visited several other chiefs ; all of whom were taking their morning draught, or they had already taken it. Returning to the king, we found him asleep in a retired hut, with two women tapping or striking on his breech. About eleven o'clock he awoke again, and ate some fish and yams, and again lay down to sleep. We now left him, and waited on the prince with a present of cloth, beads, and other articles. There was a sufficient quantity of cloth to make him a complete suit, and he was immediately clad in his new habiliments. Proud of his dress, he first went to exhibit himself to his father, and then conducted Capt. Cook to his mother, with whom were about a dozen other women of a very respectable appearance. Here the prince changed his apparel, and made Capt. Cook a present of two pieces of the cloth which had been manufactured in the island.

It was now about noon, when, by appointment, the Captain repaired to the palace to dinner ; which was soon after served up, and consisted of two pigs and some yams. The drowsy monarch was roused to partake of what he had appointed for our entertainment. Two bullets and some shell fish were introduced, as if intended for his separate portion. But he added it to our fare, sat down with us, and made a very hearty meal.

Dinner being over, we were informed that the ceremony would soon begin, and were strictly enjoined not to venture out. The Commodore had resolved, however, to peep no longer from behind the curtain, but,

if possible, to mix with the actors themselves. With this view he walked towards the morai, the scene of the solemnity. He was frequently desired to return, but he paid no regard to the admonitions he received, and was permitted to pass on. When arrived at the morai, he saw a number of men seated on the side of the area. A few were also sitting on the opposite side, and two men in the middle, with their faces turned to the morai. When Captain Cook had got into the midst of the first company, he was desired to sit down, which he accordingly did. Where he sat, there were lying a number of small bundles, composed of cocoa nut leaves, and fastened to sticks made into the form of hand-barrows. All the information he could get concerning them was, that they were *taboo*. From time to time, one or another of the company turned to those who were coming to join us, and made a short speech, in which we remarked that the word arekee (king) was generally mentioned. Something was said by one man that produced loud bursts of laughter from all around; others of the speakers were also much applauded. The Captain was frequently desired to leave the place; but at length, finding him determined to stay, they requested him to uncover his shoulders as theirs were. This he readily complied with, and then they no longer seemed uneasy at his presence.

The prince, the women, and the king, at length appeared as they had done the preceding day. The prince being placed under the shed, two men, each with a piece of mat, came, repeating something in a very serious strain, and put them about him. The people now began their operations, and different companies ran backward and forward across the area, as in the former day. Presently afterwards, the two men in the middle of the area, made a short speech, and then the whole company rose up, and placed themselves before the shed in which the prince, and three or four men were seated. One of the company, who seemed very desirous of obliging Captain Cook, procured him such a situation

With
cene of
return,
received,
d at the
e side of
site side,
urned to
the midst
n, which
re lying a
ut leaves,
of hand-
concerning
e to time,
those who
speech, in
(king) was
y one man
all around
ded. The
place; but
ey request
vere. This
no longer

t length ap
day. The
, each with
a very seri
people now
ies ran back
former day
iddle of the
hole comp
the shed
were seate
desirous
n a situation
th

that, if he could have made use of his eyes, nothing could have escaped him. But it was necessary to have a demure countenance and downcast looks.

The procession soon after arrived, as on the preceding day; a pole, with a cocoa nut leaf plaited round the middle of it, being carried on the shoulders of every two persons. These were deposited with the same ceremonies as on the day before. After this succeeded another procession, composed of men who brought baskets, made of palm leaves, such as are generally used by this people to carry provisions in. A third procession followed, in which a variety of small fish, each placed at the end of a forked stick, were brought. An old man, who sat on the prince's right hand, without the shed, received the baskets; each of which he kept in his hand, making a short speech or prayer; then laying that aside, he called for another, repeating the same kind of prayer; he proceeded in this manner till he had gone through the whole number of baskets. Two men, who till this time had in their hands green branches, and were seated on the left, received the fish one by one, as they were presented to them on the forked sticks. The first fish they laid down on their right, and the second on their left. The third being presented, a stoutish man, who was seated behind the other two, endeavoured to seize it, as did also the other two at the same time. Thus every fish was contended for; but the man behind, on account of his disadvantageous situation, got only pieces; for he never quitted his hold till the fish was torn out of his hand. What the others got were laid on the right and left. At last the person behind got possession of a whole fish, the other two not even touching it. Upon this the word *marecai*, (very good) was pronounced in a low voice throughout the whole crowd. It appeared that he had now done all that was expected from him; for he did not contend for the other fish. The persons who brought in these baskets and fish, delivered them sitting; and in the same manner the poles carried in the first procession, had

had been placed upon the ground. At the close of the last procession there was some speaking or praying by different persons. Then, on a signal being given, we all rose up, ran several paces, and sat down, with our backs to the prince. The Commodore was requested not to look behind him; but he was not discouraged by this injunction from facing about. The prince had now turned his face to the morai, and from that moment he was admitted to the honour of eating with his father; and a piece of roasted yam was presented to each of them for that purpose.

Soon after we all turned about, forming a kind of semi-circle before the prince, and leaving an open space between us. Presently some men advanced towards us, two and two, bearing large poles upon their shoulders, waving their hands as they proceeded, and making a noise like singing. When they came near us, they made a shew of walking quick, without advancing a single step. Several men, armed with large sticks, immediately started from the crowd, and ran towards the new visitors, but they instantly made off, having thrown down the poles from their shoulders. The others attacked the poles, and having beat them most unmercifully, returned to their places. The former, as they ran off, gave the challenge used here in wrestling; and in a short time some lusty fellows came from the same quarter, repeating the challenge as they approached. These were resisted by a company, who arrived at that instant from the opposite side. Both parties, however, returned to their own quarter, after having paraded about the area for some minutes. Afterwards, for the space of half an hour, wrestling and boxing matches succeeded. speeches were then delivered by two men, who seated themselves before the prince, with which the solemnity ended, and the whole assembly broke up.

In vain did we endeavour to find out the purport of the solemnity called *natche*. All the answer we received to our enquiries, was taboo: which, as has been already observed,

of
m
fr
wh
mi
sio
no
sho
fit
It
ple,
wer
thes
pose
prem
Fr
be co
which
gener
they v
nity.
We
three
portan
Tonga
would
firmed
the pec
quiring
we were
natche;
their kin
The d
assembly
ships, we
leave of
next day.
The wife
ly died;

observed, is applied to many things. There was a mysterious solemnity in the whole transaction; and from the manner of performing it, as well as the place where it was performed, it was evident that there was a mixture of religion in the institution. Upon no occasion had they regarded our dress and deportment; but now it was required that our hair should flow about our shoulders; that we should be uncovered to the waist; sit cross-legged; and have our hands locked together. It should be observed also, that none but the chief people, and those who were concerned in the ceremony, were admitted to assist in the celebration of it. All these circumstances evidently pointed out that they supposed themselves acting under the inspection of a Supreme Being upon this occasion.

From the above account of the present natche, it may be considered as merely figurative. The few yams which were seen the first day, could not be meant as a general contribution; and it was intimated to us, that they were a portion consecrated to the Otooa, or Divinity.

We were, however, informed that in the space of three months, there would be represented a more important solemnity; on which occasion the tribute of Tongataboo, Hapae, Vavaoo, and all the other islands, would be brought to the chief, and more awfully confirmed by sacrificing ten human victims from amongst the people. A horrid solemnity indeed! On our enquiring into the occasion of so barbarous a practice, we were informed, that it was a necessary part of the natche; and that, if omitted, the Deity would destroy their king.

The day was far spent before the breaking up of the assembly; and as we were at some distance from the ships, we were impatient to set out from Mooa. Taking leave of Poulahō, he pressed us earnestly to stay till the next day, in order to be present at a funeral ceremony. The wife of Mareewagee, his mother-in-law, had lately died; and, on account of the natche, her crops had been

been carried on board a canoe in the lagoon. Poulaho told Capt. Cook that when he had paid the last offices to her, he would attend him to Eooa ; but if he did not chuse to wait, that he would follow him thither. He would gladly have seen this ceremony, had not the tide been now favourable. The wind too, which had been very boisterous, was now moderate and settled. Besides, we were informed that the funeral ceremonies would continue five days, which, as the ships lay in such a situation that we could not get to sea at pleasure, was too long a time to stay. The Captain, however, assured the king, that if he did not immediately sail, he would visit him again the next day. Whereupon we all took leave of him, and arrived at our ships about eight o'clock in the evening.

While the Commodore was attending the natche, at Mooa, he ordered the horses, bull, and other cattle, to be brought thither, thinking they would be safer there, than at a place that would be in a great measure deserted, the moment after our departure. Besides, we had left with our friends here, a young English boar, and three young English sows, They were exceedingly desirous of them, naturally supposing that they would greatly improve their own breed, which is but small. Feenou also got two rabbits from us, a buck and a doe, from which young ones were produced before we sailed. If the cattle succeed, the acquisition to these islands will be great ; and as Tongataboo is a fine level country, the horses will be extremely useful.

We weighed anchor on the 10th, about eight o'clock in the morning, and, with a steady gale, turned through the channel, between the small isles called Makkahaa and Monooafai. The flood, at first, set strong in our favour, till leading up to the lagoon, where the eastward flood meets that from the west. This, with the indraught of the lagoon, and of the shoals before it, occasions strong riplings and whirlpools. Besides these disadvantages, the depth of the channel exceeds the length of a cable ; consequently there can be no anchor-

age,

a
fa
w
de
w
an
ab
da
the
gain
the
ebb
prov
we c
unde
water
but c
did n
Af
next
ten o'
island,
the in
the nex
the sam
1773,
As fo
several
rejoiced
Cook's
they we
accompa
procuring
him to E
ere, wh
ot the ca
bring, an
When th
were f
Vol. II. -

age, except close to the rocks, in forty and forty-five fathoms water, where a ship would be exposed to the whirlpools. The Captain, therefore, abandoned the design he had formed of coming to an anchor, when we were through the narrows, and afterwards of making an excursion to see the funeral. He rather chose to be absent from that ceremony, than to leave the ships in so dangerous a situation. We plied to windward, between the two tides, till it was near high water, without either gaining or losing an inch, when we suddenly got into the influence of the eastern tide, where we expected the ebb to run strong to the eastward in our favour. It proved, however, very inconsiderable. Convinced that we could not get to sea before it was dark, we anchored under the shore of Tongataboo, in forty-five fathoms water. The Discovery dropped anchor under our stern; but drove off the bank before the anchor took hold, and did not recover it till about midnight.

After remaining in this station till eleven o'clock the next day, we weighed, and plied to the eastward. At ten o'clock at night we weathered the east end of the island, and stretched away for Middleburg, or Eooa (as the inhabitants call it) where we anchored, about eight the next morning, in forty fathoms water; being nearly the same place where the Captain took his station in 1773, when he named it English Road.

As soon as we had anchored, Taoofa the chief, and several of the natives, visited us on board, and seemed rejoiced at our arrival. This Taoofa had been Captain Cook's *Tayo* when he was here in 1773, and therefore they were not strangers to each other. The Captain accompanied him on shore in search of fresh water, the procuring of which was the chief object that brought him to Eooa. He had heard at Tongataboo of a stream here, which ran from the hills into the sea; but this was not the case at present. He was conducted to a brackish spring, among rocks, between low and high water mark. When they perceived that we did not approve of this, we were shewn a little way into the island; where, in a

deep chasm, we found some excellent water ; which, though attended with some trouble, might be conveyed to the shore, by means of spouts or troughs, that might be provided for that purpose : but rather than undertake that tedious task, the Captain contented himself with the supply the ships had received at Tongataboo.

Before he returned on board, he began a traffic for hogs and yams. Of the former, we could not procure many ; but of the latter, plenty. At this island we landed the ram and two ewes, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, and committed them to the care of Taoofa, who seemed delighted with his charge. It was, perhaps, a fortunate circumstance that Mareewagee, to whom they had been given, as before related, slighted the present : as Eooa had no dogs upon it at present, it seemed to be a fitter place for the rearing of sheep than Tongataboo.

While we were lying at anchor, this island had a very different aspect from any that we had lately seen, and formed a most pleasing landscape. It is the highest of any we had seen since we had left New Zealand, and from its top, which appears to be almost flat, declines gradually towards the sea. The other isles which form this cluster, being level, the eye cannot discover any thing except the trees that cover them ; but here the land, rising gently upwards, presents an extensive prospect, where groves of trees, in beautiful disorder, are interspersed at irregular distances. Near the shore, it is quite shaded with a variety of trees, among which are erected the habitations of the natives ; and to the right of where we were stationed, was one of the most extensive groves of cocoa palms that we had ever seen.

In the afternoon of the 13th, a party of us ascended the highest part of the island, a little to the right of our ships, to have a perfect view of the country. Having advanced about half way up, we crossed a deep valley the bottom and sides of which were clothed with trees. We found plenty of coral till we approached the summits of the highest hills ; the soil near the top is in general a reddish clay ; which in many places is very deep

deep. On the most elevated part of the island we saw a round platform, supported by a wall of coral stones. Our conductors informed us, that this mount had been raised by the direction of their chief; and that they met there, occasionally, to drink kava. They called it Etchee; by which name an erection was distinguished which we had seen at Tongataboo. At a small distance from it was a spring of most excellent water; and, about a mile lower down, a stream, which, we were told, ran into the sea when the rains were copious. We also discovered water in several small holes; and supposed that plenty might be found, by digging.

From this elevation we had a complete view of the whole island, except a small part to the south. The south-east side, from which the hills we were now upon are not far distant, rises with great inequalities, immediately from the sea; so that the plains and meadows lie all on the north-west side; which being adorned with tufts of trees, intermixed with plantations, form a most delightful landscape in every point of view. While Captain Cook was surveying this enchanting prospect, he enjoyed the pleasing idea, that some future navigators might, from the same eminence, behold these meadows stocked with cattle, brought by the ships of England; and that the completion of this single benevolent purpose, exclusive of all other considerations, would sufficiently prove that our voyages had not been useless. We found, on this height, besides the plants common on the neighbouring isles, a species of *acrosticum*, *melaetama*, and fern tree.

All, or most of the land on this island, we were told, belonged to the chiefs of Tongataboo; the inhabitants being only tenants or vassals, to them. This seemed, indeed, to be the case at all the neighbouring isles, except Annamooka, where some of the chiefs seemed to act with some kind of independence. Omai, who was much esteemed by Feenou, and many others, was tempted with the offer of being appointed a chief of this island,

if he would continue among them; and he seemed inclinable to have accepted the offer, had he not been advised to the contrary by Captain Cook, though not because he thought he would do better for himself in his native isle.

Returning from our country excursion, we heard that a party of the natives, in the quarter where our people traded, had struck one of their own people with a club, which fractured his skull, and afterwards broke his thigh with the same instrument. No signs of life were remaining, when he was carried to a neighbouring house, but in a short time he recovered a little. On our desiring to know the reason of such severity, we were informed that he had been discovered in an indelicate situation with a woman who was taboo'd. We soon understood, however, that she was no otherwise taboo'd than by belonging to another person, who was superior in rank to her gallant. We discovered from this circumstance how these people punish such infidelities. But the female sinner, as we were informed, has a much milder punishment for her misdemeanour, and only receives a remonstrance and a very slight beating.

Captain Cook the next morning planted a pine-apple, and sowed the seeds of melons and other articles, in the chief's plantation. He had reason, indeed, to suppose that his endeavours of this kind would not be fruitless; for a dish of turnips was this day served up at his dinner, which was the produce of the seeds he had left here in 1773.

The Captain having fixed upon the 15th for sailing, Taofa pressed him to stay a little longer, in order to receive a present he had prepared for him. His engagements, together with the daily expectation of receiving a visit from some of his friends at Tongataboo, induced him to defer his departure. The next day he received from the chief the present; consisting of two little heaps of yams and a quantity of fruit, which seemed to be collected as at the other isles. On this occasion the greatest part of the inhabitants of the island had assembled

seemed in-
not been ad-
ugh not be-
mself in his

we heard
where our
people with
yards broke
signs of life
neighbour-
little. On
severity, we
an indeli-
oo'd. We
o otherwise
n, who was
vered from
such inide-
formed, has
eanour, and
ht beating.
pine-apple,
icles, in the
to suppose
be fruitless;
t his dinner,
ad left here

for sailing
in order to
a. His en-
n of receiv-
gataboo, in
t day he re-
g of two li-
which seem-
On this occa-
e island had
assembled

assembled; and, as we had many times experienced on such numerous meetings among their neighbouring islanders, gave us no small trouble to prevent their pilfering. Cudgelling, wrestling, and boxing, were exhibited for our entertainment; and in the latter, combatants of both sexes engaged.

The diversions were intended to have been finished with the bomai, or night dance; but an accident happened that either put a total stop to it, or at least prevented our staying on shore to see it. One of our people was surrounded by twenty or thirty of the natives, some of whom knocked him down, stripped him, and carried off all his clothes. Hearing of this, the Commodore seized two canoes, and a large hog; and insisted on the chief's not only causing the apparel to be restored, but also on the offender's being delivered up to him. Taoofa seemed greatly concerned at what had happened, and took the necessary steps to satisfy him. The people who were assembled were so alarmed at this affair, that most of them immediately fled. However, when they were informed that the Captain meant to take no other measures to revenge the insult, they resumed. One of the delinquents was soon delivered up to him, and a shirt and a pair of trousers restored. The remainder of the stolen goods not coming in before the evening, the Commodore was obliged to leave them, in order to go aboard; the sea running so high, that it was extremely difficult for the boats to get out of the creek with day-light, and would be attended with much more danger in the dark. He came ashore again the next morning, bringing with him a present for Taoofa, in return for what he had received from him. Being that there were but few people at the landing place, even those few not without their fears and apprehensions; but on the Captain's desiring Omai to assure them, that we did not mean to injure them; and having restored the canoes, and released the offender who had been delivered up to him, they resumed their usual cheer-

cheerfulness, and a large circle was presently formed, in which the chief and the principal men of the island took their respective places.

The remainder of the clothes were at length brought in, but having been torn of the man's back by pieces, they were not thought worth carrying on board. Taoofa shared the present he had received with three or four other chiefs, reserving a small part only for himself. This donation so far exceeded their expectation, that a venerable old chief told the Captain, they were not deserving of it, considering how little he had received from them, and the ill treatment one of his people had met with. Captain Cook continued with them, till they had emptied their bowl of kava; and then, after paying for the hog which he had taken the day before, returned on board, in company with Taoofa and one of Poulaho's servants, by whom he sent a piece of bar iron, as a parting mark of his esteem for that chief, that being as valuable a present as any he could possibly make.

We weighed soon after, and with a light breeze at S. E. stood out to sea, when Taoofa, and some other natives, left us. We found, on heaving up the anchor, that the cable had been much injured by the rocks. Besides this, we experienced that a most astonishing swell rolls in there from the S. W. Presently we observed a sailing canoe entering the creek before which we had anchored our ships. A few hours after a small canoe, conducted by four men, came off to us: for having but very little wind, we were still at no considerable distance from the land. We were informed by these men, that the sailing canoe which we had seen arrive, had brought directions to the people of Eooa, to furnish us with hogs; and that the king, and other chiefs, would be with us in the space of two or three days. They requested, therefore, that we would return to our former station. There was no reason to doubt the truth of this information; but being now clear of the land

land, it was not a sufficient inducement to bring us back; especially as we had already a sufficient stock of fresh provisions to last us in our passage to Otaheite. Besides Taoofa's present, we received a large quantity of yams at Eooa, in exchange for nails, &c. and added considerably to our supply of hogs. Finding that we would not return, these people left us in the evening, as did some others, who had come off in two canoes, with cocoa nuts and shaddocks, to barter for what they could get; their eagerness to possess more of our commodities, inducing them to follow us out to sea, and to continue their intercourse with us even to the last moment.

Quis

Quit the Friendly Islands with Regret—Time not misemployed in visiting the Friendly Islands—Variety of Refreshments to be procured there—Number of Islands, among which are Keppel's and Boscarwen's Islands—Account of Vavao, Hamoa, and Feejee—Method of calculating Distances by Time—Omai incapable of giving exact Information—Persons of the Inhabitants described—Their Diseases—Character—Manner of wearing the Hair in both Sexes—Of puncturing and painting their Bodies—Their Habits—Ornaments, &c.

WE have now taken leave of the Friendly Islands, and their inhabitants, after a cordial intercourse with the latter for between two and three months. Some differences indeed occasionally happened, on account of their natural propensity to thieving, though too frequently encouraged by the negligence and inattention of our people. These differences, however, were never attended with any fatal consequences; and few belonging to our ships parted from their friends without some regret. The time we continued here was not thrown away; and as we in a great measure subsisted upon the produce of the islands, we expended very little of our sea provisions. We carried with us a sufficient quantity of refreshments, to supply us till our arrival at another station, where we could again recruit. The Commodore rejoiced at having had an opportunity of serving these poor people, by leaving some useful animals among them; and that those intended for Otaheite had acquired fresh strength in the pastures of Tongataboo. The advantages we received by touching

ing here were great, and they were received without retarding the prosecution of our great object; the season for proceeding to the north being lost before we formed the resolution of visiting these islands.

Iron tools are the best articles for traffic here. Axes, hatchets, nails of all sizes, knives, raps, and files, are much demanded. Red cloth, white and coloured linen, looking-glasses, and beads, are also in great estimation; but of the latter, those which are blue are preferred to all others, especially the white ones. A hog might at any time be purchased by a string of large blue beads: it should, nevertheless, be observed, that articles merely ornamental, may be highly esteemed at one time, and disregarded at another. On our first arrival at Annamooka, the people were unwilling to take them in exchange for fruit; but when Feenou arrived, his approbation of them brought them into vogue, and stamped them with the value above-mentioned.

In return for the commodities just enumerated, all the refreshments that the islands produce may be procured. The yams produced by the Friendly Islands are excellent, and when grown to perfection, preserve well at sea: but their pork, plantains, and bread fruit, are inferior in quality to the same articles at Otaheite.

Good water is scarce in these islands. It may be found, indeed, in all of them, but not to serve the purposes of navigators; for either the situations are too inconvenient, or the quantities too inconsiderable. Whilst we lay at anchor under Kotoo, we were informed, that there was a stream of water at Kao, which ran from the mountains into the sea, on the S. W. side of the island. This intelligence may probably deserve the attention of future navigators.

We must include under the denomination of Friendly Islands, not only the group at Hapae, but also those which have been discovered to the N. nearly under the same meridian, as well as some others under the dominion of Tongataboo, which is the capital, and seat of government.

From the best information we could receive, this archipelago is very extensive. One of the natives enumerated one hundred and fifty islands; and Mr Anderson procured all their names.

The most considerable islands that we heard of in this neighbourhood, are Hamoa, Vavaoo, and Feejee; each of which is larger than Tongataboo; but it does not appear that any European has ever yet seen any one of them.

Hamoa lies two days sail N. W. from Vavaoo. It is said to be the largest of all their islands; affords harbours and good water, and produces, in abundance, all the articles of refreshment that are found at the places we visited. Poulaho frequently resides upon this island; and the people here are in high estimation at Tongataboo.

Feejee lies in the direction of N. W. by W. about three days sail from Tongataboo. It abounds with hogs, dogs, fowls, and such fruits and roots as are to be found in any of the others, and is much larger than Tongataboo; but not subject to its dominion, as the other islands of this archipelago are. Feejee and Tongataboo often engage in war against each other; and the inhabitants of the latter are often so much afraid of this enemy, that they bend the body forward, and cover the face with their hands, to express the sense of their inferiority to Feejee men. This is, indeed, no matter of surprize, for those of Feejee have rendered themselves formidable, by their dexterity in the use of bows and slings; but more so by their savage practice of eating such of their enemies as they kill in battle.

It has been insisted on, that extreme hunger first occasioned men to feed on human flesh; but where could be the inducement for the Feejee people to continue the practice in the midst of plenty? It is, held in detestation by the inhabitants of Tongataboo, who seem to cultivate the friendship of their savage neighbours of Feejee through fear; though they occasionally venture to skirmish with them on their own territory, and carry

off large quantities of red feathers as trophies. When a profound peace reigns between the two islands, they have frequent intercourse together; though it is probable they have not long been known to each other; or it might be supposed that Tongataboo, and its neighbouring islands, would before this time have been supplied with a breed of dogs, which are numerous at Feejee, and were not introduced at Tongataboo, when Captain Cook first visited it in 1773.

The colour of the natives of Feejee was at least a shade darker than that of the inhabitants of the other Friendly Islands. We saw one of the natives of Feejee, who had his left ear slit, and the lobe so stretched, that it almost extended to his shoulder; which singularity had been observed by Captain Cook at other islands of the South Sea, during his second voyage. The Feejee men were much revered here; not only on account of their power and cruelty in war but also for their ingenuity; for they greatly excel the inhabitants of Tongataboo in workmanship. Specimens were shewn us of their clubs and spears, which were ingeniously carved. We were also shewn some of their beautifully chequered cloth, variegated mats, earthen pots, and other articles, all of which displayed a superiority in the execution.

Feejee, as has been already mentioned, is three days sail from Tongataboo; these people having no other method of discovering the distance from island to island, but by mentioning the time required for the voyage in one of their canoes. That this might be ascertained with some precision, Captain Cook sailed in one of their canoes, and by repeated trials with the log, found that she went close hauled, in a gentle gale, seven miles in an hour. He supposed from this, that they will sail, with such breezes as in general blow in their seas, seven or eight miles an hour on an average. Each day, however, is not to be reckoned at twenty-four hours; for when they talk of one day's sail, they mean no more than from the morning to the evening, or ten or twelve

hours at the most. From the morning of the first day till the evening of the second, is with them two days sail. In the day they are guided by the sun ; and in the night by stars. When these are obscured they can only have recourse to the points from whence the winds and waves came upon the vessel. If at that time the winds and the waves should shift, they are quite bewildered, often missing their intended port, and being never heard of more. The story of Omai's countrymen, who were driven to Wateoo, convinces us, however, that those who are not heard of, are not always lost.

The harbour and anchoring place of Tongataboo, is superior to any we have met with among these islands, as well from its great security, as its capacity and goodness of bottom. The risk we ran in entering it from the N. should caution every future commander from attempting that passage again, especially with a ship of burden, since that by which we left it, may be pursued with greater ease and safety.

Though the harbour of Tongataboo has the preference, its water is exceeded in goodness, by that at Annamooka, and yet this cannot be reckoned good. Tolerable water may, nevertheless, be procured by digging holes near the side of the pond. Besides, Annamooka being nearly in the centre of the group, is the best situated for procuring refreshments from the others. There is a creek in the reef on the north side of the island, wherein two or three ships may lie securely.

After living among them between two and three months, it is reasonable to expect, that we should be able to clear up every difficulty, and to give a tolerable good account of their manners, customs, and institutions, civil as well as religious ; particularly as we had a person with us, who, by understanding their language as well as ours, might be able to act as an interpreter. But Omai was not qualified for that task. Unless we had before us the object or thing concerning which we wanted information, we found it difficult to obtain a competent knowledge from his explanations. Omai

was

was certainly more liable to make mistakes than we were: for having no curiosity, he never troubled himself with making remarks; and when he attempted to explain matters to us, his ideas were apparently so limited, and probably differed so much from ours, that his confused accounts, instead of instructing, often only perplexed us. Besides, we could seldom find a person among the natives, who had both the ability and inclination to give us the information we required. And many of them, we observed, appeared offended at being asked what they perhaps deemed frivolous questions. At Tongataboo, where we continued the longest, our situation was likewise unfavourable; being in a part of the country where, except fishers, there were but few inhabitants. With our visitors, as well as those we visited, it was always holiday; so that we could not observe what was really the domestic way of living among the natives. That we could not, therefore, in this situation, bring away satisfactory accounts of many things, is not the least surprising. Some of us, indeed, endeavoured, by diligent observation, to remedy those disadvantages; and we are indebted to Mr Anderson, for a considerable share of what is related in this and the following chapter.

The Friendly Islanders seldom exceed the common stature, (though some here were above six feet in height) and are strong and well proportioned. Their shoulders are in general broad; and we saw several who were really handsome, though their muscular disposition rather conveyed the idea of strength than of beauty. Their features are so various, that unless it be by a fullness at the point of the nose, which is common, it is impossible to fix any general likeness by which to characterize them. On the other hand, many genuine Roman noses and hundreds of European faces were seen among them. They have good eyes and teeth; but the latter are neither so well set nor so remarkably white as among the Indian nations. Few of them, however, have

have that uncommon thickneſs about the lips, ſo frequent in other iſlands.

The women are leſs diſtinguiſhed from the men by their features, than by their general form, which ſeems deſtitute of that ſtrong fleſhy firmneſs that appears in the latter. Though the features of ſome are very delicate, and a true index of their ſex laying claim to a conſiderable ſhare of beauty and expreſſion, yet the rule is not by any means ſo general, as in many other countries. This is generally, however, the moſt exceptionable part; for the bodies of moſt of the females are uſually well proportioned; and ſome are abſolutely perfect models of a beautiful figure. But the extraordinary ſmallneſs and delicacy of their fingers, which may be put in competition with any in Europe, ſeems to be the moſt remarkable diſtinction in the women.

The general colour among the natives is a caſt deeper than the copper brown; but ſeveral of both ſexes have a true olive complexion. Some of the women are even much fairer; owing, perhaps, to their being leſs expoſed to the ſun; as a tendency to corpulence, in ſome of the principal people, ſeems to be the natural conſequence of a more indolent life: a ſofter and clearer ſkin is alſo moſt frequently obſerved among the latter. Among the major part of the people, the ſkin is generally of a dull hue, with ſome degree of roughneſs, particularly the parts that are uncovered, occaſioned perhaps, by ſome cutaneous diſeaſe. We ſaw a man at Hapace perfectly white, and a child equally ſo at Anamooka. In all black nations ſuch phænomena are found, but their colour, it is imagined, proceeds from a diſeaſe.

Upon the whole, however, few natural defects or deformities are to be ſeen among them; though we obſerved two or three with their feet bent inwards. Neither are they exempt from ſome diſeaſes. Vaſt numbers of them are affected with the tetter or ringworm which leaves whitish ſerpentine marks behind it. But they have another diſeaſe of a more miſchievous conſe-

quence

quence, which is also very frequent, and appears on every part of the body, in large broad ulcers, discharging a thin, clear pus, some of which had a very virulent appearance, particularly on the face. Some, however, appeared to be cured of it, and others mending; but it was generally attended with the loss of the nose, or a considerable part of it. It being certainly known, and even acknowledged by themselves, that the natives were subject to this disease before they were visited by the English, it cannot be the effect of venereal contagion, notwithstanding the similarity of the symptoms; unless we adopt a supposition, that the venereal disorder was not introduced here by our people in 1773. It certainly was amongst them at this time; for soon after we arrived there, some of our people received the infection; and Captain Cook had the mortification to learn from thence, that all the care he took in 1773, to prevent the communication of this dreadful disease, had proved ineffectual. They do not seem, however, to regard it much; and, as we did not see many instances of its destroying effects, perhaps the climate and the way of living of these people may abate its virulence. Two other diseases are common among them; one of which is a firm swelling, which affects the legs and arms; the other is a tumour in the testicles, which sometimes exceed the size of the two fists. In other respects, they are remarkably healthy, not a single person having, during our stay, been confined to the house by any kind of sickness. Their strength and activity are in every respect answerable to their muscular appearance; and they exert both in such manner as to prove that they are as yet little debilitated by the numerous diseases that are the natural consequence of indolence.

The graceful mien and firmness of step with which they walk, are obvious proofs of their personal accomplishments. They consider this a thing so necessary to be acquired that their laughter was excited when they saw

saw us frequently stumbling upon the roots of trees, or other inequalities, in walking.

The mildness or good nature which they abundantly possess, is depicted on their countenances, which are totally free from that savage keenness which always marks the nations that are in a barbarous state. We might almost be induced to suppose, that they had been reared under the severest restrictions, to acquire so settled an aspect, such a command of their passions, and such a steadiness of conduct. At the same time they are open, chearful, and good humoured; though in the presence of the chiefs, they sometimes assume a degree of gravity, which has the appearance of reserve.

Their pacific disposition is thoroughly evinced, from their friendly reception of all strangers. Instead of attacking them openly or clandestinely, they have never appeared, in the smallest degree hostile; but, like the most civilized nations, have even courted an intercourse with their visitors, by bartering; a medium which unites all nations in a degree of friendship. So perfectly do they understand barter, that at first we supposed they had acquired the knowledge of it by trading with the neighbouring islands; but it afterwards appeared that they had hardly any traffic, except with Feejee. No nation perhaps in the world displayed in their traffic more honesty and less distrust. We safely permitted them to examine our goods, and they had the same implicit confidence in us. If either party became dissatisfied with his bargain, a re-exchange was made with mutual consent and satisfaction. They seem, upon the whole, to possess many of the most excellent qualities that adorn the human mind.

A propensity to thieving seems to be the only defect to sully their fair character. Those of all ages, and both sexes, were addicted to it in an uncommon degree. It should be considered, however, that this exceptionable part of their conduct existed merely with respect to us; for, in their general intercourse with each other, they

are
wh
aut
larg
the
the
amo
ed v
and
nativ
moti
desir
fort
haps,
appea
amon
to just
guilty
for the
stealin
The
means
their i
their p
and the
scheme
The
and str
The na
men, at
purple
first of
plaster
the rasp
and laid
effect of
They
their hai
some ha
Vol. II.

of trees, or
 abundantly
 which are
 ch always
 late. We
 y had been
 uire so set-
 ssions, and
 time they
 though in
 s assume a
 ance of re-
 nced, from
 nstead of at-
 have never
 ut, like the
 n intercourse
 lium which
 So perfect
 we supposed
 trading with
 ds appeared
 Feejee. Ne
 their traffi
 ly permitted
 the same im
 came dissatis
 s made wit
 em, upon the
 lent qualiti
 e only defe
 ges, and bot
 n degree.
 exceptionab
 respect to u
 other, the

are not, perhaps, more frequent than in other countries, where the dishonest practices of individuals should not authorize any indiscriminate censure on the people at large. Allowances should be made for the foibles of these poor islanders, whose minds were overpowered with the glare of new and captivating objects. Stealing, among civilized nations, denotes a character deeply stained with moral turpitude. But at the Friendly Islands, and others which we visited, the thefts committed by the natives, may have been occasioned by less culpable motives. They were stimulated solely by curiosity and desire to possess something new, and the property of a sort of people so different from themselves. And, perhaps, if a set of beings, seemingly as superior to us, as we appear to be to them, should make their appearance among us, it might be possible that our natural regard to justice would not be able to restrain many from being guilty of the same error. That this is the true motive for their propensity to this practice, is evident from their stealing every thing indiscriminately.

The thieving disposition of these islanders, was the means, however, of affording us some information as to their ingenuity and their quickness of intellects. For their petty thefts were managed with much dexterity; and those of greater consequence, with a settled plan or scheme, adapted to the importance of the objects.

The hair of these islanders is, in general, thick, straight, and strong; though some have it bushy or frizzled. The natural colour appears to be black, but many of the men, and some of the women, stain it of a brown, or purple colour; and a few give it an orange cast. The first of these colours is produced by applying a sort of plaister of burnt coral mixed with water; the second, by the raspings of a reddish wood, mixed into a poultice, and laid over the hair; and the third is said to be the effect of *turmeric root*.

They are so whimsical in their fashions of wearing their hair, that it is difficult to say which is most in vogue. Some have none on one side of the head, while it re-

mains long on the other side ; some have only a part of it cut short ; others have parted with the whole, except a single lock on one side. Some permit it to grow to its full length, without any of these mutilations. The women usually wear it short. The beards too are cut short ; and both sexes strip the hair from their arm-pits. The men are stained with a deep blue colour from the middle of the belly, to half way down the thighs. This is effected with a flat bone instrument, full of fine teeth, which by a stroke of a bit of stick introduces the juice of *dooe dooe* into the skin, by which means indelible marks are made. Lines and figures are thus traced, which, in some, are very elegant. The women have only some small lines, thus imprinted, in the inside of their hands. As a mark of distinction, their kings are exempted from this custom. The men are not circumcised, but rather supercised ; the operation consists in cutting off only a piece of the foreskin at the upper part, which is thus rendered incapable of ever covering the glans. They have no other aim in this operation, and only practise it from a notion of cleanliness.

The dress of both sexes is the same ; consisting of a piece of cloth or matting, about two yards in breadth, and two yards and a half in length. It is double before, and, like a petticoat, hangs down to the middle of the leg. That part of the garment which is above the girdle, is plaited into several folds, which extended, is sufficient to draw up and wrap round the shoulders. This, as to form, is the general dress ; but the fine matting, and long pieces of cloth, are worn only by the superior class of people. The inferior sort are contented with small pieces, and, very often, have only a covering made of plants, or the *maro*, a narrow piece of cloth, or matting like a sash. They pass this between the thighs and round the waist. It is seldom used but by the men. In their *haivas*, or grand entertainments, they have various dresses, which, though the same in form, are embellished more or less, with red feathers.

Both men and women occasionally defend their face
from

from the sun with little bonnets, made of various sorts of materials.

The ornaments, worn by those of either sex, are the same. Those which are most common are necklaces, made of the fruit of the pandanus, and various sweet smelling flowers, known by the general name of kahulla. Others consist of small shells, shark's teeth, the wing and leg-bones of birds, &c. all which are pendant upon the breast. In this manner they often wear a polished mother-of-pearl shell, or a ring, on the upper part of the arm; rings of tortoise-shell on the fingers; and several of these, joined together, formed into bracelets on the wrists.

Two holes are perforated in the lobes of the ears, in which they wear cylindrical bits of ivory, of the length of three inches, introduced at one hole and drawn out of the other; or bits of reed, filled with a yellow pigment. This appears to be a fine powder of turmeric, which the women rub all over their bodies, in the same manner as the European ladies use their rouge upon their cheeks.

Personal cleanliness is their delight, to produce which they bathe frequently in the ponds. Though the water has an intolerable stench in most of them, they always prefer them to the sea; and they are so sensible that their skin is injured with salt water, that when they are obliged to bathe in the sea, they have fresh water poured over them to wash off its bad effects. They are extravagantly fond of cocoa nut oil; a great quantity of which they pour upon their head and shoulders, and rub the body all over with a smaller quantity.

Various Employments of the Women of the Friendly Islands—Occupations of the Men—Agriculture—Manner of building their Houses—Their Furniture—Canoes—Working-Tools—Cordage—Fishing Tackle—Instruments of Music—Weapons—Vegetable and Animal Food—Methods of Cooking—Diversions—Marriage—Mourning Ceremony—Custom of cutting off their little Finger—Their Deities—Sentiments concerning the Soul, and a future State—Their Piatoakas—Form of Government—Power of the Chiefs—Mode of paying Homage to the King—Taboo incurred by it—Precaution against Famine—Of the Tammahas—Language—Tides.

THE domestic life of these people is neither so laborious as to be disagreeable, nor so free from employment as to suffer them to degenerate into indolence. Their country has been so favoured by nature, that the first can scarcely occur; and their disposition appears to be a sufficient bar to the last. By this fortunate concurrence of circumstances, their necessary labour seems to yield in its turn to their amusements and recreations, which are never interrupted by the thoughts of being obliged to recur to business, till they are induced by satiety to wish for that transition. The employment of the women is not difficult; and is generally such as they can execute in the house. The making of cloth is entirely entrusted to their care; the process of which manufacture has been already described. Their cloth is of different degrees of fineness: the coarser kind does not receive the impression of any pattern: but of the finer

finer sort, they have various patterns, differently coloured. The cloth in general is able to resist water for some time; but that which has the strongest glaze, is the least liable to be penetrated by that fluid.

Another manufacture, which is also consigned to the women, is that of their mats, which excel those of most other countries, both with respect to their texture and their beauty. Of these mats there are seven or eight different sorts, which they either wear or sleep upon; and many are merely ornamental. The last are principally made from the tough, membraneous part of the stock of the plantain tree; those that they wear are generally composed of the pandanus; and the coarser kind on which they sleep, are formed from a plant called evarra. There are several other articles of less importance, that employ their females; as combs, of which they make great quantities; and small baskets made of the same substance as the mats, and others composed of the fibrous husk of the cocoa nut, either interwoven with beads, or plain; all which are finished with extraordinary neatness and taste.

The province of the men is, as might reasonably be expected, far more laborious and extensive than that of the other sex. Architecture, boat building, agriculture, and fishing, are the principal objects of their care. As cultivated roots and fruits form their chief subsistence, they find it necessary to practise husbandry, which they have brought by their diligence to some degree of perfection. In planting yams and plantains, they dig small holes for their reception, and afterwards root up the surrounding grass. The instruments used by them for this purpose, are called hoo; and are nothing more than stakes of various lengths, flattened and sharpened to an edge at one end; and the largest ones have a short piece fixed transversely, by means of which they press the implement into the ground with the foot. When they plant the two above-mentioned vegetables, they observe such particular exactness, that which-ever way
you

you turn your eyes, the rows present themselves complete and regular.

The bread fruit and cocoa nut trees are dispersed about, without any order; and when they have arrived at a certain height, give them little or no trouble. The same may be said of another large tree, which produces a roundish compressed nut, called *eeffee*; and of a smaller tree bearing an oval nut, with two or three triangular kernels. The *kappe* is in general planted regularly, and in large spots; but the *mawbaha* is interspersed among other things, as are also the yams and jeejee. Sugar-cane is usually in small spots, closely crowded. The mulberry, of which the cloth is made, is kept very clean, and has a good space allowed for it. The pandanus is commonly planted in a row, close together, at the sides of the fields.

They display very little taste or ingenuity in the construction of their houses. Those of the lower class of people are wretched huts, scarce sufficient to shelter them from the weather. Those of the better sort are larger, as well as more commodious and comfortable. A house of a middling size is of the following dimensions, viz. about twelve feet in height, twenty in breadth, and thirty in length. Their houses are, properly speaking, thatched roofs or sheds, supported by rafters and posts. The floor is raised with earth smoothed, and covered with thick matting. Some of their habitations are open all round; but the major part of them are enclosed on the weather side with strong mats, or with branches of the cocoa nut tree, plaited or interwoven with each other. A thick mat, about three feet broad, bent into a semi-circular form, and placed edgewise, with the ends touching the side of the house, encloses a sufficient space for the master and mistress to sleep in. The rest of the family sleep upon any part of the floor, the unmarried men and women lying apart from each other. If the family is large, there are little huts adjoining, in which the servants sleep. Their whole furniture consists of some wooden stools, which serve them
for

for pillows; baskets of different sizes, in which they put their combs, fish hooks, and tools; two or three wooden bowls, in which they make kava; some cocoa nut shells, a few gourds, and a bundle or two of cloth.

They are very skilful in building their canoes, which indeed are the most perfect of their mechanical productions. The double ones are made sufficiently large to carry about fifty persons, and sail at a great rate. Upon them they generally fix a hut or shed, for the reception of the master and his family. They are made of the bread fruit tree, and the workmanship is extremely neat. They appear on the outside as if they were composed of one solid piece; but upon closer inspection, they are found to consist of a great number of pieces, which fit each other exactly, and by means of a ledge on the inside are secured together with cocoa nut line. The single canoes are furnished with an outrigger. The only tools which they make use of in the construction of these boats, are hatchets, or adzes, of a smooth black stone; augers, made of shark's teeth; and rasps, composed of the rough skin of a fish, fastened on flat pieces of wood. The same tools are all they have for other works, except shells, which serve them for knives. Their cordage is made of the fibres of the cocoa nut husk, which, though not above ten inches long, they plait about the size of a quill, to whatever length is required, and roll it up in balls; from which the ropes of a larger size are made, by twisting several of those together. Their fishing lines are as strong and even as our best cord. Their small hooks consist entirely of pearl shell; but the large ones are only covered with it on the back; and the points of both are in general of tortoise shell. With the large hooks they catch albigores, and bonnetos, by putting them to a bamboo-rod, about twelve feet long, with a line of the same length. They have also numbers of small seines, some of which are of the most delicate texture.

Their musical reeds or pipes, which resemble the surnix of the ancients, have eight or ten pieces placed parallel

parallel to each other, most of which are of unequal lengths. Their flutes are made of a joint of bamboo, about eighteen inches long, and are closed at both ends, having a hole near each end, and four others; two of which, and only one of the first, are used by them in playing. They close the left nostril with the thumb of the left hand, and blow into the hole at one end with the other nostril. The fore finger of the right hand is applied to the lowest hole on the right, and the middle finger of the left, to the first hole on that side. In this manner, with only three notes, they produce a pleasing, though simple music. Their nassa, or drum, has been already described.

Their warlike weapons are clubs, curiously ornamented, spears, and darts. They also make bows and arrows, but these are intended for amusements, such as shooting at birds, and not for the purposes of war. Their stools, or rather pillows, are about two feet long, but only four or five inches in height, and near four in breadth, inclining downwards towards the middle, with four strong legs and circular feet; the whole composed of brown or black wood, neatly polished, and sometimes inlaid with ivory. They also inlay with ivory the handles of fly-flaps; and with a shark's tooth, shape bones into figures of men, birds, &c.

Their vegetable diet principally consists of plantains, cocoa nuts, bread fruit, and yams. Their chief articles of animal food are hogs, fish, and fowl; but the common people frequently eat rats. Their hogs, fowls, and turtle, however, seem to be only occasional dainties, reserved for persons of rank. Their food is in general dressed by baking, as at Otaheite; and they make from different sorts of fruit, several dishes which are very good. They sometimes boil their fish in the green leaves of the plantain tree, which serve as a bag to hold both fish and water: having tied them up, they wrap them again in three or four other leaves, and place them upon stones heated for the purpose: when they are sufficiently done, they not only eat the fish, but drink

the liquor or soup. They are not very cleanly either in their cookery, or their manner of eating. Their usual drink at their meals is water, or cocoa nut milk, the kava being only their morning beverage. The food that is served up to the chiefs, is generally laid upon plantain leaves. The king, at his meals, was commonly attended upon by three or four of the natives, one of whom cut large pieces of the fish, or of the joint, another afterwards divided it into mouthfuls, and the rest stood by with cocoa nuts, and whatever else he might happen to want. We never observed a large company sit down to a sociable meal, by eating from the same dish. The women are not excluded from taking their meals with the men; but there are certain ranks that are not allowed either to eat or drink together. This distinction begins with his majesty, but we know not where it ends.

They rise at day-break, and retire to rest as soon as it becomes dark. They, for the most part, sleep also in the day time, when the weather is very hot. They are fond of associating together; in consequence of which, it is not uncommon to find several houses empty, and the possessors of them assembled in some other house, or upon some convenient spot in the neighbourhood, where they relax themselves by conversation and other amusements. Their private diversions chiefly consist of dancing, singing, and music. When two or three women snap their fingers, and sing in concert, it is called *oobai*; but when there are more, they form several parties, each of which sings in a different key, which constitutes an agreeable melody, and is termed *beeva* or *baiva*. The songs are generally accompanied with the music of their flutes. The dances both of the men and women, are performed with an ease and grace which are difficult to be described.

We could not determine with precision, whether their marriages were rendered durable by any kind of solemn contract: it is certain, however, that the major part of the people contented themselves with one wife.

The chiefs, indeed, commonly have several women, though there was only one who (as we thought) was considered in the light of mistress of the family. Though female chastity seemed to be held in little estimation, not a single breach of conjugal fidelity happened, to our knowledge, during our whole continuance at these islands; nor were the unmarried women of rank more liberal of their favours. But there were great numbers of a very different character.

The concern shewn by these islanders for the dead, is a strong proof of their humanity. Besides the tooge, which we have mentioned before, and burnt circles and scars, they strike a shark's tooth into their heads till the blood flows considerably, beat their teeth with stones, and thrust spears not only through their cheeks into their mouths, but also into the inner part of their thighs, and into their sides. The more painful operations, however, are only practised when they mourn the death of those who are most nearly connected with them. When one of them dies, he is wrapped up in mats and cloth, and then interred. The fiatookas seem to be appropriated to the chiefs and other persons of distinction, as their burial places; but the inferior people have no particular spot set apart for their interment. It is uncertain what part of the mourning ceremony follows immediately afterwards; but there is something besides the general one which is continued for a considerable time, the funeral of Mareewagee's wife being attended with ceremonies of five days duration. They seem to consider death as a great evil, to avert which they practise a very singular custom. When Captain Cook, during his second voyage, first visited these islands, he observed that many of the natives had one or both of their little fingers cut off; of the reason of which mutilation he could not then obtain a satisfactory account. But he was now informed, that they perform this operation when they are afflicted with some dangerous disorder, which they imagine may bring them to the grave. They suppose, that the little finger will be accepted

cepted of by the Deity, as a kind of propitiatory sacrifice sufficiently efficacious to procure their recovery. In cutting it off, they make use of a stone-hatchet. There was scarcely one person in ten who was not thus mutilated; and they sometimes cut so close, as to encroach upon that bone of the hand which joins the amputated finger. It is also common for the lower class of people to cut off a joint of their little finger, on account of the sickness of the chiefs to whom they respectively belong.

When the rigid strictness with which they perform their mourning and religious ceremonies is considered, it might be expected, that they endeavoured thereby to secure to themselves eternal happiness; but their principal object regards things merely temporal; for they have apparently little conception of future punishment for sins committed in the present life. They believe, however, that they meet with just punishment upon earth; and, therefore, put every method in practice to render their divinities propitious. They admit a plurality of deities, all of them inferior to *Kallafootonga*, who they say is a female, and the supreme author of almost things, residing in the heavens, and directing the wind, rain, thunder, &c. They are of opinion, that when she is much displeased with them, the productions of the earth are blasted, many things consumed by lightning, and themselves afflicted with sickness and death; but that when her anger abates, every thing is immediately restored to its former state. Among their subordinate deities, they mention *Futtasaihe*, or *Footafona*, who has the administration of the sea, and its productions; *Toofooa-toobooloo*, god of the clouds and fog; *Tal-tetuboo*, *Mattaba*, *Tareeava*, and others. The same system of religion does not extend all over the Friendly Islands; the supreme deity of Hapae, for instance, being called *Alo Alo*. They entertain very absurd opinions relative to the power and various attributes of these beings, who, they suppose, have no further concern with them after death. They have, however, juster sentiments respecting the immortality and immateriality of the soul;

which they call life, the living principle, or an *Olooa*, that is, a divinity. They imagine that, immediately after death, the souls of their chiefs are separated from their bodies, and go to a delightful region called *Booleotoo*, the god of which is named *Goolebo*. By this *Goolebo* they probably personify death. His country, according to their mythology, is the general repository of the dead; and those who are once conveyed thither, are no more subject to death, but feast on all the favourite productions of their native soil, with which this blissful abode is plentifully furnished. As for the souls of people of an inferior class, they are supposed by them to suffer a kind of transmigration; or are eaten up (they say) by a bird called *loata*, which walks upon the graves with that intent.

They do not worship any visible part of the creation, or any thing made by their own hands. They make no offerings of dogs, hogs, and fruit (as is the custom at Otaheite) unless emblematically. But there seems to be no reason to doubt of their offering up human sacrifices. Their *fiatookas*, or *morais*, are, in general, burying grounds and places of worship: some of them, however, appeared to be appropriated only to the former purpose; but these were small and greatly inferior to the rest.

We are very little acquainted with their form of government. A subordination, resembling the feudal system of our ancestors in Europe, is established among them; but of its subdivisions, and the constituent parts, we are ignorant. Though some of them informed us that the king's power is unbounded, and that he has the absolute disposal of the lives and properties of his subjects; yet the few circumstances that offered themselves to our observation, contradicted, rather than confirmed the idea of despotic sway. *Mareewagee*, *Feenou*, and *Old Toobou*, acted each the part of a petty sovereign, and not unfrequently counteracted the measures of the king. Nor was his court superior in splendor to those of *Old Toobou* and *Mareewagee*, who next to his majesty were the most potent chiefs in these islands; and, next

after them, Feenou appeared to stand highest in rank and authority. But, however independent on the king the principal men may be, the inferior people are totally subject to the will of the chiefs to whom they severally belong.

The island of Tongataboo is divided into numerous districts, each of which has its peculiar chief, who distributes justice, and decides disputes within his own territory. Most of these chieftains have estates in other islands, whence they procure supplies. The king, at stated times, receives the product of his distant domains at Tongataboo, which is not only the usual place of his residence, but the abode of most persons of distinction among these islands. Its inhabitants frequently call it the Land of Chiefs, and stigmatize the subordinate isles with the appellation of Lands of Servants.

The chiefs are styled by the people lords of the earth, and also of the sun and sky. The royal family assume the name of Futtasaihe, from the god distinguished by that appellation, who is probably considered by them as their tutelary patron. The king's peculiar title is simply Tooe Tonga. The order and decorum observed in his presence, and likewise in that of the chiefs, are truly admirable. Whenever he sits down, all the attendants seat themselves before him, forming a semicircle, and leaving a sufficient space between them and him, into which no one, unless he has particular business, presumes to come. Nor is any one suffered to sit or pass behind him, or even near him, without his permission. When a person wishes to speak to his majesty, he comes forward, and having seated himself before him, delivers in a few words what he has to say; then, after being favoured with an answer, retires. If the king speaks to any one, the latter gives an answer from his seat, unless he is to receive an order; in which case he rises from his place, and seats himself cross-legged* before

* It may be proper to mention here, on the authority of Capt. King,

fore his majesty. To speak to the king standing, would here be considered as a glaring mark of rudeness.

None of the most civilized nations have ever exceeded these islanders in the great order and regularity maintained on every occasion, in ready and submissive compliance with the commands of their chiefs, and in the perfect harmony that subsists among all ranks. Such a behaviour manifests itself in a remarkable manner, whenever their chiefs harangue a body of them assembled together, which frequently happens. The greatest attention and most profound silence are observed during the harangue; and whatever might have been the purport of the oration, we never saw a single instance when any one of those who were present shewed signs of his being displeased, or seemed in the least inclined to dispute the declared will of the speaker.

It is a peculiar privilege annexed to the person of the king, not to be punctured, nor circumcised, or rather supercised, as all his subjects are. Whenever he walks out, all who meet him must sit down till he has passed. No person is suffered to be over his head; but, on the contrary, all must come under his feet. The method of doing homage to him, and the other chiefs, is as follows: the person who is to pay obeisance, squats down before the great personage, and bows the head down to the sole of his foot, which he taps or touches with the under and upper side of the fingers of each hand; then rising up, he retires. We had reason to think, that his majesty cannot refuse any one who is desirous of paying him this homage, which is called by the natives *moe moea*; for the people would frequently think proper to shew him these marks of submission when he was walking; and he was on those occasions obliged to stop, and hold up one of his feet behind him, till they had performed this respectful ceremony. This, to fo

cor-

King, that this posture is peculiar to the men; for the females always sit with both their legs thrown a little on one side.

corpulent and unwieldy a man as Poulaho, must have been painful and troublesome; and we have sometimes seen him endeavour, by running, to get out of the way, or to reach a convenient place for sitting down. The hands, after having been thus applied, become in some cases useless for a little time; for till they are washed they must not touch food of any sort. This prohibition, in a country where water is far from being plentiful, would be attended with inconvenience, if a piece of any juicy plant, which they can immediately procure, being rubbed over the hands, did not serve for the purpose of purification. When the hands are in this situation they term it *taboo rema*; the former word generally signifying forbidden, and the latter implying hand. When the taboo is incurred by doing homage to a person of rank, it may thus easily be washed off; but in several other cases it must continue for a certain period. We have often seen women who have been taboo rema not fed by themselves, but by others. The interdicted person, after the limited time has elapsed, washes herself in one of their baths, which are in general dirty ponds of brackish water. She then waits upon the sovereign, and after having paid the customary obeisance, takes hold of his foot, which she applies to her shoulders, breast, and other parts: he then embraces her on both shoulders, and she immediately retires, purified from her uncleanness. If it be always necessary to have recourse to his majesty for this purpose (of which we are not certain, though Omai assured us it was) it may be one reason for his travelling very frequently from one island to another.

The word taboo has a great latitude of signification. They call human sacrifices *tangata taboo*; and when any particular thing is prohibited to be eaten or made use of, they say it is taboo. They informed us, that if the king should go into a house belonging to one of his subjects, that house would in consequence become taboo, and could never be again inhabited by the owner of it; so that wherever his majesty travels there are houses

houses peculiarly assigned for his accommodation. At this time Old Toobou presided over the taboo; that is, if Omai did not misunderstand those who gave him the intelligence, he and his deputies had the inspection of all the produce of the island, taking care that each individual should cultivate and plant his quota, and directing what should and what should not be eaten. By so prudent a regulation, they take effectual precautions against a famine; sufficient ground is employed in raising provisions; and every article is secured from unnecessary consumption. By another good regulation, an officer of rank is appointed to superintend the police. This department was administered while we continued among them, by Feenou, whose business (as we were informed) it was, to punish all delinquents: he was also generalissimo, or commander in chief of the forces of the islands. Poulaho himself declared to us, that if he should become a bad man, Feenou would dethrone and kill him; by which he doubtless meant, that if he neglected the duties of his high station, or governed in manner that would prove prejudicial to the public welfare, Feenou would be desired by the other chiefs, or by the collective body of the people, to depose him from his sovereignty, and put him to death. A monarch thus subject to controul and punishment for abuse of power, cannot justly be deemed a despotic prince.

When we take into consideration the number of islands of which this state consists, and the distance at which some of them are removed from the seat of government, attempts to throw off the yoke of subjection might be apprehended. But they informed us, that this circumstance never happens. One reason of their not being thus embroiled in domestic commotions may be this; that all the principal chiefs take up their residence at Tongataboo. They also secure the dependence of the other isles, by the decisive celerity of their operations; for if a seditious and popular man should start up in any of them, Feenou, or whoever happens to hold his office, is immediately dispatched thither to

pul

pu
inf
ly
par
of t
dies
it is
ceas
prov
crow
circu
Poul
at lea
elapse
Tasim
them
Tasim
this ti
down
for the
so me
their h
ting th
pole o
pened
taihe v
ceeded
is the
It n
vereign
person
wife;
tioned
to Pou
guishe
When
formed
him a
Vol. I

put him to death ; by which means they extinguish an insurrection while it is yet in embryo.

The different classes of their chiefs seemed to be nearly as numerous as among us ; but there are few, comparatively speaking, that are lords of extensive districts of territory. It is said, that when a person of property dies, all his possessions devolve on the sovereign ; but that it is customary to give them to the eldest son of the deceased, with this condition annexed, that he should provide out of the estate for the other children. The crown is hereditary ; and we know, from a particular circumstance, that the Futtasaihes, of which family is Poulaho, have reigned in a direct line for the space of at least one hundred and thirty-five years, which have elapsed between our present visit to these islands and Tasman's discovery of them. Upon our inquiring of them whether any traditional account of the arrival of Tasman's ships had been preserved among them till this time, we found that this history had been delivered down to them from their ancestors, with great accuracy : for they said that his two ships resembled ours, and also mentioned the place where they had lain at anchor, their having continued but a few days, and their quitting that station to go to Annamooka ; and for the purpose of informing us how long ago this affair had happened, they communicated to us the name of the Futtasaihe who reigned at that time, and those who had succeeded him in the sovereignty, down to Poulaho, who is the fifth monarch since that period.

It might naturally be imagined that the present sovereign of the Friendly Isles had the highest rank of any person in his dominions. But we found it to be otherwise ; for Latoolibooloo, who has been already mentioned, and three women, are superior in some respects to Poulaho himself. These great personages are distinguished by the title of Tammaha, which implies a chief. When we made inquiry concerning them, we were informed that the late king, father of Poulaho, left behind him a sister of equal rank, and older than himself ;

that she, by a native of Feejee, had a son and two daughters; and that these three persons, as well as their mother, are of higher rank than the king. We endeavoured to discover the reason of this pre-eminence of the Tammahas, but without effect. The mother and one of her daughters, named Tooela-kaipa, reside at Vavaoo. The other daughter, called Moungoula-kaipa, and Latoolibooloo the son, dwell at Tongataboo. Moungoula-kaipa is the lady who has been mentioned as having dined with Capt. Cook on the 21st of June. Latoolibooloo was supposed by his countrymen to be disordered in his senses. At Eooa, or Middleburg, they shewed us a considerable quantity of land, which was said to be his property; and we saw there a son of his, a child who was honoured with the same title that his father enjoyed.

The language of these islands bears a striking resemblance to that of New Zealand, of Otaheite, and the Society Isles. The pronunciation of these people differs indeed in many instances from that both of Otaheite and New Zealand; but notwithstanding that, a great number of words are either very little changed or exactly the same. The language, as spoken by the Friendly Islanders, is sufficiently copious to express all their ideas; and besides being tolerably harmonious in common conversation, is easily adapted to the purposes of music. They have terms to signify numbers as far as a hundred thousand, beyond which they either would not or could not reckon.

The latitude of that part of Tongataboo where our observatory was erected, which was near the middle of the N. E. side of the island, was, according to the most accurate observations, 21 d. 8 m. 19 s. S. and its longitude was 184 d. 55 m. 18 s. E.

The tides are more considerable at the Friendly Islands, than at any other of Captain Cook's discoveries in this ocean, that are situate within either of the tropics. At Annamooka the tide rises and falls about six feet, upon a perpendicular. At Tongataboo, it rises
and

an
ch
dr

Hea
tu
fo
O
pr
ha
Fea
Om
ere
Gro
doo
Ship

W
in the
four lea
flood to
when, t
ship ab
other ta
consider
On th
S. W. a
We stre
thing re

and falls four feet and three quarters on the full and change days; and three feet and a half at the quadratures.

Heavy Squall—The Island of Toobovai discovered—Its Situation, Extent, and Produce—Description of the Persons, Dress, and Canoes, of its Inhabitants—Arrival in Obeitepeba Bay at Otabeite—Omai's Reception—His imprudent Conduct—Account of two Spanish Ships which had twice visited Otabeite—Great Demand for red Feathers—Captain Cook visits a Chief, who was said by Omai to be the God of Bolabola—Account of the House erected by the Spaniards—Inscriptions—Allowance of Grog lessened—The Captain's Interview with Wabeia-dooa—Description of a Toopapaoa—An Enthusiast—The Ships anchor in Matavia Bay.

WE had now taken our final leave of the Friendly Islands. On the 17th of July, at eight o'clock in the evening, Eooa bore N. E. by N. distant three or four leagues. The wind blew a fresh gale at E. We stood to the S. till after six o'clock the next morning, when, from the same direction, a sudden squall took our ship aback; and before we could trim the ships on the other tack, the main-sail and the top-gallant sails were considerably torn.

On the 19th and 20th, the wind kept between the S. W. and S. E. then it veered to the E. N. E. and N. We stretched to the E. S. E. without meeting with any thing remarkable till the 29th, at seven o'clock in the

evening, when we had a very heavy squall of wind from the N. We were, at this time, under single reefed top-sails, courses, and stay-sails. Two of the latter were almost demolished by the wind, and it was with the utmost difficulty that we saved the other sails. This squall being over, we saw several lights moving about on board the Discovery; whence we conjectured that something had given way; and, the next morning, we perceived that her main-top-mast had been lost. Both wind and weather remained very unsettled till noon, when the latter cleared up, and the former settled in the N. W. quarter. We were now in the latitude of 28 d. 6 m. S. and our longitude was 198 d. 23 m. E. We saw some pintado birds, which were the first we had seen, since we left the land.

At noon, on the 31st, Captain Clerke made a signal to speak with Captain Cook; and afterwards informed him, that the head of the main-mast had sprung, and in such a manner, as to render the rigging of another top-mast extremely dangerous; that he must therefore rig something lighter in its place. He further informed him, that he had lost his main-top-gallant-yard; and had not another on board, nor a spar to make one. Captain Cook sent him the Resolution's sprit-sail-top-sail-yard, which supplied this want for the present. The next day, by getting up a jury-top-mast, on which he set a mizen-top-sail, he was enabled to keep way with the Resolution.

We steered E. N. E. and N. E. without meeting with any remarkable occurrence till the morning of the 8th of August, at eleven o'clock; when land was observed bearing N. N. E. about nine or ten leagues distant. At first it appeared like so many separate islands; but, as we approached, we found, it was all connected, and formed one and the same island. We steered directly for it with a fine gale, and, at half past six in the afternoon, it extended from N. by E. to N. N. E. distant three or four leagues.

At day-break, the next morning, we steered for the N. W.

N. W. side of the island, and as we stood round its S. W. part, we saw it guarded by a reef of coral rock, extending, in some places, at least a mile from the land, and a high surf breaking upon it. As we drew near, we saw people walking or running along shore, on several parts of the coast, and, in a short time after, when we had reached the lee side of the island, we saw two canoes launched, in which were about a dozen men, who paddled towards us.

In order to give these canoes time to come up with us, as well as to found for anchorage, we shortened sail; and at the distance of half a mile from the reef, we found from forty to thirty-five fathoms water. The canoes, after having advanced within pistol shot of the ships, suddenly stopped. Omai was desired, as was usual on such occasions, to endeavour to prevail upon the men in them to come nearer; but no arguments could induce them to trust themselves within our reach. They often pointed eagerly to the shore with their paddles, at the same time calling to us to go thither; and many of their people who were standing upon the beach, held up something white in their hands, which we construed as an invitation for us to land. We could easily have accomplished this, there being good anchorage without the reef, and an opening in it, through which the canoes had passed, which had no surf upon it. But the Captain did not chuse to risk the advantage of a fair wind, in order to examine an island, that appeared to be but of little consequence. We required no refreshments, if we had been certain of meeting with them there, and therefore, after making several unsuccessful attempts to prevail upon these people to come near us, we made sail to the N. and left them; having first learned that the name of their island was Toobouai. It is situated in the latitude of 23 d. 25 m. S. and in 210 d. 37 m. E. longitude.

The greatest extent of this island, in any direction, is not above five or six miles. Small, however, as it appears, there are hills in it of a considerable elevation; at the

the foot of which, is a narrow border of flat land, extending almost all round it, bordered with a white sand beach. The hills are covered with herbage, except a few rocky cliffs, with patches of trees interspersed to their summits. This island, as we were informed by the men in the canoes, is plentifully stocked with hogs and fowls; and produces the several kinds of fruits and roots that are to be met with at the other islands in this neighbourhood.

From the conversation we had with those who came off to us, we discovered that the inhabitants of Toobouai speak the Otaheite language; an indubitable proof that they are of the same nation. Those whom we saw in the canoes, were a stout copper coloured people; some wearing their hair (which was straight and black) flowing about the shoulders, and others having it tied in a bunch on the crown of the head. Their faces were roundish and full, but the features flat; and their countenances expressed a degree of natural ferocity. Their covering was a piece of narrow stuff wrapped round the waist, and passing between the thighs; but some of those whom we beheld upon the beach, were completely clothed in white. Some of our visitors, in the canoes, had their necks ornamented with pearl shells; and one of them continued blowing a large conch shell, to which a reed, of about two feet long, was fixed; he began in a long tone, without any variation; and afterwards converted it into a kind of musical instrument. Whether the blowing of the conch portended any thing, we cannot say, but we never found it the messenger of peace.

The length of their canoes appeared to be about thirty feet, and they rose about two feet above the surface of the water, as they floated. The fore part projected a little; the after part rose to the height of two or three feet, with a gradual curve, and, like the upper part of the sides, was carved all over. The rest of the sides were ornamented with flat white shells curiously disposed. There were eight men in one of the canoes, and

and seven in the other. They were conducted with small paddles, whose blades were almost circular; and they sometimes paddled, with the two opposite sides so close together, that they appeared to be but one boat; the rowers occasionally turning their faces to the stern, and pulling that way, without paddling the canoes round. Seeing we were determined to leave them, they stood up, and repeated something aloud; but we knew not whether they were expressing their enmity, or friendship. It is certain, however, that they had not any weapons with them; nor could we with our glasses discover, that those on shore were armed.

Leaving the island, we steered to the N. with a fresh gale, and, at day-break, on the 12th, we perceived the island of Maitea. Otaheite appeared soon after; the point of Oheitepeha Bay bearing W. about four leagues distant. We steered for this bay, intending to anchor there, in order to draw some refreshments from the S. E. part of the island, before we proceeded to Matavai, where we expected our principal supply. We had a fresh gale till two o'clock in the afternoon; when, at about a league from the bay, the wind suddenly died away. About two hours after, we had sudden squalls, with rain, from the E. About nine o'clock, we were obliged to stand out, and spend the night at sea.

As we drew near the island, we were attended by several canoes, each conducted by two or three men. But, as they were of the lower class, Omai seemed to take no particular notice of them, nor they of him. They did not even know that he was one of their countrymen, though they had for some time conversed with him. At length a chief, whom Captain Cook had known before, named Ootee, and Omai's brother-in-law, who happened to be now at this corner of the island, and three or four others, all of whom knew Omai, before he embarked with Captain Furneaux, came on board. Yet there was nothing in the least tender or striking in their meeting, but, on the contrary, a perfect indifference on both sides, till Omai, conducting his brother into the cabin,

cabin, opened a drawer, and gave him a few red feathers. This circumstance being soon communicated to the rest of the natives on deck, Ootee, who before would hardly speak to him, now begged, that they might be *tayos* (friends) and exchange names. Omai accepted of the honour, and a present of red feathers ratified the agreement; and Ootee, by way of recompence, sent ashore for a hog. It was evident, however, to all of us, that it was not the man, but his property, that they esteemed. Had he not exhibited his treasure of red feathers, a commodity highly estimated in the island, it is a matter of great doubt whether they would have bestowed a single cocoa nut upon him. Such was Omai's first reception among his countrymen, and we never expected it would be otherwise; but we supposed, that the valuable cargo of presents, with which he had been loaded by the liberality of his friends in England, would be the certain means of raising him into consequence among the first persons throughout the extent of the Society Islands. This, indeed, must have been the case, had he conducted himself with any degree of prudence; but he paid little or no attention to the repeated advice of his well-wishers, and laid himself open to every imposition.

We understood from the natives who came off to us, that since Captain Cook last visited this island in 1774, two other ships had twice been in Oheitepeha Bay, and had left animals there, like those we had on board. But on inquiry into the particulars, we found, that they consisted only of hogs, dogs, goats, a bull, and the male of another animal, which they so imperfectly described, that we could not conjecture what it was. These ships, they informed us, had come from a place called Reema, which we supposed to be Lima, the capital of Peru, and that these late visitors were consequently Spaniards. They told us, that the first time they arrived, they built a house, and left behind them two priests, a boy or servant, and a person called Mateena; taking away with them, when they sailed, four of the natives; that about

feathers. to the rest ould hard- ht be *tayas* ted of the the agree- sent ashore f us, that it y esteemed. feathers, a is a matter bestowed a ai's first re- er expected at the valu- been loaded ould be the ence among the Society case, had he ence; but he advice of his very imposi-

ten months afterwards, the same ships returned, bringing back only two of the natives, the other two having died at Lima; and that, after a short stay, they took away the people they had left; but that the house which they erected was left standing.

News having been propagated on shore, of red feathers being on board our ships, we were, early the next morning, surrounded by a multitude of canoes, crowded with people, with plenty of hogs and fruits. A quantity of feathers, which might be taken from the body of a tom-tit, would, at that time, purchase a hog of forty or fifty pounds weight. But as the whole ships' crew were possessed of some of this precious article of trade, it decreased above five hundred per cent. in its value in a few hours. However, the balance, even then, was considerably in our favour, and red feathers still preserved their superiority over every other commodity. Some of the islanders would not dispose of a hog, without receiving an axe in exchange; but nails, and beads, and many other trinkets, which, during our former voyages, were held in high estimation at this island, were now so much despised, that few would even deign to look at them.

Not having wind in the morning, it was nine o'clock before we could anchor in the bay, when we moored with the two bowers. We had not long anchored, before Omai's sister came on board, to congratulate him on his arrival. It was pleasing to observe, that, to the honour of each of them, their meeting was marked with expressions of the tenderest affection, more easily conceived than described.

When this affecting scene was closed, and the ship properly moored, Omai attended Capt. Cook on shore. The Captain's first object was to pay a visit to a man whom Omai represented as a very extraordinary personage indeed, saying he was the God of Bolabola. They saw him seated under one of those awnings, which are usually carried in their larger canoes. He was old, and had so far lost the use of his limbs, that he

was carried from place to place upon a hand-barrow. By some, he was called Olla or Orra, which is the name of the God of Bolabola ; but his real name was Etary. From Omai's extraordinary account of this person, the Captain expected to have seen religious adoration paid to him : but he saw very little to distinguish him from their other chiefs. Omai presented to him a tuft of red feathers, fastened to the end of a small stick ; but, after a little conversation with this Bolabola man, his attention was excited by the presence of his mother's sister, who was already at his feet, and had bedewed them plentifully with tears of joy. The Captain left him with the old lady in this situation, surrounded by a number of people, and went to take a survey of the house said to have been erected by the strangers who had lately landed here. He found it still standing at a small distance from the beach. It was composed of wooden materials, which appeared to have been brought hither, ready prepared, in order to set up as occasion might require ; for the planks were all numbered. It consisted of two small rooms, in the inner of which, were a bedstead, a bench, a table, some old hats, and other trifles, of which the natives seemed to be remarkably careful, as well as of the building itself, which had received no injury from the weather, a kind of shed having been erected over it. Scuttles, serving as air holes, appeared all round the building ; and, perhaps, they were also meant for the additional purpose of firing from, with muskets, if necessity should require it. A wooden cross was placed at a little distance from the front, on the transverse part of which appeared the following inscription :

Christus Vincit.

On the perpendicular part (which confirmed our conjecture that the two ships were Spanish) was engraved,

Carolus III. imperat, 1774.

And

l-barrow.
the name
was Etary.

erson, the
ation paid
him from
tuft of red
but, after
his atten-
her's sister,
wed them
n left him
nded by a
rvey of the
angers who
anding at a
omposed of
een brought
as occasion
mbered. It
r of which,
ld hats, and
be remark-
; which had
ind of shed
rving as air
nd, perhaps,
ose of firing
quire it. A
ce from the
ppeared the

And on the other side of the post, Captain Cook very properly preserved the memory of the prior visits of the English, by inscribing,

*Georgius tertius rex,
Annis 1767,
1769, 1773, 1774, et 1777.*

Near the foot of the cross the islanders pointed out to us the grave of the Commodore of the two ships, who died here, while they lay in the bay, on their first arrival. His name, as near as we could gather from their pronunciation, was Oreede. The Spaniards, whatever their intentions might be in visiting this island, seemed to have taken infinite pains to have ingratiated themselves with the natives; who, upon all occasions, mentioned them with the strongest terms of esteem and veneration.

On this occasion, the Captain met with no chief of any considerable note, excepting the aged personage above described. Waheiadooa, king of Tiaraboo, (as this part of the island is called by the natives) was now absent; and we were afterwards informed, that (though his name was the same) he was not the same person as the chief whom Captain Cook had seen here in 1774; but his brother, a youth of ten years of age, who had succeeded the elder Waheiadooa. We also discovered, that the celebrated Oberea was dead; but that Otoo, and our other friends, were living.

When Captain Cook returned from the house erected by the Spaniards, he found Omai haranguing a very large company; and could with difficulty disengage him to accompany him aboard, where he had to settle a matter of importance.

Knowing that Otaheite, and the neighbouring islands, could supply us plentifully with cocoa nuts, the liquor which is a most excellent beverage, he wished to persuade upon his people to consent to be abridged, for a short time, of their stated allowance of spirits to mix with

ed our con-
s engraved,

And

water. But as this, without assigning some powerful reason, might have occasioned a general murmur, he assembled the ship's company, to communicate to them the intent of the voyage, and the extent of our future operations. He took notice of the generous rewards offered, by parliament, to such as shall first discover a communication between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, in the Northern Hemisphere, as well as to those who shall first penetrate beyond the 89th degree of northern latitude. He said, that he did not entertain a doubt, that he should find them ready to co-operate with him in attempting to obtain one, or both these rewards; but that it would be necessary to be strictly æconomical in the expenditure of our stores and provisions, as we had not a chance of getting a supply after leaving these islands. He further observed, that the duration of our voyage would exceed by a year, at least, what had been originally supposed, by our having lost the opportunity of getting to the north this summer. He begged them to consider the various obstructions, and aggravated hardships, they must yet labour under, if they should be under the necessity of being put to short allowance of any species of provisions, in a cold climate. He therefore submitted to them, whether it would not be the most adviseable to be prudent in time, and rather than run the risk of having their spirits exhausted, when they might be most wanted, to consent to be without their grog at present, when we could supply its place with so excellent a liquor as that of cocoa nuts. He added, nevertheless, that he would leave the determination entirely to their own choice.

This proposal did not remain a moment under consideration, and Captain Cook had the satisfaction to find that it was unanimously approved of. He ordered Captain Clerke to make a similar proposal to his people; which they also readily agreed to. The serving grog was therefore immediately stopped, except on Saturday nights, when all the men had a full allowance of it, to enable them to drink the healths of the
fema

female friends in England ; left, amidst the pretty girls of Otaheite, they should be totally forgotten.

We began, the next day, some necessary operations ; such as inspecting the provisions in the main and fore hold, getting the casks of beef and pork, &c. out of the ground tier, and putting a quantity of ballast in their place. The ship was ordered to be caulked, which she stood in much need of ; having, at times, made a considerable deal of water on our passage from the Friendly Islands. Captain Cook also put his cattle on shore, and appointed two of his men to look after them while grazing ; not intending to leave any of them on this part of the island.

It rained, almost incessantly, the two following days ; notwithstanding which, we were visited by the natives from every quarter, the news of our arrival having most rapidly spread. Waheia dooa, though at a considerable distance, had been informed of it ; and in the afternoon of the 16th, a chief, named Etoorea, who was his tutor, brought Captain Cook two hogs as a present from him ; acquainting him, at the same time, that he himself would attend him the day after. He was punctual to his promise ; for the Captain received a message from him early the next morning, notifying his arrival, and requesting he would go ashore to meet him. In consequence of this invitation, Omai and he prepared to make him a formal visit. Omai, on this occasion, took pains to dress himself, not after the manner of the English, nor that of Otaheite, or Tongataboo, or in the dress of any other country upon earth ; but in a strange medley of all the habiliments and ornaments he was possessed of.

Thus equipped, they got ashore, and first paid a visit to Etary ; who, carried on a hand-barrow, accompanied them to a large building, where he was set down ; Omai seated himself on one side of him, and Captain Cook on the other. The Captain caused a piece of Tongataboo cloth to be spread, on which were placed the

the presents he intended to make. The young chief soon after arrived, attended by his mother and several principal men, who all seated themselves opposite to us. A man who sat near the Captain, made a short speech, consisting of separate sentences; part of which was dictated by those about him. Another, on the opposite side, near the chief, spoke next; Etary after him, and then Omai, &c. The subjects of these orations were Captain Cook's arrival, and his connections with them. Amongst other things, one of them told the Captain, that the men of Reema (the Spaniards) desired they would not suffer him to come into Oheitepeha Bay, if he should return again to the island, for that it was their property; but that, so far from regarding this request, he was authorized now to surrender to him the province of Tiaraboo, and every thing that was in it. It is evident from this, that these people are no strangers to the policy of accommodating themselves to present circumstances. The young chief, at length, was directed, by his attendants, to embrace Captain Cook; and, as a confirmation of this treaty of friendship, they exchanged names. After these ceremonies were over, he and his friends accompanied the Captain, to dine with him on board.

Omai had prepared, as a present for Otoo, the king of the whole island, a maro, composed of red and yellow feathers; and, considering where we were, it was a present of great value. Capt. Cook endeavoured to prevail on him not to produce it now, wishing him to keep it till he had an opportunity of presenting it to Otoo with his own hands. But he entertained too good an opinion of the fidelity of his countrymen, to be guided by his advice. He was determined to carry it ashore, on this occasion, and to give it to Waheia dooa, to be forwarded by him to Otoo, and added to the royal maro. By this management he supposed he should oblige both chiefs; on the contrary, he highly disoblige that whose favour was of most consequence to him, without obtaining any reward from the other. The Captain was prophetic upon this
occa-

occasion; for Waheiadooa, as he expected, kept the maro for himself, and only sent to Otoo about a twentieth part of what composed the magnificent present.

On the 19th, Capt. Cook received, from the young chief, a present of ten or a dozen hogs, some cloth, and a quantity of fruit. In the evening, we exhibited some fire-works, which both pleased and astonished the numerous spectators.

Some of our gentlemen, in their walks, discovered, as they thought, a Roman Catholic chapel. They described the altar which they said they had seen, and every other constituent part of such a place of worship. They mentioned, however, at the same time, that two persons, who had the care of it, would not permit them to go in; on which account the Captain imagined they were mistaken, and had the curiosity to pay a visit to it himself. The supposed chapel happened to be a toopapao, in which the body of the late Waheiadooa lay, in a kind of state. It was in a pretty large house, enclosed with a low palisade. The toopapao was remarkably neat, and resembled one of those little awnings over their large canoes. It was hung and covered with cloths and mats of a variety of colours, which had a beautiful effect. One piece of scarlet broad cloth of the length of four or five yards, appeared conspicuous among the other ornaments; which had probably been received as a present from the Spaniards. This cloth, and some tassels of feathers, suggested to our gentlemen the idea of a chapel; and their imagination supplied whatever else was wanting to create a resemblance: hearing that the Spaniards had visited this place, might also operate on their minds upon this occasion, and add to the probability of its being a chapel. Small offerings of fruits and roots seemed to be daily made at this shrine, some pieces being now quite fresh. These were deposited on a kind of altar, which stood without the palisade; within which we were not permitted to enter. Two men constantly attended here, both night and day; as well to watch over the place, as to dress and undress the toopapao.

papaoo. When Captain Cook went to survey it, the cloth and its appendages were rolled up; but, at his request, the two attendants placed it in order, but not till after they had dressed themselves in clean white robes. The chief, we were informed, had been dead about twenty months.

Having provided a fresh supply of water, and finished all our necessary operations, on the 22d we brought off our animals from shore, and made ready for sea. While the ships were unmooring, Omai and Captain Cook landed in the morning of the 23d, to take leave of the young chief. While they were with him, one of those persons, whom they call Eatooas, from a persuasion that they possess the spirit of the Divinity, presented himself before them. He had all the appearances of insanity about him, and his only covering was a quantity of plantain leaves wrapped round his waist. He uttered what he had to say in a low, squeaking voice, so as hardly to be understood. But Omai said he perfectly comprehended him, and that he was advising Wahaiadooda not to accompany Captain Cook to Matavai, an expedition which he had never known that he intended, nor had the Captain ever made such a proposal to him. The Eatooa also predicted, that the ships would not arrive that day at Matavai. In this, however he was mistaken; though appearances, at that time, favoured his assertion, as there was not a single breath of wind in any direction. While he was delivering his prophecy, a heavy shower of rain came on, which occasioned all to run for shelter, except himself who appeared to disregard it. He continued squeaking about half an hour, and then retired. No attention was paid to what he uttered, though some of the natives laughed at him.

Captain Cook asked the chief, whether he was a Earee or a Towtow? The answer he received was, that he was taata eno, that is, a bad man. And yet, notwithstanding this, and the little notice taken of the man, prophet, superstition so far governs the natives, that

the
the
stru
fits,
and
will
frier
reco
wha
him.
So
sprin
tion:
the I
confe

Vol. I

they absolutely believe such persons to be possessed with the spirit of the Eatooa. Omai seemed to be well instructed concerning them. He said, that, during the fits, with which they are seized, they know no body, and that if any one of them is a man of property, he will then give away every moveable he possesses, if his friends do not put them out of his reach; and, when he recovers, he seems not to have the least remembrance of what he had done during the time the fit was upon him.

Soon after the Captain got on board, a light breeze springing up at E. we got under sail, and the Resolution anchored, the same evening, at Matavai Bay; but the Discovery did not get in till the next morning; consequently the man's prophecy was half fulfilled.

Interview with Otoo, King of Otabeite—Imprudent Behaviour of Omai—Various Animals landed—Occupations on Shore—Visit from a Native who had been at Lima—Account of Oedidce—False Report—The Islanders make a precipitate Retreat, but soon return—A Rebellion in Eimeo—Council of Chiefs—War with Eimeo resolved on—A Human Sacrifice—Circumstantial Description of that Solemnity—The great Morai at Attaboaroo described—Behaviour of the Natives during the Ceremony—Particular Customs.

ON Sunday the 24th, in the morning, Otoo, the king of the whole island, accompanied by a great number of the natives in their canoes, came from Oparre, his place of residence. and having landed on Mata-vai Point, sent a messenger on board, intimating his desire to see Captain Cook there. He accordingly went ashore, attended by Omai, and some of the officers. They found a vast multitude of people assembled on this occasion, in the midst of whom was the king, with his father, his two brothers, and three sisters. The Captain went towards him and saluted him, being followed by Omai, who kneeled and embraced his legs. Though Omai had prepared himself for this ceremony, by dressing himself in his best apparel, and behaved with great respect and modesty, yet very little notice was taken of him. He made the king a present of two or three yards of gold cloth, and a large piece of red feathers, and the Captain gave him a gold-laced hat, a suit of fine linen, some tools, a quantity of red feathers, and one of the bonnets worn at the Friendly Islands.

This

This visit being over, the king, and all the royal family, accompanied Captain Cook on board, followed by several canoes, plentifully laden with all kind of provisions. Each of the family owned a part; so that the Captain had a present from every one of them; and each received from him a separate present in return. Not long after, the king's mother came on board, bringing with her some provisions and cloth, which she divided between the Commodore and Omai. Though the latter was but little noticed at first by his countrymen, they no sooner gained information of his wealth, than they began to court his friendship. Captain Cook encouraged this as far as lay in his power, being desirous of fixing him with Otoo. Intending to leave all his European animals at this island, he thought Omai would be able to give the natives some instruction with regard to their use, and the management of them. Besides, the Captain was convinced, that the farther he was removed from his native island, the more he would be respected. But unfortunately, Omai rejected his advice, and behaved in so imprudent a manner, that he soon lost the friendship of Otoo, and of all the most considerable persons at Otaheite. He associated with none but strangers and vagabonds, whose sole intention was to plunder him: and, if the Captain had not intervened, they would not have left him a single article of any consequence. This conduct drew upon him the ill-will of the principal chiefs; who found that they could not obtain, from any one in either ship, such valuable presents as were bestowed by Omai on the lowest of the people. After dinner, a party of us accompanied Otoo to Oparre, taking with us some poultry, consisting of a peacock and hen, a turkey-cock and hen, three geese, one gander, four ducks, and a drake. All these we left at Oparre, in the possession of Otoo; and the geese and ducks began to breed, before we sailed. We found there a gander, that Capt. Wallis had given Oberea ten years before; we also met with several pigs, and the Spanish bull, whom they kept tied to a tree,

tree, near the habitation of Otoo. We never beheld a finer animal of his kind. He now belonged to Etary, and had been conveyed from Oheitepeha to this place, in order to be shipped for Bolabola. The next day the Commodore sent to this bull the three cows that he had on board; and the bull, which he had brought, the horse, and mare, and sheep, were now put ashore at Matavai. Having thus disposed of these animals, he found himself eased of the extraordinary trouble and vexation that had attended the bringing this living cargo to such a distance.

As Captain Cook intended to continue here a considerable time, we set up our two observatories on Matavai Point; and, adjoining to them, two tents were pitched, for the reception of a guard, and of such people as might be left on shore, in different departments. The command, at this station, was intrusted to Mr King; who also attended the astronomical and other observations. While we remained here, the crews of both ships were occupied in many necessary operations. The *Discovery's* main-mast was carried ashore, and made as good as it had ever been before. Our sails and water-casks were repaired; both our ships were caulked; and the rigging was completely overhauled. We likewise inspected the bread that we had on board in casks, and found that but little of it was damaged.

On the 26th, a piece of ground was cleared for a garden, and planted with several articles; very few of which will, probably, be looked after by the natives. Some potatoes, melons, and pine-apple plants, were in a fair way of succeeding before we quitted the place. We had brought, from the Friendly Islands, several shaddock trees, which we also planted here; and they will in all probability succeed, unless their growth should be checked by the same idle and premature curiosity which destroyed a vine planted at Oheitepeha by the Spaniards. Many of the natives assembled to taste the first fruit it produced; but, the grapes being still so green, they considered it as little better than poison, and trod

under
was
if he
cord
an in
prun
Be
Bay,
nam
last
so th
out
pres
ferti
here
ried
teric
rest
Span
fi Se
we
Cap
his
ing
Zea
com
heit
sole
mo
thor
our
his
othe
day
tha
duc
gen
per
wh

under foot. In that state Omai accidentally found it, and was rejoiced at the discovery; for he was confident, that if he had but grapes, he could easily make wine. Accordingly, he had several slips cut off from the tree, with an intention of carrying them away with him; and we pruned, and put in order, the remains of it.

Before we had been two days at anchor in Matavai Bay, we were visited by all our old friends, whose names are mentioned in the narrative of Captain Cook's last voyage. Not one of them came with empty hands; so that we had an amazing quantity of provisions, without any apprehensions of exhausting the island, which presented to our eyes every mark of the most exuberant fertility and abundance. Soon after we had arrived here, one of the islanders, whom the Spaniards had carried with them to Lima, paid us a visit; but, in his exterior appearance, he was not distinguishable from the rest of his countrymen. He still remembered some Spanish words, among which the most frequent were, *si Sennor*. We also found here the young man whom we called Oedidee, but whose real name is Heete-heete. Captain Cook had carried him from Ulitea on board his ship in 1773, and brought him back in the succeeding year, after he had visited the Friendly Islands, New Zealand, Easter Island, and the Marquesas. He had come from Bolabola (of which he was a native) to Otaheite, about three months before, probably with the sole view of gratifying his curiosity. He preferred the modes, and even dress, of his countrymen to ours; for, though Captain Cook gave him some clothes, which our Board of Admiralty had thought proper to send for his use (to which he added a chest of tools, and several other articles, as a present from himself) he, after a few days, declined wearing them. This instance, as well as that of the person who had been at Lima, may be adduced as a proof of the strong inclination of mankind in general to habits acquired at an early age; and it is perhaps no unreasonable supposition, that even Omai, who had imbibed almost the whole English manners, will,

will, in a short time after being left by us, return, like Oedidee, and the visiter of Lima, to his own native garments, and his original mode of life.

In the morning of the 27th, a man from Oheitepeha informed us, that two Spanish ships had anchored in that bay the preceding night; and to confirm this intelligence, he produced some coarse blue cloth, which, he said, he had got out of one of the ships. He further said, that Mateema was in one of the ships; and that they would come to Matavai in two or three days. These, and some other circumstances, which he mentioned, gave the story so much the appearance of truth, that the Commadore dispatched Lieutenant Williamson in a boat, to look into Oheitepeha Bay; and, in the mean time, both our ships were put in a posture of defence. For, though England and Spain were at peace when he left England, he did not know but that a different scene might, by this time, have opened. Upon enquiry, however, we had reason to imagine, that the relater of the story had imposed upon us; and this was put beyond all doubt, when Mr Williamson returned the day following, who made his report to Captain Cook, that he had been at Oheitepeha, and found that no ships were there at present, nor had any been there since we left it. The people of this part of the island, where we now were stationed, told us, indeed, at first, that it was a fiction invented by those of Tiaraboo. But what view they could have, we could not conceive, unless they supposed that the report would induce us to quit the island, and thus deprive the inhabitants of Otaheite-nooe of the advantages they might otherwise reap from our ships remaining there; the natives of the two parts of the island being inveterate enemies to each other.

Since we arrived at Matavai, the weather had been very unsettled till the 29th; before which day we were unable to get equal altitudes of the sun for ascertaining the going of the time-keeper. The caulking, and other repairs of the ships, were also retarded by the same cause.

cause.
a pre
from
arose
mitted
At len
One o
the co
him fo
been fo
the fell
valuabl
flight,
joined;
ped the
three m
for the
future
negligen
tranquil
The
Eimeo, w
were in
obliged
tains. T
began in
midable
left Otahe
Eimeo ha
had retur
dition wa
messenger
the Capta
honour of
the messen
considerab
the situatio
eitean ch
was oppose

cause. In the evening of this day, the islanders made a precipitate retreat, both from our land station, and from on board the ships. We conjectured that this arose from their knowing that some theft had been committed, and apprehending punishment on that account. At length, we became acquainted with the whole affair. One of the Surgeon's mates had made an excursion into the country to purchase curiosities, and had taken with him four hatchets for the purpose of exchange. Having been so imprudent as to employ a native to carry them, the fellow took an opportunity of running off with so valuable a prize. This was the reason of the sudden flight, in which Otoo himself, and all his family, had joined; and it was with difficulty that the Captain stopped them, after following them for the space of two or three miles. As he had determined to take no measures for the recovery of the hatchets, that his people for the future might be more upon their guard against such negligence, every thing quickly resumed its former tranquillity.

The next morning, some messengers arrived from Eimeo, with intelligence, that the people of that island were in arms; and that Otoo's partizans there had been obliged by the opposite party to retreat to the mountains. The quarrel between the two islands, which began in 1774, had partly subsisted ever since. A formidable armament had sailed soon after Captain Cook left Oraheite in his last voyage; but the malecontents of Eimeo had made so gallant a resistance, that the fleet had returned without success; and now another expedition was deemed necessary. On the arrival of these messengers, the chiefs assembled at Otoo's house, where the Captain actually was at that time, and had the honour of being admitted into their council. One of the messengers opened the business with a speech of considerable length, the purport of which was to explain the situation of affairs in Eimeo, and to excite the Otaitian chiefs to arm on the occasion. This opinion was opposed by others who were against commencing hostilities;

hostilities; and the debate was, for some time, carried on with great order and decorum. At length, however, they became very tumultuous, and the Captain began to expect that their meeting would conclude like a Polish diet. But the contending chiefs cooled as fast as they grew warm, and order was speedily restored. In the end, the party for war prevailed; and it was resolved, though not unanimously, that a strong force should be sent to Eimeo. Otoo said very little during the whole debate. Those of the council, who were inclinable for war, applied to the Captain for his assistance; and all of them were desirous of knowing what part he would take. Omai was sent for to act as his interpreter; but, as he could not be found, the Captain, being under a necessity of speaking for himself, told them, as well as he could, that, as he was not perfectly acquainted with the dispute, and as the natives of Eimeo had never given him the least cause of offence, he could not think of engaging in hostilities against them. With this declaration, they either were, or appeared to be, satisfied. The council was then dissolved; but, before the Captain retired, Otoo desired him to come again in the afternoon, and bring Omai with him.

A party of us accordingly waited upon him at the appointed time; and he conducted us to his father, in whose presence the dispute with Eimeo was again discussed. The Commodore being very desirous of effecting an accommodation, sounded the old chief on that subject; but he was deaf to any such proposal, and fully determined to carry on hostilities. On our enquiry into the cause of the war, we were informed, that, several years ago, a brother of Waheiadooa, of Tiaraboo, was sent to Eimeo, at the desire of Maheine, a popular chief of that island, to be their king; but had not been there many days before Maheine, having caused him to be put to death, set up for himself, in opposition to Tierataboonoee, nephew of the deceased, who now became the lawful heir, or perhaps had been appointed, by the people

people
death
To
strict
of the
ed no
not p
ever,
and th
and sp
arrived
man to
ploring
ceremo
Attaho
occasion
at this
he migh
the king
out in t
Mr And
them in
small isla
and his
the two
dressed h
When h
thinking
constantl
should n
they par
feathers,
having ta
solemnity
As foo
bout two
be order
Cook, M
their hats
Vol. II.-

people of Otaheite, to succeed to the government on the death of the other.

Towha, who is related to Otoo, and chief of the district of Tettaha, and who had been commander in chief of the armament sent against Eimeo in 1774, happened not to be at Matavai at this time, and, therefore, was not present at these consultations. It appeared, however, that he was no stranger to what was transacted; and that he entered into the affair with great eagerness and spirit. For, on the 1st of September, a messenger arrived from him to acquaint Otoo, that he had killed a man to be sacrificed to the Eatooa, with the view of imploring the assistance of the deity against Eimeo. This ceremony was to be performed at the great morai, at Attahooroo; and Otoo's presence was necessary on the occasion. Captain Cook was desirous of being present at this solemnity, and therefore proposed to Otoo, that he might be permitted to accompany him. To this the king readily consented; and they immediately set out in the Captain's boat, with his old friend Potatou, Mr Anderson, and Mr Webber, while Omai followed them in a canoe. In their way they landed upon a small island, lying off Tettaha, where they found Towha and his attendants. After a little conversation between the two chiefs, on the subject of the war, Towha addressed himself to the Captain, soliciting his assistance. When he excused himself, Towha seemed displeased; thinking it rather extraordinary, that one who had constantly declared himself the friend of their island, should now refuse to fight against its enemies. Before they parted, Towha gave to Otoo two or three red feathers, tied up in a tuft; our party then re-embarked, having taken on board a priest who was to assist at the solemnity.

As soon as they landed at Attahooroo, which was about two o'clock, Otoo desired that the sailors might be ordered to continue in the boat; and that Captain Cook, Mr Anderson, and Mr Webber, would take off their hats as soon as they should come to the morai,

to which they immediately proceeded, attended by numbers of men, and some boys; but not one woman was present. They found four priests, with their assistants, waiting for them. The dead body, or sacrifice, was in a small canoe, that lay on the beach, fronting the morai. Two of the priests, with several of their attendants, were sitting by the canoe; the others at the morai. Our company stopped at the distance of twenty or thirty paces from the priests. Here Otoo placed himself; our gentlemen, and a few others, standing by him, while the majority of the people were removed at a greater distance.

The ceremonies now commenced. One of the attendants of the priests brought a young plantain tree, and laid it down before the king. Another approached, bearing a small tuft of red feathers, twisted on some fibres of the cocoa nut husk, with which he touched one of Otoo's feet, and afterwards retired with it to his companions. One of the priests who were seated at the morai, now began a long prayer; and, at particular times, sent down young plantain trees, which were placed upon the sacrifice. During this prayer, an islander, who stood by the officiating priest, held in his hands two bundles, in one of which, as we afterwards found, was the royal maro; and the other, if we may be allowed the expression, was the ark of the Eatooa. The prayer being finished, the priests at the morai, with their assistants, went and sat down by those who were upon the beach, carrying the two bundles with them. They here renewed their prayers; during which the plantain trees were taken, one by one, at various times, from off the dead body, which, being wrapped up in cocoa leaves and small branches, was now taken out of the canoe, and laid upon the beach. The priests placed themselves around it; some standing, and others sitting; and one, or more of them, repeated sentences for about ten minutes. The body was now stripped of the leaves and branches, and placed parallel with the sea shore. Then one of the priests, standing at the feet of the corpse,

ded by
woman
eir affist-
sacrifice,
fronting
of their
ers at the
of twenty
oo placed
nding by
moved at

f the at-
tain tree,
proached,
on some
e touched
h it to his
ated at the
particular
hich were
prayer, an
held in his
afterwards
f we may
he Eatooa.
norai, with
who were
with them.
which the
ious times,
opped up in
aken out of
iests placed
ers sitting;
es for about
of the leaves
e sea shore.
feet of the
corpse

—AHUWA SACRIFICE IN A MORAI OF ORANGE—



Cook's Voyages

corpse,
casionall
tuft of r
some ha
fice, and
wrapped
who, ho
man who
he had r
hair, wa
jesty sent
of this la
trees. Ot
the Eatoo
prognost

The co
der a tree
wood, va
placed on
thers wer
which the
men were
He who
quarter o
sometime
at other ti
various de
himself, c
grant such
deliver Ei
other thin
indeed, th
prayed ne
other prie
a priest ph
corpse, an
priest now
received fr
to another

corpse, pronounced a long prayer, in which he was occasionally joined by the others, each of them holding a tuft of red feathers in his hand. During this prayer, some hair was pulled off the head of the intended sacrifice, and the left eye was taken out ; both which being wrapped up in a green leaf, were presented to the king ; who, however, did not touch them, but gave, to the man who presented them, the tuft of red feathers which he had received from Towha. This, with the eye and hair, was taken to the priests. Not long after, his majesty sent them another piece of feathers. In the course of this last ceremony, a king-fisher making a noise in the trees, Otoo turned to Captain Cook, saying, " That is the Eatooa ;" and seemed to consider it as a favourable prognostic.

The corpse was then carried a little way, and laid under a tree ; near which were fixed three thin pieces of wood, variously carved. The bundles of cloth were placed on a part of the morai ; and the tufts of red feathers were laid at the feet of the dead body, round which the priests stationed themselves ; and our gentlemen were now permitted to go as near as they pleased. He who seemed to be the chief priest spoke for about a quarter of an hour, with different tones and gestures ; sometimes appearing to expostulate with the deceased ; at other times, asking several questions ; then making various demands, as if the dead person either had power himself, or interest with the deity, to engage him to grant such requests ; among which he desired him to deliver Eimeo, Maheine its chief, the women, hogs, and other things of the island, into their hands ; which was, indeed, the express object of the sacrifice. He then prayed near half an hour, in a whining tone, and two other priests joined in the prayer, in the course of which a priest plucked some more hair from the head of the corpse, and put it upon one of the bundles. The chief priest now prayed alone, holding in his hand the feathers received from Towha. Having finished, he gave them to another priest, who prayed in like manner ; then all

the tufts of feathers were placed upon the bundles of cloth, which concluded the ceremony at this place.

The dead body was now carried to the most conspicuous part of the morai, with the feathers and the two bundles of cloth, while the drums beat slowly. The feathers and bundles were laid against the pile of stones, and the body at the foot of them. The priests having again seated themselves round the corpse, renewed their prayers, while some of their assistants dug a hole about the depth of two feet, into which they threw the victim, and covered it over with stones and earth. While they were committing the body to the grave, a boy squeaked aloud, upon which Omai said to Captain Cook, that it was the Eatooa. A fire having been made in the mean time, a lean half-starved dog was produced, and killed by twisting his neck. The hair was then singed off, and the entrails being taken out, were thrown into the fire, where they were left to be consumed; but the kidney, heart, and liver, were only roasted, by being put on heated stones; and the carcase of the dog, after being rubbed over with the blood, was, with the liver, &c. laid down before the priests, who were seated round the grave, praying. They for some time uttered ejaculations over the dog, while two men, at intervals, beat very loud on two drums; and a boy screamed, in a loud shrill voice, three times. This, they said, was to invite the Eatooa to feast on the banquet that they had provided for him. When the priests had finished their prayers, the body, heart, liver, &c. of the dog, were placed on a whatta, or scaffold, about six feet in height, on which lay the remains of two other dogs, and of two pigs, which had been lately sacrificed. The priests and attendants now gave a kind of shout, which put an end to the ceremonies for the present. The evening being arrived, our gentlemen were conducted to a house belonging to Potatou, where they were entertained and lodged for the night. Having been informed, that the religious rites were to be renewed the next morning, they would not quit the place while

any

any th
the sce
terwan
scaffol
took o
and a
assemb
they ha
two dr
priests
himself
stand b
The
young
A pray
their ha
plume o
presente
had ende
placed th
rai. On
principal
which co
er, the tu
the ark of
produced
three othe
One of
found to
invest the
spread on
It is a giro
and a qua
same man
used by the
ornamente
ally with
with eight
hos, who

any thing remained to be seen. Some of them repaired to the scene of action early in the morning ; and, soon afterwards, a pig was sacrificed, and laid upon the same scaffold with the others. About eight o'clock, Otoo took our party again to the morai, where the priests, and a great multitude of people were by this time assembled. The two bundles occupied the place where they had been deposited the preceding evening ; the two drums were in the front of the morai, and the priests were stationed beyond them. The king placed himself between the drums, and desired Capt. Cook to stand by him.

The ceremony of this day began with bringing a young plantain tree, and laying it at his majesty's feet. A prayer was then repeated by the priests, holding in their hands several tufts of red feathers, and also a plume of ostrich feathers, which the Commodore had presented to Otoo on his first arrival. When the priests had ended the prayer, they changed their station, and placed themselves between our gentlemen and the morai. One of them, the same who had performed the principal part the preceding day, began another prayer, which continued near half an hour. During this prayer, the tufts of red feathers were put, one by one, upon the ark of the Eatooa. Not long after, four pigs were produced, one of which was immediately killed, and the three others were taken to a neighbouring sty.

One of the bundles was now untied ; and it was found to contain the maro, with which the Otaheiteans invest their kings. When taken out of the cloth, it was spread on the ground, at full length, before the priests. It is a girdle about fifteen feet in length, and one foot and a quarter in breadth, and is probably put on in the same manner as the common maro, or piece of cloth, used by these islanders to wrap round the waist. It was ornamented with yellow and red feathers ; but principally with the former. One end of it was bordered with eight pieces, about the size and figure of a horse-shoe, whose edges were fringed with black feathers.

The

The other end was forked, having the points of various lengths. The feathers were ranged in two rows, in square compartments, and produced a pleasing effect. They had been first fixed upon some of the cloth of the island, and then sewed to the upper end of the pendant which Captain Wallis had left flying on shore, the first time of his arrival at Matavai. The priests pronounced a long prayer, relative to this part of the ceremony; and after it was ended, the badge of royalty was folded up with great care, and put into the cloth.

The other bundle, which we have already mentioned under the name of the ark, was next opened, at one end; but our party were not permitted to approach near enough to examine its mysterious contents. The intelligence they obtained respecting it was, that the Eatooa, (or rather what is supposed to represent him) was concealed in it. This sacred repository is composed of the twisted fibres of the husk of the cocoa nut; and its figure is roundish, with one end considerably thicker than the other.

The pig that had been killed was by this time cleaned, and its entrails taken out. These happened to have many of those convulsive motions, which frequently appear in different parts, when an animal is killed; and this was considered as a very favourable omen to the intended expedition. After being exposed for some time, the entrails were carried and laid down before the priests. While one of them prayed, another closely inspected the entrails, and continued turning them gently with a stick. Having been sufficiently examined, they were thrown into the fire. The sacrificed pig, and its liver, heart, &c. were now put upon the scaffold where the dog had been deposited; and then all the feathers except the ostrich plume, being enclosed in the ark, and end was put to the whole solemnity.

Four double canoes remained upon the beach, all the morning, before the place of sacrifice. A small platform covered with palm leaves, fastened in mysterious

knots,
noes;
cocoa n
each of
belonge
fleet tha

The u
to appea
lowest c
they ha
committe
It is certa
ty person
have no
Our gent
body of
object of
bloody ab
the right
he had be
had been l

The w
occasions,
Whenever
man sacrific
upon the v
servants, v
him to dea
sovereign i
said to be
follow; an
capital part
or the pra
Tanta-Tabo

The mor
ways appro
whole islan
other perfe
except in e

knots

knots, was fixed on the fore part of each of these canoes; and this also is called a morai. Some plantains, cocoa nuts, bread fruit, fish, and other articles, lay upon each of these naval morais. The natives said, that they belonged to the Eatooa, and that they were to attend the fleet that was to be sent out against Eimeo.

The unfortunate victim, offered on this occasion, was, to appearance, a middle-aged man, and was one of the lowest class of the people. But it did not appear that they had fixed upon him on account of his having committed any particular crime, that deserved death. It is certain, however, that they usually select such guilty persons for their sacrifices, or else vagabonds, who have no visible way of procuring an honest livelihood. Our gentlemen having examined the appearance of the body of the unhappy sufferer, now offered up to the object of these people's worship, observed, that it was bloody about the head and face, and much bruised upon the right temple, which denoted the manner in which he had been killed. And they were informed, that he had been knocked on the head with a stone.

The wretches who are destined to suffer on these occasions, are never previously apprized of their fate. Whenever any one of the principal chiefs deems a human sacrifice necessary on any great emergency, he fixes upon the victim, and then dispatches some of his trusty servants, who fall upon him suddenly, and either stone him to death, or beat out his brains with a club. The sovereign is next acquainted with it, whose presence is said to be absolutely requisite at the solemn rites that follow; and, indeed, on the late occasion, Otoo bore a capital part. The solemnity itself is termed *Poore Evee*, or the prayer of the chief; and the victim is called *Taata-Taboo*, or consecrated man.

The morai, where the late sacrifice was offered, is always appropriated for the burial of the king of the whole island, and likewise of his family, and some other persons of distinguished rank. It differs little, except in extent, from the common morais. Its principal

cipal part is a large oblong pile of stones, about thirteen feet in height, and contracted towards the top, with a quadrangular area on each side, loosely paved with pebbles, under which the bones of the chiefs are deposited. Not far from the end nearest the sea, is the place of sacrifice, where is a very large whatta or scaffold, on which the offerings of fruits, and other vegetables, are placed; but the animals are laid on a smaller one, and the human sacrifices are interred under the pavement. There are several reliques scattered about the place; such as small stones raised in various parts of the pavement, some with bits of cloth fastened round them, others entirely covered with it; and, upon the side of the large pile, fronting the area, are a great number of pieces of carved wood, in which their gods are supposed to reside occasionally. There is a heap of stones, at one end of the large scaffold, with a sort of platform on one side. On this they deposit all the skulls of the human sacrifices, which they take up after they have remained under ground for some months. Just above them, many of the carved pieces of wood are placed; and here the maro, and the other bundle, which was supposed to contain the god Ooro, were laid, during the celebration of the late solemn rites.

It is probable, that this barbarous custom of offering human victims, prevails in all, or most of the islands of the Pacific Ocean, however distant from each other some of them may be. And though we should suppose, that not more than one person is sacrificed at one time, either at Otaheite, or other islands, yet these occasions, in all probability, occur so frequently, as to make a terrible havock of the human species; for Captain Cook reckoned no less than forty-nine skulls, of former victims, lying before the morai, at Attahooroo, and as none of those skulls appeared to have suffered any considerable change, or decay, from the weather, it may be inferred, that but a short time had elapsed since these victims had been offered. This horrid practice

pra
cea
det
pre
upo
from
vast
they
ing.
mon
roun
of th
tures
tentio
priest
lives
either
from
the ef
very l
to acts
but an
great f
preserv
preven
where
tlemen
howev
to any
gard to
being a
that it v
able to
fices; i
tions.
feed on
were th
fumed;
they pre
Vol. II.

thirteen
with a
with peb-
eposited.
ce of fa-
ffold, on
ables, are
one, and
avement.
ne place;
the pave-
nd them,
he side of
number of
are sup-
of stones,
f platform
ulls of the
ey have re-
Just above
are placed;
which was
during the
of offering
e islands of
each other
ould sup-
iced at one
et these oc-
ntly, as to
; for Cap-
e skulls, of
ttahooroo
ve suffered
ne weather
ad elapsed
his horri-
practice

practice, though no consideration whatever can make it cease to be detestable, might, perhaps, be thought less detrimental, in some respects, if it contributed to impress any awe for the deity, or veneration for religion, upon the minds of the spectators. But this was so far from being the case on the late occasion, that though a vast multitude of people had assembled at the morai, they shewed very little reverence for what was transacting. And Omai happening to arrive, after the ceremonies had begun, many of the islanders thronged round him, and were engaged, for the remaining part of the time, in making him recount some of his adventures; to which they listened with great eagerness of attention, regardless of the solemn offices which their priests were then performing. Indeed, the priests themselves, except the one who sustained the principal part, either from their being familiarized to such objects, or from their reposing no great degree of confidence in the efficacy of their religious institutions, maintained very little of that solemnity which is necessary to give to acts of devotion their proper effect. Their habit was but an ordinary one; they conversed together with great familiarity; and the only attempt they made to preserve decorum, was by exerting their authority, to prevent the populace from encroaching on the very spot where the rites were performed, and to suffer our gentlemen, as strangers, to come forward. They were, however, very candid in the answers which they gave to any interrogatories that were put to them, with regard to this inhuman institution. And, particularly, on being asked, what was the design of it, they replied, that it was an ancient custom, and was highly agreeable to their god, who came and fed upon the sacrifices; in consequence of which, he granted their petitions. It was then objected, that he certainly did not feed on these, as he was neither observed to do it, nor were the bodies of the sacrificed animals soon consumed; and that as to the corpse of a human victim, they prevented his feeding on that, by interring it. In

answer to these objections, they gave it as their opinion, that he came in the night, invisibly, and fed only on the soul, or immaterial part, which (these people say) remains about the place of sacrifice, till the carcase of the victim is totally wasted by putrefaction.

Human sacrifices are not the only barbarous custom that still prevails amongst the inhabitants of Otaheite, though, in many other respects, they have emerged from the brutal manners of savage life. Besides cutting out the jaw bones of their enemies slain in battle, which they carry about with them as trophies, they, in some measure, offer up their bodies to the Eatooa. Soon after an engagement, in which they have come off victorious, they collect all the dead, and bring them to the morai, where, with great form and ceremony, they dig a large hole, and bury them all in it, as so many offerings to their divinities.

They treat, in a different manner, their own chiefs that fall in battle. Their late king, Tootaha, Tubouraitamaide, and another chief, who were all slain in an engagement with those of Tiaraboo, were brought to the morai at Attahooroo. There the priests cut out their bowels before the great altar; and their dead bodies were afterwards interred in three different places, near the great pile of stones above-mentioned; and the common men, who lost their lives in the battle, were all buried in one hole, at the foot of the same pile. This was performed the day after the battle, with much pomp and formality, amidst a numerous concourse of people, as a thanksgiving offering to the deity, for the victory they had obtained the preceding day. The vanquished, in the mean time, had taken refuge in the mountains, where they remained upwards of a week, till the fury of the victors began to abate. A treaty was then set on foot, by which it was agreed, that Otoo should be proclaimed king of the whole island; and the solemnity of investing him with the maro, or badge of royalty, was performed at the same morai, with great magnificence.

Re-embark

*Re-embarking
Dinner
marked
ner of
a Ch
Horse
—Otoo
mals g
Etary,
val Po*

AT the bite
the last cl
o'clock, in
way, paid
little island
Some con
Otoo and
once more,
Eimeo. B
opinion of
Before th
concerning
sent; and a
expectations;
ty; and wh
their own c
celebration o

Re-embark for Matavai—Conference with Towha respecting the human Sacrifice—Description of the Heewas—Dinner given by Omai—Exhibition of Fire-works—Remarkable Method of making a Present of Cloth—Manner of preserving, for many Months, the dead Body of a Chief—Another human Sacrifice offered—Riding on Horseback, Matter of great Astonishment to the Natives—Otoo's great Attention to prevent Thefts, &c.—Animals given to him by Captain Cook—Audience given to Etary, &c.—Manner of fighting two War Canoes—Naval Power, &c.

AT the close of the very extraordinary scene, exhibited at the morai, and particularly described in the last chapter, our party embarked about twelve o'clock, in order to return to Matavai; and, in their way, paid a visit to Towha, who had continued in the little island, where they met him the preceding day. Some conversation on public affairs passed between Otoo and him; and the latter entreated Captain Cook, once more, to join them as an ally, in their war against Eimeo. By his positive refusal he entirely lost the good opinion of this chief.

Before they separated, he interrogated our gentlemen concerning the solemnity, at which they had been present; and asked, particularly, if it answered their expectations; what opinion they entertained of its efficacy; and whether such acts of worship were frequent in their own country? They had been silent during the celebration of the horrid ceremony; but, as soon as it was

completed, freely expressed their sentiments upon the subject, to Otoo, and his attendants; consequently Captain Cook did not conceal his detestation of it, in this conversation with Towha. Exclusive of the barbarity of the bloody custom, he urged the unreasonableness of it, alledging that such a sacrifice, instead of making the Eatooa propitious to their nation, would excite his vengeance; and that, from this very circumstance, he concluded, that their intended expedition against Maheine would be unsuccessful.

This was proceeding to great lengths upon conjecture; but there was little danger of being mistaken; for, respecting this war, there were three parties in this island, one violent for it, another perfectly indifferent about it; and the third avowed supporters of Maheine, and his cause. Under these circumstances, it was not probable that such a plan of military operations would be settled, as could insure success. Omai acted as interpreter, in conveying the Captain's sentiments to Towha, on the subject of the late horrid sacrifice; and he supported his arguments with such spirit, that the chief appeared to be extremely angry; especially, on being informed, that if he had taken away the life of a man in England, as he had done here, his rank would not have protected him from an ignominious death. Upon this he exclaimed, *maeno! maeno!* (vile! vile!) and would not hear a syllable more about it. Many of the natives were present at this debate; particularly the attendants and servants of Towha; and when Omai mentioned the punishment that would in England be inflicted upon the greatest man, if he dared to kill the meanest servant, they listened very attentively; and perhaps, on this subject, they thought differently from their master.

Leaving Towha, our gentlemen proceeded to Oparro where Otoo solicited them to pass the night. They landed in the evening; and, on their way to his habitation, had an opportunity of observing how these people amuse themselves, in their private heevas. They lay about a hundred of them sitting in a house; in the mid

of whom were two women, and an old man behind each of them, beating gently upon a drum; and the women, at intervals, singing with great softness and delicacy. The assembly were very attentive, and seemed, as it were, absorbed in the pleasure the music gave them; few of them taking any notice of the strangers, and the performers never once ceasing. When the party arrived at Otoo's house, it was almost dark. Here they were entertained with one of their public heevas, or plays, in which his three sisters represented the principal characters. This they call a heeva raa, and no person is suffered to enter the house or area where it is exhibited. This is always the case, when the royal sisters are the performers. Their dress, on this occasion, was truly elegant and picturesque, and they acquitted themselves in a very distinguished manner; though some comic interludes, wherein four men were the performers, seemed to afford greater entertainment to the audience, which was numerous. The Captain and his companions proceeded, the next morning, to Matavai, leaving Otoo at Oparre; but his mother, sisters, and many other women, attended the Captain on board, and Otoo followed a short time after.

While Otoo and Captain Cook had been absent from the ships, they had been sparingly supplied with fruit, and had not many visitors. After their return, we had abundance of company and provisions. On the 4th, a party of us, among whom was Otoo, dined ashore with Omai, who provided excellent fare, consisting of fish, fowls, pork, and puddings. Dinner being over, Captain Cook accompanied Otoo back to his dwelling, where he found all his servants busy, in getting a quantity of provisions ready for him. Amongst other articles, there was a large hog, which they killed in his presence. There was also a large pudding; the whole process in making which the Captain saw. It was composed of bread fruit, plantains, taro, and palm or pandanus nuts, each rasped, scraped, or beat up fine, and baked by itself. A quantity of the juice of cocoa nut kernels, was put into

into a kind of wooden tray. The other articles, hot from the oven, were put into this vessel; together with some hot stones, in order to make the contents simmer. Three or four persons were employed in stirring up the several ingredients, till they were perfectly incorporated, and the juice of the cocoa nut was turned to oil; and the whole mass, at last, was nearly of the consistency of a hasty-pudding. The hog being baked, and the pudding being made, they, together with two living hogs, some bread fruit, and cocoa nuts, were sent on board the Captain's ship in a canoe, followed by him and all the royal family.

A young ram of the Cape breed, that had been lambed, and carefully brought up on board Captain Cook's ship, was killed by a dog the following day. This was the more to be regretted, as it was the only one of that breed that we had; and only one of the English breed was now remaining.

On the 7th in the evening, we exhibited some fireworks before a vast concourse of people, some of whom were highly entertained, but the greater number were much terrified with the exhibition; insomuch, that they could hardly be prevailed on to keep together, to see the whole of the entertainment. What concluded the business, was a table rocket. It flew off the table, and dispersed the whole crowd in an instant; even the most resolute amongst them now fled with precipitation.

A party of us dined, the next day, with Oedidee, on fish and pork. The hog, which weighed about thirty pounds, was alive, dressed, and upon the table, within the hour. Soon after we had dined, Otoo appeared, and enquired of Captain Cook, if his belly was full? who answered in the affirmative. "Then come along with me," said Otoo. The Captain accordingly attended him to his father's, where he saw several people employed in dressing two girls, with fine cloth, after a very singular fashion. There were several pieces of cloth, and the one end of each piece was held over the heads of the girls, while the remainder was wrapped round their
bodies.

hot
with
mer.
p the
rated,
and
cy of
pud-
hogs,
rd the
ll the

mbled,
s ship,
as the
t breed
ed was

ne fire-
whom
er were
at they
see the
led the
ble, and
he most
on.

idee, on
at thirty
within
red, and
ll? who
ng with
ded him
loyed in
singula
and the
s of the
nd their
bodies



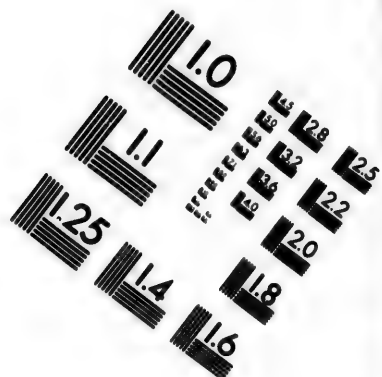
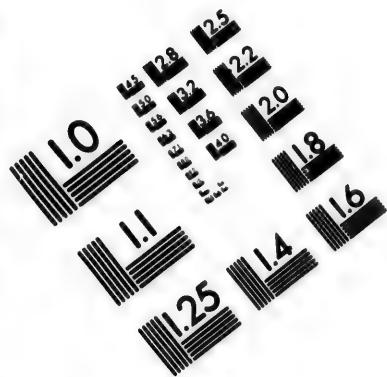
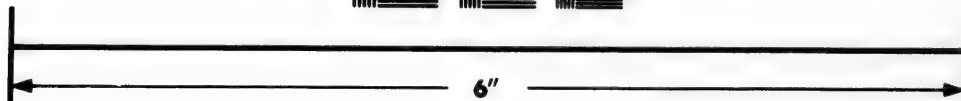
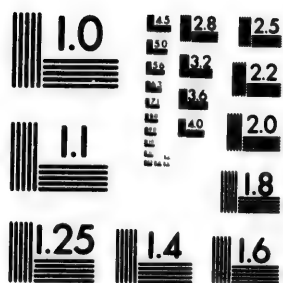


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**22 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5
5.0
5.6
6.3
7.1
8.0
9.0
10.0
11.2
12.5
14.0
16.0
18.0
20.0
22.5
25.0
28.0
32.0
36.0
40.0
45.0
50.0
56.0
63.0
71.0
80.0
90.0
100.0

10
01

bodies, under the arm pits. The upper ends were then suffered to fall down, and hang in folds to the ground, over the other. Round the outside of all, were then wrapped several pieces of cloth of various colours, which considerably increased the size; it being five or six yards in circuit; and the weight of this singular attire, was as much as the poor girls could well support. To each were hung two taames, or breast plates, in order to embellish the whole, and give it a picturesque appearance. Thus equipped, they were taken on board the ship, together with several hogs, and a quantity of fruit, which, together with this cloth, was a present to Captain Cook from Otoo's father. Those who are dressed in this manner, are called atee; but, this ceremony is never performed, except where large presents of cloth are to be made. We never saw it practised upon any other occasion; but both Captain Cook and Captain Clerke had cloth presented to them afterwards, wrapped round the bearers in the same manner. The next day, Captain Cook received a present of five hogs, and some fruit, from Otoo; and one hog, and some fruit from each of his sisters. Other provisions were also in great plenty. Great quantities of mackarel had been caught here by the natives, for two or three successive days; some of which were sold on board the ships.

Otoo was equally attentive to supply our wants, and contribute to our amusement. On the 10th, he treated a party of us at Oparre, with a play. His three sisters were the performers, and their dresses were new and elegant, much more so than we had met with in any of these islands.

The principal object, however, that the Captain had now in view, in going to Oparre, was to see an embalmed corpse, near the residence of Otoo. On enquiry, we found it to be the remains of Tee, a chief whom he well knew, when he last visited this island. It was lying in an elegant toopapaoo, in all respects similar to that at Oheitepeha, in which the remains of Waheiadooa are deposited. We found the body was under cover, with-

in

in the toopapao, and wrapped up in cloth. At the Captain's desire, the person who had the care of it, brought it out, and placed it on a kind of bier, so as to give a perfect view of it; but we were not admitted within the pales that enclosed the toopapao. The corpse having been thus exhibited, he ornamented the place with mats and cloths, disposed in such a manner as to produce a pleasing effect. The body was entire in every part; and putrefaction seemed hardly to be begun, not the least smell proceeding from it; though this is one of the hottest climates, and Tee had been above four months dead. There was, indeed, a shrinking of the muscular parts and eyes, but the hair and nails were in their original state, and the several joints were pliable. On enquiry into their method of preserving their dead bodies, we were informed, that soon after they are dead, they are disembowelled, by drawing the intestines, and other *viscera*, out at the *anus*, and the whole cavity is stuffed with cloth; that when any moisture appeared, it was immediately dried up, and the bodies rubbed all over with perfumed cocoa nut oil; which, frequently repeated, preserved them several months; after which they moulder away gradually. Omai informed us, that the bodies of all the great men, who die a natural death, are thus preserved; and are exposed to public view for a very considerable time after. At first, they are exhibited every fine day; afterwards, the intervals become greater and greater; and, at last, they are very seldom to be seen.

We quitted Oparre in the evening, leaving Otoo, and all the royal family. The Captain saw none of them till the 12th; when all, except the chief himself, honoured him with a visit. He was gone they said, to Attahooroo, to assist at another human sacrifice, sent by the chief of Tiaraboo to be offered up at the morai. This second instance, within so short a period, was a melancholy proof, that the victims of this bloody superstition are very numerous among this humane people. The Captain would have been present at this sacrifice also had

ha
late
a p
Oto
the
whi
C
mos
bein
and
plain
spect
deed,
fallen
perly
any b
gun,
ple; a
abated
these
them;
them a
all the
among
The
remove
re, atte
told, d
where
propert
pruden
was pr
were c
two, be
tween t
continu
father u
manner
ed us in
Vol. II

had he been earlier informed of it, but now it was too late. For the same reason, he omitted being present at a public transaction, at Oparre, the preceding day, when Otoo, with great solemnity, restored to the adherents of the late king Tootaha, the lands and possessions, of which, after his death, they had been deprived.

Otoo returned the next evening, from exercising the most disagreeable of his royal duties; and, the next day, being honoured with his company, the Captains Cook and Clerke, mounted on horseback, and rode round the plain of Matavai, to the astonishment of a vast train of spectators. Once or twice, before this, Omai had, indeed, attempted to get on a horse; but he had as often fallen off, before he could contrive to seat himself properly; this was, therefore, the first time they had seen any body on horseback. What the Captains had begun, was repeated daily, by one or another of our people; and yet the curiosity of the natives continued unabated. After they had seen the use that was made of these animals, they were exceedingly delighted with them; and we were of opinion, that they conveyed to them a better idea of the greatness of other nations, than all the novelties that their European visitors had carried amongst them.

The next day, Etary, or Olla, the god of Bolabola, removed from the neighbourhood of Matavai, to Oparre, attended by several sailing canoes. Otoo, we were told, did not approve of his being so near our station, where his people could more conveniently invade our property. Otoo, it must be acknowledged, took every prudent method to prevent thefts and robberies; and it was principally owing to his regulations, that so few were committed. He had erected a small house or two, behind our post; and two other near our tents, between the river and the sea. Some of his own people continually kept watch in all these places; and, as his father usually resided on Matavai Point, we were, in a manner, surrounded by them. They not only defended us in the night from thieves, but they had an opportunity

tunity of observing every thing that passed in the day; and were ready to receive contributions from such girls, as were privately connected with our people, which was usually done every morning; so that the measures he had taken to secure our safety, answered the more essential purpose of enlarging his own profits.

Otoo acquainted Captain Cook, that his presence was required at Oparre, where an audience was to be given to the great personage from Bolabola, and begged he would accompany him thither. The Captain readily consented, expecting to meet with something deserving his notice. Accordingly, they set out on the 16th, attended by Mr Anderson. Nothing, however, occurred, that was interesting or curious. Etary and his followers presented some coarse cloth and hogs to Otoo, with some ceremony, and a set speech. After this, a consultation was held between them and some other chiefs, about their expedition to Eimeo. Etary, at first, disapproved of it; but his objections were at length overruled. It appeared, indeed, the next day, that it was too late to deliberate upon this business; for, in the evening, a messenger arrived with intelligence, that there had been some skirmishes, but that the loss or advantage, on either side, was inconsiderable.

Captain-Cook, Mr Anderson, and Omai, in the morning of the 18th, went again to Oparre, accompanied by Otoo; taking with them the sheep which the Captain intended to leave upon the island. They consisted of an English ram and ewe, and three Cape ewes; all which he made a present of to Otoo. All the three cows had taken the bull; he therefore thought it advisable to divide them, and carry some to Ulietea. With this view, he ordered them to be brought before him, and proposed to Etary, that if he would leave his bull with Otoo, he should have this and one of the cows. To this proposal, Etary, at first, started some objections; but, at last, agreed to it; however, as the cattle were putting into the boat, one of Etary's followers opposed the making any exchange whatever.

The

T
agre
plea
final
he st
from
ones;
send
Th
and hi
far dif
waiting
their m
the usu
speaker
princip
the nam
the disp
deputies
war with
fice on th
the perso
strength o
ed in his
the spirit
from Tov
Having
tavai, leav
we were v
ing inform
ticularly ad
Oparre, w
royal fami
we now ha
Our wat
order, the C
that he mig
in this nei

The Captain, upon this, suspecting that Etary had agreed to the arrangement, for the present, only to please him, dropped the idea of an exchange; and finally determined to leave them all with Otoo; whom he strictly enjoined not to suffer them to be removed from Oparre, till he should have got a stock of young ones; which he might then dispose of to his friends, or send to the neighbouring islands.

This matter being settled, our gentlemen left Etary and his party, and attended Otoo to another place, not far distant, where they found the servants of a chief, waiting with a hog, a pig, and a dog, as a present from their master to the king. These were delivered with the usual ceremonies, and an harangue, in which the speaker enquired after the health of Otoo, and of all his principal people. This compliment was re-echoed in the name of Otoo, by one of his ministers; and then the dispute with Eimeo was formally discussed. The deputies of this chief were advocates for prosecuting the war with vigour, advising Otoo to offer a human sacrifice on the occasion. A chief, who constantly attended the person of Otoo opposed it, seemingly with great strength of argument. The Captain was now confirmed in his opinion, that Otoo never entered heartily into the spirit of this war. He received repeated messages from Towha, urging him to hasten to his assistance.

Having dined with Otoo, our party returned to Matavai, leaving him at Oparre. This day, and the 19th, we were very sparingly supplied with fruit. Otoo being informed of this, he and his brother, who had particularly attached himself to Captain Clerke, came from Oparre, with a large supply for both ships. All the royal family came the next day with presents, so that we now had more provisions than we could consume.

Our water being all on board, and every thing put in order, the Captain began to think of quitting the island, that he might have a sufficient time for visiting others in this neighbourhood. We therefore removed our

observatories and instruments from the shore, and bent the sails.

Early the next morning, Otoo came on board to inform Captain Cook, that the war canoes of Matavai, and of three other districts, were going to join those belonging to Oparre, and that part of the island; and that there would be a general review there. The Squadron of Matavai was soon after in motion; and after parading for some time about the bay, assembled ashore, near the middle of it. Captain Cook now went in his boat to take a survey of them.

What they call their war canoes, which are those with stages, on which they fight, amount to about sixty in number; there are nearly as many more of a smaller size. The Captain was ready to have attended them to Oparre; but the chiefs soon after formed a resolution, that they would not move till the next day. This appeared to be a fortunate delay, as it afforded him some opportunity of getting some insight into their manner of fighting. He therefore desired Otoo to give orders, that some of them should go through the necessary manœuvres. Accordingly, two of them were ordered out into the bay; in one of which Otoo, Captain Cook, and Mr King, embarked, and Omai went on board the other. As soon as they got sufficient sea-room, they faced, advanced, and retreated by turns, as quick as their rowers could paddle. In the mean time the warriors on the stages flourished their weapons, and played a variety of antics, which could answer no other purpose than that of rousing their passions, to prepare them for the onset. Otoo stood by the side of one stage, giving the necessary orders, when to advance, and when to retreat. Great judgment, and a very quick eye, seemed requisite in this department, to seize every advantage, and to avoid every disadvantage. At length, after several times advancing to, and retreating from each other, the two canoes closed, stage to stage; and after a severe, though short conflict, all the troops on

Otoo's

Otoo
his a
all th
reduc
swim
Ac
ments
somet
and fi
are kil
except
conqu
bly hap
reserve
followi
All t
in their
never h
fought
battle are
and nigh
the morn
every ne
the battle
dispute.
selves by
shore fly
the victor
aged, nor
next day,
for the v
soners, as
the conqu
which larg
sometimes
once taken
ducted to
have suffer
fortunate e

Otoo's stage were supposed to be killed, and Omai and his associates boarded them, when instantly Otoo, and all the paddlers in his canoe, leaped into the sea, as if reduced to the necessity of preserving their lives by swimming.

According to Omai's information, their naval engagements are not always conducted in this manner. They sometimes lash the two vessels together, head to head, and fight till all the warriors on one side or the other are killed. But this close combat is never practised, except when the contending parties are determined to conquer or die. Indeed, one or the other must infallibly happen; for they never give quarters, unless it be to reserve their prisoners for a more cruel death the day following.

All the power and strength of these islands lie solely in their navies. A general engagement on land we never heard of here; and all their decisive battles are fought on the water. When the time and place of battle are fixed upon by both parties, the preceding day and night are spent in feasting and diversions. When the morning approaches, they launch the canoes, make every necessary preparation, and, with the day, begin the battle; the fate of which, in general, decides the dispute. The vanquished endeavour to save themselves by a precipitate flight; and those who reach the shore fly, with their friends, to the mountains; for the victors, before their fury abates, spare neither the aged, nor women, or children. They assemble the next day, at the morai, to return thanks to the Eatoba for the victory, and offer up the slain and the prisoners, as sacrifices. A treaty is then set on foot; and the conquerors usually obtain their own terms; by which large districts of land, and even whole islands, sometimes change their owners. Omai said he was once taken a prisoner by the men of Bolabola, and conducted to that island, where he and many others would have suffered death the next day, had they not been fortunate enough to escape in the night.

This

This mock-fight being over, Omai put on his suit of armour, mounted a stage in one of the canoes, and, thus equipped, was paddled all along the shore of the bay, that every one might have a perfect view of him. His coat of mail, however, did not engage the attention of the multitude so much as was expected. The novelty was in a great degree lost upon some of them, who had seen a part of it before; and there were others, who had conceived such a dislike to Omai, from his folly and imprudence at this place, that they would hardly look at any thing that was exhibited by him, however singular and new.

*Considerations
on the
influence
Peace
Omai
with
jeſty—
Treatment
some Sp
Opinion
veller.*

Considerations

OTOO of the
proposed sailing
about at Eim
visit that ill
proposed to
fail at the fa
to take his
pointment o
was determ
board Otoo,
these points
mediately fet
to assemble t
As Captain
ved that a t
and Maheine
coroo. Fro

Considerations about sailing—A Peace or Truce with Eimeo on disadvantageous Terms—Otoo's Delay in sending Reinforcements censured—A Solemnity at the Morai on the Peace—Observations thereon—Otoo's Address and Art—Omai receives a Present of a War Canoe—Embellishes it with Variety of Streamers—Otoo's Present to his Majesty—Account of the Modes of Traffic, and the friendly Treatment we received at Otabeite—The Expedition of some Spaniards—Their Endeavours to inculcate a mean Opinion of the English—Omai jealous of another Traveller.

OTOO, and his father, came on board, in the morning of the 22d, to know when Captain Cook proposed sailing. For, hearing that there was a good harbour at Eimeo, he had informed them, that he should visit that island on his passage to Huaheine; and they proposed to accompany him, and that their fleet should sail at the same time, to reinforce Towha. Being ready to take his departure, he submitted to them the appointment of the day; and the Wednesday following was determined upon; when he was to receive on board Otoo, his father, mother, and the whole family. These points being agreed on, the Captain proposed immediately setting out for Oparre, where all the fleet was to assemble this day, and to be reviewed.

As Captain Cook was getting into his boat, news arrived that a treaty had been concluded between Towha and Maheine, and Towha's fleet had returned to Attaboroo. From this unexpected event, the war canoes, instead

instead of rendezvousing at Oparre, were ordered to their respective districts. Captain Cook, however, followed Otoo to Oparre, accompanied by Mr King and Omai. Soon after their arrival, a messenger arrived from Eimeo, and related the conditions of the peace, or rather truce, it being only for a limited time. The terms being disadvantageous to Otaheite, Otoo was severely censured, whose delay, in sending reinforcements, had obliged Towha to submit to a disgraceful accommodation. It was even currently reported, that Towha, resenting the treatment he had received, had declared, that, immediately after Captain Cook's departure, he would join his forces to those of Tiaraboo, and attack Otoo. This called upon the Captain to declare, that he was determined to espouse the interest of his friend; and that whoever presumed to attack him, should experience the weight of his displeasure, when he returned to their island.

This declaration, probably, had the desired effect, and, if Towha did entertain any such hostile intention at first, we heard no more of the report. Whappai, the father of Otoo, highly disapproved of the peace, and censured Towha for concluding it. This old man wisely considered that Captain Cook's going with them to Eimeo, might have been of singular service to their cause, though he should not interfere in the quarrel. He therefore concluded, that Otoo had acted prudently in waiting for the Captain; though it prevented his giving that early assistance to Towha which he expected.

While we were debating on this subject at Oparre, a messenger arrived from Towha, desiring the attendance of Otoo the next day, at the morai in Attahooroo, to return thanks to the Gods for the peace he had concluded. Captain Cook was asked to attend; but being much out of order, chose rather to decline it. Desirous, however, of knowing what ceremony might be exhibited on so memorable an occasion, he sent Mr King and Omai to observe the particulars, and returned to his ship to attend

at
othe
nun
sage
passi
the c
pain
the fi
cabin
He w
all the
with l
ly on
crack,
after t
an hou
operati
courage
fore he
found
physicia
the nex
the ever
being pe
following
natives,
brush, o
tified amo
lf, at any
fits down
on his leg
On Th
and Oma
gave a na
effect: "
Oparre.
mity of
meeting o
teresting.
Vol. II.—

attended by Otoo's mother, his three sisters, and several other women. At first, the Captain imagined that this numerous train came into his boat, in order to get a passage to Matavai. But they assured him, they intended passing the night on board, for the purpose of curing the disorder he complained of; which was a rheumatic pain, extending from the hip to the foot. He accepted the friendly offer, had a bed prepared for them upon the cabin floor, and submitted himself to their directions. He was first desired to lie down amongst them; when all those who could get near him, began to squeeze him with both hands all over the body, but more particularly on the parts complained of, till they made his bones crack, and his flesh became almost a mummy. In short, after suffering this severe discipline about a quarter of an hour, he was happy to get away from them. The operation, however, gave him immediate relief, and encouraged him to a repetition of the same discipline, before he retired to bed; and it was so effectual, that he found himself pretty easy the whole night after. His physicians very obligingly repeated their prescription the next morning, before they left him, and again in the evening, when they returned; after which, the cure being perfected, they took their leave of the Captain the following morning. This is called *romes*, among the natives, an operation far exceeding that of the flesh-brush, or any external friction. It is universally practised amongst these islanders, and generally by women. If, at any time, a person appears languid and tired, and sits down by any of them, they practise the *romee* upon his legs; and it always has an excellent effect.

On Thursday the 25th of September, Otoo, Mr King, and Omai, returned from Attahooroo; and Mr King gave a narrative of what he had seen to the following effect: "At sun-set, we embarked in a canoe, and left Oparre. About nine o'clock we landed at that extremity of Tettaha, which joins to Attahooroo. The meeting of Otoo and Towha, I expected, would be interesting. Otoo and his attendants seated themselves

on the beach, near the canoe in which Towha sat. He was then asleep; but being awakened, and Otoo's name being mentioned to him, a plantain tree and dog were immediately laid at Otoo's feet; and several of Towha's people came and conversed with him. After I had been, for some time, seated close to Otoo, Towha neither stirring from his canoe, nor saying any thing to us, I repaired to him. He asked me if Toote was displeased with him; I answered, No; and that he was his taio; and that I was ordered to go to Attahooroo, to let him know it. Omai then entered into a long conversation with this chief; but I could not gather any information from him. On my returning to Otoo, he desired that I should go to eat, and then to sleep; in consequence of which Omai and I left him. On questioning Omai on that head, he said, Towha was lame, and therefore could not stir; but that Otoo and he would soon converse together in private. This was probably true; for those we left with Otoo came to us in a little time; and about ten minutes after, Otoo himself arrived, when we all went to sleep in his canoe.

The ava was the next morning in great plenty. One man drank to such excess that he lost his senses, and appeared to be convulsed. He was held by two men, who busied themselves in plucking off his hair by the roots. I left this spectacle to see a more affecting one. It was the meeting of Towha and his wife, and a young girl, who was said to be his daughter. After the ceremony of cutting their heads, and discharging plenty of blood and tears, they washed, embraced the chief, and seemed perfectly unconcerned. But the young girl's sufferings were not yet concluded. Terridiri (Oberea's son) arrived; and she, with great composure, repeated those ceremonies to him which she had just performed on meeting her father. Towha, having brought a war canoe from Eimeo, I inquired if he had killed the people belonging to her; and was informed, that there was not a person in her when she was captured.

About ten or eleven o'clock we left Tettaha, and land-

landed
ternoc
posite
pected
same a
ha no
Eimeo
placed
gether
wharry
him w
The
eight la
Several
of diff
The cer
who br
of a co
what I
down, a
a planta
the shea
The p
tervals,
choly di
kind of
a short p
Otoo ro
his hand
tropic b
stood op
prayers f
denly fro
heiva! a
caree! T
large pile
is not mu
mony w

landed close to the morai of Attahooroo early in the afternoon. Three canoes lay hauled upon the beach, opposite the morai, having three hogs in each. We expected the solemnity would have been performed the same afternoon; but nothing was done, as neither Towha nor Potatou had joined us. A chief came from Eimeo with a small pig, and a plantain tree, which he placed at Otoo's feet. They conversed some time together, and the Eimeo chief often repeating the words, wharry, wharry, 'false.' Otoo was probably relating to him what he had heard, and the other contradicted it.

The next day, Towha and Potatou, with seven or eight large canoes, arrived, and landed near the morai. Several plantain trees were brought to Otoo, on behalf of different chiefs. Towha remained in his canoe. The ceremony was commenced by the principal priest, who brought out the maro, wrapped up, and a bundle of a conic shape. These were placed at the head of what I supposed to be a grave. Then three priests sat down, at the other end of the grave; having with them a plantain tree, a branch of some other kind of tree, and the sheath of the flower of the cocoa nut tree.

The priests separately repeated sentences; and, at intervals, two, and sometimes all three, chanted a melancholy ditty, very little attended to by the natives. This kind of recitative continued near an hour. Then, after a short prayer, the chief priest uncovered the maro, and Otoo rose up, and wrapped it about him, holding in his hand a bonnet, composed of the red feathers of the tropic bird, mixed with other blackish feathers. He stood opposite the three priests, who continued their prayers for about ten minutes; when a man rising suddenly from the crowd, said something ending with *heiva!* and the crowd echoed back to him three times *caree!* The company then repaired to the opposite of a large pile of stones, where is the king's morai; which is not much unlike a large grave. Here the same ceremony was again performed, and ended with three

cheers. The maro was now wrapped up, and ornamented by the addition of a small piece of red feathers.

The people now proceeded to a large hut, near the morai, where they seated themselves in solemn order. An oration was then made by a man of Tiaraboo, which ended in about ten minutes. He was followed by a man of Attahooroo; Potatou spoke next, and with much more fluency and grace than any of them. Too-teo, Otoo's orator, exhibited after him, and then a man from Eimeo. Some other speeches were made, but not attended to. Omai said, that the substance of their speeches recommended friendship, and not fighting; but as many of the speakers expressed themselves with great warmth, there were, perhaps, some recriminations and protestations of their future good intentions. In the midst of their harangues, a man of Attahooroo rose up, having a sling fastened to his waist, and a large stone upon his shoulder. After parading for about fifteen minutes in the open space, and chanting a few short sentences, he threw the stone down. This stone, together with a plantain tree that lay at Otoo's feet, were, at the conclusion of the speeches, carried to the morai; one of the priests, and Otoo with him, saying something upon the occasion.

Returning to Oparre, the sea-breeze having set in, we were obliged to land, and had a pleasant walk from Tettaha to Oparre. A tree, with two large bundles of dried leaves suspended upon it, pointed out the boundary of the two districts. We were accompanied by the man who had performed the ceremony of the stone and sling. With him Otoo's father held a long conversation, and appeared extremely angry. He was enraged, as I understood, at the part which Towha had taken in the Eimeo business."

From what can be judged of this solemnity, as related by Mr King, it had not been only a thanksgiving, as Omai told us, but rather a confirmation of the treaty. The grave, mentioned by Mr King, appears to be the very spot where the celebration of the rites began, when
the

the huma
was prese
is here al
maro. O
was made
we were h
described b
different o
thing intro
well as in
probably, o
at Eimeo,
every day.
young plant
feet of Otoo
eated himse
his message.
that blows a
plantain tree
ad proceed
ty. It is, in
in all occasio
As our frie
sling, they a
ore hogs wit
left to pre
esent use.
Captain Co
arre; and b
d poultry, v
e. Every thi
perly attend
the ducks, w
had neither
s from Otoo
tea; and to
r islands he
the following

the human sacrifice was offered, at which Captain Cook was present, and before which the victim was laid. It is here also, that they first invest their kings with the maro. Omai, who had seen the ceremony when Otoo was made king, described the whole solemnity, when we were here; which is nearly the same as that now described by Mr King; though, perhaps, upon a very different occasion. The plantain tree is always the first thing introduced in all their religious ceremonies, as well as in all their public and private debates; and, probably, on many other occasions. While Towha was at Eimeo, he sent one or more messengers to Otoo every day. Every messenger, at all times, carried a young plantain tree in his hand, which he laid at the feet of Otoo, before he mentioned his errand; then seated himself before him, and related the particulars of his message. When two men are in such high dispute that blows are expected to ensue, if one should lay a plantain tree before the other, they both become cool, and proceed in the argument without further animosity. It is, indeed, the olive branch of these people upon all occasions.

As our friends knew that we were upon the point of sailing, they all paid us a visit on the 26th, and brought more hogs with them than we wanted; for, having no need to preserve any, we had fully sufficient for our present use.

Captain Cook accompanied Otoo, the next day, to the barre; and before he left it, took a survey of the cattle and poultry, which he had consigned to his friend's care. Every thing was in a promising way; and seemed properly attended to. Two of the geese, as well as two of the ducks, were sitting; but the pea-hen and turkey had neither of them begun to lay. He took four from Otoo, two of which he intended to leave at Eimeo; and to reserve the other two for the use of any islands he might touch at in his passage to the

The following circumstance concerning Otoo will shew,

shew, that the people of this island are capable of much address and art, to accomplish their purposes. Amongst other things, which Capt. Cook had, at different times, given to this chief, was a spying-glass. Having been two or three days possessed of it, he, perhaps, grew tired of its novelty, or discovered that it could not be of any use to him, he therefore carried it, privately, to Captain Clerke; telling him, that, as he had shewn great friendship for him, he had got a present for him, which, he supposed, would be agreeable. 'But, says Otoo, Toote must not be informed of this, because he wanted it, and I refused to let him have it;' accordingly, he put the glass into Captain Clerke's hands, assuring him, at the same time, that he came honestly by it. Capt. Clerke, at first, wished to be excused from accepting it; but Otoo insisted upon it, that he should; and left it with him. A few days after, he reminded Captain Clerke of the glass; who, though he did not wish to have it, was yet desirous of obliging Otoo; and thinking, that a few axes would be more acceptable, produced four to give him in exchange. Otoo immediately exclaimed; 'Toote offered me five for it.' 'Well (says Captain Clerke) that be the case, you shall not be a loser by your friendship for me; and you shall have six axes.' He readily accepted them; but again desired, that Captain Cook might not be made acquainted with the transaction. For the many valuable things which Omai had given away, he received one good thing in return. This was a very fine double sailing canoe, completely equipped. Some time before, the Captain had made up a suit of English colours for him; but he considered them too valuable to be used at this time; and, therefore, patched up a parcel of flags and pendants, to the number of ten or a dozen, which he spread on different parts of his canoe. This, as might be expected, drew together a great number of people to look at her. On streamers were a mixture of English, French, Spanish and Dutch, being all the European colours he had. He had completely stocked himself with cloth

C.
cocoa nut
Otaheite,
that they
would not
many inst
in-law, w
engrossed
every arti
have succe
useful arti
however,
had permi
nied him
heine. T
Cook disap
forbidding
tinued in t
too well no
Otoo can
formed Ca
he desired
him to the
highly plea
At first, the
of one of
small *iwabak*
and probabl
decorated w
it being too
only thank
have been m
een accepte
By calms,
etained her
his time, the
surrounded
the place, till
three o'clock
and we weigh

cocoa nut oil, which are better, and more plentiful at Otaheite, than at any of the Society Islands; insomuch, that they are considered as articles of trade. Omai would not have behaved so inconsistently, as he did in many instances, had it not been for his sister and brother-in-law, who, together with a few select acquaintances, engrossed him to themselves, in order to strip him of every article he possessed. And they would certainly have succeeded, if Captain Cook had not taken the most useful articles of his property into his possession. This, however, would not have saved Omai, from ruin, if he had permitted these relations of his to have accompanied him to his intended place of settlement at Huahine. This, indeed, was their intention; but Captain Cook disappointed their farther views of plunder, by forbidding them to appear in that island, while he continued in that part of the world; and they knew him too well not to comply.

Otoo came on board the 28th of September, and informed Captain Cook that he had got a canoe, which he desired he would take with him, as a present from him to the *Earee rabie no Prctane*. The Captain was highly pleased with Otoo, for this mark of his gratitude. At first, the Captain supposed it to have been a model of one of their vessels of war; but it proved to be a small *ivabab*, about sixteen feet long. It was double, and probably had been built for the purpose; and was decorated with carved work, like their canoes in general. Being too large for him to take on board, he could only thank him for his good intention; but he would have been much better pleased, if his present could have been accepted.

By calms, and gentle breezes from the west, we were detained here some days longer than we expected. All this time, the ships were crowded with our friends, and surrounded by canoes; for none of them would quit the place, till we departed. At length, on the 29th, at three o'clock in the afternoon, the wind came at east, and we weighed anchor. The ships being under sail,

to oblige Otoo, and to gratify the curiosity of his people, we fired seven guns; after which, all our friends, except him, and two or three more, took leave of us with such lively marks of sorrow and affection, as sufficiently testified how much they regretted our departure. Otoo expressing a desire of seeing the ships sail, we made a stretch out to sea, and then in again immediately; when he also took his last farewell, and went ashore in his canoe.

It was strictly enjoined to Captain Cook by Otoo, to request, in his name, the Earee rahie no Pretane, to send him, by the next ship, some red feathers, and the birds which produce them; also axes; half a dozen muskets; powder and shot; and, by no means, to forget horses.

When these people make us a present, it is customary for them to let us know what they expect in return; and we find it convenient to gratify them; by which means our presents come dearer to us than what we get by barter. But, being sometimes pressed by occasional scarcity, we could have recourse to our friends for a supply as a present, when we could not get it by any other method. Upon the whole, therefore, this way of traffic was full as advantageous to us as to the natives. Captain Cook, in general, paid for each separate article as he received it, except in his intercourse with Otoo. His presents were so numerous, that no account was kept between him and the Captain. Whatever he asked for, if it could be spared, the Captain never denied him, and he always found him moderate in his demands.

Captain Cook would not have quitted Otaheite so soon as he did, if he could have prevailed upon Otoo to fix himself there. There was not even a probability of our being better supplied with provisions elsewhere than we continued to be here, even at the time of our leaving it. Besides, such a friendship and confidence subsisted between us and the inhabitants, as could hardly be expected at any other place; and, it was rather

extraordinary
pendent
there be
probable
sulted fr
might pr
than the
point, in
interview
Cook de
terms, th
had form
business,
them the
and the f
it. But
prevent t
complain
things tha
in the Cap
Otoo decl
so safe. I
ments to
the chiefs
ly desirous
left among
continually
made for
in length,
Locks and
but it must
on, and con
It may a
any distinct
rived, the
The more
we were co
people to

extraordinary, had never been once interrupted or suspended by any accident, or misunderstanding; nor had there been a theft committed, worthy of notice. It is probable, however, that their regularity of conduct resulted from their fear of interrupting a traffic, which might procure them a greater share of our commodities, than they could obtain by plunder or pilfering. This point, indeed, was, in some degree, settled at the first interview with their chiefs, after our arrival. For Captain Cook declared then to the natives, in the most decisive terms, that he would not suffer them to rob us, as they had formerly done. Omai was singularly useful in this business, being instructed by the Captain to point out to them the happy consequences of their honest conduct, and the fatal mischiefs that must attend a deviation from it. But the chiefs have it not always in their power to prevent thefts; they are often robbed themselves; and complain of it as the worst of evils. The most valuable things that Otoo received from Captain Cook, were left in the Captain's possession till the day before we sailed; Otoo declaring, at the same time, that they were no where so safe. From the acquisition of new riches, the inducements to pilfering must certainly have increased; and the chiefs are sensible of this, from their being so extremely desirous of having chests. The few that the Spaniards left amongst them are highly prized; and they were continually asking us for some. Captain Cook had one made for Otoo, the dimensions of which were eight feet in length, five in breadth, and about three in depth. Locks and bolts are not considered as a sufficient security; but it must be large enough for two people to sleep upon, and consequently guard it in the night.

It may appear extraordinary, that we could never get any distinct account of the time when the Spaniards arrived, the time they stayed, and when they departed. The more we made inquiry into this matter, the more we were convinced of the incapability of most of these people to remember, calculate, or note the time, when

past

past events happened ; especially if for a longer period than eighteen or twenty months. It however appeared, by the inscription upon the cross, and by the information of the most intelligent of the natives, that two ships came to Oheitepeha in 1774, not long after Captain Cook left Matavai, which was in May the same year. The live stock they left here, consisted of one bull, some goats, hogs, and dogs, and the male of another animal ; which we were afterwards informed was a ram, and was, at this time, at Bolobola.

The hogs are large ; have already much improved the breed originally found by us upon the island ; and, on our late arrival, were very numerous. Goats are also in plenty, there being hardly a chief without some. The dogs that the Spaniards put ashore are of two or three sorts : if they had all been hanged, instead of being left upon the island, it would have been better for the natives. Captain Cook's young ram fell a victim to one of these animals. Four Spaniards remained on shore when these ships left the island ; two of whom were priests, one a servant, and the other was much caressed among the natives, who distinguish him by the name of Mateema. He seems to have so far studied their language, as to have been able to speak it tolerably ; and to have been indefatigable in impressing the minds of the islanders with exalted ideas of the greatness of the Spanish nation, and inducing them to think meanly of that of the English. He even assured them, that we no longer existed as an independent nation ; that Pretane was but a small island, which they had entirely destroyed ; and as to Captain Cook, that they had met with him at sea, and, with the greatest ease that could be imagined had sent his ship, and every creature in her, to the bottom ; so that his visiting Otaheite was, at this time, very unexpected. Many other improbable falsehoods were propagated by this Spaniard, and believed by the inhabitants ; but Captain Cook's returning to Otaheite was considered as a complete confutation of all that Mateema had advanced.

With

V
be c
nati
succ
atte
with
prie
ha ;
man
had f
took
ever
island
aside.
that th
bring
and w
when l
Spania
tavai F
him ; b
would
their lib
ment m
a circum
may ha
dering h
ed amo
amongst
to lame
a measu
thought
public a
It has
ceived a
who had
somewh
wards, c
common

With what design the priests remained, cannot easily be conceived. If it was their intention to convert the natives to the Catholic faith, they certainly have not succeeded. It does not appear, indeed, that they ever attempted it; for the natives say, they never conversed with them, either on this, or any other subject. The priests resided the whole time in the house at Oheitepeha; but Mateema roved about continually, visiting many parts of the island. After he and his companions had staid ten months, two ships arriving at Oheitepeha, took them aboard, and sailed again in five days. Whatever design the Spaniards might have had upon this island, this hasty departure shews they have now laid it aside. They endeavoured to make the natives believe, that they still intended to return; and that they would bring with them houses, all kinds of animals, and men and women who were to settle in the island. Otoo, when he mentioned this to Capt. Cook, added, that if the Spaniards should return, they should not come to Matavai Fort, which, he said, was ours. The idea pleased him; but he did not consider that the completion of it would deprive him of his kingdom, and his people of their liberties. Though this shews how easily a settlement might be made at Otaheite, it is hoped that such a circumstance will never happen. Our occasional visits may have been of service to its inhabitants, but (considering how most European establishments are conducted among Indian nations) a permanent establishment amongst them would, probably, give them just cause to lament that our ships had ever discovered it. Indeed, a measure of this kind can hardly ever be seriously thought of; as it can neither answer the purposes of public ambition, nor of private avarice.

It has been already observed that Captain Cook received a visit from one of the two natives of this island, who had been taken to Lima by the Spaniards. It is somewhat remarkable that he never saw him afterwards, especially as the Captain received him with uncommon civility. The Captain, however, supposed

that Omai had kept him at a distance from him, from motives of jealousy, he being a traveller that, in some degree, might vie with himself. Our touching at Teneriffe was a lucky circumstance for Omai; who prided himself in having visited a place belonging to Spain, as well as this man. Captain Clerke, who had seen the other man, spoke of him as a low fellow, a little out of his senses; and his countrymen entertained the same opinion of him. In short, these two adventurers seemed to be held in little or no esteem. They had not been so fortunate, indeed, as to return home with such valuable property as had been bestowed upon Omai; whose advantages from going to England were so great, that if he should sink into the same state of insignificance, he has only himself to blame for it.

Anchor

ON the 3rd of August, the ship being at anchor at the island of Eimeo, we were informed that the natives were us, and that they had taken measures, to prevent our departure, without our being on board, and that they were willing to rely on the dispatches of two of our men, on a signal being given, to go on with both ships. Taloo is the name of the island of Eimeo. It is situated N. or S. by E. from the island of Eimeo. We have met with several of the natives of bottom, and that the ship can sail up several rivers, as to admiral.

Anchor at Taloo in Eimeo—The Harbours of Taloo and Parowroah described—Visit from Maheine, the Chief of Eimeo, who approaches with Caution—Description of the Person of Maheine—Preparations made for sailing—Detained by having a Goat stolen—That recovered, and another stolen—Menaces used to occasion it to be returned—Expedition across the Island, with a Party, in search of the Goat—Houses and Canoes burnt, and other Hostilities threatened—The Goat returned—The Island described, &c.

ON the 30th of September, at day-break, after leaving Otaheite, we stood for the north end of the island of Eimeo. Omai, in his canoe, arrived there before us, and endeavoured, by taking some necessary measures, to shew us the situation. We were not, however, without pilots, having several natives of Otaheite on board, and, among them, not a few women. Unwilling to rely entirely upon these guides, Captain Cook dispatched two boats to examine the harbour; when, on a signal being made for safe anchorage, we stood in with both ships, and anchored in ten fathoms water.

Taloo is the name of this harbour: it is on the north side of the island, and in the district of Oboonohoo, or Oonohoo. It runs above two miles between the hills, or S. by E. It is not inferior to any harbour that we have met with in this ocean, both for security and goodness of bottom. It has also this singular advantage, that a ship can sail in and out with the reigning trade wind. Several rivers fall into it; one of which is so considerable, as to admit boats a quarter of a mile up, where the water

water is perfectly fresh. The banks, on the sides of this stream, are covered with what the natives call the pooroo tree, on which they set no value, as it only serves for firing. So that wood and water may be procured here with great facility.

The harbour of Parowroah, on the same side of the island, is about two miles to the eastward, and is much larger within than that of Taloo; but the opening in the reef lies to leeward of the harbour, and is considerably narrower. These striking defects must give the harbour of Taloo a decided preference. There are one or two more harbours on the south side of the island, but they are not so considerable as those we have already mentioned.

As soon as we had anchored, great numbers of the inhabitants came aboard our ships, from mere motives of curiosity, for they brought nothing with them for the purposes of barter: but several canoes arrived, the next morning, from more distant parts, bringing with them an abundant supply of bread fruit, cocoa nuts, and a few hogs, which were exchanged for beads, nails, and hatchets; red feathers not being so much demanded here as at Otaheite.

On Thursday the 2d of October, in the morning Captain Cook received a visit from Maheine, the chief of the island. He approached the ship with as great caution and deliberation, as if he apprehended mischief from us, as friends of the Otaheiteans; these people having no idea that we can be in friendship with any one, without adopting his cause against his enemies. This chief was accompanied by his wife, who, we were told, is sister to Oamo, of Otaheite, whose death we heard of while we remained at this island. Captain Cook made them presents of such articles as seemed most to strike their fancy; and, after staying about half an hour, they went on shore. They returned, soon after, with a large hog, meaning it as a return for the Captain's favour; but he made them an additional pre-

sent to
board the
Maheine
himself,
is between
ed; which
islands.
wore a
considerable
whether
light, it is
appears
their hav
tives, wh
conclude
ment infl
gentlemen
hair, were
Toward
mounted
having fo
not very
got the be
had been
was but o
were ever
their fruit
been burn
Having
ed the shi
6th, inten
agreeable
We had
graze; an
pointed to
this eveni
fered with
with these
possible, to

sent to the full value of it; after which they went on board the *Discovery*, to visit Captain Clerke.

Maheine, supported with a few adherents, has made himself, in some degree, independent of Otaheite. He is between forty and fifty years of age, and is bald headed; which, at that age, is rather uncommon in these islands. He seemed ashamed of shewing his head, and wore a kind of turban to conceal it. Whether they considered this deficiency of hair as disgraceful, or whether they supposed that we considered it in that light, it is not easy to determine. The latter, however, appears the most probable, from the circumstance of their having seen us shave the head of one of the natives, whom we detected stealing. They naturally concluded, therefore, that this was the kind of punishment inflicted by us upon all thieves; and some of our gentlemen, whose heads were but thinly covered with hair, were violently suspected, by them, of being tetos.

Towards the evening, Captain Cook and Omai mounted on horseback, and rode along the shore. Omai having forbid the natives to follow us, our train was not very numerous; the fear of giving offence, having got the better of their curiosity. The fleet of *Towha* had been stationed in this harbour, and though the war was but of short duration, the marks of its devastation were every where conspicuous. The trees had lost all their fruit, and the houses in the neighbourhood had been burnt, or otherwise destroyed.

Having made every preparation for sailing, we hauled the ship off into the stream, in the morning of the 6th, intending to put to sea the next day, but a disagreeable accident prevented it.

We had, in the day time, sent our goats ashore to graze; and, notwithstanding two men had been appointed to look after them, one of them had been stolen this evening. This was a considerable loss, as it interfered with the Captain's views of stocking other islands with these animals: he therefore was determined, if possible, to recover it. We received intelligence, the
next

next morning, that it had been conveyed to Maheine who was, at that time, at Parowroah harbour. Two elderly men offered their services to conduct any of our people to him, in order to bring back the goat. Accordingly the Captain dispatched some of his people in a boat, charged with a message to that chief, and insisted on both the goat and the thief being immediately given up.

Maheine had, only the day before, requested the Commodore to give him two goats; but, as he could not spare them, without depriving other islands, which had none of these animals, and was informed that there were two already upon this, he refused to gratify him. Willing, however, to assist his views, in this respect, he desired an Otaheite chief, then present, to beg Otoo, in his name, to convey two of these animals to Maheine; and, to induce him to comply with this request, sent to Otoo, by the same chief, a quantity of red feathers, equal in value to the two goats that were required. The Commodore expected that Maheine, and all the other chiefs of the island, would have been perfectly satisfied with this arrangement; but he was mistaken, as the event clearly proves.

Little suspecting that any one would presume to steal a second, while the necessary measures were taking to recover the first, the goats were again put ashore this morning; and a boat, as usual, was sent for them in the evening. While our people were getting them into the boat, one was conveyed away undiscovered. As it was immediately missed, we expected to recover it without much trouble, as it could not have been carried to any considerable distance. Several of the natives set out, different ways, to seek after it; for they all endeavoured to persuade us, that it must have strayed into the woods; not one of them admitting that it was stolen. We were, however, convinced to the contrary, when we perceived that not any of the pursuers returned: their intention was only to amuse us, till their prize was safely deposited; and night coming on, prevented all

future

future
the oth
len it.

Most
moved
posite
were in
island.

had bee
refused
were de

a femal
equally
applied

mental i
this had
islands c

th plac
send for
some of

might g
of his of
to remon

while the
some of
evening,

after pro
would pe
with two

the house
some tim
had sent

ced. It b
ing, Mr
without i

The C
far in thi
and witho

rob us wi
Vol. II.

future search. At this instant, the boat returned with the other goat, and one of the persons who had stolen it.

Most of the inhabitants, the next morning, were moved off, taking with them a corpse, which lay opposite the ship, on a toopapao; and Maheine, we were informed, had retired to the remotest part of the island. It now plainly appeared, that a regular plan had been projected to steal what the Commodore had refused to give; and that, having restored one, they were determined not to part with the other, which was a female, and with kid: and the Commodore was equally determined to have it back again; he therefore applied to the two elderly men, who had been instrumental in recovering the first, who informed him that this had been taken to a place on the south side of the island, called Watea, by Hamoa, who was the chief of the place; but that it would be delivered up if he would send for it. They expressed a willingness to conduct some of his people to the spot; but, finding that a boat might go and return in one day, he sent one with two of his officers, Mr Roberts and Mr Shuttleworth; one to remain with the boat, if she could not get to the place, while the other went with the guides, accompanied by some of our people. The boat returned late in the evening, when we were informed by the officers, that after proceeding in the boat as far as rocks and shoals would permit, Mr Shuttleworth landed; and, attended with two marines, and one of the guides, proceeded to the house of Hamoa, at Watea; where they were, for some time, amused by the people, who pretended they had sent for the goat, and that it would soon be produced. It however, never arrived; and, night approaching, Mr Shuttleworth was obliged to return to his boat without it.

The Commodore lamented that he had proceeded so far in this business, as he could not retreat with credit, and without giving encouragement to other islanders to rob us with impunity. Consulting with Omai, and the

two old men, what methods to take, they advised him, without hesitation, to go into the country with a party of men, and shoot every person he should meet with. The Commodore did not approve of this bloody counsel; but, early the next morning, set out with thirty-five of his people, accompanied by Omai, one of the old men, and three or four attendants. He also ordered Lieutenant Williamson round the western part of the island, with three armed boats, to meet us.

This party had no sooner landed, than the few remaining natives fled before us. The first person we met with on our march, was in a kind of perilous situation; for Omai, the instant he beheld him, asked Captain Cook if he should shoot him; so fully was he persuaded, that the advice he had given, was immediately to be carried into execution. The Commodore then gave orders, both to him and our guide, to let it be made known, that it was not our intention to injure, much less to destroy, a single native. These joyful tidings soon circulated, and prevented the flight of the inhabitants.

Ascending the ridge of hills, on our road to Watea, we were informed that the goat had been carried the same way, and could hardly have passed the hills: we therefore marched up in great silence, expecting to surprise the party who were bearing off the prize; but, when we arrived at the uppermost plantation, we were told, that the animal we were in search of, had, indeed, been kept there the first night, but had been carried to Watea the next morning. We made no further enquiry, till we came within sight of Watea, where we were directed to Hamoa's house, by some people who also informed us, that the goat was there. We therefore fully expected to obtain it on our arrival; but, when we reached the house, the people we saw there, denied that they had ever seen it, or knew any thing concerning it. Hamoa himself appeared, and expressed himself to the same effect.

On our first coming to Watea, several men were seen,

run-

running
in the
stones
intend
duced
had gi
opinion

After

was di
of their
sufficient
and tha
should
standing
nial of
which,
houses,
sently c
the boat
miles fro
canoes,
many of
fear, tha
at some
that a m
We prep
enemies,
their han
the Com
which he
About
Wharrara
district of
this chief,
the place,
ack upon
Oroo. H
rest oursel
we arrive

running to and fro in the woods, with clubs and darts in their hands; and Omai, who ran towards them, had stones thrown at him. Hence it appeared, that they intended to oppose any attempt that we might be induced to make, but on seeing the strength of our party, had given up the design. We were confirmed in this opinion, by observing, that all their houses were empty.

After collecting a few of the natives together, Omai was directed to expostulate with them on the absurdity of their conduct, and tell them that we had received sufficient evidence that the goat was in their possession; and that, if it was not immediately delivered up, we should burn all their houses and canoes; but, notwithstanding this expostulation, they persisted in their denial of having any knowledge of it. In consequence of which, the Commodore set fire to six or eight of their houses, and two or three war canoes, which were presently consumed. After this we marched off to join the boats, which were, at that time, about seven or eight miles from us; and, in our road, burnt six other war canoes, without any opposition. On the contrary, many of the natives assisted us; more, perhaps, from fear, than any other motive. At length Omai, who was at some distance before us, came back with information, that a multitude of men were assembled to attack us. We prepared ourselves to receive them, but, instead of enemies, they were petitioners, with plantain trees in their hands, which they laid down before us, entreating the Commodore to spare a canoe that lay upon the spot, which he readily complied with.

About four o'clock in the afternoon, we arrived at Wharrarade, where our boats were waiting for us. The district of Wharrarade belongs to Tiarataboonou; but this chief, together with the other principal people of the place, had fled to the hills; though we made no attack upon their property, they being in amity with Oroo. Here we remained about an hour, in order to rest ourselves, and afterwards set out for the ships, where we arrived at eight o'clock in the evening; but no

tidings of the goat had, at that time, been received; and, of course, the operations of the day had been ineffectual.

Early on Friday morning, the 10th of October, the Captain dispatched one of Omai's men to Maheine, charged with this peremptory message, that if he persisted in his refusal to deliver up the goat, a single canoe should not be left upon the island; and that hostilities should never cease, while the stolen animal continued in his possession. That the messenger might perceive that the Commodore was in earnest, he ordered the carpenter, in his presence, to break up three canoes that lay at the head of the harbour. The planks were, by his direction, taken on board, to serve as materials for building a house for Omai, at the place where he intended to reside. The Commodore, properly attended, went afterwards to the next harbour, where he destroyed seven or eight more canoes, and returned on board about seven in the evening. On his arrival, he was informed, that the goat had been returned about half an hour before; and it appeared, from good intelligence, that it came from the very place, where the inhabitants, the day before, declared they knew nothing about it. But, from the message delivered to the chief in the morning, he perceived that the Commodore was not to be trifled with.

Thus ended this troublesome and unfortunate business; equally to be regretted by the natives, and by Captain Cook. He was grieved to reflect, that, after refusing to assist his friends at Otaheite, in the invasion of this island, he should so soon be obliged to engage in hostilities against its inhabitants; which, perhaps, were more injurious to them, than Towha's expedition.

Our intercourse with the natives was renewed the next morning; several canoes bringing bread fruit and cocoa nuts to the ships for barter, whence it was natural to conclude, that they were conscious they had merited the treatment they had received; and that, the cause of Captain Cook's displeasure being now removed, they

appre-

app
a br
faint
noon
in hi
At
fire v
ticle
what
here
and c
The
of this
in the
dark h
tures.
The
blance
country
and the
Eimeo
tions, l
about t
rally co
tom of
to the fo
becomes
This ren
at Otahe
stiff mou
and the
colour,
Near the
large sto
tions are
them as
divinities
supernat

apprehended no further mischief. We weighed, with a breeze, down the harbour, about nine ; but it was so faint and variable, that we did not get out to sea till noon, when we steered for Huaheine, Omai attending in his canoe.

At Eimeo, the ships were abundantly supplied with fire wood. We did not supply ourselves with this article at Otaheite, as there is not a tree at Matavai but what is useful to the inhabitants. We also received here a large supply of refreshments in hogs, bread fruit, and cocoa nuts.

There is very little difference between the produce of this island, and that of Otaheite ; but the difference in their women is remarkable. Those of Eimeo have a dark hue, are low in stature, and have forbidding features.

The appearance of Eimeo bears not the least resemblance to that of Otaheite. The latter being a hilly country, has little low land, except some deep vallies, and the flat border that almost surrounds it near the sea. Eimeo has steep rugged hills, running in different directions, leaving large vallies, and gently rising grounds about their sides. The hills, though rocky, are generally covered with trees, almost to the tops. At the bottom of the harbour of Taloo, the ground gradually rises to the foot of the hills ; but the flat border, on the sides, becomes quite steep at a small distance from the sea. This renders it a prospect superior to any thing we saw at Otaheite. In the low grounds, the soil is a yellowish stiff mould ; on the lower hills it is blacker and looser, and the stone which composes the hills, is of a bluish colour, interspersed with some particles of glimmer. Near the place where our ships were stationed, are two large stones, concerning which some superstitious notions are entertained by the natives. They consider them as brother and sister ; that they are Eatooas, or divinities, and that they came from Ulietea, by some supernatural means.

The

The Ships arrive at Huaheine—Assembly of the Chiefs—Omai's Harangue—His Establishment in this Island unanimously agreed to—A House built for him—Steps taken to ensure his Safety—The Ships infested with Cockroaches—Detection and Punishment of a Thief—He escapes from his Confinement—Animals left with Omai—His European Weapons—His Entertainments—Inscription on his House—His Behaviour at parting—Remarks on his general Conduct—His Character—Account of the two New Zealanders who remained with him.

ON the morning that succeeded our departure from Eimeo, we saw Huaheine extending from S. W. by W. to W. by N. At twelve o'clock we anchored at the northern entrance of Owharre harbour, situate on the west side of the island. Omai, in his canoe, entered the harbour just before us, but did not land. Though many of his countrymen crowded to see him, he did not take much notice of them. Great numbers also came off to the ships, insomuch that we were greatly incommoded by them. Our passengers immediately informed them of our transactions at Eimeo, multiplying, by ten at least, the number of houses and canoes that we had destroyed. Captain Cook was not much displeased at their giving this exaggerated account, as he found that it made a considerable impression upon all who heard it; so that he had hopes it would induce the natives of this island to treat him in a better manner than they had done in his prior visits.

The next morning, which was the 13th of October,

all

all the
This v
now h
the pre
it in a s
to estab
Cook c
complie
ed to ac
inhabit
some la
should
ficulty.
should
come m
any suc
that the
him in h
fixed at
heine as
mined to
of that is
The C
Taireetan
a view o
to accom
the occas
chief him
ing drew
many oth
of people
seemed st
number o
also much
island. T
reea; but
presence r
did not ex
making h

all the principal people of the island came to our ships. This was just what the Commodore wished, as it was now high time to settle Omai; and he supposed, that the presence of these chiefs would enable him to effect it in a satisfactory manner. Omai now seemed inclined to establish himself at Ulietea; and if he and Captain Cook could have agreed with respect to the mode of accomplishing that design, the latter would have consented to adopt it. His father had been deprived by the inhabitants of Bolabola, when they subdued Ulietea, of some land in that island; and the Captain hoped he should be able to get it restored to the son without difficulty. For this purpose, it was necessary that Omai should be upon amicable terms with those who had become masters of the island; but he would not listen to any such proposal, and was vain enough to imagine, that the Captain would make use of force to re-instate him in his forfeited lands. This preventing his being fixed at Ulietea, the Captain began to consider Huaheine as the more proper place; and therefore determined to avail himself of the presence of the chief men of that island, and propose the affair to them.

The Captain now prepared to make a formal visit to Taireetareea, the Earee rahie, or king of the island, with a view of introducing this business. Omai, who was to accompany him, dressed himself very properly on the occasion, and provided a handsome present for the chief himself, and another for his Eatooa. Their landing drew most of the visitors from our ships, who, with many others, assembled in a large house. The concourse of people became very great, the major part of whom seemed stouter and fairer than those of Otaheite, and the number of men who appeared to be of consequence was also much greater, in proportion to the extent of the island. The Captain waited some time for Taireetareea; but when that chief appeared, he found that his presence might easily have been dispensed with, as he did not exceed ten years of age. Omai began with making his offering to the gods, which consisted of cloth,

cloth, red feathers, &c. Another offering succeeded, which was to be given to the gods by the young chief; and, after that, several other tufts of red feathers were presented. The different articles were laid before a priest, being each of them delivered with a kind of prayer, which was spoken by one of Omai's friends, though in a great measure dictated by himself. In these prayers he did not forget his friends in England, nor those who had conducted him safe back to his native country. The Earee rahie no Pretane (king of Great-Britain,) the Earl of Sandwich, Toote, Tatee, (Cook and Clerke) were mentioned in every one of them. These offerings and prayers being ended, the priest took each of the articles in order, and after repeating a prayer, sent every one to the morai.

These religious rites having been performed, Omai seated himself by the Captain, who bestowed a present on the young chief, and received another in return. Some arrangements were next agreed upon, relative to the mode of carrying on the intercourse between us and the islanders; and the Captain pointed out the mischievous consequences that would attend their plundering us, as they had done on former occasions. The establishment of Omai was then proposed to the chiefs who were assembled. He informed them, that we had conveyed him into our country, where he was well received by the great King and his Earees, (chiefs or nobles) and treated during his whole stay with all the marks of regard and affection; that he had been brought back again, after having been enriched, by our generosity, with a variety of articles, which would be highly beneficial to his countrymen; and that, besides the two horses which were to continue with him, many other new and useful animals had been left at Otahelte, which would speedily multiply, and furnish a sufficient number for the use of all the neighbouring islands. He then gave them to understand, that it was Captain Cook's earnest request, that they would give his friend a piece of land,

upon

upon
for h
obtain
the C
establ
by Ca
with,
bation
the re
Captai
lands i
subject
that th
and dri
proper,
signifie
neither
nor wo
he rema
himself
and not
conquer
This
turn to
expresse
Huaheir
Cook's;
what por
at hearin
and give
make an
accept, th
therefore
lar spot,
they inte
some chie
were sent
modore's
ground in
Vol. II.—

upon which he might build a house, and raise provisions for himself and servants; adding, that, if he could not obtain this at Huaheine either by donation or purchase, the Captain was resolved to carry him to Ulietea, and establish him there. These topics were dictated to Omai by Captain Cook, who observed, that what he concluded with, about going to Ulietea, seemed to gain the approbation of all the chiefs; and he immediately perceived the reason. Omai had vainly flattered himself, that the Captain would use force in restoring him to his father's lands in Ulietea, and he had talked at random, on this subject, to some of the assembly; who now expected that the Captain would assist them in invading Ulietea, and driving the Bolabolans out of that island. It being proper, therefore, that he should undeceive them, he signified, in the most decisive manner, that he would neither give them any assistance in such an enterprize, nor would even suffer it to be put in execution, while he remained in their seas; and that, if Omai established himself in Ulietea, he ought to be introduced as a friend, and not forced upon the people of Bolabola as their conqueror.

This peremptory declaration immediately gave a new turn to the sentiments of the council; one of whom expressed himself to this effect: that the whole island of Huaheine, and whatever it contained, were Captain Cook's; and that, consequently, he might dispose of what portion he pleased to his friend. Omai was pleased at hearing this; thinking that he would be very liberal, and give him what was perfectly sufficient. But to make an offer of what it would have been improper to accept, the Captain considered as offering nothing; and therefore desired, that they would mark out the particular spot, and likewise the exact quantity of land, which they intended to allot for the settlement. Upon this, some chiefs, who had already retired from the assembly, were sent for; and, after a short consultation, the Commodore's request was unanimously granted, and the ground immediately fixed upon, adjoining to the house

where the present meeting was held. It extended along the shore of the harbour, about two hundred yards; its depth to the bottom of the hill was somewhat more; and a proportional part of the hill was comprehended in the grant. This affair being settled, a tent was pitched on shore, a post established, and the observatories erected. The carpenters of each ship were also now employed in building a small house for Omai, in which he might secure the various European commodities that he had in his possession; at the same time, some of our people were occupied in making a garden for his use, planting vines, shaddocks, melons, pine apples, and the seeds of other vegetable articles; all which were in a flourishing state before our departure from the island.

Omai began now to pay a serious attention to his own affairs, and heartily repented of his ill-judged prodigality at Otaheite. He found at Huaheine, a brother, a sister, and a brother-in-law, the sister having been married. But these did not plunder him, as his other relations had lately done. It appeared, however, that though they had too much honesty and good nature to do him any injury, they were of too little consequence in the island to do him any real services, having neither authority nor influence to protect his property or his person. Thus circumstanced, he ran great risque of being stripped of every thing he had received from us, as soon as he should cease to be within the reach of our powerful protection.

He was now on the point of being placed in the very singular situation, of being the only rich man in the community of which he was to be a member. And as he had, by his connection with us, made himself master of an accumulated quantity of a species of treasure which his countrymen could not create by any art or industry of their own, it was natural to imagine, that while all were desirous of sharing in this envied wealth, all would be ready to join in attempts to strip its sole proprietor. As the most likely means of preventing this, Captain Cook advised him to distribute some of his moveables

move
who,
duce
him f
low t
this p
ever,
tude,
motive
tifying
make
usual t
same st
present
his ene
resentm
have so
have inc
to retur
entertain
fair stra
being su
While
bread on
cock-roa
incredibl
very con
proved f
a few mi
who soon
honey-co
birds, wh
fond of it
fastened
preserved
the bindir
sinuating
Mr Ander
and germa

moveables among two or three of the principal chiefs; who, on being thus gratified themselves, might be induced to favour him with their patronage, and shield him from the injuries of others. He promised to follow this advice; and we heard, before we sailed, that this prudent step had been taken. The Captain, however, not confiding entirely in the operations of gratitude, had recourse to the more forcible and effectual motive of intimidation, taking every opportunity of notifying to the inhabitants, that it was his intention to make another visit to their island, after being absent the usual time; and that, if he did not find his friend in the same state of security in which he should leave him at present, all those who should then appear to have been his enemies, might expect to become the objects of his resentment. This menacing declaration will, probably, have some effect; for our successive visits of late years have induced these islanders to believe, that our ships are to return at certain periods; and while they continue to entertain such a notion, which the Captain thought it a fair stratagem to confirm, Omai has some prospect of being suffered to thrive upon his new plantation.

While we remained in this harbour, we carried the bread on shore to clear it of vermin. The number of cock-roaches that infested the ship at this time, is almost incredible. The damage we sustained from them was very considerable; and every attempt to destroy them proved fruitless. If any kind of food was exposed for a few minutes, it was covered with these noxious insects, who soon pierced it full of holes, so that it resembled an honey-comb. They proved particularly destructive to birds, which had been stuffed for curiosities, and were so fond of ink, that they eat out the writing on the labels, fastened to different articles; and the only thing that preserved books from their ravages, was the closeness of the binding, which prevented these devourers from insinuating themselves between the leaves. According to Mr Anderson, they were of two sorts, the *blatta orientalis*, and *germanica*.

The intercourse of trade and friendly offices, between us and the inhabitants of Huaheine, was undisturbed, by any accident, till the evening of the 22d, when one of the natives found means to get into Mr Bayly's observatory, and carry off a sextant, unobserved. Captain Cook was no sooner informed of this theft, than he went ashore, and desired Omai to apply to the chiefs, to procure restitution. He accordingly made application to them, but they took no steps towards recovering the instrument, being more attentive to a heeva, that was then exhibiting, till the Captain ordered the performers to desist. Being now convinced that he was in earnest, they began to make some enquiry after the delinquent, who was sitting in the midst of them, with such marks of unconcern, that the Captain was in great doubt of his being guilty, particularly as he denied it. Omai, however, assuring him that this was the person, he was sent on board the ship and there confined. This raised an universal ferment among the assembled islanders, and the whole body fled with precipitation. The prisoner being examined by Omai, was with some difficulty brought to confess where he had concealed the sextant, and it was brought back unhurt the next morning. After this, the natives recovered from their consternation, and began to gather about us as usual. As the thief appeared to be a shameless villain, Captain Cook punished him with greater severity than he had ever done any former culprit. Besides having his head and beard shaved, he commanded that both his ears should be cut off, and then dismissed him.

This punishment, however, did not deter him from committing other offences; for, early in the morning of the 25th, a general alarm was spread, occasioned, as was reported, by one of our goats being stolen by this very man; and though, upon examination, we found every thing safe in that quarter, yet it appeared, that he had destroyed and carried off from Omai's grounds, several vines and cabbage-plants; and he publicly threatened to put him to death, and set fire to his house, as

soon

soon
ing an
seized
view
seem
was a
the pe
designt
trouble
the adj
of prop
better n
among
observed
there wa
the rein
any misf
knew, w
ry to ap
procure
Omai's
his move
other arti
the gazin
drinking
train of d
men woul
think that
baked hog
that a plan
ter; and t
let as one
of these an
of our ship
and other
value in th
presents be
not been o
evening of

soon as we should quit this place. To prevent his doing any further mischief, the Captain ordered him to be seized, and confined again on board the ship, with a view of carrying him off the island; and this intention seemed to give general satisfaction to all the chiefs. He was a native of Bolabola; but there were too many of the people here ready to co-operate with him in all his designs. We had, indeed, always met with more troublesome persons in Huaheine than in any other of the adjacent islands; and it was only fear, and the want of proper opportunities, that induced them to behave better now. Anarchy and confusion seemed to prevail among them. Their Earee rahie, as we have already observed, was but a child; and we did not find, that there was any individual, or any set of men, who held the reins of government for him; so that, whenever any misunderstanding occurred between us, we never knew, with sufficient precision, to whom it was necessary to apply, in order to effect an accommodation, or procure redress.

Omai's house being now almost finished, many of his moveables were carried ashore on the 26th; amongst other articles was a box of toys, which greatly pleased the gazing multitude. But, as to his plates, dishes, drinking mugs, glasses, pots, kettles, and the whole train of domestic apparatus, scarce one of his countrymen would even look at them. Omai himself began to think that they would be of no service to him; that a baked hog was more savory eating than a boiled one; that a plantain leaf made as good a plate or dish as pewter; and that a cocoa nut shell was as convenient a goblet as one of our mugs. He therefore disposed of most of these articles of English furniture among the crew of our ships; and received from them in return, hatchets, and other iron implements, which had a more intrinsic value in this part of the world. Among the numerous presents bestowed upon him in England, fireworks had not been omitted; some of which we exhibited in the evening of the 28th, before a great multitude of people, who

who beheld them with a mixture of pleasure and apprehension. Those which remained were put in order, and left with Omai, pursuant to their original destination.

On Thursday the 30th, early in the morning, the Bolabola-man, whom we had in confinement, found means to escape out of the ship, carrying with him the shackle of the bilboo-bolt that had been put about his leg, which was taken from him, as soon as he arrived on shore by one of the chiefs, and given to Omai; who quickly came on board, to inform the Captain that his mortal enemy was again let loose upon him. We found, upon enquiry, that the sentry placed over the prisoner, and even the whole watch in that part of the ship where he was confined, having fallen asleep, he seized the favourable opportunity, took the key of the irons out of the drawer into which he had seen it put, and set himself at liberty. This escape convinced the Commodore, that his people had been very remiss in their night-duty; which rendered it necessary to chastize those who were now in fault, and to establish some new regulations that might prevent similar negligence in future. He was pleased at hearing, afterwards, that the fellow who had escaped, had gone over to Ulitea.

Omai was no sooner settled in his new habitation, than Captain Cook began to think of departing from Huaheine, and got every thing off from the shore this evening, except a goat big with kid, and a horse and mare; which were left in the possession of our friend, who was now to be finally separated from us. We also gave him a boar and two sows of the English breed; and he had got two or three sows of his own. The horse had covered the mare during our continuance at Otaheite; so that the introduction of a breed of horses into these islands, has probably succeeded, by this valuable present.

With regard to Omai's domestic establishment, he had procured at Otaheite, four or five *toutous*, or people of the lower class; the two young New Zealanders remained

maine
joined
list
nomin
The
twenty
height.
spoils o
constru
there m
to pull i
after ou
after the
to be bro
to enclos
the chiefs
ance; an
ground w
in Huahe
Omai's
piece, two
musquet, b
got on sho
two Captai
two or thre
table was p
that the il
Commodor
upon the o

Georg
N

On Sunda
ook the adv
of Cowharre
board till
ook, to grat

mained with him; and his brother, and several others, joined him at Huaheine; so that his family now consisted of ten or eleven persons; if that can justly be denominated a family, to which not one female belonged. The house which our people erected for him was twenty-four feet by eighteen; and about ten feet in height. It was composed of boards, which were the spoils of our military operations at Eimeo; and, in the construction of it, as few nails as possible were used, lest there might be an inducement, from the desire of iron, to pull it down. It was agreed upon, that, immediately after our departure, he should erect a spacious house after the mode of his own country; one end of which was to be brought over that which we had built, so as entirely to enclose it for greater security. In this work, some of the chiefs of the island promised to contribute their assistance; and if the intended building should cover the ground which was marked out for it, few of the houses in Huaheine will exceed it in magnitude.

Omai's European weapons consisted of a fowling piece, two pair of pistols, several swords or cutlasses, a musquet, bayonet, and a cartouch box. After he had got on shore whatever appertained to him, he had the two Captains, and most of the officers of both our ships, two or three times, to dinner; on which occasions, his table was plentifully supplied with the best provisions that the island could afford. Before we set sail, the Commodore caused the following inscription to be cut upon the outside of his house:

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 2 Novembris, 1777.

*Naves { Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.
 { Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

On Sunday, the 2d of November, at four o'clock, we took the advantage of an easterly breeze, and sailed out of Owharre harbour. Most of our friends continued on board till our vessels were under sail; when Captain Cook, to gratify their curiosity, ordered five guns to be fired.

fired. Then they all left us, except Omai, who remained till we were out at sea. We had come to sail by a hawser fastened to the shore, which, in casting the ship, parted, being cut by the rocks, and its outer end was left behind: it therefore became necessary to dispatch a boat to bring it on board. In this boat, our friend Omai went ashore, after having taken a very affectionate farewell of all the officers. He sustained this parting with a manly fortitude, till he came to Captain Cook, when, notwithstanding all his efforts, he was unable to suppress his tears; and he wept all the time in going ashore, as Mr King, who accompanied him in the boat, afterwards informed the Captain.

Though we had now, to our great satisfaction, brought him safe back to the very spot from which he was taken, it is probable, that we left him in a situation less desirable than that which he was in before his connection with us: not that, having tasted the comforts of civilized life, he must become more wretched from being obliged to relinquish all thoughts of continuing them, but merely because the advantages he received from us, have placed him in a more hazardous situation, with respect to his personal safety. From being greatly caressed in England, he had lost sight of his primary condition, and did not consider in what manner his acquisitions, either of knowledge or of wealth, would be estimated by his countrymen, at his return; which were the only things whereby he could recommend himself to them now more than before, and on which he could lay the foundation either of his future happiness or greatness. He appeared to have, in some measure, forgotten their customs in this respect, and even to have mistaken their genius; otherwise he must have been convinced of the extreme difficulty there would be in getting himself admitted as a man of rank, where there is scarce a single instance of a person's being raised from an inferior station even by the greatest merit. Rank seems to be the foundation of all power and distinction here, and is

per-

Vol. II.

pertinaciously adhered to, that, unless a person has some degree of it, he will be contemned and hated, if he pretends to exercise any authority. This was really the case, in a great measure, with Omai; though his countrymen were rather cautious of expressing their sentiments while we continued among them.

If he had made a proper use of the presents he brought with him from Great Britain, this, with the knowledge he had gained by travelling, might have enabled him to form the most advantageous connections. But he exhibited too many proofs of a weak inattention to this obvious means of promoting his interest. He had formed schemes of a higher nature; it may indeed be said, meaner; for revenge, rather than a desire of greatness, appeared to influence him from the beginning. His father was, certainly, a man of considerable property in Ulloa, when that island was subdued by the inhabitants of Bolabola; and, with many others, fled for refuge to Huaheine, where he died, and left Omai, with several other children, who thus became entirely dependent. In this situation, Captain Furneaux took him up, and brought him to England. Whether he expected, from the treatment he there met with, that any assistance would be afforded him against the enemies of his father and his country, or whether he had the vanity to suppose, that his own superiority of knowledge, and personal courage, would be sufficient to dispossess the conquerors of Ulloa, is uncertain; but, from the very commencement of the voyage, this was his constant topic. He would not pay any attention to our remonstrances on such an inconsiderate determination, but was displeased, whenever more reasonable counsels were proposed for his benefit. Nay, he was so ridiculously attached to his favourite scheme, that he affected to believe the Bolabolans would certainly quit the conquered island, as soon as they should have intelligence of his arrival in Oorheite. As we proceeded, however, on our voyage, he began to perceive his error; and, by the time of our arrival at the Friendly Islands, had such ap-

prehenensions of his reception in his own country, that he was inclined to have remained at Tongataboo, under the protection of his friend Feenou. At these islands, he squandered away a considerable part of his European treasure; and he was equally imprudent at Otaheite, till Captain Cook put a stop to his profusion. He also formed such improper connections there, that Otoo, though at first disposed to countenance him, afterwards openly expressed his disapprobation of his conduct. He might, however, have recovered the favour of that chief, and have settled, to great advantage, in Otaheite, as he had formerly lived some years there, and was now honoured with the notice of Towha, whose valuable present of a large double canoe has been already mentioned. But he continued undetermined to the last, and probably would not have adopted the plan of settlement in Huaheine, if Captain Cook had not so positively refused to employ force in restoring him to the possession of his father's property.

Omai's greatest danger, in his present situation, will arise from the very imprudent declarations of his antipathy to the Bolabolans. For these people, from motives of jealousy, will undoubtedly endeavour to render him obnoxious to the inhabitants of Huaheine; as they are now at peace with that island, and may easily accomplish their designs. This circumstance, he might, with great ease, have avoided. For they were not only free from any aversion to him, but the chief, whom we mentioned before, as a priest or god, even offered to reinstate him in his father's lands. But he peremptorily refused this; and, to the very last, continued fixed in his resolution to embrace the first opportunity of satisfying his revenge in battle. To this he is perhaps not a little stimulated by the coat of mail he brought from England; clothed in which, and furnished with fire-arms, he idly imagines that he shall be invincible.

The defects of Omai's character were considerably over-balanced by his great good nature, and docile, tractable disposition. Captain Cook, during the whole time

ti
d
ev
on
the
the
tol
cati
a ge
not
were
amon
conv
babil
never
ter of
the ch
they h
ten year
of any
they hi
therefor
duce an
much in
liarized
exert his
fruits an
will be n
age thes
of Omai,
seen left u
ave obta
When the
will equal
provisio
Omai's
ack with
offer the
ctane. C

time he was with him, seldom had reason to be seriously displeased with his general conduct. His grateful heart ever retained the highest sense of the favours conferred on him in England; nor will he ever be unmindful of those who honoured him, while in that kingdom, with their friendship and protection. Though he had a tolerable share of understanding, he shewed little application and perseverance in exerting it, so that he had but a general and imperfect knowledge of things. He was not a man of any great degree of observation. There were many elegant amusements, as well as useful arts, among the Friendly Islanders, which he might have conveyed to his native country, where they, in all probability, would have been readily adopted. But we never found that he endeavoured to make himself master of any one of them. Such indifference is, indeed, the characteristic foible of his countrymen. Though they have been visited by Europeans, at times, for these ten years past, we could not discern the slightest vestige of any attempt to profit by this intercourse; nor have they hitherto imitated us in any respect. It must not, therefore, be expected, that Omai will be able to introduce among them many of our arts and customs, or much improve those to which they have been familiarized by long habit. We trust, however, that he will exert his endeavours to bring to perfection the various fruits and vegetables that were planted by us; which will be no small acquisition. But the principal advantage these islands are likely to receive from the travels of Omai, will probably arise from the animals that have been left upon them; which, perhaps, they never would have obtained, if he had not come over to England. When these multiply, Otaheite and the Society Isles, will equal any place in the known world, with respect to provisions.

Omai's return, and the substantial proofs he carried back with him of British liberality, encouraged many to offer themselves as volunteers to accompany us to the same. Captain Cook took every opportunity of expressing

pressing his fixed determination to reject all applications of that kind. Omai, who was ambitious of remaining the only great traveller among them, being afraid lest the Captain might be prevailed upon to place others in a situation of rivalling him, frequently reminded him of the declaration of the Earl of Sandwich, that no others of his countrymen were to come to England.

Had there been the smallest probability of any ship being again sent to New Zealand, the Commodore would have brought the two youths of that country home with him, both of them being very desirous of continuing with us. Taweharooa, the eldest, was endowed with strong natural sense, was extremely well-disposed, and capable of receiving any instruction. He appeared to be sensible of the inferiority of his own country to these islands, and resigned himself, though perhaps not without reluctance, to end his days at Huahine in ease and plenty. But the other, named Kokoa, was so strongly attached to us, that it became necessary to make use of force in carrying him ashore. He was a smart witty boy; and, on that account great notice had been taken of him on board.

Arriva

broug

Instr

two

ter,

Unsu

tains

Fami

Ulietu

AS a
hawker,
over fo
ing, w
round t
of Oha
calms a
still at t
harbour
chief of
off to p
and sen
ly breez
an easte
we we
two o'clock
night.
our ship
natives,
they ex

Arriv

Arrival at Ulietea—One of the Marines deserts, but is brought back by Captain Cook—Intelligence from Omai—Instructions to Captain Clerke—Two others desert—The two Captains seek them in vain—The Chief's Son, Daughter, and her Husband confined on board the Discovery—Unsuccessful Conspiracy of the Natives against the Captains—The two Deserters are recovered—The Chief's Family set at Liberty—The Ships sail—Remarks on the Ulieteans—Present and former State of their Island.

AS soon as the boat, in which Omai was conveyed ashore, had returned, with the remainder of the hawser, to the ship, we hoisted her in, and stood over for Ulietea without delay. The next morning, which was the 3d of November, we made sail round the southern end of that island, for the harbour of Ohamaneno. We met with variable light airs, and calms alternately, so that, at twelve o'clock, we were still at the distance of a league from the mouth of the harbour; and while we were thus detained, Oreo, the chief of the island, with his son and son-in-law, came off to pay a visit. All the boats were now hoisted out, and sent ahead to tow, being assisted by a slight southerly breeze. This soon failing, and being succeeded by an easterly one, which blew right out of the harbour, we were obliged to anchor at its entrance, about two o'clock, and to warp in, which employed us till night. We were no sooner within the harbour, than our ships were surrounded with canoes, filled with the natives, who brought a supply of fruit and hogs, which they exchanged for our commodities.

The

The following day, the Resolution was moored close to the northern shore, at the head of the harbour ; and the Discovery along side the southern shore. Captain Cook, in the mean time, returned Oreo's visit, and presented that chief with a red-feathered cap from Tongataboo, a shirt, a linen gown, and a few other things of less value. Oreo, and some of his friends, then accompanied him on board to dinner. On Thursday the 6th, the observatories were set up, and the necessary instruments carried on shore. The two succeeding days, Captain Cook, Mr King, and Mr Bayly, observed the sun's azimuths, both on shore and on board, with all the compasses, in order to discover the variation. Nothing remarkable happened, till very early in the morning of the 13th, when a marine, named John Harrison, who was sentinel at the observatory, deserted, taking with him his musquet and accoutrements. As soon as we gained intelligence which way he had gone, a party was detached in search of him ; but they returned towards the evening, without success. The next day, Captain Cook applied to the chief concerning this affair, who promised to send a party of the islanders after the fugitive, and gave us hopes that he should be brought back in the course of that day. This, however, did not happen ; and we had reason to imagine, that the chief had taken no steps towards finding him.

We had, at this time, a considerable number of the natives about our ships, and several thefts were committed ; the consequences of which being apprehended by them, very few of them came to visit us the next morning. Oreo himself caught the alarm, and fled with his whole family. Captain Cook considered this as a good opportunity to insist upon their delivering up the deserter ; and having heard that he was then at a place called Harmaa, situate on the other side of the island, he repaired thither with two armed boats, attended by a native. In their way, they met with the chief, who also embarked with them. The Captain, with a few of his men, landing about a mile and a half from the

the
the
the
mor
the
for
deli
quet
the i
to ph
serve
bid t
and r
with
on the
offerin
to qui
the bo
mony
excuse
him aw
as Paha
been at
had ren
the tim
other, t
About
Omai di
telligenc
tants of
him, ex
informat
tain Co
axes. P
ing his fr
Huaheine
female ki
On We
o Captai

the spot, marched up to it, with great expedition, lest the sight of the boats should give the alarm, and allow the offender sufficient time to make his escape to the mountains. This precaution proved unnecessary; for the natives of that part of the island having obtained information of the Captain's approach, were prepared to deliver up the fugitive. He was found, with his musket lying before him, seated betwixt two women, who, the instant that the Captain entered the house, rose up to plead in his vindication. As such proceedings deserved to be discouraged, the Captain, with a stern look, bid them be gone; upon which they burst into tears, and retired. Paha, the chief of that district, now came with a sucking pig, and a plantain tree, which he was on the point of presenting to Captain Cook, as a peace-offering; who rejected it, and having ordered the chief to quit his presence, embarked with Harrison in one of the boats, and returned to the ships. After this, harmony was speedily restored. The delinquent made no excuse for his conduct, than that the natives had enticed him away; which perhaps was in a great measure true, as Paha, and the two women above-mentioned, had been at the ship the day before his desertion. As he had remained at his station till within a few minutes of the time in which he was to have been relieved by another, the punishment he received was not very severe.

About a fortnight after we had arrived in Ulietea, Omai dispatched two of his people in a canoe, with intelligence that he continued undisturbed by the inhabitants of Huaheine, and that every thing succeeded with him, except that his goat had died in kidding. This information was accompanied with a request, that Captain Cook would send him another goat, and also two axes. Pleased with this additional opportunity of serving his friend, the Captain sent back the messengers to Huaheine, on the 18th with the axes, and a male and female kid.

On Wednesday the 19th, the Commodore delivered to Captain Clerke his instructions how to proceed, in case

case of separation, after quitting these islands. The purport of these instructions was as follows: that, whereas the passage from the Society Isles to the northern coast of America was of considerable length, and as a part of it must be performed in the depth of winter, when boisterous weather must be expected, which might perhaps occasion a separation, Captain Clerke should take all possible care to prevent this; but that if the two ships should chance to be separated, he, after searching for Captain Cook, and not finding him in five days, was to proceed towards the coast of New Albion, and endeavour to fall in with it in the latitude of 45 d. where he was to cruize for him ten days; and not seeing him in that time, was to put into the first convenient harbour, in or to the north of that latitude, to obtain refreshments, and take in wood and water: that, during his continuance in port, he was constantly to look out for Captain Cook; and if the latter did not join him before the 1st of April following, he was to proceed northward to the latitude of 56 d. where, at such a distance from the coast, as did not exceed fifteen leagues, he was to cruize for him till the 10th of May; and not finding him, was to proceed on a northerly course, and attempt to discover a passage into the Atlantic Ocean, either through Hudson's or Baffin's Bays, as directed by the instructions of the Board of Admiralty: that, if he should fail in those endeavours, he was to repair to the harbour of St Peter and St Paul in Kamtschatka, and pass the winter there: but that if he could not procure refreshments at that port, he was at liberty to go where he should think proper, leaving with the Governor, before his departure, an account of his destination, to be delivered to Captain Cook on his arrival; and that, in the spring of the year following (1779) he was to return to the port above-mentioned: that if he then received no further orders from Captain Cook, so as to justify his pursuing any other measures than those which were pointed out in the instructions of the Lords of the Admiralty, his future proceedings were to be directed

by the
or any
tions o
them v

Whi
sides of
plates o
received
the Com
purpose
copper,

On M
dore was
one of w
long afte
embarked
at the oth
expressed
it was ex
had gone
with two
out in que
without fu
was of opi
ferthers; an
information
could not
next morni
sunaways w
the only pe
maintaining at
order to give
desertion, to
therefore det
having obser
muse him w
at with two
lf. They p
all they came
Vol. II. No.

by them; and that, in case of being prevented, by illness or any other cause, from carrying these, and the instructions of their Lordships, into execution, he was to leave them with the officer who was next in command.

While we lay moored to the shore, we scrubbed both sides of the bottoms of our vessels, and also fixed some plates of tin under the binds. These plates Capt. Cook received from the ingenious Mr Pelham, Secretary to the Commissioners for victualling the royal navy, for the purpose of trying whether tin would succeed as well as copper, in sheathing the bottoms of ships.

On Monday the 24th, in the morning, the Commodore was informed that two of the Discovery's people, one of whom was a Midshipman, were missing. Not long after, we learned from the natives, that they had embarked in a canoe the preceding night, and were now at the other end of the island. As the Midshipman had expressed a desire of continuing at one of these islands, it was extremely probable that he and his companion had gone off with that intent. Captain Clerke therefore, with two armed boats, and a detachment of marines, set out in quest of the fugitives, but returned in the evening without success. From the conduct of the islanders, he was of opinion, that they intended to conceal the deserters; and, with this view, had deceived him with false information, directing him to seek for them where they could not be found. He was not mistaken; for, the next morning, intelligence was brought, that the two runaways were in the Isle of Otaha. These not being the only persons in the ships who were desirous of remaining at these favourite islands, it was necessary, in order to give an effectual discouragement to any further desertion, to recover them at all events. Captain Cook therefore determined to go in pursuit of them himself, having observed that the natives seldom attempted to deceive him with false information. He accordingly set out with two armed boats, accompanied by Oreo himself. They proceeded, without stopping at any place, till they came to the eastern side of Otaha, where they

put ashore; and the chief dispatched a man before them, with orders to seize the fugitives, and keep them till the Captain and his attendants should arrive with the boats. But when they had got to the place where they expected to find them, they were informed, that they had quitted this island, and gone to Bolabola the preceding day. The Captain not chusing to follow them thither, returned to the ships, with a full determination to have recourse to a measure, which, he had reason to believe, would compel the natives to restore them.

On the 26th, soon after break of day, Oreo, with his son, daughter, and son-in-law, having come on board the Resolution, Captain Cook resolved to detain the three last, till our deserters should be delivered up. With this view, Captain Clerke invited them on board his ship; and, as soon as they arrived in his cabin, a sentinel was placed at the door, and the window secured. This proceeding greatly surpris'd them; and Captain Clerke having explained the reason of it, they burst into tears, and begged he would not kill them. He assured them he would not, and that the moment his people were brought back, they should be released. This, however, did not remove their uneasiness, and they bewailed their fate in silent sorrow. The chief being with Captain Cook when he received intelligence of this affair, immediately mentioned it to him, imagining that this step had been taken without his knowledge and approbation. The Captain instantly undeceived him; and then he began to entertain apprehensions with respect to his own situation, and his countenance indicated the greatest perturbation of mind. But the Captain soon quieted his fears, by telling him, that he was at liberty to quit the ship whenever he chose, and to take such steps towards the recovery of our two men, as he should judge best calculated for that purpose; and that, if he should meet with success, his friends on board the Discovery should be released from their confinement: if not, that they should certainly be carried away with us. The Captain added, that the chief's conduct, as well as that of many

of
to n
time
justi
such
upon
in a g
Oreo,
throw
with re
deepest
Numbe
canoes,
exclama
appellati
quarter;
howling,
wit'
effusion of
The chi
message to
of what ha
two deserte
was the fath
ive Capta
who strictly
gatives, an
th the isle
of them.
The impat
e return o
pers, were
it had not
m in still
lock, Capta
the ship,
at the harb
for the
from the

of his countrymen, in not only assisting these two men to make their escape, but in endeavouring, at this very time, to prevail upon others to follow them, would justify any measure that would serve to put a stop to such proceedings. This explanation of the motives upon which the Commodore acted, seemed to remove, in a great degree, that general consternation into which Oreo, and his people who were present, were at first thrown. But, though relieved from all apprehensions with regard to their own safety, they were still under the deepest concern for the prisoners in the *Discovery*. Numbers of them went under the stern of that ship in canoes, and lamented their captivity with long and loud exclamations. The name of Poedooa (for that was the appellation of Oreo's daughter) resounded from every quarter; and the women not only made a most dismal howling, but struck their bosoms, and cut their heads with their own teeth, which occasioned a considerable effusion of blood.

The chief now dispatched a canoe to Bolabola, with a message to Opoony, king of that island, informing him of what had happened, and requesting him to seize the two deserters, and send them back. The messenger, who was the father of Oreo's son-in-law Pootoe, came to receive Captain Cook's commands before his departure; who strictly enjoined him not to return without the fugitives, and to tell Opoony, from him, that, if they had left the isle of Bolabola, he must send canoes in pursuit of them.

The impatient natives, not thinking it proper to trust the return of our people for the release of the prisoners, were induced to meditate an attempt, which, it had not been prevented, might have involved them in still greater distress. Between five and six o'clock, Captain Cook, who was then on shore, abreast the ship, observed that all their canoes, in and out the harbour, began to move off. He enquired, in consequence of this; till our people, calling from the *Discovery*, informed us, that some of the

the islanders had seized Captain Clerke and Mr Gore, as they were walking at a small distance from the ships. The Commodore, struck with the boldness of this scheme of retaliation, which seemed to counteract him in his own way, instantly commanded his people to arm; and, in a few minutes a strong party, under the conduct of Mr King, was sent to the rescue of our two gentlemen. Two armed boats, and a party under Mr Williamson, were dispatched at the same time, to intercept the flying canoes in their retreat to the shore. These detachments had scarcely gone out of sight, when intelligence arrived that we had been misinformed; upon which they were immediately called in.

It manifestly appeared, however, from several corroborating particulars, that the natives had actually formed a design of seizing Captain Clerke; and they even made no secret in speaking of it the following day. But the principal part of their plan of operations was to have laid hold of the person of Captain Cook. He was accustomed to bathe every evening in the fresh water; on which occasions he frequently went alone, and always unarmed. Expecting him to go this evening, as usual, they had resolved upon seizing him, and Captain Clerke likewise, if he had accompanied him. But Captain Cook, after confining the chief's family, had taken care to avoid putting himself in their power, and had cautioned Captain Clerke and the officers, not to go to any considerable distance from the ships. Oreo, in the course of the afternoon, asked our Commodore, three or four times, if he would not go to the bathing place; till at length finding that he could not be prevailed upon, he retired, with his people, notwithstanding all our entreaties to the contrary. Having no suspicion, at this time, of their design, Captain Cook imagined, that a sudden panic had seized them, which would probably be soon over. Being disappointed with respect to him, they fixed upon those who were more in their power. It was a fortunate circumstance that they did not succeed in their design, and

that n
quets
noes;
Gore
of the
wards
musqu

This
had be
Happ
they v
ately r
met w
ecution
soon a
Being
should
of the
remain
return

On
tories,
we the
down
wards
preh
as usua
ding d
In the
which
In one
tion w
other
brough

* It is
safety to
he once
Captain

that no mischief was done on the occasion ; no muskets being fired, except two or three, to stop the canoes ; to which firing, perhaps, Captain Clerke and Mr Gore owed their safety ; * for, at that moment a party of the islanders, armed with clubs, were marching towards them, but dispersed on hearing the report of the muskets.

This conspiracy was first discovered by a girl, who had been brought from Huaheine by one of our officers. Happening to overhear some of the Ulieteans say, that they would seize Messrs Clerke and Gore, she immediately ran to acquaint the first of our people that she met with. Those who had been intrusted with the execution of the design, threatened to put her to death, as soon as we should quit Ulietea, for disappointing them. Being aware of this, we contrived that the girl's friends should come, a day or two afterwards, and take her out of the ship, to convey her to a place where she might remain concealed, till she should find an opportunity of returning to Huaheine.

On Thursday the 27th, we took down our observatories, and carried on board whatever we had ashore ; we then unmoored the ships, and moved a little way down the harbour, where we anchored again. Towards the afternoon the natives, shaking off their apprehensions, gathered round, and on board, our ships, as usual ; and the unpleasing transactions of the preceding day seemed to be almost forgotten by both parties. In the succeeding night the wind blew in hard squalls, which were accompanied with heavy showers of rain. In one of these squalls, the cable by which the Resolution was riding at anchor, parted ; but, as we had another anchor ready to let go, the ship was quickly brought up again.

No

* It is not improbable that they were also indebted for their safety to Captain Clerke's walking with a pistol in his hand, which he once fired. We mention this circumstance on the authority of Captain King.

No account of our two fugitives having been received from Bolabola, Oreo now set out for that island, desiring Captain Cook to follow him, the next day with the ships. This was the Captain's intention; but the wind prevented our getting out to sea. The same wind, however, which detained us in the harbour, brought back Oreo, with the two deserters, from Bolabola. They had reached Otaha on the night of their desertion; but being unable, for the want of wind, to get to any of the islands lying to the eastward, as they at first intended, they had proceeded to Bolabola, and thence to a little island called Toobaee, where they were apprehended by Pootoe's father. As soon as they were brought on board, the three prisoners in the Discovery were restored to their liberty. Such was the termination of an affair, which had given the Commodore much trouble and vexation.

The wind continuing constantly between the N. and W. kept us in the harbour till Sunday the 7th of December; when, at eight o'clock in the morning, we weighed, and made sail, with a light breeze at the N. E. point. During the preceding week we had been visited by persons from all quarters of the island, who afforded us a plentiful supply of hogs and green plantains, so that the time we remained wind-bound in the harbour was not totally lost; for green plantains are an excellent succedaneum for bread, and will keep good for two or three weeks. Besides being furnished with these provisions, we also took in plenty of wood and water.

The Ulieteans appeared to be, in general, smaller and more black than the natives of the adjacent islands, and seemed also less orderly, which may, perhaps, be owing to their having become subject to the inhabitants of Bolabola. Oreo, their chief, is only a kind of deputy of the Bolabolan monarch; and the conquest seems to have diminished the number of subordinate chiefs resident among them: they are, therefore, less immediately under the eye of those whose interest it is to enforce

force
duced
merly
group
govern
family
ruled
king o
heine,
only o
paid by
rank;
which a
standing
We obs
Ulietea,
Cook's
still mai
tended

force a proper obedience. Though Ulietea is now reduced to this state of humiliating dependence, it was formerly, as we were informed, the most eminent of this group of islands, and was probably the first seat of government; for we were told, that the present royal family of Otaheite derives its descent from that which ruled here before the late revolution. The dethroned king of Ulietea, whose name is Ooroo, resides at Huaheine, furnishing, in his own person, an instance not only of the instability of power, but also of the respect paid by these islanders to particular families of princely rank; for they allow Ooroo to retain all the ensigns which are appropriated by them to royalty, notwithstanding his having been deprived of his dominions. We observed a similar instance of this during our stay at Ulietea, where one of our occasional visitants was Capt. Cook's old friend, Oree, late chief of Huaheine. He still maintained his consequence, and was constantly attended by a numerous retinue.

Proceed

Proceed to Bolabola, accompanied by Oreo and others—

Application to Opoony for Monsieur de Bougainville's Anchor—Reasons for purchasing it—Delicacy of Opoony, in not accepting the Present—Quit the Society Islands—

Description of Bolabola, and its Harbour—Curious History of the Reduction of the two Islands, Otaba and Ulietea—Bravery of the Men of Bolabola—Account of the Animals left at Bolabola and Ulietea—Process of salting Pork—Cursory Observations respecting Otabeite, and the Society Islands.

HAVING taken our leave of Ulietea, we steered for Bolabola. Our principal reason for visiting this island was, to procure one of the anchors which had been lost at Otabeite by Monsieur de Bougainville. This, we were informed, had been afterwards found by the natives there, and sent by them to Opoony, the chief of Bolabola. It was not on account of our being in want of anchors that we were anxious to get possession of it; but, having parted with all our hatchets, and other iron tools and implements, in purchasing refreshments, we were now obliged to create a fresh assortment of trading articles, by fabricating them from the spare iron we could find on board, and even the greatest part of that had been already expended. Capt. Cook, therefore, supposed Monf. de Bougainville's anchor would, in a great measure, supply our want of this useful material, and he did not entertain a doubt that Opoony might be induced to part with it.

Oreo, accompanied by six or eight others from Ulietea, attended us to Bolabola; and, indeed, most of the natives

nativ
a pal
south
the m
break
the isl
before
found
The
that th
tom, bu
depth o
and tha
this info
but, the
or three
till the t
Captain C
into the l
attended b
the island.
As soon
introduced
of people.
ing over, h
and, to ind
the present
night-gown
ing-glass, fo
however, re
fore had rec
to go and d
from him w
messengers v
land, where
either so lar
mark that wa
weighed sever
two palms, th
Vol. II.—No

natives, except the chief, would gladly have taken a passage with us to England. At sun-set, being off the south point of Bolabola, we shortened sail, and passed the night making short boards. On the 8th, at day break, we made sail for the harbour, on the west side of the island. The wind being scant, it was nine o'clock before we were near enough to send away a boat to sound the entrance.

The master when he returned with the boat, reported, that the entrance of the harbour was rocky at the bottom, but that there was good ground within; and the depth of water twenty-five and twenty-seven fathoms; and that there was room to turn the ships in. Upon this information, we attempted to work the ships in; but, the wind and tide being against us, we made two or three trips, and found it could not be accomplished till the tide should turn in our favour. Whereupon Captain Cook gave up the design of carrying the ships into the harbour, and embarking in one of the boats, attended by Oreo and his companions, was rowed in for the island.

As soon as they were got ashore, the Commodore was introduced to Opoony, surrounded by a vast concourse of people. The necessary formality of compliments being over, he requested the chief to give him the anchor; and, to induce him to comply with the request, produced the present he intended for him. It consisted of a linen night-gown, some guaze handkerchiefs, a shirt, a looking-glass, some beads and toys, and six axes. Opoony, however, refused to accept the present till the Commodore had received the anchor; and ordered three persons to go and deliver it to him; with directions to receive from him what he thought proper in return. With these messengers we set out in our boats for a neighbouring island, where the anchor had been deposited; but it was neither so large, nor so perfect, as we expected. By the mark that was upon it, we found that it had originally weighed seven hundred pounds; but it now wanted the two palms, the ring, and part of the shank. The reason

son of Opoony's refusing Captain Cook's present was now apparent; he, doubtless, supposed that the anchor, in its present state, was so much inferior to it in value, that, when he saw it, he would be displeased. The Commodore, notwithstanding, took the anchor as he found it, and sent the whole of the present, which he, at first, intended. This negociation being completed, the Commodore returned on board, hoisted in the boats, and made sail to the north. But, while we were hoisting in the boats, we were visited by some of the natives, who came off, in three or four canoes, to see the ships. They brought with them one pig, and a few cocoa nuts.

Had we remained there till the next day, we should probably have been supplied with plenty of provisions; and the natives would, doubtless, be disappointed when they found we were gone: but having already a good stock of hogs and fruit on board, and not many articles left to purchase more, we had no inducement to defer the prosecution of our voyage.

Oteavanooa, the harbour of Bolabola, situated on the west side of the island, is very capacious; and, though we did not enter it, Captain Cook had the satisfaction of being informed, by persons employed by him for that purpose, that it was a very proper place for the reception of ships.

Towards the middle of this island is a lofty double-peaked mountain, which appeared to be barren on the east side, but on the west side, has some trees or bushes. The lower grounds, towards the sea, like the other islands of this ocean, are covered with cocoa palms, and bread fruit trees. There are many little islets that surround it, which add to the number of its inhabitants, and to the amount of its vegetable productions.

Considering the small extent of Bolabola, being only eight leagues in circumference, it is remarkable that its people should have been able to conquer Ulietea and Otaha; the former of which islands is, alone, more than double its size. In each of Capt. Cook's three voyages,

the war which produced this great revolution, was frequently mentioned; and, as it may amuse the reader, we shall give the history of it as related by themselves.

Ulietea and Otaha had long been friends; or, as the natives emphatically express it, they were considered as two brothers, whose views and interests were the same. The island of Huaheine was also admitted as their friend, but not in so eminent a degree. Like a traitor, Otaha leagued with Bolabola, jointly to attack Ulietea; whose people required the assistance of their friends of Huaheine, against these united powers. The inhabitants of Bolabola were encouraged by a prophetess, who predicted their success; and, that they might rely upon her prediction, she desired a man might be sent to a particular part of the sea, where from a great depth, would arise a stone. He was accordingly sent in a canoe to the place specified, and was going instantly to dive after the stone, when, behold, it spontaneously started up to the surface, and came immediately into his hand! All the people were astonished at the sight; the stone was deemed sacred, and deposited in the house of the Eatoa; and is still preserved, as a proof of that this prophetess had great influence with the divinity. Elevated with the hopes of victory, the canoes of Bolabola attacked those of Ulietea and Huaheine; the encounter was of long duration, and, notwithstanding the miracle, the Bolabola fleet would have been vanquished, had not that of Otaha arrived at the critical moment. The fortune of the day was now turned, and their enemies were totally defeated. Two days after, the men of Bolabola invaded Huaheine, of which they made themselves masters; it being weakly defended, as most of its warriors were then absent. Many of its fugitives, however, having got to Otaheite, there related their lamentable tale. This so affected their own countrymen, and those of Ulietea whom they found in that island, that they obtained their assistance. They were furnished with only ten fighting canoes, and with that inconsiderable force, effected a landing at Huaheine, when dark at

R r 2 night;

night; and taking the Bolabola men by surprize, killed many of them, and dispersed the rest. Thus they again possessed themselves of their own island, which now remains independent, and is governed by its own chiefs. When the united fleets of Ulietea and Huaheine were defeated, the men of Bolabola were applied to by their allies of Otaha to be allowed an equal share of the conquests. This being refused, the alliance was broke; and, during the war, Otaha was conquered, as well as Ulietea, both of which remain subject to Bolabola; the chiefs by whom they are governed, being only deputies to Opoony, the king of that island.

Such was their history of the war. It has already been observed, that these people are extremely deficient in recollecting the exact dates of past events. And respecting this war, though it happened but a few years ago, we could only guess at the time of its commencement and duration, the natives not being able to satisfy our enquiries with any precision. The final conquest of Ulietea, which terminated the war, had been achieved before Captain Cook was there in 1769; but it was very apparent that peace had not been long restored, as marks of recent hostilities having been committed were then to be seen. By attending to the age of Teereetareea, the present chief of Huaheine, some additional collateral proof may be gathered. He did not appear to be above ten or twelve years of age, and his father, we were informed, had been killed in one of the engagements.

The Bolabola men, since the conquest of Ulietea and Otaha, are considered as invincible; and their fame is so far extended, that, even at Otaheite, if not dreaded, they are respected for their valour. It is asserted, that they never fly from an enemy, and that they always are victorious against an equal number of the other islanders. Their neighbours, too, ascribe much to the superiority of their god, who, they believed, detained us by contrary winds at Ulietea.

The estimation in which the Bolabola men are held

at

at O
gain
The
island
alread
mal b
mal h
that w
could
of evil
back fr
shewn
not def
this.

In co
when h
shore, o
has prob
Bolabola
and an E
will be c
heite, and
perhaps,
animals.

When t
ivalled in
he supply
they are h
re not dif
use for sev
us and pl
If we had
proper qu
ork as wo
ost a year
odities at
urhood.
th which
ied. Th

at Otaheite, may be gathered from Monsieur de Bougainville's anchor having been sent to their sovereign. The intention of transporting the Spanish bull to their island, must be ascribed to the same cause. And they already possessed a third European curiosity, a male animal brought to Otaheite by the Spaniards. This animal had been so imperfectly described by the natives, that we had been much puzzled to conjecture what it could be. Some good, however, generally arises out of evil. When Captain Clerke's deserters were brought back from Bolabola, they told us the animal had been shewn to them, and that it was a ram. If our men had not deserted, it is probable we should never have known this.

In consequence of this intelligence, Captain Cook, when he landed to meet Opoony, carried an ewe on shore, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, by which he has probably laid the foundation for a breed of sheep at Bolabola. He also left with Oreo, at Ulietea, two goats, and an English boar and sow; so that the race of hogs will be considerably improved, in a few years, at Otaheite, and all the neighbouring islands; and they will, perhaps, be stocked with many valuable European animals.

When this is really the case, these islands will be unrivalled in abundance and variety of refreshments for the supply of navigators. Even in their present state, they are hardly to be excelled. When the inhabitants are not disturbed by intestine broils, which has been the case for several years past, their productions are numerous and plentiful.

If we had possessed a greater assortment of goods, and proper quantity of salt, we might have salted as much pork as would have been sufficient to last both ships almost a year. But we quite exhausted our trading commodities at the Friendly Islands, Otaheite, and its neighbourhood. Our axes, in particular, were nearly gone, with which, alone, hogs were, in general, to be purchased. The salt that remained on board, was not more than

than was requisite for curing fifteen puncheons of meat.

The following process of curing pork has been adopted by Captain Cook in his several voyages. The hogs were killed in the evening; when cleaned, they were cut up, and the bone taken out. The meat was salted while it was hot, and laid so as to permit the juices to drain from it, till the next morning: it was then salted again, put into a cask, and covered with pickle. It remained, in this situation, four or five days; when it was taken out, and carefully examined; and, if any of it appeared to be in the least tainted, which was sometimes the case, it was separated from the rest, which was repacked, headed up, and filled with good pickle. It was again examined in about eight or ten days time, but there appeared to be no necessity for it, as it was generally found to be all perfectly cured. Bay and white salt, mixed together, answers the best, though either of them will do alone. Great care was taken that none of the large blood vessels remained in the meat; and not too much should be packed together at the first salting, lest those pieces which are in the middle should heat, and hinder the salt from penetrating them. In tropical climates meat ought not to be salted in rainy sultry weather.

Europeans having, of late, so frequently visited these islanders, they may, on that account, have been induced to breed a larger stock of hogs; knowing that, when ever we come, they may be certain of receiving what they esteem a valuable consideration for them. They daily expect the Spaniards at Otaheite, and, in two or three years time, they will doubtless expect the English there, as well as at the other islands. It is useless to assure them that you will not return, for they suppose you cannot avoid it; though none of them either know, or enquire the reason of your coming. It would, perhaps have been better for these people, to have been ignorant of our superiority, than, after once knowing it, to be abandoned to their original incapacity. They cannot

inde
if th

It

pay t
to su
ducin
of suc
to re
they
with
their
now a
was te
bone,
been si
they a
them i
after.

Kniv

tion at
sway at
nament
polished
be prize
to-morr
iron imp
continue
indeed, l
plies of v
istence;
norant of

In our
published
rendered
people; a
that pictu
of such li
gusting.
Having

indeed, be restored to their former happy mediocrity, if the intercourse between us should be discontinued.

It is, in a manner, incumbent on the Europeans to pay them occasional visits (once in three or four years) to supply them with those articles, which we, by introducing, have given them a predilection for. The want of such supplies may be severely felt when it is too late to return to their old imperfect contrivances, which they now despise and discard. When the iron tools, with which we have furnished them, are worn out, their own will be almost forgotten. A stone hatchet is now as great a curiosity among them, as an iron one was seven or eight years ago; and a chissel made of bone, or stone, is no where to be seen. Spike nails have been substituted in the room of the latter articles; and they are weak enough to imagine, that their store of them is inexhaustible, for they were no longer sought after.

Knives happened, at this time, to be in high estimation at Ulietea; and axes and hatchets bore unrivalled sway at all the islands. Respecting articles merely ornamental, these islanders are as changeable as the most polished European nations; for, an article which may be prized by them to-day, may, perhaps, be rejected to-morrow, as a fashion or whim may alter. But our iron implements are so evidently useful, that they must continue to be high in their estimation. They would, indeed, be miserable, if they should cease to receive supplies of what appears necessary to their comfortable existence; as they are destitute of the materials, and ignorant of the art of fabricating them.

In our former relations, too much has already been published, respecting some of the modes of life, which rendered Otaheite so pleasing an abode to many of our people; and, if we could add any finishing strokes to that picture, we should be unwilling to exhibit a view of such licentious manners as cannot fail to be disgusting.

Having now concluded our account respecting these islands,

islands, which stand so conspicuous in the list of our discoveries, we refer the reader to the following chapter, for which we are indebted to Mr Anderson.

Strictures on former Accounts of Otaheite—The prevailing Winds—Beauty and Fertility of the Country—Land but little cultivated—Produce—Natural Curiosities—Description of the Natives—Delicacy of the Women—Their general Character—Disposed to amorous Gratifications—Their Language—Ignorance of Surgery and Physic—Animal Food chiefly eaten by the superior Class—Pernicious Effects of Ava—Account of their different Meals—Connections between the two Sexes—Circumcision—Religion—Notions concerning Immortality—Superstitions—Strange Traditions about the Creation—The King almost deified—Classes of the People—Punishments—Peculiarities of the adjacent Islands—Limits of their Navigation.

AFTER some prefatory remarks, on the accounts of the successive voyages of Captain Wallis, Monsieur de Bougainville, and Captain Cook, Mr Anderson begins to relate such particulars concerning Otaheite, and its neighbouring islands, as he was able to procure from Omai, or by conversing with the other natives.

For the greatest part of the year, the wind blows from between E. S. E. and E. N. E. It sometimes blows with considerable force, and is called by the natives,

tiver
ther
more
wind
gentl
wher
weath
N. W
usuall
rain.
witho
permi
this in
it has t
from S
former,
breezes,
The we
a close h
and ligh
Thoug
ledge of
some con
a hollow
say it por
and the v
to be exp
The fo
most luxu
high, steep
very sum
to possess
thing. T
production
convey to
country up
and beauty
al in distr
Vol. II.—N

tives, *Maaracc*. When the wind blows strong, the weather is usually cloudy, with some rain ; but, when it is more moderate, it is clear, settled, and serene : if the wind should veer to S. E. or S. S. E. it blows more gently, and is called *Maoai*. In December and January, when the sun is nearly vertical, both the winds and weather are very variable ; but it often blows from W. N. W. or N. W. This wind is called *Tacrou* ; and is usually attended by cloudy weather, and sometimes rain. It seldom continues more than five or six days without interruption ; and is the only wind that will permit the inhabitants of the islands to leeward to visit this in their canoes. If the wind is still more northerly, it has the different appellation of *Era-potaia*. The wind from S. W. and W. S. W. is more frequent than the former, and is usually gentle, with occasional calms and breezes, yet it sometimes blows in very brisk squalls. The weather is then generally cloudy and rainy, with a close hot air ; often accompanied with much thunder and lightning. It is called, by the natives, *Etoa*.

Though the natives have no very accurate knowledge of those changes, they pretend to have drawn some conclusions from their effects. When the sea has a hollow sound, and dashes mildly on the shore, they say it portends good weather ; but, if it sounds harshly, and the waves rapidly succeed each other, the reverse is to be expected.

The south-east part of Otaheite, affords one of the most luxuriant prospects in the universe. The hills are high, steep, and craggy ; but they are covered to the very summits with trees and shrubs ; the rocks seeming to possess the property of producing their verdant clothing. The lower land and vallies teem with various productions, that grow with exuberant vigour, and convey to the mind of the beholders, an idea, that no country upon earth can vie with this in the strength and beauty of vegetation ; nature has been equally liberal in distributing rivulets, which glide through every valley,

valley, dividing, as they approach the sea, into several branches, fertilizing the lands through which they run.

The habitations of the natives are irregularly scattered upon the flat land; and many of them, along the shore, afforded us a delightful scene from our ships; especially as the sea, within the reef, is perfectly still, and affords, at all times, a safe navigation for the inhabitants, who are often seen passing and repassing in their canoes. On beholding these delightful scenes, I have often regretted my inability to transmit such a description of them, as would convey an impression somewhat similar to what I felt, who have been fortunate enough to have been on the spot. The natural fertility of the country, combined with the mildness and serenity of the climate, has rendered the natives so careless in their cultivation, that the smallest traces of it cannot, in many places, be discovered, though overflowing with the richest productions. The cloth plant, and the ava, or intoxicating pepper, are almost the only things to which they shew any attention.

The bread fruit tree is never planted, but springs from the roots of the old ones, which spread themselves near the surface of the ground. Hence we may observe, that the inhabitants of Otaheite, instead of being under a necessity of planting their bread, will rather be obliged to prevent its progress; which is, perhaps, sometimes done, to afford room for a different sort of trees, which may enable them to make some variety in their food.

The principal of these trees are the cocoa nut and plantain; the first of which requires no attention, after it appears a foot or two above the ground; but the plantain requires some care in the cultivation; for, about three months after it shoots up, it begins to bear fruit; during which time it puts forth young shoots, which supply a succession of fruit; the old stocks being cut down as the fruit is taken off.

The products of the island are more remarkable for their great abundance than for their variety; and curiosities here are not very numerous. Among these may be

h
c
t
a
e
w
th
it.
w
ap
tas
tity
blo
C
able
and
mak
guis
ever
Qtah
more
which
be fo
Th
licate
them
long
Tong
ance.
not so
arising
action
them
ness a
confor
an adv
in all
wrestlin
dren,

It is reckoned a large lake of fresh water, on the top of one of the highest mountains, at the distance of almost two days journey. It is remarkable for its depth, and abounds with eels of enormous size. This being esteemed the greatest natural curiosity of the country, travellers, who come from other islands, are usually asked, among the first things, at their return, whether they have seen it. There is also a small pond of water on this island, which has a yellow sediment at the bottom. It has the appearance of being very good, but has an offensive taste, and often proves fatal to those who drink a quantity of it; and those who bathe in it, break out in blotches.

On our arrival here, we were struck with the remarkable contrast between the inhabitants of Tongataboo, and those of Otaheite; the former being of a robust make, and dark colour, and the latter having a distinguished delicacy and whiteness. That difference, however, did not immediately preponderate in favour of the Otaheiteans; and when it did, it was, perhaps, occasioned more by our becoming accustomed to them; the marks, which had recommended the others, beginning now to be forgotten.

The women, however, of Otaheite, possess all those delicate characteristics, which in many countries distinguish them from the other sex. The men wear their beards long here, and their hair considerably longer than at Tongataboo, which gave them a very different appearance. The Otaheiteans are timid and fickle. They are not so muscular and robust as the Friendly Islanders, arising, perhaps, from their being accustomed to less action; the superior fertility of their country enabling them to lead a more indolent life. They have a plumpness and smoothness of the skin; which, though more consonant with our ideas of beauty, is far from being an advantage; and is attended with a kind of languor in all their motions. This is visible in their boxing and wrestling, which display only the feeble efforts of children, if compared with the vigour and activity with which

which such exercises are performed at the Friendly Islands.

As personal endowments are in high estimation among them, they have various methods of improving them, according to their ideas of beauty. Among the errooes, or unmarried men, especially those of some consequence, it is customary to undergo a kind of physical operation, to render them fair; which is done by continuing a month or two in the house, wearing a great quantity of cloaths the whole time, and eating nothing but bread fruit, which they say is remarkably efficacious in whitening the skin. They also intimate, that their corpulence and colour, at other times, depend upon their food; being obliged, as the seasons vary, to use different food at different times.

Nine-tenths, at least, of their common diet, consist of vegetable food; and the mahee, or fermented bread fruit, which is an article in almost every meal, prevents costiveness, and has a singular effect in producing a coolness about them, which was not perceivable in us who fed on animal food. To this temperate course of life, may, perhaps, be attributed their having so few diseases among them. Indeed, they mention only five or six chronic or national disorders; among which are the dropsy, and the *sesai*, mentioned as frequent at Tongataboo. This was, however, before the arrival of the Europeans; for we have added a disease to their catalogue, which abundantly supplies the place of all the others, and is become almost universal; and for which they seem to have no effectual remedy. The priests, indeed, administer a medley of simples, but they acknowledge it never cures them. They admit, however, that in some few cases, nature alone has exterminated the poison of this loathsome disease, and produced a perfect recovery. They say also, that those infected with it, communicate it to others, by handling them, or feeding on the same utensils.

They shew an openness, and generosity of disposition, upon all occasions. Omai, indeed, has frequent-

ly

ly said
enemi
someti
parts o
then c
busines
very e
from o
whole
howeve
though
fortune
labour u
produce
of death
have see
disease, a
in neithe
tenances
Dispos
what will
ments ter
songs, wit
ed to the s
enjoyment
varied the
their triu
their trave
tages of th
This she
and thoug
positions,
melodious
some degr
They equa
by particul
will allay a
music. Of
ble instanc

ly said, that they exercise cruelty in punishing their enemies, and torment them with great deliberation; sometimes tearing out small pieces of flesh from different parts of the body; at other times, plucking out the eyes, then cutting off the nose; and lastly, compleating the business, by opening the belly. But this is only on very extraordinary occasions. If cheerfulness results from conscious innocence, one would imagine their whole lives had been unfulfilled with a crime. This, however, may be rather imputed to their feelings, which, though lively, are never permanent. Under any misfortune, after the critical moment is past, they never labour under the appearance of anxiety. Care never produces a wrinkle on their brow; even the approach of death does not deprive them of their vivacity. I have seen them, when on the brink of the grave by disease, and when preparing to attack the enemy; but, in neither of these cases, have I ever observed their countenances overclouded with melancholy or dread.

Disposed, as they naturally are, to direct their aims to what will afford them ease or pleasure, all their amusements tend to excite their amorous passions; and their songs, with which they are greatly delighted, are directed to the same purpose. A constant succession of sensual enjoyments must, however, cloy; and they occasionally varied them to more refined subjects; they chanted their triumphs in war, and their amusements in peace; their travels and adventures; and the peculiar advantages of their own island.

This shews that they are immoderately fond of music, and though they did not relish our complicated compositions, they were much delighted with the more melodious sounds, when produced singly, as they, in some degree, resembled the simplicity of their own. They equally experience the soothing effects produced by particular kinds of motion: which, in many cases, will allay any perturbation of mind, as successfully as music. Of this, the following may serve as a remarkable instance. Walking, one day, about Matavai Point, I saw

I saw a man in a small canoe, paddling with such expedition, and looking so eagerly about him, as to command my whole attention. At first, I supposed he had been pilfering from one of the ships, and was pursued; but he presently repeated his amusement. He proceeded from the shore to the place where the swell begins; and, attentively watching its first motion, paddled swiftly before it, till he perceived it overtook him, and had acquired sufficient strength to force his canoe before it, without passing underneath. He then ceased paddling, and was carried along as rapidly as the wave, till he was landed upon the beach; when he started from his canoe, emptied it, and went in pursuit of another swell. He seemed to experience the most supreme delight, while he was thus swiftly and smoothly driven by the sea. His mind was so wholly occupied in this business, that though crowds of his countrymen were collected to observe our tents and ships, as being objects that were both rare and curious to them, he did not notice them in the least. Two or three of the natives drew near, while he was observing him, and seemed to partake of his felicity calling out to inform him when there was an appearance of a favourable swell. This exercise, which I understand is very frequent among them, is called *chorooe*.

Though the language of Otaheite seems radically the same as that of New Zealand and the Friendly Islands, it has not that guttural pronounciation, and is pruned of some of the consonants, with which these dialects abound; which has rendered it, like the manners of the inhabitants, soft and soothing. It abounds with beautiful and figurative expressions, and is so copious, that they have above twenty different names for the bread fruit; as many for the taro root, and half that number for the cocoa nut.

They have one expression corresponding exactly with the phraseology of the Scriptures, viz. "Yearning of the bowels." They use it upon every occasion, when affected by the passions; constantly referring pain from

grief

grief, de-
feat of
mind and

In the
pretend
ledge in
ple fract
the bone
a piece o
rapao, o
six days,
the grow
patient a
covered;
bathes in

Wound

lets, and
other extr
tain some
those cases
far from be
an arm, w
pearance o
lowance fo
man goin
months af
being una
though it is

Fracture

they also kn
of the body
ledge seem
diseases are
however, th
women, aff
after child-b
ary in a hot
by a thick
of a small pl

grief, desire, and other affections, to the bowels, as the seat of it; where they imagine, all operations of the mind are also performed.

In the arts, they are extremely deficient; yet they pretend to perform cures in surgery, which our knowledge in that branch has not enabled us to imitate. Simple fractures are bound up with splints, but, if a part of the bone be lost, they insert, between the fractured ends, a piece of wood made hollow, to supply its place. The rapaoo, or surgeon, inspects the wound in about five or six days, when he finds the wood is partly covered by the growing flesh; and, in as many more days, visits the patient a second time, when it is generally completely covered; and, when he has acquired some strength, he bathes in the water, and is restored.

Wounds, it is well known, will heal over leaden bullets, and there are some instances of their healing over other extraneous bodies. But what makes me entertain some doubt of the truth of this relation, is, that in those cases which fell under my observation, they were far from being so dexterous. I was shewn the stump of an arm, which had been taken off, that had not the appearance of a skilful operation, after making a due allowance for their defective instruments. And I saw a man going about with a dislocated shoulder, some months after he had received the accident, from their being unacquainted with a method of reducing it; though it is one of the simplest operations of our surgery.

Fractures of the spine, they know, are mortal; and they also know, from experience, in what particular parts of the body wounds prove fatal. Their physical knowledge seems yet more limited, because, perhaps, their diseases are fewer than their accidents. In some cases, however, the priests administer the juices of herbs; and women, afflicted with after-pains, or other complaints after child-bearing, use a remedy which seems unnecessary in a hot country. Having heated some stones, they lay a thick cloth over them, covered with a quantity of a small plant of the mustard kind; and over them

is spread another cloth. On this they seat themselves, and sweat profusely to obtain a cure. This method has been practised by the men, though ineffectually, for the cure of the venereal lues. It is remarkable, that they have no emetic medicines here.

A famine frequently happens in this island, notwithstanding its extreme fertility, in which many people are said to perish. Whether this calamity be owing to the scanty produce of some seasons, to over-population, or to wars, I have not been sufficiently informed; but it has taught them to exercise the strictest oeconomy, even in the times of plenty.

In a scarcity of provision, when their yams and bread-fruit are consumed, they have recourse to various roots which grow uncultivated upon the mountains. The patarra, which is found in great plenty, is first used: it somewhat resembles a large potatoe, or yam; and, when in its growing state, is good, but becomes hard and stringy when old. They next eat two other roots, one of which appears like taro; and then the ehoe. Of this there are two sorts; one of which possesses deleterious qualities, which requires it to be sliced, and macerated in water, a night before it is baked for eating. It resembles, in this respect, the cassava root of the West-Indies; but, in the manner they dress it, has a very insipid taste. This and the patarra are creeping plants, the latter having ternate leaves.

A very small portion of animal food is enjoyed by the lower class of people; and if, at any time, they obtain any, it is either fish, sea-eggs, or other marine productions; for pork hardly ever falls to their share. Only the *Eree de boi*, is able to afford pork every day; and the inferior chiefs, according to their riches, perhaps once a week, a fortnight, or a month. Sometimes, indeed, they are not allowed that; for, when the island is impoverished by war, or any other means, a prohibition is granted against the killing of hogs, which sometimes continues in force for several months, and even for a year or two. In such an interval, the hogs have multi-
plied

plie
cha
V
ble
pre
ther
retu
man
here
thofe
And
not h
us, t
taken
them
woul
A pr
Th
ple, b
which
pour
ten ba
before
plant
It is n
which
but it
to the
instanc
Mar
were f
remark
them
cause o
use of
vered v
and the
an excu
to prev
Vol. I

plied so fast, that there have been instances of their changing their domestic state, and becoming wild.

When this prohibition is taken off, the chiefs assemble at the king's habitation, each bringing with him a present of hogs. After this, the king orders some of them to be killed, of which they all partake, and each returns to his own home, with full permission to kill as many as he pleases for his own use. On our arrival here, such a prohibition was actually in force, at least in those districts under the immediate direction of Otoo. And, when we quitted Oheitepeha, fearing we should not have gone to Matavai, he sent a messenger to assure us, that, as soon as the ships arrived there, it should be taken off. We found it so, but our consumption of them was so great, that there is very little doubt but it would be laid on again, immediately after we had sailed. A prohibition is sometimes extended to fowls.

The ava is chiefly used among the better sort of people, but this beverage is differently prepared, from that which we saw in the Friendly Islands. Here they pour a small quantity of water upon the root, and often bake, roast, or bruise the stalks, without chewing it before it is infused. They also bruise the leaves of the plant here, and pour water upon them, as upon the root. It is not drank in large companies, in that sociable way which is practised among the people at Tongataboo; but it has more pernicious effects here, owing, perhaps, to the manner of its preparation; as we saw frequent instances of its intoxicating powers.

Many of us, who had visited these islands before, were surprized to find several of the natives, who were remarkable for their size and corpulency, when we saw them last, now almost reduced to skeletons; and the cause of this alteration was universally attributed to the use of the ava. Their skins were dry, rough, and covered with scales; which, they say, occasionally fall off, and their skin becomes, in some degree, renewed. As an excuse for so destructive a practice, they alledge, it is to prevent their growing too corpulent; but it enervates

them exceedingly, and probably shortens the duration of their lives.

Their meals at Otaheite are very frequent. The first is about two o'clock in the morning, after which they go to sleep; the next is at eight; they dine at eleven, and again, as Omai expressed it, at two and at five; and they go to supper at eight. They have adopted some very whimsical customs, in this article of domestic life. The women are not only obliged to eat by themselves, but are even excluded from partaking of most of the better sorts of food. Turtle, or fish of the tunny kind, they dare not touch though it is high in esteem; some particular sorts of the best plantains, are also forbidden them; and even those of the first rank are seldom permitted to eat pork. The children, of both sexes, also eat apart; and the women usually serve up their own provisions.

In this, and many other customs, relative to their eating, there is something exceedingly mysterious. On our enquiring into the reasons of it, we were told, it was necessary that it should be so; and that was the only answer we could receive, when we interrogated them upon that subject.

They are not so obscure and mysterious in their other customs respecting the females, especially with regard to their connections with the men. When a young man and woman, from mutual choice, agree to cohabit, the man makes a present to the father of the girl of the common necessities of life, as hogs, cloth, or canoes; and if he supposes he has not received a valuable consideration for his daughter, he compels her to leave her former friend, and to cohabit with a person who may be more liberal. The man, indeed, is always at full liberty to make a new choice; or, should his consort become a mother, he may destroy the child; and afterwards either leave the woman, or continue his connection with her. But, if he adopts the child, and permits it to live, the man and woman are then considered as in the married state, and, after that, they seldom separate.

A man,

A man may, however, without being censured, join a more youthful partner to his first wife, and live with both of them.

The custom of changing their conjugal connections is very general, and is so common an occurrence, that they mention it with indifference. The *erreoes*, or those of the better sort, who possess the means of purchasing a succession of fresh connections, are generally roaming about; and, having no particular attachment, seldom adopt the plan of a settled cohabitation. And this licentious plan of life is so agreeable to their disposition, that the most beautiful of both sexes exhaust their youthful days, in practices which would disgrace the most savage tribes. These enormities are peculiarly shocking in a country, whose general character has, in other respects, evident traces of the prevalence of humane feelings. When an *erreoe* woman brings forth a child, it is suffocated by applying a cloth to its mouth and nose, which has been previously dipped in water.

As the women, in such a life, must contribute greatly to its happiness, it is surprising that they should not only suffer the most humiliating restraints, with regard to food, but should be often treated with a degree of brutality, which one would suppose a man must be incapable of, towards an object for whom he had the least affection or esteem. It is, however, extremely common to see the men beat them most unmercifully; and unless this behaviour proceeds from jealousy, which both sexes sometimes pretend to be infected with, it will be difficult to assign a reason for it. This may the more readily be admitted as a motive, as I have known many instances, where interest has been rejected for personal beauty; though, even in these cases, they are not susceptible of those delicate sentiments that result from mutual affection. Platonic love is hardly known in Otaheite.

From a notion of cleanliness, the cutting of the foreskin is a practice among them; and they bestow a reproachful epithet upon those who neglect that operation

ration. When five or six lads in a neighbourhood are pretty well grown up, it is made known to a tahoua, by the father of one of them. The tahoua, attended by a servant, conducts the lads to the top of the hills; and, after seating one of them in a proper manner, places a piece of wood beneath the foreskin; at the same time amusing him, by desiring him to look aside at something which he pretends to see. The young man's attention being thus engaged, he immediately cuts through the skin with a shark's tooth, and separates the divided parts; then, after putting on a bandage, he performs the same operation on the other lads who attend him.

Five days after they have been thus disciplined, they bathe, the bandages are removed, and the matter is cleansed away. When five days more are expired, they bathe again, and are recovered; but, as a thickness of the prepuce remains, occasioned by the cutting, they again ascend the mountains with the tahoua and servant, where a fire is prepared, and some stones heated; between two of which the prepuce is placed by the tahoua, and is gently squeezed, in order to remove the thickness. This done, they return home, adorned with odoriferous flowers; and the tahoua is rewarded by the fathers of the lads, according to their several abilities, with a present of hogs and cloth; and if their poverty will not permit them to make a proper acknowledgement, their relations, on this occasion, are expected to be liberal.

Their religious system abounds in singularities, and few of the common people have a competent knowledge of it, that being principally confined to their priests, which, indeed, are numerous. They pay no particular respect to one god, as possessing pre-eminence; but believe in a plurality of divinities, who have each a plenitude of power.

As different parts of the island, and the other neighbouring islands, have different gods, the respective inhabitants imagine they have chosen the most eminent, or one who is, at least, sufficiently powerful to protect them, and to supply their necessities. If he should

not

not
cha
in T
and
room
new
war
cess
solely

In
confi
mora
and a
a sim
pulous
begin
Eatoc
ried to
fices,
have
prayer
festive

As
oblige
moraie
extens
enterta
confer
they a
some i
is an
they m
all the
are me

As t
and im
keeps f
is eaten
some t

not give them satisfaction, they think it no impiety to change. An instance of this kind has lately happened in Tiaraboo, where two divinities have been discarded, and Oraa, god of Bolabola, has been adopted in their room. They have probably been induced to make this new choice, because his people have been victorious in war; and, having, since their new election, been successful against the inhabitants of Otaheite-nooe, it is solely imputed to Oraa, who literally fights their battles.

In serving their gods, their assiduity is remarkably conspicuous. The whattas, or offering places of the morais are, in general, loaded with fruits and animals; and almost every house has a portion of it set apart for a similar purpose. Many of them are so rigidly scrupulous in their religious matters, that they will not even begin a meal, till they have laid aside a morsel for the Eatooa; and we have seen their superstitious zeal carried to a most pernicious height in their human sacrifices, which are, I fear, too frequent. They probably have recourse to them to avert misfortunes. Their prayers, which they always chant like the songs in their festive entertainments, are also very frequent.

As in other cases, so in religion, the women are obliged to shew their inferiority. When they pass the morais, they must partly uncover themselves, or take an extensive circuit to avoid them. Though they do not entertain an opinion, that their god must be continually conferring benefits, without sometimes forsaking them; they are less concerned at this, than at the attempts of some inauspicious being to injure them. Etee, they say, is an evil spirit, who delights in mischief; to whom they make offerings, as well as to their divinity. But all the mischiefs they apprehend from invisible beings, are merely temporal.

As to the soul, they believe it to be both immortal and immaterial; that, during the pangs of death, it keeps fluttering about the lips; and that it ascends, and is eaten by the deity: that it continues in this state for some time; after which it takes its passage to a certain place,

place, destined to receive the souls of men, and has existence in eternal night; or rather in a kind of dawn, or twilight.

The expect no permanent punishment hereafter, for crimes committed upon earth; the souls of good and bad men being indiscriminately eaten by the deity. But they consider this coalition as a kind of necessary purification before they enter the regions of bliss; for their doctrine inculcates, that those who refrain from all sensual connection with women some months before they depart this life, pass into their eternal mansion, without such a previous union, as if, by such an abstinence, they were sufficiently pure to be exempted from the general lot.

They have not indeed those sublime conceptions of happiness, which our religion, and, indeed, our reason, teach us to expect hereafter. Immortality is the only great privilege they think they shall acquire by death; for they suppose that spirits are not entirely divested of those passions, by which they were actuated when combined with material vehicles. Thus, at a meeting of souls which were formerly enemies, many conflicts may ensue, which must certainly be ineffectual, as those who are in this invisible state must be invulnerable.

Their reasoning is similar with regard to the meeting of a man and his consort. If the husband departs this life first, the soul of his wife is no stranger to him, on its arrival in the land of spirits. They renew their former intimacy, in a capacious building, called *Tourooa*, where departed souls assemble to recreate themselves with the gods. The husband then conducts her to his separate habitation, where they eternally reside, and have an offspring, which, however, is purely spiritual, as their embraces are supposed to be far different from those of corporeal beings.

Many of their notions respecting the Deity, are extravagant and absurd. They suppose him to be under the influence of those spirits, who derive their existence from him; and that they frequently eat him, though

he

he h
verfe
terial
perha

Th
quire
their
know
earth
posed
portion
the sup
accide

Oth

except
that th
and en
and ev
They
and e
cease,
to the
mansion

They
from t
They
spirit is
matter
opinion
all othe
the im
ceives a
it is imp

In th
dead bo
as many
the sigh
ghosts.
posing t

he has power to recreate himself. They cannot converse about immaterial things, without referring to material objects to convey their meaning, and therefore, perhaps, they use this mode of expression.

They further add, that, in the tourooa, the deity enquires whether they mean to destroy him, or not; and their determination is unalterable. This is not only known to the spirits, but also to the inhabitants of the earth; for, when the moon is on its wane, they are supposed to be devouring their Eatooa; and, in the proportion that it increales, he is renewing himself. And the superior, as well as the inferior gods, are liable to this accident.

Other places, they also believe, are prepared for the reception of departed souls. Thus they are of opinion, that those who are drowned in the sea, continue there, and enjoy a delightful country, sumptuous habitations, and every thing that can contribute to their happiness. They even maintain that all other animals, have souls; and even trees, fruit, and stones; which, at their decease, or upon their being consumed or broken, ascend to the deity, from whom they pass into their destined mansion.

They imagine, that every temporal blessing is derived from their punctual performance of religious offices. They believe that the powerful influence of the divine spirit is universally diffused, and therefore it cannot be matter of surprize that they adopt many superstitious opinions concerning its operations. Sudden deaths, and all other accidents, they suppose to be effected under the immediate impulse of some divinity. If a man receives a wound in his toe, by stumbling against a stone, it is imputed to an Eatooa.

In the night, on approaching a toopapao, where dead bodies are exposed, they are startled and terrified; as many of our ignorant and superstitious people are at the sight of a church-yard, or with the apprehensions of ghosts. They have implicit confidence in dreams, supposing them to be communications from their Deity;
or

or from the spirits of their friends who have departed this life; and that those who are favoured with them can foretel future events: but this kind of knowledge is limited to particular persons. Omai pretended to have these communications. He assured us, that, on the 26th of July, 1776, his father's soul had intimated to him in a dream, that he should land somewhere in three days; but he was unfortunate in his first prophetic attempt, for we did not get into Teneriffe till the first of August.

Their dreamers, however, are thought 'little inferior to their inspired priests and priestesses, whose predictions are universally credited; and all undertakings of consequence are determined by them. Opoony has a particular esteem for the priestess who persuaded him to invade Ulietea, and always consults her previous to his going to war. Our old doctrine of planetary influence, they, in some degree, adopt; and are sometimes regulated, in their public counsels, by the appearances of the moon. If, on its first appearance after the change, it lies horizontally, they are encouraged to engage in war, and seem confident of success.

They have strange obicure traditions concerning the creation. Some goddess, they say, had a lump of earth suspended in a cord, and, by giving it a swing round, scattered about several pieces of land, which constituted Otaheite and the adjacent islands; and that they were all peopled by one of each sex, who originally fixed at Otaheite; but this only respects their own immediate creation; for they admit of an universal one before this. Their remotest account extends to Tatooma and Tapupapa, who are male and female rocks, and support our globe. These begat Totorro, who was killed and divided into parts or parcels of land; then Otaia and Oroo were produced, who were afterwards married, and first begat land, and then a race of gods. Otaia being killed, Oroo marries her son, a god, named Teoraha, whom she orders to create animals, more land, and every kind of food found upon the earth. She also ordered him to create a sky, which is supported by men, called Teferai.

The

T
of
ac
th
on
sta
Ot
wh
mo
nat
ven
anx
put
live
ted,
ing
an
The
thru
the
piec
pou
hiss
to do
confe
assur
were
soon
and v
Th
the n
ment
sters.
island
which
had a
mous
and, v
Vol.

The spots observable in the moon, they say, are groves of a certain tree which once grew in Otaheite, and being accidentally destroyed, some doves carried its seeds thither, where they flourish at this day.

They have many religious and historical legends; one of which, relative to eating human flesh, is, in substance, as follows: A very long time ago, there lived at Otaheite, two men who were called *Tabeeia*; a name which is now given to cannibals. They inhabited the mountains, whence they issued forth, and murdered the natives, whom they afterwards devoured, and thus prevented the progress of population. Two brothers, anxious to rid the country of such enemies, successfully put in practice a stratagem for their destruction. They lived farther upward than the *Tabeeai*, and were so situated, that they could converse with them without hazarding their own safety. They invited them to partake of an entertainment, to which they readily consented. The brothers then heated some stones in a fire, and thrusting them into pieces of mahee, requested one of the *Tabeeai* to open his mouth; when one of those pieces was immediately dropped in, and some water poured after it, which, in quenching the stone, made a hissing noise and killed him. The other was entreated to do the same, but, at first declined it, mentioning the consequences of his companion's eating: but, upon being assured that the food was excellent, that these effects were only temporary, and that his companion would soon recover, he was so credulous as to swallow the bait, and was also killed.

Their bodies were then cut to pieces, and buried by the natives, who rewarded the brothers with the government of the island, for delivering them from such monsters. They resided at Whapaceno, a district in the island, where there now remains a bread fruit tree, which was once the property of the *Tabeeais*. They had a woman who lived with them, that had two enormous teeth. After they were killed, she lived at Otaha; and, when she died, she was ranked among their deities.

She did not, like the men, feed upon human flesh ; but, from the prodigious size of her teeth, the natives still call any animal that has large tusks, *Tabeeai*.

This story, it must be acknowledged, is as natural as that of Hercules destroying the hydra, or of Jack the Giant-killer. But it does not appear that there is any moral couched under it, any more than under most of the old fables, which have been received as truths in ignorant ages. It, however, was not injudiciously introduced, as serving to express the detestation entertained here against cannibals. And yet, it appears probable, from some circumstances, that the natives of these isles formerly fed upon human flesh : Upon asking Omai a few questions upon this subject, he resolutely denied it ; though, at the same time, he related a fact within his own knowledge, which almost establishes such a conjecture.

When the Bolabola men defeated those of Huaheine, many of his kinsmen were slain ; but a relation of his had an opportunity of being revenged, when the people of Bolabola were worsted in their turn ; and cutting a piece of flesh from the thigh of one of his enemies, he broiled and devoured it. The offering made to the chief, of the eye of the person sacrificed, appears to be a vestige of a custom that once existed to a greater extent.

The principal characteristics of the sovereign, are, the being invested with the maro, the presiding at human sacrifices, and the blowing of the conch-shell. On hearing the latter, every subject is obliged to bring food, in proportion to his circumstances, to his royal residence. Their veneration for his name, on some occasions, they carry to a most extravagant height. When he accedes to the maro, if any words in the language are found to have a resemblance to it in sound, they are immediately changed for others ; and, if any man should be presumptuous enough to continue the use of those words, not only he, but his whole family are put to death.

A similar fate attends all those who shall dare to apply the sacred name of the sovereign to any animal.

Whence

Wh
natio
give
puni
lover
ed w
Th
any o
has h
he sh
habita
with i
subjec
he is a
affixed
which
part of
women
They
reign, a
circumf
possessio
boo adm
esteem t
should t
succeed
This i
Tiaraboc
extent o
those of
pulous an
superior
nooe, wh
riors ; an
if their ch
The pe
family, ar
or powerf
Teou, or

Whence Omai, when in England, expressed his indignation, that the names of prince or princess should be given to our dogs or horses. But though death is the punishment for taking this liberty with the name of the sovereign, abuse against his government is only punished with the forfeiture of land and houses.

The sovereign never deigns to enter the habitation of any of his subjects; in every district, where he visits, he has houses belonging to himself. And if, by accident, he should ever be obliged to deviate from this rule, the habitation thus honoured with his presence, together with its furniture, is entirely burnt. When present, his subjects uncover to him as low as the waist; and, when he is at any particular place, a pole, with a piece of cloth affixed to it, is set up in some conspicuous part near, on which the same honours are bestowed. To the first part of this ceremony his brothers are entitled; but the women only uncover to the royal females.

They are even superstitious in respect to their sovereign, and esteem his person as almost sacred. To these circumstances, perhaps, he is indebted for the quiet possession of his dominions. Even the people of Tiaraboo admit his claim to the same honours, though they esteem their own chief as more powerful, and assert that, should the reigning family become extinct, he would succeed to the government of the whole island.

This indeed is probable, as Waheiadooa, exclusive of Tiaraboo, possesses many districts of Opooreanoo. The extent of his territories is, therefore, almost equal to those of Otoo; and his part of the island is more populous and fertile. His subjects, too, have shewn their superiority, by frequently defeating those of Otaheite-nooe, whom they hold in a contemptible light, as warriors; and over whom they might be easily victorious, if their chief should be inclined to put it to the test.

The people, exclusive of the Eree de hoi, and his family, are classed in the following order. The Erees, or powerful chiefs; the Manahoone, or vassals; and the Teou, or Toutou, servants or slaves. The men agree-

ably to the regular institution, connect themselves with women of their respective ranks; but if with one of an inferior class, and she brings forth a child, it is not only preserved, but is entitled to the rank of the father; unless he should happen to be an Eree, in which case the child is killed.

If a woman of condition permits a man of inferior rank to officiate as a husband, the children they produce are also killed. And if a Teou be detected in an intrigue with a female of the royal family, he is punished with death. The son of the Eree de hoi, at his birth, succeeds his father in titles and honours; but, if he has no children, the government devolves to the brother at his death. Possessions, in other families, descend to the eldest son, who is, nevertheless, obliged to support his brothers and sisters, and allow them houses on his estates.

Otaheite is divided into several districts, the boundaries of which are generally rivulets or low hills; but the subdivisions, by which particular property is ascertained, are pointed out by large stones which have continued from generation to generation. Quarrels are sometimes produced, by the removal of these stones, which are decided by battle; each party claiming the assistance of his friends. But, upon a complaint being properly made to the Eree de hoi, he determines the difference in an amicable manner.

These offences, however, are not common; and property seems to be as secure here, from long custom, as from the severest laws in other countries. It is an established practice among them, that crimes which are not of a general nature, are left to be punished by the party who is injured, supposing that he will decide as equitably as a person totally unconcerned: and, long custom having allotted certain punishments for certain crimes, he may inflict them, without being amenable to any one. If, for instance, any person be detected stealing, which is usually done in the night, the owner

of

of the
But th
the pr
hair a
stolen,
wards
ber of
offence

If, i
friends
herents
the hou
are va
Manah
proper
months
increase
luable a
confide
sels his
ling of
fence, a
murder
concern
ing the
punish
fere in
he plea

Thou
the pro
may, in
yet ther
taia, or
E. of O
Otaheite
and, pr
somethi
with a
likewise

of the goods stolen may kill the thief immediately. But they seldom inflict so severe a punishment, unless the property taken is very valuable; such as plaited hair and breast plates. When only cloth, or hogs, are stolen, and the robber escapes, if, upon his being afterwards discovered, he engages to return the same number of hogs, and pieces of cloth, he is acquitted of the offence; or, at most, receives a slight beating.

If, in a quarrel, one person should kill another, the friends of the deceased attack the survivor and his adherents. If they are victorious, they take possession of the house and property of the other party; but, if they are vanquished, the reverse takes place. Should a Manahoone kill the slave of a chief, the latter seizes the property of the former, who flies the country. A few months after, he returns, and, finding his stock of hogs increased, makes a large present of these, and other valuable articles, to the Toutou's master, who generally considers it as a compensation, and suffers him to repossess his premises. But, it is not surprizing that the killing of a man should be considered as so trifling an offence, among a people who do not think it a crime to murder their own children. On conversing with them concerning such instances of unnatural cruelty, and asking them if their chiefs were not offended, and did not punish them; they said the chief had no right to interfere in such cases, every one being at liberty to do what he pleased with his own child.

Though the people, their customs and manners, and the productions of the islands in the neighbourhood, may, in general, be considered the same as at Otaheite, yet there are a few differences. In the little island Mataia, or Onaburgh Island, which lies twenty leagues E. of Otaheite, is spoken a different dialect from that of Otaheite. The men of Mataia also wear long hair; and, previous to their fighting, cover their arm with something beset with sharks' teeth, and their bodies with a skin of fishes, not unlike shagreen. They are likewise ornamented with polished pearl shells, which make

make a refulgent glittering in the sun ; and they have a very large one before, which covers them like a shield.

In the language of Otaheite, there are many words and phrases very different from those of the islands to the westward of it. It is remarkable for producing, in great abundance, that delicious fruit which we call apples, which are not to be found in any of the others, except Eimeo. It also produces an odoriferous wood, called *caboi*, which is much esteemed at the other isles. Huaheine and Eimeo produce more yams than the other islands ; and, upon the hills at Mouroua, a particular bird is found, which is highly valued for its white feathers.

Besides the number or cluster of islands extending from Mataia to Mouroua, we were informed by the people at Otaheite, that there was a low uninhabited island, called Mopeeha ; and also several low islands, to the north-eastward, at the distance of about two days sail with a fair wind.

At Mataeva, it is said to be customary, for men to present their daughters to strangers who visit that island. The pairs, however, must lie near each other for the space of five nights, without presuming to take any liberties. On the sixth evening, the father entertains his guest with food, and orders the daughter to receive him that night, as her husband. Though the bed-fellow be ever so disagreeable to the stranger, he must not dare to express the least dislike ; for that is an unpardonable affront, and punishable with death. Forty men of Bolabola, whom curiosity had incited to go to Mataeva, were treated in this manner ; one of them having declared his aversion to the female who fell to his lot, in the hearing of a boy, who mentioned it to the father. Fired with this information, the Mataevans fell upon them ; but the Bolabolans killed thrice their own number, though with the loss of the whole party except five. These, at first, concealed themselves in the woods, and afterwards effected their escape in a canoe.

The

The low isles are, perhaps, the farthest navigation performed by the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the Society Islands. Monsieur de Bougainville is certainly in an error, when he says, "These people sometimes navigate at the distance of more than three hundred leagues.*" For it is deemed a sort of prodigy, that a canoe, which was once driven from Otaheite in a storm, should have arrived at Mopeeha, though directly to leeward, at no great distance. Their knowledge of distant islands, is merely traditional; communicated to them by the natives of those islands, who have been accidentally driven upon their coasts.

* Bougainville' Voyage Autour de Monde, p. 228.

Prosecution

The

Prosecution of our Voyage, after our Departure from the Society Isles—Christmas Island discovered—Supplies of Fish and Turtle—Solar Eclipse—Distress of two Seamen who had lost their Way—Singular Mode of refreshing himself practised by one of these Stragglers—Inscription left in a Bottle—Soil of the Island described—Trees and Plants—Birds, and other Animals—Further Particulars respecting Christmas Island.

UPON our quitting Bolabola, and taking leave of the Society Islands, on Monday the 8th of December, we steered to the northward, with the wind between N. E. and E. scarce ever having it in the S. E. point, till after we had crossed the equator. Though a year and five months had now elapsed since our departure from England, during which period we had not been, upon the whole, unprofitably employed, Captain Cook was sensible, that, with respect to the principal object of his instructions, our voyage might be considered, at this time, as only at its commencement; and, therefore, his attention to whatever might contribute towards our safety and final success, was now to be exerted as it were anew. He had with this view examined into the state of our provisions at the islands we had last visited; and having now, on leaving them, proceeded beyond the extent of his former discoveries, he ordered an accurate survey to be taken of all the stores that were in each ship, that, by being fully informed of the quantity and condition of every article, he might know how to use them to the greatest advantage.

Before

Before we quitted the Society Isles, we had taken every opportunity of inquiring of the natives, whether there were any islands situate in a northerly or north-westerly direction from them; but it did not appear that they knew of any: nor did we meet with any thing by which the vicinity of land was indicated, till we began, about the latitude of 8 d. S. to see boobies, men-of-war birds, terns, tropic-birds, and a few other sorts. Our longitude, at this time, was 205 d. E. In the night between the 22d and 23d, we crossed the equinoctial line; and on the 24th, soon after day-break, we discovered land bearing N. E. by E. It was found, upon our making a nearer approach to it, to be one of those low islands which are so frequently met with in this ocean between the tropics; that is, a narrow bank of land that encloses the sea within. We observed some cocoa nut trees in two or three places; but the land in general had a very steril aspect. At twelve o'clock it was about four miles distant. On the western side we found the depth of water to be from forty to fourteen fathoms water.

Captain Cook being of opinion that this island would prove a convenient place for procuring turtle, resolved to anchor here. We accordingly dropped our anchors in thirty fathoms water; and a boat was immediately dispatched to search for a commodious landing-place. When she returned, the officer who had been employed in this search, reported, that he found no place where a boat could land; but that fish greatly abounded in the shoal water, without the breakers. Early the next morning, which was Christmas-day, two boats were sent, one from each ship, to examine more accurately whether it was practicable to land; and, at the same time, two others were ordered out, to fish at a grappling near the shore. These last returned about eight, with as many fish as weighed upwards of two hundred pounds. Encouraged by this success, the Commodore dispatched them again after breakfast; and he then went himself in another boat, to view the coast, and

attempt landing, which, however, he found to be impracticable. The two boats which had been sent out on the same search, returned about twelve o'clock; and the master, who was in that belonging to the *Resolution*, reported to Captain Cook, that, about four or five miles to the northward, there being a break in the land, and a channel into the lagoon, there was consequently a proper place for landing; and that he had found off this entrance the same soundings as we had where we now were stationed. In consequence of this report we weighed, and, after two or three trips, anchored again over a bottom of fine dark sand, before a little island lying at the entrance of the lagoon.

On Friday the 26th, in the morning, the Commodore ordered Captain Clerke to send out a boat, with an officer in it, to the south-east part of the lagoon, in quest of turtle; and went himself with Mr King, each in a boat, to the north-east part. It was his intention to have gone to the eastern extremity; but the wind not permitting it, he and Mr King landed more to leeward, on a sandy flat, where they caught one turtle, which was the only one they saw in the lagoon. They waded through the water to an island, where they found nothing but a few birds. Captain Cook, leaving Mr King here to observe the sun's meridian altitude, proceeded to the land that bounds the sea towards the north-west, which he found even more barren than the last-mentioned isle; but walking over to the sea-coast, he observed five turtles close to the shore, one of which he caught: he then returned on board as did Mr King soon afterwards. Though so few turtles were observed by these two gentlemen, we did not despair of a supply; for some of the officers of the *Discovery*, who had been ashore to the southward of the channel leading into the lagoon, had more success, and caught several.

The next morning, the cutter and pinnace were dispatched, under the command of Mr King, to the south-east part of the island, within the lagoon, to catch turtle; and the small cutter was sent towards the north for
the

the same purpose. Some of Captain Clerke's people having been on shore all night, had been so fortunate as to turn upwards of forty turtles on the sand, which were this day brought on board; and, in the course of the afternoon, the party detached to the northward returned with half a dozen; and being sent back again, continued there till we departed from the island, having, upon the whole, pretty good success. The day following (the 28th) Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr Bayly, landed on the island situate between the two channels into the lagoon, to prepare the telescopes for observing the solar eclipse that was to happen on the 30th. Towards noon, Mr King returned with one boat, and eight turtles; seven being left behind to be brought by the other boat, whose people were occupied in catching more; and, in the evening, the same boat conveyed them provisions and water. Mr Williamson now went to superintend this business in the room of Mr King, who remained on board, in order to attend the observation of the eclipse. The next day, the two boats, laden with turtle, were sent back to the ship by Mr Williamson, who, at the same time, in a message to Captain Cook, requested, that the boats might be ordered round by sea, as he had discovered a landing-place on the south-east side of the island, where the greatest numbers of turtle were caught; so that, by dispatching the boats thither, the trouble of carrying them over the land (as had hitherto been done) to the inside of the lagoon, would be saved. This advice was followed.

On Tuesday the 30th, Captain Cook, and Messrs King and Bayly, repaired in the morning to the small island above mentioned, to observe the eclipse of the sun. The sky was over-cast at times; but it was clear when the eclipse ended. In the afternoon, the party who had been employed in catching turtle at the south-eastern part of the island, returned on board, except a sailor belonging to Captain Clerke's ship, who had been missing for two days.

At first, there were two men who had lost their way;

X x 2

but



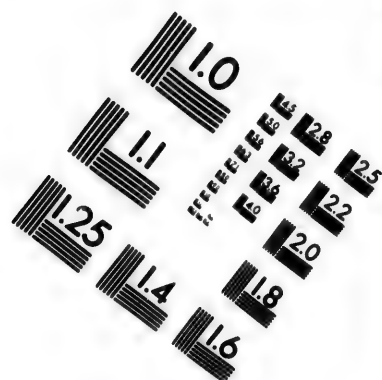
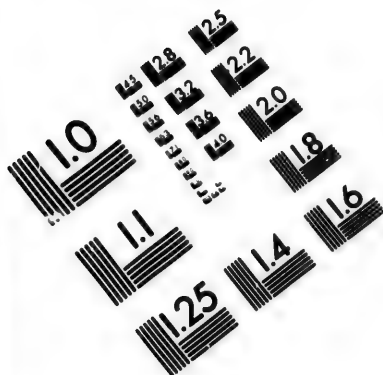
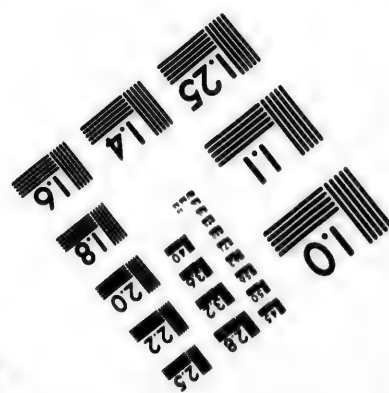
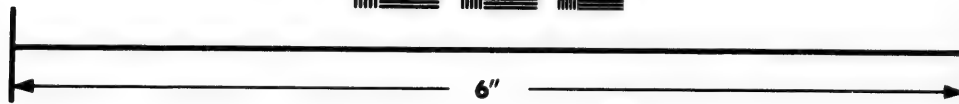
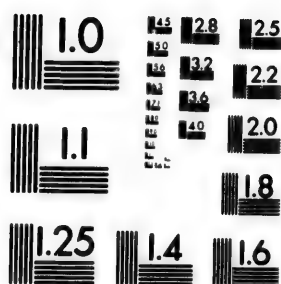


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.8 20 22 25
E E E E E
E E E E E

10
E E E E E
E E E E E

but happening to disagree with respect to the track that was most likely to bring them to their companions, they had separated; and one of them found means to rejoin the party, after an absence of twenty-four hours, during which he had experienced great distress. There being no fresh water in the whole island, and not one cocoa nut tree in that part of it, he, in order to allay his thirst, had recourse to the extraordinary expedient of drinking the blood of turtle, which he killed for that purpose. His method of refreshing himself, when fatigued, was equally singular, though he said he felt the good effects of it: he undressed himself, and lay down in the shallow water on the beach for some time.

How these two men had contrived to lose their way, was a matter of astonishment. The land over which their journey lay, from the sea coast to the lagoon, where the boats were stationed, did not exceed three miles across; nor was there any thing that could impede their view; for the country was level, with a few shrubs dispersed about it; and, from many parts, the masts of our vessels could be discerned. This, however, was a rule of direction which they did not think of; nor did they recollect in what part of the island the ships lay at anchor; and they were totally at a loss how to get back to them, or to the party they had so carelessly straggled from. Considering what strange people the generality of sailors are, while on shore, we might, instead of being much surprized that these two should thus lose themselves, rather wonder that no more of the party were missing.

Captain Clerke was no sooner informed that one of the stragglers was still in this disagreeable situation, than he detached a party in search of him; but neither the man nor the party having returned, the next morning the Commodore ordered two boats into the lagoon, to prosecute the search by different tracks. In a short time after, Captain Clerke's detachment returned, with their lost companion; in consequence of which the boats dispatched into the lagoon were called back by signal.

This

This man's distress must have been far greater than that of the other straggler; not only as he had been lost a longer time, but as he was too delicate to drink turtle's blood.

Having some yams and cocoa nuts on board, in a state of vegetation, we planted them, by Captain Cook's order, on the small island where he had observed the late eclipse; and some seeds of melons were sown in another place. The Captain also left on that little isle a bottle containing the following inscription:

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 31 Decembris, 1777.

*Naves { Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.
 { Discovery. Car. Clerke, Pr.*

On Thursday the 1st of January, 1778, the Comodore sent out several boats to bring on board our different parties employed ashore, with the turtle which they had caught. It being late before this business was completed, he thought proper to defer sailing till the next morning. We procured at this island, for both ships, about three hundred turtles, which weighed, one with another, about ninety pounds: they were all of the green sort, and, perhaps, not inferior in goodness to any in the world. We also caught, with hook and line, a great quantity of fish, principally consisting of cavallies, snappers, and a few rock fish of two species, one with whitish streaks scattered about, and the other with numerous blue spots.

The soil of this island (to which Captain Cook gave the name of Christmas Island, as we kept that festival here) is, in some places, light and blackish, composed of sand, the dung of birds, and rotten vegetables. In other parts, it is formed of broken coral stones, decayed shells, and other marine productions. These are deposited in long, narrow ridges, lying parallel with the sea coast; and must have been thrown up by the waves, though they do not reach, at present, within a mile of some of these places. This seems to prove incontestably, that the

the island has been produced by different accessions from the sea, and is in a state of augmentation; the broken pieces of coral, and likewise many of the shells, being too large and heavy to have been brought from the beach by any birds to the places where they are now lying.

We could not find any where a drop of fresh water, though we frequently dug for it. We met with several ponds of salt water, which, as they had no visible communication with the sea, were probably filled by the water filtrating through the sand during the time of high tides. One of the men who lost their way found some salt on the S. E. part of the island. We could not discover the smallest traces of any human creature having ever been here before us; and, indeed, should any one be accidentally driven on the island, or left there, he would hardly be able to prolong his existence. For, though there are birds and fish in abundance, there are no visible means of allaying thirst, nor any vegetable that would serve as a substitute for bread, or correct the bad effects of an animal diet. On the few cocoa nut trees upon the island, we found very little fruit, and that little not good.

A few low trees were observed in some parts, besides several small shrubs and plants, which grew in a very languid manner. We found a sort of purslain, a species of *sida* or Indian mallow, and another plant that seemed, from its leaves, to be a *mesembryanthemum*; with two sorts of grass. Under the low trees sat vast numbers of a new species of tern, or egg-bird, black above, and white below, having a white arch on the forehead. These birds are somewhat larger than the common noddy; their eggs are bluish, and speckled with black. There were likewise many common boobies; a sort greatly resembling a gannet; and a chocolate-coloured species, with a white belly. Men-of-war birds, curlews, plovers, tropic birds, petrels, &c. are also to be seen here. We saw several rats, smaller than ours. There were numbers of land crabs, and small lizards.

Christ.

Christmas Island is supposed by Captain Cook to be between fifteen and twenty leagues in circuit. Its form is semi-circular; or like the moon in her last quarter, the two horns being the north and south points. The west side, or the small island situate at the entrance into the lagoon, lies in the longitude of 202 d. 30 m. E. and in the latitude of 1 d. 59 m. north.

Like most of the other isles in this ocean, Christmas Island is surrounded by a reef of coral rock, extending but a little way from the shore; and further out than this reef, on the western side, is a bank of sand, which extends a mile into the sea. There is good anchorage on this bank, in any depth between eighteen and thirty fathoms. During our continuance here, the wind generally blew a fresh gale at E. by S. or E. and we had constantly a great swell from the northward, which broke on the reef in a very violent surf.

There

Christ.

Three Islands discovered—The Inhabitants of Atooi approach us in their Canoes—Their Persons described—Some of them venture on board—Their Amazement on that Occasion—Precautions against importing the Venereal Disease into the Island—One of the Natives killed—The Ships cast Anchor—The Commodore's Reception on landing—His Excursion into the Country, with Messrs Webber and Anderson—Description of a Morai and its Obelisk—The Custom of offering human Victims prevalent among these People—Curious feathered Cloaks and Caps—The Resolution driven from Atqoi Road—The Isle of Oneebewu visited—Some of our People are detained on Shore—Animals and Seeds left at Oneebewu—Customs of the Natives—The Ships proceed to the Northward.

WEIGHING anchor at day-break, on Friday the 2d of January, 1778, we resumed our northerly course, with a gentle breeze at E. and E. S. E. which continued till we arrived in the latitude of 7 d. 45 m. N. and the longitude of 205 d. E. where we had a day of perfect calm. A N. E. by E. wind then succeeded, which blew faintly at first, but freshened as we proceeded northward. We daily observed Tropic birds, many of war birds, boobies, &c. and between the latitude of 10 d. and 11 d. N. we saw several turtles. Though all these are considered as signs of the proximity of land, we discovered none till early in the morning of Sunday the 18th, when an island appeared, bearing N. E. by E. Not long after, more land was seen, which bore

N. and

t
w
ta
h
v
ag
th
up
Co
to
ret
equ
or
gav
a fu
ing
One
whi
exce
com
be li
a com
had
a bar
to flo
gener
comm
had p
bout
their
Vol.

N. and was totally detached from the former. At noon, the first was supposed to be eight or nine leagues distant. Our longitude, at this time, was 200 d. 41 m. E. and our latitude, 21 d. 12 m. N. The next day, at sunrise, the island first seen bore E. at the distance of several leagues. Not being able to reach this, we shaped our course for the other; and soon after, observed a third island, bearing W. N. W.

We had now a fine breeze at E. by N. and, at noon, the second island, named Atooi, for the east end of which we were steering, was about two leagues distant. As we made a nearer approach, many of the inhabitants put off from the shore in their canoes, and very readily came alongside of the ships. We were agreeably surprized to find, that they spoke a dialect of the Otaheitean language. They could not be prevailed upon by any entreaties to come on board. Captain Cook tied some brass medals to a rope, which he gave to those who were in one of the canoes; and they, in return, fastened some mackarel to the rope, by way of equivalent. This was repeated; and some small nails, or pieces of iron, were given them; for which they gave in exchange some more fish, and a sweet potatoe; a sure indication of their having some notion of bartering, or, at least, of returning one present for another. One of them even offered for sale the piece of stuff which he wore about his waist. These people did not exceed the ordinary size, and were stoutly made. Their complexion was brown; and though there appeared to be little difference in the casts of their colour, there was a considerable variation in their features. Most of them had their hair cropped rather short; a few had it tied in a bunch at the top of the head; and others suffered it to flow loose. It seemed to be naturally black; but the generality of them had stained it with some stuff which communicated to it a brownish colour. Most of them had pretty long beards. They had no ornaments about their persons, nor did we observe that they had their ears perforated. Some of them were tatooed on

the hands, or near the groin; and the pieces of cloth, which were worn by them round their middle, were curiously coloured with white, black, and red. They seemed to be mild and good natured; and were furnished with no arms of any kind, except some small stones, which they had manifestly brought for their own defence; and these they threw into the sea when they found that there was no occasion for them.

As we perceived no signs of an anchoring place at this eastern extremity of the island, we bore away to leeward, and ranged along the S. E. side, at the distance of about a mile and a half from the shore. The canoes left us when we made sail; but others came off, as we proceeded along the coast, and brought with them pigs and some excellent potatoes, which they exchanged for whatever we offered to them; and several small pigs were purchased by us for a sixpenny nail. We passed divers villages; some of which were situated near the sea, and others further up the country. The inhabitants of all of them came in crowds to the shore, and assembled on the elevated places to take a view of the ships. On this side of the island the land rises in a gentle acclivity from the sea to the bottom of the mountains, which occupy the central part of the country, except at one place near the eastern end, where they rise immediately from the sea: they seemed to be composed of stone, or rocks lying in horizontal strata. We observed a few trees about the villages; near which we could also discern several plantations of sugar canes and plantains. We continued to sound, but did not strike ground with a line of fifty fathoms, till we came abreast of a low point, near the N. W. extremity of the island, where we found from twelve to fourteen fathoms, over a rocky bottom. Having passed this point, we met with twenty fathoms, then sixteen, twelve, and at last five, over a bottom of sand. We spent the night in standing off and on; and, the next morning, stood in for the land. We were met by several canoes filled with natives, some of whom ventured to come on board.

None

None of the inhabitants we ever met with before in any other island or country, were so astonished as these people were, upon entering a ship. Their eyes were incessantly roving from one object to another; and the wildness of their looks and gestures, fully indicated their perfect ignorance with respect to every thing they saw; and strongly marked to us, that they had never, till the present time, been visited by Europeans, nor been acquainted with any of our commodities, except iron. This metal, however, they had in all probability only heard of, or had perhaps known it in some inconsiderable quantity, brought to them at a remote period. They asked for it by the appellation of *hamaite*, referring probably to some instrument, in making which iron could be serviceably employed; for they applied that name to the blade of a knife, though they had no idea of that particular instrument, which they could not even handle properly. They also frequently called iron by the name of *tae*, which signifies a hatchet, or adze. On our shewing them some beads, they first asked what they were; and then, whether they were to be eaten. But, on their being informed, that they were to be hung in their ears, they rejected them as useless. They were equally indifferent with regard to a looking glass that we offered them, and returned it for a similar reason. China cups, plates of earthen ware, and other things of that kind, were so new to them, that they asked whether they were made of wood. They were, in many respects, naturally polite; or, at least, cautious of giving offence. Some of them, just before their venturing on board, repeated a long prayer; and others, afterwards, sung and made various motions with their hands. On their first entering the ship, they attempted to steal every thing that they could lay hands on, or rather to take it openly, as if they supposed that we either should not resent such behaviour, or not hinder it. But we soon convinced them of their error; and when they observed that we kept a watchful eye over them, they became less active

in appropriating to themselves what did not belong to them.

About nine o'clock Captain Cook dispatched Lieut. Williamson, with three armed boats, to look out for a proper landing-place, and for fresh water; with orders, that, if he should find it necessary to land in search of the latter, he should not allow more than one man to accompany him out of the boats. The very moment they were putting off from the ship, one of the islanders having stolen a cleaver, leaped over-board, got into his canoe, and hastened towards the shore, while the boats pursued him in vain.

The reason of the Commodore's order that the crews of the boats should not go on shore, was, that he might prevent, if possible, the importation of a dangerous disease into this island, which he knew some of our people now laboured under, and which we, unfortunately, had already communicated to other islands in this ocean. From the same motive, he commanded that all female visitants should be excluded from both the ships. Many persons of this sex had come off in the canoes. Their features, complexion, and stature, were not very different from those of the men; and though their countenances were extremely open and agreeable, few traces of delicacy were visible either in their faces, or other proportions. The only difference in their dress, was their having a piece of cloth about their bodies, reaching from near the middle almost down to the knees, instead of the maro worn by the male-sex. They were as much inclined to favour us with their company on board, as some of the men were; but the Commodore was extremely desirous of preventing all connection, which might, in all probability, convey an irreparable injury to themselves, and afterwards, through their means to the whole nation. Another prudent precaution was taken, by strictly enjoining, that no person capable of communicating the infection should be sent upon duty out of the ships.

Captain Cook had paid equal attention to the same object,

object, when he first visited the Friendly Isles; but he afterwards found to his great regret, that his endeavours had not succeeded. And there is reason to apprehend, that this will constantly be the case, in such voyages as ours, whenever it is necessary that many people should be employed on shore. The opportunities and incitements to an amorous intercourse are then too numerous to be effectually guarded against; and however confident a commander may be of the health of his men, he is often undeceived too late. Among a number of men, there are in general to be found some, who, out of bashfulness, endeavour to conceal their having any venereal symptoms: and there are others so profligate and abandoned, as not to care to whom they communicate this disease. We had an instance of the last mark at Tongataboo, in the Gunner of the *Discovery*, who had been stationed on shore. After knowing that he had contracted this disorder, he continued to have connections with different women, who were supposed to have been, till that time, free from any infection. His companions remonstrated to him on this scandalous behaviour without effect, till Captain Clerke, being informed of such a dangerous irregularity of conduct, ordered him to repair on board.

Waiting for the return of our boats, which had been sent out to reconnoitre the coast, we stood off and on with the ships. Towards mid-day, Mr Williamson came back and reported, that he had observed behind a beach, near one of the villages, a large pond, which was said by the natives to contain fresh water; and that there was tolerable anchoring ground before it. He also mentioned, that he had made an attempt to land in another place, but was prevented by the islanders, who, coming down in great numbers to the boats, endeavoured to take away the oars, musquets, and every other article which they could lay hold of; and crowded so thick upon him and his people, that he was under the necessity of firing, by which one man was killed. This unfortunate circumstance, however, was not known to Captain

Captain Cook till after we had quitted the island ; so that all his measures were directed as if no affair of that kind had happened. Mr Williamson informed him, that as soon as the man felt, he was taken up and carried off by his countrymen, who then retired from the boats ; but still they made signals for our people to land, which they declined. It did not appear, that the natives had the least intention of killing, or even hurting, any of Mr Williamson's party ; but they seemed to have been excited by curiosity alone, to get from them what they had, being prepared to give, in return, any thing that appertained to themselves.

Captain Cook then dispatched one of the boats to lie in the best anchoring ground ; and when she had gained this station, he bore down with the ships, and cast anchor in twenty-five fathoms water, over a sandy bottom. The eastern point of the road, which was the low point already mentioned, bore S. 51 d. E. the west point, N. 65 d. W. and the village near which the fresh water was said to be, was one mile distant. The ships being thus stationed, between three and four in the afternoon, the Captain went ashore with three armed boats, and twelve of the marines, with a view of examining the water, and trying the disposition of the inhabitants, who had assembled in considerable numbers on a sandy beach before the village ; behind it was a valley, in which was the piece of water. The moment he leaped on shore, all the islanders fell prostrate upon their faces, and continued in that posture of humiliation, till, by signs, he prevailed on them to rise. They then presented to him many small pigs, with plantain trees, making use of nearly the same ceremonies which we had seen practised, on similar occasions, at the Society and other isles ; and a long oration or prayer being pronounced by an individual, in which others of the assembly occasionally joined. Captain Cook signified his acceptance of their proffered friendship, by bestowing on them, in return, such presents as he had brought ashore. This introductory business being ended, he
stationed

and; so
of that
ed him,
and car-
from the
e to land,
the na-
hurting,
d to have
em what
ny thing

boats to lie
ed gained
d cast an-
y bottom.
low point
point, N.
esh water
ips being
afternoon,
boats, and
ining the
tants, who
ndy beach
in which
leaped on
their faces,
n, till, by
e then pre-
tain trees,
which we
the Society
being pro-
of the af-
ignified his
bestowing
ad brought
ended, he
station-

Cook's Voyages

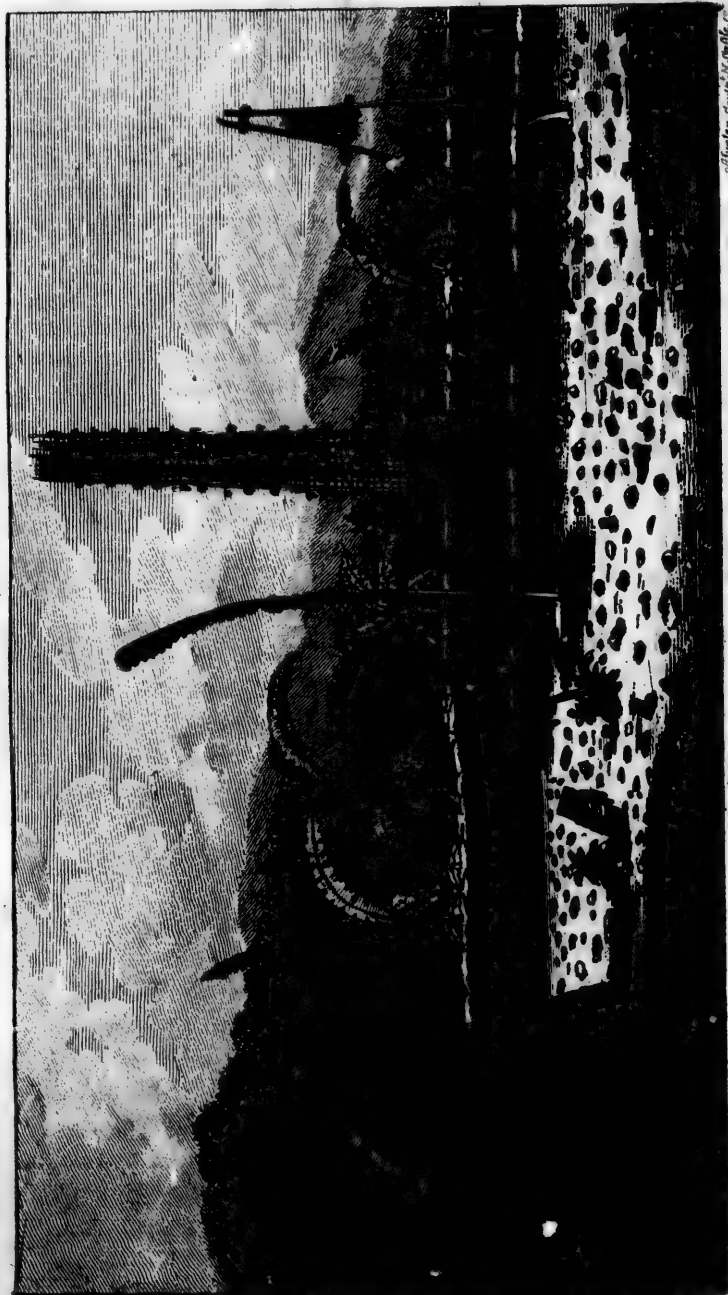


Illustration of the Atoll

A. MORAI in ATOLL.

the
ject
whi
feet
ing
valle
mot
quai
it ha
get a
How

stationed a guard upon the beach, and was then conducted by some of the natives to the water, which he found extremely good, and so considerable that it might be denominated a lake. After this, he returned on board, and issued orders that preparations should be made for filling our water casks in the morning; at which time he went ashore with some of his people, having a party of marines for a guard.

They had no sooner landed, than a trade was entered into for potatoes and hogs, which the islanders gave in exchange for nails and pieces of iron. Far from giving any obstruction to our men who were occupied in watering, they even assisted them in rolling the casks to and from the pool, and performed with alacrity whatever was required of them. Captain Cook leaving the command at this station to Mr Williamson, who had landed with him, made an excursion into the country, up the valley, being accompanied by Messrs Anderson and Webber, and followed by a numerous train of natives, one of whom, who had been very active in keeping the others in order, the Captain made choice of as a guide. This man, from time to time, proclaiming the approach of our gentlemen, every person who met them, fell prostrate on the ground, and remained in that humble position till they had passed. This, as we were afterwards informed, is their method of shewing respect to their own great chiefs.

We had observed at every village, as we ranged along the coast in the ships, one or more elevated white objects, resembling pyramids, or rather obelisks; one of which, supposed by Captain Cook to be at least fifty feet in height, was very conspicuous from our anchoring station, and seemed to be at a small distance up this valley. To have a nearer view of it, was the principal motive of our gentlemen's walk. Their guide was acquainted with their desire of being conducted to it: but it happened to be in such a situation, that they could not get at it, the pool of water separating it from them. However, as there was another of the same kind about half

half a mile distant, upon their side of the valley, they set out to visit that. As soon as they reached it, they perceived that it was situate in a burying-ground, or morai, which bore a striking resemblance, in several respects, to those they had seen at Otaheite and other islands in this ocean. It was an oblong space, of considerable extent, environed by a stone wall, four or five feet high. The inclosed space was loosely paved; and, at one end of it, was placed the obelisk or pyramid, called by the natives *henananoo*, which was an exact model of the larger one that we had discerned from our ships. It was about twenty feet in height, and four feet square at the base. Its four sides were formed of small poles, interwoven with twigs and branches, thus composing an indifferent wicker-work, hollow within from the top to the bottom. It appeared to be in a ruinous state, and had been originally covered with a thin greyish cloth. On each side of it were long pieces of wicker-work, termed *bereanee*, in a condition equally ruinous, with two poles inclining towards each other at one corner, where some plantains were placed on a board, fixed at the height of about half a dozen feet. This was called by the islanders *berairemy*; and they said, the fruit was an offering to their deity. Before the *henananoo* were several pieces of wood, carved into some resemblance of human figures. There was also a stone near two feet in height, covered with cloth. Adjoining to this, on the outside of the morai, was a small shed, which they denominated *hareepaboo*; and before it there was a grave, where the remains of a woman had been deposited.

There was a house or shed, called *bemanaa*, on the further side of the area of the morai: it was about forty feet in length, ten or eleven feet height, and ten in breadth in the middle, but narrower at each end; though considerably longer, it was lower than their common habitations. Opposite the entrance into this house, stood two images near three feet high, cut out of one piece of wood, with pedestals: they were said to be *Eatooa no Vcheina*, or representations of goddesses, and were

y, they
it, they
ound, or
veral re-
and other
of con-
ur or five
ed; and,
mid, call-
act model
our ships.
et square
nail poles,
oposing an
the top to
e, and had
cloth. On
rk, termed
a two poles
where some
e height of
he islanders
offering to
veral pieces
nan figures
ht, covered
side of the
minated ha-
where the

naa, on the
about forty
and ten in
nd; though
ir common
this house,
out of one
said to be
deffes, and
were

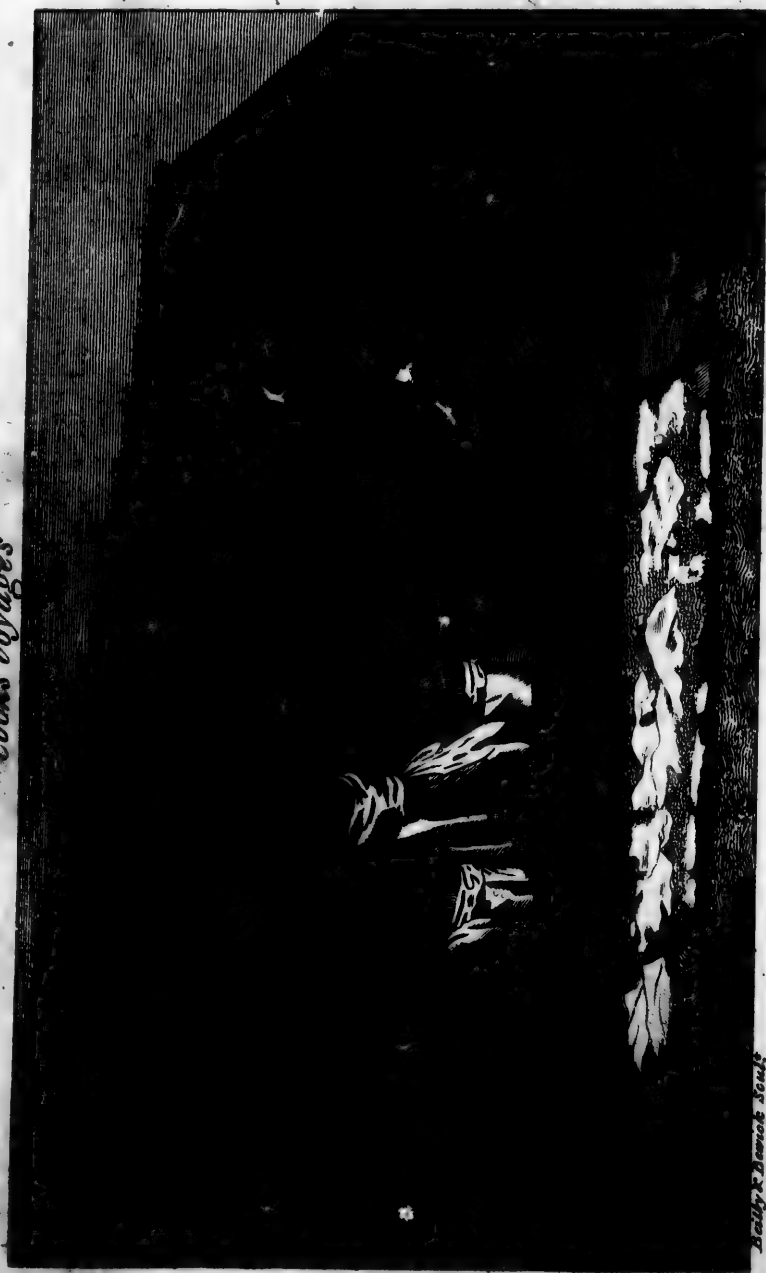
Beilly & Brevint, Sculp.

An Offering before Captain Cook's Monument



Cook's Voyages





Belby Edmund Scott

The IN SIDE of the HOUSE, in the MORAI in ATOOI.

Vol.
that t
island
Ev
had b
three
by on
close
the g
of th
close
great
which
man
their
and
serv
on c
vict
nize
that
qui
nov
star
nee
thi
an
im
en
qu
w
w
b
lo
v
f
c

were not very indifferent either in point of execution or design. On the head of one of them was a cylindrical cap, not unlike the head dress at Otaheite, called *tomou*; and on that of the other, a carved helmet, somewhat resembling those of the ancient warriors; and both of them had pieces of cloth fastened about the loins, and hanging down a considerable way. There was also, at the side of each, a piece of carved wood, with cloth hung on it. Before the pedestals lay a quantity of fern, which had been placed there at different times. In the middle of the house, and before the images just described, was an oblong space, inclosed by an edging of stone, and covered with shreds of cloth: this was the grave of seven chiefs, and was called *be-neene*.

Our gentlemen had already met with so many instances of resemblance, between the morai they were now visiting, and those of the islands they had lately quitted, that they entertained little doubt in their minds, that the similarity existed also in the rite here solemnized, and particularly in the horrid oblation of human victims. Their suspicions were soon confirmed; for, on one side of the entrance into the hemanaa, they observed a small square place, and another still smaller; and on asking what these were, they were informed by their conductor, that in one of them was interred a man who had been sacrificed; and in the other, a hog, which had also been offered up to the deity. At no great distance from these, were three other square inclosed places, with two pieces of carved wood at each of them, and a heap of fern upon them. These were the graves of three chiefs; and before them was an inclosed space, of an oblong figure, called *Tangata-taboo*, by our gentlemen's guide, who declared to them, that three human sacrifices, one at the funeral of each chief, had been there buried.

Every appearance induced the Commodore to believe, that this inhuman practice was very general here. The island seemed to abound with such places of sacrifice as

this, at which he was now present, and which was probably one of the most inconsiderable of them; being much less conspicuous than some others which we had observed as we sailed along the coast, and particularly than that on the opposite side of the piece of water running through this valley; the white pyramid of which, in all probability, derived its colour solely from the consecrated cloth put over it. In many spots within this burying ground, were planted trees of the *morinda citrifolia*, and *cordia sebastina*, besides several plants of the *tee*, with the leaves of which the hemanaa was thatched.

The journey of our gentlemen to and from this morai, lay through the plantations. Most of the ground was perfectly flat, with ditches intersecting different parts, and roads that seemed to have been raised to some height by art. The intervening spaces, in general, were planted with taro, which grew with great vigour. There were several spots where the cloth mulberry was planted, in regular rows; this also grew vigorously. The cocoa trees were in a less thriving condition, and were all low; but the plantain trees, though not large, made a pretty good appearance. Upon the whole, the trees that are most numerous around this village, are the *cordia sebastina*. The greatest part of it is situate near the beach, and consists of upwards of sixty houses there; but there may perhaps be near forty more scattered about, towards the morai.

After the Commodore, and Messrs Anderson and Webber, had carefully examined whatever was worthy of notice about the morai, and the latter had taken drawings of it, and of the surrounding country, they returned by a different route. They found a multitude of people collected at the beach, and a brisk trade for fowls, pigs, and vegetables, going on there, with the greatest order and decorum. At noon, Captain Cook went on board to dinner, and then sent Mr King to take the command of the party on shore. During the afternoon he landed again, accompanied by Captain Clerke, intending to make another excursion up the country:

country: but, before he could execute this design, the day was too far advanced; he therefore relinquished his intention for the present, and no other opportunity afterwards occurred. Towards sun-set, he and his people returned on board, after having procured, in the course of this day, nine tons of water, and (principally by exchanging nails and pieces of iron) seventy or eighty pigs, some fowls, plantains, potatoes, and taro roots. In this commercial intercourse, the islanders deserved our best commendations, making no attempts to cheat us, either alongside our ships, or on shore. Some of them, indeed, as we have already related, betrayed at first a pilfering disposition; or, perhaps, they imagined that they had a right to all they could lay their hands upon: but they quickly desisted from a conduct, which, we convinced them, could not be persevered in with impunity.

Among the various articles which they brought to barter this day, we were particularly struck with a sort of cloak and cap, which, even in more polished countries might be esteemed elegant. These cloaks are nearly of the shape and size of the short ones worn by the men in Spain, and by the women in England, tied loosely before, and reaching to the middle of the back. The ground of them is a net-work, with the most beautiful red and yellow feathers so closely fixed upon it, that the surface, both in point of smoothness and glossiness, resembles the richest velvet. The method of varying the mixture is very different; some of them having triangular spaces of yellow and red alternately; others, a sort of crescent; while some were entirely red, except that they had a broad yellow border. The brilliant colours of the feathers, in those cloaks that were new, had a very fine effect. The natives, at first, refused to part with one of these cloaks for any thing that we offered in exchange, demanding no less a price than one of our musquets. They afterwards, however, suffered us to purchase some of them for very large nails. Those of the best sort were scarce; and it is probable, that they are used only on particular occasions,

The caps are made in the form of a helmet, with the middle part, or crest, frequently of a hand's breadth. They sit very close upon the head, and have notches to admit the ears. They consist of twigs and osiers, covered with a net work, into which feathers are wrought, as upon the cloaks, but somewhat closer, and less diversified; the major part being red, with some yellow, green, or black stripes on the sides. These caps, in all probability, complete the dress, with the cloaks; for the islanders appeared, sometimes, in both together.

We could not conjecture from whence they obtained such a quantity of these beautiful feathers; but we soon procured intelligence respecting one sort; for they afterwards brought for sale great numbers of skins of a small red species of birds, frequently tied up in bunches of twenty or upwards, or having a wooden skewer run through them. At first, those that were purchased, consisted only of the skin from behind the wings forward; but we afterwards obtained many with the hind part, including the feet and tail. The former instantly suggested to us the origin of the fable of the birds of paradise being destitute of legs; and sufficiently explained that particular. The reason assigned by the inhabitants of Atooi for the custom of cutting off the feet of these birds, is, that by this practice they can preserve them the more easily, without losing any part which they consider as valuable.

The red-bird of this island was according to Mr Anderson, a species of merops, about as large as a sparrow; its colour was a beautiful scarlet, with the tail and wings black; and it had an arched bill, twice as long as the head, which, with the feet, was of a reddish hue. The contents of the heads were taken out, as in the birds of paradise; but we did not find, that they practised any other mode of preserving them, than simple drying; for the skins, though they were moist, had neither a smell nor taste that could give any reason for suspecting the use of anti-putrescent substances.

On Thursday the 22d, we had almost continual rain
for

for
S.
sho
Th
the
than
with
brin
they
of th
was
strin
refer
Wh
intin
fame
the p
foun
whic
prefe
be hu
it, w
Anot
asked
enem
diatel
In
ther.
but, t
S. E.
night,
At
spring
ship to
ther o
wind,
all the
shore;

for the whole morning. The wind was at S. E. S. S. E. and S. and the surf broke so high upon the shore, that our boats were prevented from landing. The Resolution was not in a very secure situation, there being breakers within the length of little more than two cables from her stern. The natives, notwithstanding the surf, ventured out in their canoes, bringing off to our ships, hogs and vegetables, which they exchanged, as before, for our commodities. One of their number, who offered some fish-hooks for sale, was observed to have a very small parcel, fastened to the string of one of them, which he carefully separated, and reserved for himself, when he disposed of the hook. When asked what it was, he pointed to his belly, and intimated something of its being dead; saying, at the same time, that it was bad. He was requested to open the parcel, which he did with great reluctance; and we found, that it contained a small thin piece of flesh, which had, to all appearance, been dried, but was at present wet with salt water. Imagining that it might be human flesh, we put the question to the producer of it, who answered, that the flesh was part of a man. Another of the islanders, who stood near him, was then asked, whether it was a custom among them to eat their enemies who had been slain in battle; and he immediately replied in the affirmative.

In the afternoon, we had some intervals of fair weather. The wind then changed to the E. and N. E. but, towards the evening, it veered back again to S. S. E. The rain also returning, continued the whole night, but was not accompanied with much wind.

At seven the next morning, a north-easterly breeze springing up, Captain Cook ordered the anchors of his ship to be taken up, with a view of removing her further out. As soon as the last anchor was up, the wind, veering to the E. rendered it necessary to make all the sail he could, for the purpose of clearing the shore; so that, before he had good sea room, he was driven

driven considerably to leeward. He endeavoured to regain the road ; but having a strong current against him, and very little wind, he could not accomplish that design. He therefore dispatched Messrs King and Williamson ashore, with three boats, to procure water and refreshments, sending, at the same time, an order to Captain Clerke, to put to sea after him, if he should find that the Resolution was unable to recover the road.

The Commodore having hopes of finding a road, or perhaps a harbour, at the west end of the island, was the less anxious about regaining his former station. But as he had sent the boats thither, he kept as much as possible to windward ; notwithstanding which, at noon, our ship was three leagues to leeward. As we approached the west end, we found that the coast rounded gradually to the N. E. without forming a cove, or creek, wherein a vessel might be sheltered from the violence of the swell, which, rolling in from the northward, broke against the shore in an amazing surf : all hopes, therefore, of meeting with a harbour here, soon vanished. Many of the natives, in their canoes, followed us as we stood out to sea, bartering various articles. As we were extremely unwilling, notwithstanding the suspicious circumstance of the preceding day, to believe that these people were cannibals, we now made some further enquiries on this subject. A small instrument of wood, beset with shark's teeth, had been purchased ; which, as it resembled the saw or knife made use of by the savages of New Zealand to dissect the bodies of their enemies, was suspected by us to be employed here for the same purpose. One of the islanders being questioned on this point, informed us, that the instrument above-mentioned served the purpose of cutting out the fleshy part of the belly, when any person was slain. This explained and confirmed the circumstance before related, of the man's pointing to his belly. The native, however, from whom we now received this intelligence, being asked whether his countrymen eat the part thus cut out, strongly denied it ; but, when the question was

repeated,

repeated, he shewed some degree of apprehension, and swam off to his canoe. An elderly man, who sat foremost in the canoe, was then asked whether they eat the flesh; and he answered in the affirmative. The question being put to him a second time, he again affirmed the fact; adding, that it was savoury food.

The boats returned about seven o'clock in the evening, with a few hogs, some plantains and roots, and two tons of water. Mr King reported to the Commodore, that the islanders were very numerous at the watering place, and had brought great numbers of hogs to barter; but our people had not commodities with them adequate to the purchase of them all. He also mentioned, that the surf had run so very high, that it was with extreme difficulty our men landed, and afterwards got back into the boats.

On Saturday the 24th, at day-break, we found that our ship had been carried by the currents to the N.W. and N. so that the western extremity of Atooi bore E. at the distance of one league. A northerly breeze sprung up soon after, and Captain Cook expecting that this would bring the Discovery to sea, steered for Oneeheow, a neighbouring island, which then bore S. W. with a view of anchoring there. He continued to steer for it till past eleven, at which time he was at the distance of about six miles from it. But not seeing the Discovery, he was apprehensive lest some ill consequence might arise from our separating so far; he therefore relinquished the design of visiting Oneeheow for the present, and stood back to Atooi, intending to cast anchor again in the road, in order to complete our supply of water. At two o'clock, the northerly wind was succeeded by calms and variable light airs, which continued till eleven at night. We stretched to the S. E. till early in the morning of the 25th, when we tacked and stood in for Atooi road; and, not long after, we were joined by the Discovery. We were utterly unable to regain the road; and, by the morning of the 29th, the currents had carried us to the westward, with-

in

in nine or ten miles of Oneeheow. Weary with plying so unsuccessfully, Captain Cook laid aside all thoughts of returning to Atooi, and resumed his intention of paying a visit to Oneeheow. With this view, he dispatched the master in a boat, to sound along the coast, and search for a landing place, and afterwards fresh water. In the mean time, the ships followed under an easy sail. The master, at his return, reported, that there was tolerable anchorage all along the coast; and that he had landed in one place, but could not find any fresh water.

Captain Cook being informed by some of the natives, who had come off to the ships, that fresh water might be obtained at a village which we saw at a little distance, ran down, and cast anchor before it, about six furlongs from the shore, the depth of water being twenty-six fathoms. The Discovery anchored at a greater distance from the shore, in twenty-three fathoms. The south-eastern point of Oneeheow bore S. 65 d. E. about one league distant; and another island which we had discovered the preceding night, named Tahoora, bore S. 61 d. W. at the distance of seven leagues. Before we anchored, several canoes had come off to us, bringing potatoes, yams, and small pigs, besides mats. The people who were in them resembled in their persons the inhabitants of Atooi; and, like them, were acquainted with the use of iron, which they asked for by the names of *toe* and *hamaite*, readily parting with all their commodities for pieces of this metal. Some more canoes soon reached our ships, after they had come to anchor; but the islanders who were in these had apparently no other object, than to make us a formal visit. Many of them came on board, and crouched down upon the deck; nor did they quit that humble posture, till they were requested to rise. Several women, whom they had brought with them, remained alongside in the canoes, behaving with much less modesty than the females of Atooi; and, at intervals, they all joined in a song, which, though not very melodious, was performed in the exactest concert, by beating time upon their breasts with their hands.

ha
tim
of
ha
can
not
cun
of
por
shor
pan
did
We
to t
cano
they
they
devo
enmi
M
boats
being
shoul
repor
villag
well
water
our p
bad.
with
for re
have f
ship w
creased
ashore
again.
ple wh
cation
Vol.

hands. The men who had come on board did not continue long with us; and before their departure, some of them desired permission to lay down locks of their hair on the deck.

The curious enquiry, whether these islanders were cannibals, was this day renewed; and the subject did not arise from any questions put by us, but from a circumstance that seemed to remove all doubt. One of the natives, who wished to get in at the gun-room port, was refused; and he then asked, whether we should kill and eat him, if he should come in? accompanying this question with signs so expressive, that we did not entertain a doubt with respect to his meaning. We had now an opportunity of retorting the question as to this practice; and a man behind the other in the canoe, instantly replied, that, if we were killed on shore, they would not scruple to eat us: not that he meant they would destroy us for that purpose, but that their devouring us would be the consequence of our being at enmity with them.

Mr Gore was sent in the afternoon, with three armed boats, in search of the most commodious landing-place; being also directed to look for fresh water when he should get on shore. He returned in the evening, and reported to Captain Cook, that he had landed at the village above-mentioned, and had been conducted to a well about half a mile up the country; but that the water which it contained was in too small a quantity for our purpose, and the road that led to it was extremely bad. The next day Mr Gore was sent ashore again, with a guard, and a party to trade with the inhabitants for refreshments. The Commodore's intention was to have followed soon afterwards; and he went from the ship with that design. But the surf had so greatly increased by this time, that he was apprehensive, if he got ashore, he should not be able to make his way back again. This circumstance really happened to our people who had landed with Mr Gore; for the communication between them and the ships, by our own boats,

was quickly stopped. They made a signal, in the evening, for the boats, which were accordingly sent; and, in a short time afterwards, returned with some good salt and a few yams. A considerable quantity of both these articles had been obtained in the course of the day; but the surf was so exceedingly high, that the greatest part of both had been lost in bringing them off to the boats. The officer and twenty men, not venturing to run the risque of coming off, remained all night on shore; by which unfortunate circumstance, the very thing happened which Captain Cook, as we have already related, so eagerly wished to prevent, and imagined he had effectually guarded against.

The violence of the surf did not deter the natives from coming off in canoes to our ships. They brought with them some refreshments, for which he gave them, in exchange, some nails, and pieces of iron hoops; and we distributed among the women in the canoes, many pieces of ribbon, and some buttons, as bracelets. Some of the men had representations of human figures punctured upon their breasts, and one of them had a lizard represented. These visitants acquainted us, that there was no chief of this island, but that it was subject to one of the chiefs of Atooi, whose name was Teneooneoo. Among other articles which they now brought off to us, was a small drum, that had a great resemblance to those of Otaheite.

Between ten and eleven o'clock at night, the wind became southerly, and the sky seemed to indicate an approaching storm. In consequence of these threatening appearances, Captain Cook, thinking that we were rather too near the shore, caused the anchors to be taken up; and the ships being carried into forty-two fathoms water, came to again in that more secure station. This, however, proved an unnecessary precaution; for the wind, not long after, veering to N. N. E. blew a fresh gale, with squalls, and violent showers of rain. This weather continued for the whole succeeding day, during which the sea ran so high, that all communication with

our

the even-
sent; and,
some good
ity of both
urse of the
h, that the
ng them off
ot venturing
all night on
e, the very
ve have al-
and imagin-

the natives
they brought
e gave them,
hoops; and
anoes, many
elets. Some
uman figures
F them had a
nted us, that
it was subject
e name was
ich they now
had a great re-

ght, the wind
o indicate an
hese thr atten-
that we were
rs to be taken
y-two fathoms
tation. This,
tion; for the
E. blew a fresh
of rain. This
g day, during
unication with
our

our party on shore was totally intercepted, and the islanders themselves would not venture out to the ships in their canoes. Towards the evening, the Commodore sent the Master in a boat to the S. E. point of the island, to try whether he could land in that quarter. He returned with a favourable report; but it was now too late to send for our party till the following morning: so that they were obliged to stay another night on shore. On the appearance of day-light, a boat was dispatched to the S. E. point, with orders to Lieutenant Gore, that, if he could not embark his people from the spot where they at present were, he should march them up to the point. The boat being prevented from getting to the beach, one of the crew swam to shore, and communicated the instructions. After the boat had returned, Captain Cook went himself with the launch and pinnace up to the point, in order to bring off our party from the land. He took with him three goats, one of them a male, and the others female; a young boar and sow of the English breed; and all the seeds of onions, pumpkins, and melons. He landed with great ease, under the west side of the point, where he found his party, in company with some of the natives. To one of these, who assumed some degree of authority over the rest, he gave the goats, pigs, and seeds. He intended to have left these useful presents at Atooi, if we had not been so unexpectedly driven from that island.

While our people were employed in filling some water casks, from a little stream which the late rains had occasioned, Captain Cook made a short excursion into the country, accompanied by the islander above-mentioned, and followed by two others who carried the two pigs. When they had arrived upon a rising ground, the Captain stopped to look around him, and immediately observed a woman, on the opposite side of the valley in which he had landed, calling out to her countrymen who attended him. Upon this the man who acted as chief began to mutter something, as if he was praying; and the two bearers of the pigs continued walking round

the Captain all the time, making about a dozen circuits before the other had made an end of his oraison. This strange ceremony being performed, they proceeded on their walk, and met people coming from all quarters, who, upon being called to by the Captain's attendants, fell prostrate on their faces, till he was out of sight. The ground over which he passed, though it was uncultivated and very stony, was covered with plants and shrubs, some of which perfumed the air with the most delicious fragrance.

Our party who had been detained so long on shore, found, in those parts of the island which they had traversed, several salt ponds, some of which had a small quantity of water remaining, but others had none. They saw no appearance of a running stream; and though, in some small wells which they met with, the fresh water was pretty good, it seemed to be scarce. The houses of the natives were thinly scattered about; and it was supposed, that there were not more than five hundred persons in the whole island. The method of living among these people was decent and cleanly. No instance was observed of the men and women eating together; and the latter seemed in general to be associated in companies by themselves. The oily nuts of the dooe dooe are burned by these islanders for lights during the night; and they dress their hogs by baking them in ovens, splitting the carcases through the whole length. Our people met with a sufficient proof of the existence of the taboo among them; for one woman was employed in feeding another who was under that interdiction. Several other mysterious ceremonies were also observed; one of which was performed by a woman, who threw a pig into the surf and drowned it, and then tied up a bundle of wood, which she disposed of in the like manner. The same female, at another time, beat a man's shoulders with a stick, after he had seated himself for that purpose. An extraordinary veneration seemed to be paid here to owls, which they keep very tame. It appeared to be a pretty general practice among them,

them, to pull out one of their teeth ; and when they were asked the reason of this remarkable custom, the only answer they gave was, that it was teeha ; which was also the reason assigned by them for giving a lock of their hair.

After our water casks had been filled, and some roots, salt, and salted fish, had been purchased from the natives, Captain Cook returned on board with all his people, intending to make another visit to the island the next day. But, about seven in the evening, the anchor of the Resolution started, so that she drove off the bank. By this accident, we found ourselves, at day-break the next morning, which was the 2d of February, nine miles to the leeward of our last station ; and the Captain foreseeing that it would require more time to regain it than he chose to employ, made the signal for the Discovery to weigh anchor and join us. This junction was effected about noon ; and both ships immediately directed their course to the northward, in prosecution of their voyage. Thus, after we had spent more time in the neighbourhood of these islands than was necessary to have answered all our purposes, we were obliged to quit them before we had completed our stock of water, or procured from them such a plentiful supply of refreshments as the natives were both able and willing to have furnished us with. Our ship, however, obtained from them provisions that lasted at least three weeks ; and Captain Clerke, more fortunate than we were, acquired such a quantity of vegetables, as sufficed the Discovery's people upwards of two months.

The observations which Captain Cook was enabled to make on these islands, combined with those of Mr Anderson, whose abilities and assiduity rendered him a very useful assistant on such occasions, will supply materials for the following chapter.

Situation

Situation of the Islands now discovered by us—The Name of Sandwich Islands given to the whole Group—Atooi particularly described—Its Soil—Climate—Vegetable Produce—Birds—Fish—Domestic Animals—The Person and Disposition of the Natives—Estimate of their Number—Their Dress and Ornaments—Houses—Food—Mode of Cookery—Diversions—Musical Instruments—Manufactures—Tools—Their Acquaintance with Iron accounted for—Their Canoes described—Agriculture—Account of one of their Chiefs, who visited Captain Clerke—Their Weapons—Affinity between their Manners and those of the Society and Friendly Islanders—Their Language—Advantageous Situation of the Sandwich Isles.

THE islands in the Pacific Ocean, which have been discovered in the course of our late voyages, have been generally found situate in groups; the single intermediate isles hitherto met with, being few in proportion to the rest; though, in all probability, there are many more of them yet unknown, which serve as gradations or steps between the several clusters. Of what number these new-discovered Archipelago is composed, must be left to the decision of future navigators. We observed five of them, whose names are Woahoo, Atooi, Oneeheow, Oreehoua, and Tahoorā. The last of these is a small elevated island, at the distance of four or five leagues from the S. E. point of Oneeheow. We were informed, that it abounds with birds, which are its sole inhabitants. We also gained some intelligence with regard

ga
ne
six
bo
tin
Isla
wh
30
199
V
Man
but
O
beer
war
ceed
prin
here,
salt p
some
extre
chief
rises i
as do
hill.
Of
it is a
the n
Ato
princi
to lay
able to
of it,
from
thoug
the w
our v
about
named

gard to the existence of a low uninhabited island in the neighbourhood, named Tammata-pappa. Besides these six, we were told that there were some other islands both to the eastward and westward. Captain Cook distinguished the whole group by the name of the Sandwich Islands, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich. Those which he saw are situated between the latitude of 21 d. 30 m. and 22 d. 15 m. N. and between the longitude of 199 d. 20 m. and 201 d. 30 m. E.

With respect to Woahoo, the most easterly of these islands, seen by us, we could get no other information, but that it is high land, and is inhabited.

Oneeheow, concerning which some particulars have been already mentioned, lies seven leagues to the westward of our anchoring place at Atooi, and does not exceed fifteen leagues in circumference. Yams are its principal vegetable production. We procured some salt here, called by the natives *patai*, which is produced in salt ponds. With it they cure both fish and pork; and some salt fish, which we purchased from them, were extremely good, and kept very well. This island is chiefly low land, except the part opposite Atooi, which rises immediately from the sea to a considerable height; as does also its S. E. point, which terminates in a round hill.

Of Oreehoua we know no other particulars than that it is an elevated island, of small extent, lying close to the north side of Oneeheow.

Atooi, which is the largest of those we saw, being the principal scene of our operations, we shall now proceed to lay before our readers such information as we were able to collect concerning it. From what we observed of it, it is, at least, ten leagues in length from E. to W. from whence its circumference may nearly be guessed, though it appeared to be much broader at the east than at the west point. The road, or anchoring place, which our vessels occupied, is on the S. W. side of the island, about two leagues from the W. end, before a village named Wymoa. As far as we sounded, we found the bank

bank free from rocks; except to the eastward of the village, where there projects a shoal, on which are some rocks and breakers. This road is somewhat exposed to the trade wind; notwithstanding which defect, it is far from being a bad station, and greatly superior to those which necessity continually obliges ships to use, in countries where the winds are not only more variable, but more boisterous; as at Madeira, Teneriffe, the Azores, &c. The landing too is not so difficult as at most of those places; and, unless in very bad weather, is always practicable. The water in the neighbourhood is excellent, and may be conveyed with ease to the boats. But no wood can be cut at any convenient distance, unless the islanders could be prevailed upon to part with the few *etooa* trees (for that is the name they give to the *cordia sebastina*) that grow about their villages, or a species called *dooe dooe*, which grows farther up the country.

The land does not in the least resemble, in its general appearance, any of the islands we have visited within the tropic of Capricorn; if we except its hills near the centre, which are high, but slope gradually towards the sea, or lower lands. Though it presents not to the view the delightful borders of Otaheite, or the luxuriant plains of Tongataboo, covered with trees, which at once afford a shelter from the scorching rays, of the sun, a beautiful prospect to the eye, and food for the natives; yet its possessing a greater portion of gently rising land, renders it, in some degree, superior to the above-mentioned favourite islands, as being more capable of improvement. The height of the land within, and the number of clouds which we saw, during the whole time of our continuance, hanging over it, and not unfrequently on the other parts, seem to indicate that there is a sufficient supply of water, and that there are some running streams which we had not an opportunity of seeing, particularly in the deep vallies, at the entrance of which the vallies are, in general, situated. The ground, from the wooded part to the sea, is covered with an excellent

ard of the
which are
ewhat ex-
ch defect,
y superior
ips to use,
ore varia-
eriffe, the
fficult as at
d weather,
neighbour-
ith ease to
convenient
iled upon
name they
their vil-
ows farther

its general
ted within
ls near the
owards the
to the view
riant plains
at once af-
un, a beau-
atives; yet
ifing land,
bove-men-
ble of im-
n, and the
the whole
and not un-
e that there
re are some
portunity of
entrance of
he ground,
with an ex-
cellent

Cook's Voyages.



An Island View in ATOOI.

Engraved by J. B. Smith.

tel
fon
ing
on
rall
I
of a
gro
It is
wha
whi
this
from
the
than
grou
less
ten,
W
ence
ing t
fon a
most
tance
those
with
ture,
any
part
try b
TH
dark
some
thin
depth
thing
off to
have
stone
Vol

tellent kind of grass, about two feet in height, which sometimes grows in tufts, and appeared capable of being converted into abundant crops of fine hay. But on this extensive space not even a shrub grows naturally.

In the narrow valley leading to the morai, the soil is of a dark brown colour, rather loose; but, on the high ground, it is of a reddish brown, more stiff and clayey. It is probably the same all over the cultivated parts; for what adhered to most of the potatoes that we purchased, which, doubtless, came from very different spots, was of this sort. Its quality, however, may be better estimated from its productions, than from its appearance. For the vale, or moist ground produces *taro*, much larger than any we had ever seen; and the more elevated ground furnishes sweet potatoes, that seldom weigh less than two or three pounds, and frequently weigh ten, and sometimes a dozen or fourteen pounds.

Were we to judge of the climate from our experience, it might be said to be very variable; for, according to the general opinion, it was, at this time, the season of the year when the weather is supposed to be the most settled, the sun being at his greatest annual distance. The heat was now very moderate; and few of those inconveniencies to which many countries lying within the tropics are subject, either from heat or moisture, seem to be experienced here. Nor did we find any dews of consequence; a circumstance which may partly be accounted for, by the lower part of the country being destitute of trees.

The rock that constitutes the sides of the valley, is a dark grey ponderous stone; but hone-combed, with some spots of a rusty colour, and some very minute shining particles interspersed. It is of an immense depth, and seems to be divided into *strata*, though nothing is interposed; for the large pieces always broke off to a determinate thickness, and did not appear to have adhered to those that were below them. Other stones are, in all probability, much more various than

in the southern islands. For, during the short time we remained here, besides the *lapis lydius*, we found a species of cream-coloured whetstone, sometimes variegated with whiter or blacker veins, like marble; and common writing slate, as well as some of a coarser sort; and the natives brought us some pieces of a coarse whitish pumice stone. We also procured a brown sort of *bamates*, which, from its being strongly attracted by the magnet, discovered the quantity of metal it contained. What we saw of this was cut artificially, as were also the slates and whetstones.

Besides the vegetables purchased by us as refreshments, among which were, at least, five or six varieties of plantains, the island produces bread fruit: this, however, seems to be scarce, as we only saw one tree of that species. There are also a few cocoa palms; some yams; the *kappe* of the Friendly Islands, or Virginian *arum*; the *etooa* tree, and odoriferous *gardenia*, or *cape jasmine*. We met with several trees of the *dooe dooe*, that bear the oily nuts, which are stuck upon a kind of skewer, and made use of as candles. Our people saw them used in the same manner at Oneeheow. We were not on shore at Atooi except in the day time, and then we observed the islanders wearing these nuts, hung on strings, round their necks. There is a species of *fida*, or Indian mallow; also the *morinda citrifolia*, which is here called *none*; a species of *convovulus*; the *ava*, or intoxicating pepper, besides great quantities of gourds. These last grow to a very large size, and are of a remarkable variety of shapes, which are, perhaps, the effect of art. Upon the dry sand, about the village, grew a plant, that had never been seen by us in this ocean, of the size of a common thistle, and prickly; but bearing a fine flower, greatly resembling a white poppy.

The scarlet birds, which were brought for sale, were never met with alive; but we saw one small one, about the size of a canary bird, of a deep crimson colour. We also saw a large owl, two brown hawks, or kites, and a wild duck. We heard from the natives the names of
some

some other birds; among which were the *otoo*, or blueish heron, and the *torata*, a sort of whimbrel. It is probable that the species of birds are numerous, if we may judge by the quantity of fine yellow, green, and small, velvet-like, blackish feathers used upon the cloaks, and other ornaments, worn by these people.

Fish, and other productions of the sea, were, to appearance, not various; as, besides the small mackerel, we only saw common mullets; a species of a chalky colour; a small brownish rock-fish, adorned with blue spots; a turtle, which was penned up in a pond; and three or four sorts of fish salted. The few shell fish seen by us were chiefly converted into ornament, though they were destitute of the recommendation either of beauty or novelty.

The only tame or domestic animals that we found here were hogs, dogs, and fowls, which were all of the same kind that we met with at the islands of the South Pacific. There were also small lizards; and some rats, resembling those of every island which we had hitherto visited.

The inhabitants of Atooi are of the middle size, and, in general, stoutly made. They are neither remarkable for a beautiful shape, nor for striking features. Their visage, particularly that of the women, is sometimes round, but others have it long; nor can it justly be said, that they are distinguished, as a nation, by any general cast of countenance. Their complexion is nearly of a nut brown; but some individuals are of a darker hue. We have already mentioned the women as being little more delicate than the men in their formation; and we may add, that, with few exceptions, they have little claim to those peculiarities that distinguish the sex in most other parts of the world. There is, indeed, a very remarkable equality in the size, colour, and figure, of the natives of both sexes: upon the whole, however, they are far from being ugly, and have, on all appearance, few natural deformities of any kind. Their skin is not very soft, nor shining; but their eyes

and teeth are, for the most part, pretty good. Their hair, in general, is straight; and though its natural colour is usually black, they stain it, as at the Friendly and other islands. We perceived but few instances of corpulence, and these more frequently among the women than the men; but it was principally among the latter, that personal defects were observed; though, if any of them can lay claim to a share of beauty, it appeared to be most conspicuous amongst the young men.

They are active, vigorous, and most expert swimmers; leaving their canoes upon the most frivolous occasion, diving under them, and swimming to others, though at a considerable distance. We have frequently seen women, with infants at their breast, when the surf was so high as to prevent their landing in the canoes, leap overboard, and swim to the shore, without endangering their little ones.

They appear to be of a frank, chearful disposition; and are equally free from the fickle levity which characterizes the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the sedate cast which is observable among many of those of Tongataboo. They seem to cultivate a sociable intercourse with each other; and, except the propensity to thieving, which is, as it were, innate in most of the people we have visited in these seas, they were extremely friendly to us. And it does no small credit to their sensibility, without flattering ourselves, that when they saw the different articles of our European manufacture, they could not refrain from expressing their astonishment, by a mixture of joy and concern, that seemed to apply the case as a lesson of humility to themselves; and, on every occasion, they appeared to have a proper consciousness of their own inferiority; a behaviour that equally exempts their national character from the ridiculous pride of the more polished Japanese, and of the ruder native of Greenland. It was pleasing to observe with what affection the women managed their infants, and with what alacrity the men contributed their assistance in such a tender office; thus distinguishing themselves from

from those savages, who consider a wife and child as things rather necessary, than desirable, or worthy of their regard and esteem.

From the numbers that we saw assembled at every village, as we coasted along, it may be conjectured, that the inhabitants of this island are pretty numerous. Including the straggling houses, there might perhaps be, in the whole island, sixty such villages as that near which our ships anchored; and if we allow five persons to each house, there would be in every village, five hundred; or thirty thousand upon the island. This number is by no means exaggerated, for there were sometimes three thousand people, at least, collected upon the beach; when it could not be supposed, that above a tenth part of the natives were present.

The ordinary dress of both sexes has been already described. The women have often much larger pieces of cloth wrapped about them, extending from just below the breasts to the hams, and sometimes lower; and several were observed with pieces thrown loosely over their shoulders, which covered the greatest part of the body; but the children, when very young, are entirely naked. They wear nothing upon the head; but the hair, both of men and women, is cut in various forms; and the general fashion, particularly among the latter, is to have it short behind, and long before. The men frequently had it cut on each side in such a manner, that the remaining part somewhat resembled the crest of their caps or helmets, before mentioned. Both sexes, however, seemed to be very careless about their hair, and had no combs, nor any thing of the kind, to dress it with. The men sometimes twist it into a number of separate parcels, like the tails of a wig, each about as thick as a finger; though most of these, which are so long as to reach far down the back, are artificially fixed upon the head, over their own hair.

Contrary to the general practice of most of the islands of the Pacific Ocean, the people of the Sandwich Isles have not their ears perforated, nor do they wear any orna-

ornaments in them. Both men and women, however, adorn themselves with necklaces composed of bunches of small black cord, like our hat-string, often above a hundred-fold; entirely resembling those we saw worn at Watecoo, except that, instead of the two little balls on the middle before, they fix a small piece of wood, stone, or shell, about two inches in length, with a broad hook, well polished. They have also necklaces of many strings of very small shells, or of the dried flowers of the Indian mallow; and they sometimes hang round their necks a small human figure of bone, about the length of three inches. The women likewise wear bracelets of a single shell, pieces of black wood, with bits of ivory interspersed, and neatly polished, fastened together by a string drawn closely through them; or others of hogs teeth, placed parallel to each other, with the concave part outward, and the points cut off; some of which, formed only of large boar's tusks, are very elegant. The men sometimes fix on their heads plumes of feathers of the tropic bird; or those of cocks, fastened round neat polished sticks, two feet in length; and, for the same purpose, they sew the skin of a white dog's tail over a stick, with its tuft at the end. They also, not unfrequently, wear on the head a kind of ornament, of the thickness of a finger, or more, covered with yellow and red feathers, curiously varied, and tied behind; and, on that part of the arm which is above the elbow, a sort of broad shell-work, grounded upon net-work.

The men sometimes puncture themselves upon their hands or arms, and near the groin; but frequently we saw no marks at all; though a few individuals had more of this species of ornament than we had usually seen at other places, and curiously executed in a great variety of lines and figures, on the arms and fore part of the body. Contrary to the custom of the Friendly and Society Islands, they do not slit, or cut off, any part of the prepuce; but have it universally drawn over the glans, and tied with a string.

There

, however,
 of bunches
 n above a
 saw worn
 little balls
 of wood,
 th a broad
 es of many
 wers of the
 ound their
 the length
 r bracelets
 its of ivory
 gether by a
 rs of hogs
 e concave
 of which,
 gant. The
 feathers of
 ound neat
 r the same
 tail over a
 not unfre-
 ent, of the
 yellow and
 ; and, on
 v, a sort of
 upon their
 uently we
 had more
 lly seen at
 at variety
 art of the
 ndly and
 y part of
 over the
 There

There is no appearance of defence, or fortification, near any of their villages, and the houses are scattered about, without the least order. Some of these habitations are large and commodious, from forty to fifty feet in length, and twenty or thirty in breadth; while others of them are contemptible hovels. Their figure resembles that of hay-stacks; or, perhaps, a better idea may be conceived of them, by supposing the roof of a barn placed on the ground, in such a manner, as to form a high, acute ridge, with two low sides. The gable at each end, corresponding to the sides, makes these dwelling-places close all round; and they are well thatched with long grass, which is laid on slender poles. The entrance is made either in the end or side, and is an oblong hole, extremely low; it is often shut up by a board of planks, fastened together, which serves as a door; but, as it has hinges, must be removed occasionally. No light enters the house except by this opening; and though such close habitations may be comfortable places of retreat in bad weather, they seem but ill-adapted to the warm climate of this country. They are kept remarkably clean, and the floors are strewn with dried grass, over which mats are spread to sit and sleep on. At one end stands a bench, about three feet high, on which the domestic utensils are placed. These consist of gourd shells, which the natives convert into vessels that serve as bottles to hold water, and as baskets to contain their food, and other things; and also of a few wooden bowls and trenchers of various sizes.

From what we saw growing, and from what was brought to market, we have no doubt, that sweet potatoes, taro, and plantains, constitute the principal part of their vegetable diet; and that yams and bread-fruit are rather to be considered as rarities. Of animal food, they appear to be in no want; as they have great numbers of hogs, which run, without restraint, about the houses; and, if they eat dogs, which is not altogether improbable, their stock of these seemed very considerable. The quantities of fishing-hooks found among them, indicated that

that they procure a tolerable supply of animal food from the sea. They have a custom of salting fish, and likewise pork, which they preserve in gourd shells. The salt, which they use for this purpose, is of a reddish colour, but not very coarse, and seems to be nearly the same with what our stragglers found at Christmas Island. Its colour, is, doubtless, derived from a mixture of mud, at the bottom of the part where it is formed; for some of it, which had adhered in lumps, was of a tolerable whiteness.

They bake their vegetable articles of food with heated stones; and, from the quantity which we saw dressed at one time, we imagined, that all the inhabitants of a village, or, at least, a considerable number of people, joined in the use of a common oven. We did not perceive them dress any animal food at this island; but Mr Gore's party, as has been already mentioned, observed that it was dressed at Oneeheow in the same kind of ovens, which makes it highly probable that this is also the practice in Atooi; particularly as we met with no utensil there, that could serve the purpose of boiling or stewing. The only artificial dish we saw, was a taro pudding; which, though very sour, was devoured with avidity by the natives. They eat off a sort of wooden trenchers; and, as far as we are enabled to judge from one instance, the women, if restrained from feeding at the same dish with the men, as is the custom at Otahiti, are, at least, allowed to eat in the same place near them.

The amusements of these people are various. We did not see the dances at which they use the feathered cloaks and caps; but, from the motions which they made with their hands, on other occasions, when they sung, we judged that they were somewhat similar to those we had met with at the southern islands, though not so skilfully performed. They had not, among them, either flutes or reeds; and the only two musical instruments, seen by us, were of an extremely rude kind. One of them does not produce a melody superior to that of a child's rattle. It consists of what may be denomi-

nate

Vol.

l food from
n, and like-
hells. The
f a reddish
e nearly the
tmas Island.
ure of mud,
l; for some
f a tolerable

with heated
aw dressed at
ants of a vil-
eople, joined
not perceive
nd; but Mr
ed, observed
same kind of
at this is also
met with no
of boiling or
w, was a taro
evoured with
ort of wooden
o judge from
om feeding at
m at Otaheite,
ce near them
various. We
the feathered
s which they
s, when they
hat similar to
lands, though
d not, among
y two musical
ely rude kind
uperior to the
ay be denomi-
nate

nated a conic cap inverted, but very little hollowed at the base, made of a sedge-like plant; the upper part of which, and likewise the edges, are embellished with beautiful red feathers; and to the point, or lower part, is fixed a gourd shell. Into this they put something to rattle, which is done by holding the instrument by the small part, and shaking it briskly before the face, at the same time striking the breast with the other hand. The other instrument was a hollow vessel of wood, not unlike a platter, combined with the use of two sticks, on which one of our gentlemen observed a man performing. He held one of the sticks, about two feet in length, with one hand, in the same manner as we hold a violin, and struck it with the other, which was smaller, and resembled a drum-stick, in a quicker or slower measure; beating with his foot at the same time upon the hollow vessel, that lay upon the ground inverted, and thus producing a tune, that was not disagreeable. This music was accompanied by the vocal performance of some women, whose song had a pleasing effect.

They have great numbers of small polished rods, of the length of between four and five feet, rather thicker than the rammer of a musquet, with a tuft of long white dog's hair fixed on the small end. These they probably make use of in their diversions. We saw a native take one of them in his hand, and, holding it up, give a smart stroke, till it was brought into an horizontal position, striking the ground with his foot, on the same side, and beating his breast with his other hand. They play at bowls with pieces of the whet-stone above-mentioned, shaped somewhat like a small cheese, but rounded at the edges and sides, which are very neatly polished. They have other bowls made of a reddish brown clay, glazed over with a composition of the same colour, or of a coarse dark grey slate. They also use, as quoits, small flat roundish pieces of the writing slate, scarcely a quarter of an inch thick.

In the different manufactures of these people, there appears to be an extraordinary degree of ingenuity and

neatness. Their cloth is made from the *morus papyrifera*, and, doubtless, in the same manner, as at Tongataboo and Otaheite; for we bought some of the grooved sticks with which they beat it. Its texture, however, though thicker, is inferior to that of the cloth of either of the places just mentioned; but in colouring or staining it, the inhabitants of Atooi display a superiority of taste, by the infinite variety of figures which they execute. Their colours, indeed, are not very bright, except the red; but the regularity of the figures and stripes is amazing; for, as far as we know, they have nothing like stamps or prints, to make the impressions. We had no opportunity of learning in what manner they produce their colours; but, besides the variegated sorts, they have some pieces of plain white cloth, and others of a single colour, particularly light blue, and dark brown. In general, the pieces brought to us were about the breadth of two feet, and four or five yards in length, being the form and quantity made use of by them for their common dress, or maro; and even some of these were composed of pieces sewed together. They have also a particular sort that is thin and greatly resembles oil cloth; and which is either oiled or soaked in some kind of varnish. They fabricate numbers of white mats, which are strong, with many red stripes, rhombuses, and other figures interwoven on one side. These, in all probability, occasionally make a part of their dress; for, when they offered them to sale, they put them on their backs. They manufacture others of a coarser sort, plain and strong, which they spread over their floors to sleep upon.

They stain their gourd shells neatly with undulated lines, triangles, and other figures of a black colour. They also seem to be acquainted with the art of varnishing; for some of these stained gourd shells are covered with a sort of lacker; and, on other occasions, they make use of a strong size, or glutinous substance, to fasten things together. Their wooden dishes and bowls, out of which they drink their ava, are of the etooa

tree,

us papyri-
at Tonga-
he groov-
however,
a of either
g or stain-
eriority of
they ex-
bright, ex-
gures and
they have
mpressions.
at manner
variegated
cloth, and
blue, and
to us were
ve yards in
e use of by
even some
ether. They
eatly resem-
or soaked in
numbers of
red stripes,
on one side.
ke a part of
o sale, they
ure others of
spread over
h undulated
lack colour.
t of varnish-
are covered
asions, they
ubstance, to
es and bowls,
of the etooa
tree,

tree, or cordia, extremely neat and well polished. They likewise make small square fans of mat or wicker-work, with handles of the same, or of wood, tapering from them, which are curiously wrought with small cords of hair, and cocoa nut fibres, intermixed. Their fishing hooks are ingeniously made; some of bone, many of pearl shell, and others of wood, pointed with bone. The bones are for the most part small, and consist of two pieces; and the various sorts have a barb, either on the inside, like ours, or on the outside; but others have both, the exterior one being farthest from the point. Of the latter sort, one was procured, nine inches in length, made of a single piece of bone; the elegant form and polish of which, could not be exceeded by any European artist. They polish their stones, by constant friction, with pumice stone in water; and such of their tools as we saw, resembled those of the southern islanders. Their hatchets, or rather adzes, were exactly of the same pattern, and were either formed of a blackish stone, or of a clay-coloured one. They have also small instruments composed of a single shark's tooth, some of which are fixed to the fore part of the jaw bone of a dog, and others to a thin wooden handle of a similar shape; and at the other end there is a bit of string fastened through a little hole. These serve occasionally as knives, and are, probably, used in carving.

The only iron tools seen among them, and which they possessed before our arrival, were a piece of iron hoop, about the length of two inches, fitted into a wooden handle; and another edge-tool, which we supposed to have been made of the point of a broad sword. Their having the actual possession of these, and their being well acquainted with the use of this metal, inclined some of our people to imagine that we were not the first European visitors of these islands. But the very great surprize which they testified on seeing our ships, and their perfect ignorance of the use of firearms, cannot be reconciled with such an opinion. There

are several means by which such people may obtain pieces of iron, or acquire the knowledge of the existence of that metal, without having had an immediate connection with those nations that use it. It can scarcely be doubted, that it was unknown to all the inhabitants of the Pacific Ocean, till Magellan led the way into it; for no navigator, immediately after his voyage, found any of this metal in their possession; though, in the course of our late voyages, it has been remarked, that the use of it was known at several islands, which no former European vessels had ever, to our knowledge, visited. At all the places where Mendana touched, during his two voyages, some of it must have been left; and this would, doubtless, extend the knowledge of it to all the various islands with which the people, whom he visited, had any immediate intercourse. It might even have been carried farther; and where specimens of this valuable article could not be met with, descriptions might in some degree, serve to make it known, when afterwards seen. The next voyage to the southward of the equator, in which any intercourse was had with the people who inhabit the islands, of this ocean, was that of Quiros, who landed at Sagittaria, the island of Handsome People, and at Tierra del Espiritu Santo; at all which places, as well as at those with which they had any communication, it must undoubtedly have been made known. To him succeeded, in this navigation, Le Maire, and Schouten, whose connections with the natives began much farther to the eastward, and terminated at Cocos and Horn islands. It is certain, that the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the Society Isles, had knowledge of iron, and purchased it with the greatest avidity, when Captain Wallis discovered Otaheite; and they could only have acquired this knowledge through the mediation of those neighbouring islands at which it had been originally left. They acknowledge, indeed, that this was really the case; and they have since informed us, that they held it in such estimation, before the arrival of Captain Wallis, that an Otaheitean chief

may obtain
of the exist-
immediate
can scarce-
inhabitants
way into it;
yage, found
ugh, in the
marked, that
which no for-
vledge, visit-
ched, during
en left; and
ge of it to all
e, whom he
t might even
specimens of
, descriptions
nown, when
southward of
had with the
ean, was that
the island of
piritu Santo;
h which they
dly have been
his navigation
tions with the
ward, and ter-
is certain, that
ry Isles, had
th the greater
Otaheite; and
ledge through
ands at which
ledge, indeed
have since in-
nation, before
aheitean chief
wh

who had gained possession of two nails, received no small emolument, by letting out the use of them to his neighbours, for the purpose of boring holes. The natives of the Society Islands, whom we found at Wateoo, had been driven to that place long after the knowledge and use of iron had been thus introduced among their countrymen; and though, perhaps, they had no specimen of it with them, they would naturally communicate at that island, by description, their knowledge of this useful metal. From the people of Wateoo, again, those of Hervey's Island might derive that inclination for it, of which we had sufficient proofs during our short intercourse with them.

The consideration of these facts will shew, how the knowledge of iron has been conveyed throughout the Pacific Ocean, to islands which have never had an immediate connection with Europeans; and it may easily be imagined, that, wherever the history of it only has been reported, or a very inconsiderable quantity of it has been left, the greater eagerness will be shewn by the inhabitants to procure plentiful supplies of it. The application of these particulars, to the object of our present consideration, is manifest. The natives of Atooi and Oneeheow, without ever having been visited by Europeans before us, might have received this metal from intermediate islands, situated between them and the Ladrones, which the Spaniards have frequented almost ever since the period of Magellan's voyage. Or, if the distant western position of the Ladrones, should detract from the probability of this solution, is there not the American continent to windward, where the Spaniards have been settled for upwards of two centuries and a half; during which long space of time shipwrecks must frequently have happened on its coasts? It cannot be deemed surprising, that part of such wrecks, containing iron, should, by the easterly trade-winds, be occasionally cast upon some of those islands which are dispersed about this immense ocean. The distance of Atooi from America, is no argument against this supposition; and even

even if it were, it would not destroy it. This ocean is annually traversed by Spanish vessels; and it is highly probable, that, besides the accident of losing a mast and its appendages, casks with iron-hoops, and many other things that contain iron, may fall, or be thrown over-board during so long a passage, and thus find their way to land. These are not mere conjectures; for one of Captain Cook's people actually saw some wood in a house at Wymoa, which he supposed to be fir: it was worm-eaten, and the natives informed him, that it had been driven ashore by the waves; and we had their own express testimony, that they had obtained, from some place to the eastward, the specimens of iron found among them.

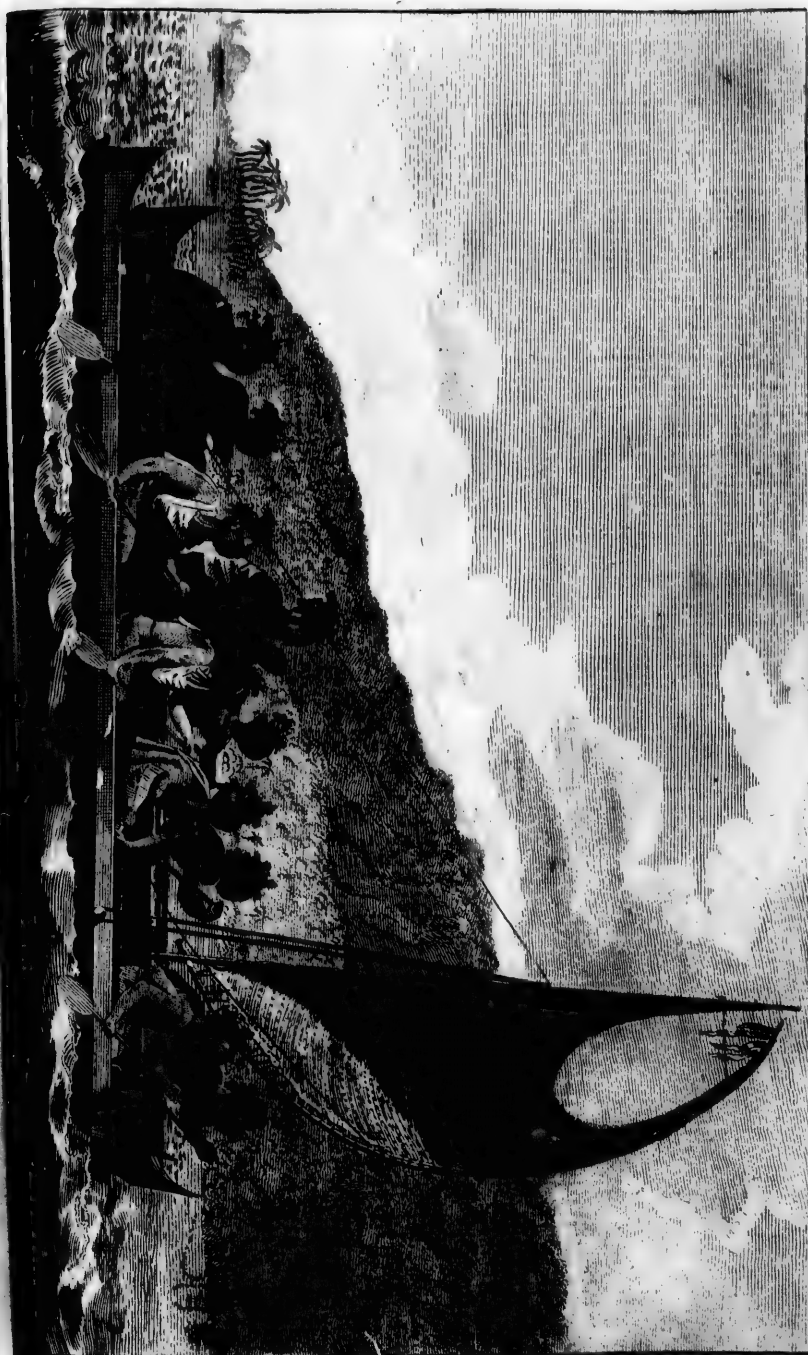
From this digression (if it can justly be called so) let us return to the observations made during our continuance at Atooi. The canoes of these people are commonly about four and twenty feet in length, and have the bottom, in general, formed of a single piece of wood, hollowed out to the thickness of an inch, or more, and brought to a point at each end. The sides are composed of three boards, each about an inch thick, nearly fitted and lashed to the bottom. The extremities, both at head and stern, are a little elevated, and both are made sharp, somewhat resembling a wedge, but they flatten more abruptly, so that the two side-boards join each other, side by side, for upwards of a foot. As they seldom exceed a foot and a half in breadth, those that go single (for they sometimes join them) have out-riggers, which are shaped and fitted with more judgment than any we had before seen. They are rowed by paddles, such as we had generally observed at other islands; and some of them have a light triangular sail, extended to a mast and boom. The ropes which they use for their boats, and the smaller cords for their fishing-tackle, are strong, and neatly made.

They are by no means novices in the art of agriculture. The vale ground is one continued plantation of taro, and some other articles, which have all the appearance of being carefully attended to. The potatoe fields, and

ocean is
highly
craft and
y other
n over-
eir way
r one of
od in a
: it was
at it had
ad their
d, from
n found

(so) let us
tinuance
commonly
bottom,
ollowed
ought to
of three
nd lashed
nd stern,
omewhat
uptly, so
side, for
foot and
y some-
aped and
ore seen,
generally
ve a light
he ropes
ords for
e.

agricul-
tation of
appear-
oe fields,
and



Cooks Voyages.

g
t
v
to
a
tu
e
fe
N
fr
m
as
pa
foi
be
pro
to
rain
for
7
the
us,
the
pro
the
nate
afra
can
isla
visi
off
Frie
char
with
it wa
they
nece

and spots of sugar-cane, or plantains, on the higher grounds, are planted with great regularity ; but neither these, nor the others, are enclosed with any fence, unless we consider the ditches in the low grounds as such ; which, it is more probable, are designed to convey water to the taro. The great quantity and excellence of these articles, may perhaps be as much owing to skilful culture, as natural fertility of soil, which seems better adapted to them than to bread fruit and cocoa nut trees ; the few we saw of these latter not being in a thriving state. Notwithstanding this skill in agriculture, the island, from its general appearance, seemed to be capable of more extensive improvement, and of maintaining thrice as many inhabitants as are now upon it ; for the greater part of it, that now lies waste, was apparently as good a soil as those parts that are cultivated. It must therefore be inferred, that these people do not increase in that proportion, which would render it necessary for them to take advantage of the extent of their island, towards raising a greater quantity of its vegetable productions for their maintenance.

Though Captain Cook did not see a chief of any note, there were, however, several, as the islanders informed us, who reside at Atooi, and to whom they prostrate themselves as a mark of homage and respect. This prostration seems equivalent to the *moe moea*, paid to the chiefs of the Friendly Islands, and is here denominated *hamoea*, or *moe*. Whether they were, at first, afraid to shew themselves, or happened to be absent, we cannot determine ; but after the Resolution had left the island, one of these great men made his appearance, and visited Captain Clerke on board the Discovery ; he came off in a double canoe ; and, like the sovereign of the Friendly Isles, paid no regard to the small canoes that chanced to be in his way, but ran against, or over them, without making the least attempt to avoid them. And it was impossible for these poor people to avoid him, for they could not then manage their canoes ; it being a necessary mark of their submission, that they should lie down

down till he had passed. His attendants assisted him in getting on board the ship, and placed him in the gangway, where they stood round him, holding each other by the hands: nor would they suffer any one to approach him but Captain Clerke himself. He was a young man, appavelled from head to foot, and was accompanied by a young woman, who was perhaps his wife. His name was said to be Tamahano. Captain Clerke having made him some presents, received from him, in return, a large bowl, supported by two figures of men, the carving of which displayed some degree of skill, both with respect to the design and the execution. This bowl used to be filled with the kava, or ava, (as it is termed at Otaheite) which liquor is prepared and drank here as at the other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke could not prevail upon this chief to go below, nor to move from the spot where his attendants had first placed him. After remaining some time in the ship, he was carried back into his canoe, and returned to the island. The following day, several messages were sent to Captain Clerke, inviting him to return the visit on shore, and giving him to understand, that the chief had prepared a considerable present for the occasion; but the Captain being anxious to get out to sea, and join the Resolution, did not think proper to accept of the invitation.

The short and imperfect intercourse we had with the natives, did not enable us to form any accurate judgment of the form of government established amongst them; but from the general similarity of customs, and particularly from what we observed of the honours paid to their chiefs, it seems reasonable to imagine, that it is of the same nature with that which prevails in all the islands we had hitherto visited; and, in all probability, their wars among themselves are equally frequent. This, indeed, might be inferred, from the number of weapons which we found in their possession, and from the excellent order in which they kept them. But we had proofs of the fact from their own confession; and, as

we

we were informed, these wars are carried on between the different districts of their own island, as well as between it and the neighbouring inhabitants of the isles of Oneecheow and Oreehoua. We scarcely need assign any other cause besides this, to account for the appearance, before-mentioned, of their population not being proportioned to the extent of their ground that is capable of cultivation.

Besides their spears, formed of a fine brownish wood, beautifully polished, some of which are barbed at one end, and flattened to a point at the other, they have a kind of weapon which we had never met with before. It somewhat resembles a dagger, and is, in general, about eighteen inches in length; sharpened at one or both ends, and secured to the hand by a string. Its use is to stab in close combat, and it seems well adapted to that purpose. Some of these may be denominated double daggers, having a handle in the middle, with which they are the better enabled to strike different ways. They have likewise bows and arrows; but, both from their slender construction, and their apparent scarcity, it is probable that they never make use of them in battle. The knife or saw, already mentioned, with which they dissect the dead bodies of their enemies, may also be ranked among their weapons, as they both strike and cut with it when engaged in close fight. It is a small flat wooden instrument, about a foot in length, of an oblong shape, rounded at the corners; its edges are surrounded with sharks' teeth strongly fixed to it, and pointing outwards; and it has generally a hole in the handle, through which passes a long string, which they wrap several times round the wrist. We also conjectured, that they use slings on some occasions; for we procured some pieces of the hæmatites or blood stone, artificially made of an oval form, longitudinally divided, with a narrow groove in the middle of the convex part. To this, the person who had one of them applied a thin cord, but would not dispose of it, though he was not unwilling to part with the stone, which, as it weigh-

ed a pound, must prove fatal when thrown with some degree of force. We likewise saw some pieces of whetstone neatly polished, of an oval figure, but somewhat pointed towards each end; nearly resembling in shape some stones seen by Captain Cook at New Caledonia in 1774, and made use of there in slings. As some of their religious institutions, and their method of disposing of their dead, strongly indicate an affinity between the manners of these people and of the natives of the Friendly and Society Islands, we will mention a few particulars that will serve to place this in a striking point of view. The inhabitants of Tongataboo bury their dead with great decency, and they also inter their human sacrifices; but they do not, to our knowledge, offer any other animal, or even vegetable, to their deities. The Otaheiteans do not inter their dead, but expose them to waste by time and putrefaction, though they afterwards bury the bones; and, this being the case, it is remarkable, that they should inter the entire bodies of their human sacrifices. They also offer up, to their gods, other animals and vegetables; but are far from being attentive to the condition of the places, where they celebrate those solemn rites; most of their morais being in a ruinous state, and shewing manifest tokens of neglect. The people of Atooi, again, bury both their common dead, and their human sacrifices, as at Tongataboo; but they resemble those of Otaheite, in offering vegetables and animals to their gods, and in the neglected state of their religious places.

The taboo also prevails in Atooi, in its full extent, and apparently with greater strictness than even at Tongataboo. For the natives here always asked, with great eagerness, and with indications of a fear of offending, whether any particular thing, which they desired to see, or we were unwilling to shew, was taboo, or (as they pronounced the word) *tafoo*? The *maia raa*, or prohibited articles at the Society Islands, though undoubtedly the same thing, did not appear to be so rigorously observed by them, except with regard to the dead;

with some
of whet-
somewhat
g in shape
ledonia in
As some of
od of dif-
ffinity be-
e natives of
tion a few
iking point
bury their
er their hu-
wledge, of
their deities.
but expose
ough they
the case, it
re bodies of
up, to their
re far from
aces, where
their morais
est tokens of
y both their
as at Ton-
ite, in offer-
and in the

full extent,
than even at
asked, with
ar of offend-
they desired
taboo, or (as
maia-raa, or
though un-
o be so rigor-
egard to the
dead;

dead; respecting whom we thought them more superstitious than any of the others were. These, however, are circumstances concerning which we cannot pretend to speak decisively; and we shall only observe, to shew the similitude in other points connected with religion, that the *tabounas*, or priests, seem to be as numerous here as at the other islands.

But whatever resemblance we might discover between the general manners of the inhabitants of Atooi, and those of Otaheite, these were less striking than the similarity of language. Indeed, the languages of both places may be said to be almost entirely the same. The people of Atooi, in general, have neither the strong guttural pronunciation of the New Zealanders, nor that smaller degree of it, which also distinguishes the Friendly Islanders; and they have not only adopted the soft mode of the Otaheiteans, in avoiding harsh sounds, but the whole idiom of their language; making use of the same affixes and suffixes to their words, and the same measure and cadence in their songs; at first hearing, indeed, a stranger may perceive some disagreement; but it should be considered, that the natives of Otaheite, from their frequent connections with the English, had learned, in some measure, to adapt themselves to our imperfect knowledge of their language, by using the most common and even corrupted expressions in conversation with us; whereas, when they talked with each other, and used the several parts necessary to propriety of speech, they were hardly at all understood by those among us, who had made the greatest progress in the knowledge of their vocabulary. A list of words was collected at Atooi, by the indefatigable Mr Anderson, who embraced every opportunity of rendering our voyage useful to those who amuse themselves in tracing the emigrations of the various tribes that have peopled the globe, by the most convincing of all arguments, that drawn from the coincidence of language.

How widely has this nation diffused itself, in so many detached islands, so far distant from each other, in every

quarter of the Pacific Ocean! We find it, from New Zealand, in the south, as far as the Sandwich Islands to the northward; and, in another direction, from Easter Island, to the New Hebrides: that is, over an extent of sixty degrees of latitude, or three thousand six hundred miles N. and S. and eighty-three degrees of longitude, or four thousand nine hundred and eighty miles, E. and W. How much farther, in either of those directions, its colonies reach, is not known; but, from what we are already acquainted with, we are authorized in pronouncing it to be the most extensive nation upon earth, though, perhaps, not the most numerous.

If the Sandwich Islands had been discovered at an early period, by the Spaniards, they would doubtless have availed themselves of so excellent a situation, and have made use of Atooi, or some other of the islands, as a place of refreshment for the ships, that sail annually between Manilla and Acapulco. They lie almost midway between the last mentioned place and Guam, one of the Ladrones, which is at present their only port in traversing this vast ocean; and it would not have been a week's sail out of their ordinary route, to have touched at them. An acquaintance with the Sandwich Isles would also have been equally favourable to our Buccaneers; who have sometimes passed from the coast of America to the Ladrones, with a stock of provisions and water scarcely adequate to the support of life. Here they might always have met with a plentiful supply, and have been within a month's sail of the very part of California, which the Manilla ship is obliged to make. How happy would Lord Anson have been, and what difficulties would he have avoided, had he known that there was a cluster of islands, half way between America and Tinian, where all his wants might have been effectually relieved!

Observations

Observations on the Longitude, Tides, &c.—Proceed on the Voyage—Weather remarkably mild as far as the Latitude 44 d. N.—Scarcity of Oceanic Birds in the Northern Hemisphere—Beautiful Sea Animals described, supposed by Mr Anderson to be a new Species of Oniscus—See the Coast of North America—Description of the Country—Difficulties at Cape Foulweather—Stormy and tempestuous Weather—Strictures on Martin d'Aguilar's River—Fallacy of Juan de Fuca's pretended Strait—An Inlet discovered—The Ships anchor there, and are visited by Numbers of the Natives—Their Behaviour.

THE Discovery having joined us, we stood away to the northward, with a gentle gale from the E. The tides are so inconsiderable at the Sandwich Islands, that, with the great surf breaking against the shore, it was difficult, at all times, to know whether we had high or low water, or whether it ebbed or flowed. On the south side of Atooi, a current generally set to the westward, or north-westward. But, when we were at anchor off Oneeheow, we found a current setting nearly N.W. and S. E. six hours each way. This was doubtless a regular tide, and the flood appeared to come from the N.W.

But, to avoid digression, on Saturday the 7th of February, we were in the latitude of 29 d. N. and in the longitude of 200 d. E. the wind veering to S. E. We steered N. E. and E. till the 12th, when the wind had veered round to N. E. and E. N. E. We then tack-
ed and stood to the northward, being in the latitude of
30 d. N.

30 d. N. and in the longitude of 206 d. 15 m. E. In this advanced latitude, and even in the winter season, we had only begun to feel a sensation of cold in the mornings and evenings; a proof of the equal and durable influence of the heat of the sun, at all times, to 30 d. on each side of the line. After that, the disproportion is known to become very great. This must be principally attributed to the direction of the sun's rays, independent of the bare distance, which is not equal to the effect. On Thursday the 19th of February, the wind veered to S. E. and we were again enabled to steer to the E. inclining a little to the N. On the 25th, we reached the latitude of 42 d. 30 m. and the longitude of 219 d. when we began to meet with the rock-weed, mentioned in Lord Anson's voyage, by the name of sea-leek, which is generally seen by the Manilla ships. Sometimes a piece of wood appeared; but, if we had not known that we were near the continent of North America, we might have supposed, from the few signs of vicinity of land that we had seen, that we were not within some thousand leagues of any. Since we left Sandwich Islands, we had hardly beheld a bird, or any other oceanic animal.

On the 1st of March, we had a calm day, which was succeeded by a wind from the N. with which we stood to the E. intending to make land. We ought to have been near it, according to the charts. Such moderate and mild weather appeared to us very extraordinary, when we were so far north, and so near an extensive continent, at this time of the year. The season must have been remarkably mild; for Sir Francis Drake met with very severe cold, about this latitude, even in the month of June.* Viscaino, indeed, who was in the same part of the world, in the depth of winter, hardly takes notice of the cold, and mentions a ridge of snowy mountains on this coast, as something extraordinary.†

* See Sir Francis Drake's Voyage, in Campbell's Edition of Harris, vol. i. p. 18.

† Vanegas's Hist. of California, vol. ii. p. 229.

It is a singular circumstance, that we should meet with so few birds, compared to those we saw in the same latitudes, to the south of the line. This must either proceed from a scarcity of them, or from a deficiency of resting places. Hence it may be concluded, that, in the southern hemisphere, beyond 40 d. the species are much more numerous, and the islands more plentifully scattered, than any where near that latitude, between the coast of California and Japan.

On the morning of the 2d, during a calm, part of the sea appeared to be covered with a kind of slime, and some small sea animals were seen swimming about. Those which were most conspicuous, were of the gelatinous kind, almost globular; a smaller sort had a white or shining appearance, and were in great abundance. Some of the latter were put into a glass cup, with some salt water; and, when in a prone situation, they appeared like small scales or pieces of silver.

When they swam about, which they did with equal ease in various directions, they emitted the brightest colours of the most valuable gems, according to their position respecting the light. At one time they appeared pellucid, at another displaying the various tints of blue, from a sapphirine to a violet, mixed with a kind of ruby, and glowing with sufficient strength to illuminate the glass and water. When the vessel was held to the strongest light, the tints appeared most vivid; but almost vanished when the animals subsided to the bottom, and they had then a brownish appearance. By candle light, the colour was, principally, a beautiful pale green, with a kind of burnished gloss; and in the dark, it faintly exhibited a glowing fire.

They are a new species of *oniscus*, and were called, by Mr Anderson, *oniscus fulgens*; being supposed to be an animal that contributes to that lucid appearance, often observed at sea, in the night. Two large birds settled, this day, on the water, near the ship. One was the *procellaria maxima*; and the other, of little more than half the magnitude of the former, appeared to be of the albatross

albatross kind. It was larger than a sea-gull, but resembled it in other respects. About noon, on the 6th, we beheld two seals, and several whales; and early the next morning, the long expected coast of New Albion* was seen, at the distance of ten or twelve leagues, extending from N. E. to S. E. At noon, we were in the latitude of 44 d. 33 m. N. and in the longitude of 235 d. 20 m. E. and the land about eight leagues distant.

We had now seventy-three fathoms water, over a muddy bottom, and found ninety fathoms about a league farther off. The land, which was of a moderate height, appeared to be diversified with hills and vallies, and principally covered with wood. No very striking object, however, presented itself, except an high hill, with a flat summit, which bore E. from us at noon. The land formed a point at the northern extreme, which Captain Cook named Cape Foulweather, from the exceeding bad weather we afterwards met with.

After variable light airs and calms, at eight o'clock in the evening of the 7th, a breeze sprung up at S. W. We stood to the N. W. under an easy sail, intending to range along the coast at day-light. But, the next morning, at four, the wind having shifted to N. W. it blew in squalls, with rain. Till near ten o'clock, our course was N. E. but, not being able to make any progress on this tack, and seeing nothing that had the appearance of an harbour, we tacked, and stood off S. W. Cape Foulweather, at this time, bore N. E. by N. distant about eight leagues.

In the evening of the 8th, the wind veered to the N. W. with squalls, hail, and sleet; and, the weather being hazy and thick, we stood out to sea till about noon the next day, when we stood in again for the land, which we saw at two in the afternoon, bearing E. N. E. In the evening, the wind veered more to the W. and the weather grew worse, which obliged us to tack and stand off till about four the next morning, when we stood in again.

* So named by Sir Francis Drake.

all, but re-
on the 6th,
d early the
w Albion*
leagues, ex-
were in the
de of 235 d.
stant.

ter, over a
ms about a
a moderate
and vallies,
very striking
n high hill,
us at noon.
rn extreme,
eather, from
net with.

at o'clock in
up at S. W.
intending to
e next morn-
W. it blew
t, our courie
progreſs on
appearance
W. Cape
y N. diſtant

ed to the N.
eather being
but noon the
land, which
E. N. E. In
W. and the
ack and ſtand
we ſtood in
again.

again. In the afternoon, at four, we discovered the land, which, at fix, was about eight leagues diſtant. Here we tacked, and ſounded, but could not reach the ground with a line of one hundred and ſixty fathoms. We ſtood off till near midnight, and then ſtood in again: At half paſt ſix, the next morning, we were about three leagues from the land. Seeing nothing like a harbour, and the weather continuing unſettled, we tacked and ſtretched off S. W. having then fifty-five fathoms water.

The land which we approached, when we tacked, is moderately high, but, in many places, it riſes ſtill higher within. It is diverſified with hills and riſing grounds, many of which are covered with tall ſtraight trees; and others, which were not ſo high, grew in ſpots, like clumps or coppices; but the ſpaces between, and the ſides of the riſing grounds, were clear.

Though, perhaps, as a ſummer proſpect, this might be very agreeable, yet, at this ſeaſon, it had an uncomfortable appearance, the bare grounds along the coaſt being covered with ſnow, which ſeemed to lie in abundance between the hills and riſing grounds; and in many places, towards the ſea, had, at a diſtance, the appearance of white cliffs. On the riſing grounds, the ſnow was thinner ſpread; and farther inland, there ſeemed to be none at all. Hence it might, perhaps, be concluded, that the ſnow which we had ſeen towards the ſea, had fallen the preceding night; which was, indeed, the coldeſt we had experienced ſince our arrival on that coaſt; and a kind of ſleet ſometimes fell.

The coaſt appeared almoſt ſtraight in every part, not having any opening or inlet, and terminated in a kind of white ſandy beach; though it was imagined by ſome on board, that ſuch appearance was owing to the ſnow. Each extreme of the land ſhot out into a point; the northern one was that which we had ſeen on the 7th, and therefore Captain Cook called it Cape Perpetua. Its latitude is 44 d. 6 m. N. and its longitude 235 d. 52 m. E. The ſouthern extreme the Commodore named Cape Gregory. It lies in the latitude of 43 d. 30 m. and in

the longitude of 235 d. 57 m. E. This point is rendered remarkable, by the land of it rising immediately from the sea, to a tolerable height, and that on each side of it is very low. We stood off till almost one in the afternoon, and then tacked and stood in, hoping, in the night, to have the wind off from the land. We were, however, mistaken, for, at five o'clock, it veered to the W. and S. W. which induced us once more to stand out to sea.

Cape Perpetua now bore N. E. by N. and the farthest land to the S. of Cape Gregory, bore S. by E. distant about ten or twelve leagues. Its latitude will therefore be 43 d. 10 m. and its longitude 235 d. 55 m. E. This is nearly the situation of Cape Blanco, discovered the 19th of January, 1603, by Martin d' Aguilar. It is remarkable that, in this very latitude, geographers have placed a large entrance or strait, ascribing the discovery of it to the same navigator; whereas nothing more is mentioned in his voyage, than his having discovered a large river in this situation, which he would have entered, but was hindered by the currents.

The wind was now very unsettled, and blew in squalls, with snow showers. At midnight, it shifted to W. N. W. and presently increased to a very hard gale, with heavy squalls, and sleet, or snow. We had not a choice now, but were obliged to stretch to the southward, to get clear of the coast. This was done under more sail than the ships could bear with safety, but it was absolutely necessary to avoid the more imminent danger of being forced on shore. This gale abated at eight o'clock in the morning of the 13th, and then we stood in again for the land. The wind remained at W. and N. W. Storms, breezes, and calms, alternately succeeded each other, till the morning of the 21st, when a breeze sprung up at S. W. This being accompanied with fair weather, we steered north-easterly, hoping to fall in with the land, beyond where we had been tossed about for the preceding fortnight. In the evening, the wind shifted to the westward, and the next morning, about eight o'clock,

at is render-
diately from
ch side of it
in the after-
in the night,
were, how-
d to the W.
to stand out

l the farthest
by E. distant
will therefore
m. E. This
discovered the
guilar. It is
raphers have
the discovery
ning more is
discovered a
d have enter-

ew in squalls,
ted to W. N.
rd gale, with
d not a choice
outhward, to
der more sail
was absolute-
nt danger of
eight o'clock
stood in again
. and N. W.
succeeded each
breeze sprung
a fair weather,
in with the
about for the
wind shifted
, about eight
o'clock,

o'clock, we beheld the land at the distance of about nine leagues. Our latitude was now 47 d. 5 m. N. and our longitude 235 d. 10 m. E. We stood to the N. with a fine breeze, till near seven in the evening, when we tacked, in order to wait for day-light. We were now in forty-eight fathoms water, and four leagues from the land, extending from N. to S. E. and a small round hill, which we supposed to be an island, bore N. 4 E. at the distance of about six or seven leagues. It seemed to be of a tolerable height, and could but just be seen from the deck.

There appeared to be a small opening between this supposed island, and the northern extreme of the land; we therefore entertained some hopes of finding an harbour; but these hopes gradually vanished as we grew nearer; and, at length, we were almost convinced, that the opening was closed by low land. The Commodore, for this reason, named the point of land to the N. of it, Cape Flattery. Its latitude is 48 d. 15 m. N. and its longitude 135 d. 3 m. E.

All the land upon this part of the coast is of a pretty equal height, is principally covered with wood, and has a very fertile appearance. In this very latitude, geographers have placed the pretended strait of Juan de Fuca. But nothing of that kind presented itself to our view, nor is it probable that any such thing ever existed. We stood to the southward till midnight, and then tacked, and, with a gentle breeze at S. W. steered to the N. W. intending, at day-light, to stand in for the land. But, before that time, we had a very hard gale, with rain, right on shore; instead, therefore, of running in for the land, we endeavoured to get an offing, or, at least, to preserve that which we had already got. The S. W. wind, however, did not continue long, for it veered again to the W. before night.

Thus were we perpetually encountering with strong W. and N. W. winds. In an evening, the wind would sometimes become moderate, and veer southward; but

this was a certain prelude to a storm, which blew the hardest at S. S. E. and was generally accompanied with rain and sleet. In the course of six hours, it was usually succeeded by a gale from the N. W. which introduced fair weather. About nine o'clock in the morning, of Sunday the 29th, we again saw the land, the nearest part about six leagues distant. We were now in the latitude or 49 d. 29 m. N. and in the longitude of 232 d. 29 m. E.

The face of the country was very different from that of the parts which we had before seen; numbers of lofty mountains presented themselves to our view, whose summits were covered with snow. The vallies between them, and the land towards the coast, were covered with high straight trees that appeared like a vast forest. A low point was formed, at the S. E. extreme of the land, off which are several breakers, occasioned by some sunken rocks. It was therefore called Point Breakers. Its latitude is 49 d. 15 m. N. and its longitude 233 d. 20 m. E. The latitude of the other extreme is about 50 d. and the longitude 232 d. This last was named Woody Point. It is high land, and projects to the S. W.

Between these two points, a large bay is formed, which the Commodore called Hope Bay; hoping, as he said, to find in it a good harbour; and the event proved that he was not mistaken. As we approached the coast, we saw the appearance of two inlets; one of which was in the N. W. and the other in the N. E. corner of the bay. We bore up for the latter, and passed some breakers about a league from the shore. Half a league without them, we had nineteen and twenty fathoms water; but, after we had passed them, the depth increased to fifty fathoms; and farther in, the ground was unfathomable with the greatest length of line.

Though appearances were in our favour, we were not yet certain that there were any inlets; but, being in a deep bay, Captain Cook resolved to anchor, in order to endeavour to get some water, which we began

to

blew the
nied with
as usually
ntroduced
rning, of
ne nearest
ow in the
gitude of

from that
ers of losty
w, whole
es between
vered with
forest. A
f the land,
some sunk-
akers. Its
33 l. 20 m.
t 50 d. and
ed Woody
S. W.

is formed,
ping, as he
event pro-
oached the
ts; one of
e N. E. cor-
and passed
re. Half a
nd twenty
them, the
her in, the
test length

, we were
but, being
anchor, in
n we began
to

to be much in need of. As we advanced, however, the existence of the inlet no longer remained doubtful. About five o'clock, when we reached the west point of it, we were becalmed for some time. In this situation, the Commodore ordered all the boats to be hoisted out, in order to tow the ships in. Presently a fresh breeze sprung up at N. W. with which we stretched up into an arm of the inlet, which ran in to the N. E. Here we were again becalmed, and found it necessary to anchor in eighty-five fathoms water, and so near the land as to be able to reach it with a hawser. The Discovery was becalmed before she got within the arm, where she anchored in seventy fathoms water.

As soon as we approached the inlet, we perceived the coast to be inhabited; and three canoes came off to the ship, at the place where we were first becalmed; in one of which were two men, in another six, and in the other ten. Advancing pretty near us, a person stood up in one of the two last, and spoke for a considerable time, inviting us, as we supposed by his gestures, to go ashore; and at the same time, continued strewing handfuls of feathers towards us. Some of his companions also threw a red powder in the same manner.

The person who was the orator upon this occasion, was clothed with the skin of some animal, and held something in each hand which rattled as he shook it. At length, grown weary with his repeated exhortations, of which we could not comprehend a word, he became quiet; and the others, in their turn, had something to say to us; but their speeches were neither so long, nor so vehement as that of the other. The hair of two or three of these people was strewed over with small white feathers; and that of others, with large ones, stuck into different parts.

The tumultuous noise having ceased, they lay at a small distance from the ship, conversing together with much ease and composure, without shewing the least distrust or surprize. Some of them rose, occasionally, and said something aloud, after the manner of their first harangues;

rangues ; and one, in particular, sung a most agreeable air, accompanied with a great degree of melody and softness ; the word *haela* being frequently repeated as the burden of the song.

A breeze springing up soon after, brought us closer to the shore, when the canoes began to visit us in great numbers ; having had, at one time, no less than thirty-two of them about the ship, containing from three to seven or eight persons each, and of both sexes. Several of these also stood up and spake aloud, using the same gestures as our first visitors. One canoe particularly attracted our observation, by a peculiar head, which had a bird's eye, and an enormous large beak, painted on it. The person who was in it, and who appeared to be a chief, was equally remarkable for his singular appearance ; having a large quantity of feathers hanging from his head, and being painted or smeared in a very extraordinary manner. In his hand he had a carved bird of wood, of the size of a pigeon, with which he often rattled, like the person before-mentioned, and was equally vociferous in his harangue, which was accompanied with many expressive gestures. Though our visitors were so peaceable, that they could not be suspected of any hostile intention, not any of them could be prevailed upon to come on board. They were very ready, however, to part with any thing they had, and received whatever we offered them in exchange ; but were more solicitous after iron, than any of our other articles of commerce ; appearing to be no strangers to the use of that valuable metal.

We were followed, by many of the canoes, to our anchoring place ; and a group, consisting of about ten or a dozen of them, continued alongside the *Resolution* the greatest part of the night. Hence we flattered ourselves, that we were so comfortably situated, as to be able to get all our wants supplied, and forget the delays and hardships we had experienced, in almost a constant succession of adverse winds and tempestuous weather, ever since our arrival upon this coast.

Arrival

most agreeable
melody—and
repeated as

t us closer to
us in great
than thirty-
from three to
xes. Seve-
d, using the
noe particu-
head, which
k, painted on
appeared to be a
appearance;
ng from his
ry extraordi-
bird of wood,
n rattled, like
lly vociferous
with many ex-
so peaceable,
hostile inten-
upon to come
ever, to part
atever we of-
plicitous after
mmerce; ap-
that valuable

anoes, to our
of about ten
e Resolution
flattered our-
l, as to be able
ne delays and
constant suc-
weather, ever

Arrival

*Arrival at the Sound—Moor in an excellent Harbour—
Visited by great Numbers of the Natives, who are an
inoffensive Race of People—Variety of Articles brought
to barter, particularly human Skulls—Mischievous Thefts
committed—The Observatories erected on a Rock—Also
a Forge erected—Alarmed at seeing the Natives arm them-
selves—Distant Tribes not permitted by the Natives to
traffic with us—Tempestuous Weather—A Survey of the
Sound—Friendly Behaviour of the Natives of one of the
Villages—Treatment received from an inhospitable Chief
—Greeted with a Song by young Women—A second Visit
to one of the Villages—Grass purchased—Departure of the
Ships.*

HAVING happily found such excellent shelter for
our ships, in an inlet whose coasts appeared to
be inhabited by an inoffensive race of people, we lost no
time, after coming to anchor, in searching for a com-
modious harbour, where we might be stationed during
our continuance in the Sound. Upon this service,
Captain Cook sent three armed boats, under the com-
mand of Mr King; and went himself in a small boat,
on the same business. He had no difficulty in finding
what he wanted; for, on the N. W. of the arm, and at
a small distance from the ships, he found a convenient
snug cove, perfectly adapted to our purpose. Mr King
was also successful, and found a still better harbour, lying
on the N. W. side of the land. It would, however,
have required more time to take the ships thither, than
to

to the cove where the Captain had been; therefore his choice was determined in favour of the latter situation. But, apprehending that we could not transport our ships to it, and moor them properly, before night had overtaken us, he thought it prudent to continue where we were till the next morning.

Plenty of canoes, filled with the inhabitants, were about the ships the whole day; and a reciprocal trade was commenced between us, which was conducted with the strictest harmony, and integrity on both sides. Their articles of commerce were the skins of various animals; such as bears, sea otters, wolves, foxes, deer, raccoons, martins, and pole-cats. They also produced garments made of skins; and another kind of clothing, fabricated from the bark of a tree, or a plant resembling hemp. Besides these articles, they had bows, arrows, and spears; fish hooks, and various kinds of instruments; wooden vizors, representing horrid figures; a sort of woollen stuff; carved work; beads; and red ochre: also several little ornaments of thin brass and iron, resembling an horse-shoe, which they wear pendant at their noses. They had likewise several pieces of iron fixed to handles, somewhat resembling chissels. From their being in possession of these metals, it was natural for us to infer, that they must either have been visited before by persons of some civilized nation, or had connections with those on their own continent, who had some communication with them.

Among all the articles, however, which they exposed to sale, the most extraordinary were human skulls and hands, with some of the flesh remaining on them, which they acknowledged they had been feeding on; and some of them, indeed, bore evident marks of their having been upon the fire. From this circumstance, it was but too apparent, that the horrid practice of devouring their enemies, is practised here, as much as at New Zealand, and other South Sea islands. For the various articles they brought, they received in exchange, knives, chissels, nails, looking glasses, buttons, pieces

therefore his
better situation,
port our ships
ght had over-
ue where we

bitants, were
reciprocal trade
as conducted
on both sides,
s of various
foxes, deer,
also produced
of clothing,
t resembling
ows, arrows,
instruments;
s; a sort of
ochre: also
iron, resem-
lant at their
f iron fixed
From their
atural for us
sited before
connections
some com-

ey exposed
skulls and
hem, which
on; and
their hav-
stance, it
ice of de-
much as at
. For the
ed in ex-
s, buttons,
pieces

pieces of iron and tin, or any kind of metal. They had not much inclination for glass beads, and rejected every kind of cloth.

The next day was employed in hauling our ships into the cove, where they were moored. We found, on heaving up the anchor, notwithstanding the great depth of water, that rocks were at the bottom. These had greatly injured the cable, as well as the haulers that were carried out to warp the ship into the cove; consequently the whole bottom was strewn with rocks. The ship was now become very leaky in her upper works; the carpenters were therefore ordered to caulk her, and to repair any other defects they might discover.

In the course of this day (the 31st of March) the news of our arrival brought vast numbers of the natives about our ships. At one time we counted above a hundred canoes, each of which, on an average, had five people on board; few containing less than three; many having seven, eight, or nine; and one was manned with seventeen. Many of these were new visitors, which we discovered by their orations and ceremonies when they approached the ships.

If they, at first, had apprehended that we meant to be hostile, their fears were now removed; for they ventured on board the ships, and mixed with our people with the utmost freedom and familiarity. We discovered, however, by this intercourse, that they were as fond of pilfering as any we had met with during our voyage: and they were much more mischievous than any of the other thieves we had found; for, having sharp instruments, in their possession, they could, the instant that our backs were turned, cut a hook from a tackle, or a piece of iron from a rope.

Besides other articles, we lost several hooks in this manner, one of which weighed between twenty and thirty pounds. They stripped our boats of every morsel of iron that was worth taking away, though some of our men were always left in them as a guard. They

were, indeed, so dexterous in effecting their purposes that one fellow would contrive to amuse our people at one end of the boat, while another was forcing off the iron work at the other. If an article that had been stolen, was immediately missed, the thief was easily detected, as they were fond of impeaching each other. But the prize was always reluctantly given up by the guilty person ; and sometimes compulsive means were obliged to be exercised for that purpose.

Our ships being safely moored, we proceeded, the next day, to other necessary business. The observatories were taken ashore, and placed upon a rock on one side of the cove, not far from the Resolution. A party of men was ordered to cut wood, and clear a place for watering. Having plenty of pine trees here, others were employed in brewing spruce beer. The forge was also erected to make the necessary iron work for repairing the fore-mast, which had one of the bibs defective, and was otherwise incomplete.

We were daily visited by a considerable number of the natives ; and, among them, we frequently saw new faces. They had a singular mode of introducing themselves on their first appearance. They paddled, with their utmost strength and activity, round both the ships; a chief, all this time, standing up with a spear in his hand, and speaking, or rather bawling, most vociferously.

Sometimes the face of this orator was covered with a mask, representing either a human countenance, or that of some other animal ; and, instead of a spear, he had a kind of rattle in his hand. Having made this ceremonious circuit round the ship, they would come alongside, and then begin to traffic with us. Frequently, indeed, they would first entertain us with a song, in which their whole company joined, and produced a very agreeable harmony. During these visits, our principal care was to guard against their thievery.

We had, however, in the morning of the 4th of April, a very serious alarm. Our party, who were employed

their purposes
our people at
forcing off the
that had been
was easily de-
g each other.
n up by the
means were

ceeded, the
he observato-
a rock on one
on. A party
ar a place for
here, others
The forge was
ork for repair-
bibs defective,

le number of
ently saw new
roducing them-
paddled, with
both the ships;
a spear in his
most vocife-

covered with a
aintenance, or
of a spear, he
made this ce-
would come
us. Frequent-
with a song, in
d produced a
visits, our pri-
ery.

the 4th of April,
were employed
on

on shore in cutting wood and filling water, observed, that the natives, in all quarters, were arming themselves in the best manner they were able; and that those who had not proper weapons, were collecting sticks and stones. Hearing this, we thought it necessary to arm also; but, being resolved to act upon the defensive, the Commodore ordered all our workmen to repair to the rock on which our observatories had been placed, leaving the supposed enemy in possession of the ground where they had assembled, which was within about a hundred yards of the Resolution's stern.

Our danger, however, was only imaginary; for these hostile preparations were directed against a body of their own countrymen, who were advancing to attack them. Our friends of the Sound, perceiving our apprehensions, exerted their best endeavours to convince us that this was really the case. We saw they had people looking out, on both sides of the cove, and canoes were frequently dispatched between them and the main body. The adverse party, on board of about a dozen large canoes, at length drew up in line of battle, off the south point of the cove, a negotiation for the restoration of peace having been commenced. In conducting the treaty, several people in canoes passed between the two parties, and some debates ensued. At length the matter in dispute appeared to be adjusted; but the strangers were not permitted to approach the ships, nor have any intercourse or dealings with us.

We were probably the occasion of the quarrel; the strangers, perhaps, insisting on having a right of sharing in the advantages of a trade with us; and our first friends resolving to engross us entirely to themselves. We were convinced of this on many other occasions; nay, even among those who lived in the Sound, the weaker were often obliged to submit to the stronger party, and were plundered of every thing, without even attempting to make any resistance.

In the afternoon we resumed our work, and, the next day, rigged the fore-mast; the head of which not be-

ing large enough for the cap, the carpenter was ordered to fill up the vacant space. In examining the state of the mast-head for this purpose, both cheeks were discovered to be rotten; insomuch that there was not a possibility of repairing them. We were therefore obliged to get the mast out, and to supply it with new ones.

Thus, when almost ready for sea, all our work was to be done over again, and an additional repair was necessary to be undertaken, which would require much time to be completed. It was, however, fortunate, that these defects should be discovered, when we were so commodiously situated; as to be able to procure the materials that were requisite. For, in the cove where our ships lay, there were some small seasoned trees, perfectly adapted for our purpose; and two new cheeks were immediately made from one of these. In the morning of the 7th of April, having got the fore-mast out, we hauled it ashore, and the carpenters were set to work upon it. Some of our lower standing rigging being much decayed, the Commodore embraced the opportunity, while the fore-mast was repairing, of ordering a new set of main-rigging to be fitted, and the fore-rigging to be improved.

From our putting into the Sound, till the 7th of April, the weather had been remarkably fine; but, in the morning of the 8th, the wind blew fresh at S. E. accompanied with hazy weather and rain; it increased in the afternoon, and in the evening it blew extremely hard. It came in heavy squalls, right into the cove, from over the high land on the opposite shore; and, though the ships were well moored, they were in a dangerous situation.

Though these tempestuous blasts succeeded each other quickly, they were of short duration, and, in the intervals, we had a perfect calm. Another misfortune now befel us. On board the Resolution, the mizen was the only mast that now remained rigged, with its top-mast up. The former was too defective to support the

as ordered
the state of
were dis-
was not a
therefore
t with new

work was
air was ne-
quire much
fortunate, that
we were so
ure the ma-
where our
s, perfectly
s were im-
morning of
ft out, we
set to work
gig being
ne opportu-
ordering a
fore-rigging

th of April,
but, in the
E. accom-
eased in the
emely hard.
from over
though the
gerous situ-

eeded each
and, in the
t misfortune
e mizen was
with its top-
to support
the

the latter during these squalls, and gave way at the head under the rigging. The gale abated about eight o'clock; but the rain continued, almost without intermission, for several days; during which time, a tent was erected over the fore-mast, that the carpenters might be enabled to proceed in their labours with some degree of convenience.

The natives were not discouraged, by this bad weather, from making us daily visits; and in our situation, such visits were very acceptable to us. They frequently brought us a supply of fish, when we were unable to catch any with a hook and line, and we had not a convenient place to draw a net. The fish they brought us were small cod, and a small kind of bream, or sardine. On the 11th the main-rigging was fixed and got over head, notwithstanding the rainy weather; and, the next day, we took down the mizen-mast, the head of which was so rotten, that it dropped off in the flings.

We received a visit, in the evening, from a tribe of natives whom we had not seen before; and who, in general, made a better appearance than our old friends. The Commodore conducted them into the cabin, but there was not an object that demanded their attention; all our novelties were looked on with indifference, except by a very few, who shewed a certain degree of curiosity. The next day, a party of our men went into the woods, and cut down a tree, of which a mizen-mast was to be made. The day after it was conveyed to the place where the carpenters were at work upon the fore-mast. The wind, in the evening, veered to the S. E. and blew a very hard gale, attended with rain, till eight o'clock the next morning; at which time it abated, and veered again to the W.

The fore-mast being now finished, we hauled it along-side; but, on account of the bad weather, could not get it in till the afternoon. We were expeditious in rigging it, while the carpenters were employed on the mizen-mast on shore. On the 16th, when they had made considerable progress in it, they discovered that the

the tree on which they were at work, was wounded, owing, it was imagined, to some accident in cutting it down. It therefore became necessary to procure another tree out of the woods, on which occasion, all hands were employed above half a day.

During these operations, many of the natives were about the ships, gazing on with an expressive surprize, which, from their general inattention, we did not expect. A party of strangers, in seven or eight canoes, came into the cove on the 18th, and after looking at us for some time, retired. We apprehended that our old friends, who, at this time, were more numerous about us than our new visitors, would not suffer them to have any dealings with us. It was evident, indeed, that the neighbouring inhabitants engrossed us entirely to themselves; and that they carried on a traffic with more distant tribes, in those articles they had received from us: for they frequently disappeared for four or five days together, and returned with fresh cargoes of curiosities and skins.

Such of the natives as visited us daily, were the most beneficial to us; for, after disposing of their trifles, they employed themselves in fishing, and we always partook of what they caught. We also procured from them a considerable quantity of good animal oil, which they brought to us in bladders. Some, indeed, attempted to cheat us, by mixing water with the oil; and, once or twice, they so far imposed upon us, as to fill their bladders with water only. But, it was better for us to wink at these impositions, than suffer them to produce a quarrel; for our articles of traffic chiefly consisted of trifles, and we found it difficult to produce a constant supply even of these. Beads, and such like toys, of which we had some remaining, were not highly estimated. Metal was principally demanded by our visitors; and brass had now supplanted iron, being sought after, with such eagerness, that, before we left the Sound, hardly a bit of it was to be found in the ships, except what constituted a part of our necessary instruments.

Suits

s wounded,
n cutting it
ure another
hands were

natives were
ive surprize,
l not expect.
es, came into
us for some
old friends,
out us than
to have any
eed, that the
rely to them-
c with more
received from
ur or five days
of curiosities

were the most
eir trifles, they
ways partook
from them a
l, which they
, attempted to
and, once or
fill their blad-
for us to wink
to produce a
y consisted of
uce a constant
n like toys, of
t highly estima-
by our visitors;
ng fought after,
eft the Sound,
he ships, except
ry instruments.
Suits

Suits of cloaths were stripped of their buttons ; bureaux of their furniture ; kettles, canisters, and candlesticks, all went to rack ; so that our American friends procured from us a greater variety of things, than any other nation we had visited.

Having had a fortnight's bad weather, Sunday the 19th being a fair day, we embraced the opportunity of getting up the top-masts and yards, and of fixing up the rigging. Most of our heavy work being now finished, the Commodore set out the next morning to survey the Sound ; and, going first to the west point, he discovered a large village, and, before it, a very snug harbour, with from nine to four fathoms water.

The inhabitants of this village, who were numerous, many of whom the Commodore was no stranger to, received him with great courtesy, every one pressing him to enter his apartment ; for several families have habitations under the same roof. He politely accepted the invitations, and the hospitable friends whom he visited testified every mark of civility and respect.

Women were employed, in many of these habitations, in making dresses of the bark or plant already mentioned, and executed their business much like the inhabitants of New Zealand. Others were busy in opening sardines ; large shoals of which we have seen brought on shore, and measured out to several people, who carried them home, where they performed the operation of curing them, which is done by smoke-drying. They are hung upon small rods ; at first, about a foot over the fire ; they are then removed higher and higher, to make room for others. When dried, they are closely packed in bales, and the bales covered with mats. Thus they are preserved till they are wanted ; and they are not unpleasant food. They also cure cod and other large fish in the same manner ; but these are sometimes dried in the open air.

Leaving this village, the Commodore proceeded up the west side of the Sound. For near three miles he saw several small islands, so situated as to form some convenient

venient harbours, the depths being from thirty to seven fathoms. About two leagues within the Sound, on the same side, an arm runs in the direction of N. N. W. and another in the same direction about two miles further.

About a mile above the second arm, he found the ruins of a village. The framings of the houses remained standing, but the boards or roofs were taken away. Behind this deserted village is a small plain, covered with the largest pine-trees that the Commodore had ever seen. This was indeed singular, as most of the elevated ground on this side of the Sound appeared rather naked.

Passing from this place to the east side of the Sound, Captain Cook found, what we had before imagined, that it was an island under which the ships lay; and that many smaller ones lay scattered on the west side of it. Upon the main land, opposite the north end of our island, the Commodore observed a village, and landed there; but he was not so politely received by the inhabitants, as by those of the other village he had visited. This cold reception was occasioned by one surly chief, who would not suffer the Commodore to enter their houses, but followed him wherever he went; making signs that he was impatient for him to be gone. Captain Cook attempted, but in vain, to soothe him with presents; for though he did not refuse them, he continued the same kind of behaviour. But, notwithstanding this treatment from the inhospitable chief, some of the young women expeditiously apparelled themselves in their best, assembled in a body, and gave us a hearty welcome to the village, by joining in an agreeable song. Evening now drawing on, Captain Cook proceeded for the ships round the north end of the island.

When he returned on board, he was informed that, in his absence, some strangers, in two or three large canoes, had made a visit to the ships; from whom our people understood by signs, that they had come from the S. E. They brought with them several garments, skins, and other articles, which they bartered for some of ours.

But

But the most remarkable circumstance was, that two silver table-spoons were purchased of them by our people, which appeared to be of Spanish manufacture. They were worn round the neck of one of these visitors, by way of ornament.

On the 21st, the mizen-mast was got in and rigged, and the carpenters ordered to make a new fore-top-mast, to replace that which had been carried away. A number of strangers visited us about eight o'clock the next morning, in twelve or thirteen canoes. They came from the southward; and when they had turned the point of the cove, they drew up in a body, where they remained about half an hour, at the distance of two hundred yards from the ships. We imagined, at first, they were afraid to approach; but in this we were mistaken, for they were only making preparations for an introductory ceremony.

At length they advanced towards the ships, all standing up in their canoes, and began to sing. Some of their songs were slow and solemn, in which they were joined by the whole body; others were in quicker time, and their notes were regularly accompanied by the motions of their hands, their paddles beating in concert on the sides of the canoes; and they, at the same time, exhibited the most expressive gestures. They remained silent, for a few seconds, after the conclusion of each song, and then began again, frequently pronouncing the word *hoee* as a kind of chorus.

Having thus favoured us with a specimen of their music, with which we were highly entertained for half an hour, they came nearer the ships and bartered with us. We now perceived that some of our old friends from the Sound were among them, who managed for the strangers in the traffic between us and them.

These visitors being gone, the Captains Cook and Clerke went with two boats to the village at the west point, where Captain Cook had been two days before, and had observed that plenty of grass was to be had near it; and it was necessary to get a supply of this,

for the few remaining goats and sheep which were still on board. They experienced the same welcome reception that Captain Cook had met with before ; and, soon after they were ashore, the Commodore ordered some of his people to begin cutting ; not imagining that the natives would object to our furnishing ourselves with what could not be of any use to them, though essentially necessary for us. In this, however, he was mistaken, for as soon as our men began cutting the grass, some of the inhabitants would not permit them to proceed, saying, " makook," which signified that we must buy it first.

The Commodore, at this time, was in one of the houses ; but, hearing of this, he repaired immediately to the field, where he found about a dozen claimants of different parts of the grass that grew on the premises. The Commodore treated with them for it, and having complied with the terms of his purchase, thought we had now full liberty to cut wherever we pleased. Here he was again mistaken ; for he had so liberally paid the first pretended proprietors, that fresh demands were made from others ; so that it almost appeared that every single blade of grass had a separate owner ; and so many of them were to be satisfied, that his pockets presently became empty. When they were, however, convinced that he had nothing more to give, they ceased to be importunate, and we were permitted to cut where we pleased, and as much as we pleased.

It is worthy of observation, that we never met with any uncivilized nation, or tribe, who possessed such strict notions of their having an exclusive property in the produce of their country, as the inhabitants of this Sound. They even wanted our people to pay for the wood and water that were carried on board. Had Captain Cook been present when these demands were made, he would doubtless have complied with them ; but our workmen thought differently, and paid little or no attention to such claims. The natives thinking we were determined to pay nothing, at length ceased to apply.

But

ch were still
welcome re-
efore ; and,
ore ordered
imagining
ishing our-
em, though
ver, he was
ng the grass,
hem to pro-
nat we must

one of the
immediately
claimants of
e premises.
and having
thought we
ased. Here
illy paid the
hands were
d that every
er ; and so
pockets pre-
, however,
e, they ceas-
itted to cut
ed.

er met with
fessed such
property in
tants of this
pay for the
Had Cap-
were made,
n ; but our
le or no at-
g we were
d to apply.
But

CAPTAIN COOK'S THIRD VOYAGE.

421

But they frequently took occasion to remind us, that their esteem for us had induced them to make us a present of wood and water.

While we remained at this village, Mr Webber, who attended the two Captains thither, made a drawing of every thing that was thought curious, both within doors and without. This he was well enabled to do, as he had an excellent opportunity of inspecting, narrowly, the construction of their buildings, their furniture, and implements or utensils, as well as the most striking peculiarities of the modes of living of the inhabitants. Having, at length, completed all their operations at this village, the natives and the two Captains took a friendly leave of each other, and we returned to the ships in the afternoon. The 23d, 24th, and 25th of April were employed in preparing to put to sea ; the sails were bent ; the observatories and other articles removed from the shore ; and both ships put into a proper condition for sailing.

Thus prepared, we intended to have put to sea, on the morning of the 26th, but having both wind and tide against us, we were under a necessity of waiting till noon ; when a calm succeeded the S. W. wind, and the tide, at the same time, turning in our favour, we towed the ships out of the cove. We had variable airs and calms till about four in the afternoon, when a breeze sprung up, attended with thick hazy weather.

The mercury in the barometer sunk uncommonly low, and we had every appearance of an approaching storm from the southward. In this situation Captain Cook hesitated, for a short time, (as night was then approaching) whether he should sail immediately, or stay till the next morning. But his anxiety to proceed upon the voyage, and the fear of losing so good an opportunity of getting out of the Sound, operated more strongly upon his mind than the apprehension of danger, and he resolved to put to sea.

We were attended by the natives till we were almost out of the Sound ; some in their canoes, and others on

board the ships. One of the chiefs, who had particularly attached himself to the Commodore, was among the last who parted from us. The Commodore, a little time before he went, made him a small present; for which he received, in return, a beaver skin of a much superior value. This occasioned him to make some addition to his present, which pleased the chief so highly, that he presented to the Commodore the beaver skin cloak which he then wore, and of which he was particularly fond.

Struck with this instance of generosity, and wishing him not to be a sufferer by his gratitude, Captain Cook insisted upon his acceptance of a new broad sword, with a brass hilt, with which he appeared greatly delighted. We were earnestly importuned by the chief, and many of his countrymen, to pay them another visit; who, by way of inducement, promised to procure a large stock of skins. Further particulars relative to the country and its inhabitants, will furnish materials for the two subsequent chapters.

Directions

o had particu-
was among
odore, a little
present; for
n of a much
ake some ad-
ief so highly,
e beaver skin
he was parti-

and wishing
Captain Cook
sword, with
ly delighted.
ef, and many
ifit; who, by
a large stock
country and
e two subse-

*Directions for sailing into the Sound—The adjacent Coun-
try described—Remarks on the Weather and Climate—
Trees and other vegetable Productions—Racoons, Mar-
tins, Squirrels, and other Quadrupeds—Variety of Skins
brought for Sale—Whales, and other Sea Animals—The
Sea Otter described—Birds—Oceanic Birds—Fish—Shell
Fish—Snakes and Lizards—Insects—Stones—Description
of the Natives—Their Colour—Formation—Dress and
Ornaments—Particular Dresses, and horrible wooden
Masks—Leathern Mantle for War—Their Disposition—
Songs—Musical Instruments—Their Fondness for Metals,
which they take every Opportunity of stealing.*

KING George's Sound was the appellation given by the Commodore to this inlet, on our first arrival; but he was afterwards informed that the natives called it Nootka. The entrance is in the east corner of Hope Bay; its latitude is 49 d. 33 m. N. and its longitude 233 d. 12 m. E. The east coast of that bay is covered by a chain of sunken rocks; and, near the Sound, are some islands and rocks above water. We enter the Sound between two rocky points, lying E. S. E. and W. N. W. from each other, distant about four miles. The Sound widens within these points, and extends in to the northward at least four leagues.

A number of islands, of various sizes, appear in the middle of the Sound. The depth of water, not only in the middle of the Sound, but also close to some parts of its shore, is from forty-seven to ninety fathoms, or more. Within its circuit, the harbours and anchor-
ing

Directions

ing places are numerous. The cove, where our ships anchored, is on the east side of the Sound, and also on the east of the largest island. It is, indeed, covered from the sea, which is its principal recommendation, for it is exposed to the S. E. winds, which sometimes blow with great violence, and make great devastation, as was but too apparent in many places.

Upon the sea coast the land is tolerably high and level; but, within the Sound, it rises into steep hills, which have an uniform appearance, ending in roundish tops, with sharp ridges on their sides. Many of these hills are high, and others are of a moderate height; but all of them are covered to their tops with the thickest woods. Some bare spots are to be seen on the sides of some of the hills, but they are not numerous, though they sufficiently shew the general rocky disposition of these hills. They have, indeed, no soil upon them, except what has been produced from rotten mosses and trees, of the depth of about two feet. Their foundations are, indeed, nothing more than stupendous rocks; which are of a grey or whitish cast when exposed to the weather; but, when broken, are of a blueish grey colour. The rocky shores consist entirely of this; and the beaches of the little coves in the Sound are composed of fragments of it.

During our stay the weather nearly corresponded with that which we had experienced when we were off the coast. We had fine clear weather, if the wind was between N. and W. but if more to the southward, hazy, accompanied with rain. The climate appears to be infinitely milder than that on the east coast of America, under the same parallel of latitude. We perceived no frost in any of the low ground; but, on the contrary, vegetation proceeded very briskly, for we saw grass, at this time, upwards of a foot long.

The trees, of which the woods are principally composed, are the Canadian pine, white cypress, and two or three other sorts of pine. The two first are in the greatest abundance, and, at a distance, resemble each other; though

VOYAGE.

re our ships
and also on
eed, covered
endation, for
ometimes blow
ation, as was

ly high and
o steep hills,
g in roundish
lany of these
height; but
n the thickest
n the sides of
rous, though
disposition of
on them, ex-
n mosses and
ir foundations
ndous rocks;
exposed to the
h grey colour.
this; and the
e composed of

corresponded
n we were off
the wind was
thward, hazy,
ears to be in-
t of America,
perceived no
the contrary,
e saw grass, at

ncipally com-
es, and two or
in the greatest
each other;
though

though they are easily distinguished on a nearer view, the cypress being of a paler green than the other. In general, the trees grow here with great vigour, and are of a large size. At this early season of the year, we saw but little variety of other vegetable productions.

About the rocks, and borders of the wood, we saw some strawberry plants, and raspberry, currant, and gooseberry bushes, all in a flourishing state. There were also a few black alder trees; a species of sow thistle; some crow's foot with a fine crimson flower, and two sorts of anthericum. We also met with some wild rose bushes, just budding; some young leeks, a small sort of grass, and some watercresses, besides a great abundance of andromeda. Within the woods are two sorts of underwood shrubs, unknown to us, and some mosses and ferns.

The season of the year did not permit us to acquire much knowledge of the vegetables of this country; and it was impossible, from our situation, to learn much about its animals. The want of water induced us to enter the Sound at first; and the accidents that happened there, though they obliged us to stay longer than we intended, were unfavourable to our acquiring any knowledge of this kind. It was absolutely necessary that every person should be employed in forwarding the necessary business of the ships; which was the principal object, as the season was advancing, and the success of the voyage depended upon their diligence in performing their several tasks. Excursions of any kind were, therefore, never attempted.

Lying in a cove, on an island, all the animals that we saw alive, were two or three racoons, martins, and squirrels: some of our people, indeed, who landed on the continent, on the S. E. side of the Sound, saw the prints of a bear's feet, not far from the shore. The only account, therefore, that we can furnish of the quadrupeds, is taken from the skins which we purchased of the inhabitants; and these were sometimes so mutilated in the heads, tails, and paws, that we could not even
guess

guess to what animals they belonged; though others were either so perfect, or so well known, that they did not admit of a doubt about them. The most common among them were bears, deers, foxes, and wolves. Bear skins were very plentiful, generally of a shining black colour, but not very large. The deer skins were not so plentiful, and appeared to belong to what the historians of Carolina call the fallow deer; though Mr Pennant distinguishes it by the name of Virginian deer, and thinks it quite a different species from ours. Their foxes are numerous, and of several varieties; the skins of some being yellow, with a black tip at the tail; others, of a reddish yellow, intermixed with black; and others of an ash colour, also intermixed with black.

When the skins were so mutilated as to admit of a doubt, our people applied the name of fox or wolf indiscriminately. At length, we met with an entire wolf's skin, and it was grey. Here is the common martin, the pine martin, and another of a lighter brown colour. The ermine is also found in this country, but is small, and not very common; its hair is not remarkably fine, though the animal is entirely white, except about an inch at the tip of the tail. The racoons and squirrels are such as are common, but the latter is not so large as ours, and has a rusty colour extending the length of the back.

We were sufficiently clear respecting the animals already mentioned, but there were two others that we could not, with any certainty, distinguish. One of them, we concluded to be the elk or mouse deer; and the other was conjectured to be the wild cat or lynx. Hogs, dogs, and goats, have not yet made their appearance in this place. Nor have the natives any knowledge of our brown rats, to which they applied the name they give to squirrels, when they saw them on board the ships.

The sea animals near the coast, are whales, porpoises, and seals; the latter, from the skins we saw, seeming to be of the common sort. The porpoise is the *Phocena*. Though the sea otter is amphibious, we shall consider him

ough others
 at they did
 oft common
 and wolves.
 of a shining
 skins were
 to what the
 though Mr
 ginian deer,
 urs. Their
 ; the skins
 tail; others,
 and others

admit of a
 or wolf in-
 tire wolf's
 martin, the
 own colour.
 ut is small,
 rkably fine,
 t about an
 d squirrels
 so large as
 ngth of the

he animals
 ers that we
 ne of them,
 r; and the
 nx. Hogs,
 pearance in
 edge of our
 e they give
 he ships.
 ; porpoises,
 seeming to
 e Phocena.
 all consider
 him

Cook's Voyages.



SEA OTTER.

Griffith & Bewick, N. York.

his
the
sk
be
de
for
It
of
tip
Th
yel
ext
had
cee
two
tho
of t
The
men
It is
take
your
dern
scrib
they
colou
perio
few l
were
that w
is cert
of; co
Amer
be pro
of som
Bird
that ar
to their
to eat t
Vol. 1

him as belonging to this class, as living principally in the water. We doubted, for some time, whether the skins, which the natives sold us for otter skins, really belonged to that animal; but, a short time before our departure, a whole one, just killed, was purchased from some strangers, of which Mr Webber made a drawing. It was young, weighing only twenty-five pounds; was of a glossy black colour, but many of the hairs being tipped with white, gave it, at first sight, a greyish cast. The face, throat, and breast, were of a light brown, or yellowish white; and, in many of the skins, that colour extended the whole length of the belly. In each jaw it had six cutting teeth; two in the lower jaw being exceeding small, and placed without, at the base of the two in the middle. In these respects, it differs from those found by the Russians, and also in the outer toes of the hind feet not being skirted with a membrane. There also appeared a greater variety in colour, than is mentioned by those who describe the Russian sea otters. It is most probable, that these changes of colour naturally take place at the different gradations of life. The very young ones had brown coarse hair, with a little fur underneath; but those of the size of the animal just described, had a greater quantity of that substance. After they have attained their full growth, they lose the black colour, which is succeeded by a deep brown. At that period; they have a greater quantity of fine fur, and very few long hairs. Some, which we supposed to be older, were of a chestnut brown; and we saw some few skins that were of a perfect yellow. The fur of these creatures is certainly finer than that of any other animal we know of; consequently the discovery of this part of North America, where so valuable an article of commerce is to be procured, ought certainly to be considered as a matter of some consequence.

Birds are far from being numerous here, and those that are to be seen are remarkably shy, owing, perhaps, to their being continually harrassed by the natives, either to eat them, or become possessed of their feathers to be

worn as ornaments. There are crows and ravens, not differing, in the least, from those in England: also a jay or magpie: the common wren, which is the only singing bird we heard; the Canadian thrush; the brown eagle, with a white head and tail; a small species of hawk; a heron; and the large crested American kingfisher. There are also some that have not yet been mentioned by those who have treated on natural history. The two first are species of wood-peckers. One is somewhat smaller than a thrush, of a black colour on the back, having white spots on the wings; the head, neck, and breast, of a crimson colour, and the belly of a yellowish olive colour; whence it might, with propriety, be called the yellow bellied wood-pecker. The other is larger and more elegant; the back is of a dusky brown colour, richly waved with black; the belly has a reddish cast, with black spots; it has also a black spot on the breast, and the lower part of the wings and tail are of a scarlet colour; the upper part blackish. A crimson streak runs on each side, from the angle of the mouth, a little down the neck. The third and fourth are, one of the finch kind, not larger than a linnet, of a dusky colour, black head and neck, and white bill; and a sand piper, of a dusky brown colour, with a broad white band across the wings, of the size of a small pigeon. There are also humming birds, which differ, in some degree, from the numerous sorts already known of this delicate little animal.

The quebrantahueffos, shags, and gulls, were seen off the coast; and the two last were also frequent in the Sound. There are two sorts of wild ducks; one of which was black, with a white head; the other was white, and had a red bill, but of a larger size. Here are also the greater lumme, or diver, which are found in our northern countries. Some swans too, were once or twice seen flying to the northward, but we are unacquainted with their haunts. On the shores we found another sand piper, about the size of a lark, and not unlike

ravens, not
also a jay
only sing-
the brown
species of
rican king-
t yet been
ral history.
ne is some-
our on the
head, neck,
ly of a yel-
propriety,
The other is
dusky brown
as a reddish
spot on the
tail are of a
A crimson
mouth, a
are, one of
of a dusky
and a sand
broad white
small pigeon.
er, in some
own of this

were seen off
quent in the
ks; one of
other was
Here are
re found in
were once or
e are unac-
s we found
and not un-
like

like the burre: also a plover, very much resembling our common sea lark.

Though the variety of fish is not very great here, they are more plentiful in quantity than birds. The principal sorts are the common herring, which are very numerous, though not exceeding seven inches in length; a smaller sort, which, though larger than the anchovy, or sardine, is of the same kind; a silver coloured bream, and another of a gold brown colour, with narrow blue stripes. It is most probable that the herrings, and sardines, come in large shoals, at stated seasons, as is usual with those kinds of fish. The two sorts of breams may be reckoned next to these in quantity; and those which were full grown weighed about a pound. The other fish were scarce, and consisted of a brown kind of sculpin, such as are taken on the coast of Norway; another of a reddish cast; frost fish; a large one, without scales, resembling the bull-head; and a small brownish cod with whitish spots; also a red fish, of nearly the same size, which some of our people had seen in the straits of Magellan; and another somewhat like the hake. Considerable numbers of those fish called the *chimæra*, or little sea wolves, are met with here. Sharks also frequent the Sound, the teeth of which many natives had in their possession. The other marine animals are a small cruciated medusa, or blubber; star fish, small crabs, and a large cuttle fish.

About the rocks there is an abundance of large muscles; also sea ears; and we often found shells of pretty large plain *chamæ*. Also some trochi of two species; a curious murex; rugged wilks; and a snail. Besides these, there are some plain cockles and limpets. Many of the muscles are a span long; in some of which there are large pearls, but they are disagreeable both in colour and shape. It is probable that there is red coral either in the sound or on the coast; large branches of it having been seen in the canoes of the natives.

The only reptiles observed here, were brown snakes, about two feet in length, having whitish stripes on the

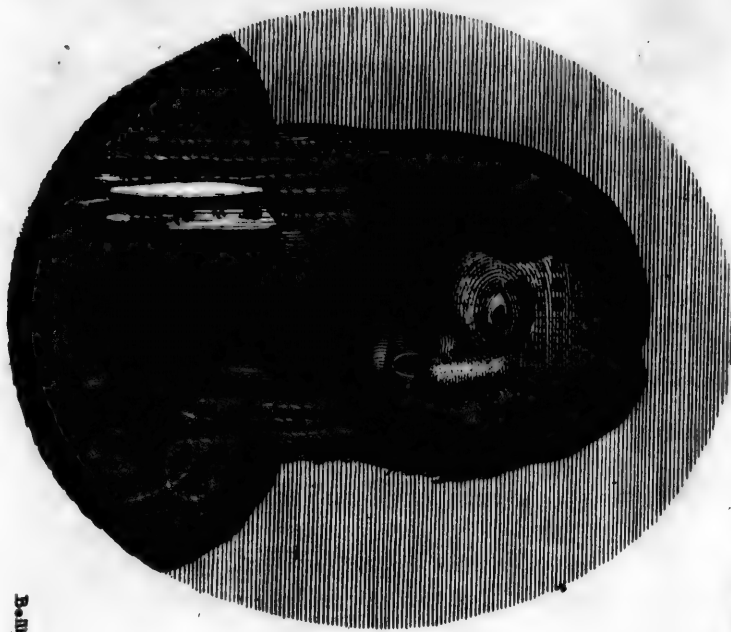
back and sides ; and brownish water lizards. The former are so perfectly harmless, that we have seen the natives carry them alive in their hands. The insect tribe seem to be more numerous. For though the season for their appearance was only beginning, we saw several different sorts of butterflies, all of which were common : we also found some humble bees ; gooseberry moths ; a few beetles ; two or three sorts of flies, and some musquitoes.

Though we found both iron and copper here, we did not imagine that either of them belonged to this place. We did not even see the ores of any metal, except a coarse red ochry substance, used by the natives in painting or staining themselves. This may, perhaps, contain a small quantity of iron ; as may also a black and white pigment made use of for the same purpose.

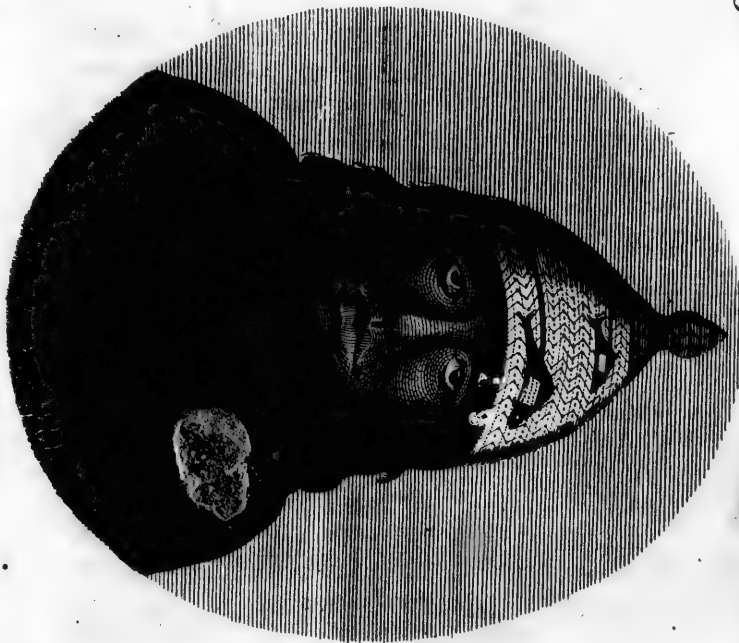
Exclusive of the rock, which constitutes the shores and mountains, we saw, among the natives, some articles made of a hard black granite, which was neither very compact, nor fine grained ; also a greyish whetstone ; the common oil stone ; and a black sort, little inferior to the hone stone. The natives were seen to use the transparent leafy glimmer, and a brown leafy or martial sort. They had also pieces of rock crystal. The two first articles were probably to be obtained near the spot, as they had considerable quantities of them ; but the latter, it may be supposed, came from a greater distance, or is extremely scarce ; for our visitors would not part with it without a very valuable consideration.

The stature of the natives is, in general, below the common standard ; but their persons are not proportionably slender, being usually pretty plump, though not muscular. Their soft fleshiness, however, seems never to swell into corpulence ; and many of the older people are rather lean. Most of the natives have round full visages, which are sometimes broad, with high prominent cheeks. Above these, the face frequently appears fallen in quite across between the temples : the nose flattens at its base, has wide nostrils, and a rounded point,

Lock's Tongues.



Ballydoonick.



A MAN and WOMAN of NOOTKA SOUND.

for-
e na-
tribe
n for
veral
non:
as; a
mus-

, we
this
, ex-
es in
naps,
black
fe.

nores
ticles
very
one;
or to
ransf-
fort.
first
ot, as
atter,
or is
with

y the
por-
ough
seems
older
ound
pro-
ap-
the
aded
oint,



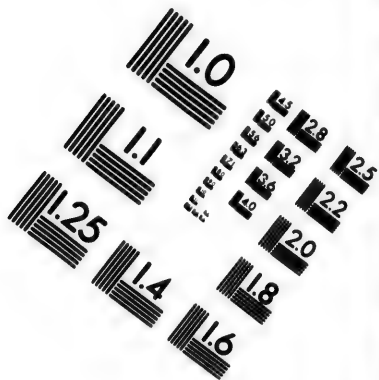
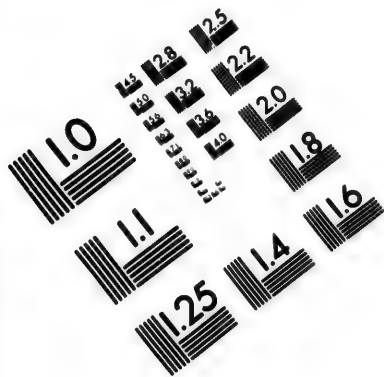
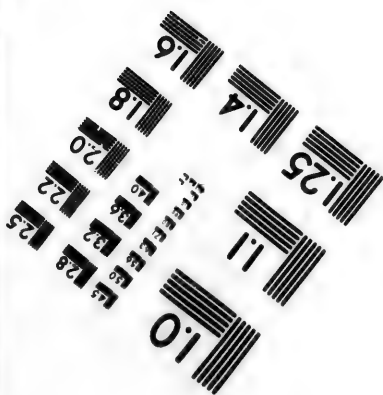
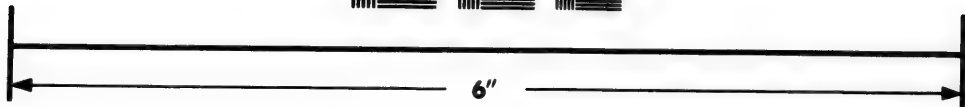
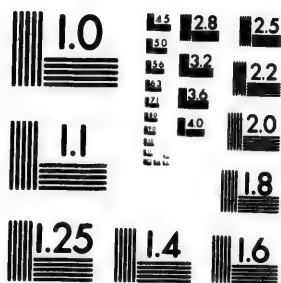


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18 20 22 25 28 32 36 40 45 50 55 60 65 70 75 80 85 90 95 100

10

po
lan
tee
wh
S
thin
arif
but
wh
on
chic
liqu
and
head
neck
noth
limb
othe
havi
shap
grea
ham
TI
bodie
where
little
thoug
bitan
youn
gener
tende
a cer
rema
dullne
in ev

point. The forehead is low, the eyes small, black, and languishing; the mouth round, the lips thick, and the teeth regular and well set, but not remarkable for their whiteness.

Some have no beards at all, and others only a small thin one upon the point of the chin. This does not arise from an original deficiency of hair on that part, but from their plucking it out by the roots; for those who do not destroy it, have not only considerable beards on every part of the chin, but also whiskers, or mustachios, running from the upper lip to the lower jaw obliquely downward.* Their eye brows are also scanty and narrow; but they have abundance of hair on the head, which is strong, black, straight, and lank. Their necks are short, and their arms are rather clumsy, having nothing of beauty or elegance in their formation. The limbs, in all of them, are small in proportion to the other parts; besides, they are crooked and ill formed, having projecting ancles, and large feet aukwardly shaped. The latter defect seems to be occasioned, in a great measure, by their sitting so continually on their hams or knees.

Their colour cannot be properly ascertained, their bodies being incrustated with paint and nastiness; though when these have been carefully rubbed off, the skin was little inferior, in whiteness, to that of the Europeans; though of that palish cast which distinguishes the inhabitants of our southern nations. Some of them, when young, appear rather agreeable, when compared to the generality of the people; that period of life being attended with a peculiar degree of animation; but, after a certain age, the distinction is hardly observable; a remarkable sameness characterizes every countenance, dullness and want of expression being visibly portrayed in every visage. The women, in general, are of the same

* It is a mistaken notion though, espoused by eminent writers, that American Indians have no beards. See *Carver's Travels*, p. 224, 225; and *Marsden's History of Sumatra*, p. 39, 40.

same size, colour, and form, with the men; nor is it easy to distinguish them, as they possess no natural feminine delicacies. Nor was there a single one to be found, even among those who were in their prime, who had the least pretensions to beauty or comeliness.

Their dress, in common, is a flaxen kind of mantle, ornamented with a narrow stripe of fur on the upper edge, and fringes at the lower edge. Passing under the left arm, it is tied over the right shoulder, leaving both arms perfectly free. Sometimes the mantle is fastened round the waist by a girdle of coarse matting. Over this is worn a small cloak of the same substance, reaching to the waist, also fringed at the bottom. They wear a cap like a truncated cone, or a flower pot, made of very fine matting, ornamented with a round knob, or a bunch of leathern tassels, having a string passing under the chin, to prevent its blowing off.

The above dress is common to both sexes, and the men often wear, over their other garments, the skin of some animal, as a bear, wolf, or sea otter, with the hair outwards; sometimes tying it before, and sometimes behind, like a cloak. They throw a coarse mat about their shoulders in rainy weather, and they have woollen garments which are but little used. They generally wear their hair hanging loosely down; but, those who have not a cap, tie it into a kind of bunch on the crown of the head.

Their dress is certainly convenient, and, were it kept clean, would not be inelegant; but, as they are continually rubbing their bodies over with a red paint, mixed with oil, their garments become greasy, and contract a rancid offensive smell. The appearance, indeed, of these people, is both wretched and filthy, and their heads and garments swarm with lice. So lost are they to every idea of cleanliness, that we frequently saw them pick off these vermin, and eat them with the greatest composure.

Their bodies, it has been observed, are always covered with red paint, but their faces are ornamented with

variety

variety of colours; a black, a brighter red, or a white colour: the last of these gives them a ghastly horrible appearance. They likewise strew the brown martial *mica* over the paint, which causes it to glitter. Many of their ears are perforated in the lobe, where they make a large hole, and two smaller ones higher up on the outer edge. In these holes are hung bits of bone, quills fastened upon a leathern thong, shells, bunches of tassels, or thin pieces of copper. In some, the *septum* of the nose is also perforated, and a piece of cord drawn through it. Others wear, at the same place, pieces of copper, brass, or iron, shaped somewhat like a horse-shoe, the narrow opening receiving the *septum*, so that it may be pinched gently by the two points, and thus the ornaments hang over the upper lip. The rings of our buttons were eagerly purchased, and appropriated to this use. Their bracelets, which they wear about their wrists, are bunches of white bugle beads, or thongs with tassels, or a broad black horny shining substance. Round their ancles they frequently wear leathern thongs, or the sinews of animals curiously twisted.

Such are their common dresses and ornaments, but they have some that are used only on extraordinary occasions, such as going to war, and exhibiting themselves to strangers in ceremonial visits. Amongst these are the skins of wolves, or bears, tied on like their other garments, but edged with broad borders of fur, ingeniously ornamented with various figures. These are occasionally worn separately, or over their common clothing. The most usual head dress, on these occasions, is a quantity of withe, wrapped about the head, with large feathers, particularly those of eagles, stuck in it; or it is entirely covered with small white feathers. At the same time, the face is variously painted, the upper and lower parts being of opposite colours, and the strokes having the appearance of fresh gashes; or it is besmeared with a kind of fat or tallow, mixed with paint, formed into a great variety of figures, somewhat like carved work.

The

The hair, sometimes, is separated into small parcels, and tied, at intervals, with thread; and others tie it together behind, after the English manner, and stick in it some branches of the *cupressus thyoides*. Thus equipped, they have a truly savage and ridiculous appearance, which is much heightened when they assume their monstrous decorations. These consist of a great variety of wooden masks, applied to the face, forehead, or upper part of the head. Some of these visors resemble human faces, having hair, beards, and eye-brows; others represent the heads of birds, and many the heads of animals; such as deer, wolves, porpoises, and others.

These representations generally exceed the natural size, and they are frequently strewed with pieces of the foliaceous *mica* which makes them glitter, and augments their deformity. Sometimes they even exceed this, and fix large pieces of carved work upon the head, projecting to a considerable distance, and resembling the prow of a canoe. So much do they delight in these disguises, that, for want of another mask, we saw one of them thrust his head into a tin kettle which he had bought from us.

Whether these extravagant masquerade ornaments are used on any religious occasion, or in any kind of diversion, or whether they are calculated to intimidate by their monstrous appearance, or as decoys when hunting animals, is uncertain. But, if travellers, in an ignorant and credulous age, when more than marvellous things were supposed to exist, had seen several people decorated in this manner, and had not approached so near them as to be undeceived, they would have believed, and have endeavoured to make others believe, that a race of beings existed, partaking of the nature of man and beast.

Among the people of Nootka, one of the dresses seems peculiarly adapted to war. It is a thick tanned leathern mantle doubled, and appears to be the skin of an elk, or buffalo. This is fastened on in the ordinary manner, and is so contrived as to cover the breast quite up to the

l parcels,
tie it to-
stick in it
quipped,
pearance,
neir mon-
variety of
or upper
le human
ers repre-
animals;

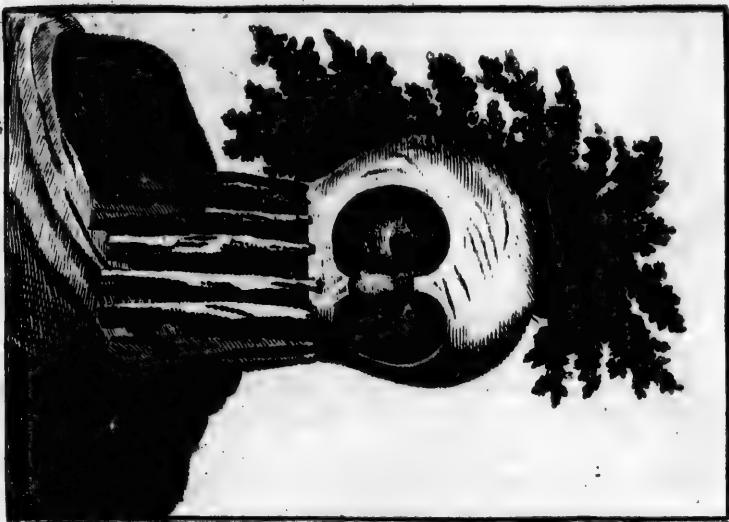
e natural
ces of the
augments
l this, and
, project-
the prow
disguises,
of them
ad bought

ornaments
y kind of
intimidate
hen hunt-
n ignorant
ous things
decorated
near them
eved, and
at a race
man and

esses seems
d leathern
an elk, or
manner,
ite up to
the

A MAN OF THE SANDWICH ISLANDS IN A MASK.

Thomson, Sculp.



looks
voyages.

A MAN OF THE SANDWICH ISLANDS DANCING.



the
their
ly
row
can
com
fort
of d
whic
Wh
ror i
unce
men
man
TH
of ho
wher
in th
feroci
obser
sition
them
serve
tution
priety
cation
have n
to exp
The
fions,
times
of voic
sentenc
little fo
hanging
From
there is
mies w
cumsta
Vol. I

the throat ; part of it, at the same time, falling down to their heels. This garment is, sometimes, very curiously painted, and is not only strong enough to resist arrows, but, as we understood from them, even spears cannot pierce it ; so that it may be considered as their completest defensive armour. Sometimes they wear a sort of leathern cloak, over which are rows of the hoofs of deer, placed horizontally, and covered with quills ; which, on their moving, make a loud rattling noise. Whether this part of their garb is intended to strike terror in war, or to be used on ceremonious occasions, is uncertain ; but we saw one of their musical entertainments, which was conducted by a man habited in this manner, having a mask on, and shaking his rattle.

Though we cannot view these people without a kind of horror, when they are thus strangely apparelled, yet, when divested of these extravagant dresses, and beheld in their common habit, they have no appearances of ferocity in their countenances ; but, as has been already observed, they seem to be of a quiet phlegmatic disposition ; deficient in animation and vivacity, to render themselves agreeable in society. They are rather reserved than loquacious ; but their gravity seems constitutional, and not to arise from a conviction of its propriety, or to be the result of any particular mode of education ; for, in their highest paroxysms of rage, they have not heat of language, or significancy of gestures, to express it sufficiently.

The orations which they make on all public occasions, are little more than short sentences, and sometimes only single words, forcibly repeated in one tone of voice, accompanied with a single gesture at every sentence ; at the same time jerking their whole body a little forward, with their knees bending, and their arms hanging down by their sides.

From their exhibiting human skulls and bones to sale, there is little reason to doubt of their treating their enemies with a degree of brutal cruelty ; but, as this circumstance rather marks a general agreement of character

ter among almost every uncivilized tribe, in every age and country; they are not to be reproached with any charge of peculiar inhumanity. Their disposition, in this respect, we had not any reason to judge unfavourably of. They appear to be docile, courteous, and good natured; but they are quick in resenting injuries, notwithstanding the predominancy of their phlegm; and, like all other passionate people, as quickly forgetting them.

These fits of passion never extended farther than the parties immediately concerned; the spectators never entering into the merits of the quarrel, whether it was with any of us, or among their own people; shewing as much indifference, as if they were wholly unacquainted with the whole transaction. It was common to see one of them rave and scold, while all his agitation did not in the least excite the attention of his countrymen, and when we could not discover the object of his displeasure. They never betray the least symptom of timidity upon these occasions, but seem resolutely determined to punish the insulter. With respect to ourselves, they were under no apprehensions about our superiority; but, if any difference arose, were as anxious to avenge the wrong, as if the cause of quarrel had been among themselves.

Their other passions appear to lie dormant, especially their curiosity. Few expressed any desire or inclination to see or examine things with which they were unacquainted; and which, to a curious observer, would have appeared astonishing. If they could procure the articles they knew and wanted, they were perfectly satisfied; regarding every thing else with great indifference. Nor did our persons, dress, and behaviour (though so very different from their own) or even the size and construction of our ships, seem to command their admiration or attention.

Their indolence may, indeed, be a principal cause of this. But it must be admitted, that they are not wholly unsusceptible of the tender passions, which is evident from

from
path
soler
is us
being
pow
were
time
sole
times
with
A
of m
is use
whist
assum
to imi
peopl
vering
making
mout
with
dle.
rattle.
Son
and,
out m
stance
fairne
to pos
that, v
could
the So
would
siderin
novelt
them t
rather

from their being fond of music, and that too of the truly pathetic kind. Their songs are generally slow and solemn; but their music is less confined than that which is usually found in other rude nations; the variations being very numerous and expressive, and the melody powerfully soothing. Besides their concerts, sonnets were frequently sung by single performers, keeping time by striking the hand against the thigh. Though solemnity was predominant in their music, they sometimes entertained us in a gay and lively strain, and even with a degree of pleasantry and humour.

A rattle, and a small whistle, are the only instruments of music which we have seen among them. The rattle is used when they sing; but upon what occasions the whistle is used, we never knew, unless it be when they assume the figures of particular animals, and endeavour to imitate their howl, or cry. We once saw one of these people dressed in the skin of a wolf, with the head covering his own, striving to imitate that animal, by making a squeaking noise with a whistle he had in his mouth. The rattles are generally in the shape of a bird, with small pebbles in the belly, and the tail is the handle. They have another sort, which resembles a child's rattle.

Some of them displayed a disposition to knavery, and, in trafficking with us, took away our goods without making any return. But of this we had few instances, and we had abundant reason to approve the fairness of their conduct. Their eagerness, however, to possess iron, brass, or any kind of metal, was so great, that, when an opportunity presented itself, few of them could resist the temptation to steal it. The natives of the South Sea Islands, as appears in many instances, would steal any thing they could find, without considering whether it was useful to them or not. The novelty of the object, was a sufficient inducement for them to get possession of it by any means. They were rather actuated by a childish curiosity, than by a thievish

disposition. The inhabitants of Nootka, who made free with our property, are entitled to no such apology. The appellation of thief is certainly due to them; for they knew that what they had pilfered from us, might be converted to the purposes of private utility; and, according to their estimation, of things, was really valuable. Luckily for us, they set no value upon any of our articles, except the metals. Linens, and many other things, were secure from their depredations, and we could safely leave them hanging out all night ashore, without being watched. The principle which prompted these people to pilfer from us, would probably operate in their intercourse with each other. We had, indeed, abundant reason to believe, that stealing is very common amongst them, and frequently produces quarrels, of which we saw more instances than one.

Number

*Number
ing
and
Klu
youn
Diff
Bow
Man
and
pleme
mon
Meta*

THE
th
act com
might b
the seco
about a
least five
women,
them, w
the inh
than fou
thousand
The
Sound,
tending
list of th
tances be

made
ology.
n; for
ight be
nd, ac-
y valu-
any of
many
ne, and
ashore,
rompt-
ly ope-
e had,
ling is
roduce
one.

Number of Inhabitants at Nootka Sound—Manner of building their Houses—Description of their Inside, Furniture, and Utensils—Their Filthiness—Wooden Images, called Klumma—Employments of the Men—Indolence of the young Men—Of the Women, and their Employments—Different Sorts of Food, and Manner of preparing it—Bows—Arrows—Spears—Slings, and other Weapons—Manufactures of Woollen, &c.—Mechanic Arts—Design and Execution in Carving and Painting—Canoes—Implements used in Hunting and Fishing—Iron Tools common among them—Manner of procuring that, and other Metals—Language, &c.

THE only inhabited parts of the Sound, seem to be the two villages already mentioned. A pretty exact computation of the number of inhabitants in both, might be made from the canoes that visited our ships, the second day after our arrival. They consisted of about a hundred, which, upon an average, contained at least five persons each. But, as there were very few women, old men, children, or youths, then among them, we may reasonably suppose, that the number of the inhabitants of the two villages could not be less than four times the number of our visitors; being two thousand in the whole.

The village which is situated at the entrance of the Sound, stands on the side of a pretty steep ascent, extending from the beach to the wood. The houses consist of three ranges or rows, placed at almost equal distances behind each other, the front row being the largest; and

Number

and there are a few straggling houses at each end. These rows are intersected by narrow paths, or lanes, at irregular distances, passing upward; but those between the houses are considerably broader. Though this general disposition has some appearance of regularity, there is none in the respective houses; for every division made by the paths, may either be considered as one or more houses; there being no regular separation to distinguish them by, either within or without. These erections consist of very long broad planks, resting upon the edges of each other, tied, in different parts, with withes of pine bark. They have only slender posts on the outside, at considerable distances from each other, to which they are also fastened; but there are some larger poles within, placed assant. The sides and ends of these habitations are about seven or eight feet in height, but the back part is somewhat higher. The planks, therefore, which compose the roof, slant forward, and, being loose, may be moved at pleasure. They may either be put close to exclude the rain, or separated to admit the light in fine weather.

Upon the whole, however, they are most miserable dwellings, and display very little attention or ingenuity in their construction: for, though the side planks are pretty close to each other in some places, they are quite open in others. Besides, these habitations have no regular doors, and can only be entered by a hole, which the unequal length of the planks has accidentally made. In the sides of the house they have also holes to look out at, serving for windows; but these are very irregularly disposed, without attending, in the least, to the shape or size of them.

Within the habitations, we have frequently a view from one end to the other of these ranges of building; for, though there are some appearances of separation on each side, for the accommodation of different persons or families, they do not intercept the sight; and generally consist of pieces of plank, extending from the side to the middle of the house. On the sides of each of these

h end.
 nes, at
 etween
 his ge-
 ularity;
 ivision
 one or
 to dif-
 These
 g upon
 s, with
 osts on
 other,
 e some
 ad ends
 feet in
 The
 ant for-
 easure,
 ain; or
 iserable
 genuity
 nks are
 re quite
 no re-
 which
 made.
 to look
 irregu-
 to the
 a view
 ilding;
 tion on
 persons
 d gene-
 the side
 each of
 these



Link's Tower.

h
th
ule,
by a
ding
these
rner;
mid-
inha-

of

Cook's Voyages.



these pa
higher t
whereon
benches
four or fi
nor chim
in partic
close par
of any w
benches,
but it ha
dle of th
bitants.

The fu
chests and
at the sid
sited their
that are d
or the up
a lid faste
have a sq
venience
They are
teeth of a
&c. as de
pails; rou
of about t
food; bag

Their i
hung up,
without a
fect scene
which hav
a superior
on in thei

The ir
however,
They not
gut them

these parts is a little bench, about five or six inches higher than the rest of the floor, covered with mats, whereon the family sit and sleep. The length of these benches is generally seven or eight feet, and the breadth four or five. The fire-place, which has neither hearth nor chimney, is in the middle of the floor. One house, in particular, was nearly separated from the rest by a close partition; and this was the most regular building of any we had seen. In it there were four of these benches, each holding a single family at the corner; but it had not any separation by boards, and the middle of the house seemed to be common to all the inhabitants.

The furniture of their houses consists principally of chests and boxes of various sizes, piled upon each other, at the sides or ends of the house; in which are deposited their garments, skins, masks, and other articles that are deemed valuable. Many of them are double, or the upper one serves as a lid to the other: some have a lid fastened with thongs; others, that are very large, have a square hole cut in the upper part, for the convenience of putting things in, or taking them out. They are frequently painted black, studded with the teeth of animals, or rudely carved with figures of birds, &c. as decorations. They have also square and oblong pails; round wooden cups and bowls; wooden troughs, of about two feet in length, out of which they eat their food; bags of matting, baskets of twigs, &c.

Their implements for fishing, and other things, are hung up, or scattered in different parts of the house, without any kind of order, making, in the whole, a perfect scene of confusion; except on the sleeping benches, which have nothing on them but the mats, which are of a superior quality to those that they usually have to sit on in their boats.

The irregularity and confusion of their houses is, however, far exceeded by their nastiness and stench. They not only dry their fish within doors, but they also gut them there; which, together with their bones and frag-

fragments thrown upon the ground at meals, occasions several heaps of filth, which are never removed, till it becomes troublesome, from their bulk, to pass over them. Every thing about the house stinks of train-oil, fish, and smoke; and every part of it is as filthy as can be imagined.

Notwithstanding all this filth and confusion, many of these houses are decorated with images; which are nothing more than the trunks of large trees, of the height of four or five feet, placed at the upper end of the apartment, with a human face carved on the front, and the hands and arms upon the sides. These figures too are variously painted, and make, upon the whole, a most ridiculous appearance. These images are generally called *Klumma*; but the names of the two particular ones, standing abreast of each other, at the distance of about three or four feet, were *Natchkoa* and *Matseeta*. A sort of curtain, made of mat, usually hung before them, which the natives were sometimes unwilling to remove; and when they did consent to unveil them, they seemed to express themselves in a very mysterious manner. It seems probable that they sometimes make offerings to them; for, if we rightly interpreted their signs, they requested us to give something to these images, when they drew the mats from before them.

From these circumstances, it was natural for us to suppose that they were representatives of their gods, or some superstitious symbols; and yet they were held in no very extraordinary degree of estimation, for, with a small quantity of brass, or iron, any person might have purchased all the gods in the place.

Mr Webber, in drawing a view of the inside of a Nootka house, wherein these figures are represented, was interrupted, and hindered from proceeding, by one of the inhabitants. Thinking a bribe would have a proper effect upon this occasion, Mr Webber made him an offer of a button from his coat, which, being metal, immediately operated as it was intended, and he was at liberty to proceed as before. But soon after he had

made

made
same
therefo
again t
till Mr
and the
obstruc

The
killing
of ther
houses;
ing the
they al
women
and oth
in the n
are men
little att
men off
paddle.
or tender

The y
nerally f
themselv
the beach
vering.

finer sole
cently clo
ly merit
so becom
ritorious,

Besides
employ
ment of t
the freque
the canoes
their time
eat and sle
selves in t

Vol. II.—

made a beginning, he was again interrupted by the same man, who held a mat before the figures. He therefore gave him another button, and was suffered again to proceed. He then renewed his former practice, till Mr Webber had parted with every single button; and then permitted him to proceed without any farther obstruction.

The men seem to be chiefly employed in fishing, and killing animals for the sustenance of their families; few of them being seen engaged in any business in the houses; but the women were occupied in manufacturing their garments, and in curing their sardines, which they also carry from the canoes to their houses. The women also go in the small canoes, to gather muscles and other shell fish. They are as dexterous as the men in the management of these canoes; and when there are men in the canoes with them, they are paid very little attention to on account of their sex, none of the men offering to relieve them from the labour of the paddle. Nor do they shew them any particular respect or tenderness on other occasions.

The young men are remarkably indolent; being generally sitting about, in scattered companies, basking themselves in the sun, or wallowing in the sand upon the beach, like so many hogs, without any kind of covering. This disregard of decency was, however, confined solely to the men. The women were always decently cloathed, and behaved with great propriety; justly meriting all commendation for a modest bashfulness, so becoming in their sex. In them it is the more meritorious, as the men have not even a sense of shame.

Besides seeing something of their domestic life and employments, we were enabled to form some judgment of their disposition, and method of living, from the frequent visits received from them at our ships, in the canoes; in which we understood they pass much of their time, especially in the summer: for they not only eat and sleep frequently in them, but lie and bask themselves in the sun, as we had seen them at their village.

Their large canoes are, indeed, sufficiently spacious for that purpose; and are, except in rainy weather, more comfortable habitations than their filthy houses.

Their greatest reliance for food seems to be upon the sea, as affording fish, and sea animals. The principal of the first are herrings and sardines, two species of bream, and some small cod. The herrings and sardines not only serve to be eaten fresh in their season, but to be dried and smoked as stores. The herrings also afford them another grand resource for food; which is a vast quantity of roe, prepared in a very extraordinary manner. It is strewed upon small branches of the Canadian pine. It is also prepared upon a long sea grass, which is found, in great plenty, upon the rocks under water. This caviare is preserved in baskets of mat, and used occasionally, after being dipped in water. It has no disagreeable taste, and serves these people as a kind of winter bread. They also eat the roe of some other large fish, that has a very rancid smell and taste.

The large muscle is an essential article of their food, which is found in great abundance in the Sound. After roasting them in their shells, they are stuck upon long wooden skewers, and taken off as they are to be eaten, as they require no further preparation, though they are some times dipped in oil, as a sauce. The smaller shell fish contribute to encrease the general stock, but cannot be considered as a material article of their food.

The porpoise is more common among them as food than any of the sea animals; the flesh and rind of which they cut in large pieces, dry them as they do herrings, and eat them without farther preparation. They have also a very singular manner of preparing a sort of broth from this animal, when in its fresh state. They put some pieces of it in a wooden vessel or pail, in which there is also some water, and throw heated stones into it. This operation is repeatedly performed till the contents are supposed to be sufficiently stewed. The fresh stones are put in, and the others taken out, with a cleft stick, serving as a pair of tongs; the vessel being, for
that

that pur
mon di
nourishi
they pro
upon m
and freq
of horn.

They
whales, f
being co
with imp
different
at all seas
number o
the Sound

The lan
scarce, as
and, thoug
might, pe
other tribe
riety of cir
with the p
if we exce
they shoot

Their or
dian pine
advances,
most comm
of a mild
eaten raw.
taste resem
root, about
raw. As
many other
is not the le
there are ple
One of the
require in a
kind; for t

that purpose, always placed near the fire. This is a common dish among them, and seems to be a very strong nourishing food. From these, and other sea animals, they procure oil in great abundance, which they use upon many occasions, mixed with other food, as sauce, and frequently sip it alone, with a kind of scoop made of horn.

They probably feed upon other sea animals, such as whales, seals, and sea otters; the skins of the two latter being common amongst them; and they are furnished with implements of all sorts for the destruction of these different animals, though perhaps they may not be able, at all seasons, to catch them in great plenty. No great number of fresh skins were to be seen while we lay in the Sound.

The land animals, at this time, appeared also to be scarce, as we saw no flesh belonging to any of them; and, though their skins were to be had in plenty, they might, perhaps, have been procured by traffic from other tribes. It plainly appears, therefore, from a variety of circumstances, that these people are furnished with the principal part of their animal food by the sea; if we except a few gulls, and some other birds, which they shoot with their arrows.

Their only winter vegetables seem to be the Canadian pine branches, and sea grass; but, as the spring advances, they use others as they come in season. The most common of these were two sorts of liliaceous roots, of a mild sweetish taste, which are mucilaginous and eaten raw. The next is a root called *abeita*, and has a taste resembling liquorice. Another small, sweetish root, about the thickness of *sarsaparilla*, is also eaten raw. As the season advances, they have doubtless many others which we did not see. For, though there is not the least appearance of cultivation among them, there are plenty of alder, gooseberry, and currant bushes. One of the conditions, however, which they seem to require in all food, is, that it should be of the less acrid kind; for they would not touch the leek or garlic,

though they sold us vast quantities of it, when they understood we liked it. They seemed, indeed, not to relish any of our food, and rejected our spirituous liquors as something disgusting and unnatural.

Small marine animals, in their fresh state, are sometimes eaten raw; though it is their ordinary practice to roast or boil their food; for they are absolute strangers to our method of boiling, as appears from their manner of preparing porpoise broth; besides, as they have only wooden vessels, it is impossible for them to perform such an operation. Their manner of eating corresponds with the nastiness of their houses and persons; for the platters and troughs, out of which they eat their food, seem never to have been washed since their original formation; the dirty remains of a former meal, being only swept away by a succeeding one. Every thing solid and tough, they tear to pieces with their hands and teeth; for, though their knives are employed in cutting off the larger portions, they have not yet endeavoured to reduce these to mouthfuls by the same means, though so much more cleanly and convenient. But they do not possess even an idea of cleanliness, and constantly eat the roots which are dug from the ground, without attempting to shake off the soil that adheres to them. Whether they have any set time for meals, we never certainly knew; having seen them eat at all hours in their canoes. But, having seen several messes of porpoise broth preparing about noon, when we went to the village, they probably make a principal meal about that time.

They have bows and arrows, spears, slings, short truncheons made of bone, and a small pick-axe, somewhat resembling the common American tomahawk. Some of the arrows are pointed with iron, and others with indented bone; the spear has usually a long point made of bone. The tomahawk is a stone of the length of seven or eight inches; one end terminating in a point, and the other fixed into a wooden handle. This handle is intended to resemble the head and neck of a human

human figure to represent the resemblance of the weapon is upon made twelve inches. It may be engaged in and other vessels of their war quantity of. The design of mechanic art could possibly position of made in civil engage their those that rures. The fine tree, being prepared stick, which The manufacture machine, known inch from Though it can firm asious to the Though tured in the appearance of a being wrought figures that a very improbable produce such their hands. resembling of such inferior farmer and

human figure; the stone being fixed in the mouth so as to represent a tongue of great magnitude. To heighten the resemblance, human hair is also fixed to it. This weapon is called *taaweeß*; and they have another weapon made of stone, which they call *seeaik*, about ten or twelve inches long, having a square point.

It may be reasonably concluded that they frequently engage in close combat, from the number of their stone and other weapons; and we had very disagreeable proofs of their wars being both frequent and bloody, from the quantity of human skulls that were offered us to sale.

The design and execution of their manufactures and mechanic arts, are more extensive and ingenious than could possibly have been expected, from the natural disposition of the people, and what little progress they had made in civilization. The flaxen and woollen garments engage their first care, as being the most material of those that may be classed under the head of manufactures. The former are fabricated from the bark of the pine tree, beat into a mass resembling hemp. After being prepared in a proper manner, it is spread upon a stick, which is fastened to two others in an erect position. The manufacturer, who sits on her hams at this simple machine, knots it across, at the distance of about half an inch from each other, with small plaited threads. Though it cannot, by this method, be rendered so close and firm as cloth that is woven, it is sufficiently impervious to the air, and is likewise softer and more pliable.

Though their woollen garments are probably manufactured in the same manner, they have much the appearance of a woven cloth; but, the supposition of their being wrought in a loom is destroyed, by the various figures that are ingeniously inserted in them; it being very improbable that these people should be able to produce such a complex work, except immediately by their hands. They are of different qualities; some resembling our coarsest sort of blankets; and others not much inferior to our finest sort, and certainly both warmer and softer.

The

The wool, of which they are manufactured, seems to be produced by different animals, particularly the fox and brown lynx; that from the lynx is the finest, and nearly resembles our coarser wools in colour; but the hair, which also grows upon the animal, being intermixed with it, the appearance of it is somewhat different when wrought. The ornamental figures in these garments are disposed with great taste, and are generally of a different colour, being usually dyed either of a deep brown or yellow; the latter of which when new, equals, in brightness, the best in our carpets.

Their fondness for carving on all their wooden articles, corresponds with their taste in working figures upon their garments. Nothing is to be seen without a freeze-work, or a representation of some animal upon it; but the most general figure is that of the human face, which is frequently cut out upon birds, and the other monstrous things already mentioned; and even upon their weapons of bone and stone.

The general design of these figures conveys a sufficient knowledge of the objects they are intended to represent; though, in the carving, very little dexterity is displayed. But, in the execution of many of the masks and heads, they have shewn themselves ingenious sculptors. They preserve, with the greatest exactness, the general character of their own faces, and finish the most minute parts with great accuracy and neatness. That these people have a strong propensity to works of this sort, is observable in a variety of particulars. Representations of human figures; birds; beasts; fish; models of their canoes, and household utensils, were found among them in very great abundance.

Having mentioned their skill in some of the imitative arts, such as working figures in their garments, and engraving, or carving them in wood; we may also add their drawing them in colours. The whole process of their whale-fishery has been represented, in this manner, on the caps they wear. This, indeed, was rudely executed, but served, at least, to convince us, that, though they

they have
they have
way, exclu
traditions.
perhaps, h
the creatio
Though
appear wel
largest, wh
formed of a
forty feet, th
become gra
each end, th
at the top.
and ends in
of the canoe
part of them
little carving
surface. So
painted with
either seats
except some
ing cane, p
canoe. The
breadth and
of which the
re small and
pointed at the
y becoming
eing about
quired great
les; but the
For fishing
iously contr
ft of nets, h
rument refe
et in length
ickness of
birds of its le

they have not the knowledge of letters amongst them, they have a notion of representing actions, in a lasting way, exclusive of recording them in their songs and traditions. They have also other painted figures, which, perhaps, have no established significations, and are only the creation of fancy or caprice.

Though the structure of their canoes is simple, they appear well calculated for every useful purpose. The largest, which contain upwards of twenty people, are formed of a single tree. The length of many of them is forty feet, the breadth seven, and the depth three. They become gradually narrower from the middle towards each end, the stern ending perpendicularly, with a knob at the top. The forepart stretches forwards and upwards, and ends in a point or prow, much higher than the sides of the canoe, which are nearly straight. The greatest part of them are without any ornament; some have a little carving, and are studded with seals' teeth on the surface. Some have also an additional prow, usually painted with a figure of some animal. They have neither seats nor any other supporters, on the inside, except some small round sticks, about the size of a walking cane, placed across, about half the depth of the canoe. They are very light, and, on account of their breadth and flatness, swim firmly, without an outrigger, of which they are all destitute. Their paddles, which are small and light, resemble a large leaf in shape, being pointed at the bottom, broad in the middle, and gradually becoming narrower in the shaft; the whole length being about five feet. By constant use, they have acquired great dexterity in the management of these paddles; but they never make use of any sails.

For fishing and hunting, their instruments are ingeniously contrived, and completely made. They consist of nets, hooks, and lines, harpoons, gigs, and an instrument resembling an oar. The latter is about twenty feet in length, four or five inches in breadth, and of the thickness of half an inch. The edges, for about two thirds of its length, are set with sharp bone teeth, about

two

two inches in length; the other third serving for a handle. With this instrument they attack herrings and sardines, and such other fish as come in shoals. It is struck into the shoal, and the fish are taken either upon, or between the teeth. Their hooks, which are made of bone and wood, display no great ingenuity; but the harpoon, which is used in striking whales, and other sea animals, manifests a great extent of contrivance. It consists of a piece of bone, formed into two barbs, in which the oval blade of a muscle shell, and the point of the instrument, is fixed. Two or three fathoms of rope is fastened to this harpoon, and, in throwing it, they use a shaft of about fifteen feet long, to which the rope is fastened; to one end of which the harpoon is fixed so as to leave the shaft floating, as a buoy upon the water when the animal is struck with the harpoon.

We are strangers to the manner of their catching or killing land animals, but, it is probable, that they shoot the smaller sort with their arrows; and encounter bears, wolves, and foxes, with their spears. They have several sorts of nets, which are perhaps applied to that purpose, it being customary for them to throw them over their heads, to signify their use, when they offered them for sale. Sometimes they decoy animals, by disguising themselves with a skin, and running upon all fours, in which they are remarkably nimble; making, at the same time, a kind of noise, or neighing. The masks, or carved heads, as well as the dried heads of different animals, are used upon these occasions.

Every thing of the rope kind, which they use in making their various articles, is formed either from thongs of skins, and sinews of animals, or from the flaxen substance, of which they manufacture their mantles. The sinews were sometimes so remarkably long, that it was hardly possible they could have belonged to any other animal than the whale. The same conjecture may be hazarded with regard to the bones, of which they make their instruments and weapons.

The assistance they receive from iron tools, contribu-

to their
plemen
law bu
that wa
the prin
The ch
wooden
fish skin
nine or
breadth
smaller.

Some
are crook
part. W
breadth a
lar form
pean man
coarse flat
continual

Iron is
they also
so common
cover how
we arrived
knowledge
and we we
quired this
any strange
a practice

With w
ascertain;
pean manu
rived from
it does not
mediately f
tain the leas
ours, before
merce with
borate to p
Vol. II.—N

to their dexterity in wooden performances. Their implements are almost wholly made of iron; at least, we saw but one chissel that was not made of that metal, and that was only of bone. The knife and the chissel are the principal forms that iron assumes amongst them. The chissel consists of a flat long piece, fastened into a wooden handle. A stone is their mallet, and a bit of fish skin their polisher. Some of these chissels were nine or ten inches in length, and three or four in breadth; but they were, in general, considerably smaller.

Some of their knives are very large, and their blades are crooked; the edge being on the back or convex part. What we have seen among them, were about the breadth and thickness of an iron hoop; and their singular form sufficiently proves that they are not of European make. These iron tools are sharpened upon a coarse slate whetstone, and the whole instrument is kept continually bright.

Iron is called by the natives *seekemaile*, a name which they also gave to tin, and other white metals. It being so common among these people, we were anxious to discover how it could be conveyed to them. As soon as we arrived in the Sound, we perceived that they had a knowledge of traffic, and an inclination to pursue it; and we were afterwards convinced that they had not acquired this knowledge from a cursory interview with any strangers, but it seemed habitual to them, and was a practice in which they were well skilled.

With whom they carry on this traffic, we cannot ascertain; for, though we saw several articles of European manufacture, or such, at least, as had been derived from some civilized nation, such as brass and iron, it does not certainly follow that they were received immediately from these nations. For we never could obtain the least information of their having seen ships, like ours, before, nor of their having been engaged in commerce with such people. Many circumstances corroborate to prove this beyond a doubt. On our arrival,

they were earnest in their enquiries, whether we meant to settle amongst them, and whether we were friendly visitors; informing us, at the same time, that they freely gave us wood and water from motives of friendship.

This sufficiently proves, that they considered themselves as proprietors of the place, and dreaded no superiority: for it would have been an unnatural enquiry, if any ships had been here before, and had supplied themselves with wood and water, and then departed; for they might reasonably expect that we should do the same. It must be admitted, indeed, that they exhibited no marks of surprize at beholding our ships; but this may, with great propriety, be attributed to their natural indolence of temper, and their wanting a thirst of curiosity. They were never startled at the report of a musquet, till they, one day, shewed us that their hide-dresses were impenetrable to their spears and arrows; when one of our people shot a musquet ball through one of them that had been six times folded. Their astonishment at this, plainly indicated their ignorance of the effect of fire arms. This was afterwards very frequently confirmed, when we used them to shoot birds, at which they appeared greatly confounded. And our explanation of the piece, together with the nature of its operation, with the aid of shot and ball, struck them so forcibly, as to convince us of their having no previous ideas on this matter.

Though some account of a voyage to this coast, by the Spaniards, in 1774, or 1775, had arrived in England before we sailed, the circumstances just mentioned sufficiently prove, that these ships had never been at Nootka.* It was also evident, that iron would not have been in so many hands, nor would the use of it have been so well known, if they had so lately obtained the first knowledge of it.

From

* It has since appeared, that they were not within two degrees of Nootka, and probably the inhabitants of that place never heard of these Spanish ships.

From
comes f
and they
they use
practice
therefore
Indian tr
European
through
means th

Not on
articles fe
ments for
the India
them. V
as all the
of making
met with,
ed into an
not used b
in their tra
troduced a
ble, the tw
Little kn
quired of th
ed among t
there were
of acweek,
subordinate
men, seems
who ackno
not all elder
ditary.

Nothing
their notion
mentioned,
out as the w
they spoke
images of for

From their general use of this metal, it probably comes from some constant source, in the way of traffic, and they have perhaps been long supplied with it; for they use their tools with as much dexterity as the longest practice can acquire. The most natural conjecture, therefore, is, that they trade for their iron with other Indian tribes, who may have some communication with European settlements upon the continent, or receive it through several intermediate nations. By the same means they probably obtain their brass and copper.

Not only the rude materials, but some manufactured articles seem to find their way hither. The brass ornaments for noses are made in so masterly a manner, that the Indians cannot be supposed capable of fabricating them. We are certain, that the materials are European, as all the American tribes are ignorant of the method of making brass; though copper has been frequently met with, and, from its ductility, might easily be fashioned into any shape, and polished. If such articles are not used by our traders to Hudson's Bay and Canada, in their traffic with the natives, they must have been introduced at Nootka from Mexico; whence, it is probable, the two silver table spoons were originally derived.

Little knowledge can we be supposed to have acquired of the political and religious institutions established among these people. We discovered, however, that there were such men as chiefs, distinguished by the title of *acweek*, to whom the others are, in some degree, subordinate. But the authority of each of these great men, seems to extend no farther than to his own family, who acknowledged him as their head. As they were not all elderly men, it is possible this title may be hereditary.

Nothing that we saw could give us any insight into their notions of religion, except the figures already mentioned, called *Klumma*. These, perhaps, were idols; but as the word *acweek* was frequently mentioned when they spoke of them, we may suppose them to be the images of some of their ancestors, whose memories they

venerate. This, however, is all conjecture, for we could receive no information concerning them; knowing little more of their language than to enable us to ask the names of things, and being incapable of holding any conversation with the natives, relative to their traditions, or their institutions.

Their language is neither harsh nor disagreeable, farther than proceeds from their pronouncing the *k* and *b* with less softness than we do. As to the composition of their language, we are enabled to say but little. It may, however, be inferred, from their slow and distinct method of speaking, that it has few prepositions or conjunctions, and is destitute of even a single interjection to express surprize or admiration. The affinity it may bear to other languages, we have not been able sufficiently to trace, not having proper specimens to compare it with; but, from the few Mexican words we have procured, there is an obvious agreement, throughout the language, in the frequent terminations of the words in *l*, *tl*, or *z*.

The word *wakash* was frequently in the mouths of the people of Nootka. It seemed to express approbation, applause, and friendship. Whenever they appeared to be pleased or satisfied at any sight or occurrence, they would call out *wakash!* *wakash!* It is worthy of remark, that as these people so essentially differ from the natives of the islands in the Pacific Ocean, in their persons, customs, and language, we cannot suppose their respective progenitors to have belonged to the same tribe, when they emigrated into those places where we now find their descendants.

A Storm

A Storm

Ships

Cross

of Kay

broke—

and Iro

Boats—

Progres

to exam

leave th

WE in
nifest indic
signs did n
the Sound
by E. and
sky being
apprehensi
would exp
the tacks o
S. W. It
no further
next morn
Captain Cl
Commodor
both vessele
blew with
and hazy.
noon, there

A Storm—The Resolution springs a Leak—Progress of the Ships along the North American Coast—An Inlet named Cross Sound—Beering's Bay—Cape Suckling—Account of Kaye's Island—Our Ships anchor near Cape Hinchinbroke—The Natives visit us—Their Fondness for Beads and Iron—Their daring Attempt to carry off one of our Boats—They also attempt to plunder the Discovery—Progress up the Sound—Mr Gore and the Master sent to examine its Extent—Montague Island—The Ships leave the Sound.

WE have already mentioned, that we put to sea, in the evening of the 26th of April, with manifest indications of an approaching storm; and these signs did not deceive us. We had scarce sailed out of the Sound, when the wind shifted from N. E. to S. E. by E. and blew a strong gale, with squalls and rain, the sky being at the same time uncommonly dark. Being apprehensive of the wind's veering more to the S. which would expose us to the danger of a lee-shore, we got the tacks on board, and made all the sail we could to the S. W. It fortunately happened, that the wind veered no further towards the S. than S. E. so that, early the next morning, we were entirely clear of the coast. Captain Clerke's ship being at some distance astern, the Commodore brought to, till she came up, and then both vessels steered a north-westerly course. The wind blew with great violence, and the weather was thick and hazy. Between one and two o'clock in the afternoon, there was a perfect hurricane; so that the Commodore

modore deemed it exceedingly dangerous to run any longer before it: he therefore brought the ships to, with their heads to the south. In this situation, the Resolution sprung a leak, in her starboard quarter, which, at first alarmed us extremely; but, after the water was baled out, which kept us employed till midnight, it was kept under by means of one pump. The wind having, in the evening, veered to the southward, its fury in some measure abated; upon which we stretched to the west; but about eleven, the gale again increased, and continued till five the next morning, when the storm began to moderate.

The weather now clearing up, we were able to see several leagues around us, and steered more to the N. At noon, our longitude was 229 d. 26 m. E. and our latitude, 50 d. 1 m. N. We now steered N. W. by N. with a fresh gale, and fair weather. But, towards the evening, the wind again blew hard, with squalls and rain. With this weather, we continued the same course till the 30th, when we steered N. by W. intending to make the land. Captain Cook regretted that he could not do it sooner, as we were now passing the spot where the pretended strait of Admiral de Fonte has been placed by geographers. Though the Captain gave no credit to such vague and improbable stories, he was desirous of keeping the coast of America aboard, that this point might be cleared up beyond dispute. But he considered, that it would have been very imprudent to have engaged with the land while the weather was so tempestuous, or to have lost the advantage of a fair wind, by waiting for less stormy weather. This day, at twelve o'clock, our latitude was 53 d. 22 m. N. and our longitude 225 d. 14 m. E.

On Friday the 1st of May, not seeing land, we steered to the N. E. having a fresh breeze at S. S. E. and S. with squalls and showers of hail and rain. About seven o'clock in the evening, we descried the land, at the distance of twelve or fourteen leagues. At four the next morning, the coast was seen from S. E. to N. by W. the nearest

nearest
this time
what a
the nor
bours a
approac
the dire
twelve,
the cont
of an ex
tend in
that stan
Captain
and the p
Edgecum
and its l
some par
aboundin
out-tops
were also
and the f
and cover
In our
coast from
E. for six
bay. The
bay, the C
seemed to
turned to
with the h
and thus r
the 3d, at h
Edgecumb
and the mo
ying unde
ained the a
2 d. W.
first observe
The south

nearest part of it being five or six leagues distant. At this time, the northern point of an inlet, or, at least, what appeared to be one, bore E. by S. and from it to the northward, there seemed to be many bays and harbours along the coast. At six o'clock, making a nearer approach to the land, we steered N. W. by N. this being the direction of the coast; and, between eleven and twelve, we passed a cluster of little islands situate near the continent, to the northward of the southern point of an extensive bay. An arm of this bay seemed to extend in towards the N. behind a round lofty mountain that stands between it and the sea. To this mountain Captain Cook gave the name of Mount Edgecumbe; and the point of land projecting from it, he called Cape Edgecumbe. The latitude of this cape is 57 d. 3 m. N. and its longitude 224 d. 7 m. E. The land, except in some parts close to the sea, is of a considerable height, abounding with hills. Mount Edgecumbe, which far out-tops all the rest, was entirely covered with snow, as were also the other elevated hills; but the lower ones, and the flatter spots near the sea, were destitute of it, and covered with wood.

In our progress to the northward, we found that the coast from Cape Edgecumbe trended to the N. and N. E. for six or seven leagues, and there formed a spacious bay. There being some islands in the entrance of this bay, the Commodore named it the Bay of Islands. It seemed to branch out into several arms, one of which turned towards the S. and may perhaps communicate with the bay on the eastern side of Cape Edgecumbe, and thus render the land of that cape an island. On the 3d, at half an hour after four in the morning, Mount Edgecumbe bore S. 54 d. E. a large inlet, N. 50 d. E. and the most advanced point of land towards the N. W. lying under a very lofty peaked mountain, which obtained the appellation of Mount Fair Weather, bore N. 2 d. W. The inlet we named Cross Sound, having first observed it on the day so marked in our calendar. The south eastern point of this Sound is an elevated

pro-

promontory, which we distinguished by the name of Cross Cape. To the point under the above-mentioned peaked mountain, we gave the name of Cape Fair Weather. At noon, this cape was distant twelve or thirteen leagues.

We had now light breezes from the N. W. which continued several days. We steered to the S. W. and W. S. W. till the morning of the 4th, when we tacked and stood towards the shore. At twelve o'clock, Mount Fair Weather bore N. 63 d. E. and the shore under it was about a dozen leagues distant. This mount is the highest of a chain or ridge of mountains, that rise at the north western entrance of Cross Sound, and extend towards the N. W. parallel with the coast. These mountains were covered with snow, from the highest summit down to the sea coast; except a few places, where we could discern trees that seemed to rise, as it were, from the sea. About five o'clock in the afternoon, the top of a high mountain appeared above the horizon, bearing N. 26 d. W. and as we afterwards found, near forty leagues distant. We supposed that it was the mount St Elias of Commodore Beering. We saw, in the course of this day, several porpoises, seals, and whales; also great numbers of gulls, and many flocks of birds which had a black circle about the head, and a black band on the tip of the tail and upper part of the wings the rest being white below and blueish above. We likewise observed a brownish duck, with a blackish or dark blue head and neck.

As we had light winds, with occasional calms, we proceeded but slowly. On the 6th, at mid-day, the nearest land was at the distance of about eight leagues. In a north easterly direction, there appeared to be a bay and an island near its southern point, covered with wood. This is probably the place where Beering anchored. Southward of the bay (which Captain Cook named Beering's Bay, in honour of its discoverer) the ridge of mountains, already mentioned, is interrupted by a plain of several leagues in extent, beyond which

C
the fig
ed, an
sevent
northe
noon.
five lea
perceiv
on each
confide
and tha
progre
N. 30
mounta
of 219
belongs
be reck
separate
On 8
about th
tinent,
W. To
island, a
the Com
the north
the cape
able hei
low land
appear
which fe
most wi
pairing
all our
proved
but, hav
towards
proached
from the
islands in
cape and
Vol. II.

the sight was unbounded. In the afternoon, we found-
ed, and found a muddy bottom at the depth of about
seventy fathoms. Soon afterwards, having a light
northerly breeze, we steered to the westward; and at
noon, the next day, we were at the distance of four or
five leagues from the shore. From this station we could
perceive a bay under the high land, with low woodland
on each side of it. We now found that the coast trended
considerably to the W. and as we had but little wind,
and that chiefly from the westward, we made a slow
progress. On the 9th, about noon, Mount St Elias bore
N. 30 d. E. at the distance of nineteen leagues. This
mountain stands twelve leagues inland, in the longitude
of 219 d. E. and in the latitude of 60 d. 27 m. N. It
belongs to a ridge of very lofty mountains, which may
be reckoned a kind of continuation of the former, being
separated from them only by the plain before mentioned.

On Sunday the 10th, at twelve o'clock, we were
about three leagues distant from the coast of the con-
tinent, which extended from E. half N. to N. W. half
W. To the westward of the latter direction was an
island, at the distance of six leagues. A point, which
the Commodore named Cape Suckling, projects towards
the north eastern end of this island. The extremity of
the cape is low; but, within it, stands a hill of consider-
able height, which is divided from the mountains by
low land; so that the Cape, at a distance, has an insular
appearance. On the N. side of Cape Suckling is a bay,
which seemed to be extensive, and to be sheltered from
most winds. Captain Cook had some thoughts of re-
pairing to this bay, in order to stop the leak of his ship,
all our endeavours to effect that purpose at sea having
proved fruitless. We therefore steered for the cape;
but, having only variable light breezes, we advanced
towards it slowly. Before night, however, we had ap-
proached near enough to see some low land projecting
from the cape to the N. W. we also observed some little
islands in the bay, and several elevated rocks between the
cape and the north-eastern extremity of the island. As

there appeared to be a passage on each side of these rocks, we continued steering thither the whole night. Early the next morning, the wind shifted from N. E. to N. This being against us, the Commodore relinquished his design of going into the bay, and bore up for the W. end of the island. There being a calm about ten o'clock, he embarked in a boat, and landed on the island, with a view of seeing what lay on the other side; but finding that the hills were at a greater distance than he expected, and that the way was woody and steep, he laid aside that intention. On a small eminence near the shore, he left, at the foot of a tree, a bottle containing a paper, on which the names of our ships, and the date of our discovery, were inscribed: he also inclosed two silver two-penny pieces of English coin, which, with many others, had been furnished him by Dr Kaye, now Dean of Lincoln; and in testimony of his esteem for that gentleman, he distinguished the island by the name of Kaye's Island.

This isle does not exceed twelve leagues in length, and its breadth is not above a league and a half in any part of it. The S. W. point, whose latitude is 59 d. 49 m. N. and longitude 216 d. 58 m. E. is a naked rock, considerably elevated above the land within it. There is also a high rock lying off it, which, when seen in some particular directions, has the appearance of a ruinous castle. The island terminates, towards the sea, in bare sloping cliffs, with a beach consisting of large pebbles, intermixed in some places with a clayey sand. The cliffs are composed of a blueish stone or rock, and are, except in a few parts, in a soft or mouldering state. Some parts of the shore are interrupted by small vallies and gullies, in each of which a rivulet or torrent rushes down with a considerable degree of impetuosity; though, perhaps, only furnished from the snow, and lasting no longer than till the whole is dissolved. These vallies are filled with pine trees; and they also abound in other parts of the island, which, indeed, is covered, as it were, with a broad girdle of wood. The trees, how-

ever,

ever, are
few of the
might gra
height bei
of no great
making top
pine trees a
the Canadi

Upon th
with a kin
composed o
the island h
colour; bu
seemed to b
rant and ha
the leaves o
one which v
racleum of L

A crow w
white head
observed; b
had a white
his passage f
sitting on th
which were
divers, and c
forts; one w
white belly a
a longer and
of two spec
blackish head
dirty black c
having a whi
of the comm
a single bird
whole colour
part of the up
our party lan
wood, and

ever, are far from being of an extraordinary growth; few of them seeming to be larger than what a person might grasp round with his arms, and their general height being forty or fifty feet; so that they would be of no great service for shipping, except as materials for making top-gallant-masts, and other small things. The pine trees appeared to be all of one species; and neither the Canadian pine, nor cypress, was to be seen.

Upon the edges of the cliffs, the surface was covered with a kind of turf, about six inches thick, apparently composed of the common moss; and the upper part of the island had nearly the same appearance in point of colour; but that which covered it, whatever it was, seemed to be thicker. Among the trees were some currant and hawberry bushes, a yellow flowered violet, and the leaves of other plants not yet in flower, particularly one which was supposed by Mr Anderson to be the *he-tracleum* of Linnæus.

A crow was seen flying about the wood; two or three white headed eagles, like those of Nootka, were also observed; besides another species equally large, which had a white breast. The Commodore likewise saw, in his passage from the ship to the shore, a number of fowls sitting on the water, or flying about; the principal of which were gulls, burres, shags, ducks or large petrels, divers, and quebrantahuefles. The divers were of two sorts; one very large, whose colour was black, with a white belly and breast; the other of a smaller size, with a longer and more pointed bill. The ducks were also of two species; one brownish, with a dark blue or blackish head and neck; the other smaller, and of a dirty black colour. The shags were large and black, having a white spot behind the wings. The gulls were of the common sort, flying in flocks. There was also a single bird flying about, apparently of the gull kind, whose colour was a snowy white, with some black along part of the upper side of its wings. At the place where our party landed, a fox came from the verge of the wood, and eying them with little emotion, walked

leisurely on without manifesting any signs of fear. He was not of a large size, and his colour was a reddish yellow. Two or three small seals were likewise seen near the shore; but no traces were discovered of inhabitants having ever been in the island.

Captain Cook, with those who accompanied him, returned on board in the afternoon, and, with a light breeze from the E. steered for the S. W. side of the island, which we got round by eight o'clock in the evening: we then stood for the westernmost land that was now in sight. At the N. E. end of Kaye's Island stands another island, extending N. W. and S. E. about nine miles, to within the same distance of the north-western boundary of the bay mentioned before, to which the appellation of Comptroller's Bay was given. Early the next morning Kaye's Island was still in sight, bearing E. by S. and, at this time, we were at the distance of four or five leagues from the main. At noon, the eastern point of a spacious inlet bore W. N. W. about three leagues distant. From Comptroller's Bay to this point, which the Commodore named Cape Hinchinbroke, the direction of the coast is nearly E. and W. Beyond this, it appeared to incline towards the S. a direction very different from that which is marked out in the modern charts, founded on the late discoveries of the Russians; inasmuch that we had some reason to expect, that we should find, through the inlet before us, a passage to the N. and that the land to the W. and S. W. was a group of islands. The wind was now south-easterly, and we were menaced with a fog and storm; and Captain Cook was desirous of getting into some place to stop the leak, before we had another gale to encounter. We therefore steered for the inlet, which we had no sooner reached, than the weather became exceedingly foggy, and it was deemed necessary that the ships should be secured in some place or other, till the sky should clear up. With this view we hauled close under Cape Hinchinbroke, and cast anchor before a small cove, over a clayey bottom, in
eight

eight fathoms
longs from

Soon a
out, some
the same
success, a
away, an
The cape
the inlet, f
ed to W. l
we could
had in vie
leagues.

our ships r
deep, on
coves; and

Mr Gor
order to st
He had sc
tives appe
returned to
were unwi
at a little d
tending th
kind of for
of King G
strewed wi
garment, v
friendship
stood up i
ended like
constructed
The frame
was forme
similar kin
and endea
encourage
prevail up
peated seve

eight fathoms water, at the distance of about two furlongs from the shore.

Soon after we had anchored, the boats were hoisted out, some to fish, and others to sound. The seine, at the same time, was drawn in the cove; but without success, as it was torn. At intervals, the fog cleared away, and gave us a view of the neighbouring land. The cape was one league distant; the western point of the inlet, five leagues; and the land on that side extended to W. by N. Between this point and N. W. by W. we could discern no land. The most westerly point we had in view on the N. shore, was at the distance of two leagues. Betwixt this point, and the shore under which our ships now lay at anchor, is a bay about three leagues deep, on the south-eastern side of which are several coves; and, in the middle, stand some rocky islands.

Mr Gore was dispatched in a boat to these islands, in order to shoot some birds that might serve for food. He had scarcely reached them, when about twenty natives appeared, in two large canoes; upon which he returned to the ships, and they followed him. They were unwilling, however, to venture alongside, but kept at a little distance, shouting aloud, and clapping and extending their arms alternately. They then began a kind of song, much after the manner of the inhabitants of King George's or Nootka Sound. Their heads were strewed with feathers, and one of them held out a white garment, which we supposed was intended as a token of friendship; while another, for near a quarter of an hour, stood up in the canoe, entirely naked, with his arms extended like a cross, and motionless. Their canoes were constructed upon a different plan from those of Nootka. The frame consisted of slender laths, and the outside was formed of the skins of seals, or other animals of a similar kind. Though we returned their signs of amity, and endeavoured, by the most expressive gestures, to encourage them to come alongside, we were unable to prevail upon them. Though some of our people repeated several of the most common words of the language

guage of Nootka, such as makook and seekemaile, they did not appear to understand them. After they had received some presents that were thrown to them, they retired towards the shore, intimating, by signs, that they would pay us another visit the next morning. Two of them, however, came off to us in the night, each in a small canoe; hoping, perhaps, that they might find us all asleep, and might have an opportunity of pilfering; for they went away as soon as they perceived themselves discovered.

The wind, during the night, blew hard and in squalls, with rain, and thick hazy weather. The next morning, about ten, the wind becoming more moderate, and the weather in some measure clearing up, we got up our anchors and made sail, in order to search for some convenient place where we might stop the leak, as our present station was too much exposed for that purpose. Captain Cook at first proposed to have gone up the bay before which our ships had anchored; but he was afterwards induced by the clearness of the weather, to steer towards the N. further up the great inlet. After we had passed the N. W. point of the above-mentioned bay, we found that the coast, on that side, inclined to the eastward. We did not follow it, but proceeded on our course to the northward, for a point of land which we observed in that direction.

The Americans who had visited us the preceding day, came off again in the morning, in five or six canoes; but as they did not come till after we were under sail, they were unable to reach the ships, though they followed us for a considerable time. In the afternoon, before two o'clock, the unfavourable weather returned, with so thick a haze, that we could discern no other land but the point just mentioned, off which we arrived between four and five o'clock, and found it to be a little island, situate at the distance of about two miles from the neighbouring coast, being a point of land, on the eastern side of which we discovered an excellent bay, or rather harbour. To this we plied up, while the wind blew

in very hard squalls, accompanied with rain. Though, at some intervals, we could see land in every direction, yet, in general, there was so great a fog, that we could only perceive the shores of the bay for which we were now steering. In passing the island, we found a muddy bottom, at the depth of twenty-six fathom. Not long after, we found sixty and seventy fathoms, over a rocky bottom; and, in the entrance of the bay, the depth of water was from thirty to six fathoms. At length, about eight o'clock, we were obliged by the violence of the squalls, to cast anchor in thirteen fathoms water, before we had proceeded so far into the bay as the Commodore intended; but we thought ourselves fortunate in having the ships already secured; for the night was extremely tempestuous.

Though the weather was so turbulent, the natives were not deterred from paying us a visit. Three of them came off in two canoes; two men in one, and one in the other, being the number that each canoe could carry. For they were constructed nearly in the same manner with those of the Esquimaux, except that one of them were two holes for two persons to sit in, and in the other but one. These men had each a stick, of the length of about three feet, with the large feathers, or wings of birds, fastened to it. These they frequently held up to us, probably as tokens of peace. The treatment these three received, induced many others to visit us, between one and two o'clock the following morning, in both great and small canoes. Some of them were taken on board the Resolution, though not before some of our people had stepped into their boats. Among the first who came on board, was a middle aged man, who, we afterwards found, was the chief. His dress was made of the skin of the sea otter, and he had on his head such a cap as is worn by the inhabitants of Nootka, embellished with sky-blue glass beads. He appeared to value these much more than our white glass beads. Any kind of beads, however, seemed to be in high estimation among these people, who readily gave in exchange for

for them whatever they had, even their fine sea otter skins.

They were very desirous of iron, but absolutely rejected small bits, and wanted pieces nine or ten inches long at least, and of the breadth of three or four fingers. They obtained but little of this commodity from us, as, by this time, it was become rather scarce. The points of some of their spears were of this metal; others were of copper; and a few were of bone; of which last the points of their arrows, darts, &c. were formed.

The chief could not be prevailed upon to venture below the upper deck, nor did he and his companions continue long on board. While they were with us, it was necessary to watch them narrowly, as they soon manifested an inclination for thieving. At length, when they had been three or four hours alongside the Resolution, they all quitted her, and repaired to the Discovery, which ship none of them had before been on board of except one man, who came from her at this very time and immediately returned to her, in company with the others. As soon as they had departed from our ship, Captain Cook dispatched a boat to sound the head of the bay; for, as the wind was moderate at present, he had an intention of laying the ship ashore, if a proper place could be found for the process of stopping the leak. Soon afterwards all the Americans quitted the Discovery and made their way towards our boat that was employed in founding. The officer, who was in her, observing their approach, returned to the ship, and all the canoes followed him. The crew of the boat had no soon repaired on board, leaving in her, by way of guard, two of their number, than several of the natives stepped in her; some of whom presented their spears before the two men, while others loosed the rope by which she was fastened to the ship, and the rest were so daring to attempt to tow her away. But the moment they saw that we were preparing to oppose them, they left her go, stepped out of her into their own boats, and

made signs of being, to

This a equal to Clerke's as having tion to the ter; where serving no or two oth plundered some distan ably with Several of mony, and ficer, and began to sea hold of was immediately had continu to find another crew were at lasses, came u ers all sneake of indifferen occupied in and the native after the disa covery. Th undoubtedly that they sho From the ably be infer with fire arm effect, they attempt carryi the face of up Resolution's instant of the Vol. II.—No

made signs to us to persuade us to lay down our arms, being, to all appearance, perfectly unconcerned.

This attempt, though a very bold one, was scarce equal to what they had meditated on board Captain Clerke's ship. The man whom we mentioned before as having conducted his countrymen from the Resolution to the Discovery, had first been on board of the latter; where, looking down all the hatchways, and observing no one except the officer of the watch, and one or two others, he doubtless imagined that she might be plundered with ease, particularly as she was stationed at some distance from the Resolution. It was unquestionably with this intent, that the natives went off to her. Several of them went on board without the least ceremony, and drawing their knives, made signs to the officer, and the other people upon deck, to keep off, and began to search for plunder. The first thing they laid hold of was the rudder of one of our boats, which they immediately threw overboard to those of their party who had continued in the canoes. But before they had time to find another object that struck their fancy, the ship's crew were alarmed, and many of them, armed with cutlasses, came upon deck. On observing this, the plunderers all sneaked off into their canoes, with evident marks of indifference. It was at this time, that our boat was occupied in sounding, as we have already mentioned; and the natives, without delay, proceeded towards her, after the disappointment they had met with at the Discovery. Their visiting us so early in the morning was undoubtedly with a view of plundering, on a supposition that they should find all our people asleep.

From the circumstances above related, it may reasonably be inferred, that these people are not acquainted with fire arms. For, had they known any thing of their effect, they would by no means have ventured to attempt carrying off a boat from under a ship's guns, in the face of upwards of a hundred men; for most of the Resolution's people were looking at them, at the very instant of their making the attempt. However, we

left them as ignorant, in this particular, as we found them ; for they neither saw nor heard a musquet fired, except at birds.

As we were on the point of weighing anchor, in order to proceed further up the bay, the wind began to blow as violently as before, and was attended with rain ; insomuch that we were obliged to bear away the cable again, and lie fast. In the evening, perceiving that the gale did not abate, and thinking that it might be some time before an opportunity of getting higher up presented itself, the Commodore was determined to heel the ship in our present station ; and, with that view, caused her to be moored with a kedge-anchor and hawser. One of the sailors, in heaving the anchor out of the boat, was carried over board by the buoy-rope, and accompanied the anchor to the bottom. In this very hazardous situation, he had sufficient presence of mind to disengage himself, and come up to the surface of the water, where he was immediately taken up, with a dangerous fracture in one of his legs. Early the following morning, we heeled the ship, in order to stop the leak, which, on ripping off the sheathing, was found to be in the seams. While the carpenters were employed in this business, others of our people filled the water casks at a stream not far from our station. The wind had, by this time, considerably abated ; but the weather was hazy, with rain. The Americans paid us another visit this morning : those who came off first, were in small canoes ; others arrived afterwards in large ones. In one of these great canoes were twenty women and one man, besides several children.

On Saturday the 16th, towards the evening, the weather cleared up, and then we found ourselves encompassed with land. Our station was on the eastern side of the Sound, in a place distinguished by the appellation of Snug Corner Bay. Captain Cook, accompanied by some of his officers, went to take a survey of the head of it ; and they found that it was sheltered from all winds and had a muddy bottom at the depth of from seven to three

A View of Snug Corner Cove in Prince William's Sound.

R. B. Smith & Co. New York.

Cock's Voyages



Withy & Bewick Sculp.
A View of St. George's Cove in Davis's Strait.

und
red,

r, in
an to
rain;
cable
at the
some
o pre-
el the
caused
awfer.
e boat,
ecom-
azard-
to dif-
water,
langer-
lowng
he leak,
to be in
d in this
er casks
nd had
weather
another
were in
nes. In
and one

ing, the
s encom
tern fid
pellatio
anied b
e head o
ll wind
seven
thru

three fathoms
wooded,
covered with
woods. The
were covered
greater distance
rocks, in view

The lead
we weighed
ing, and found
at E. N. E.
cans visited
to gratify the
traffic with the
western people
observed the
same channel
circumstances
of a passage
did not make
the point
ground and
ed us, and we
so that we
from the day
about one
fathoms was
leagues to the
the weather
cleared up
of all the
north, where
little hope
he might be
Cook sent Mr
the northern
Master, with
that seemed
returned at

three fathoms. The land near the shore is low; partly wooded, and partly clear. The clear ground was covered with snow, but very little remained in the woods. The summits of the hills in the neighbourhood were covered with wood; but those that were at a greater distance inland, had the appearance of naked rocks, involved in snow.

The leak of the *Resolution* being at length stopped, we weighed anchor on the 17th, at four in the morning, and steered a N. W. course, with a gentle breeze at E. N. E. Soon after we had made sail, the Americans visited us again, seemingly with no other view than to gratify their curiosity, for they did not enter into any traffic with us. When we had reached the north-western point of the arm wherein we had anchored, we observed that the flood tide came into the inlet, by the same channel through which we had entered. This circumstance did not much contribute to the probability of a passage to the north through the inlet, though it did not make entirely against it. After we had passed the point just mentioned, we met with much foul ground and many funken rocks. The wind now failed us, and was succeeded by calms and variable light airs, so that we had some difficulty in extricating ourselves from the danger that threatened us. At last, however, about one o'clock, we cast anchor in about thirteen fathoms water, under the eastern shore, about four leagues to the northward of our last station. Though the weather, in the morning, had been very hazy, it cleared up afterwards, so as to afford us a distinct view of all the surrounding land, particularly towards the north, where it appeared to close. This gave us but little hope of meeting with a passage that way. That he might be enabled to form a better judgment, Captain Cook sent Mr Gore, with two armed boats, to examine the northern arm; and at the same time dispatched the Master, with two other boats, to survey another arm that seemed to incline towards the east. Both of them returned at night. The Master informed the Commo-

dore, that the arm, to which he had been sent, communicated with that we had last quitted, and that one side of it was formed by a cluster of islands. Mr Gore reported, that he had seen the entrance of an arm, which, he thought, extended a very considerable way to the north-eastward, and by which a passage might probably be found. On the other hand, Mr Roberts, one of the Mates, who had accompanied Mr Gore on this occasion, gave it as his opinion, that they saw the head of this arm. The variation of these two opinions, and the circumstance before mentioned of the flood tide entering the inlet from the southward, rendered the existence of a passage this way extremely uncertain. Captain Cook therefore determined to employ no more time in seeking a passage in a place that afforded so small a prospect of success, particularly as the wind was now become favourable for getting out to sea.

The next morning, about three o'clock, we weighed, and made sail to the southward down the inlet, with a light northerly breeze. We met with the same broken ground as on the preceding day, but soon extricated ourselves from it. We were enabled to shorten our way out to sea, by discovering another passage into this inlet, to the S. W. of that by which we entered. It is separated from the other, by an island that extends eighteen leagues in the direction of S. W. and N. E. to which Captain Cook gave the appellation of Montagu Island.

There are several islands in this south-western channel. Those which are situate in the entrance, next the open sea, are elevated and rocky. Those that are within, are low; and as they were totally free from snow, and covered with wood and verdure, they were, for this reason, denominated Green Islands.

The wind, at two o'clock in the afternoon, veered to the S. W. and S. W. by S. which subjected us to the necessity of plying. We first stretched over to within the distance of two miles of the eastern shore, and tacked in about fifty-three fathoms. As we stood back to

Montagu

Montagu
under w
wards m
channel.
the night
Montagu
that we c
break of
Green Isl
leagues a
siderable
ing, we h
at the dep
tom, abou
Island. A
the succee
the N. wi
Having g
we discov
the eye co

Montagu Island, we discovered a ledge of rocks, some under water, and others above the surface. We afterwards met with some others towards the middle of the channel. These rocks rendering it unsafe to ply during the night, we spent it in standing off and on, under Montagu Island; for the depth of water was so great, that we could not cast anchor. The next morning, at break of day, we steered for the channel between the Green Islands and Montagu Island, which is about two leagues and an half in breadth. The wind was inconsiderable the whole day; and, about eight in the evening, we had a perfect calm; when we let go our anchors at the depth of twenty one fathoms, over a muddy bottom, about the distance of two miles from Montagu Island. After the calm had continued till ten o'clock the succeeding morning, a slight breeze sprung up from the N. with which we again weighed and made sail. Having got out into the open sea by six in the evening, we discovered that the coast trended W. by S. as far as the eye could possibly reach.

Extent

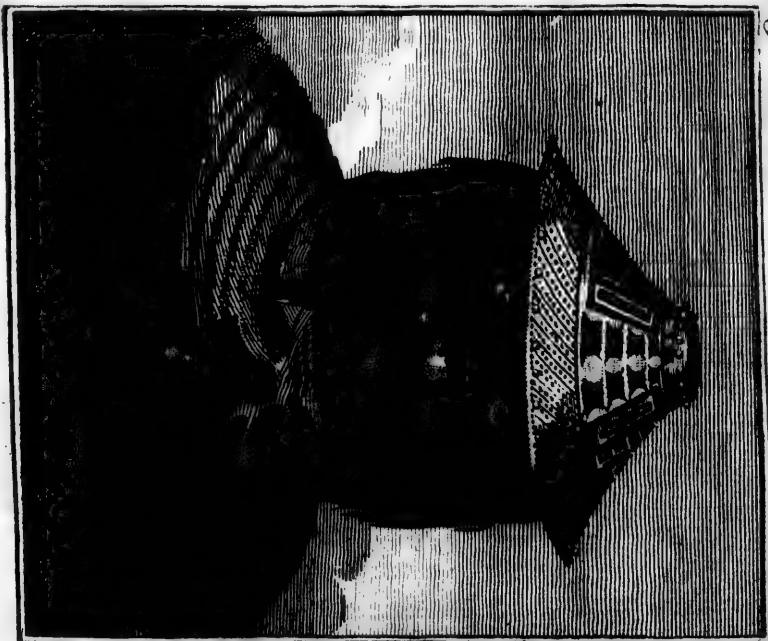
Extent of Prince William's Sound—The Persons of the Inhabitants described—Their Dress—Remarkable Custom of making an Incision in the Under-Lip—Their various Ornaments—Canoes—Weapons—Armour—Domestic Utensils—Their Skill in all manual Works—Their Food—A Specimen of their Language—Quadrupeds—Birds—Fish—Trees—Conjectures whence they procure Beads and Iron.

THE inlet which we had now quitted, was distinguished by Captain Cook with the name of Prince William's Sound. From what we saw of it, it seems to occupy, at least, one degree and an half of latitude, and two degrees of longitude, exclusive of the branches or arms, with whose extent we are unacquainted. The natives whom we saw, were in general of a middling stature, though many of them were under it. They were square, or strong chested, with short thick necks, and large broad visages, which were, for the most part, rather flat. The most disproportioned part of their body appeared to be their heads, which were of great magnitude. Their teeth were of a tolerable whiteness, broad, well set, and equal in size. Their noses had full, round points, turned up at the tip; and their eyes, though not small, were scarcely proportioned to the largeness of their faces. They had black hair, which was strong, straight, and thick. Their beards were, in general, thin, or deficient; but the hairs growing about the lips of those who have them, were bristly or stiff, and often of a brownish colour; and some of the elderly men had large, thick, straight beards.

Though, for the most part, they agree in the formation of their persons, and the largeness of their heads,

the

.M.A. and W.O. v. 1. v. 1. of Prince William's Sound.



Max and Max of Prince Williams Sound.

Reddy & Smith's Seal.

In-
of
Dr-
sili
-A
Fish
ron.

vin-
ince
as to
and
es or
The
lling
They
ecks,
part,
their
great
nefs,
full,
eyes,
to the
hich
re, in
about
stiff,
derly

rma-
eads,
the

the variety
however,
countenances
good-natured
and full of
women and
pally the
from the
features.
of the ch
Many of
swarthy c
as it is no

The m
clothed in
sort of c
reaches c
angles. I
to admit
These fro
imals, such
seal, &c.
side outw
made of t
them, wh
saw one o
the inhabi
where the
usually ad
cut out of
collar to a
other is th
stitute the
this, wher
degree of
some othe
resemble, i
is formed
its sleeves

the variety in their features is considerable. Very few, however, can be said to be handsome, though their countenance usually indicates frankness, vivacity, and good-nature; and yet some of them shewed a reserve and sullenness in their aspect. The faces of some of the women are agreeable; and many of them, but principally the younger ones, may easily be distinguished from the other sex, by the superior delicacy of their features. The complexion of some of the females, and of the children, is white, without any mixture of red. Many of the men, whom we saw naked, had rather a swarthy cast, which was scarcely the effect of any stain, as it is not their custom to paint their bodies.

The men, women, and children of this Sound, are all clothed in the same manner. Their ordinary dress is a sort of close frock, or rather robe, which sometimes reaches only to the knees, but generally down to the ankles. It has, at the upper part, a hole just sufficient to admit the head, with sleeves reaching to the wrist. These frocks are composed of the skins of various animals, such as the grey fox, racoon, pine martin, sea otter, seal, &c. and they are commonly worn with the hairy side outwards. Some of the natives have their frocks made of the skins of fowls, with only the down left on them, which they glue upon other substances: we also saw one or two woollen garments, resembling those of the inhabitants of King George's Sound. At the seams, where the different skins are sewed together, they are usually adorned with fringes or tassels of narrow thongs, cut out of the same skins. There is a sort of cape or collar to a few of them, and some have a hood; but the other is the most customary form, and appears to constitute their whole dress in fair weather. They put over this, when it is rainy, another frock, made with some degree of ingenuity from the intestines of whales, or of some other large animal, prepared with such skill, as to resemble, in a great measure, our gold beaters' leaf. It is formed so as to be drawn tight round the neck; and its sleeves extend down to the wrist, round which they
are

are fastened with a string. When they are in their canoes, they draw the skirts of this frock over the rim of the hole in which they sit, so that the water is prevented from entering. At the same time it keeps the men dry upwards, for no water can penetrate through it. It is apt to crack or break, if it is not constantly kept moist. This frock, as well as the common one made of skins, is nearly similar to the dress of the natives of Greenland, as described by Crantz.*

Though the inhabitants of this inlet, in general, do not cover their legs or feet, yet some of them wear a kind of skin stockings, reaching half way up their thighs. Few of them are without mittens for their hands, formed from the skins of a bear's paws. Those who wear any thing on their heads, resembled, in this particular, the people of Nootka, having high truncated conical caps, composed of straw, and sometimes of wood.

The hair of the men is commonly cropped round the forehead and neck, but the females suffer it to grow long; and the greatest part of them tie a lock of it on the crown, while a few club it behind after our method. Both the men and women perforate their ears with several holes, about the outer and lower part of the edge, wherein they suspend small bunches of beads. They also perforate the *septum* of the nose, through which they often thrust the quill feathers of birds, or little bending ornaments, made of a tubulous shelly substance, strung on a stiff cord, of the length of three or four inches, which give them a ridiculous and grotesque appearance. But the most extraordinary ornamental fashion, adopted by some of the natives of both sexes, is their having the under lip cut quite through lengthwise, rather below the swelling part. This incision frequently exceeds two inches in length, and either by its natural retraction while the wound is still fresh, or by the repetition of some artificial management, assumes the appearance and shape of lips, and becomes sufficiently

* Crantz's History of Greenland, Vol. I. p. 136—138.

ly large to admit the tongue through. This happened to be the case, when a person with his under lip thus slit was first seen by one of our sailors, who immediately exclaimed, that the man had two mouths; which, indeed, it greatly resembles. They fix in this artificial mouth a flat, narrow kind of ornament, made principally out of a solid shell or bone, cut into small narrow pieces, like teeth, almost down to the base, or thick part, which has, at each end, a projecting bit, that serves to support it when put into the divided lip; the cut part then appearing outwards. Some of them only perforate the lower lip into separate holes; on which occasion the ornament consists of the same number of distinct shelly studs, the points of which are thrust through these holes, and their heads appear within the lip, not unlike another row of teeth under their natural ones.

Such are the native ornaments of these people. But we observed among them many beads of European manufacture, chiefly of a pale blue colour, which are hung in their ears, or about their caps, or are joined to their lip ornaments, which have a little hole drilled in each of the points to which they are fastened, and others to them, till they sometimes even hang as low as the point of the chin. In this last case, however, they cannot remove them with such facility; for, with respect to their own lip ornaments, they can take them out with their tongue at pleasure. They likewise wear bracelets of beads made of a shelly substance, or others of a cylindrical form, composed of a substance resembling amber. And they are, in general, so fond of ornaments of some kind, or other, that they fix any thing in their perforated lip; for one of them appeared with two of our iron nails projecting like prongs from it; and another man attempted to put a large brass button into it.

The men often paint their faces of a black colour, and of a bright red, and sometimes of a blueish or leaden hue; but not in any regular figure. The women puncture or stain the chin with black, that comes to a point in each of their cheeks; a custom similar to

which is in vogue among the Greenland females, as we are informed by Crantz. The bodies of these people are not painted, which may probably be owing to the scarcity of materials for that purpose; all the colours which they brought for sale, being in very small quantities. Upon the whole, we have in no country seen savages who take more pains than these do, to ornament, or rather (as we should think) to disfigure their persons.

Their canoes are of two sorts; the one large and open, the other small and covered. We have mentioned before, that there were twenty women, and one man, besides children, in one of their large boats. Captain Cook having attentively examined this, and compared its construction with Crantz's description of the great, or women's boat in Greenland, found that they were built in the same mode, with no other difference than in the form of the head and stern, particularly of the former, which somewhat resembles a whale's head. The framing consists of slender pieces of wood; and the outside is composed of the skins of seals, or other sea animals, stretched over the wood. The small canoes of these people, are constructed nearly of the same form and materials with those of the Esquimaux and Greenlanders. Some of these, as we have already mentioned, carry two persons. Their fore part is curved like the head of a violin; and they are broader in proportion to their length than those of the Esquimaux.

Their weapons, and implements for hunting and fishing, are the same with those used by the Greenlanders and Esquimaux. Many of their spears are headed with iron, and their arrows are generally pointed with bone. Their larger darts are thrown by means of a piece of wood about a foot long, with a small groove in the middle, which receives the dart: at the bottom is a hole for the reception of one finger, which enables them to grasp the piece of wood much firmer, and to throw with greater force. For defensive armour they have a sort of jacket, or coat of mail, formed of laths,
fastened

fastened to
flexible, th
arrow. It
and may,
worn by

We had
habitations
bay where
ed. With

in their ca
rather shall
siderably de
round, afte
and neatly
fixed in w

somewhat
unlike a lar
shallower:

some horn
carved. T

of the sam
adorned wi
it, in which

bundles of
extraordinar
wooden m

wrought so
number of

inches, eith
with a piece

with hair fi
mine wheth
toys, or wer

deceased fri
superstitious
formed of tw
wood, havin
they are hel
ornacle shel

fastened together with sinews, which render it very flexible, though it is so close as not to admit a dart or arrow. It serves only to cover the trunk of the body, and may, not improperly, be compared to the stays worn by women.

We had not an opportunity of seeing any of the habitations of the natives, as none of them dwelt in the bay where our ships anchored, or where any of us landed. With respect to their domestic utensils, they brought, in their canoes, some round and oval wooden dishes, rather shallow; and others of a cylindrical form, considerably deeper. The sides consisted of one piece, bent round, after the manner of our chip boxes, but thick, and neatly fastened with thongs; the bottoms being fixed in with small pegs of wood. Others were somewhat smaller, and of a more elegant figure, not unlike a large oval butter boat, without any handle, but shallower: these were composed of a piece of wood, or some horny substance, and were sometimes neatly carved. They had a number of little square bags, made of the same gut with their exterior frocks, curiously adorned with very small red feathers interwoven with it, in which were contained several very fine sinews, and bundles of small cord, made out of them, plaited with extraordinary ingenuity. They likewise brought some wooden models of their canoes, chequered baskets, wrought so closely as to hold water, and a considerable number of small images, of the length of four or five inches, either of wood, or stuffed, which were covered with a piece of fur, and embellished with quill feathers, with hair fixed on their heads. We could not determine whether these were intended merely as children's toys, or were held in veneration, as representing their deceased friends and relations, and applied to some superstitious purpose. They have many instruments formed of two or three hoops, or concentric pieces of wood, having a cross bar fixed in the middle, by which they are held. To these they fix a number of dried barnacle shells, with threads, which, when shaken, pro-

duce a loud noise, and thus serve the purpose of a rattle. This contrivance is probably a substitute for the rattling bird at King George's Sound.

It is uncertain with what tools their wooden utensils, frames of canoes, &c. are made; the only one that we observed among them being a sort of stone adze, somewhat resembling those of Otaheite, and other islands of the Pacific Ocean. They have a great quantity of iron knives, some of which are rather curved, others straight, and some very small ones, fixed in longish handles, with the blades bent upwards. They have also knives of another sort, sometimes almost two feet in length, shaped in a great measure, like a dagger, with a ridge towards the middle. They wear these in sheaths of skins, hung by a thong round their necks, under their robe or frock. It is probable, that they use them only as weapons, and that their other knives are applied to different purposes. Whatever they have, is as well made as if they were provided with a complete chest of tools; and their plaiting of sinews, sewing, and small work on their little bags above mentioned, may be said to vie with the neatest manufactures found in any part of the globe. Upon the whole, considering the uncivilized state of the natives of this Sound, their northerly situation, amidst a country almost continually covered with snow, and the comparatively wretched materials they have to work with, it appears, that, with respect to their skill and invention, in all manual operations, they are at least equal to any other people.

The food that we saw them eat, was the flesh of some animal, either roasted or broiled, and dried fish. Some of the former that was purchased, had the appearance of bear's flesh. They likewise eat a larger sort of fern root, either baked or dressed in some other method. Some of us observed them eat freely of a substance, which we imagined was the interior part of the pine bark. Their drink, in all probability, is water; for, in their canoes, they brought snow in wooden vessels, which they swallowed by mouthfuls. Their manner of eating is decent

and

and cle
any dir
they wo
they did
persons
utensils,
were all

The l
understo
fusion of
significa
peared t
very diff
had a lo
proved t
few wor
enabled t
give me
name of
sea otter
go? keela
give me
whaebai.

Our k
American
that were
principall
otters, se
whitish c
most com
otters, wh
ple; but t
of a far lig
ly superior
of the sea
much mor
considerab
their fur,
to size; an

and cleanly, for they constantly took care to remove any dirt that might adhere to their food; and though they would sometimes eat the raw fat of some sea animal, they did not fail to cut it carefully into mouthfuls. Their persons were, to appearance, always clean; and their utensils, in general, were kept in excellent order, as were also their boats.

The language of these people seems difficult to be understood; which is, perhaps, not owing to any confusion or indistinctness in their sounds, but to the various significations which their words bear. For they appeared frequently to make use of the same word on very different occasions; though, probably, if we had had a longer intercourse with them, this might have proved to be a mistake on our part. Among the very few words of their language that Mr Anderson was enabled to procure, are the following, viz. *aa*, yes; *keeta*, give me something; *tarwuk*, keep it; *akashou*, what's the name of that? *namuk*, an ear ornament; *natooneshuk*, a sea otter's skin; *ableu*, a spear; *yaut*, I'll go, or, shall I go? *keelashuk*, guts of which they make jackets; *naema*, give me something by way of exchange, or barter; *whaebai*, shall I keep it? *oonaka*, of, or belonging to me.

Our knowledge of the animals of this part of the American continent, is entirely derived from the skins that were brought by the natives for sale. These were principally of bears, common and pine martins, sea otters, seals, racoons, small ermines, foxes, and the whitish cat or lynx. Among these various skins, the most common were those of racoons, martins, and sea otters, which constituted the ordinary dress of these people; but the skins of the martins, which were in general of a far lighter brown than those of Nootka, were greatly superior to them in point of fineness; whereas those of the sea otters, which, as well as the martins, were much more plentiful here than at Nootka, seemed to be considerably inferior in the thickness and fineness of their fur, though they far exceeded them with respect to size; and were, for the most part, of the glossy black
fort,

sort. The skins of seals and bears were also pretty common; and the former were in general white, beautifully spotted with black; or sometimes simply white; and many of the bears here were of a dark brown hue.

Besides these animals, there is here the white bear, of whose skins the natives brought several pieces, and some complete skins of cubs. There is also the wolverene, or quickhatch, whose skin has very bright colours; and a larger species of ermine than the common one, varied with brown, and having scarcely any black on its tail. The skin of the head of some very large animal was likewise brought to us, but we could not positively decide what it was; though, from the colour and shagginess of the hair, and its not resembling any land animal, we conjectured that it might be that of the male urline seal, or sea bear. But one of the most beautiful skins that fell under our observation, is that of a small animal near a foot in length, of a brown colour on the back, with a number of obscure whitish specks, the sides being of a blueish ash colour, with a few of these specks. The tail is about a third part of the length of the body, and is covered with whitish hair. This animal is doubtless the same with that which is called by Mr Stæhlin, in his account of the New Northern Archipelago, the spotted field mouse. But whether it is really of the mouse kind, or a squirrel, we could not determine, for want of entire skins; though Mr Anderson was inclined to imagine, that it is the same animal which Mr Pennant has described under the appellation of the Casan marmot. The great number of skins that we observed here, demonstrates the abundance of the various animals we have mentioned; but it is somewhat remarkable, that we neither met with the skins of the moose, nor of the common species of deer.

With respect to birds, we found here the *halcyon*, or great king fisher, which had fine bright colours; the shag; the white headed eagle; and the humming bird, which often flew about our ships, while we lay at anchor; though it can scarcely be supposed to live here during

during the
The water
red bills, f
Diemen's
resembling
and another
ed. Some
snipe, a g
water fow
ducks, they
within sho
very incor
The duck
common w
a short po
the point v
square, nea
what diste
white spot
still larger.
duller than
ornaments
which are r

A species
was observe
and has a sh
the upper p
the remaind
waved with
tally of a bla
also found a
size of a yel
of those whi
with their d
a dusky bro
male had, o
with some v
but the latter

The fish t

during the winter, which must be extremely severe. The water fowl seen by us were black sea pyes, with red bills, such as we met with in New Zealand and Van Diemen's Land; geese; a small sort of duck, nearly resembling that species we saw at Kerguelen's Land; and another sort with which none of us were acquainted. Some of our people who went ashore, killed a snipe, a grouse, and some plovers. But though the water fowl were numerous, particularly the geese and ducks, they were so shy that it was scarce possible to get within shot; in consequence of which, we procured a very inconsiderable supply of them as refreshment. The duck before mentioned is about the size of the common wild duck, of a deep black, with red feet, and a short pointed tail. Its bill is white, tinged towards the point with red, and has a large black spot, almost square, near its base, on each side, where it is also somewhat distended. On the forehead is a large triangular white spot; and on the hinder part of the neck is one still larger. The colours of the female are considerably duller than those of the male; and it has none of the ornaments of the bill, excepting the two black spots, which are rather obscure.

A species of diver, which seems peculiar to this place, was observed here. It is equal to a partridge in size, and has a short, black, compressed bill. Its head, and the upper part of its neck, are of a brownish black; and the remainder of its body is of a deep brown, obscurely waved with black, except the under part, which is totally of a blackish cast, minutely varied with white. We also found a small land bird, of the finch kind, about the size of a yellow hammer; but we imagined it to be one of those which change their colour with the season, and with their different migrations. It was, at this time, of a dusky brown, with a reddish tail; and the supposed male had, on the crown of the head, a large yellow spot, with some varied black on the upper part of its neck; but the latter was on the breast of the female.

The fish that were principally brought to us by the natives

natives for sale, were torrk and halibut; and we caught some sculpins about the ship, with star fish of a purplish hue, that had sixteen or eighteen rays. The rocks were almost destitute of shell fish; and the only other animal of this tribe that was observed by us, was a reddish crab, covered with very large spines.

The metals seen by us were iron and copper; both which, but more particularly the former, were in such abundance, as to form the points of numbers of their lances and arrows. The ores which they made use of to paint themselves with, were a brittle, unctuous, red ochre, or iron ore; a pigment of a bright blue; and black lead. Each of these seemed to be very scarce among them.

We observed few vegetables of any kind; and the trees that chiefly grew about this sound, were the Canadian and spruce pine, some of which were of a considerable size.

These people must, doubtless, have received from some more civilized nation, the beads and iron found among them. We were almost certain, that we were the first Europeans with whom they had ever had a direct communication; and it remains only to be determined from what quarter they had procured our manufactures by intermediate conveyance. And it is more than probable, that they had obtained these articles, through the intervention of the more inland tribes, either from the settlements about Hudson's Bay, or those on the lakes of Canada; unless we can admit the supposition that the Russians, from Kamtschatka, have already extended their traffic to this distance; or that the natives of their most easterly Fox Islands carry on an intercourse along the coast, with the inhabitants of Prince William Sound.

With respect to copper, these people, perhaps, procure it themselves, or, at most, it passes to them through few hands; for, when they offered any of it by way of barter, they used to express its being in sufficient plenty among them, by pointing to their weapons;

if they mean per of their their stock.

If, however, with European diate traffic that they more inland which would or other, in does not appear by which w ing the ver not prevent coming so fi the skins, w more than t them for the they reckoned animals, toward European set

if they meant to intimate, that, as they had so much copper of their own, there was no occasion for increasing their stock.

If, however, the natives of this inlet are furnished with European commodities by means of the intermediate traffic to the eastern coast, it is rather remarkable, that they should never, in return, have supplied the more inland Indians with some of their sea otter skins, which would undoubtedly have appeared, at some time, or other, in the environs of Hudson's Bay. But that does not appear to be the case; and the only method by which we can account for this, must be by considering the very great distance; which, though it might not prevent European articles of commerce from coming so far, as being so uncommon, might hinder the skins, which are common, from passing through more than two or three tribes, who might make use of them for their own clothing, and send others, which they reckoned of inferior value, as being of their own animals, towards the E. till they reach the traders at the European settlements.

Proceed along the Coast—Cape Elizabeth—Cape St Hermogenes—Beering's Voyage and Chart very defective—Point Banks—Barren Isles—Cape Douglas—Cape Bede—Mount St Augustin—Endeavour to find a Passage up an Inlet—Both Ships make a Progress up it—Convincing Proofs of its being a River—A Branch of it called River Turnagain—The great River named Cook's River—The Ships return—Several Visits from the Natives—Lieutenant King lands, displays a Flag, and takes Possession of the Country—His Reception by the Natives—The Resolution strikes upon a Bank—The high Tides accounted for.

LEAVING Prince William's Sound, on Wednesday the 20th of May, we steered to the S. W. with a gentle breeze; which was succeeded by a calm at four o'clock the next morning, and that calm was soon after followed by a breeze from S. W. We continued to stretch to the S. W. and passed a lofty promontory, in the latitude of 59 d. 10 m. and the longitude of 207 d. 45 m. It having been discovered on Princess Elizabeth's birth day, Captain Cook gave it the name of Cape Elizabeth. As we could see no land beyond it, we flattered ourselves that it was the western extremity of the continent; but we were soon convinced that we were mistaken, fresh land appearing in sight, bearing W. S. W. The wind had now increased to a strong gale, and forced us to a considerable distance from the coast. On the 22d, in the afternoon, the gale abated, and we stood for Cape Elizabeth; which, about noon the next day, bore W. distant ten leagues. New land

was

was then
connected
towards the

We stood
which time
which we
formed a p
discovered,
seen a ridge
snow, behind
an island, t
quantity of
58 d. 15 m
what the
Voyage and
Cape St He
as well as th
almost impo
navigator ei
indeed, was
he had nam
had anchore

In the cha
out, where
This favour
St Hermoge
the S. W. of
mogenes is
This appear
and we ente
passage north
proceeding a

By variabl
the Cape till
when a breeze
and perceive
was an islan
parated from
in breadth,

was then seen, bearing S. W. which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with the land we had seen towards the W.

We stood to the southward till the next day at noon, at which time we were about three leagues from the coast, which we had seen on the 22d. In this situation, it formed a point, that bore W. N. W. More land was discovered, extending to the southward; on which was seen a ridge of mountains, with summits covered with snow, behind the first land, which we supposed to be an island, there appearing on it but an inconsiderable quantity of snow. The latitude of this point of land is 58 d. 15 m. and its longitude 207 d. 42 m. And, by what the Commodore could gather from Beering's Voyage and Chart, he supposed it to be what he called Cape St Hermogenes. But the account of that voyage, as well as the chart, is so extremely inaccurate, that it is almost impossible to discover any one place, which that navigator either saw or touched at. The Commodore, indeed, was by no means certain, that the bay which he had named after Beering, was the place where he had anchored.

In the chart above mentioned, a space is here pointed out, where Beering is supposed to have seen no land. This favoured Mr Stæhlin's account, who makes Cape St Hermogenes, and the land discovered by Beering to the S. W. of it, to be a cluster of islands; and that St Hermogenes is one of those which are destitute of wood. This appeared to be confirmed by what we now saw; and we entertained the pleasing hopes of finding here a passage northward, without being under the necessity of proceeding any farther to the S. W.

By variable light airs and calms, we were detained off the Cape till two o'clock in the morning of the 25th, when a breeze springing up, we steered along the coast, and perceived that the land of Cape St Hermogenes was an island, about six leagues in circumference, separated from the coast by a channel of about one league in breadth. Some rocks lie above water, a league and

a half to the N. of this island; and on the N. E. side of the rocks, we had from thirty to twenty fathoms water.

About noon, St Hermogenes bore S. E. distant eight leagues; the land to the N. W. extending from S. half W. to near W. In the last direction, it ended in a low point named Point Banks. The ship was, at this time, in the latitude of 58 d. 41 m. and in the longitude of 207 d. 44 m. In this situation, the land was in sight, bearing N. W. which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with this S. W. land. When we approached it, we saw it was a group of high islands and rocks, and consequently unconnected with any other land. From the nakedness of their appearance, they were denominated the Barren Isles: they are situated in the latitude of 59 d. three leagues distant from Cape Elizabeth, and five from Point Banks.

We intended to have passed through one of the channels by which these islands are divided; but, a strong current setting against us, we went to the leeward of them all. The weather, which had been thick and hazy, cleared up towards the evening, and we perceived a very lofty promontory, whose elevated summit appeared above the clouds, forming two exceedingly high mountains. The Commodore named this promontory Cape Douglas, in honour of his friend Dr Douglas, canon of Windsor. Its latitude is 58 d. 56 m. and its longitude 206 d. 10 m. twelve leagues from Point Banks, and ten to the westward of the Barren Isles.

The coast seemed to form a large deep bay, between this point and Cape Douglas; which, from our observing some smoke upon Point Banks, received the name of Smokey Bay. On the 26th, at day break, being to northward of the Barren Isles, we perceived more land, extending from Cape Douglas to the N. It consisted of a chain of very high mountains; one of which, being much more conspicuous than the rest, obtained the name of Mount St Augustin.

We were not discouraged at perceiving this land, supposing it to be wholly unconnected with the land of Cape

Cape Elizabeth
the N. W.
Augustin.
the N. of Ca
separated by
have chosen
Flattered
N. N. E. we
we were full
be islands, v
the lower lan
distance, on
This land w
of the moun
every other
Captain Co
discover no
in the search
confirm his
Mount St
three leagues
conical figure
the continen
nothing was
Elizabeth, un
afternoon.

Between C
named Cape
to be two inu
might have
water; but, t
we tacked, and
gale, accompa
gale abated th
in the afternoo

* This name,
our calendar.

Cape Elizabeth. We also expected to find a passage to the N. W. between Cape Douglas and Mount St Augustin. It was, indeed, imagined, that the land to the N. of Cape Douglas, consisted of a group of islands, separated by so many channels, any of which we might have chosen, according to the direction of the wind.

Flattered with these ideas, and having a fresh gale at N. N. E. we stood to the N. W. till eight o'clock, when we were fully convinced, that what we had supposed to be islands, were summits of mountains, connected by the lower land, which we could not perceive at a greater distance, on account of the haziness of the horizon. This land was covered wholly with snow, from the tops of the mountains down to the sea beach; and had, in every other respect, the appearance of a great continent. Captain Cook was now fully convinced, that he should discover no passage by this inlet: and his persevering in the search of it, was more to satisfy others, than to confirm his own opinion.

Mount St Augustin, at this time, bore N. W. about three leagues distant. It is of a vast height, and of a conical figure; but whether it be an island, or part of the continent, is not ascertained. Perceiving that nothing was to be done to the W. we stood over to Cape Elizabeth, under which we fetched at about five in the afternoon.

Between Cape Elizabeth and a lofty promontory, named Cape Bede*, is a bay, in which there appeared to be two snug harbours. We stood into this bay, and might have anchored there in twenty-three fathoms water; but, the Commodore having no such intention, we tacked, and stood to the westward, with a very strong gale, accompanied with rain and hazy weather. The gale abated the next morning, and about three o'clock in the afternoon, the weather cleared up; Cape Douglas bearing

* This name, and that of Mount St Augustin, were directed by our calendar.

bearing S. W. by W. and the depth of water being forty fathoms, over a rocky bottom.

The coast from Cape Bede, trended N. E. by E. with a chain of mountains inland, in the same direction. On the coast, the land was woody, and there appeared to be some commodious harbours. We had the mortification, however, to discover low land in the middle of the inlet, extending from N. N. E. to N. E. by E. but, as it was supposed to be an island, we were not much discouraged. About this time we steered, with a light breeze, to the westward of this low land; as, in that direction, there was no appearance of obstruction. Our soundings were from thirty to twenty-five fathoms.

In the morning of the 28th, having but little wind, the ship drove to the southward; and, in order to stop her, we dropped a kedge-anchor, with an eight-inch hauser. But, in bringing the ship up, we lost both that and the anchor. We brought the ship up, however, with one of the bowers, and spent a considerable part of the day in sweeping for them, but without effect. We were now in the latitude of 59 d. 51 m. the low land extended from N. E. to S. E. the nearest part distant about two leagues. The land on the western shore was distant about seven leagues. A strong tide set to the southward, out of the inlet; it was the ebb, and ran almost four knots in an hour. At ten o'clock it was low water. Great quantities of sea-weed, and some drift-wood, were taken out with the tide. Though the water had become thick, and resembled that in rivers, we were encouraged to proceed, by finding it as salt as the ocean, even at low water. Three knots was the strength of the flood tide; and the stream continued to run up till four in the afternoon.

Having a calm the whole day, we moved with a light breeze at east, at eight o'clock in the evening, and stood to the north up the inlet. The wind, soon after, veered to the north, increased to a fresh gale, and blew in squalls, with some rain. But this did not hinder us

from

from plying
till the next
from thirty-
anchored ab
where our la
we supposed
shore, distant
The weath
could see any
was visible to
But a ridge o
behind each
Cook suppose
the ebb ran d
smoke were n
sign that inh
in the afterno
sails, having a
We stretch
to have taken
ing suddenly f
seeing the ap
the eastward,
under the east
ed in a bluff p
On the 30th
ing, we weig
abated, but sti
near seven, an
ter, under the
Two canoe
ship about no
seen the smok
hour to paddle
a little before t
of them was v
could not und
alking, he kep
from
re supposed to

from plying up while the flood continued, which was till the next morning, at near five o'clock. We had from thirty-five to twenty-four fathoms water. We anchored about two leagues from the eastern shore, where our latitude was 60 d. 8 m. some low land, which we supposed to be an island, lying under the western shore, distant between three and four leagues.

The weather having now become fair and clear, we could see any land within our horizon; when nothing was visible to obstruct our progress in a N. E. direction. But a ridge of mountains appeared on each side, rising behind each other, without any separation. Captain Cook supposed it to be low water about ten o'clock, but the ebb ran down till almost twelve. Two columns of smoke were now visible on the eastern shore; a certain sign that inhabitants were near. We weighed at one in the afternoon, and plied up under double reefed top-sails, having a strong gale at N. E.

We stretched over to the western shore, intending to have taken shelter till the gale should cease; but falling suddenly from forty fathoms water into twelve, and seeing the appearance of a shoal, we stretched back to the eastward, and anchored in nineteen fathoms water, under the eastern shore; the N. W. part of which ended in a bluff point.

On the 30th of May, about two o'clock in the morning, we weighed anchor again, the gale having much abated, but still continuing contrary. We plied up till near seven, and then anchored in nineteen fathoms water, under the shore to the eastward.

Two canoes, with a man in each, came off to the ship about noon, nearly from that part where we had seen the smoke the day before. It cost them some labour to paddle across the strong tide; and they hesitated a little before they dared venture to approach us. One of them was very loquacious, but to no purpose, for we could not understand a syllable he said: while he was talking, he kept pointing continually to the shore, which we supposed to be an invitation for us to go thither.---

Captain

Captain Cook made them a present of a few trifles which he conveyed to them from the quarter gallery.

These people strongly resembled those we had seen in Prince William's Sound, both in dress and person: their canoes were also constructed in the same manner. One of our visitors seemed to have no beard, and his face was painted of a jet black; the other, who was older, was not painted, but he had a large beard, and a countenance like the common sort of the people in the Sound. Smoke was this day seen upon the flat western shore, whence we inferred, that these lower spots only are inhabited.

As we weighed when the flood made, the canoes quit-
ted us. We stood over to the western shore, with a fresh gale, and fetched under the point above-mentioned. This with the point on the opposite shore, contracted the breadth of the channel to about four leagues through which ran a prodigious tide. It had a terrible appearance, as we were ignorant whether the water was thus agitated by the stream, or by the dashing of the waves against sands or rocks. Meeting with no shoal, we concluded it to be the former, but we afterwards found ourselves mistaken.

We kept the western shore aboard, that appearing to be the safest. We had a depth of thirteen fathoms near the shore, and, two or three miles off, upwards of forty. In the evening, about eight o'clock, we anchored under a point of land, bearing N. E. distant about three leagues, and lay there during the ebb.

Till we arrived here, the water retained an equal degree of saltness, both at high and low water, and was as salt as that which is in the ocean; but now the marks of a river evidently displayed themselves. The water which was taken up at this ebb, was much fresher than any we had tasted; whence we concluded that we were in a large river, and not in a strait which had a communication with the northern seas. But, having proceeded thus far, we were anxious to have stronger proof, and, therefore, in the morning of the 31st we weighed

with the flood
little wind.

We were a
the natives, i
The latter had
of the paddles
Esquimaux.

tained in the
ship, they ex
frock; which
able intention
ship, as an ac
Commodore H

No differen
or canoes of
William's Sou
not so large as
man.

We bartered
made of the sk
otters, martins
larts, and a su
them, in exch
and pieces of i

They were
and glass beads
among the inha
atter, as well a
seemed to valu

earnest in askin
ave the name
with their neigh
to have many fi
the same; th
others which

am's Sound, v
ibe. After pa
s, they retire
We anchored

with the flood, and drove up with the tide, having but little wind.

We were attended, about eight o'clock, by many of the natives, in one large canoe, and several small ones. The latter had only one person on board each; and some of the paddles had a blade at each end, like those of the Esquimaux. Men, women, and children, were contained in the large canoes. At some distance, from the ship, they exhibited, on a long pole, a kind of leathern frock; which we interpreted to be a sign of their peaceable intentions. They conveyed this frock into the ship, as an acknowledgment for some trifles which the Commodore had given them.

No difference appeared either in the persons, dress, or canoes of these people, and the natives of Prince William's Sound, except that the small canoes were not so large as those of the Sound, and carried only one man.

We bartered with them for some of their fur dresses, made of the skins of animals; particularly those of sea otters, martins, and hares: we also had a few of their blarts, and a supply of salmon and halibut. We gave them, in exchange for these, some old clothes, beads, and pieces of iron.

They were already possessed of large iron knives, and glass beads of a sky blue colour, such as we saw among the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound. The latter, as well as those which they received of us, they seemed to value highly. But they were particularly earnest in asking for large pieces of iron, to which they gave the name of *goone*; though with them, as well as with their neighbours in the Sound, one word seemed to have many significations. Their language is certainly the same; the words *oonaka*, *keeta*, and *naema*, and a few others which were frequently used in Prince William's Sound, were also commonly used by this new tribe. After passing about two hours between the two ships, they retired to the western shore.

We anchored at nine o'clock, in sixteen fathoms

water, and almost two leagues from the western shore the ebb being already begun. It ran but three knots an hour at its greatest strength; and fell, after we had anchored, twenty one feet upon a perpendicular. The weather was alternately clear and misty, with drizzling rain. When it was clear, we perceived low land between the mountains on the eastern shore, bearing from the station of the ships, which we concluded to be islands between us and the main land. We also beheld low land to the northward, which appeared to extend from the mountains on one side, to those on the other and, at low water, large shoals were seen, stretching out from this low land, from some of which we were not far distant. We doubted, from these appearances, whether the inlet did not take an easterly direction through the above opening; or whether that opening was only a branch of it, the main channel continuing its northern direction. The chain of mountains, on each side of it strongly countenanced the latter supposition.

To be satisfied of these particulars, Captain Cook dispatched two boats; and, when the flood tide made, followed with the two ships: but it being a dead calm, and having a strong tide, we anchored, after driving about ten miles. At the lowest of the ebb, the water at and near the surface was perfectly fresh; though retaining a considerable degree of saltness if taken above a fathom below it. We had this and many other convincing proofs of its being a river: such as thick muddy water, low shores, trees, and rubbish of various kinds, floating backwards and forwards with the tide. In the afternoon we received another visit from the natives, in several canoes, who trafficked considerably with our people without so much as attempting any dishonest action.

At two o'clock in the morning of the first of June the master, who commanded the two boats, returned informing us that he found the inlet, or river, contracted to one league in breadth, and that it took a northern course through low land on each side. He advanced about three leagues through this narrow part, which

four

found from the stream ran but it became so towards him. He went and that to the other fruit tree. About three leagues we saw another chain, through which took a N. E. another branch in a northern direction. The hopes were entertained; but to return again, rather, to get a better order to determine an island, or not. The first of the flood at eight o'clock on to our countenance of the inlet. We anchored. The Captain was so glad against it, made and proceeded. The chief knowledge of all the low land, was one foot of the northern side of this eastern branch of the river. It ran on the N. of the mountains.

found from twenty to seventeen fathoms deep. While the stream ran down, the water was perfectly fresh; but it became brackish when it ran up, and very much so towards high water.

He went ashore upon an island, between this branch and that to the E. and saw some currant bushes; and some other fruit trees and bushes that were unknown to him. About three leagues to the northward of this searh, he saw another separation in the eastern chain of mountains, through which he supposed it probable the river took a N. E. direction; but this, perhaps, was only another branch, and the main channel continued in a northern direction between the two chains of mountains. The hopes of finding a passage were no longer entertained; but as the ebb was spent, and we were unable to return against the tide, we took the advantage of the latter, to get a closer view of the eastern branch; in order to determine whether the low land, on the E. was an island, or not. For this purpose we weighed with the first of the flood, and stood over for the eastern shore. At eight o'clock a breeze sprung up in an opposite direction to our course, so that we despaired of reaching the entrance of the river. The Commodore, therefore, dispatched two boats, under the command of Lieutenant King, to make such observations as might enable us to form some tolerable idea of the nature of the river. We anchored, about ten o'clock, in nine fathoms water. The Commodore, observing the strength of the tide to be so great, that the boats could not make head against it, made a signal for them to return before they had proceeded half way to the entrance of the river. The chief knowledge obtained by this tide's work, was, that all the low land, which we imagined to be an island, was one continued tract from the great river to the foot of the mountains, terminating at the S. entrance of this eastern branch, which the Commodore denominated the river Turnagain. The low land begins again on the N. side of this river, and extends from the foot of the mountains, to the banks of the great river;

forming, before the river Turnagain, a large bay, having from twelve to five fathoms water.

After entering the bay, the flood set very strong into the river Turnagain, and the ebb came out still stronger, the water falling twenty feet upon a perpendicular. From these circumstances, it plainly appeared, that a passage was not to be expected by this side river, any more than by the main branch. But, as the water at ebb, though much fresher, retained a considerable degree of saltness, it is probable that both these branches are navigable by ships much farther; and that a very extensive inland communication lies open, by means of this river and its several branches. We had traced it to the latitude of 61 d. 30 m. and the longitude of 210 d. which is upwards of seventy leagues from its entrance, and saw no appearance of its source.

The time we spent in the discovery of this great river * ought not to be regretted, if it should hereafter prove useful to the present, or any future age. But the delay, thus occasioned, was an essential loss to us, who had an object of greater magnitude in view. The season was far advanced; and it was now evident that the continent of North America extended much farther to the W. than we had reason to expect from the most approved charts. The Commodore, however, had the satisfaction to reflect, that, if he had not examined this very large river, speculative fabricators of geography would have ventured to assert, that it had a communication with the sea to the N. or with Hudson's or Baffin's Bay to the E. and it would probably have been marked on future maps of the world, with as much appearance of precision, as the imaginary straits of de Fuca, and de Fonte.

Mr King was again sent, in the afternoon, with two armed boats, with orders from Captain Cook to land on the

* Captain Cook having here left a blank, Lord Sandwich very judiciously directed it to be called Cook's River.

the S. E. flag; and the count a bottle 1772, and our ship the mea fresh eaf fore a ca found it point wh of two Possession

On M that whe twenty attitude, disposition weapons. observing and requ them do and then walk up sociable a

They fresh salt happenin and, taki dead. A not think walked a concealed close behi was swan produced rose and was not a When

the S. E. side of the river, where he was to display the flag; and in his Majesty's name, to take possession of the country and the river. He was also ordered to bury a bottle in the earth, containing some English coin of 1772, and a paper, whereon were written the names of our ships, and the date of our discovery. The ships, in the mean time, were got under sail. The wind blew fresh easterly, but we had not been long under way before a calm ensued; and the flood tide meeting us, we found it necessary to anchor in six fathoms water; the point where Mr King landed bearing S. at the distance of two miles. This point of land was named Point Possession.

On Mr King's return, he informed the Commodore, that when he approached the shore, he saw eighteen or twenty of the natives with their arms extended; an attitude, he supposed, meant to signify their peaceable disposition, and to convince him that they were without weapons. Seeing Mr King and his attendants land, and observing musquets in their hands, they were alarmed, and requested (by expressive signs) that they would lay them down. This was immediately complied with, and then Mr King and his party were permitted to walk up to them, when they appeared to be very sociable and chearful.

They had with them several dogs, and a few pieces of fresh salmon. Mr Law, Surgeon of the Discovery, happening to be of the party, purchased one of the dogs, and, taking it towards the boat, immediately shot it dead. At this they seemed exceedingly surprized; and, not thinking themselves safe in such company, they walked away; but it presently appeared, that they had concealed their spears and other weapons in the bushes close behind them. Mr King informed us, that the ground was swampy, and the soil poor and light. It, however, produced some pines, alders, birch, and willows; some rose and currant bushes, and a little grass; but there was not a plant in flower to be seen.

When it was high water we weighed anchor, and, with

with a faint breeze, stood over to the W. shore, where we anchored early the next morning, on account of the return of the flood. Presently after we were visited by several of the natives, in canoes, who bartered their skins, and afterwards parted with their garments, many of them returning perfectly naked. Among others, they brought a great quantity of the skins of white rabbits and red foxes, but only two or three of those of otters. We also purchased some pieces of halibut and salmon. They gave iron the preference to every thing we offered them in exchange. The lip ornaments were less in fashion among them than at Prince William's Sound; but those which pass through the nose were more frequent, and, in general, considerably longer. They had, likewise, more embroidered work on their garments, quivers, knife cases, and many other articles.

We weighed at half past ten, and plied down the river with a gentle breeze at S. when, by the inattention of the man at the lead, the Resolution struck, and stuck upon a bank, nearly in the middle of the river. It is pretty certain that this bank occasioned that strong agitation of the stream, with which we were so much surprized when turning up the river. We had twelve feet depth of water about the ship, at the lowest of the ebb, but the bank was dry in other parts.

When the Resolution came aground, Captain Cook made a signal for the Discovery to anchor. We were afterwards informed, that she had been almost ashore on the W. side of the bank. About five o'clock in the afternoon, as the flood tide came in, the ship floated off without sustaining any damage, or occasioning the least trouble. We then stood over to the W. shore, where we anchored, in deep water, to wait for the ebb, the wind being still unfavourable to us.

At ten o'clock at night we weighed with the ebb; and, about five the next morning, (the 3d of June) the tide being finished, we cast anchor on the W. shore, about two miles below the bluff point. When we were in this station we were visited by many of the natives, who

CA

who attend
company
with them
changed
weight of
greatest pa

The mo
entering th
ceived a vo
Its latitude
tain N. of
the summit
river. It en
continuing
and, on the
where we h
though unsu

Before our
visited by so
eastern shore
small distanc
kind of silent
or to each o
came alongfi
they leave us
salmon, whic
to traffic with

It may not
ple we had see
in every part
liam's Sound,
Nootka, as we

The points
iron; some of
Their spears r
for which they
Except these,
amongst them
have already

who attended us all the morning; and, indeed, their company was highly acceptable to us, as they brought with them a quantity of fine salmon, which they exchanged for some of our trifles. Several hundred weight of it was procured for the two ships, and the greatest part of it was split, and ready for drying.

The mountains now, for the first time after our entering the river, were free from clouds, and we perceived a volcano in one of those on the western side. Its latitude is 60 d. 13 m. and it is the first high mountain N. of Mount St Augustin. The volcano is near the summit, and on that part of the mountain next the river. It emits a white smoke, but no fire. The wind continuing southerly, we still tided it down the river; and, on the morning of the 5th, arriving at the place where we had lost our kedge anchor, we attempted, though unsuccessfully, to recover it.

Before our departure from this place, we were again visited by some of the natives, in six canoes, from the eastern shore. For half an hour they remained at a small distance from the ships, gazing at them with a kind of silent surprize, without uttering a syllable to us, or to each other. At length they grew courageous, came alongside, and began to barter with us; nor did they leave us till they had parted with their skins and salmon, which were the only articles they had brought to traffic with.

It may not be unnecessary to remark, that all the people we had seen in this river, had a striking resemblance, in every particular, to those who inhabit Prince William's Sound, but differed most essentially from those of Nootka, as well in their persons as their language.

The points of their spears and knives are made of iron; some of the former, indeed, are made of copper. Their spears resemble our spontoons; and their knives, for which they have sheaths, are of a considerable length. Except these, and a few glass beads, every thing we saw amongst them was of their own manufacture. We have already hazarded conjectures from whence they derive

derive their foreign articles. It cannot be supposed, however, that the Russians have been amongst them, for we should not then have seen them cloathed in such valuable skins as those of the sea otter.

A very beneficial fur trade might certainly be carried on with the natives of this vast coast; but, without a northern passage, it is too remote for Great Britain to be benefited by such commerce. It should, however, be observed, that almost the only valuable skins, on this W. side of North America, are those of the sea otter. Their other skins were of an inferior quality; and it should be farther observed, that the greater part of the skins, which we purchased of them, were made up into garments. Some of them, indeed, were in pretty good condition, others old and ragged, and all of them extremely lousy. But, as skins are used by these people only for cloathing themselves, they, perhaps, are not at the trouble of dressing more of them than they require for this purpose. This is probably the chief cause of their killing the animals, for they principally receive their supply of food from the sea and rivers. But if they were once habituated to a constant trade with foreigners, such an intercourse would increase their wants, by acquainting them with new luxuries; to be enabled to purchase which, they would become more assiduous in procuring skins; a plentiful supply of which might doubtless be obtained in this country.

The tide is very considerable in this river, and greatly assists to facilitate the navigation of it. In the stream, it is high water between two and three o'clock, on the days of the new and full moon; and the tide rises between three and four fathoms. The mouth of the river being in a corner of the coast, the ocean forces the flood into it by both shores, which swells the tide to a greater height than at other parts of this coast.

Departure

Departure

Whitsun

nabas—

Foggy

of a cu

Russian

Conjectu

Halibut

val at

Another

the Har

THE and, river. Th but, about sail with a eight, and about eight the passage main land; had bafflin abandoned passage.

We now continent, n bably mean forms a bay point of it.

Vol. II.—N

*Departure from Cook's River—Pass St Hermogenes—Cape
Whitsunday—Whitsuntide Bay—Cape Greville—Cape Bar-
nabas—Two-headed Point—Trinity Island—Beerling's
Foggy Island—Foggy Cape—Pinnacle Point—Description
of a curious Bird—Account of the Schumagin Islands—A
Russian Letter brought on board the Discovery—Various
Conjectures concerning it—Rock Point—Halibut Island—
Halibut Head—A Volcano—Escape providentially—Arri-
val at Oonalashka—Traffic with the Natives there—
Another Russian Letter brought on board—Description of
the Harbour of Samganooodha.*

THE ebb tide making in our favour, we weighed,
and, with a gentle breeze at S. W. plied down the
river. The flood, however, obliged us to anchor again ;
but, about one o'clock the next morning, we got under
sail with a fresh breeze, passed the barren islands about
eight, and at noon Cape St Hermogenes bore S. S. E.
about eight leagues distant. We intended to go through
the passage between the island of that name and the
main land ; but the wind soon after failed us, and we
had baffling airs from the eastward ; we, therefore,
abandoned the design of carrying our ship through that
passage.

We now beheld several columns of smoke on the
continent, northward of the passage ; which were pro-
bably meant as signals to attract us thither. The land
forms a bay here, a low rocky island lying off the N. W.
point of it. Some other islands, of a similar appear-

ance, are scattered along the coast between here and Point Banks.

About eight in the evening, St Hermogenes extended from S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. to S. S. E. and the rocks bore S. E. distant three miles. Here we had forty fathoms water, and caught several halibut with hooks and lines. We passed the rocks, and bore up to the southward about midnight; and, on the 7th, at noon, St Hermogenes bore N. at the distance of four leagues. The southernmost point of the main land lay N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. five leagues distant. The latitude of this promontory is 58 d. 15 m. and its longitude 207 d. 24 m. It was named after the day, Cape Whitfunday; and a large bay, to the W. of it was called Whitsuntide Bay.

The wind, which had been at N. E. shifted to the southward about two in the afternoon. The weather was gloomy, and the air cold. At midnight we stood in for the land, and at seven o'clock in the morning of the 8th, we were within four miles of it, and less than two miles from some sunken rocks, bearing W. S. W. Here we anchored in thirty-five fathoms water. In standing in for the coast, we passed the mouth of Whitsuntide Bay, and perceived land all round the bottom of it; therefore the land must either be connected, or the points lock in behind each other: the former conjecture appears to be the most probable. There are some small islands to the W. of the bay. To the southward the sea coast is low, with projecting rocky points, having small inlets between them. Upon the coast there was no wood, and but little snow; but the mountains, at some distance inland, were entirely covered with snow. We were now in the latitude of 57 d. 52 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. The land here forming a point, it was named Cape Greville. Its latitude is 57 d. 33 m. and its longitude 207 d. 15 m. It is fifteen leagues distant from St Hermogenes.

The 9th, 10th, and 11th, we had constant misty weather, with some rain, and seldom had a sight of the coast; we had a gentle breeze of wind, and the air was raw and cold. We continued plying up the coast.

In

In the
saw the
and we
we were
which v
13 m. b
We cou
the poin
terminat
Two-he
pally co
could for
those wh
appearan
Not a tr
general,
We co
being abo
headed P
two fath
served, be
were in t
preceding
were up v
morning,
ed the na
in the dir
has naked
the middle
205 d. I
tinent, bet
There seen
anchorage
ing's Fogg
his chart.
In the e
the small i
point of t
Trinity, it

In the evening of the 12th, the fog clearing up, we saw the land about twelve leagues distant, bearing W. and we stood in for it early the next morning. At noon we were within three miles of it; an elevated point, which was named Cape Barnabas, in the latitude of 57 d. 13 m. bore N. N. E. at the distance of about ten miles. We could not see the N. E. extreme for the haze, but the point to the S. W. had an elevated summit, which terminated in two round hills, and was therefore called Two-headed Point. This part of the coast is principally composed of high hills, and deep vallies. We could sometimes perceive the tops of other hills, beyond those which form the coast, which had a very barren appearance, though not much incumbered with snow. Not a tree or bush was to be found, and the land, in general, had a brownish hue.

We continued to ply, and, at about six in the evening, being about midway between Cape Barnabas and Two-headed Point, two leagues from the shore, we had sixty-two fathoms water. Here a low point of land was observed, bearing S. 69 d. W. On the 14th, at noon, we were in the latitude 56 d. 49 m. The land seen the preceding evening now appeared like two islands. We were up with the southernmost part of this land the next morning, and perceived it to be an island, which obtained the name of Trinity Island. Its greatest extent, in the direction of E. and W. is about six leagues. It has naked elevated land at each end, and is low towards the middle. Its latitude is 56 d. 36 m. and its longitude 205 d. It is distant about three leagues from the continent, between which rocks and islands are interspersed. There seems, nevertheless, to be good passage, and safe anchorage. We, at first, imagined that this was Beerling's Foggy Island; but its situation is not agreeable to his chart.

In the evening, at eight, we were within a league of the small islands above mentioned. The westernmost point of the continent, now in view, we called Cape Trinity, it being a low point facing Trinity Island. In

this situation, we stood over for the island, meaning to work up between that and the main. In standing over towards the island, we met two men in a canoe, paddling from thence to the main: instead of approaching us, they seemed carefully to avoid it.

The wind now inclining to the S. we expected it would presently be at S. E. knowing, from experience, that a south-easterly wind was here generally accompanied with a thick fog, we were afraid to venture between the island and the continent, lest we should not be able to accomplish our passage before night, or before the foggy weather came on; when we should be under the necessity of anchoring, and lose the advantage of a fair wind. Induced by these reasons, we stretched out to sea, and passed two or three rocky islets, near the E. end of Trinity Island. Having weathered the island, we tacked about four in the afternoon, and steered west southerly, with a gale at S. S. E. which veered to the S. E. about midnight, and was attended with misty rainy weather.

We expected, from the course we steered during the night, to fall in with the continent in the morning; and we should, doubtless, have seen it, if the weather had been clear. No land appearing at noon, and the gale and fog increasing, we steered W. N. W. under such sail as we could haul the wind with; sensible of the danger of running before a strong gale, in the vicinity of an unknown coast, and in a thick fog. It was, however, become necessary to run some risk, when the wind was favourable to us; as we were convinced, that clear weather was generally accompanied with westerly winds.

About three in the afternoon, land was perceived through the fog, bearing N. W. about three miles distant. We instantly hauled up S. close to the wind. The two courses were soon after split, and we had others to bring to the yards: several of our sails received considerable damage. The gale abated, and the weather cleared up about nine; when we again saw the coast,

about

about the
hundred

The four o'clock
selves, in
nent, or
some ele
distant.
point of
Cape, and

Having
sprung up
this, in or
that direc
to be an i
titude of
In our ch
able to fu
on which
Three or
nacle rock
Point; and
from the
wind, and

On We
tween W
and the air
extended
seven or e
to the S. V

The we
it was calm
bably, a c
Cape and
hindered u

The Co
the Discov
beautiful b
is black, ex

about the distance of five leagues. Our depth was a hundred fathoms water.

The fog returned soon after, and was dispersed about four o'clock the next morning; when we found ourselves, in some degree, surrounded by land; the continent, or that which we supposed to be the continent, some elevated land, bearing S. E. about nine leagues distant. The extreme of the main, at the N. E. was the point of land seen during the fog: it was named Foggy Cape, and lies in the latitude of 56 d. 31 m.

Having had but little wind all night, a breeze now sprung up at N. W. we stood to the southward with this, in order to make the land plainer, that was seen in that direction. About nine o'clock, we discovered it to be an island, nine miles in circumference, in the latitude of 56 d. 10 m. and the longitude of 202 d. 45 m. In our chart, it is named Foggy Island; it being reasonable to suppose, from its situation, that it is the island on which Beering had bestowed the same appellation. Three or four islands bore N. by W. a point, with pinnacle rocks upon it, bore N. W. by W. called Pinnacle Point; and a cluster of islets S. S. E. about nine leagues from the coast. In the afternoon we had very little wind, and our progress was inconsiderable.

On Wednesday the 17th, we had gentle breezes between W. and N. W. the weather was perfectly clear, and the air dry and sharp. The continent, about noon, extended from S. W. to N. by E. the nearest part about seven or eight leagues distant; a group of islands lying to the S. W. about the same distance from the continent.

The weather was clear and pleasant on the 18th, and it was calm the greatest part of the day. There is, probably, a continuation of the continent between Foggy Cape and Trinity Island, which the thick weather hindered us from perceiving.

The Commodore having occasion to send a boat to the Discovery, one of the people aboard her, shot a most beautiful bird. It is smaller than a duck, and the colour is black, except that the fore part of the head is white; behind

behind each eye, an elegant yellowish white crest arises; the bill and feet are of a reddish colour. The first we saw of these birds was to the southward of Cape St Hermogenes; after which we saw them daily, and frequently in large flocks. We often saw most of the other sea birds, that are usually met with in the northern oceans; such as shags, gulls, puffins, sheer waters, ducks, geese, and swans; and we seldom passed a day, without seeing whales, seals, and other fish of great magnitude.

We got a light breeze, southerly, in the afternoon, and steered W. for the channel between the islands and the continent. At day break, the next morning, we were not far from it, and perceived several other islands, within those that we had already seen, of various dimensions. But, between these islands, and those we had seen before, there appeared to be a clear channel, for which we steered; and, at noon, our latitude was 55 d. 18 m. in the narrowest part of the channel. Of this group of islands, the largest was now upon our left, and is called Kodiak, as we were afterwards informed. The Commodore did not bestow a name upon any of the others, though he supposed them to be the same that Beering has named Schumagin's Islands.* Islands appeared to the southward, as far as an island could be seen. They begin in the longitude of 200 d. 15 m. E. and extend about two degrees to the westward.

Most of these islands are tolerably high, but very barren and rugged; exhibiting very romantic appearances, and abounding with rocks and cliffs. They have several bays and coves about them, and some fresh water streams descend from their elevated parts; but the land was not embellished with a single tree or bush. Plenty of snow still remained on many of them, as well as on those parts of the continent which appeared between the innermost islands.

By four o'clock in the afternoon, we had passed all the islands to the S. of us. We found thirty fathoms

water

* *Decouvertes des Russes, par Muller, p. 262. 277.*

water in the
it, the Dis
guns, and
Captain O
parent dan
apprehen
met with
her, which
He inform
three or fo
time, at la
many sign
pean man
the ship, to
after he ha
lest the Di

It was
thing, till
cidentally
paper, care
peared, wh
guage. T
and a refer
Though un
we were c
preceded u
the hopes
traders, m
been so lon
Ocean, and
At first,
had been fl
these unfor
us of their
of humani
Resolution
join us; bu
If this had
first step v

water in the channel, and soon after we had got through it, the Discovery, which was two miles astern, fired three guns, and brought to, making a signal to speak with us. Captain Cook was much alarmed at this; for, as no apparent danger had been observed in the channel, he was apprehensive, that the Discovery had sprung a leak, or met with some similar accident. A boat was sent to her, which immediately returned with Captain Clerke. He informed the Commodore, that some natives, in three or four canoes, having followed the ship for some time, at last got under his stern; one of whom made many signs, having his cap off, and bowing in the European manner. A rope was then handed down from the ship, to which he fastened a thin wooden box, and, after he had made some more gesticulations, the canoes left the Discovery.

It was not imagined, that the box contained any thing, till the canoes had departed, when it was accidentally opened, and found to contain a piece of paper, carefully folded up, on which some writing appeared, which they supposed to be in the Russian language. To this paper was prefixed the date of 1778, and a reference was made therein to the year 1776. Though unable to decypher the alphabet of the writer, we were convinced, by his numerals, that others had preceded us in visiting these dreary regions. Indeed, the hopes of speedily meeting some of the Russian traders, must be highly satisfactory to those, who had been so long conversant with the savages of the Pacific Ocean, and those of the continent of North America.

At first, Captain Clerke imagined, that some Russians had been shipwrecked here; and that, seeing our ships, these unfortunate persons were induced thus to inform us of their situation. Deeply impressed with sentiments of humanity on this occasion, he was in hopes the Resolution would have stopped till they had time to join us; but no such idea ever occurred to Capt. Cook. If this had really been the case, he supposed, that the first step which such shipwrecked persons would have taken,

taken, in order to secure relief, would have been, to send some of their people off to the ships in the canoes. He, therefore, rather thought, the paper was intended to communicate some information, from some Russian trader, who had lately visited these islands, to be delivered to any of his countrymen who should arrive; and that the natives, supposing us to be Russians, had brought off the note. Convinced of this, he enquired no farther into the matter, but made sail, and steered to the westward.

We ran all night with a gentle breeze at N. E. and the next morning at two, some breakers were seen within us, distant about two miles; others were soon after seen ahead, and they were innumerable on our larboard bow, and also between us and the land. By holding a S. course, we, with difficulty, cleared them. These breakers were produced by rocks, many of which were above water; they are very dangerous, and extend seven leagues from land. We got on their outside about noon, when our latitude was 54 d. 44 m. and our longitude 198 d. The nearest land was an elevated bluff point, and was named Rock Point; it bore N. about eight leagues distant; the westernmost part of the main, bore N. W. and a high round hill called Halibut Head, bore S. W. distant about thirteen leagues.

At noon on the 21st, we made but little progress, having only faint winds and calms. Halibut Head then bore N. 24 d. W. and the island where it is situated, called Halibut Island, extended from N. by E. to N. W. This island is seven leagues in circumference, and, except the head, is very low and barren; several small islands are near it, between which and the main, there appears to be a passage, of the breadth of two or three leagues.

We were kept at such a distance from the continent, by the rocks and breakers, that we had a very distant view of the coast between Halibut Island and Rock Point. We could, however, perceive the main land covered with snow; and particularly some hills, whose elevated

tops

tops towered
height. A
ly of these
columns of
the coast,
longitude
and the vo
may appear
of the volc
tion to wha

Having
of an hund
of which w
none of th
acceptable
water, abou
which time,
who came f
ed the ship,
other had de
the Discover

That the
these people
ness, but fro
We had now
visitor had
jacket of black
try. He had
ing impleme
liquid, which
drank a mout

His canoe
though of the
visited the Dis
His features
William's Son
kind of paint
oblique directi
nament in it.

Vol. II. N^o. 3

tops towered above the clouds to a most stupendous height. A volcano was seen on the most south-westerly of these hills, which perpetually threw up immense columns of black smoke; it is at no great distance from the coast, and is in the latitude of 54 d. 48 m. and the longitude of 195 d. 45 m. Its figure is a complete cone, and the volcano is at the summit of it: remarkable as it may appear, the wind, at the height to which the smoke of the volcano rose, often moved in an opposite direction to what it did at sea, even in a fresh gale.

Having three hours calm in the afternoon, upwards of an hundred halibuts were caught by our people, some of which weighed upwards of an hundred pounds, and none of them less than twenty. They were highly acceptable to us. We fished in thirty-five fathoms water, about four miles distant from the shore; during which time, we were visited by a man in a small canoe, who came from the large island. When he approached the ship, he uncovered his head and bowed, as the other had done the preceding day, when he came off to the Discovery.

That the Russians had some communication with these people, was evident, not only from their politeness, but from the written paper already mentioned. We had now an additional proof of it; for our new visitor had on a pair of green cloth breeches, and a jacket of black cloth, under the frock of his own country. He had with him, a grey fox skin and some fishing implements: also a bladder, in which was some liquid, which we supposed to be oil; for he opened it, drank a mouthful, and then closed it up again.

His canoe was smaller than those we had seen before, though of the same construction: like those who had visited the Discovery, he used the double-bladed paddle. His features resembled those of the natives of Prince William's Sound, but he was perfectly free from any kind of paint; and his lip had been perforated in an oblique direction, though, at that time, he had not any ornament in it. Many of the words, so frequently used

by our visitors in the Sound, were repeated to him, but he did not appear to understand any of them; owing either to his ignorance of the dialect, or our erroneous pronunciation.

The weather was principally cloudy and hazy, till the afternoon of the 22d, when the wind shifted to the S. E. attended, as usual, with thick rainy weather. Before the fog, we saw no part of the main land, except the volcano, and a neighbouring mountain. We steered W. till seven, when, fearing we might fall in with the land in thick weather, we hauled to the southward till two the next morning, and then bore away W. Our progress was but trifling, having but little wind, and that variable: at five o'clock in the afternoon, we had an interval of sun-shine, when we saw land, bearing N. 59 d. W.

On the 24th, at six in the morning, we saw the continent, and at nine it extended from N. E. by E. to S. W. by W. the nearest part four leagues distant. The land to the S. W. consisted of islands, being what we had seen the preceding night. In the evening, being about the distance of four leagues from the shore, and having little wind, we threw out our hooks and lines, but caught only two or three little cod.

We got an easterly breeze the next morning, and, with it, what was very uncommon, clear weather; in-somuch, that we clearly saw the volcano, the other mountains, and all the main land under them. It extended from N. E. by N. to N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. Between this point and the islands, a large opening appeared, for which we steered, till land was seen beyond it; and, though we did not perceive that this land joined the continent, a passage through the opening was very doubtful; as well as whether the land to the S. W. was insular or continental. Unwilling to trust too much to appearances, we therefore steered to the southward; when, having got without all the land in sight, we steered W. the islands lying in that direction.

Three of them, all of a good height, we had passed by

by eight o
In the af
afterwards
E. We th
day break,

We der
weather be
at the dist
was moder
after four,
larboard bo
and then t
anchored in
the Discover

Some hou
discovered t
were three
island; two
from us, and
appeared ab
conducted th
rocks, which
done in a cle
place.

Being so
ashore, to ex
turned in th
her said, he s
of which had
produced nei

The wind
morning was
degree, disper
steered betwe
and a small one
nel does not ex
we could pass
to anchor, wh
Land now pre

by eight o'clock; more were now seen to the westward. In the afternoon, the weather became gloomy, and afterwards turned to a mist, the wind blowing fresh at E. We therefore hauled the wind to the southward till day break, and then proceeded on our course to the W.

We derived but little advantage from day light, the weather being so thick that we could not discover objects at the distance of a hundred yards; but, as the wind was moderate, we ventured to run. About half an hour after four, the sound of breakers alarmed us, on our larboard bow; we found twenty-eight fathoms water, and then twenty-five. We brought the ship to, and anchored in the last depth; the Commodore ordering the Discovery, who was not far distant, to anchor also.

Some hours after, the fog being a little dispersed, we discovered the imminent danger we had escaped. We were three quarters of a mile from the N. E. side of an island; two elevated rocks were about half a league from us, and from each other. Several breakers also appeared about them; and yet Providence had safely conducted the ships through in the dark, between those rocks, which we should not have attempted to have done in a clear day, and to so commodious an anchoring place.

Being so near land, Captain Cook ordered a boat ashore, to examine what it produced. When she returned in the afternoon, the officer who commanded her said, he saw some grass, and other small plants, one of which had the appearance of purslain; but the island produced neither trees nor shrubs.

The wind blew fresh at S. in the night; but in the morning was more moderate, and the fog, in a great degree, dispersed. We weighed at seven o'clock, and steered between the island near which we had anchored, and a small one not far from it. The breadth of the channel does not exceed a mile, and the wind failed before we could pass through it; we were therefore obliged to anchor, which we did in thirty-four fathoms water. Land now presented itself in every direction. That

to the S. extended, in a ridge of mountains, to the S. W. which we afterwards found to be an island called Oonalashka.

Between this island, and the land to the N. which we supposed to be a group of islands, there appeared to be a channel in a N. W. direction. On a point, W. from the ship, and at the distance of three quarters of a mile, we perceived several natives and their habitations. To this place, we saw two whales towed in, which we supposed had just been killed. A few of the inhabitants, occasionally, came off to the ships, and engaged in a little traffic with our people, but never continued with us above a quarter of an hour at a time. They seemed, indeed, remarkably shy; though we could readily discover they were not unacquainted with vessels, similar, in some degree, to ours. Their manners displayed a degree of politeness which we had never experienced among any of the savage tribes.

About one in the afternoon, being favoured with a light breeze, and the tide of flood, we weighed, and proceeded to the channel last mentioned; expecting, when we had passed through, either to find the land trend away to the northward; or that we should discover a passage out to sea, to the W. For we did not suppose ourselves to be in an inlet of the continent, but among islands; and we were right in our conjectures. Soon after we got under sail, the wind veered to the N. and we were obliged to ply. The depth of water was from forty to twenty-seven fathoms. In the evening, the ebb made it necessary for us to anchor within three leagues of our last station.

We weighed the next morning at day break, and were waisted up the passage by a light breeze at S. after which we had variable light airs from all directions. There was, however, a rapid tide in our favour, and the Resolution got through before the ebb made. The Discovery was not equally fortunate, for she was carried back, got into the race, and found a difficulty in getting clear of it.

Being

Being now
on one side,
either side to
continent ha
Being short o
in a rapid tid
ship, we stoo
age, but we
not be forced
the southern f
out of the rea
ran five kno
In this situa
natives, in sepa
plements fo
verlet his can
boat. He wa
the canoe
shore. In co
was obliged to
into the ca
without any fur
upper garment,
whale, or some
ad another of t
with the feathers
ered side place
veral pieces of
with glass beads.
His cloaths be
our own, whi
could have do
that of seve
ele people we
any of their cu
er, greatly ex
canoes to bri
uring hills to h
At low water

Being now through the channel, we found the land, on one side, trending W. and S. W. and that on the other side to N. This encouraged us to hope, that the continent had taken a new direction in our favour. Being short of water, and expecting to be driven about in a rapid tide, without wind sufficient to govern the ship, we stood for a harbour on the S. side of the passage, but were driven beyond it; and, that we might not be forced back through the passage, anchored near the southern shore, in twenty-eight fathoms water, and out of the reach of the strong tide; though, even here, we ran five knots and an half in an hour.

In this situation, we were visited by several of the natives, in separate canoes. They bartered some fishing implements for tobacco. A young man, among them, overturned his canoe, while he was alongside of one of our boats. He was caught hold of by one of our people, the canoe was taken up by another and carried ashore. In consequence of this accident, the youth was obliged to come into the ship, where he was invited into the cabin, and readily accepted the invitation, without any surprize or embarrassment. He had on an upper garment, resembling a shirt, made of the gut of a whale, or some other large sea animal. Under this, he had another of the same form, made of the skins of birds with the feathers on, curiously sewed together; the feathered side placed next his skin. It was patched with several pieces of silk stuff, and his cap was embellished with glass beads.

His cloaths being wet, we furnished him with some of our own, which he put on with as much readiness as we could have done. From the behaviour of this youth, and that of several others, it evidently appeared, that these people were no strangers to Europeans, and to many of their customs. Something in our ships, however, greatly excited their curiosity; for, such as had canoes to bring them off, assembled on the neighbouring hills to have a view of them.

At low water we towed the ship into the harbour, where

where we anchored in nine fathoms water, the Discovery arriving soon after. A boat was sent to draw the seine, but we caught only a few trout, and some other small fish.

We had not long anchored, before a native of the island brought another note on board, similar to that which had been given to Captain Clerke. He presented it to Captain Cook; but, as it was written in the Russian language, neither he, nor any of us, could read it. As it could not be of any use to us, and might probably be of consequence to others, the Commodore returned it to the bearer, accompanied with a few presents for which he expressed his thanks, as he retired, by several low bows.

On the 29th, we saw along the shore, a group of the natives of both sexes, seated on the grass, partaking of a repast of raw fish, which they seemed to relish exceedingly.

We were detained by thick fogs, and a contrary wind till the 2d of July; during which time we acquired some knowledge of the country, as well as of its inhabitants, the particulars of which shall be hereafter related.

This harbour is called Samganoodha, by the natives, and is situated on the N. side of Oonalashka, the latitude being 53 d. 55 m. the longitude 193 d. 30 m. and is the strait which separates this island from those to the N. It is about a mile broad at the entrance, and runs in about four miles S. by W. It narrows towards the head, the breadth there not exceeding a quarter of a mile. Plenty of good water may be procured here, but not a piece of wood of any kind.

*The Ships passed
and Acootan
River—Raid
at Cape Ne-
it—Shoal W-
return—Sh-
Their Beha-
Mr Anderf-
—Account of
of Wales—A*

ON the 2d with a gale and met with a storm, on the 3d W. and, on the 4th more northerly, a continuation of the storm, which is attended with the north wind, which we call the storm, the circumference is about 100 miles, being to the north of Acootan; it is a great storm, and has in it some of the time, covered with snow. It appeared, the distance between the north-western point of Acootan, and

The Ships proceed to the Northward—The Isles of Oonella and Acootan—Oonemak—Plenty of Cod caught—Bristol River—Round Island—Calm Point—Mr Williamson lands at Cape Newenham—His Report—Bristol Bay—Extent of it—Shoal Water—The Ships are obliged by the Shoals to return—Shoal Nefs—Americans come off to our Ships—Their Behaviour, Dress, &c.—Point Upright—Death of Mr Anderson—His Character—An Island named after him—Account of Sledge Island—King's Island—Cape Prince of Wales—Anchor in a large Bay on the Asiatic Coast.

ON the 2d of July, we steered from Samganooodha, with a gentle breeze at S. S. E. to the northward, and met with nothing to obstruct us in that course. For, on the one side, the Isle of Oonalashka trended W. and, on the other, no land was visible in a direction more northerly than N. E. all which land was a continuation of the same group of islands that we had fallen in with on the 25th of the preceding month. That which is situated before Samganooodha, and constitutes the north-eastern side of the passage through which we came, is denominated Oonella, and its circumference is about seven leagues. Another island, lying to the north-eastward of it, bears the name of Acootan; it is considerably superior in size to Oonella, and has in it some very lofty mountains, which were, at this time, covered with snow.

It appeared, that we might have passed with great safety between these two islands and the continent, whose south-western point opened off the north-eastern point of Acootan, and proved to be the same point of land that



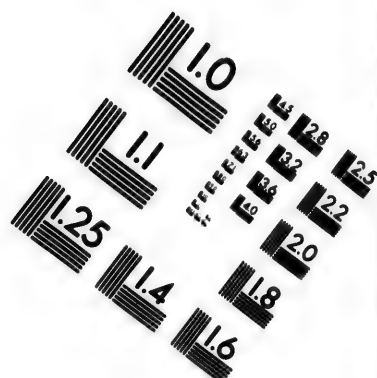
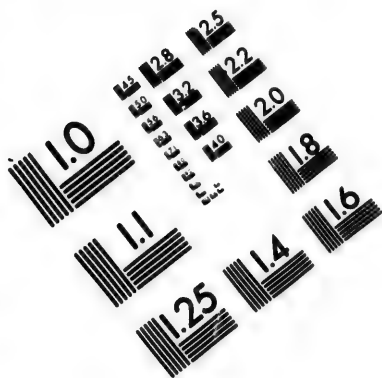
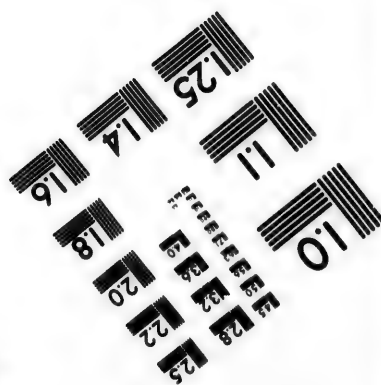
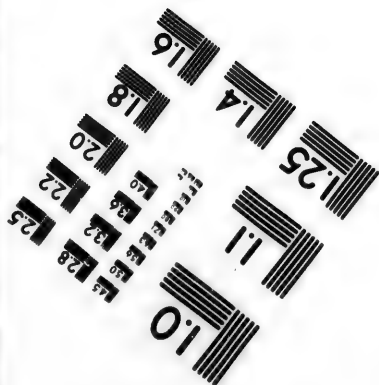
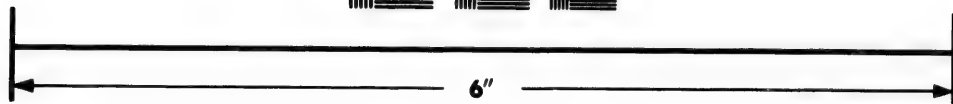
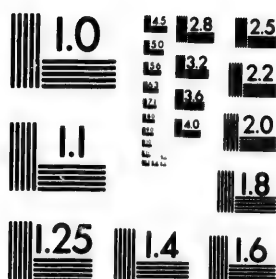


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5 2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0

0.1

that we had discerned when we left the coast of the continent, the 25th of June, to go without the islands. It is termed Oonemak by the natives, and is situate in the longitude of 192 d. 30 m. E. and in the latitude of 54 d. 30 m. N. Over the cape, which, of itself, is high land, there is a round elevated mountain, at present covered with snow. This mountain bore E. 2 d. N. at six o'clock in the afternoon: and, two hours afterwards, no land was to be seen. Concluding, therefore, that the coast of the continent had now inclined to the north-eastward, we steered the same course, till one o'clock the following morning, when the watch stationed upon deck imagined they saw land ahead. Upon this we wore, and, for the space of about two hours, stood towards the S. W. after which we resumed our course to the E. N. E. At six we discovered land ahead, at the distance of about five leagues, bearing S. E. As we advanced we descried more and more land, the whole of which was connected. At twelve o'clock, we observed that it extended from S. S. W. to E. the part nearest to us being five or six leagues distant. Our longitude, at this time, was 195 d. 18 m. E. and our latitude 55 d. 21 m. N. At six in the afternoon, we sounded, and found a bottom of black sand at the depth of forty-eight fathoms. We were now four leagues from the land; and the eastern part in sight was in the direction of E. S. E. appearing as an elevated round hummock.

On Saturday the 4th, at eight o'clock in the morning, we saw the coast from S. S. W. and E. by S. and, at intervals, we could discern high land, covered with snow, behind it. Not long after we had a calm; and being in thirty fathoms water, we caught, with hook and line, a good number of excellent cod. At twelve we had an easterly breeze and clear weather; at which time we found ourselves about six leagues from the land, which extended from S. by W. to E. by S. and the hummock, seen the preceding evening, bore S. W. by S. at the distance of nine or ten leagues. A great hollow swell from the west-south-westward, convinced us, that there

was

was no
ed a no
when th
E. N. E.
o'clock
four leag

We m
the wind
day, abo
teen fath
the coast
S. S. W.
of moun
improbab
distance
we some
more tha
we put o
fine cod.

On the
we steere
to the coa
two leag
tend from
with poin
deck, had
head, we
now in th
latitude o
ings were
land.

In adva
the depth
trended m
that the r
in the fan
so that the
the foot o
the low an

Vol. II.

was no main land, in that direction, near us. We steered a northerly course till six o'clock in the afternoon, when the wind, veering to the S. E. enabled us to steer E. N. E. The coast lay in this direction, and, at twelve o'clock on the following day, was at the distance of about four leagues.

We made but little progress on the 6th and 7th, as the wind was northerly. In the evening of the latter day, about eight o'clock, the depth of water was nineteen fathoms, and we were three or four leagues from the coast, which, on Wednesday the 8th, extended from S. S. W. to E. by N. and was all low land, with a ridge of mountains, covered with snow, behind it. It is not improbable, that this low coast extends to a considerable distance towards the S. W. and that those places which we sometimes supposed to be inlets or bays, are nothing more than vallies between the mountains. This day we put our hooks and lines over, and caught plenty of fine cod.

On the 9th, in the morning, having a breeze at N. W. we steered E. by N. in order to make a nearer approach to the coast. At noon, we were at the distance of about two leagues from the land, which was observed to extend from S. by E. to E. N. E. being all a low coast, with points projecting in several places, which, from the deck, had the appearance of islands; but, from the mast-head, we saw that low land connected them. We were now in the longitude of 201 d. 33 m. E. and in the latitude of 57 d. 49 m. N. In this situation, our soundings were fifteen fathoms, over a bottom of fine black sand.

In advancing towards the N. E. we had found that the depth of water gradually decreased, and the coast trended more and more northerly. But we observed, that the ridge of mountains behind it, continued to lie in the same direction as those that were more westerly; so that the extent of the low land, between the coast and the foot of the mountains, insensibly increased. Both the low and high grounds were totally destitute of wood;

but were apparently covered with a green turf, the mountains excepted, which were involved in snow.

As we proceeded along the coast with a light westerly breeze, the water shoaled gradually from fifteen to ten fathoms, though we were eight or ten miles distant from the shore. About eight o'clock in the evening, a lofty mountain, which had been some time within sight, bore S. E. by E. at the distance of twenty-one leagues. Several other mountains, forming a part of the same chain, and much further distant, bore E. 3 d. N. The coast was seen to extend as far as N. E. $\frac{1}{4}$ N. where it seemed to terminate in a point, beyond which it was both our hope and expectation, that it would assume a more easterly direction. But, not long afterwards, we perceived low land, that extended from behind this point, as far as N. W. by W. where it was lost in the horizon; and behind it we discerned high land, appearing in hills detached from each other. Thus the fine prospect we had of getting to the northward vanished in an instant. We stood on till nine o'clock, and then the point before mentioned was about one league distant, bearing N. E. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. Behind the point is a river, which, at its entrance, seemed to be a mile in breadth. The water appeared somewhat discoloured, as upon shoals; but a calm would have given it a similar aspect. It seemed to take a winding direction, through the extensive flat which lies between the chain of mountains towards the S. E. and the hills to the north-westward. It doubtless abounds with salmon, as many of those fish were seen leaping in the sea before the entrance, and some were found in the maws of cod that we caught. The mouth of this river, which we distinguished by the appellation of Bristol River, is situated in the longitude of 201 d. 55 m. E. and in the latitude of 58 d. 27 m. N.

At day break, on the 10th, we made sail to the W. S. W. with a light breeze at N. E. About eleven o'clock, thinking that the coast towards the N. W. terminated in a point, bearing N. W. by W. the Commodore steered for that point, having ordered the Discovery to keep ahead.

CA
ahead. B
a signal fo
depth of f
head of ou
but the D
thoms. V
miles; but
to the W.
the ships to
bottom.
water had
that it was

In the a
shifted to th
the S. sever
Having pass
water, we a
which last o
eight and n
of mountain
and bearing
other shore
we had desc
which we f

We weigh
with a gent
ward till ni
against us,
At one in th
ing prevailed
able, we wei
Towards th
and we had
from the ti
which we
wind settlin
ing of Sund
at ten o'clock
tended from

ahead. But, before that vessel had run a mile, she made a signal for shoal water. At that very time we had the depth of seven fathoms; and before we could get the head of our ship the other way, we had less than five: but the *Discovery's* soundings were less than four fathoms. We now stood back to the N. E. three or four miles; but observing that there was a strong tide setting to the W. S. W. that is, towards the shoal, we brought the ships to anchor in about ten fathoms, over a sandy bottom. Two hours after we had cast anchor, the water had fallen upwards of two feet; which proved, that it was the tide of ebb that came from Bristol River.

In the afternoon at four o'clock, the wind having shifted to the S. W. we weighed and made sail towards the S. several boats being occupied ahead in sounding. Having passed over the S. end of the shoal, in six fathoms water, we afterwards got into thirteen and fifteen; in which last depth we let go our anchors again, between eight and nine in the evening; some part of the chain of mountains, on the south-eastern shore, being in sight, and bearing S. E. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. and the most westerly land on the other shore bearing N. W. In the course of this day, we had descried high land, which bore N. 60 d. W. and which we supposed to be about twelve leagues distant.

We weighed anchor the next morning, at two o'clock, with a gentle breeze at S. W. by W. and plied to windward till nine; when judging the flood tide to be now against us, we anchored in twenty-four fathoms water. At one in the afternoon, the fog, which had this morning prevailed, dispersing, and the tide becoming favourable, we weighed again, and plied to the south-westward. Towards the evening, the wind was extremely variable, and we had some thunder: we had heard none before, from the time of our arrival on the coast; and that which we now heard was at a great distance. The wind settling again in the S. W. quarter in the morning of Sunday the 12th, we steered a N. W. course, and, at ten o'clock, saw the continent. At mid-day, it extended from N. E. by N. to N. N. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. and an

elevated hill appeared in the direction of N. N. W. nine or ten leagues distant. This was found to be an island, to which, on account of its figure, Captain Cook gave the name of Round Island. It stands in the latitude of 58 d. 37 m. N. and the longitude of 200 d. 6 m. E. and is seven miles distant from the continent. At nine in the evening, having steered a northerly course to within three leagues of the shore, we tacked in fourteen fathoms water, the extremities of the coast bearing E. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and W.

The wind now veered to the N. W. and enabled us to stretch along the shore, till two the next morning, when we suddenly got into six fathoms water, being then six miles from the land. After we had edged off a little, our depth of water gradually increased; and at twelve o'clock, our soundings were twenty fathoms. Round Island, at this time, bore N. 50 d. E. and the western extreme of the coast was seven leagues distant, bearing N. 16 d. W. It is an elevated point, to which the appellation of Calm Point was given, from our having calm weather while we were off it. To the north-westward of Round Island, we discerned two or three hillocks, which had an insular appearance; and perhaps they may be islands, for we had but a distant prospect of this particular part of the coast.

We advanced but slowly on the 14th and 15th, having little wind, and, at times, a very thick fog. Our soundings were from twenty-six to fourteen fathoms; and we had pretty good success in fishing, for we caught plenty of cod, and some flat fish. On Thursday the 16th, at five o'clock in the morning, the fog clearing up, we found ourselves nearer the shore than we expected. Calm Point bore N. 72 d. E. and a point about eight leagues from it, in a westerly direction, bore N. 3 d. E. only three miles distant. Betwixt these two points, the coast forms a bay, in several parts of which the land could scarcely be seen from the mast head. There is another bay on the north-western side of the last mentioned point, between it and a high promon-

tory,

tory, which sixteen miles. patched Li with orders the coast aff of the cour had but a s letting stron twelve o'cl at the distan four fathom tide beginni drove with

Mr Willi landed on elevated hill coast in sight took possess tannic Maje a paper, on commander scribed. T Newenham and stands the latitude two lofty h innermost, as far as M single tree o lower grou kinds, very He met wit and a dead Of the latte number.

The coast a northerly the north

promontory, which now bore N. 36 d. W. at the distance of sixteen miles. About nine o'clock, Captain Cook dispatched Lieutenant Williamson to this promontory, with orders to go ashore, and observe what direction the coast assumed beyond it, and what was the produce of the country; which, when viewed from the ships, had but a sterile aspect. We here found the flood tide setting strongly towards the N. W. along the coast. At twelve o'clock, it was high water, and we cast anchor at the distance of twelve miles from the shore, in twenty-four fathoms water. In the afternoon, about five, the tide beginning to make in our favour, we weighed, and drove with it, there being no wind.

Mr Williamson, at his return, reported, that he had landed on the point, and, having ascended the most elevated hill, found, that the most distant part of the coast in sight was nearly in a northerly direction. He took possession of the country in the name of his Britannic Majesty, and left on the hill a bottle, containing a paper, on which the names of our ships, and of their commanders, and the date of the discovery, were inscribed. The promontory, which he named Cape Newenham, is a rocky point, of considerable height; and stands in the longitude of 197 d. 36 m. E. and in the latitude of 58 d. 42 m. N. Over it, or within it, two lofty hills rise one behind the other; of which the innermost, or easternmost, is the highest. The country, as far as Mr Williamson could discern, produces not a single tree or shrub. The hills were naked; but, on the lower grounds, there grew grass and plants of various kinds, very few of which were at this time in flower. He met with no other animals than a doe and her fawn, and a dead sea horse or cow that lay upon the beach. Of the latter animals we had lately seen a considerable number.

The coast, as we have already mentioned, assuming a northerly direction from Cape Newenham, that cape is the northern boundary of the extensive bay and gulph,

gulph, situate before the river Bristol, which, in honour of the Admiral Earl of Bristol, received from the Commodore the denomination of Bristol Bay. Cape Oone-mak forms the southern limit of this bay; and is eighty-two leagues distant, in the direction of S. S. W. from Cape Newenham.

A light breeze arising about eight o'clock in the evening, and settling at S. S. E. we steered to the N. W. and N. N. W. round Cape Newenham; which, at twelve the following day, was four leagues distant, bearing S. by E. Our soundings, at this time, were seventeen fathoms; the most advanced land towards the N. bore N. 30 d. E. and the nearest part of the coast was three leagues and a half distant. During the whole afternoon, there was but little wind: so that, by ten o'clock in the evening, we had only proceeded three leagues on a northerly course.

We steered N. by W. till eight o'clock the next morning, (Saturday the 18th) when, the depth of water suddenly decreasing to seven and five fathoms, we brought to, till a boat from each of our ships was sent ahead to sound, and then steered to the N. E. At noon, the water was deepened to seventeen fathoms. Cape Newenham was now eleven or twelve leagues distant, bearing S. 9 d. E. the north-eastern extremity of the land in sight bore N. 66 d. E. and the distance of the nearest shore was four or five leagues. Our present latitude was 59 d. 16 m. N. Between Cape Newenham and this latitude, the coast consists of low land and hills, and seemed to form several bays.

Before one o'clock, the boats ahead displayed the signal of shoal water. They had, indeed, only two fathoms; and, at the same time, the ships were in six fathoms water. By hauling more to the N. we continued nearly in the same depth till between five and six o'clock when our boats finding less and less water, Captain Cook made the signal to the Discovery, which was then ahead, to cast anchor, and both ships soon came to. In bringing up the Resolution, her cable

parted

parted at the other a
a bottom o
from the o
sixteen or
we could p
there was
vated land,
shoal of sto
ters having
this shoal a
there was a
and seven
intricate.

We atten
the lost and
However, l
there was a
in our end
the 20th, w
the Comm
master in a
He accordi
that quarte
way to get
same track
following t
haps have g
channel m
northward,
have been
of ill succes
that we co
induced the
had brough

The long
vations, wa
d. 37 d. 30
that we cou

parted at the clinch, so that were obliged to make use of the other anchor. We rode in six fathoms water, over a bottom of sand, at the distance of four or five leagues from the continent. Cape Newenham now bore S. sixteen or seventeen leagues distant; the farthest hills we could perceive towards the N. bore N. E. by E. and there was low land stretching out from the more elevated land, as far as N. by E. Without this there was a shoal of stones and sand, dry at half ebb. The two masters having been sent, each in a boat, to sound between this shoal and the coast, reported, on their return, that there was a channel, in which the soundings were six and seven fathoms, but that it was rather narrow and intricate.

We attempted, at low water, to get a hawser round the lost anchor, but we did not then meet with success. However, being resolved not to leave it behind us, while there was any prospect of recovering it, we persevered in our endeavours; and, at length, in the evening of the 20th, we succeeded. While we were thus occupied, the Commodore ordered Captain Clerke to dispatch his master in a boat to search for a passage in a S. W. direction. He accordingly did so, but no channel was observed in that quarter; nor did it appear that there was any other way to get clear of the shoals than by returning by the same track in which we had entered. For though, by following the channel we were now in, we might perhaps have got further down the coast; and though this channel might probably have carried us at last to the northward, clear of the shoals, yet the attempt would have been attended with extreme hazard; and, in case of ill success, there would have been a great loss of time that we could not conveniently spare. These reasons induced the Commodore to return by the way which had brought us in, and thus avoid the shoals.

The longitude of our present station, by lunar observations, was 197 d. 45 m. 48 s. E. and the latitude 59 d. 37 d. 30 s. N. The most northern part of the coast, that we could discern from this station, was supposed to be

be situate in the latitude of 60 d. It formed, to appearance, a low point, which received the name of Shoal Nefs. The tide of flood sets to the northward, and the ebb to the southward: it rises and falls five or six feet upon a perpendicular; and we reckon that it is high water at eight o'clock, on the full and change days.

At three in the morning of the 21st, we weighed anchor with a gentle breeze at N. N. W. and steered back to the S. having three boats ahead employed in sounding. Notwithstanding this precaution, we met with greater difficulty in returning than we had found in advancing; and were at length under the necessity of anchoring, to avoid the danger of running upon a shoal that had only a depth of five feet. While we lay at anchor, twenty-seven Americans, each in a separate canoe, came off to the ships, which they approached with some degree of caution. As they advanced, they hollowed and opened their arms; thereby intimating, as we understood, their peaceable intentions. Some of them, at last, came near enough to receive a few trifling articles which we threw to them. This gave encouragement to the others to venture alongside; and a traffic quickly commenced between them and our people, who obtained wooden vessels, bows, darts, arrows, dresses of skins, &c. in exchange for which the natives accepted whatever we offered them. They appeared to be the same sort of people with those we had met with all along this coast; and they wore in their lips and noses the same species of ornaments, but were not so well clothed, and were far more dirty. They seemed to be perfectly unacquainted with any civilized nation; they were ignorant of the use of tobacco; nor did we observe in their possession any foreign article, unless a knife may be considered as such. This, indeed, was nothing more than a piece of common iron fitted in a handle, made of wood, so as to serve the purpose of a knife. They, however, so well knew the use and value of this instrument, that it seemed to be almost the only article they were desirous of.

The

The hair
off, a few
They wore
skins, and
One part of
was a kind
ner, with tr
twixt the th
From the us
times go in
northern lat
they wear it
were covered
but they wer
fits was wide
with. Our
give them so
than perhaps

We did not
of Wednesday
to steer towa
Cape Newen
to the north-
go ahead. H
soundings de
five, that, if
with less and
easterly breez
eighteen fath
steer a little w
at length four
24th, our lon
E. and our lat
to the W. of t
eight fathome
depth of water
thoms. We
not the wind

In the evening
Vol. II.—N^o

The hair of most of them was shaved, or cut short off, a few locks only being left on one side, or behind. They wore, as a covering for their heads, a hood of skins, and a bonnet, which was seemingly of wood. One part of their dress, which we procured from them, was a kind of girdle, made of skin in a very neat manner, with trappings depending from it, and passing betwixt the thighs, so as to conceal the adjacent parts. From the use of this girdle, it is probable that they sometimes go in other respects naked, even in this high northern latitude; for it can scarcely be supposed that they wear it under their other clothing. Their canoes were covered with skins, like those we had lately seen; but they were broader, and the hole wherein the person sits was wider than in any of those we had before met with. Our boats returning from sounding appeared to give them some alarm, so that they all departed sooner than perhaps they otherwise would have done.

We did not get clear of the shoals before the evening of Wednesday the 22d; and then we durst not venture to steer towards the W. during the night, but spent it off Cape Newenham. At day break, on the 23d, we stood to the north-westward, the Discovery being ordered to go ahead. Before we had proceeded two leagues, our soundings decreased to six fathoms. Being apprehensive, that, if we continued this course, we should meet with less and less water, we hauled to the S. with a fresh easterly breeze. This course gradually brought us into eighteen fathoms water, upon which we ventured to steer a little westerly, and afterwards due W. when we at length found twenty-six fathoms. At noon, on the 24th, our longitude, by observation, was 194 d. 22 m. E. and our latitude 58 d. 7 m. N. About three leagues to the W. of this situation, our soundings were twenty-eight fathoms; and we then steered W. N. W. the depth of water gradually increasing to thirty-four fathoms. We should have steered more northerly had not the wind prevented us.

In the evening of Saturday the 25th, having but little

wind, and an exceedingly thick fog, we let go our anchors in thirty fathoms; our longitude being, at that time, 191 d. 37 m. E. and our latitude 58 d. 20 m. N. About six o'clock the next morning, the weather in some degree clearing up, we weighed, and, with a gentle breeze at E. steered to the northward, our depth of water being from twenty-five to twenty-eight fathoms. After we had proceeded on this course for the space of nine leagues, the wind veered to the N. so that we were obliged to steer more westerly. The weather, for the most part, continued to be foggy, till about twelve o'clock on the 28th, when we had clear sun-shine for a few hours, during which several lunar observations were made. The mean result of these, reduced to noon, at which time our latitude was 59 d. 55 m. N. gave 190 d. 6 m. E. longitude, and the time-keeper gave 189 d. 59 m.

Continuing our westerly course, we discovered land at four in the morning of the 29th, bearing N. W. by W. at the distance of six leagues. We stood towards it till between ten and eleven, when we tacked in twenty-four fathoms, being then a league from the land, which bore N. N. W. It was the south-eastern extreme, and formed a perpendicular cliff of great height; upon which account, Captain Cook gave it the name of Point Upright. It stands in the longitude of 187 d. 30 m. E. and in the latitude of 60 d. 17 m. N. More land was perceived to the westward of this point; and, at a clear interval, we discerned another portion of high land, bearing W. by S. and this seemed to be perfectly separated from the other. We here observed an amazing number of birds, such as guillemots, awks, &c.

During the whole afternoon we had baffling light winds, which occasioned our progress to be but slow; and the weather was not sufficiently clear, to enable us to determine the extent of the land that was before us. We conjectured that it was one of the many islands laid down in Mr Stæhlin's map of the New Northern Archipelago;

pelago; and
of them.

On the
Upright
A light breeze
to the north
the wind
the N. W.
we steered
soundings
the following
time, was
E. The
made a str
and then,
stood back
leagues, and
wood. On
nineteen fathoms

On Sun
with show
morning of
we resumed
our soundings
62 d. 34 m.

Between
Anderson,
had lingered
twelvemonth
man, and a
in his profes
of knowledge
readers will
assistant he
if his life
public might
communicate
different places
ed his break

pelago; and we every moment expected to descry more of them.

On the 30th, at four o'clock in the afternoon, Point Upright was six leagues distant, bearing N. W. by N. A light breeze now springing up at N. N. W. we steered to the north-eastward till four the next morning, when the wind veered to the E. we then tacked, and stood to the N. W. The wind, not long after, shifting to S. E. we steered N. E. by N. and continued this course, with soundings from thirty-five to twenty fathoms, till noon the following day (August 1.) Our latitude, at this time, was 60 d. 58 m. N. and our longitude was 191 d. E. The wind now becoming north-easterly, we first made a stretch of about ten leagues towards the N. W. and then, as we observed no land in that direction, we stood back to the E. for the space of fourteen or fifteen leagues, and met with a considerable quantity of drift-wood. Our depth of water was from twenty-two to nineteen fathoms.

On Sunday the 2d of August, variable light winds, with showers of rain, prevailed the whole day. In the morning of the 3d, the wind settling in the S. E. quarter, we resumed our northward course. At twelve o'clock our soundings were sixteen fathoms, our latitude was 62 d. 34 m. N. and longitude 192 d. E.

Between three and four o'clock this afternoon Mr Anderson, Surgeon of the Resolution, expired, after he had lingered under a consumption for upwards of a twelvemonth. He was a sensible, intelligent young man, and an agreeable companion. He had great skill in his profession, and had acquired a considerable portion of knowledge in other departments of science. Our readers will doubtless have observed, how useful an assistant he had proved in the course of the voyage; and if his life had been prolonged to a later period, the public might have received from him many valuable communications respecting the natural history of the different places visited by us. Soon after he had resigned his breath, we discovered land to the westward, at

the distance of twelve leagues. We supposed it to be an island; and the Commodore, to perpetuate the memory of the deceased, for whom he had a particular esteem, distinguished it by the name of Anderson's Island. The following day Mr Law, Surgeon of the Discovery, was removed into the Resolution; and Mr Samuel, the Surgeon's first mate of the Resolution, was appointed to succeed Mr Law, as Surgeon of the Discovery.

At three in the afternoon, on the 4th, we saw land extending from N. N. E. to N. W. We steered towards it till four, when, being four or five miles distant from it, we tacked; and, not long afterwards, the wind failing, we let go our anchors in thirteen fathoms, over a sandy bottom, at the distance of about two leagues from land. Our latitude was now 64 d. 27 m. N. and longitude 194 d. 18 m. E. We could, at intervals, discern the coast extending from E. to N. W. and an island of considerable elevation, bearing W. by N. nine miles distant.

The land before us, which we imagined to be the continent of America, appeared rather low next the sea; but, inland, it rose in hills, which seemed to be of a tolerable height. It had a greenish hue, and was apparently destitute of wood, and free from snow. While our ships remained at anchor, we observed that the tide of flood came from the eastward, and set to the westward, till between the hours of ten and eleven; from which time, till two o'clock the next morning, the stream set to the E. and the water fell three feet. The flood running both longer and stronger than the ebb, we concluded, that there was a westerly current besides the tide.

On Wednesday the 5th, at ten o'clock in the morning, we ran down, and, soon after, anchored between the island and the continent in seven fathoms. Not long after we had cast anchor, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr King, and some other officers landed upon the island. He hoped to have had from it a prospect of the coast

coast and sea fog was so thick that it was impossible to see more than it was immediately before us. It seemed to increase as we approached Point Rodne. W. at the distance of about five leagues from land, which we perceived at about five leagues.

The latitude and longitude is 64 d. 27 m. N. in circumference. The soil consists of a mixture of moss and thirty different kinds of plants were in flower. The shrub, either native or introduced from the continent. I observed a considerable quantity of some of which were several plover seen. He mentioned the ground. and it is more than there being a small distance. At a small distance gentlemen landed. Captain Cook landed. It appeared that the Russians in Kamtschatka had taken goods from the coast. It was about 100 leagues in length; had a shod with boots. its various parts. some with wethers or lambs which, the workmanship was good. We weighed

coast and sea towards the W. but, in that direction, the fog was so thick, that the view was not more extensive than it was from our ships. The coast of the continent seemed to incline to the N. at a low point, named by us Point Rodney, which bore from the island N. W. half W. at the distance of three or four leagues; but the high land, which assumed a more northerly direction, was perceived at a much greater distance.

The latitude of this island is 64 d. 30 m. N. and its longitude is 193 d. 57 m. E. It is about twelve miles in circumference. The surface of the ground principally consists of large loose stones, covered in many places with moss and other vegetables, of which twenty or thirty different species were observed, and most of them were in flower. But the Captain saw not a tree or shrub, either on the island, or upon the neighbouring continent. Near the beach where he landed, was a considerable quantity of wild purslain, long-wort, pease, &c. some of which he took on board for boiling. He saw several plovers, and other small birds; a fox was also seen. He met with some decayed huts, built partly under ground. People had lately been upon the island; and it is more than probable, that they often repair to it, there being a beaten path from one end to the other. At a small distance from that part of the shore where our gentlemen landed, they found a sledge, which induced Captain Cook to give the island the appellation of Sledge Island. It appeared to be such a one as is used by the Russians in Kamtschatka, for the purpose of conveying goods from one place to another over the snow or ice. It was about twenty inches in breadth, and ten feet in length; had a sort of rail work on each side, and was shod with bone. Its construction was admirable, and its various parts were put together with great neatness; some with wooden pins, but for the most part with thongs or lashings of whale bone; in consequence of which, the Captain imagined, that it was entirely the workmanship of the natives.

We weighed anchor at three o'clock in the morning
of

of the 6th, and made sail to the N. W. with a light breeze from the southward. Having afterwards but little wind, and that variable, we made but a slow progress; and, at eight o'clock in the evening, finding the ships getting into shoal water, we anchored in seven fathoms, our distance from the coast being about two leagues. Sledge Island then bore S. 51 d. E. nine or ten leagues distant. Soon after we had let go our anchors, the weather, which had been misty, cleared up, and we perceived high land extending from N. 40 d. E. to N. 30 d. W. seemingly disjoined from the coast near which we lay at anchor, which appeared to extend to the north-eastward. We at the same time saw an island bearing N. 81 d. W. at the distance of eight or nine leagues. It seemed to be of small extent, and was named King's Island. We rode at anchor till eight the next morning, when we weighed, and steered a N. W. course. The weather being clear towards the evening, we obtained a sight of the north-western land, distant about three leagues. We passed the night in making short boards, the weather being rainy and misty, and the wind inconsiderable. Between four and five in the morning of the 8th, we again had a sight of the N. W. land; and, not long afterwards, having a calm, and being driven by a current towards the shore, we thought proper to anchor in about twelve fathoms water, at the distance of about two miles from the coast. Over the western extremity is a lofty peaked hill, situate in the longitude of 192 d. 18 m. E. and in the latitude of 65 d. 36 m. N. A north easterly breeze springing up at eight o'clock, we weighed, and made sail to the south-eastward, hoping to find a passage between this N. W. land and the coast, near which we had cast anchor in the evening of the 6th. But we quickly got into seven fathoms water, and perceived low land connecting the two coasts, and the elevated land behind it.

Convinced that the whole was a continued coast, we now tacked, and steered for its north-western part, near which we anchored in seventeen fathoms. The weather,

ther, at present, the next morning, concern the neighbourhood W. by considerably fore-mentioned, S. 32 d. E. being towards now about Over it, an land, which continent.

This point, distinguished by western extremity, stands in the latitude of some people mistaken in stages, and the same place.

At eight o'clock, a breeze arising, scarcely felt, violence, the wind raising such Having plied, o'clock in the evening, we had perceived anchor under our nearer composed of three or four, afford us little but continued eight o'clock from the nearest part

ther, at present, was very thick and rainy ; but, at four the next morning, it cleared up, and enabled us to discern the neighbouring land. A lofty steep rock or island bore W. by S. another island to the northward of it, and considerably larger, bore W. by N. the peaked hill before-mentioned, S. E. by E, and the point that was under it, S. 32 d. E. Under this hill is some low land, extending towards the N. W. the extreme point of which was now about one league distant, bearing N. E. by E. Over it, and also beyond it, we observed some high land, which we imagined was a continuation of the continent.

This point of land, which the Commodore distinguished by the name of Cape Prince of Wales, is the western extreme of all America hitherto known. It stands in the longitude of 191 d. 45 m. E. and in the latitude of 65 d. 46 m. N. We fancied that we saw some people on the coast ; and, perhaps, we were not mistaken in our supposition, as some elevations like stages, and others resembling huts, were observed at the same place.

At eight o'clock this morning, a faint northerly breeze arising, we weighed anchor : but our sails were scarcely set, when it began to blow and rain with great violence, there being, at the same time, misty weather. The wind and current were in contrary directions, raising such a sea, that it often broke into the ship. Having plied to windward, with little effect, till two o'clock in the afternoon, we stood for the island which we had perceived to the westward, intending to cast anchor under it till the gale should abate. But, upon our nearer approach to this land, we found that it was composed of two small islands, neither of which exceeded three or four leagues in circumference. As these could afford us little shelter, we did not come to an anchor, but continued to stretch towards the W. and, about eight o'clock in the evening, we saw land extending from the N. N. W. to W. by S. the distance of the nearest part being six leagues. We stood on till ten o'clock,

o'clock, and then made a board towards the E. in order to pass the night.

On Monday the 10th, at break of day, we resumed our westward course for the land seen by us the preceding evening. At eleven minutes after seven o'clock it extended from S. 72 d. W. to N. 41 d. E. Between the south-western extremity, and a point bearing W. 51 miles distant, the coast forms a spacious bay, in which we dropped our anchors at ten in the forenoon, about two miles from the northern shore, over a gravelly bottom, at the depth of ten fathoms. The northern point of this bay bore N. 43 d. E. its southern point S. 58 d. W. the bottom of the bay, N 60 d. W. between two and three leagues distant; and the two islands that we had passed the preceding day, were at the distance of fourteen leagues, bearing N. 72 d. E.

Captain

*Captain Cook lands
Natives, the Tſche
Persons—Ornament
Huts—Cano
Strait to the Am
ance of a prodigio
Manner blocked
Use of a Provision
almost surrounded
Attempts to get to
the Formation, Es
—Cape North.*

WHILE we served, the people, who seem to be of fear, at the sight of us, perceive persons upon their shoulders, proposed to land with armed boats, about Thirty or forty men, in a boat, a bow, a eminence near the shore, towards the shore, and were so polite to them low bows. They did not inspire us for the landing of the boats ashore,

Captain Cook lands at a Village—Interviews with some of the Natives, the Tschutshi—Their Weapons described—Their Persons—Ornaments—Dress—Winter Habitations—Summer Huts—Canoes—The Ships quit the Bay—Cross the Strait to the American Coast—Point Mulgrave—Appearance of a prodigious Mass of Ice—Icy Cape—The Sea, in a Manner blocked up with Ice—Sea Horses killed, and made Use of as Provisions—Account of these Animals—The Ships almost surrounded with Ice—Cape Lisburne—Unsuccessful Attempts to get to the North through the Ice—Remarks on the Formation, &c. of this Ice—Arrival on the Asiatic Coast—Cape North.

WHILE we were steering for this bay, we observed, on the N. shore, a village, and some people, who seemed to have been thrown into confusion, or fear, at the sight of our vessels. We could plainly perceive persons running up the country with burdens upon their shoulders. At this village Captain Cook proposed to land; and accordingly, went with three armed boats, accompanied by some of the officers. Thirty or forty men, each of whom was armed with a pike, a bow, and arrows, stood drawn up on an eminence near the houses; three of them came down towards the shore on the approach of our gentlemen, and were so polite as to pull off their caps, and make them low bows. Though this civility was returned, it did not inspire them with sufficient confidence to wait for the landing of our party; for, the instant they put the boats ashore, the natives retired. Captain Cook fol-

lowed them alone, without any thing in his hand ; and by signs and gestures, prevailed on them to stop, and accept some trifling presents : in return for these, they gave him two fox skins, and a couple of sea horse teeth. The Captain was of opinion, that they had brought these articles down with them for the purpose of presenting them to him ; and that they would have given them to him, even if they had expected no return.

They seemed very timid and cautious ; intimating their desire, by signs, that no more of our people should be suffered to come up. On the Captain's laying his hand on the shoulder of one of them, he started back several paces ; in proportion as he advanced, they retreated, always in the attitude of being ready to make use of their spears ; while those on the eminence, were prepared to support them with their arrows. Insensibly, the Captain, and two or three of his companions, introduced themselves among them. The distribution of a few beads among some of them, soon created a degree of confidence, so that they were not alarmed, when the Captain was joined by a few more of his people ; and, in a short time, a kind of traffic was entered into. In exchange for tobacco, knives, beads, and other articles, they gave a few arrows, and some of their clothing ; but nothing that our people had to offer, could induce them to part with a spear or a bow. These they held in continual readiness, never quitting them, except at one time, when four or five persons laid theirs down, while they favoured our party with a song and a dance ; and even then, they placed them in such a manner, that they could lay hold of them in a moment.

Their arrows were pointed either with stone or bone, but very few of them had barbs : and some of them had a round blunt point. What use these are applied to, we cannot say, unless it be to kill small animals without damaging the skin. Their bows were such as we had observed on the American coast : their spontoons, or spears, were of iron or steel, and of European or Asiatic workmanship ; and considerable pains had been taken

to

to embellish them and of a white and arrows in the leathern strap or quiver, slung over arrows ; and some beautiful, being neat embroidery, things, and particularly of ingenuity, far to find among so

All the American that coast, had red bones, and were among whom we had long visages, the whole, they a No women, nor nor any aged persons bald ; and he was others seemed to be above the middle mark across his others ; all of them had glass beads had fixed ornaments to their lips : this differ from the American

Their apparel consisted of a frock, a pair of breeches, the skins of deer, extremely well dressed, others without it. As to the hair, which were worn by them some hooded sufficiently large to cover the hair was apparent shaved, or the hair

to embellish them with carving, and inlayings of brass, and of a white metal. Those who stood with bows and arrows in their hands, had the spear slung by a leathern strap over their right shoulder. A leathern quiver, slung over their left shoulder, served to contain arrows; and some of these quivers were exceedingly beautiful, being made of red leather, on which was very neat embroidery, and other ornaments. Several other things, and particularly their clothing, indicated a degree of ingenuity, far surpassing what any one would expect to find among so northern a people.

All the Americans we had seen since our arrival on that coast, had round chubby faces, and high cheek-bones, and were rather low of stature. The people among whom we now were, far from resembling them, had long visages, and were stout and well made: upon the whole, they appeared to be a very different nation. No women, nor children of either sex, were observed, nor any aged persons, except one man, whose head was bald; and he was the only one who bore no arms: the others seemed to be select men, and rather under than above the middle age. The elderly man had a black mark across his face, which was not perceived in any others; all of them had their ears perforated, and some had glass beads hanging to them. These were the only fixed ornaments seen about them, for they wear none to their lips: this is another particular, in which they differ from the Americans we had lately seen.

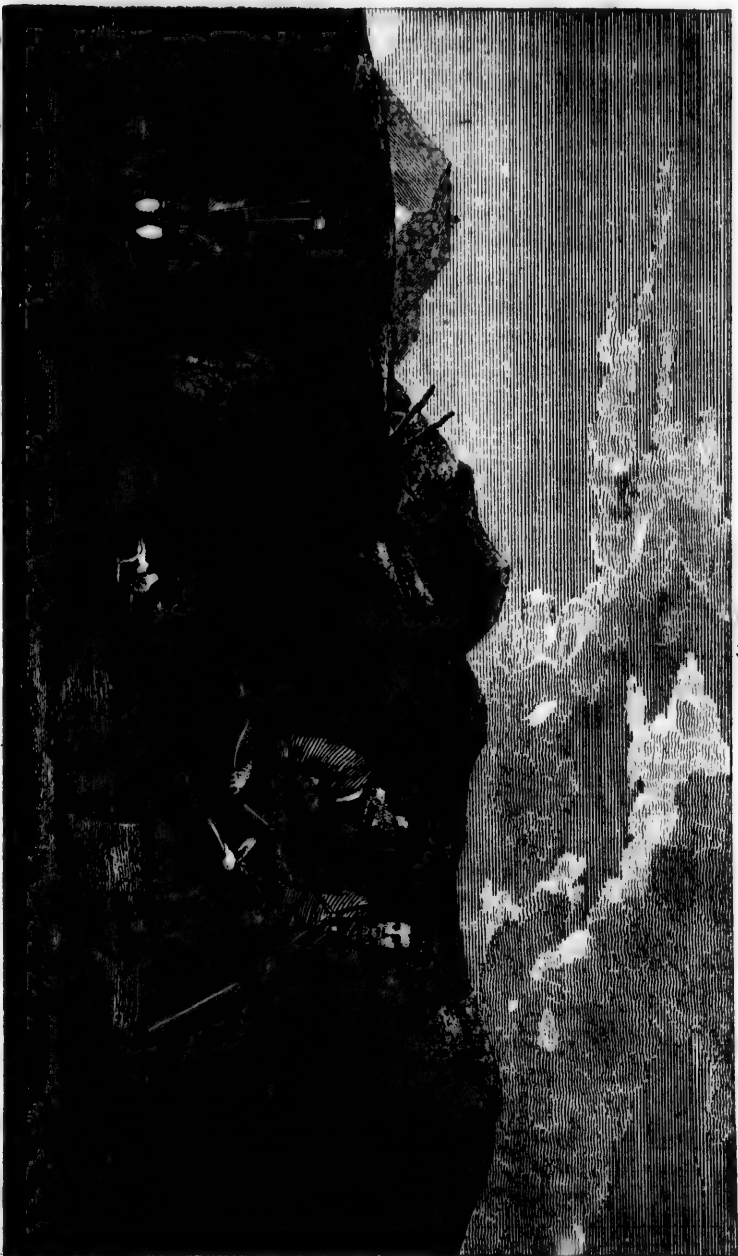
Their apparel consisted of a pair of breeches, a cap, a frock, a pair of boots, and a pair of gloves, all made of the skins of deer, dogs, seals, and other animals, and extremely well dressed; some with the hair or fur on, and others without it. The caps were made in such a manner, as to fit the head very close; and besides these caps, which were worn by most of them, we procured from them some hoods, made of dog skins, that were sufficiently large to cover both head and shoulders. Their hair was apparently black, but their heads were either shaved, or the hair cut close off, and none of them wore
3 X 2 beards.

beards. Of the few articles which they obtained from our people, knives and tobacco were what they set the most value upon.

The village was composed both of their winter and their summer habitations; the former are exactly like a vault, the floor of which is sunk below the surface of the earth. One of them, which Captain Cook examined, was of an oval figure, about twenty feet in length, and twelve or more in height; the framing consisted of wood, and the ribs of whales, judiciously disposed, and bound together with smaller materials of the same kind. Over this framing, a covering of strong coarse grass was laid, and that again was covered with earth; so that on the outside, the house had the appearance of a little hill-lock, supported by a wall of stone, of the height of three or four feet, which was built round the two sides, and one end. At the other end of the habitation, the earth was raised sloping, to walk up to the entrance, which was by a hole in the top of the roof, over that end. The floor was boarded, and under it was a sort of cellar, in which the Captain saw nothing but water; at the end of each house was a vaulted room, which he supposed was a store-room. These store-rooms communicated, by a dark passage, with the house; and with the open air, by a hole in the roof, which was even with the ground one walked upon; but they cannot be said to be entirely below ground; for one end extended to the edge of the hill, along which they were made, and which was built up with stone. Over it stood a kind of sentry-box, or tower, formed of the large bones of great fish.

Their summer huts were of a tolerable size, and circular, being brought to a point at the top. Slight poles and bones, covered with the skins of sea animals, composed the framing. Captain Cook examined the inside of one: there was a fire place just within the door, where a few wooden vessels were deposited, all very dirty. Their bed places were close to the side, and occupied

Cambs. Dvnygers



Printed by W. Sturges & Sons, 15, Abchurch Lane, London, E.C. 4.
The Tschuktschi and their Habitations.

occupied about
privacy seen
partitions, n
consisted of
and dry.

About the
twelve feet in
of the Amer
of bones, and
fish and skin
of their dogs
dogs are of t
colours, with
are, in all pr
their sledges
sledges, as th
of their win
that dogs co
dead, which

The cano
with those o
the large and
the village.

From the
it appeared, t
part of their
tremely barr
shrub. At s
a ridge of mo
not long befo

At first, for
the island of
before mentio
coast, the fir
and from the
was, more pr
the eastern ex
the year 172
farther exam

occupied about one half of the circuit : some degree of privacy seemed to be observed ; for there were several partitions, made with skins. The bed and bedding consisted of deer skins, and most of them were clean and dry.

About the houses were erected several stages, ten or twelve feet in height, such as we had seen on some parts of the American coast. They were composed entirely of bones, and were apparently intended for drying their fish and skins, which were thus placed out of the reach of their dogs, of which they had great numbers. These dogs are of the fox kind, rather large, and of different colours, with long soft hair, that resembles wool. They are, in all probability, used for the purpose of drawing their sledges in winter ; for it appears that they have sledges, as the Captain saw many of them laid up in one of their winter huts. It is, likewise, not improbable, that dogs constitute a part of their food, for several lay dead, which had been killed that morning.

The canoes of these people are of the same kind with those of the northern Americans, some, both of the large and small sort, being seen lying in a creek near the village.

From the large bones of fish, and other sea animals, it appeared, that the sea furnished them with the greater part of their subsistence. The country seemed extremely barren, as our gentlemen saw not a tree or shrub. At some distance towards the W. they observed a ridge of mountains covered with snow, that had fallen not long before.

At first, some of us supposed this land to be a part of the island of Alaschka, laid down in Mr Stæhlin's map before mentioned ; but from the appearance of the coast, the situation of the opposite shore of America, and from the longitude, we soon conjectured that it was, more probably, the country of the Tchutski, or the eastern extremity of Asia, explored by Beering in the year 1728. In admitting this, however, without farther examination, we must have pronounced Mr Stæhlin's

Stahlin's map, and his account of the new northern Archipelago, to be either remarkably erroneous, even in latitude, or else to be a mere fiction; a judgment which we would not presume to pass, upon a publication so respectably vouched, without producing the most decisive proofs.

After our party had remained with these people between two and three hours, they returned on board; and, soon after, the wind becoming southerly, we weighed anchor, stood out of the bay, and steered to the N. E. between the coast and the two islands. At twelve o'clock the next day (August 11) the former extended from S. 80 d. W. to N. 84 d. W. the latter bore S. 40 d. W. and the peaked hill, over Cape Prince of Wales, bore S. 36 d. E. The latitude of the ship was 66 d. 54 m. N. the longitude 191 d. 19 m. E. our soundings were twenty-eight fathoms; and our position nearly in the middle of the channel, between the two coasts, each being at the distance of about seven leagues.

We steered to the eastward from this station, in order to make a nearer approach to the American coast. In this course the water gradually shoaled; and there being very little wind, and all our endeavours to increase our depth failing, we were obliged at last to cast anchor in six fathoms; which was the only remedy remaining, to prevent the ships driving into more shallow water. The nearest part of the western land bore W. twelve leagues distant; the peaked mountain over Cape Prince of Wales, bore S. 16 d. W. and the most northern part of the American continent in sight, E. S. E. the distance of the nearest part being about four leagues. After we had anchored, a boat was dispatched to sound, and the water was found to shoal gradually towards the land. While our ships lay at anchor, which was from six to nine in the evening, we perceived little or no current, nor did we observe that the water rose or fell.

A northerly breeze springing up, we weighed, and made sail to the westward, which course soon brought us into deep water; and, during the 12th, we plied to

the

the north
to that of
noon, a br
four o'clock
we directed
of nine an
a continua
by S. to E.
more land
into thirte
we made a
the land;
N. to S. E.
or four lea
by us Point
of 67 d. 45
E. The la
little farther
whole was
wood. W
but, in a sh
coming on
to the west
the wind w
which abate
N. E. till six
more easter
hotties, and
sembled san
hedge-sparr
judged we
fog, we cou
blew strong
course whic
the noon of
in the morn
course whic
We now ste
to increase o

the northward in sight of both coasts, but we kept nearest to that of America. On the 13th, at four in the afternoon, a breeze arising at S. we steered N. E. by N. at four o'clock the next morning, when, seeing no land, we directed our course E. by N. and between the hours of nine and ten, land appeared, which we supposed was a continuation of the continent. It extended from E. by S. to E. by N. and, not long afterwards, we descried more land, bearing N. by E. Coming rather suddenly into thirteen fathoms water, at two in the afternoon, we made a trip off till four, when we again stood in for the land; which, soon after, we saw, extending from N. to S. E. the nearest part being at the distance of three or four leagues. The coast here forms a point, named by us Point Mulgrave, which is situated in the latitude of 67 d. 45 m. N. and in the longitude of 194 d. 51 m. E. The land seemed to be very low near the sea, but a little farther it rises into hills of a moderate height; the whole was free from snow, and apparently destitute of wood. We now tacked, and bore away N. W. by W. but, in a short time afterwards, thick weather, with rain, coming on, and the wind increasing, we hauled more to the westward. At two o'clock the next morning, the wind veered to S. W. by S. and blew a strong gale, which abated towards noon. We now stood to the N. E. till six the next morning, when we steered rather more easterly; in this run, we met with several sea-horses, and great numbers of birds; some of which resembled sand-larks, and others were not larger than hedge-sparrows. We also saw some shags, so that we judged we were not far from land; but, having a thick fog, we could not expect to see any; and as the wind blew strong, it was not deemed prudent to continue a course which was most likely to bring us to it. From the noon of this day, (the 16th of August) to six o'clock in the morning of the following, we steered E. by N. a course which brought us into fifteen fathoms water. We now steered N. E. by E. thinking, by such a course, to increase our depth of water. But, in the space of six leagues,

leagues, it shoaled to eleven fathoms, which induced us to haul close to the wind, that now blew at W. About twelve o'clock, both sun and moon were clearly seen at intervals, and we made some hasty observations for the longitude; which, reduced to noon, when the latitude was 70 d. 33 m. N. gave 197 d. 41 m. E. The time-keeper, for the same time, gave 198 d.

Some time in the forenoon, we perceived a brightness in the northern horizon, like that reflected from ice, usually called the blink. Little notice was taken of it, from a supposition that it was improbable we should so soon met with ice. The sharpness of the air, however, and gloominess of the weather, for the two or three preceding days, seemed to indicate some sudden change. About an hour afterwards, the sight of an enormous mass of ice, left us no longer in any doubt respecting the cause of the brightness of the horizon. Between two and three o'clock, we tacked close to the edge of the ice, in twenty-two fathoms water, being then in the latitude of 70 d. 41 m. N. and unable to stand on any farther: for the ice was perfectly impenetrable, and extended from W. by S. to E. by N. as far as the eye could reach. Here we met with great numbers of sea horses, some of which were in the water, but far more upon the ice. The Commodore had thoughts of hoisting out the boats to kill some of these animals; but, the wind freshening, he gave up the design; and we continued to ply towards the S. or rather towards the W. for the wind came from that quarter. We made no progress; for, at twelve on the 18th, our latitude was 70 d. 44 m. N. and we were almost five leagues farther to the E.

We were, at present, close to the edge of the ice, which was as compact as a wall, and appeared to be at least ten or twelve feet in height: but, farther northward, it seemed to be much higher. Its surface was exceedingly rugged, and in several places, we saw pools of water upon it. We now stood to the S. and, after running six leagues, shoaled the water to seven fathoms; but

but it soon in this time, the clearer, we saw the distance of the extremity forms with ice, on the name of Icy its longitude the land was of its being a The Discovery met with less on that account also, to prevent

Our present upon a lee-sho the ice to win was evident, th it and the land chance to take most to join th that was free fr making a short signal for the the same time favourable, so t

On Wednesday the wind veering and, at twelve longitude 196 considerable qu main ice was one and two, v compact than N. but it was forcing the sh number of sea want of fresh dispatched to p

but it soon increased to the depth of nine fathoms. At this time, the weather, which had been hazy, becoming clearer, we saw land extending from S. to S. E. by E. at the distance of three or four miles. The eastern extremity forms a point, which was greatly encumbered with ice, on which account it was distinguished by the name of Icy Cape. Its latitude is 70 d. 29 m. N. and its longitude 198 d. 20 m. E. The other extreme of the land was lost in the horizon; and we had no doubt of its being a continuation of the continent of America. The Discovery being about a mile astern, and to leeward, met with less depth of water than we did; and tacking on that account, the Commodore was obliged to tack also, to prevent separation.

Our present situation was very critical. We were upon a lee-shore in shoal water; and the main body of the ice to windward, was driving down upon us. It was evident, that if we continued much longer between it and the land, it would force us ashore, unless it should chance to take the ground before us. It appeared almost to join the land to leeward, and the only direction that was free from it, was to the south-westward. After making a short board to the N. Captain Cook made a signal for the Discovery to tack, and his ship tacked at the same time. The wind proved in some measure favourable, so that we lay up S. W. and S. W. by W.

On Wednesday the 19th, at eight in the morning, the wind veering to W. we tacked to the northward; and, at twelve, the latitude was 70 d. 6 m. N. and the longitude 196 d. 42 m. E. In this situation, we had a considerable quantity of drift ice about our ships, and the main ice was about two leagues to the N. Between one and two, we got in with the edge of it. It was less compact than that which we had observed towards the N. but it was too close, and in too large pieces to attempt forcing the ships through it. We saw an amazing number of sea horses on the ice, and as we were in want of fresh provisions, the boats from each ship were dispatched to procure some of them. By seven in the

evening, we had received on board the *Resolution*, nine of these animals; which, till this time, we had supposed to be sea cows; so that we were greatly disappointed, particularly some of the sailors, who, on account of the novelty of the thing, had been feasting their eyes for some days past. Nor would they now have been disappointed, nor have known the difference, if there had not been two or three men on board, who had been in Greenland, and declared what animals these were, and that no person ever eat of them. Notwithstanding this, we made them serve us for provisions, and there were few of our people who did not prefer them to our salt meat.

The fat of these animals is, at first, as sweet as marrow; but, in a few days, it becomes rancid, unless it is salted, in which state it will keep much longer. The lean flesh is coarse and blackish, and has a strong taste; and the heart is almost as well tasted as that of a bullock. The fat, when melted, affords a good quantity of oil, which burns very well in lamps; and their hides, which are of great thickness, were extremely useful about our rigging. The teeth, or tusks, of most of them were, at this time, of a very small size; even some of the largest and oldest of these animals, had them not exceeding half a foot in length. Hence we concluded, that they had lately shed their old teeth.

They lie upon the ice in herds of many hundreds, huddling like swine, one over the other; and they roar very loud; so that in the night, or when the weather was foggy, they gave us notice of the vicinity of the ice, before we could discern it. We never found the whole herd sleeping, some of them being constantly upon the watch. These, on the approach of the boat, would awake those that were next to them; and the alarm being thus gradually communicated, the whole herd would presently be awake. However, they were seldom in a hurry to get away, before they had been once fired at. Then they would fall into the sea, one over the other, in the utmost confusion; and, if we did not

nine
posed
ated,
the
s for
dif-
had
n in
and
this,
were
c salt

mar-
it is
The
aste;
lock.
f oil,
hich
our
e, at
rgeft
half
had

reds,
roar
ather
f the
the
antly
boat,
d the
hole
were
been
one
e did
not

SEA HORSES OF ICY CAPE.



looks voyagers

C
not happ

at, we ge

They d

authors h

were attac

ance, than

follow, an

of a musq

one at th

The fema

and at the

ice or in t

dam, thou

you destro

when in th

fore fins.

has given

the name o

a sea horse

a corrupti

not in the

same anim

and there

cow than

nothing b

unlike a se

one of the

feet four in

ference of

inches; its

feet six inc

the head, s

four pound

a half, and

It may n

days before

flying to t

much large

brown colo

not happen, at the first discharge, to kill those we fired at, we generally lost them, though mortally wounded.

They did not appear to us to be so dangerous as some authors have represented them, not even when they were attacked. They are, indeed, more so, in appearance, than in reality. Vast multitudes of them would follow, and come close up to the boats; but the flash of a musquet in the pan, or even the mere pointing of one at them, would send them down in a moment. The female will defend her young one to the very last, and at the expence of her own life, whether upon the ice or in the water. Nor will the young one quit the dam, though she should have been killed; so that, if you destroy one, you are sure of the other. The dam, when in the water, holds her young one between her fore fins. Mr Pennant, in his Synopsis of Quadrupeds, has given a very good description of this animal under the name of the *Arctic Walrus*. Why it should be called a sea horse, is difficult to determine, unless the word be a corruption of the Russian name *Morse*; for they do not in the least resemble a horse. It is, doubtless, the same animal that is found in the Gulph of St Lawrence, and there called a sea cow. It is certainly more like a cow than a horse; but this resemblance consists in nothing but the snout. In short, it is an animal not unlike a seal, but incomparably larger. The length of one of them, which was none of the largest, was nine feet four inches from the snout to the tail; the circumference of its body at the shoulder, was seven feet ten inches; its circumference near the hinder fins was five feet six inches, and the weight of the carcase, without the head, skin, or entrails, was eight hundred and fifty-four pounds. The head weighed forty-one pounds and a half, and the skin two hundred and five pounds.

It may not be improper to remark, that, for some days before this time, we had often seen flocks of ducks flying to the S. They were of two species, the one much larger than the other. The larger sort was of a brown colour; and of the small sort, either the duck or

drake was black and white, and the other brown. Some of our people said that they also saw geese. This seems to indicate, that there must be land to the northward, where these birds, in the proper season, find shelter for breeding, and whence they were now on their return to a warmer climate.

Soon after we had got our sea horses on board, we were, in a manner, surrounded with ice; and had no means of clearing it, but by steering to the southward, which we did till three o'clock the next morning, with a light westerly breeze, and, in general, thick, foggy weather. Our soundings were from twelve to fifteen fathoms. We then tacked and stood to the northward till ten o'clock, when the wind shifting to the N. we stood to the W. S. W. and W. At two in the afternoon, we fell in with the main ice, and kept along the edge of it, being partly directed by the roaring of the sea horses, for we had an exceeding thick fog. Thus we continued failing till near midnight, when we got in among the loose pieces of ice.

The wind being easterly, and the fog very thick, we now hauled to the southward; and, at ten the next morning, the weather clearing up, we saw the American continent, extending from S. by E. to E. by S. and, at noon, from S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. to E. the distance of the nearest part being five leagues. We were at present in the latitude of 69 d. 32 m. N. and in the longitude of 195 d. 48 m. E. and, as the main ice was not far from us, it is evident, that it now covered a part of the sea; which, a few days before, had been free from it; and that it extended farther towards the S. than where we first fell in with it.

During the afternoon we had but little wind; and the Master was sent in a boat to observe whether there was any current, but he found none. We continued to steer for the American land till eight o'clock, in order to obtain a nearer view of it, and to search for a harbour; but seeing nothing that had the appearance of

one, we a
breeze. A
to E. the
five leagu
a point,
given. It
in the long
tolerably
may be lo
see, being
almost eve
had found
moderate
from snow
greenish l
upon it.

On Satu
the weath
vals of sun
calm, whi
the surge
many look
at N. E. an
S. to get c
the fog di
the Comm
N. near th
what coul
wind seem
favourable

In our
deepened
wind the
sunshine,
the 26th,
At twelve
seemed to
observatio
longitude

one, we again stood to the N. with a gentle westerly breeze. At this time, the coast extended from S. W. to E. the nearest part being at the distance of four or five leagues. The southern extreme seemed to form a point, to which the name of Cape Lisburne was given. It is situate in the latitude of 69 d. 5 m. N. and in the longitude of 194 d. 42 m. E. and appeared to be tolerably high land, even down to the sea; but there may be low land under it, which we might not then see, being less than ten leagues distant from it. In almost every other part, as we advanced to the N. we had found a low coast, from which the land rises to a moderate height. The coast now before us was free from snow, except in one or two places, and had a greenish hue. But we could not discern any wood upon it.

On Saturday the 22d, the wind was southerly, and the weather for the most part foggy, with some intervals of sunshine. At eight in the evening, we had a calm, which continued till midnight, when we heard the surge of the sea dashing against the ice, and had many loose pieces about us. A light breeze now arose at N. E. and the fog being very thick, we steered to the S. to get clear of the ice. At eight the next morning, the fog dispersed, and we hauled towards the W. for the Commodore finding that he could not get to the N. near the coast, by reason of the ice, resolved to try what could be done at a distance from it; and as the wind seemed to be fixed at N. he considered it as a favourable opportunity.

In our progress to the westward, the water gradually deepened to twenty-eight fathoms. With the northerly wind the air was sharp and cold; and we had fogs, sunshine, showers of snow and sleet alternately. On the 26th, at ten in the morning, we fell in with the ice. At twelve, it extended from N. W. to E. by N. and seemed to be thick and compact. We were now, by observation, in the latitude of 69 d. 36 m. N. and in the longitude of 184 d. E. and it now appeared that we had

had no better prospect of getting to the N. here, than nearer the shore.

We continued steering to the W. till five in the afternoon, when we were, in some degree, embayed by the ice, which was very close in the N. W. and N. E. quarters, with a great quantity of loose ice about the edge of the main body. At this time, we had baffling light airs, but the wind soon settled at S. and increased to a fresh gale, accompanied with showers of rain. We got the tack aboard, and stretched to the E. as this was the only direction in which the sea was free from ice.

On Thursday the 27th, at four in the morning, we tacked and stood to the westward, and at seven o'clock in the evening, we were close in with the edge of the ice, which lay E. N. E. and W. S. W. as far in each of those directions as the eye could reach. There being but little wind, Captain Cook went with the boats to examine the state of the ice. He found it consisting of loose pieces, of various extent, and so close together, that he could scarcely enter the outer edge with a boat; and it was as impracticable for the ships to enter it, as if it had been so many rocks. He particularly remarked, that it was all pure transparent ice, except the upper surface, which was rather porous. It seemed to be wholly composed of frozen snow, and to have been all formed at sea. For, not to insist on the improbability of such prodigious masses floating out of rivers, none of the productions of the land were found incorporated, or mixed in it; which would certainly have been the case, if it had been formed in rivers, either great or small.

The pieces of ice that formed the outer edge of the main body, were from forty or fifty yards in extent, to four or five; and the Captain judged, that the larger pieces reached thirty feet or more, under the surface of the water. He also thought it highly improbable, that this ice could have been the production of the preceding winter alone. He was rather inclined to sup-

pose

pose it to
It was eq
that now
the tenth
for the su
and influ
to his jud
these eno
above the
out for m
is not see
or rather
down the
one piece
washing
surge of t
observing
been part
continued
appeared
He measu
that it wa
sailed ove
would ha
a sufficien
funk the
pen, that
season, th
accumula
stantly a r
one who
A thick
was thus
sooner th
to each s
not wait
animals,
astonishin
amongst-

pose it to have been the production of many winters. It was equally improbable, in his opinion, that the little that now remained of the summer, could destroy even the tenth part of what now subsisted of this great mass; for the sun had already exerted upon it the full force and influence of his rays. The sun, indeed, according to his judgment, contributes very little towards reducing these enormous masses. For though that luminary is above the horizon a considerable while, it seldom shines out for more than a few hours at a time, and frequently is not seen for several successive days. It is the wind, or rather the waves raised by the wind, that brings down the bulk of these prodigious masses, by grinding one piece against another, and by undermining and washing away those parts which are exposed to the surge of the sea. This was manifest, from the Captain's observing, that the upper surface of many pieces had been partly washed away, while the base, or under part, continued firm for several fathoms round that which appeared above water, like a shoal round a high rock. He measured the depth of water upon one, and found that it was fifteen feet, so that the ships might have sailed over. If he had not measured this depth, he would have been unwilling to believe, that there was a sufficient weight of ice above the surface, to have sunk the other so much below it. It may thus happen, that more ice is destroyed in one tempestuous season, than is formed in several winters, and an endless accumulation of it is prevented. But that there is constantly a remaining store, will be acknowledged by every one who has been upon the spot.

A thick fog, which came on while the Commodore was thus employed with the boats, hastened him aboard sooner than he could have wished, with one sea horse to each ship. Our party had killed many, but could not wait to bring them off. The number of these animals, on all the ice that we had seen, is really astonishing. We spent the night standing off and on, amongst the drift ice, and at nine o'clock the next morning,

ing, the fog having in some degree dispersed, boats from each of the ships were dispatched for sea horses; for our people by this time began to relish them, and those we had before furnished ourselves with, were all consumed. At noon, our latitude was 67 d. 17 m. N. our longitude 183 d. E. and our depth of water was twenty-five fathoms. At two in the afternoon, having got on board as many sea horses as were deemed sufficient, and the wind freshening at S. S. E. we hoisted in the boats, and steered to the S. W. But being unable to weather the ice upon this tack, or to go through it, we made a board to the eastward, till about eight o'clock, then resumed our course to the S. W. and were obliged before midnight to tack again, on account of the ice. Not long after, the wind veering to the N. W. and blowing a stiff gale, we stretched to the S. W. close hauled.

On the 29th, in the morning, we saw the main ice towards the N. and soon after, perceived land bearing S. W. by W. In a short time after this, more land was seen, bearing W. It shewed itself in two hills, resembling islands, but soon the whole appeared connected. As we made a nearer approach to the land, the depth of water decreased very fast, so that, at twelve o'clock, when we tacked, we found only eighteen fathoms; being three miles from the coast, which extended from S. 30 d. E. to N. 60 d. W. The latter extremity terminating in a bluff point, being one of the hills mentioned before.

The weather was now very hazy, with drizzling rain; but, soon afterwards, it cleared up, particularly to the southward, westward, and northward. This enabled us to have a tolerable view of the coast; which resembles, in every respect, the opposite coast of America; that is, low land next the sea, with higher land farther back. It was totally destitute of wood, and even of snow; but was, probably, covered with a mossy substance, that gave it a brownish hue. In the low ground that lay between the sea and the high land, was a lake, extending

ing to the
we stood
mentione
direction
might pe
land, the
case, the
them. T
the name
latitude of
51 m. E
very west
to the no
pretty clea
westward,
thinking
but findin
fog arising
of the ice
linguished
westward,

The sea
when the
Cook did n
any farther
Atlantic O
the probab
rected to th
cruit our w
pally occup
the winter,
tion and ge
dition to re
to prosecute

ing to the south-eastward farther than we could see. As we stood off, the most westerly of the two hills above-mentioned, came open off the bluff point, in a N. W. direction. It had the appearance of an island, but it might perhaps be connected with the other by low land, though we did not see it. And if that be the case, there is a two-fold point, with a bay between them. This point, which is rocky and steep, received the name of Cape North. It is situated nearly in the latitude of 68 d. 36 m. N. and in the longitude of 180 d. 51 m. E. The coast beyond it doubtless assumes a very westerly direction; for we could discern no land to the northward of it, though the horizon was there pretty clear. Wishing to see more of the coast to the westward, we tacked again, at two in the afternoon, thinking we should be able to weather Cape North; but finding we could not, the wind freshening, a thick fog arising, with much snow, and being apprehensive of the ice coming down upon us, the Commodore relinquished the design he had formed of plying to the westward, and again stood off shore.

The season was now so far advanced, and the time when the frost generally sets in was so near, that Capt. Cook did not think it consistent with prudence, to make any farther attempts to discover a passage into the Atlantic Ocean this year, in any direction, so small was the probability of success. His attention was now directed to the search of some place, where we might recruit our wood and water; and the object that principally occupied his thoughts was, how he should pass the winter, so as to make some improvements in navigation and geography, and, at the same time, be in a condition to return to the northward the ensuing summer, to prosecute his search of a passage into the Atlantic.

The Ships proceed along the Coast of Asia—Burney's Island—Cape Serdze Kamen—Pass the East Cape of Asia—Description of it—Bay of St Lawrence—Two other Bays—Beering's Cape Tschukotskoi—Steer for the Coast of America—Cape Darby—Bald-Head—Captain Cook lands in search of Wood and Water—Cape Denbigh—Some of the Natives come off to us—Besborough Island—Captain Cook's Interview with a particular Family—Mr King's Interview with the same Family—Supplies of Wood and Water—Mr King sent to examine the Coast—Visits from the Natives—Their Huts—Produce of the Country—Mr King's Report—Norton's Sound—Lunar Observations.

HAVING stood off till our soundings were eighteen fathoms, we made sail to the eastward, along the coast, which, we were now pretty well convinced, could only be the continent of Asia. The wind blowing fresh, and there being, at the same time, a thick mist, and a very heavy fall of snow, it was requisite that we should proceed with particular caution: we therefore brought to, for a few hours, in the night. Early the next morning, which was the 30th of August, we steered such a course as we judged most likely to bring us in with the land, being guided, in a great measure, by the land; for the weather was extremely thick and gloomy, with incessant showers of snow. At ten o'clock we obtained a sight of the coast, which was at the distance of four miles bearing S. W. Soon afterwards, our depth of water having decreased to seven fathoms, we hauled off. A very low point now bore S. S. W. distant two or three

three miles
be a narrow
saw over the
above-men

About the
view of the
by W. So
others; but
high land f
covered wi
ranged alo
leagues, til
off; but n
morning, v
tending fr
eastern pa
which, at t
S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S.
and five m
It is situate
leagues fro
chart by the
land count
of which a
general wa
the coast,
what less f

During
the mercu
below the
above it;
deck, was
tinued to
coast, till
land bearin
tion of the
and, at ter
land, and
made a bo

three miles; to the eastward of which there seemed to be a narrow channel, that led into some water which we saw over the point. It is not improbable, that the lake above-mentioned communicates here with the sea.

About twelve o'clock, the mist dispersing, we had a view of the coast, which extended from S. E. to N. W. by W. Some parts of it were apparently higher than others; but the greatest part of it was rather low, with high land farther up the country. It was almost entirely covered with snow, which had fallen very lately. We ranged along the coast, at the distance of about two leagues, till ten o'clock in the evening, when we hauled off; but resumed our course early on the following morning, when we had another view of the coast, extending from W. to S. E. by S. At eight o'clock, the eastern part bore S. and was found to be an island, which, at twelve, was four or five miles distant, bearing S. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. It is of a moderate height, between four and five miles in circumference, with a steep rocky coast. It is situate in the latitude of 67 d. 45 m. N. about three leagues from the continent; and is distinguished in the chart by the appellation of Burney's Island. The inland country, about this part, abounds with hills, some of which are of considerable elevation. The land in general was covered with snow, except a few spots on the coast, which still continued to be low, but somewhat less so than farther towards the W.

During the two preceding days, the mean height of the mercury in the thermometer had been frequently below the freezing point, and, in general, very little above it; insomuch that the water, in the vessels upon deck, was often covered with a sheet of ice. We continued to steer S. S. E. almost in the direction of the coast, till five o'clock in the afternoon, when we saw land bearing S. 50 d. E. which proved to be a continuation of the coast. We hauled up for it without delay; and, at ten in the evening, being abreast of the eastern land, and doubtful of weathering it, we tacked, and made a board towards the W. till after one o'clock the

next morning, (Tuesday, the 1st of September) when we again made sail to the E. The wind was now very unsettled, continually varying from N. to N. E. Between eight and nine, the eastern extremity of the land was at the distance of six or seven miles, bearing S. by E. A head land appeared, at the same time, bearing E. by S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and not long after, we could discern the whole coast that lay between them, and a little island at some distance from it.

The coast now in sight seemed to form several rocky points, that were connected by a low shore, without any appearance of an harbour. At a distance from the sea many hills presented themselves to our view, the highest of which were involved in snow: in other respects, the whole country had a naked aspect. At seven o'clock in the evening, two points of land, beyond the eastern head, opened off it in the direction of S. 37 d. E.

Captain Cook was now convinced of what he had before imagined, that this was the country of the Tschutski, or the north-eastern coast of Asia; and that Beering had proceeded thus far in the year 1728; that is, to this head, which, according to Muller, is denominated *Serdze Kamen*, on account of a rock upon it, that is of the figure of a heart. There are, indeed, many high rocks on this cape, some one or other of which may perhaps be shaped like a heart. It is a promontory of tolerable height, with a steep rocky cliff fronting the sea. Its latitude is 67 d. 3 m. N. and its longitude 188 d. 11 m. E. To the E. of it the coast is elevated and cold; but, to the W. it is low, and extends N. W. by W. and N. N. W. and it is nearly of the same direction all the way to Cape North. The depth of water is every where the same at an equal distance from the shore; and this is likewise the case on the opposite coast of America. The greatest depth we met with, as we ranged along it, was twenty-three fathoms. During the night, or in thick foggy weather, the soundings are

no

no bad gu
coasts.

On the
most advan
E. and, fro
fular appea
fell in quic
ed from ou
In a short
for near fi
tween the
some degre
sight of it
The wind
mercury in
and was st
o'clock our
Kamen wa
N. 52 d. W
had in our
twenty-two
part of the

The wea
were rangi
natives, an
the appear
the evening
before-men
south-west
we had pa
Those who
posed it to
but we wer
than the ea
the proper
which rece
ther toward

Muller, i
places the

no bad guide to those who sail along either of these coasts.

On the 2d of September, at eight in the morning, the most advanced land to the south-eastward, bore S. 25 d. E. and, from this particular point of view, had an insular appearance. But the thick showers of snow, that fell in quick succession, and settled on the land, concealed from our sight, at this time, a great part of the coast. In a short time after, the sun, which we had not seen for near five days, broke out during the intervals between the showers, by which means the coast was, in some degree, freed from the fog; so that we obtained a sight of it, and found that the whole was connected. The wind was still northerly, the air was cold, and the mercury in the thermometer did not rise above 35 d. and was sometimes not higher than 30 d. At twelve o'clock our latitude was 66 d. 37 m. N. Cape Serdze Kamen was twelve or thirteen leagues distant, bearing N. 52 d. W. the most southerly point of land that we had in our sight, bore S. 41 d. E. our soundings were twenty-two fathoms; and the distance of the nearest part of the shore was about two leagues.

The weather was now fair and bright; and, as we were ranging along the coast, we saw several of the natives, and some of their dwelling places, which had the appearance of hillocks of earth. In the course of the evening we passed the Eastern Cape, or the point before-mentioned; from which the coast trends to the south-westward. This is the same point of land that we had passed on the 11th of the preceding month. Those who gave credit to Mr Stæhlin's map, then supposed it to be the eastern point of his island Alaschka; but we were, by this time convinced, that it is no other than the eastern promontory of Asia; and perhaps, it is the proper Tschukotskoi Nofs, though the promontory which received that name from Beering, is situated further towards the S. W.

Muller, in his map of the discoveries of the Russians, places the Tschukotskoi Nofs nearly in the latitude of

75 d. N. and extends somewhat to the eastward of this cape. But Captain Cook was of opinion, that he had no good authority for so doing. Indeed his own, or rather Deshneff's, account of the distance between the river Anadir and the Nofs, cannot well be reconciled with so northerly a position. For he says, that, with the most favourable wind, a person may go by sea from the Nofs to the river Anadir in three whole days, and that the journey by land is very little longer. But Captain Cook, having hopes of visiting these parts again, deferred the discussion of this point to another opportunity. In the mean time, however, he concluded, as Beering had done before him, that this was the easternmost point of all Asia. It is a peninsula of considerable elevation, joined to the continent by a very low and apparently narrow isthmus. It has, next the sea, a steep rocky cliff; and off the very point are several rock resembling spires. It stands in the longitude of 190 d. 22 m. E. and in the latitude of 66 d. 6 m. N. and is thirteen leagues distant, in the direction of N. 53 d. W. from Cape Prince of Wales, on the coast of America. The land about this promontory consists of vallies and hills. The former terminate at the sea in low shores, and the latter in steep rocky points. The hills appeared like naked rocks; but the vallies, though destitute of tree or shrub, were of a greenish hue.

After we had passed the Cape, we steered S. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. towards the northern point of St Lawrence's Bay, in which our ships had anchored on the 10th of August. We reached it by eight o'clock the following morning, and saw some of the natives at the place where we had before seen them, as well as others on the opposite side of the bay. Not one of them, however came off to us; which was rather remarkable, as the weather was sufficiently favourable, and as those whom we had lately visited had no reason to be displeased with us. These people are certainly the Tschutski, whom the Russians had not hitherto subdued; though it is manifest that they must carry on a traffic with the latter, either direct-

CAP

ly, or by the
as their bei
among them

The Bay

five leagues

growing nar

ed to be pre

vided there

The Comm

was extrem

bour in tho

succeeding f

where woo

none could l

of this bay,

30 m. N. th

about nine l

or river; or

could not dis

In the aft

was first sup

a dead whale

then towing

conceal them

being seen by

we proceeded

them. On t

north-west w

view of the i

not long afte

abandoned;

we passed tw

* Captain Co

ed in it on the

is worthy of re

August 10, 172

ly, labouring island a

ly, or by the interposition of some neighbouring nation; as their being in possession of the spontoons we saw among them, cannot otherwise be accounted for.

The Bay of St Lawrence* is, at the entrance, at least five leagues in breadth, and about four leagues deep, growing narrower towards the bottom, where it seemed to be pretty well sheltered from the sea winds, provided there is a competent depth of water for ships. The Commodore did not wait to examine it, though he was extremely desirous of finding a convenient harbour in those parts, to which he might resort in the succeeding spring. But he wished to meet with one where wood might be obtained; and he knew that none could be found here. From the southern point of this bay, which is situated in the latitude of 65 d. 30 m. N. the coast trends W. by S. for the space of about nine leagues, and there seems to form a deep bay or river; or else the land in that part is so low that we could not discern it.

In the afternoon, about one o'clock, we saw what was first supposed to be a rock; but it was found to be a dead whale, which some Asiatics had killed, and were then towing ashore. They seemed to endeavour to conceal themselves behind the fish, in order to avoid being seen by us. This, however, was unnecessary, for we proceeded on our course without taking notice of them. On the 4th, at break of day, we hauled to the north-westward, for the purpose of gaining a nearer view of the inlet seen the day before; but the wind, not long after, veering to that direction, the design was abandoned; and, steering towards the S. along the coast, we passed two bays, each about six miles deep. The most

* Captain Cook called it by this name, from his having anchored in it on the 10th of August, which is St Lawrence's Day. It is worthy of remark, that Beering sailed by this very place on August 10, 1728; for which reason, he denominated the neighbouring island after the same saint.

most northerly one is situate before a hill, which is rounder than any other we had observed upon the coast. There is an island lying before the other bay. It is a matter of doubt whether there is a sufficient depth of water for ships in either of these bays, as, when we edged in for the shore, we constantly met with shoal water. This part of the country is extremely naked and hilly. In several places on the lower grounds, next the sea, were the habitations of the natives, near all of which were erected stages of bones, like those before-mentioned. This day, at noon, our latitude was 64 d. 38 m. N. and our longitude 188 d. 15 m. E. the nearest part of the shore was at the distance of three or four leagues, and the most southern point of the continent in sight bore S. 48 d. W.

The wind, by this time, had veered to the N. and blew a light breeze: the weather was clear, and the air sharp. The Commodore did not think proper to follow the direction of the coast, as he perceived that it inclined westward towards the gulph of Anadir, into which he had no motive for going. He therefore steered a southerly course, that he might have a sight of the isle of St Lawrence, which had been discovered by Beering. This island was quickly seen by us; and, at eight in the evening, it bore S. 20 d. E. supposed to be at the distance of eleven leagues. The most southerly point of the main land, was, at that time, twelve leagues distant, bearing S. 13 d. W. Captain Cook conjectured, that this was the point which is called by Beering the eastern point of Suchotski, or Cape Tschukotskoi; an appellation which he gave it with some propriety, because the natives, who said they were of the nation of the Tschutski, came off to him from this part of the coast. Its latitude is 64 d. 13 m. N. and its longitude 186 d. 36 m. E.

The more the Captain was convinced of his being at present upon the Asiatic coast, the more he was at a loss to reconcile his observations with Mr Stæhlin's map of the New Northern Archipelago; and he could find no other

other m
than b
what M
for the
nel by
supposi
variatio
some co
present
view in
islands
hopes, i
supply o
great ne
coast of
in the af
we imag
land nea
morning
Sledge I
day, that
bearing I
bore N.
had conj
tinent, co
that now
the chann
towards th
in with it
for the pu
On the
made a ne
N. 85 d. V
part of the
the directi
light on sh
came off to
them time
of amity, a
Vol. II.—

other method of accounting for so important a difference, than by supposing that he had mistaken some part of what Mr Stæhlin denominates the island of Alaschka, for the continent of America, and had missed the channel by which they are separated. But even on that supposition there would still have been a considerable variation. The Captain considered it as an affair of some consequence to clear up this point during the present season, that he might have only one object in view in the following one. And as these northerly islands were said to abound with wood, he had some hopes, if he should find them, of procuring a competent supply of that article, of which we began to stand in great need. With this view he steered over for the coast of America; and the next day, about five o'clock in the afternoon, land was seen bearing S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. which we imagined was Anderson's Island, or some other land near it. On Sunday the 6th, at four in the morning, we had a sight of the American coast, near Sledge Island; and, at six in the evening of the same day, that island was at the distance of about ten leagues, bearing N. 6 d. E. and the most easterly land in view bore N. 49 d. E. If any part of what Captain Cook had conjectured to be the coast of the American continent, could possibly be the island of Alaschka, it was that now in sight; in which case he must have missed the channel between it and the main land, by steering towards the W. instead of the E. after he had first fallen in with it. He was, therefore, at no loss where to go, for the purpose of clearing up these doubts.

On the 7th, at eight o'clock in the evening, we had made a near approach to the land. Sledge Island bore N. 85 d. W. about eight leagues distant; and the eastern part of the coast bore N. 70 d. E. with elevated land in the direction of E. by N. At this time we perceived a light on shore; and two canoes, with people in them, came off towards us. We brought to, in order to give them time to approach; but they resisted all our tokens of amity, and kept at the distance of a quarter of a mile,

We therefore left them, and proceeded along the coast. The next morning, at one o'clock, observing that the water shoaled pretty fast, we anchored in ten fathoms, and remained in that situation till day light came on. We then weighed, and pursued our course along the coast, which trended E. and E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. At seven o'clock in the evening we were abreast of a point, situated in the longitude of 197 d. E. and in the latitude of 64 d. 21 m. N. beyond which the coast assumes a more northerly direction. At eight this point, which received the appellation of Cape Darby, bore S. 62 d. W. the most northern land we had in view, bore N. 32 d. E. and the distance of the nearest part of the shore was one league. In this situation we let go our anchors in thirteen fathoms, over a muddy bottom.

On the 9th, at break of day, we weighed, and made sail along the coast. We now saw land, which we supposed to be two islands; the one bearing E. the other S. 70 d. E. Not long afterwards, we found ourselves near a coast covered with wood; a pleasing sight, to which we had not been lately accustomed. As we advanced northward, land was seen in the direction of N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. which proved a continuation of the coast upon which we now were: we likewise perceived high land over the islands, apparently, at a considerable distance beyond them. This was imagined to be the continent, and the other land the isle of Alaschka; but it was already a matter of doubt, whether we should discover a passage between them, for the water gradually shoaled, as we proceeded further towards the N. In consequence of this, two boats were dispatched ahead to sound; and the Commodore ordered the Discovery, as she drew the least water, to lead, keeping nearly in the middle channel, between the coast and the most northerly island. In this manner we continued our course, till three o'clock in the afternoon, when, having passed the island, our soundings did not exceed three fathoms and a half, and the Resolution once brought up the mud from the bottom. In no part of the channel

could

could
found
deem

At
which
one le
tended
to terr
high l
self.

a bay,
percei

We
and, by
six fat
three
panied
wood a
coast p
dicular
glimm
row bo
long g
The gr
toward
that ab
onward
with sm
the trac
parts of
wood:

Our
on board
ships to
N. E. a
over to
likewise
souther
then in

could a greater depth of water be found, though we had sounded it from one side to the other; we therefore deemed it high time to return.

At this time, a head-land on the western shore, to which the name of Bald-head was given, was about one league distant, bearing N. by W. The coast extended beyond it as far as N. E. by N. where it appeared to terminate in a point; behind which, the coast of the high land, that was seen over the islands, stretched itself. The shore on the western side of Bald-head, forms a bay, in the bottom of which is a beach, where we perceived many huts of the natives.

We continued to ply back during the whole night; and, by day-break on the 10th, had deepened our water six fathoms. At nine o'clock, when we were about three miles from the W. shore, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr King, went with two boats, in search of wood and water. They landed in that part, where the coast projects into a bluff head, composed of perpendicular *strata* of a dark blue rock, intermixed with glimmer and quartz. Adjoining to the beach is a narrow border of land, which was at this time covered with long grass, and where they observed some angelica. The ground, beyond this, rises with some abruptness; towards the top of this elevation, they found a heath, that abounded with berries of various kinds: further onward the country was rather level, and thinly covered with small spruce trees, birch, and willows. They saw the tracks of foxes and deer upon the beach; in many parts of which, there was a great abundance of drift-wood: there was also no want of fresh water.

Our gentlemen and their attendants having returned on board, the Commodore had thoughts of bringing the ships to an anchor here; but the wind then shifting to N. E. and blowing rather on this shore, he stretched over to the opposite one, expecting to find wood there likewise. At eight in the evening, we anchored near the southern end of the most northerly island, for such we then imagined it to be. The next morning, however,

we found that it was a peninsula, connected with the continent by a low isthmus, on each side of which, a bay is formed by the coast. We plied into the southernmost of these bays, and cast anchor again, about twelve o'clock, in five fathoms water, over a muddy bottom; the point of the peninsula, to which the appellation of Cape Denbigh was given, being one league distant, in the direction of N. 68 d. W.

We observed on the peninsula, several of the natives; and one of them came off in a small canoe. Captain Cook gave this man a knife and some beads, with which he appeared to be well pleased; we made signs to him to bring us some provisions, upon which he instantly quitted us, and paddled towards the shore. Happening to meet another man coming off, who had two dried salmon, he got them from him; and when he returned to our ship, he refused to give them to any body except Captain Cook. Some of our people fancied, that he asked for him under the name of *Capitane*; but, in this, they were perhaps mistaken. Others of the inhabitants came off soon afterwards, and gave us a few dried fish, in exchange for such trifles as we had to barter with them. They shewed no dislike for tobacco, but they were most desirous of knives.

In the afternoon, Mr Gore was dispatched to the peninsula, to procure wood and water; of the former of which articles, we observed great plenty upon the beach. At the same time, a boat from each of the ships was sent to sound round the bay; and at three o'clock, the wind freshening at N. E. we weighed anchor, and endeavoured to work further in. But that was quickly found to be impracticable, by reason of the shoals, which extended entirely round the bay, to the distance of upwards of two miles from the shore; as the officers, who had been sent out for the purpose of sounding, reported. We therefore stood off and on with the ships, waiting for Lieutenant Gore, who returned about eight o'clock in the evening, with the launch loaded with wood. He

informed

informed
fresh wa
without
some dif
we stood
at eight, a
officer, w
Captain C
After h
and on w
than five
the coast,
Denbigh
72 d. E.
tion of N.
S. of Cap
rough Isla
52 d. E.

This be
secure stati
not to wait
would tak
ships with
modious p
carried off
performed
the wind b
to sail bot
went on f
which, in t
ed with he
plenty of b
flower. T
willows, o
among the
which exc
some were
twice that
northern p

informed the Commodore, that he had found but little fresh water, and that the wood could not be procured without difficulty, on account of the boats grounding at some distance from the beach. As this was the case, we stood back to the other shore; and the next morning, at eight, all the boats, and a detachment of men, with an officer, were sent to get wood from the place where Captain Cook had landed on the 10th.

After having continued, for some time, to stand off and on with the ships, we at length cast anchor in less than five fathoms, at the distance of half a league from the coast, whose southern point bore S. 26 d. W. Cape Denbigh was about twenty-six miles distant, bearing S. 72 d. E. Bald-head was nine leagues off, in the direction of N. 60 d. E. and the island near the eastern shore, S. of Cape Denbigh, named by Captain Cook, Besborough Island, was fifteen leagues distant, bearing S. 52 d. E.

This being a very open road, and therefore not a secure station for the ships, the Commodore resolved not to wait till our stock of water was completed, as that would take up some time; but only to furnish both ships with wood, and afterwards to seek a more commodious place for the former article. Our people carried off the drift-wood that lay on the beach, and performed that business with great expedition; for, as the wind blew along the shore, the boats were enabled to sail both ways. In the afternoon Captain Cook went on shore, and took a walk into the country; which, in those parts where there was no wood, abounded with heath, and other plants, several of which had plenty of berries, all ripe. Scarce a single plant was in flower. The underwood, such as birch, alders, and willows, occasioned walking to be very troublesome among the trees, which were all spruce, and none of which exceed seven or eight inches in diameter; but some were observed lying on the beach, that were above twice that size. All the drift-wood that we saw in these northern parts was fir.

The

The following day, which was Sunday the 13th, family of the natives came near the spot where our people were occupied in taking off wood. The Captain saw only the husband and wife, and their child besides a fourth person, who was the most deformed cripple he had ever seen. The husband was nearly blind, and neither he, nor his wife, were such well-looking people as many of those whom we had met with on this coast. Both of them had their lower lip perforated; and they were in possession of some glass beads, resembling those we had seen before among their neighbours. Iron was the article that pleased them most. For four knives which had been formed out of an old iron hoop, the Captain obtained from them near four hundred pounds weight of fish, that had been lately caught by them. Some of these were trout, and others were, with respect to size and taste, somewhat between a herring and a mullet. The Captain gave a few beads to the child, who was a female; upon which the mother immediately burst into tears, then the father, next after him the cripple, and at last, to add the finishing stroke to the concert, the child herself. This music, however, was not of long duration.

Mr King had, on the preceding day, been in company with the same family. His account of this interview is to the following purport: While he attended the wooding party, a canoe filled with natives, approached, out of which an elderly man and woman (the husband and wife above-mentioned) came ashore. Mr King presented a small knife to the woman, and promised to give her a much larger one in exchange for some fish. She made signs to him to follow her. After he had proceeded with them about a mile, the man fell down as he was crossing a stony beach, and happened to cut his foot very much. This occasioned Mr King to stop; upon which the woman pointed to her husband's eyes, which were covered with a thick, whitish film. He afterwards kept close to his wife, who took care to apprize him of the obstacles in his way. The

woman

man had
ood of her
ey arrived
e side, the
ade to see
King now
an's eyes.
hen to brea
spit on the
of Mr King
eld them
ome melanc
imes pointi
and at other
er. Mr K
consisted of
These fish w
for them.

The wom
plump and
skin, with a
boots. She
Her husban
inches in he
had but littl
copper cast.
which, how
both of them
been filed do

Before ni
the ships wi
a dozen ton
was detache
branches of
o'clock all o
freshening,
our boats co
difficulty an

As doub

3th, woman had a child on her back, wrapped up in the hood of her jacket. After walking about two miles, they arrived at an open skin-boat, which was turned on one side, the convex part towards the wind, and was made to serve for the habitation of this family. Mr King now performed a remarkable operation on the man's eyes. He was first desired to hold his breath, then to breath on the distempered eyes, and afterwards to spit on them. The woman then took both the hands of Mr King, and pressing them to the man's stomach, held them there for some time, while she recounted some melancholy history respecting her family; sometimes pointing to her husband, sometimes to her child, and at other times to the cripple, who was related to her. Mr King purchased all the fish they had, which consisted of excellent salmon, salmon-trout, and mullet. These fish were faithfully delivered to the person he sent for them.

The woman was short and squat, and her visage was plump and round. She wore a jacket made of deer skin, with a large hood, and had on a pair of wide boots. She was punctured from the lip to the chin. Her husband was well made, and about five feet two inches in height. His hair was black and short, and he had but little beard. His complexion was of a light copper cast. He had two holes in his lower lip, in which, however, he had no ornaments. The teeth of both of them were black, and appeared as if they had been filed down level with the gums.

Before night, on the 13th, we had amply furnished the ships with wood, and had conveyed on board about a dozen tons of water to each. On the 14th a party was detached on shore to cut brooms, and likewise the branches of spruce trees for brewing beer. About twelve o'clock all our people were taken on board, for the wind freshening, had raised so heavy a surf on the beach, that our boats could not continue to land without extreme difficulty and danger.

As doubts were still entertained whether the coast
upon

upon which we now were, belonged to an island, or to the continent of America, Lieutenant King was dispatched by the Commodore, with two boats well manned and armed, to make such a search as might tend to remove all difference of opinion on the subject. He was instructed to proceed towards the north as far as the extreme point seen on Wednesday the 9th, or a little further, if he should find it necessary; to land there, and, from the heights, endeavour to discover whether the land he was then upon, imagined to be the island of Alaschka, was really an island, or was connected with the land to the eastward, supposed to be the American continent. If it proved to be an island, he was to examine the depth of water in the channel between it and the continent, and which way the flood tide came: but, if he should find the two lands united, he was to return immediately to the ship. He was directed not to be absent longer than four or five days; and it was also mentioned in his instructions, that, if any unforeseen or unavoidable accident should force our ships off the coast, the rendezvous was to be at the harbour of 3a-noodha.

On Tuesday the 15th, the ships removed over to the bay on the south-eastern side of Cape Denbigh, where we cast anchor in the afternoon. Not long after, several of the inhabitants came off in canoes, and gave us some dried salmon in exchange for trifling articles. Early the next morning, nine men, each in a separate canoe, paid us a visit, with the sole view of gratifying their curiosity. They approached the ship with caution, and drawing up abreast of each other, under our stern, favoured us with a song; while one of their number made many ludicrous motions with his hands and body, and another beat upon a sort of drum. There was nothing savage, either in the song, or the gestures with which it was accompanied. There seemed to be no difference, either with respect to size or features, between these people, and those whom we had seen on every other part of the coast, except King George's Sound.

Their

Their dress was made the practice ornaments

The hab close to the roof, witho ed with ear logs. The just within the hut, for

A party peninsula f of the peop mitted to g on board a landed for were hurtle wild curran himself, an He met wi scarcely obs was not gro fula is unit creeks, and which wer numbers of that it was them. Son grounds, w was wood, officers, wh tain Cook sexes, who

The Cor had been a were mark isthmus; a

Vol. II. N

Their dress, which chiefly consisted of the skins of deer, was made after the same mode; and they had adopted the practice of perforating their lower lips, and affixing ornaments to them.

The habitations of these Americans were situated close to the beach. They consist merely of a sloping roof, without any side walls, formed of logs, and covered with earth and grass. The floor is likewise laid with logs. The entrance is at one end, and the fire-place is just within it. A small hole is made near the door of the hut, for the purpose of letting out the smoke.

A party of men was dispatched, this morning, to the peninsula for brooms and spruce. Half the remainder of the people of both ships were, at the same time, permitted to go ashore and gather berries. These returned on board about twelve o'clock, and the other half then landed for the same purpose. The berries found here were huckle-berries, heath-berries, partridge-berries, and wild currant-berries. Captain Cook also went ashore himself, and took a walk over part of the peninsula. He met with very good grass in several places, and scarcely observed a single spot on which some vegetable was not growing. The low land by which this peninsula is united to the continent, abounds with narrow creeks, and likewise with ponds of water, several of which were at this time frozen over. There were numbers of bustards and geese, but they were so shy, that it was impossible to get within musquet shot of them. Some snipes were also seen; and, on the higher grounds, were partridges of two species; where there was wood, mosquitoes were numerous. Some of the officers, who went further into the country than Captain Cook did, met with some of the natives of both sexes, who treated them with civility and kindness.

The Commodore was of opinion, that this peninsula had been an island in some distant period; for there were marks of the sea having formerly flowed over the isthmus; and even at present, it appeared to be kept

out by a bank of sand, stones, and wood, which the waves had thrown up. It was manifest from this bank, that the land here encroached upon the sea, and it was not difficult to trace its gradual formation.

Lieutenant King returned from his expedition about seven o'clock this evening. He had set out at eight o'clock at night, on the 14th. The crews of the boats rowed without intermission towards the land, till in the morning of the 15th. They then set their sails, and stood across the bay, which the coast forms to the westward of Bald-head. They afterwards, about three o'clock, again made use of their oars, and, by two in the afternoon, had got within two miles of Bald-head, under the lee of the high land. At that time all the men in the boat belonging to the Resolution, except two, were so oppressed with fatigue and sleep, that Mr King's utmost endeavours to make them put on were perfectly ineffectual. They, at length, were so far exhausted, as to drop their oars, and fall asleep at the bottom of the boat. In consequence of this, Mr King, and two gentlemen who were with him, were obliged to lay hold of the oars; and they landed, a little after three o'clock, between Bald-head and a point that projects to the eastward.

Mr King, upon his landing, ascended the heights, from which he could see the two coasts join, and that the inlet terminated in a small creek or river, before which there were banks of sand or mud, and in every part shoal water. The land, for some distance towards the N. was low and swampy; then it rose in hills; and the perfect junction of those, on each side of the inlet, was traced without the least difficulty.

From the elevated situation in which Mr King took his survey of the Sound, he could discern many spacious vallies, with rivers flowing through them, well wooded, and bounded by hills of a moderate height. One of the rivers towards the N. W. seemed to be considerable; and he was inclined to suppose, from its direction, that
it

the waves
k, that
was not

a about
at eight
e boats
l in the
ls, and
e west-
t three
two in
d-head,
all the
pt two,
King's
rfectly
sted, as
of the
o gen-
hold of
'clock,
to the

ights,
and that
before
every
owards
; and
e inlet,

g took
acious
ooded,
of the
rable ;
n, that
it



Inhabitants of NORTON SOUND and their Habitations.

C.
it discharge
Some of
country, f
they proce

To this
ton's Sou
Lord Gran
northward
bay, where
on the four
toole by th
being exp
harbour to
so fortunat
E. and the
here, with
portunity
vations, th
as the long
side of the
With resp
three feet,

Captain
Mr Stæhlin
ing restor
which that
island of A
these north
winter, w
ments. H
harbour of
ly to furni
reasons for
of which w
for six or
consequen
northern
situation

it discharged itself into the sea at the head of the bay. Some of his people, penetrating beyond this into the country, found the trees to be of a larger size the further they proceeded.

To this inlet Captain Cook gave the name of Norton's Sound, in honour of Sir Fletcher Norton, now Lord Grantley, a near relation of Mr King. It extends northward as far as the latitude of 64 d. 55 m. N. The bay, wherein our ships were now at anchor, is situated on the south-eastern side of it, and is denominated *Chack-toole* by the natives. It is not a very excellent station, being exposed to the S. and S. W. winds. Nor is a harbour to be met with in all this Sound. We were so fortunate, however, as to have the wind from the N. E. and the N. during the whole time of our continuance here, with very fine weather. This afforded an opportunity of making a great number of lunar observations, the mean result of which gave 197 d. 13 m. E. as the longitude of the anchoring-place on the western side of the Sound, while its latitude was 64 d. 31 m. N. With respect to the tides, the night flood rose two or three feet, and the day flood was scarcely perceivable.

Captain Cook being now perfectly convinced, that Mr Stæhlin's map was extremely erroneous, and having restored the continent of America to the space which that gentleman had occupied with his imaginary island of Alaschka, thought it now high time to quit these northerly regions, and retire to some place for the winter, where he might obtain provisions and refreshments. He did not consider Penapaulowska, or the harbour of St Peter and St Paul in Kamtschatka, as likely to furnish a sufficient supply. He had likewise other reasons for not going thither at present; the principal of which was, his great unwillingness to remain inactive for six or seven months, which would have been the consequence of passing the winter in any of these northern countries. He at length concluded that no situation was so convenient for our purpose as the

Sandwich Islands. To them, therefore, he formed a resolution of repairing. But a supply of water being necessary before he could execute that design, he determined, with a view of procuring this essential article, to search the coast of America for a harbour, by proceeding along it to the southward. If he should not meet with success in that search, his intention was to reach Samganoodha, which was appointed for our place of rendezvous, in case the ships should happen to separate.

Stuart's Island discovered—I. : Situation, Extent, &c.—Cape Stephens—Point Shallow-Water—Shoals on the Coast of North America—Clerke's Island—Gore's Island—Pinnacle Island—The Resolution springs a Leak—The Ships arrive at Oonalashka—Plentiful Supplies of Fish—Intercourse with the Natives, and the Russian Traders—Mr Ismyloff comes on board—Intelligence received from him—Two Charts produced by him—Account of the Islands visited by the Russians—Of their Settlement at Oonalashka—Description of the Natives—Their Dress—Food—Manner of Building—Manufactures—Canoes—Implements for Hunting and Fishing—Fish and other Sea Animals—Water Fowls—Land Birds—Quadrupeds—Vegetables—Stones—Repositories of the Dead—Diseases—Resemblance of the Inhabitants of this Side of America to the Esquimaux and Greenlanders—Tides, Longitude, &c.

IN the morning of the 17th of September, we weighed anchor with a light easterly breeze, and steering to the southward, attempted to pass within Besborough Island; but, though it is six or seven miles distant from

the coast
shoal
not p
was f

At
along
than
bore N
also p
sage b
of S. 4
of abo

We
which
than t
hauled
the Re
ships.

This
given,
teen le
of S.
ference
height
western
tinent
the co
which
and is
the lon
observ
contin
either.
the con
of five
and fo
ly exp
directi
fore w

the continent, we were prevented, by meeting with shoal water. Having but little wind all the day, we did not pass that island before it was dark; and the night was spent under an easy sail.

At day-break, on the 18th, we resumed our progress along the coast. At noon, our soundings were no more than five fathoms. Besborough Island, at this time, bore N. 42 d. E. the most southerly land in sight, which also proved to be an island, bore S. 66 d. W. the passage between it and the continent was in the direction of S. 40 d. W. and the nearest land was at the distance of about two miles.

We continued to steer for this passage, till the boats which were ahead made the signal for having no more than three fathoms water. In consequence of this, we hauled without the island, and displayed the signal for the Resolution's boat to keep between the shore and the ships.

This island, to which the name of Stuart's Island was given, lies in the latitude of 63 d. 35 m. N. and is seventeen leagues distant from Cape Denbigh, in the direction of S. 27 d. W. It is six or seven leagues in circumference. Though some parts of it are of a moderate height, yet, in general, it is low, with some rocks off the western part. The greatest part of the coast of the continent is low land, but we perceived high land up the country. It forms a point, opposite the island, which was distinguished by the name of Cape Stephens, and is situated in the latitude of 63 d. 33 m. N. and in the longitude of 197 d. 41 m. E. Some drift wood was observed on the shores, both of the island and of the continent; but not a single tree was seen growing upon either. Vessels might anchor, upon occasion, between the continent and the N. E. side of this island, in a depth of five fathoms, sheltered from the easterly, westerly, and southerly winds. But this station would be entirely exposed to the northerly winds, the land, in that direction, being too remote to afford any security. Before we reached Stuart's Island, we passed two little islands

islands, situate between us and the main land ; and as we ranged along the coast, several of the natives made their appearance upon the shore, and, by signs, seemed to invite us to approach.

We were no sooner without the island, than we steered S. by W. for the most southern part of the continent in sight, till eight in the evening, when, the depth of water having decreased from six fathoms to less than four, we tacked and stood to the northward into five fathoms, and then passed the night in standing off and on. At the time we tacked, the southernmost point of land above-mentioned, which we named Point Shallow-Water, bore S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. at the distance of seven leagues. On the 19th, at day-break, we resumed our southerly course ; but shoal water soon obliged us to haul more to the westward. We were at length so far advanced upon the bank, that we could not hold a N. N. W. course, as we sometimes met with only four fathoms. The wind blowing fresh at E. N. E. it was now high time to endeavour to find a greater depth of water, and to quit a coast upon which we could no longer navigate with safety. We therefore hauled the wind to the northward, and the water gradually increased in depth to eight fathoms.

At the time of our hauling the wind, we were about twelve leagues distant from the continent, and nine to the W. of Stuart's Island. We saw no land to the southward of Point Shallow-Water, which Captain Cook judged to lie in the latitude of 63 d. N. so that between this latitude and Shoal Nefs, in latitude 60 d. the coast has not been explored. It is probably accessible only to boats, or very small vessels ; or, if there are channels for vessels of greater magnitude, it would require some time to find them. From the mast-head, the sea within us appeared to be checquered with shoals ; the water was very muddy and discoloured, and much fresher than at any of the places where our ships had lately anchored. From this we inferred, that a considerable river runs into the sea, in this unexplored part.

After

After
to the
land d
at noon
of ten
N. and
pretty
dore g
in the
190 d
exten
groun
island
reman
the gr
Ab
north
along
Early
and p
o'clock
it and
the 2
panie
On
ment
distan
view,
to be
direct
mity
befor
necks
Cook
the R
of ou
be ba
none
about

After we had got into eight fathoms water, we steered to the westward, and afterwards more southerly, for the land discovered by us on the 5th of September, which at noon on the 20th, bore S. W. by W. at the distance of ten or eleven leagues. We had now a fresh gale at N. and, at intervals, showers of hail and snow, with a pretty high sea. To the land before us, the Commodore gave the appellation of Clerke's Island. It stands in the latitude of 63 d. 15 m. and in the longitude of 190 d. 30 m. It seemed to be an island of considerable extent, in which are several hills, all connected by low ground, so that it looks, at a distance, like a group of islands. Near its eastern part is a little island, which is remarkable for having on it three elevated rocks. Both the greater island, and this smaller one, were inhabited.

About six o'clock in the afternoon, we reached the northern point of Clerke's Island; and having ranged along its coast till dark, we brought to during the night. Early the next morning, we again stood in for the coast, and proceeded along it in quest of an harbour, till twelve o'clock, when finding no probability of success, we left it and steered S. S. W. for the land discovered by us on the 29th of July; having a fresh gale at N. accompanied with showers of snow and sleet.

On Wednesday the 23d, at day-break, the land above-mentioned, made its appearance, bearing S. W. at the distance of six or seven leagues. From this point of view, it resembled a cluster of islands; but it was found to be only one, of about thirty miles in extent, in the direction of N. W. and S. E. the south-eastern extremity being Cape Upright, which we have mentioned before. The island is narrow, particularly at the low necks of land by which the hills are connected. Capt. Cook afterwards found, that it was entirely unknown to the Russians, and therefore, considering it as a discovery of our own, he named it Gore's Island. It appeared to be barren and destitute of inhabitants, at least we saw none. Nor did we observe such a number of birds about it, as we had seen when we first discovered it.

But

But we perceived some sea-otters, an animal which we had not found to the N. of this latitude. About twelve miles from Cape Upright, in the direction of S. 72 d. W. stands a small island, whose lofty summit terminates in several pinnacle rocks, for which reason it obtained the name of Pinnacle Island.

At two o'clock in the afternoon, after we had passed Cape Upright, we steered S. E. by S. for Samganoodha, with a gentle breeze at N. N. W. being resolved to lose no more time in searching for an harbour among islands, which we now began to suspect had no existence; at least, not in the latitude and longitude in which they have been placed by modern delineators of charts. On the 24th, in the evening, the wind veered to S. W. and S. and increased to a fresh gale.

We continued our easterly course till eight in the morning of the 25th, when in the longitude of 191 d. 10 m. and in the latitude of 58 d. 32 m. we tacked and stood to the westward; soon after which, the gale increasing, we were reduced to two courses, and close-reefed main-top-sails. In a short time after, the Resolution sprung a leak, under the starboard buttock, which was so considerable, as to keep one pump constantly employed. We would not venture to put the ship upon the other tack, from the apprehension of getting upon the shoals that lie to the N. W. of Cape Newenham; but continued to steer towards the W. till six in the evening of Saturday the 26th, when we wore and stood to the eastward; and the leak gave us no farther trouble. This proved that it was above the water-line, which gave us great satisfaction. The gale had now ceased, but the wind continued at S. and S. W. for some days longer.

At length, on Friday the 2d of October, at day-break, we saw the isle of Oonalashka, in a S. E. direction. But as the land was obscured by a thick haze, we were not certain with respect to our situation till noon, when the observed latitude determined it. We hauled into a bay, ten miles to the westward of Samganoodha, known by the appellation of Egoochshac; but finding very deep

water

water,
differ
other
tobacco
bacco
among
answe
thoug
sailor,
gains,
which
comm

The
anchor
mornin
ripping
Resolu
were
wonder
We cle
and di
any fu
find it
comple
and too

The
before,
There
people
them.
brough
seeds
these b
were a
dicated

We
chiefly
brought
perfect

Vol.

water, we speedily left it. The natives visited us at different times, bringing with them dried salmon, and other fish, which our sailors received in exchange for tobacco. Only a few days before, every cunce of tobacco that remained in the ship, had been distributed among them, and the quantity was not half sufficient to answer their demands. Notwithstanding this, so thoughtless and improvident a being is an English sailor, that they were as profuse in making their bargains, as if we had arrived at a port in Virginia; by which means, in less than two days, the value of this commodity was lowered above a thousand per cent.

The next day, at one o'clock in the afternoon, we anchored in the harbour of Samganoodha, and, on the morning of the 4th, the carpenters were employed in ripping off the sheathing of and under the wale of the Resolution on the starboard side. Many of the seams were found entirely open; it was therefore not to be wondered at, that so much water had got into the ship. We cleared the fish and spirit rooms, and the after-hold; and disposed things in such a manner, that, in case of any future leaks of the same nature, the water might find its way to the pumps. Besides this work, and completing our stock of water, we cleared the fore-hold, and took in a quantity of ballast.

The vegetables we had met with when we were here before, were now, for the most part, in a state of decay. There being great plenty of berries, one-third of the people, by turns, had permission to go ashore and gather them. Considerable quantities of them were also brought to us by the inhabitants. If there were any seeds of the scurvy among the people of either ship, these berries, and the use of spruce beer, which they were allowed to drink every other day, effectually eradicated them.

We likewise procured abundance of fish; at first, chiefly salmon, both fresh and dried, which the natives brought us. Some of the fresh salmon was in the highest perfection; but there was one sort, which, from the

figure of its head, we called hook-nosed, that was but indifferent. Drawing the seine several times, at the head of the bay, we caught many salmon trout, and a halibut that weighed two hundred and fifty-four pounds. We afterwards had recourse to hooks and lines. A boat was sent out every morning, which seldom returned without eight or ten halibut, a quantity more than sufficient to serve all our people. These fish were excellent, and there were few who did not prefer them to salmon. Thus we not only obtained a supply of fish for present consumption, but had some to carry with us to sea.

Captain Cook received, on the 8th, by the hands of a native of Oonalashka, named Derramoushk, a very singular present, considering the place we were in. It was a rye loaf, or rather a pye in the form of a loaf, as it enclosed some salmon, well seasoned with pepper. This man had brought a similar present for Captain Clerke, and a note for each of the Captains, written in a character which none of us understood. It was natural to imagine, that these two presents were from some Russians now in our neighbourhood, and therefore the Captains sent, by the same messenger, to these unknown friends, a few bottles of rum, wine, and porter, which they supposed would be highly acceptable. Captain Cook also sent, in company with Derramoushk, Corporal Lediard, of the marines, an intelligent man, for the purpose of gaining farther information; with orders, that if he met with any Russians, he should endeavour to make them understand, that we were Englishmen, the friends and allies of their nation.

On Saturday the 10th, Corporal Lediard returned with three Russian seamen, or furriers, who, with several others, resided at Egoochshac, where they had some store-houses, a dwelling-house, and a sloop of about thirty tons burthen. One of these Russians was either Master or Mate of this vessel. They were all three intelligent, well-behaved men, and extremely ready to give us all the information we could desire. But,
for

for wa
under
fect k
had m
coveri
ing, T
the lea
referred
Cook
upon
illande
negati
map, Y
that h
never
own c
part of
posite

One
in his
very y
seven
Never
eminer
The tr
tageou
the ea
of the
whose
benefit
empire
carried
he end
ship's
the Ru
voyage
this se
time,
this ob

for want of an interpreter, we found it very difficult to understand each other. They appeared to have a perfect knowledge of the attempts which their countrymen had made to navigate the Frozen Ocean, and of the discoveries that had been made from Kamtschatka, by Beering, Tschirikoff, and Spangenberg. But they had not the least idea to what part of the world Mr Stæhlin's map referred, when it was laid before them. When Captain Cook pointed out Kamtschatka, and some other places, upon this map, they asked him whether he had seen the islands there represented; and, on his answering in the negative, one of them put his finger upon a part of the map, where a number of islands are laid down, and said, that he had cruised there in search of land, but could never meet with any. The Captain then shewed them his own chart, and found that they were strangers to every part of the coast of America, except that which lies opposite this island.

One of these men said, that he had been with Beering in his American voyage; but he must then have been very young; for even now, at the distance of thirty-seven years, he had not the appearance of being aged. Never was greater respect paid to the memory of any eminent person, than by these men to that of Beering. The trade in which they are engaged, is very advantageous, and its being undertaken and extended to the eastward of Kamtschatka, was the immediate result of the second voyage of that distinguished navigator, whose misfortunes proved the source of much private benefit to individuals, and of public utility to the Russian empire. And yet, if his distresses had not accidentally carried him to the island which bears his name, where he ended his life, and from whence the remainder of his ship's crew brought back specimens of its valuable furs, the Russians would probably have undertaken no future voyages, which could lead them to make discoveries in this sea, towards the American coast. Indeed, after his time, their ministry seem to have paid less attention to this object; and, for what discoveries have been since

4 C 2

made,

made, we are principally indebted to the enterprising spirit of private merchants, encouraged, however, by the superintending care of the court of Petersburg.

The three Russians having remained all night with the Commodore, visited Captain Clerke the following morning, and then departed, perfectly satisfied with the reception they had met with. They promised to return in a few days, and bring with them a chart of the islands situate between Kamtschatka and Oonalashka.

In the evening of the 14th, while Captain Cook and Mr Webber were at a village, not far from Samganoodha, a Russian landed there, who proved to be the principal person among his countrymen in this and the adjacent isles. His name was Erasim Gregorioff Sin Ismyloff. He arrived in a canoe that carried three persons, attended by twenty or thirty smaller canoes, each conducted by one man. Immediately after landing, they constructed a small tent for Ismyloff, of materials which they had brought with them, and they afterwards made others for themselves, of their canoes and paddles, which they covered with grass. Ismyloff having invited the Captain and Mr Webber into his tent, set before them some dried salmon and berries. He appeared to be a man of sense; and the Captain felt no small mortification in not being able to converse with him, except by signs, with the assistance of figures, and other characters. The Captain requested him to favour him with his company on board the next day, and accordingly he came with all his attendants. He had, indeed, moved into the neighbourhood of our station, for the express purpose of waiting upon us.

Captain Cook was in hopes of receiving from him the chart which his three countrymen had promised, but he was disappointed. However, Ismyloff assured him he should have it, and he kept his word. The Captain found him very well acquainted with the geography of those parts, and with all the discoveries which had been made in this quarter by the Russians. On

seeing

seeing
errors
or (as
and, a
farther
Lawre
very p
he sai
N. up
the na
that it
of Cle
repaire
emplo
Ismylo
unwill
hend
every
stand
really
had af

Not
they w
nent to
nor an
called
to his

Acc
Ismylo
severa
North
lashka
been
as a v
two c
murd
us w
there.
Ismy

seeing the modern maps, he instantly pointed out their errors : he said, he had accompanied Lieutenant Syndo, or (as he called him) Synd, in his northern expedition ; and, according to his account, they did not proceed farther than the Tschukotskoi Nofs, or rather than St Lawrence's Bay ; for he pointed on our chart to the very place where Captain Cook landed. From thence, he said, they went to an island, in the latitude of 63 d. N. upon which they did not land. He did not recollect the name of that island ; but the Captain conjectured, that it was the same with that to which the appellation of Clerke's Island had been given. To what place Synd repaired afterwards, or in what particular manner he employed the two years, during which, according to Ismyloff, his researches lasted, he was either unable or unwilling to inform us. Perhaps he did not comprehend our enquiries on this point ; and yet, in almost every other thing, we found means to make him understand us. This inclined us to suspect, that he had not really been in this expedition, notwithstanding what he had asserted.

Not only Ismyloff, but also the others affirmed, that they were totally unacquainted with the American continent to the northward ; and that neither Lieutenant Synd, nor any other Russian, had seen it of late years. They called it by the same name which Mr Stæhlin has affixed to his large island, that is Alaschka.

According to the information we obtained from Ismyloff and his countrymen, the Russians have made several attempts to gain a footing upon that part of the North American continent, that lies contiguous to Oonalashka and the adjacent islands, but have constantly been repulsed by the inhabitants, whom they represent as a very treacherous people. They made mention of two or three captains, or chief men, who had been murdered by them ; and some of the Russians shewed us wounds, which they declared they had received there.

Ismyloff also informed us, that in the year 1773, an expedition

expedition had been undertaken into the Frozen Ocean in sledges, over the ice, to three large islands, that are situate opposite the mouth of the river Kovym. But a voyage which he said he himself had performed, engaged our attention more than any other. He told us, that, on the 12th of May, 1771, he sailed from Bolcheretz, in Kamtschatka, in a Russian vessel, to Marekan, one of the Kurile Islands, where there is a harbour, and a Russian settlement. From this island he proceeded to Japan, where his continuance appears to have been but short; for as soon as the Japanese knew that he and his companions professed the Christian faith, they made signs for them to depart; but did not, so far as we could understand him, offer any insult or violence. From Japan he repaired to Canton, in China; and from thence, in a French ship, to France. He then travelled to Petersburg, and was afterwards sent out again to Kamtschatka. We could not learn what became of the vessel in which he first embarked, nor what was the principal intention of the voyage. His being unable to speak one word of the French language, rendered this story rather suspicious; he seemed clear, however, as to the times of his arrival at the different places, and of his departure from them, which he put down in writing.

The next morning (Friday the 16th) he offered Captain Cook a sea-otter skin, which, he said, was worth eighty roubles at Kamtschatka. The Captain, however, thought proper to decline the offer; but accepted of some dried fish, and several baskets of the lily, or *saranne* root. In the afternoon, Ismyloff, after having dined with Captain Clerke, left us with all his retinue, but promised to return in a few days. Accordingly, on the 19th, he paid us another visit, bringing with him the charts above-mentioned, which he permitted Captain Cook to copy; and the contents of which are the foundation of the following remarks.

These charts were two in number, they were both manuscripts, and bore every mark of authenticity. One of

of them
of Tart
Islands,
chart h
tain, ex
from C
norther
that a g
correct
used by
theodo
harbou
Kamts
Olutor
that the
that Y
the we
the rive
harbou
where,
a settle

The
the Ru
toward
with w
betwee
eastern
wich;
latitude
from
which
tude, c
particu
latter,
Wheth
of Mu
difficu

Acc
nor th

of them comprehended the Penshinskian sea; the coast of Tartary, as low as the latitude of 41 d. N. the Kurile Islands, and the peninsula of Kamtschatka. Since this chart had been made, Wawseelee Irkeechoff, a naval captain, explored, in the year 1758, the coast of Tartary, from Okotsk, and the river Amur, to Japan, or 41 d. of northern latitude. We were informed by Mr Ilmyloff, that a great part of the sea coast of Kamtschatka had been corrected by himself; and he described the instrument used by him for that purpose, which must have been a theodolite. He also told us, that there were only two harbours proper for shipping, on all the eastern coast of Kamtschatka, viz. the bay of Awatska, and the river Olutora, in the bottom of the gulph of the same name; that there was not one harbour on its western coast; and that Yamsk was the only one, except Okotsk, on all the western side of the Penshinskian sea, till we come to the river Amur. The Kurile Islands contain but one harbour, and that is on the N. E. side of Mareekan; where, as we have already mentioned, the Russians have a settlement.

The other chart comprehended all the discoveries that the Russians had made to the eastward of Kamtschatka, towards America. That part of the American coast, with which Tschirikoff fell in, is laid down in this chart between the latitude of 58 d. and $58\frac{1}{2}$ d. N. and 75 d. of eastern longitude, from Okotsk, or $218\frac{1}{2}$ d. from Greenwich; and the place where Beering anchored in $59\frac{1}{2}$ d. of latitude, and $63\frac{1}{2}$ d. of longitude from Okotsk, or 207 d. from Greenwich. To say nothing of the longitude, which may from several causes, be erroneous, the latitude, of the coast, discovered by Beering and Tschirikoff, particularly that part of it which was discovered by the latter, differs considerably from Mr Muller's chart. Whether the chart now produced by Ilmyloff, or that of Muller, be most erroneous in this respect, it may be difficult to determine.

According to Ilmyloff's account, neither the number nor the situation of the islands which are dispersed between

tween 52 d. and 55 d. of latitude, in the space between Kamtschatka and America, is properly ascertained. He struck out about a third of them, assuring us, that they did not exist; and he considerably altered the situation of others; which, he said, was necessary, from the observations which he himself hath made; and there was no reason to entertain a doubt about this. As these islands are nearly under the same parallel, different navigators, misled by their different reckonings, might easily mistake one island, or cluster of islands, for another; and imagine they had made a new discovery, when they had only found old ones, in a position somewhat different from that which their former visitors had assigned to them.

The isles of St Theodore, St Stephen, St Abraham, St Macarius, Seduction Island, and several others, which are represented in Mr Muller's chart, were not to be found in this now produced to us; nay, Ismyloff and the other Russians assured Captain Cook, that they had been frequently sought for without effect. Nevertheless, it is difficult to believe, that Mr Muller could place them in his chart, without some authority. Captain Cook, however, confiding in the testimony of these people, whom he thought competent witnesses, omitted them in his chart; and made such corrections respecting the other islands, as he had reason to think were necessary.

We shall now proceed to give some account of the islands, beginning with those which are nearest to Kamtschatka, and computing the longitude from the harbour of Petropaulowka, in the bay of Awatska. The first is Beering's Island, in 55 d. of northern latitude, and 6 d. of eastern longitude. At the distance of ten leagues from the southern extremity of this, in the direction of E. by S. or E. S. E. stands *Maidenoi Ostreff*, or the Copper Island. The next island is Atakou, in the latitude of 52 d. 45 m. and in the longitude of 15 d. or 16 d. The extent of this island is about eighteen leagues in the direction of E. and W. and

and it
with,
John.

We
of whi
tent, a
dle of
28 d.
extent
west.
remov
they h
prehen
were e
situate
ka app
named

The
be erro
est gro
siderab
islands
longitu
tolerab
noodh
fixed p
Halibu
Oonal
passag
in Iir
league
be par
mak.

were i
be nav
burthe
Fro
mylof
as the
Vol.

and it is perhaps the same land which Beering fell in with, and to which he gave the name of Mount St John.

We next come to a cluster of six or more islands; two of which, Amluk and Atghka, are of considerable extent, and each of them has a good harbour. The middle of this group lies in the latitude of 52 d. 30 m. and 28 d. of longitude, from the bay of Awatska; and its extent is about four degrees, in the direction of east and west. These are the isles that Ismyloff said were to be removed four degrees to the eastward. In the situation they have in Captain Cook's chart, was a group, comprehending ten little islands, which, we were informed, were entirely to be struck out; and also two islands, situate between them and the group to which Oonalashka appertains. In the place of these two, an island, named Amoghta, was introduced.

The situation of many of these islands may, perhaps, be erroneously laid down. But the position of the largest group, of which Oonalashka is one of the most considerable islands, is free from such errors. Most of the islands that compose this cluster, were seen by us; their longitude and latitude were therefore determined with tolerable accuracy, particularly the harbour of Samganoodha, in Oonalashka, which must be considered as a fixed point. This group may be said to extend as far as Halibut Isles, which are forty leagues distant from Oonalashka, towards the E. N. E. Within these isles, a passage, communicating with Bristol Bay, was marked in Ismyloff's chart; which converts about fifteen leagues of the coast, that Captain Cook had supposed to be part of the continent, into an island, named Ooneemak. This passage might easily escape us, being as we were informed, extremely narrow, shallow, and only to be navigated through with boats, or vessels of very small burthen.

From the chart, as well as from the testimony of Ismyloff and his countrymen, it appears, that this is as far as the Russians have made any discoveries, or have extended

tended themselves, since the time of Beering. They all affirmed, that no persons of that nation had settled themselves so far to the eastward, as the place where the natives gave the note to Captain Clerke; which being delivered to Ismyloff for his perusal, he said, that it had been written at Oomanak. From him we procured the name of Kodiak*, the largest of Schumagin's Islands; for it had no name assigned to it upon the chart which he produced. It may not be improper to mention, that no names were put to the islands which Ismyloff said were to be struck out of the chart; and Captain Cook considered this as some confirmation, that they have no existence.

The American continent is here called, by the Russians, as well as by the islanders, Alaschka; which appellation, though it properly belongs only to that part which is contiguous to Ooneemak, is made use of by them when speaking of the American continent in general.

This is all the intelligence we obtained from these people, respecting the geography of this part of the globe; and perhaps this was all the information they were able to give. For they repeatedly assured Captain Cook, that they knew of no other islands, besides those which were represented upon this chart, and that no Russian had ever visited any part of the American continent to the northward, except that which is opposite the country of the Tschutskis.

If Mr Stæhlin was not greatly imposed upon, what could induce him to publish a map so singularly erroneous, as his map of the New Northern Archipelago, in which many of these islands are jumbled together without the least regard to truth? Nevertheless, he himself styles it "a very accurate little map."

Ismyloff continued with us till the evening of the 21st, when he took his final leave. Captain Cook entrusted to his care a letter to the Lords of the Admiralty, enclosing

* A Russian ship had touched at Kodiak in the year 1776.

fining a c
Ismyloff
ting it to
succeedi
the follo
Major B
Bolcher
manding

Mr Is
title him
him. I
and in t
Captain
and tho
he very
the uses

On T
attempt
not succ
fited by
who con
seemed
of whic
here, w
what su
ter and
more ac
every th
that pla
man im
in' the
have th
very de
to carry
tain fer

Afte
Russian
visited
met wi

sing a chart of all the northern coasts we had visited. Ismyloff said there would be an opportunity of transmitting it to Kamtschatka, or Okotsk, in the course of the succeeding spring; and that it would be at Petersburg the following winter. He gave the Captain a letter to Major Behm, Governor of Kamtschatka, who resides at Bolcheretsk in that peninsula; and another to the commanding officer at Petropaulowska.

Mr Ismyloff seemed to possess abilities that might entitle him to a higher station than that in which we found him. He had considerable knowledge in astronomy, and in the most useful branches of the mathematics. Captain Cook made him a present of an Hadley's octant; and though, perhaps, it was the first he had ever seen, he very quickly made himself acquainted with most of the uses to which that instrument can be applied.

On Thursday the 22d, in the morning, we made an attempt to get out to sea, with the wind at S. E. but did not succeed. In the afternoon of the 23d we were visited by one Jacob Ivanovitch Soposnicoff, a Russian, who commanded a small vessel at Oomanak. This man seemed very modest, and would drink no strong liquor, of which the other Russians, whom we had met with here, were extremely fond. He appeared to know what supplies could be obtained at the harbour of St Peter and St Paul, and the price of the various articles, more accurately than Mr Ismyloff. But, by all accounts, every thing, we should have occasion to purchase at that place, was very scarce, and bore a high price. This man informed us, that he was to be at Petropaulowska in the ensuing May; and, as we understood, was to have the charge of Captain Cook's letter. He seemed very desirous of having some token from the Captain to carry to Major Behm; and, to gratify him, the Captain sent a small spying-glass.

After we had contracted an acquaintance with these Russians, several of our gentlemen, at different times, visited their settlement on the island, where they always met with friendly treatment. It consisted of a dwelling-

house and two store-houses. Besides the Russians, there was a number of the Kamtschadales, and of the Oonalashkans, as servants to the former. Some other natives of this island, who appeared to be independent of the Russians, lived at the same place. Such of them as belonged to the Russians, were all of the male sex; and they are either taken or purchased from their parents when young. There were, at present, about twenty of these who could be considered in no other light than as children. They all reside in the same house, the Russians at the upper end, the Kamtschadales in the middle, and the Oonalashkans at the lower end, where is fixed a capacious boiler for preparing their food, which principally consists of fish, with the addition of wild roots and berries. There is no great difference between the first and last table, except what is produced by cookery, by which the Russians can make indifferent things palatable. They dress whales flesh in such a manner as to make it very good eating; and they have a kind of pan-pudding of salmon-roe, beaten up fine and fried, which is a tolerable substitute for bread. They may perhaps, occasionally, taste real bread, or have a dish in which flour is one of the ingredients. If we except the juice of berries, which they generally sip at their meals, they drink no other liquor than pure water; and it seems to be very fortunate for them that they have nothing stronger.

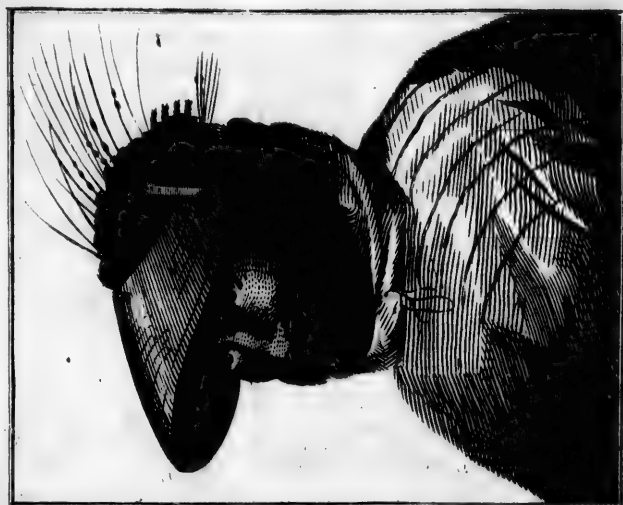
As the island furnishes them with subsistence, so it does, in some measure, with clothing. This is chiefly composed of skins. The upper garment, which is made like a waggoner's frock, reaches down to the knees. Besides this, they wear a waistcoat or two, a pair of breeches, a fur cap, and a pair of boots, the legs of which are formed of some kind of strong gut, but the soles and upper leathers are of Russian leather. Their two Chiefs, Ismyloff and Ivanovitch, wore a calico frock; and they, as well as several others, had shirts of silk.

Many Russians are settled upon all the most considerable

mans,
of the
other
ndent
them
sex;
their
about
other
same
dales
end,
their
ition
ence
uced
rent
ch a
nave
fine
ead.
or
nts.
all-
ure
that

o it
effly
ade
ees.
of
of
he
eir
co
rts
er-
le

Cook's Voyages.



A MAN and WOMAN of ONALASHKA.

able i
the p
is the
also r
inquir
laskka
our j
the na
These
others
1776,

As
to all
people
a patte
we fav
are un
their o
of opin
state of
the R
making
the isla
inflicte
have p
sent, th
and th
each i
withou
the Ru
some r

The
of statu
commo
They

* Acc
Russians

able islands between Kamtschatka and Oonalashka, for the purpose of collecting furs. Their principal object is the sea-beaver or otter; but skins of inferior value also make a part of their cargoes. We neglected to inquire how long they have had a settlement upon Oonalashka, and the neighbouring islands; but if we form our judgment on this point from the great subjection the natives are under, this cannot be of a very late date.* These furriers are, from time to time, succeeded by others. Those we saw arrived here from Okotik in 1776, and were to return in 1781.

As for the native inhabitants of this island, they are, to all appearance, a very peaceable, inoffensive race of people; and, in point of honesty, they might serve as a pattern to the most civilized nations. But, from what we saw of their neighbours, with whom the Russians are unconnected, we have some doubt whether this was their original disposition; and are rather inclined to be of opinion, that it is the consequence of their present state of subjection. Indeed, if we did not misunderstand the Russians, they had been under the necessity of making some severe examples before they could bring the islanders into tolerable order. If severities were really inflicted at first, the best excuse for them is, that they have produced the most beneficial effects; and, at present, the greatest harmony subsists between the Russians and the natives. The latter have their own chiefs in each island, and seem to enjoy liberty and property without molestation. Whether they are tributaries to the Russians, or not, we could never learn; but we had some reason to suppose that they are.

The people of Oonalashka are in general rather low of stature, but plump, and well shaped. Their necks are commonly short, and they have swarthy chubby faces. They have black eyes, and small beards. Their hair is long,

* According to Mr Coxe, in his account of the discoveries of the Russians, they began to frequent Oonalashka in the year 1762.

long, black, and straight : the men wear it loose behind, and cut before ; but the women generally tie it up in a bunch.

The dress of both sexes is the same with respect to fashion, the only difference is in the materials. The frock worn by the women is made of the skins of seals ; and that of the men, of the skins of birds ; both reach below the knees. This constitutes the whole dress of the females. But, over the frock, the men wear another composed of gut, which water cannot penetrate ; it has a hood to it, which is drawn over the head. Some of them wear boots ; and all of them wear a sort of oval snouted cap, made of wood, with a rim that admits the head. They dye these caps with green and other colours ; and round the upper part of the rim they fix the long bristles of some sea animal, on which glass beads are strung ; and on the front is a small image or two formed of bone. They do not make use of paint ; but the women puncture their faces slightly, and both sexes perforate the lower lip, in which they fix pieces of bone. But it is as uncommon here to see a man with this ornament, as to observe a woman without it. Some fix beads to the upper lip under the nostrils ; and they all suspend ornaments in their ears.

Fish and other sea animals, birds, roots, berries, and even sea-weed, compose their food. They dry quantities of fish during the summer, which they lay up in small huts for their use in winter ; and, probably, they preserve berries and roots for the same season of scarcity. They eat most of their provisions raw. Boiling and broiling were the only methods of cookery that we saw practised among them ; and the former they in all probability learnt from the Russians. Some have in their possession small brass kettles ; and those who have not, make one of a flat stone, with sides of clay.

Captain Cook once happened to be present, when the chief of this island made his dinner of the raw head of a large halibut, just caught. Before any part of it was given to the chief, two of his servants eat the gills, with

behind,
t up in

spect to

The

f seals;

h reach

dress of

ar ano-

etrate;

head.

r a fort

hat ad-

er and

ne rim

which

image

use of

y, and

ey fix

see a

with-

e nos-

t,

, and

quan-

up in

they

rcity.

g and

e saw

pro-

their

not,

n the

t of a

t was

with

po

Cook's Voyages



Howe's

NATIVES of DONALASHKA and their HABITATIONS.

no other
this, one
it to the
himself
some gra
and the r
large pie
reach of
tisfaction
of the he
vants, wh
ed the bo

As the
in their
themselves
The follo
the groun
feet in le
sions are
form the
and then
sembles a
square op
openings
other bei
ance of a
cut. In
below, b
and ends
dwell tog
they sleep
fort of co
the house
pretty cl
the midd
milies.
receptack
the urin
means in

no other dressing than squeezing out the slime. After this, one of them having cut off the head of the fish, took it to the sea, and washed it, then came with it, and seated himself by the chief; but not before he had pulled up some grass, upon a part of which the head was placed, and the rest was strewed before the chief. He then cut large pieces off the cheeks, and put them within the reach of the chief, who swallowed them with great satisfaction. When he had finished his meal, the remains of the head being cut in pieces, were given to the servants, who tore off the meat with their teeth, and gnawed the bones like so many dogs.

As the Oonalashkans use no paint, they are less dirty in their persons than those savages who thus besmear themselves; but they are full as filthy in their houses. The following is their method of building: they dig in the ground, an oblong pit, which rarely exceeds fifty feet in length, and twenty in breadth; but the dimensions are in general smaller. Over this excavation they form the roof of wood, which they cover first with grass, and then with earth, so that the external appearance resembles a dung-hill. Near each end of the roof is left a square opening, which admits the light; one of these openings being intended only for this purpose, and the other being also used to go in and out by, with the assistance of a ladder; or rather a post, in which steps are cut. In some of the houses there is another entrance below, but this is rather uncommon. Round the sides and ends of the habitations, the families, several of which dwell together, have their separate apartments, where they sleep, and sit at work; not on benches, but in a sort of concave trench, dug entirely round the inside of the house, and covered with mats, so that this part is kept pretty clean and decent. The same cannot be said of the middle of the house, which is common to all the families. For, though it is covered with dry grass, it is a receptacle for every kind of dirt, and the place where the urine trough stands; the stench of which is by no means improved by raw hides, or leather, being almost con-

continually steeped in it. Behind, and over the trench, they place the few effects that they have in their possession, such as their mats, skins, and apparel.

Their furniture consists of buckets, cans, wooden bowls, spoons, matted baskets, and sometimes a Russian kettle or pot. All these utensils are made in a very neat manner; and yet we observed no other tools among them than the knife and the hatchet; that is, a small flat piece of iron, made like an adze, by fixing it into a crooked wooden handle.

Though the Russians live among these people, we found much less iron in possession of the latter, than we had met with among other tribes on the neighbouring continent of America, who had never seen the Russians, nor perhaps had any intercourse with them. Probably a few beads, and a small quantity of tobacco and snuff, purchase all they have to spare. There are few of them that do not both smoke and chew tobacco, and take snuff.

They did not appear to be very desirous of more iron, or to want any other instruments, except sewing needles, their own being formed of bone. With these they sew their canoes, and make their clothes, and also work very curious embroidery. They use, instead of thread, the fibres of sinews, which they split to the thickness which is required. All sewing is performed by the females. They are the shoe-makers, taylor, and boat-builders, or boat-coverers; for the men, in all probability, construct the wooden frame, over which the skins are sewed. They manufacture mats, and baskets of grass, which are both strong and beautiful. There is, indeed, a neatness and perfection in most of their work, that shews they are neither deficient in ingenuity nor perseverance.

We did not observe a fire-place in any one of their habitations. They are lighted, as well as heated, by lamps; which, though simple, effectually answer the purpose for which they are intended. They consist of a flat stone, hollowed on one side like a plate; in the hollow

trench,
possef

wooden
Ruffian
ry neat
among
hall flat
into a

le, we
an' we
pouring
ffians,
bbably
snuff,
f them
d take

e iron,
ewing
these
d also
rad of
o the
rmed
s, and
pro-
h the
skets
ere is,
work,
nor

their
s, by
the
ft of
the
llow

THE INSIDE OF A HOUSE IN OOKABASHI, JAPAN.

By J. B. B. B. B.



Cook's Bay, Japan

hollow
which
selves
their le
it for
both by
stones
brimsto
thod is
of whic
about a
the stick
as a dri
This m
only pr
dales, th
landers,
nations.
ed an a
that nat
agreeme
wholly
hand, w
between
are of d

We f
among
supposed
fenceless
own sec
tives, li
permit t
can har
found t
we obser
ed to th
The
than any
from wh

Vol. II

hollow part they put the oil, mixed with some dry grafs, which ferves for a wick. Both fexes often warm themfelves over one of thefe lamps, by placing it between their legs, under their garments, and fitting thus over it for feveral minutes. Thefe people produce fire both by collifion and attrition; the firft by ftriking two ftones againft each other, on one of which a quantity of brimftone has been previously rubbed. The latter method is performed by means of two pieces of wood, one of which is flat, and the other is a ftick of the length of about a foot and a half. They prefs the pointed end of the ftick upon the other piece, whirling it nimbly round as a drill, and thus fire is procured in a few minutes. This method is common in many countries. It is not only practifed by thefe people, but alfo by the Kamtichadales, the Greenlanders, the Otaheiteans, the New Hollanders, and the Brazilians, and probably by other nations. Some men of learning and genius have founded an argument on this cuftom, to prove that this and that nation are of the fame extraction. But casual agreements, in a few particular instances, will not wholly authorize fuch a conclufion; nor, on the other hand, will a difagreement, either in manners or cuftoms, between two different nations, prove of courfe that they are of different extraction.

We faw no offensive, nor even defensive weapon among the natives of Oonalafhka. It can fcarcely be fupposed that the Rufians found them in fuch a defencelefs ftate; it is rather to be imagined, that, for their own fecurity, they have difarmed them. Political motives, likewise, may have induced the Rufians not to permit thefe iflanders to have any large canoes; for we can hardly believe they had none fuch originally, as we found them among all their neighbours. However, we obferved none here except two or three that belonged to the Rufians.

The canoes in ufe among the natives, are fmaller than any of thofe we had feen upon the coaft of America, from which, however, they differ but little in their con-

struction. The form of these terminates somewhat abruptly; the head is forked, and the upper point of the fork projects without the under one, which is level with the surface of the water. It is remarkable that they should thus construct them, for the fork generally catches hold of every thing that comes in the way; to prevent which, they fix a piece of small stick from one point to the other. In other respects they build their canoes after the manner of those of the Esquimaux and Greenlanders; the frame being of slender laths, and the covering of the skins of seals. They are about twelve feet in length, eighteen inches in breadth in the middle, and twelve or fourteen inches in depth. They sometimes carry two persons, one of whom sits in the seat, or round hole, which is nearly in the middle; and the other is stretched at full length in the canoe. Round this hole is a rim or hoop of wood, about which gut-skin is sewed, which can be drawn together, or opened like a purse, with leathern strings fitted to the outer edge. The man sits in this place, draws the skin tight about his body over his gut-frock, and brings the ends of the thongs, or purse-strings, over his shoulder. The sleeves of his frock are fastened tight round his wrists; and it being close round his neck, and the hood being drawn over his head, where his cap confines it, water cannot easily penetrate, either into the canoe, or to his body. If, however, any water should find means to insinuate itself, the boatman dries it up with a piece of sponge. He makes use of a double bladed paddle, which is held with both hands in the middle, striking the water first on one side, and then on the other, with a quick regular motion. Thus the canoe is impelled at a great rate, and in a direction perfectly straight. In sailing from Egoochshak to Samganoodha, though our ship went at the rate of seven miles an hour, two or three canoes kept pace with her.

Their implements for hunting and fishing lie ready upon their canoes, under straps fixed for the purpose. The are all extremely well made of wood and bone, and are

are no
lander
missile
does n
the G
inches
of the
are ge
length
means
barbed
be put
to the
of twin
animal
out of
of the
animal,
so that
affiance
inches
the bett
nation
is fixed
dart fro
with a
fides are
thumb,
natives
ninety y
exceedin
in rivers
The line
of bone.
Whale
salmon,
are foun
had not
appear t

are not very different from those used by the Greenlanders. The only difference is in the point of the missile dart; which, in some that we saw at this island, does not exceed an inch in length; whereas those of the Greenlanders, according to Crantz, are about eighteen inches long. Indeed these darts, as well as some others of their instruments, are extremely curious. Their darts are generally made of fir, and are about four feet in length. One end is formed of bone, into which by means of a socket, another small piece of bone, which is barbed, is fixed, but contrived in such a manner, as to be put in and taken out without trouble: this is secured to the middle of the stick by a strong, though thin piece of twine, composed of sinews. The bird, fish, or other animal is no sooner struck, than the pointed bone slips out of the socket, but remains fixed in its body by means of the barb. The dart then serves as a float to trace the animal, and also contributes to fatigue it considerably, so that it is easily taken. They throw these darts by the assistance of a thin piece of wood, twelve or fourteen inches long; the middle of this is slightly hollowed, for the better reception of the weapon; and at the termination of the hollow, which does not extend to the end, is fixed a short pointed piece of bone, to prevent the dart from slipping. The other extremity is furnished with a hole for the reception of the fore-finger, and the sides are made to coincide with the other fingers and thumb, in order to grasp with greater firmness. The natives throw these darts to the distance of eighty or ninety yards, with great force and dexterity. They are exceedingly expert in striking fish, both in the sea, and in rivers. They also use hooks and lines, nets and weirs. The lines are formed of twisted sinews, and the hooks of bone.

Whales, porpoises, grampuses, halibut, sword-fish, salmon, trout, cod, soals, flat-fish, and several other sorts, are found here; and there may be many more that we had not an opportunity of seeing. Salmon and halibut appear to be in the greatest plenty; and on them the

people of these isles principally subsist; at least, they were the only sort of fish, except cod, that we observed to be laid up for their winter store.

Seals, and all that tribe of sea animals, are not so numerous as they are in many other seas. Nor can this be thought surprizing, since there is hardly any part of the coast, on either continent, nor any of these islands, situate between them, but what is inhabited, and whose inhabitants hunt these animals for their food and clothing. Sea horses are, indeed, to be found in prodigious numbers about the ice; and the sea otter is scarce any where to be met with but in this sea. An animal was sometimes seen by us, that blew after the manner of whales. It had a head resembling that of a seal. It was larger than that animal, and its colour was white, with dark spots interpersed. This was perhaps the *manati*, or sea cow.

Water fowls are neither found here in such numbers, nor in such variety, as in the northern parts of the Atlantic Ocean. However there are some in these parts, that we do not recollect to have seen in other countries; particularly the *alca monochroa* of Steller, and a black and white duck, which we judge to be different from the stone duck that Krashenikoff has described in his History of Kamtschatka. All the other birds we saw are mentioned by this author, except some which we observed near the ice; and the greatest part of these, if not all, have been described by Martin, in his voyage to Greenland. It is somewhat extraordinary, that penguins, which are so frequently met with in many parts of the world, should not be found in this sea. Albatrosses too are extremely scarce here.

The few land birds seen by us are the same with those of Europe; but there were probably many others which we had no opportunity of observing. A very beautiful bird was shot in the woods at Norton Sound: which, we understand, is sometimes found in England, and known by the appellation of chatterer. Our people saw other small birds there, but in no great abundance

OR

or variety
yellow-fir

Our ex
the sea c
knowledg
There are
saw few r
Oonalashk
are there a
and foxes
the natives
marmottas
pears, that
their food
ed to the f
ing, and o
to be seen
the neighb

The see
means, fro
to islands
far distant
able, that t
American
They are c
by the var
which hav
denied to f
the assistan
upon the sh
coming fro
on the nei
grow farth
loose by t
the sea; an
woody coa
distance.

Plants ar
Several of

or variety ; such as the bullfinch, the wood-pecker, the yellow-finch, and tit-mouse.

Our excursions and observations being confined to the sea coast, we cannot be expected to have much knowledge of the animals or vegetables of the country. There are few other insects besides musquitoes, and we saw few reptiles except lizards. There are no deer at Oonalashka, or any of the neighbouring islands ; nor are there any domestic animals, not even dogs. Weasels and foxes were the only quadrupeds we observed ; but the natives told us, that they had likewise hares, and the *marmotas* mentioned by Krasheninikoff. Hence it appears, that the inhabitants procure the greatest share of their food from the sea and rivers. They are also indebted to the sea for all the wood which they use for building, and other necessary purposes ; as there is not a tree to be seen growing upon any of the islands, nor upon the neighbouring coast of the continent.

The seeds of plants are said to be conveyed by various means, from one part of the world to another ; even to islands lying in the midst of extensive oceans, and far distant from any other lands. It is therefore remarkable, that there are no trees growing on this part of the American continent, nor upon any of the adjacent isles. They are doubtless as well situated for receiving seeds, by the various ways we have heard of, as those coasts which have plenty of wood. Nature has, perhaps, denied to some soils the power of raising trees, without the assistance of art. With respect to the drift-wood, upon the shores of these islands, we have no doubt of its coming from America. For though there may be none on the neighbouring coast, a sufficient quantity may grow farther up the country, which may be broken loose by torrents in the spring, and brought down to the sea ; and not a little may be conveyed from the woody coasts, though situated at a more considerable distance.

Plants are to be found in great variety at Oonalashka. Several of them are such as we meet with in Europe,
and

and also in Newfoundland, and other parts of America; and others of them, which are likewise found in Kamtschatka, are eaten by natives both there and here. Of these, Krascheninikoff has favoured us with descriptions. The principal one is the *saranne*, or lily root; which is about as large as a root of garlick, round, and composed of a number of small cloves and grains. When boiled, it somewhat resembles saloop; the taste of it is not disagreeable. It does not appear to be in great abundance.

Among the food of the natives we may reckon some other wild roots; the stalk of a plant not unlike angelica; and berries of different species, such as cranberries, hurtle-berries, bramble-berries, and heath-berries; besides a small red berry, which, in Newfoundland, is denominated partridge berry; and another brown berry, with which we were unacquainted. This has somewhat of the taste of a sloe, but is different from it in every other respect. When eaten in a considerable quantity it is very astringent. Brandy may be distilled from it. Captain Clerke endeavoured to preserve some; but they fermented, and became as strong as if they had been steeped in spirits.

There were several plants which were serviceable to us, but are not used either by the Russians or the natives. These were tea-pots, wild purslain, a sort of scurvy-grass, cresses, and a few others. We found all these very palatable, whether dressed in soups or in sallads. The vallies and low grounds abounds with grass, which grows very thick, and to a great length. We are of opinion, that cattle might subsist at Oonalashka in every season of the year, without being housed. The soil, in many places, appeared to be capable of producing grain and vegetables. But, at present, the Russian traders, and the natives, seem contented with the spontaneous productions of nature.

We observed native sulphur among the people of this island; but we could not learn where they procured it. We also found ochre, and a stone that affords a purple colour;

CA
colour; be
last, in its
and heavy.
into water,
stones abou
nothing tha

The Oo
hills, and ra
natives, wh
country, po
dead. The
that had a h
added a sto
several stone
ly raised.
antiquity.

We are u
ple respecti
equally uni
having seen
either.

They are
each other;
lity. The
with their w
tians. Our
some of the
Oonalashka
was injured
here. The
complaint o
tacked by it
pear to be lo
woman, wh
age; and we
fifty.

We have
our arrival in
the inhabitan

colour ; besides another that gives a good green. This last, in its natural state, is of a greyish green hue, coarse, and heavy. It really dissolves in oil ; but when it is put into water, it altogether loses its properties. As for the stones about the shore and hills, we perceived in them nothing that was extraordinary.

The Oonalashkans inter their dead on the tops of hills, and raise over the grave a little hillock. One of the natives, who attended Captain Cook in a walk into the country, pointed out several of these repositories of the dead. There was one of them, by the side of a road, that had a heap of stones over it ; and all who passed it, added a stone to the heap. In the country were seen several stone hillocks, that seemed to have been artificially raised. Some of them were, to appearance, of great antiquity.

We are unacquainted with the notions of these people respecting the Deity, and a future state. We are equally uninformed with regard to their diversions ; having seen nothing that could give us an insight into either.

They are extremely chearful and friendly among each other ; and they always treated us with great civility. The Russians said they never had any connection with their women, on account of their not being christians. Our people, however, were less scrupulous ; and some of them had reason to repent, that the women of Oonalashka encouraged their addresses ; for their health was injured by a distemper that is not wholly unknown here. The natives are also subject to the cancer, or a complaint of a similar nature, which those who are attacked by it are studious to conceal. They do not appear to be long lived. We did not see a person, man or woman, whom we could suppose to be sixty years of age ; and we observed very few who seemed to exceed fifty.

We have occasionally mentioned, from the time of our arrival in Prince William's Sound, how remarkably the inhabitants on this northwestern side of America resemble

seem the Esquimaux and Greenlanders in various particulars of person, dress, weapons, canoes, and the like. We were, however, much less struck with this, than with the affinity subsisting between the dialects of the Greenlanders and Esquimaux, and those of Oonalashka and Norton's Sound. But we must observe, with respect to the words which were collected by us on this side of America, that too much stress is not to be laid upon their being accurately represented; for after the death of Mr Anderson, we had few who took any great degree of pains about such matters; and we have often found that the same word, written down by two or more persons, from the mouth of the same native, differed considerably, on being compared together. Nevertheless, enough is certain to authorize this judgment, that there is great reason to suppose, that all these nations are of the same extraction; and if that be the case, there is little doubt of there being a northern communication by sea, between the western side of America, and the eastern side, through Baffin's Bay; which communication, however, is perhaps effectually shut up against ships, by ice, and other obstructions; such, at least, was Captain Cook's opinion at this time.

The tides in these parts are not very considerable, except in Cook's River. The flood comes from the S. or S. E. following the direction of the coast to the N. W. Between Cape Prince of Wales and Norton Sound we found a current setting towards the N. W. particularly off that Cape, and within Sledge Island. This current, however, extended but a little way from the coast, and was neither consistent nor uniform. To the N. of Cape Prince of Wales, we observed neither tide nor current, either on the coast of America, or that of Asia. This circumstance gave rise to an opinion which some of our people entertained, that the two coasts were connected either by land or ice; and that opinion received some degree of strength from our never having any hollow waves from the northward, and from our seeing ice almost the whole way across.

From

From t
in the har
N. and its

Departure

—Repair

Proceed

wounded

Visits from

recoo—

Windward

to taste S

age in the

Natives of

tion of get

Visits from

Bligh exa

Anchor in

ON Monday
Sams
southerly, v
proceed to
of the winte
necessary re
gress to Ka
middle of M
mined on, t
tions for pr
Islands being
and, for the

Vol. II.—N

From the observations made during our continuance in the harbour of Samganoodha, its latitude is 53 d. 5 m. N. and its longitude 193 d. 29 m. 45 s. E.

Departure from Samganoodha—Amoghia—An elevated Rock—Repasts the Strait between Oonalashka and Oonella—Proceed to the South—One Man killed, and three or four wounded on board the Discovery—Mowee discovered—Visits from the Natives—A Visit from a Chief named Terreeoboo—Owhyhee, an Island, discovered—Ships ply to the Windward—An Eclipse of the Moon—Ship's Crew refuse to taste Sugar-Cane Beer—Comparative View of the Cordage in the Navy and Merchants Service—Eulogium on the Natives of Owhyhee—The Resolution accomplishes the Intention of getting to Windward of the Islands—The Progress—Visits from the Islanders—Joined by the Discovery—Mr. Bligh examines Karakakooa Bay—Multitudes of People—Anchor in the Bay.

ON Monday the 26th of October, we sailed from Samganoodha harbour, when, the wind being southerly, we stood to the westward. We intended to proceed to the Sandwich Islands, in order to pass a few of the winter months there, if we should meet with the necessary refreshments, and then advance in our progress to Kamtschatka, so as to arrive there about the middle of May in the ensuing year. This being determined on, the Commodore gave Captain Clerke instructions for proceeding in case of separation; Sandwich Islands being appointed for the first place of rendezvous; and, for the second, Petropaulowka, in Kamtschatka.



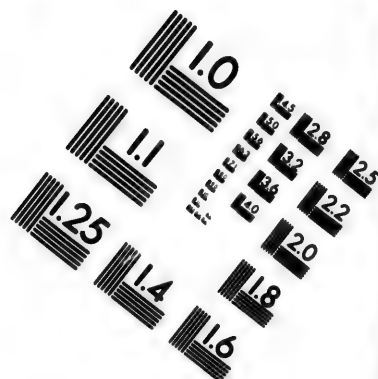
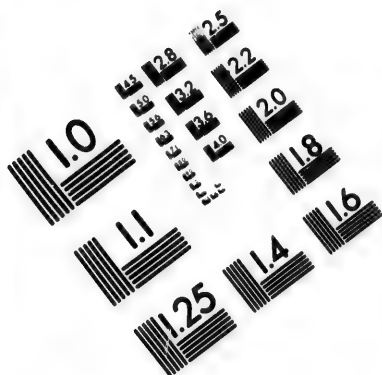
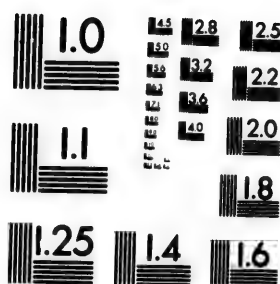


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99

Having got out of the harbour, the wind veered to the S. E. with which we were carried to the western part of Oonalashka, by the evening. Here the wind was at S. and we stretched to the westward till the next morning at seven, at which time we wore, and stood to the E. The wind had now so greatly increased, as to reduce us to our three courses. It blew in heavy squalls, accompanied with rain, hail, and snow.

In the morning of the 28th, at about nine o'clock, Oonalashka bore S. E. about four leagues distant. The strength of the gale was much abated, and, towards the evening, insensibly veered round to the E. and soon after got to N. E. increasing to a very hard gale, attended with rain.

At half after six, in the morning of the 29th, we discovered land, which we supposed to be the island Amoghta. At eight, the wind having veered to the westward, we could not weather the island, and gave over plying; bearing away for Oonalashka, in order to go to the N. of it, not daring, in so hard a gale of wind, to attempt a passage to the S. E. of it. When we bore away, the land was about four leagues distant. The longitude was 191 d. 17 m. and the latitude 53 d. 38 m. The Russian map is very inaccurate in the situation of this island.

Steering to the N. E. we discovered, at eleven o'clock, a rock, elevated like a tower, bearing N. N. E. at the distance of about four leagues. The latitude was 53 d. 57 m. and the longitude 191 d. 2 m. We got sight of Oonalashka about three in the afternoon, when we shortened sail, and hauled the wind, being unable to get through the passage before night. On the 20th at day-break, having a very hard gale at W. N. W. with heavy squalls and snow, we bore away under courses, and close-reefed top-sails. About noon we were in the middle of the strait, and got through it at three in the afternoon, Cape Providence bearing W. S. W. the wind at W. N. W. blew a strong gale, with fair weather.

On the 2d of November, the wind was at S. and,
in

in the evening, blew a violent storm, which occasioned us to bring to. Several guns were fired by the *Discovery*, which we immediately answered. We lost sight of her at eight, and saw her no more till eight the next morning. She joined us at ten; when, the height of the gale being over, and the wind having veered to W. N. W. we made sail, and pursued our course to the southward.

In the morning of Saturday the 7th, a shag, or cormorant, flew often round the ship. As it is not common for these birds to go far out of the sight of land, we supposed there was some at no great distance; though we could not discover any. Having but little wind in the afternoon, Captain Clerke came on board with some melancholy intelligence. He informed us that, the second night after we departed from Samganooodha, the main tack of the *Discovery* gave way, by which accident one man was killed, and the boatswain, with two or three others, wounded. He added, that his sails and rigging received considerable damage on the 3d, and that he fired the guns as a signal to bring to.

On the 8th, we had a gentle breeze at north, with clear weather. On the 9th, we had eight hours calm. To this succeeded a wind from the south, accompanied with fair weather. Such of our people as could handle a needle, were now employed to repair the sails; and the carpenters were directed to put the boats in order.

At noon, on the 12th, the wind returned to the northward, and veered to the E. on the 15th. We now saw a tropic bird, and a dolphin; the first we had observed in our passage. On the 17th, the wind was southward, where it remained till the 19th in the afternoon, when it was instantly brought round by the W. to the N. by a squall of wind and rain. The wind increased to a very strong gale, and brought us under double reefed top-sails. In lowering the main top-sail, in order to reef it, the force of the wind tore it out of the foot-rope, and it was split in several parts. We got, however, another top-sail to the yard the next morning.

We steered to the southward till the 25th, at day light, when we were in the latitude of 20 d. 55 m.

The next morning, at day-break, land was discovered, extending from S. S. E. to W. We stood for it, and at eight o'clock, it extended from S. E. to W. the nearest part about two leagues distant. We now perceived that our discovery of the group of the Sandwich Islands had been very imperfect, those which we had visited in our progress northward, all lying to the leeward of our present station.

An elevated hill appeared in the country, whose summit rose above the clouds. The land, from this hill, fell in a gradual slope, terminating in a steep rocky coast; the sea breaking against it in a most dreadful surf. Unable to weather the island, we bore up, and ranged to the westward. We now perceived people on many parts of the shore, and several houses and plantations. The country appeared to be well supplied with wood and water, and streams were seen, in various places, falling into the sea.

It being of the utmost importance to procure a proper supply of provisions at these islands, which could not possibly be accomplished, if a free trade with the natives were to be permitted; Captain Cook published an order, prohibiting all persons on board the ships from trading, except those appointed by himself and Captain Clerke; and these were under limitations of trading only for provisions and refreshments. Injunctions were also laid against the admittance of women into the ships, but under certain restrictions. But the evil, which was intended to have been prevented by this regulation, had already got amongst them.

About noon, the coast extended from S. E. to N. W. the nearest shore three miles distant, in the latitude of 20 d. 59 m. and the longitude of 203 d. 50 m. Some canoes came off, and, when they got alongside, many of the conductors of them came into the ship without hesitation. We perceived that they were of the same nation as those islanders more to the leeward, which had
already

already
were
indeed
real di
tracted
we had

Our
in excl
tle fru
their isl
being
most la
that off
would
island,
shore th
by few
bringin
and ima
and nai
We tra
at whic
and, no
immedi

On th
of the i
cipally
one of t
two or t
tering w
all left u
board.

tend up
night.

windwa
we had l

At eig
Owhyhe
we could

already been visited by us; and, as we understood, they were no strangers to our having been there. It was, indeed, too evident; these people having got the venereal disease among them; which they probably contracted by an intercourse with their neighbours, after we had left them.

Our visitors supplied us with a quantity of cuttle-fish, in exchange for nails and iron. They brought but little fruit or roots, but said they had plenty of them on their island, as well as of hogs and fowls. The horizon being clear, in the evening, we supposed the westernmost land that we could see, to be an island, distinct from that off which we now were. Expecting the natives would return the next day, with the produce of their island, we plyed off the whole night, and stood close in shore the next morning. At first we were visited but by few, but, towards noon, many of them appeared, bringing with them potatoes, taro, bread-fruit, plantains, and small pigs, all of which were bartered for iron tools and nails, we having few other articles to give them. We traded with them till about four in the afternoon, at which time they had disposed of all their cargoes; and, not expressing any inclination to fetch more, we immediately made sail.

On the 30th, in the afternoon, being off the N. E. end of the island, some more canoes came off. These principally belonged to Terreeoboo, a chief who came in one of them. He made the Commodore a present of two or three pigs; and we procured a little fruit by bartering with the other people. In about two hours they all left us, except seven or eight who chose to remain on board. Soon after a double sailing canoe arrived to attend upon them, which we towed astern the whole night. In the evening, another island was seen to the windward, called, by the natives, *Owhyhee*. That, which we had been off for some days, was called *Mowee*.

At eight in the morning, on the 1st of December, *Owhyhee* extended from S. E. to S. W. Perceiving that we could fetch *Owhyhee*, we stood for it, when our visitors

sitors from Mowee thought proper to embark in their canoes, and went ashore. We spent the night, standing off and on the north side of Owhyhee.

On the 2d of December, in the morning, to our great surprize, we saw the summits of the mountains covered with snow. Though they were not of an extraordinary height, the snow, in some places, appeared to be of a considerable depth, and to have remained there some time. Drawing near the shore, some of the natives approached us, who appeared a little shy at first, but we prevailed on some of them to come on board; and, at length, induced them to return to the island, to bring a supply of what we wanted. We had plenty of company after these had reached the shore, who brought us a tolerable supply of pigs, fruit, and roots. We traded with them till about six in the evening, when we stood off, in order to ply to windward round the island.

An eclipse of the moon was observed in the evening of the 4th. Mr King used, for the purpose of observation, a night-telescope, with a circular aperture at the object end. The Commodore observed with the telescope of one of Ramsden's sextants.

In the evening of the 6th, being near the shore, and five leagues farther up the coast, we again traded with the natives; but, receiving only a trifling supply, we stood in the next morning, when the number of our visitors was considerable, with whom we trafficked till two in the afternoon. We had now procured pork, fruit, and roots, sufficient to supply us for four or five days. We therefore made sail, and still plyed to windward.—Captain Cook having procured a great quantity of sugar cane, and having, upon a trial, discovered that a decoction of it made very palatable beer, he ordered some of it to be brewed for our general use; but, on the broaching of the casks, not one of the crew would even taste it. The Commodore, having, no other motive in preparing this beverage, than that of preserving our spirits for a colder climate, neither exerted his authority, nor had recourse to persuasion, to induce them

to

to
pl
da
po
se
off
ev
ho
it
Ca
bu
I
fur
tho
and
foo
duc
ship
have
nec
less,
tice,
his p
mad
in m
H
13th
and,
retur
the s
and r
we e
ward
The
16th
it wa
squal
light
hours

to drink it; well knowing that, so long as we could be plentifully supplied with other vegetables, there was no danger of the scurvy. But, that he might not be disappointed in his views, he ordered that no grog should be served in either of the ships. The Commodore, and his officers, continued to drink this sugar-cane beer, whenever materials could be procured for brewing it. Some hops, which we had on board, improved it much; and, it was, doubtless, extremely wholesome; though the Captain's inconsiderate crew, could not be persuaded but that it was injurious to their health.

Innovations, of whatever kind, on board a ship, are sure to meet with the disapprobation of the seamen, though ever so much to their advantage. Portable soup, and four krout, were condemned, at first, as improper food for human beings. Few commanders have introduced more useful varieties of food and drink into their ships, than Captain Cook has done. Few others, indeed, have had the opportunities, or have been driven to the necessity of trying such experiments. It was, nevertheless, owing to certain deviations from established practice, that he was enabled, in a great degree, to preserve his people from the scurvy, a distemper that has often made more havock in peaceful voyages, than the enemy in military expeditions.

Having kept at some distance from the coast, till the 13th, we stood in again, six leagues more to windward; and, after trading with the natives who came off to us, returned to sea. We also intended to have approached the shore again on the 15th, to get a fresh supply of fruit and roots; but the wind happening to be then at S. E. we embraced the opportunity of stretching to the eastward, in order to get round the S. E. end of the island. The wind continued at S. E. the greatest part of the 16th; on the 17th, it was variable; and on the 18th, it was continually veering. Sometimes it blew in hard squalls; and, at other times, it was calm, with thunder, lightning, and rain. The wind was westerly for a few hours in the afternoon; but it shifted, in the evening,

to E. by S. The S. E. point of the island now bore S. W. by S. distant about five leagues, and we expected that we should be able to weather it; but it became calm at one the next morning, and we were left wholly at the mercy of a north-easterly swell, which greatly impelled us towards the land; infomuch, that, before morning, lights were seen upon the shore, which was then at the distance of about a league. It was a dark night, with thunder, lightning, and rain.

A breeze from the S. E. succeeded the calm at about three, blowing in squalls, with rain. At day-break, the coast extended from N. by W. to S. W. by W. about half a league distant; a most dreadful surf breaking upon the shore. We had certainly been in the most imminent danger; from which we were not yet secure, the wind veering more easterly; so that, for a considerable time, we were but just able to keep our distance from the coast. Our situation was rendered the more alarming, by the leach-rope of the main-top-sail giving way, in consequence of which the sail rent in two; the top-gallant-sails giving way in the same manner. We soon, however, got others to the yards, and left the land astern. The Discovery was at some distance to the N. entirely clear from the land; nor did she appear in sight till eight o'clock.

It is an obvious remark, that the bolt-ropes to our sails are extremely deficient in strength or substance. This has frequently been the source of infinite labour and vexation; and occasioned the loss of much canvas by their giving way. It was, upon this occasion, observed by Captain Cook, that the cordage, canvas, and other stores, made use of in the navy, are inferior, in general, to those used in the merchant service.

The Commodore also observed, that an opinion prevailed among all naval officers, that the king's stores were superior to any others; no ships being so well fitted out as those of the navy. They may be right, he admits, as to the quantity; but, he apprehends, not with respect to the quality of the stores. This, indeed,

is not often tried; for these things are usually condemned, or converted to other uses, before they are half worn out. Only such voyages as ours afford an opportunity of making the trial; our situation being such, as to render it necessary to wear every thing to the extreme.

When day-light appeared, the natives ashore exhibited a white flag, as a signal, we imagined, of peace and friendship. Many of them ventured out after us; but, as the wind freshened, and we were unwilling to wait, they were presently left astern. In the afternoon, we made another attempt to weather the eastern extreme, in which we failed; when the Commodore gave it up, and ran down to the Discovery.

Our getting round the island was, indeed, a matter of no importance; for we had seen the extent of it to the S. E. which was all the Commodore aimed at; the natives having informed us, that there was no other island to the windward of this. But, as we were so near accomplishing our design, we did not entirely abandon the idea of weathering it, and continued to ply.

At noon, on the 20th, the S. E. point bore S. at the distance of three leagues. The snowy hills bore W. N. W. and we were within four miles of the nearest shore. We were visited, in the afternoon, by some of the natives, who came off in their canoes, bringing with them pigs and plantains. The latter were highly acceptable, we having been without vegetables for some days; but this was so inconsiderable a supply, (hardly sufficient for one day) that we stood in the next morning, till within about four miles of the land, when a number of canoes came off, laden with provisions. The people in them continued trading with us till four o'clock in the afternoon; at which time we had got a good supply; we therefore made sail, stretching off to the northward.

We met with less reserve and suspicion, in our intercourse with the people of this island, than we had ever experienced among any tribe of savages. They frequently sent up into the ship, the articles they meant to

barter, and afterwards came in themselves, to traffic on the quarter deck. The inhabitants of Otaheite, whom we have so often visited, have not that confidence in our integrity. Whence it may be inferred, that those of Owhyhee are more faithful in their dealings with each other, than the Otaheiteans.

It is but justice to observe, that they never attempted to over-reach us in exchanges, nor to commit a single theft. They perfectly understand trading, and clearly comprehended the reason of our plying upon the coast. For, though they brought off plenty of pigs, and other provisions, they were particular in keeping up their price; and, rather than dispose of them at an under-value, would carry them to shore again.

At eight in the morning of the 22d, we tacked to the southward. At noon, the snowy peak bore S. W. We stood to the S. E. till midnight, when we tacked to the N. till four. We had hopes of weathering the island, and should have succeeded, if a calm had not ensued, and left us to the mercy of a swell, which impelled us towards the land, from which we were not above the distance of two leagues. Some light puffs of wind, however, took us out of danger. Whilst we lay in this situation, some islanders came off with hogs, fowls, and fruit. From one of the canoes we got a goose, which was not larger than a Muscovy duck. The colour of its plumage was dark grey, and the bill and legs were black.

After purchasing what the natives had brought off, we made sail, and stretched to the N. At midnight, we tacked and stood to the S. E. Imagining the Discovery would see us tack, we omitted the signal; but it afterwards appeared that she did not see us, and continued standing to the N. for, the next morning, at day-light, she was not to be seen. But, as the weather was now hazy, we could not see far; it was therefore possible that the Discovery might be following us. At noon, we were in the latitude of 19 d. 55 m. and in the longitude of 205 d. 3 m. and we were two leagues from the nearest

nearest
southern
shore a
now su
ward of

The
wind w
she wo
point o
pected
gone to
ing bee

Keep
land, or
which t
ing, as
cerned
ing, as
yet con
convinc
the roo
We me
till we
it, if it
30th, w
from ap
up at n
at day-
bringin
only th
occasio
lately b

For
shortly
we we
to go n
upon t
too, w

nearest part of the island. In the evening, at six, the southernmost part of the island bore S. W. the nearest shore about seven miles distant. We had, therefore, now succeeded in our endeavours, in getting to the windward of the island.

The Discovery was not yet within sight, but as the wind was favourable for her to follow us, we expected she would shortly join us. We kept cruising of this point of the island, till Captain Clerke was no longer expected here. It was, at length, conjectured, that he was gone to leeward, in order to meet us that way, not having been able to weather the N. E. part of the island.

Keeping generally from five to ten leagues from the land, only one canoe came off to us till the 28th, at which time we were attended by about a dozen, bringing, as usual, the produce of the island. We were concerned that the people had been at the trouble of coming, as we could not possibly trade with them, not having yet consumed our former stock; and experience had convinced us, that the hogs could not be kept alive, nor the roots be many days preserved from putrefaction. We meant, however, not to leave this part of the island till we had got a supply, as we could not easily return to it, if it should hereafter be found necessary. On the 30th, we began to be in want, but a calm prevented us from approaching the shore. A breeze, however, sprung up at midnight, which enabled us to stand in for the land at day-break. At ten o'clock the islanders visited us, bringing with them a quantity of fruit and roots, but only three small pigs. This scanty supply was, perhaps, occasioned by our not having purchased those which had lately been brought off.

For the purposes of traffic we brought to, but we were shortly interrupted with an excessive rain; and, indeed, we were too far from the shore; nor could we venture to go nearer, as we could not, for a moment, depend upon the wind's continuing where it was. The swell, too, was extremely high, and set obliquely upon the

shore, where it broke in a most frightful surf. We had fine weather in the evening, and passed the night in making boards. Before day-break, on the 1st of January, 1779, the atmosphere was laden with heavy clouds; and the new year was ushered in with a heavy rain. We had a light breeze southerly, with some calms. At ten, the rain ceased, the sky became clear, and the wind freshened.

Being now about four or five miles from the shore, some canoes arrived with hogs, fruit, and roots. We traded with the people in the canoes, till three in the afternoon; when, being pretty well supplied, we made sail, in order to proceed to the lee side of the island, in search of the Discovery. We stretched to the eastward, till midnight, when the wind favoured us, and we went upon the other tack.

The 2d, 3d, and 4th, were passed in running down the S. E. side of the island, standing off and on during the nights, and employing part of each day in lying to, to give the natives an opportunity of trading with us. They frequently came off to us, at the distance of five leagues from the shore, but never brought much with them, at those times, either from a fear of losing their articles in the sea, or from the uncertainty of a market. We procured a quantity of salt, of a most excellent quality.

In the morning of the 5th, we passed the south point of the island, in the latitude of 18 d. 54 m. beyond which the coast trends N. 60 d. W. A large village is situated on this point, many of whose inhabitants thronged off to the ship with hogs and women. The latter could not possibly be prevented from coming on board; and they were less reserved than any women we had ever seen. They seemed, indeed, to have visited us with no other view than to tender us their persons.

Having now got a quantity of salt, we purchased only such hogs as were large enough for salting; refusing all those that were under size. But we could seldom procure any that exceeded the weight of sixty pounds. Happily

pily for
we were
tions.
country
dent m
waste
not the
had m

The
winds,
sixty
mile o
ran a f
sed the

We
ing.
merce
Cook's
coast, a
reported
the sho
hundre
discove
water
sea had
country
with a

To
pearan
point o
tain C
quaint
we we
island
had be
of the
his ow
opport
was sp

pily for us, we had still some vegetables remaining, as we were now supplied with but few of those productions. Indeed, from the appearance of this part of the country, it seemed incapable of affording them. Evident marks presented themselves of its having been laid waste by the explosion of a volcano; and though we had not then seen any thing of the kind, the devastation it had made in the neighbourhood was but too visible.

Though the coast is sheltered from the reigning winds, it had no anchorage; a line of an hundred and sixty fathoms not reaching the bottom, within half a mile of the shore. The natives having now left us, we ran a few miles down the coast in the evening, and passed the night in standing off and on.

We were again visited by the natives the next morning. They came laden with the same articles of commerce as before. Being not far from the shore, Captain Cook sent Mr Bligh, in a boat, in order to sound the coast, and also to go ashore in search of fresh water. He reported, on his return, that, within two cables lengths of the shore, he found no soundings with a line of one hundred and sixty fathoms; that, on the land, he could discover no stream or spring; that there was some rain-water in holes, upon the rocks, which the spray of the sea had rendered brackish; that the whole surface of the country was composed of flags and ashes, interspersed with a few plants.

To our great satisfaction, the Discovery made her appearance between ten and eleven, coming round the S. point of the island, and she joined us about one. Captain Clerke then came on board the Resolution, and acquainted us, that, having cruised four or five days where we were separated, he plied round the E. side of the island; where, meeting with unfavourable winds, he had been driven to some distance from the coast. One of the islanders continued on board the whole time, at his own request, having refused to leave the ship, though opportunities had presented themselves. The night was spent in standing off and on. In the morning,
we

we stood in again, and were visited by many of the natives. At noon, the latitude was 19 d. 1 m. and the longitude 203 d. 26 m. the nearest part of the island two leagues distant. On the 8th, at day-break, we perceived, that whilst we were plying in the night, the currents had carried us back considerably to windward; and that we were now off the S. W. point of the island, where we brought to, in order to enable the inhabitants to trade with us.

The night was spent in standing off and on. Four men and ten women, who came on board the preceding day, were with us still. The Commodore not liking the company of the latter, we stood in shore, on the 9th, about noon, solely with a view of getting rid of our guests; when, some canoes coming off, we embraced that opportunity of sending them away.

On the 10th, in the morning, we had light airs from N. W. and calms; at eleven, the wind freshened at N. N. W. which so greatly retarded us, that, in the evening, at eight, the S. snowy hill bore N. $1\frac{1}{2}$ d. E.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 11th, the wind being at W. we approached the land, in expectation of getting some refreshments. The natives, seeing us so near them, began to come off, and we continued trading with them the whole day; though we procured but a very scanty supply, many of those who came off in their canoes, not having a single thing to barter. From this circumstance it appeared, that this part of the island was extremely poor, and had already furnished us with every thing they could spare.

The 12th was employed in plying off and on, with a fresh gale at W. A mile from the shore we found ground, at the depth of fifty-five fathoms. At five, we stood to the southward, and at midnight we had a calm. The next morning, at eight, we had a small breeze at S. S. E. and steered for the land.

A few canoes came off to us with some hogs; but they brought no vegetables, which were now much wanted. In the evening, we had got the length of the S. W.

S. W.
wind.
day.
some
nothi
destit
recou
arrive
some

On
aftern
enable
weath
of cor
board
On th
bay, t
each fl

Can
ten o'clock
about
with
convinc
single
Trade
us. S
might
thievis
from th
recover
opport
two o
were,
away
tended
more s
Mr
that he
water, i

S. W. point of the island, but, by the veering of the wind, we lost in the night all that we had gained in the day. Being in the same situation the next morning, some more canoes attended us; but they brought nothing which we stood in need of. We were now destitute of roots and fruit, and therefore obliged to have recourse to our sea provisions. Some canoes, however, arrived from the northward, which supplied us with some hogs and roots.

On the 15th, we had variable light airs till five in the afternoon, when a breeze at E. N. E. sprung up, and enabled us to steer along shore to the northward. The weather was this day remarkably fine, and we had plenty of company; many of whom continued with us on board all night, and their canoes were towed astern. On the 16th, at day-break, seeing the appearance of a bay, the Commodore sent Mr Bligh, with a boat from each ship, to survey it, being now about three leagues off.

Canoes arrived from all quarters; insomuch that, by ten o'clock in the morning, there were at least a thousand about the two ships, crowded with people, and laden with hogs and other provisions. We were perfectly convinced of their having no hostile intentions; not a single person having a weapon with him of any sort. Trade and curiosity were their only inducements to visit us. Such numbers as we had frequently on board, it might be expected that some of them should betray a thievish disposition. One of them took a boat's rudder from the ship, and was not detected till it was too late to recover it. Captain Cook imagined this to be a proper opportunity to shew these islanders the use of fire-arms; two or three musquets, and as many four pounders, were, by his orders, fired over the canoe which went away with the rudder. But, as the shot was not intended to take effect, the surrounding multitude were more surprized than frightened.

Mr Bligh, when he returned in the evening, reported, that he had found a bay with good anchorage, and fresh water, in a desirable situation. Into this bay, the Commodore

dore determined to take his ships, in order to refit, and supply ourselves with refreshments. At the approach of night, the most considerable part of our visitors retired to the shore; but many, at their own earnest request, were permitted to sleep on board. Curiosity, at least with some of them, was not the only motive; for several articles were missing the next morning; in consequence of which, the Commodore came to a resolution not to admit so many on any future night.

On the 17th, at eleven in the forenoon, we anchored in the bay, called by the natives *Karakakooa*, within a quarter of a mile of the N. E. shore. The south point of the bay bearing S. by W. and the N. point W. $\frac{1}{4}$ N. After we were moored, the ships continued much crowded with the natives, and surrounded by a vast multitude of canoes. In the course of our voyages, we had no where seen such vast numbers of people assembled at one place. Besides those who visited us in canoes, all the shore was covered with spectators, and hundreds were swimming about the ships, like shoals of fish. We were struck with the singularity of this scene; and few of us lamented that we had not succeeded in our late endeavours, to find a northern passage homeward. To this disappointment, we were indebted for revisiting the Sandwich Islands, and for enriching our voyage with a discovery, in many respects, the most important that has been made by Europeans in the Pacific Ocean.

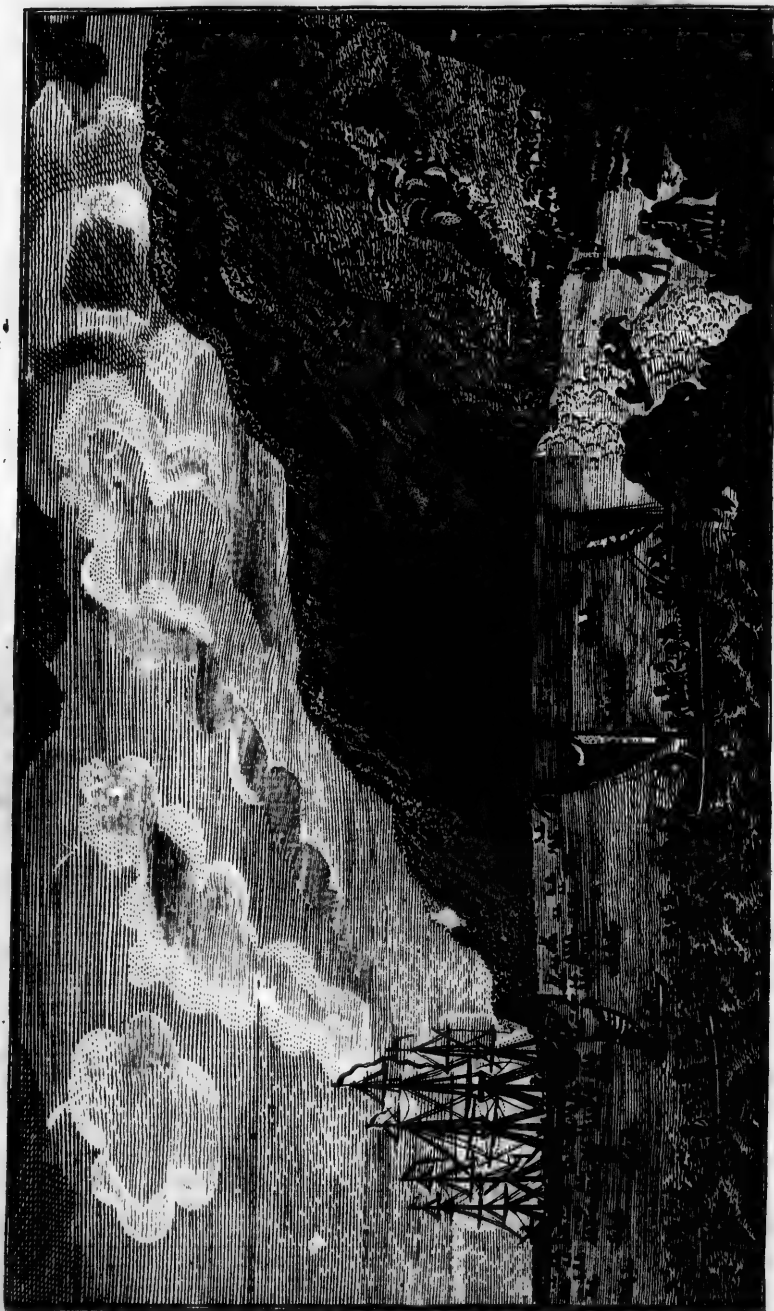
Kara-

to refit, and
the approach
visitors re-
earnest re-
curiosity, at
motive; for
g; in con-
to a resolu-
nt.

the anchored
within a
th point of
N. After
dowed with
of canoes.
e seen such
Besides
as covered
about the
th the fin-
d that we
ind a nor-
ment, we
ands, and
many re-
by Euro-

Kara-

Cook's Voyagers.



Shillito Sculpture Lounge

A VIEW of the HARBOUR of KARAKOOL, in OWYHEE.

Karak

round
infer
of the
the 1
which
in T
cover
of G
Terre
the 1
mark
return

THE of
hee. In
by two
each oth
point is
of Kow
Kauoa,
of statel
from the
on the S
yond w
with cul
The hab
plenty.
black co

Vol. II.

Karakakooa Bay described—Multitudes of the Natives surround the Ships—Despotic Authority of the Chiefs over the inferior People—A Visit received from Koah—Description of the Morai at Kakooa—Offering made to Captain Cook at the Morai—Mr King erects observatories—The Spot, on which they are situated, tabooed—Method of curing Meat in Tropical Climates—Society of Priests accidentally discovered—Their Munificence—Ceremony at the Reception of Captain Cook—Mean Artifice of Koah—Arrival of Terreeoboo—The Bay tabooed upon that Occasion—Bring the Inhabitants to Obedience, by firing a Musquet—Remarkable Ceremony—Visit from Terreeoboo—Captain Cook returns it.

THE Bay of Karakakooa is situated in the district of Akona, on the W. side of the island of Owhyhee. It extends about a mile in depth, and is bounded by two points of land, bearing S. E. and N. W. from each other, at the distance of half a league. The N. point is flat and barren, on which is situated the village of Kowrowa. A more considerable village, called Kakooa, stands in the bottom of the bay, near a grove of stately cocoa trees. A high rocky cliff, inaccessible from the sea shore, runs between them. Near the coast, on the S. side, the land has a rugged appearance; beyond which the country gradually rises, and abounds with cultivated inclosures, and groves of cocoa trees. The habitations of the people are scattered about in great plenty. Round the bay the shore is covered with a black coral rock, except at Kakao, where there is an

excellent sandy beach, with a *Morai* at one extremity, and a spring of fresh water at the other. We moored at the N. side of this bay, and within a quarter of a mile from the shore.

The inhabitants, perceiving our intention to anchor in the bay, came off in astonishing numbers, expressing their joy by singing, shouting, and the most extravagant gestures. The decks, sides, and riggings of our ships were covered with them. Women and boys, who were unable to procure canoes, came swimming round us in great multitudes; some of whom, not finding room to get on board, amused themselves the whole day by playing in the water.

One of the chiefs, who visited the *Resolution*, was named *Pareea*. Though a young man, we soon discovered him to be a person of great authority. He told Captain Cook that he was *Jakanee* * to the sovereign of the island, who was then on a military expedition at *Mowee*; whence he was expected to return in a few days. Some presents from the Commodore attached him to our interests, and we found him exceedingly useful to us. Before we had been long at anchor, the *Discovery* had so many people hanging on one side, that she was observed to heel considerably; and our people found it impossible to prevent the crowds from pressing into her. Captain Cook, apprehensive that she might receive some injury, communicated his fears to *Pareea*, who instantly cleared the ship of its incumbrances, and dispersed the canoes that surrounded her.

From this circumstance, it appears that the chiefs have a most despotic authority over the inferior people. An instance, similar to this, happened on board the *Resolution*; where the crowd so far impeded the ordinary business of the ship, that we found it necessary to apply to *Kaneena*, another chief, who had also attached himself

* We could not learn with certainty whether this was a name of office, or expressive of some degree of affinity.

him
veni
order
where
jump
hind
willin
of his
him i
Th
and h
whose
a figu
his fe
ment
lively
Mex
cruisin
and he
to thes
with w
ple of
The ca
of islan
forded
covery
impuni
courage
be attri
into the
doubt
instigat
The
chiefs,
whose
a priest
ed him
figure,
a leprou

himself particularly to Captain Cook. The inconvenience we suffered was no sooner mentioned, than he ordered the natives immediately to quit the vessel; when, without a moment's hesitation, we saw them all jump over-board; except one person, who loitered behind, and, by his manner, expressed some degree of unwillingness to obey. Kaneena observing this contempt of his authority, took hold of him immediately, and threw him into the sea.

These two chiefs were exceedingly well proportioned, and had countenances remarkably pleasing. Kaneena, whose portrait was drawn by Mr Webber, was as fine a figure as can be seen. His height was about six feet, his features were regular and expressive, his deportment was easy, firm, and graceful, and he had dark lively eyes.

Mention has already been made, that, while we were cruising off this island, the inhabitants had acted fairly and honestly, without manifesting the least propensity to theft; which was the more remarkable, because those with whom we had hitherto had any dealings, were people of the lowest rank, such as fishermen or servants. The case was now exceedingly altered. The multitude of islanders, who blocked up every part of the ships, afforded opportunities of pilfering without danger of discovery, and even if detected, must have escaped with impunity from our inferiority in number. To the encouragement of their chiefs, this alteration might also be attributed; for, as we frequently traced the booty into the possession of some great men, there is little doubt but these depredations were made at their instigation.

The Resolution having got into her station, the two chiefs, Pareea and Kaneena, brought a third on board, whose name was Koah. He was represented to us as a priest, and one who, in his early days, had distinguished himself as a warrior. He was a little old emaciated figure, having sore red eyes, and his body covered with a leprous scurf, occasioned by the immoderate use of the

ava. Being conducted to the cabin, he approached the Commodore with the greatest deference, threw a piece of red cloth over his shoulders, and, retreating a few paces, made an offering of a small pig, at the same time pronouncing a discourse of a considerable length.

During our continuance at Owhyhee, this ceremony was repeated often, and, from a variety of circumstances, appeared to us to be a kind of religious adoration. Red cloth is an article with which their idols are arrayed, and a pig is their common offering to the *Eatooas*. Their speeches were delivered with a volubility that indicated them to be conformable to some ritual.

At the conclusion of this ceremony, Koah dined with the Commodore, and eat plentifully of the viands before him; but, like most of the islanders in these seas, he could hardly be induced to taste our wine or spirits a second time. In the evening, the Commodore, Mr King, and Mr Baily, accompanied him on shore. As soon as we landed on the beach, we were preceded by four men, bearing each a wand tipped with dog's hair, and pronouncing, with a loud voice, a short sentence, in which the word *Orono* * was very distinguishable. The crowd, which had assembled on the shore, retired at our approach; and not an individual was to be seen, except a few who had prostrated themselves on the ground, near the habitations of the adjacent village.

Before we relate an account of the peculiar ceremonies respecting the adoration paid to Captain Cook, it may not be unnecessary to describe the *Morai*, already mentioned, situated on the beach at *Kakooa*. It consisted of a square solid pile of stones, of the length of forty yards, the breadth of twenty, and the height of fourteen. The top of it was flat, and a wooden rail sur- rounded

* This was Captain Cook's general appellation among the natives of Owhyhee. Sometimes it was applied by them to an invisible being inhabiting heaven. It was also a title of great rank in the island.

round
native
chiefs.
center
wall,
poles,
gular
and, o
with a
Koah
entran
most o
procee
inverte
Here C
having
and ch
by Ko
where
twelve
the mi
Whatta
under
fruit, a
conduc
down
again a
suffere
scaffold
We
enterin
hog, an
mension
prostrat
man al
the cloth
the Com
Capta
whimfi

rounded it, on which were displayed the skulls of those natives, who had been sacrificed on the death of their chiefs. A ruinous wooden building was situated in the center of the area, connected with the rail by a stone wall, dividing the whole space into two parts. Five poles, of about twenty feet in height, supported an irregular kind of scaffold, on the side next the country; and, on the side towards the sea, were two small houses, with a covered communication.

Koah conducted us to the top of this pile. At our entrance we beheld two large wooden images, with most distorted features, having a long piece of wood, proceeding from the top of their heads, of a conical form inverted; the other parts were covered with red cloth. Here Captain Cook was received by a tall young man, having a long beard, who presented him to the images, and chanted a kind of hymn, in which he was assisted by Koah. We were then led to that side of the *Morai* where the poles were erected; at the foot of which twelve images were ranged in the form of a semicircle; the middle figure having a high table before it like the *Whatta* of Otaheite, on which we saw a putrid hog, and under it some cocoa-nuts, plantains, potatoes, bread-fruit, and pieces of sugar-cane. The Commodore was conducted under this stand by Koah; who taking down the hog, held it towards him; when, having again addressed him in a long and vehement speech, he suffered it to fall upon the ground, and ascended the scaffolding with him, though at the peril of their falling.

We now beheld, advancing in solemn procession, and entering the top of the *Morai*, ten men bearing a live hog, and a piece of large red cloth of considerable dimensions. Advancing a few paces, they stopped, and prostrated themselves; and Kaireekaea, the tall young man already mentioned, approaching them, received the cloth, and carried it to Koah, who wrapped it round the Commodore, and made him an offering of the hog.

Captain Cook was now aloft, in a situation truly whimsical, swathed in red cloth, and hardly able to keep

keep his hold in the rotten scaffolding. In this situation he was entertained with the chanting of Koah and Kaireekēea, sometimes in concert, and sometimes alternately. After this office was performed, which was of considerable duration, Koah let the hog drop, and he and the Commodore immediately descended. He then conducted him to the images just mentioned, to each of which he expressed himself in a sneering tone, snapping his fingers at them as he passed. He then presented him to that in the center; which, from its being habited in red cloth, appeared to be in the highest estimation. He fell prostrate before this figure, and kissed it, requesting Captain Cook would do the same; which he readily submitted to, being determined to follow Koah's directions throughout the whole of this ceremony.

We were now conveyed into the other division of the Morai, where a space, of about twelve feet square, was sunk three feet below the level of the area. We descended into this, and the Commodore was immediately seated between two idols; one of his arms being supported by Koah, and Mr King was requested to support the other. A second procession of natives, at this time, arrived with a baked hog, a pudding, some coconuts, bread-fruit, and other vegetables. As they drew near, Kaireekēea placed himself before them, and presented the hog to the Commodore, in the usual manner; chanting as before, and his companions making regular responses. Their speeches and responses, we observed, grew gradually shorter and shorter, and, towards the conclusion, Kaireekēea's did not exceed three or four words, which was answered by the word *orano*.

At the conclusion of this offering, the natives seated themselves fronting us, and began to cut up the baked hog, to break the coconuts, and to peel the vegetables. Others were employed in brewing the *ava*, by chewing it in the same manner as at the Friendly Island. Kaireekēea then chewed part of the kernel of a cocoa-nut, and wrapped it in a piece of cloth, with which he rubbed the Captain's head, face, hands, arms, and shoulders. The

ava

ava was
tasted
in piec
mouth
fed by
person
sented
hog be
man, fr
his relu

This
Morai,
of iron,
delight
the boar
nouncin
again r
selves a

We v
what w
dispositi
novelty
occasion
certainly
inhabita
they ap

Mr L
a guard
erect th
means t
might b
venient
village,
in our b
taken d
structed
and we
Morai,
prevent

was afterwards handed round, and when we had all tasted it, Koah and Pareea pulled the flesh of the hog in pieces, and proceeded to put some of it into our mouths. Mr King had no particular objection to being fed by Pareea, who was remarkably cleanly in his person; but Captain Cook, to whom a piece was presented by Koah, could not swallow a morsel, the putrid hog being strong in his recollection; and as the old man, from motives of civility, had chewed it for him, his reluctance was much increased.

This ceremony being concluded, we quitted the *Morai*, after distributing among the populace some pieces of iron, and other articles, with which they were much delighted. We were then conducted, in procession, to the boats; the men, with wands, attending, and pronouncing sentences as before. Most of the natives again retired, and the remaining few prostrated themselves as we passed along the shore.

We went immediately on board, full of the idea of what we had seen, and perfectly satisfied with the honest dispositions of our new friends. Of the singularity and novelty of the various ceremonies performed upon this occasion, we can only form conjectures; but they were certainly highly expressive of respect on the part of the inhabitants; and, as far as related to the Commodore, they approached to adoration.

Mr King went on shore, the next morning, with a guard of eight marines; having received orders to erect the observatory in a proper situation; by which means the waterers, and other working parties, on shore, might be superintended and protected. Observing a convenient spot for this purpose, almost in the center of the village, Pareea immediately offered to exercise his power in our behalf, and proposed that some houses should be taken down, that our observations might not be obstructed. This generous offer, however, was declined, and we made choice of a potatoe field, adjoining to the *Morai*, which was granted us most readily; and, to prevent the intrusion of the natives, the place was consecrated

secrated by the priests, by placing their wands round the wall which inclosed it.

This interdiction the natives called *taboo*, a term frequently repeated by these islanders, and seemed to be a word of extensive operation. In this instance, it procured us more privacy than we could have wished. No canoes attempted to land near us; the natives only sat on the wall, not daring to come within the *tabooed* space without obtaining our permission. The men, indeed, at our request, would bring provisions into the field; but our utmost endeavours were ineffectual to induce the women to approach us. Presents were tried, but without success. Attempts were made to prevail on Pareea and Koah to bring them, but to no purpose: the *Eatooa* and Terreeoboo, they said, would kill them if they did.

This circumstance afforded great amusement to our friends on board, whither multitudes of people (particularly women) continually flocked; insomuch that they were frequently obliged to clear the vessel, in order to have room to perform their necessary duties. Two or three hundred women were sometimes obliged to jump, at once, into the water; where they continued to swim and play till they could be re-admitted.

Pareea and Koah left us on the 19th of January, in order to attend Terreeoboo, who had landed on a distant part of the island; and nothing material happened on board till the 24th. The caulkers were employed on the sides of the ships, and the rigging was repaired. The salting of hogs was also a principal object of the Commodore's attention; and as we had improved in this operation since the former voyages, a detail of the process of it may not be thought improper.

To cure the flesh of animals, in tropical climates, by salting, has long been thought impracticable; putrefaction making so rapid a progress as not to allow the salt to take effect before the meat gets tainted. Captain Cook appears to be the first navigator who has attempted to make experiments relative to this business. His first attempts in 1774, in his second voyage to the Pacific

Ocean,

Ocean,
of the
likely to
visions
to cont
crews.
He, the
guine e

The
to ten
They w
after sca
hog was
and the
larger f
were th
gulated
were gi
and, wh
heap on
pressed
they we
suspicion
were pu
were ex
ed that a
be disco
stantly t
being p
often ha
mined f
sed, they
salt betw
rels of t
January
sons, abo
fectly so

But to
long sett

Vol. II

Ocean, so far succeeded, as to convince him of the error of the general opinion. As his present voyage was likely to be protracted a year beyond the time that provisions had been supplied for the ships, he was obliged to contrive some method of procuring subsistence for the crews, or relinquish the prosecution of his discoveries. He, therefore, renewed his attempts, and his most sanguine expectations were completely answered.

The hogs we cured were of various sizes, from four to ten or twelve stone, fourteen pound to the stone. They were always slaughtered in the afternoon; and, after scalding off the hair, and removing the entrails, the hog was cut into pieces, from four to eight pounds each, and the bones taken out of the legs and chine; in the larger sort, the ribs were also taken out. The pieces were then carefully examined and wiped, and the coagulated blood taken from the veins. After this they were given to the salters whilst they continued warm, and, when they were well rubbed with salt, placed in a heap on a stage in the open air, covered with planks, and pressed with very heavy weights. The next evening they were again well wiped and examined, when the suspicious parts were taken away. This done, they were put into a tub of strong pickle, after which they were examined once or twice a day; and, if it happened that any piece had not taken the salt, which might be discovered by the smell of the pickle, they were instantly taken out and examined again, the sound pieces being put into fresh pickle. This, however, did not often happen. At the end of six days, they were examined for the last time; and, after being slightly pressed, they were put into barrels, having a thin layer of salt between them. Mr King brought home some barrels of this pork, that had been pickled at Owhyhee, in January 1779, which was tasted here, by several persons, about Christmas 1780, who declared it to be perfectly sound and wholesome.

But to return from this digression. We had not been long settled at the observatory, before we discovered the

habitations of a society of priests, who had excited our curiosity by their regular attendance at the morai. Their huts were erected round a pond, inclosed within a grove of cocoa-trees, by which they were separated from the beach and the village, and gave the situation an air of religious retirement. Captain Cook being made acquainted with these circumstances, he was determined to visit them; and, expecting the manner of his reception would be singular, he took Mr Webber with him, to enable him to represent the ceremony in a drawing.

When he arrived at the beach, he was conducted to *Harre-no-Orono*, or the house of Orono. On his approaching this sacred place, he was seated at the foot of a wooden idol, resembling those which we had seen at the morai. Here Mr King again supported one of his arms. He was then arrayed in red cloth, and Kairee-keea, assisted by twelve priests, presented a pig with the usual solemnities. After this ceremony, the pig was strangled, and thrown into the embers of a fire, prepared for that purpose. When the hair was singed off, a second offering was made, and the chanting repeated as before; after which, the dead pig was held, for some time, under Captain Cook's nose; and then laid, with a cocoa-nut, at his feet. This part of the ceremony being concluded, the performers sat down; and the *awa* was brewed and handed about; a baked hog was brought in, and we were fed, as in the former ceremony.

While we continued on the bay, whenever the Commodore came on shore, he was preceded by one of these priests, who proclaimed the landing of the *Orono*, and ordered the inhabitants to prostrate themselves. He was constantly attended by the same person, on the water, where he was stationed in the bow of the boat, having a wald in his hand, to give notice of his approach to the natives, who were in canoes; on which they instantly ceased paddling, and fell on their faces till he had passed. Whenever he visited the observa-

tory,

tory,
befor
cocoa
these
perm
quest
selves
ces d
awe a
and a
hymn

But
remor
them
sistenc
fions,
was de
ever g
manne
dischan
liberali
all this
the exp
to Kair
of the i

We
behavio
priests.
always
besides
of pallia
other an
one inst
our goo

The
ways ge
we were
On the
usually

tory, Kaireekkea and his assistants presented themselves before him, making an offering of hogs, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, &c. with the accustomed solemnities. Upon these occasions, some of the inferior chiefs entreated permission to make an offering to the *Orono*. If their request was complied with, they presented the hog themselves; in the performance of which, their countenances displayed that they were greatly impressed with awe and terror. Kaireekkea, and the priests assisted, and accompanied the ceremony with their accustomed hymns.

But their civilities extended beyond parade and ceremony; our party, on shore, were daily supplied by them with hogs and vegetables, sufficient for our subsistence, and to spare; and canoes laden with provisions, were as regularly sent off to the ships. Nothing was demanded in return, nor was the most distant hint ever given that any compensation was expected. Their manner of conferring favours, appeared more like the discharge of a religious duty, than to result from mere liberality. On asking to whom we were indebted for all this munificence, we were informed, that it was at the expence of Kaoo, the chief priest, and grandfather to Kaireekkea, who was then in the suite of the sovereign of the island.

We had, indeed, less reason to be satisfied with the behaviour of the warrior chiefs, than with that of the priests. In our intercourse with the former, they were always sufficiently attentive to their own interests; and, besides their propensity to stealing, which may admit of palliation from its universality in these seas, they had other artifices equally dishonourable. The following is one instance, in which we discovered, with regret, that our good friend Koah was a party principally concerned.

The chiefs, who made us presents of hogs, were always generously rewarded; in consequence of which, we were supplied with more than we could consume. On these occasions, Koah, who constantly attended us, usually petitioned for those that we did not absolutely

want,

want, and they were given to him of course. A pig was, one day, presented to us by a man whom Koah introduced as a chief; which we knew to be the pig that had, a short time before, been given to Koah. Suspecting we had been imposed upon, we found, on further inquiry, that the pretended chief was one of the common people; and, from other concurrent circumstances, we were perfectly convinced that, in many instances, we had been the dupes of similar imposition.

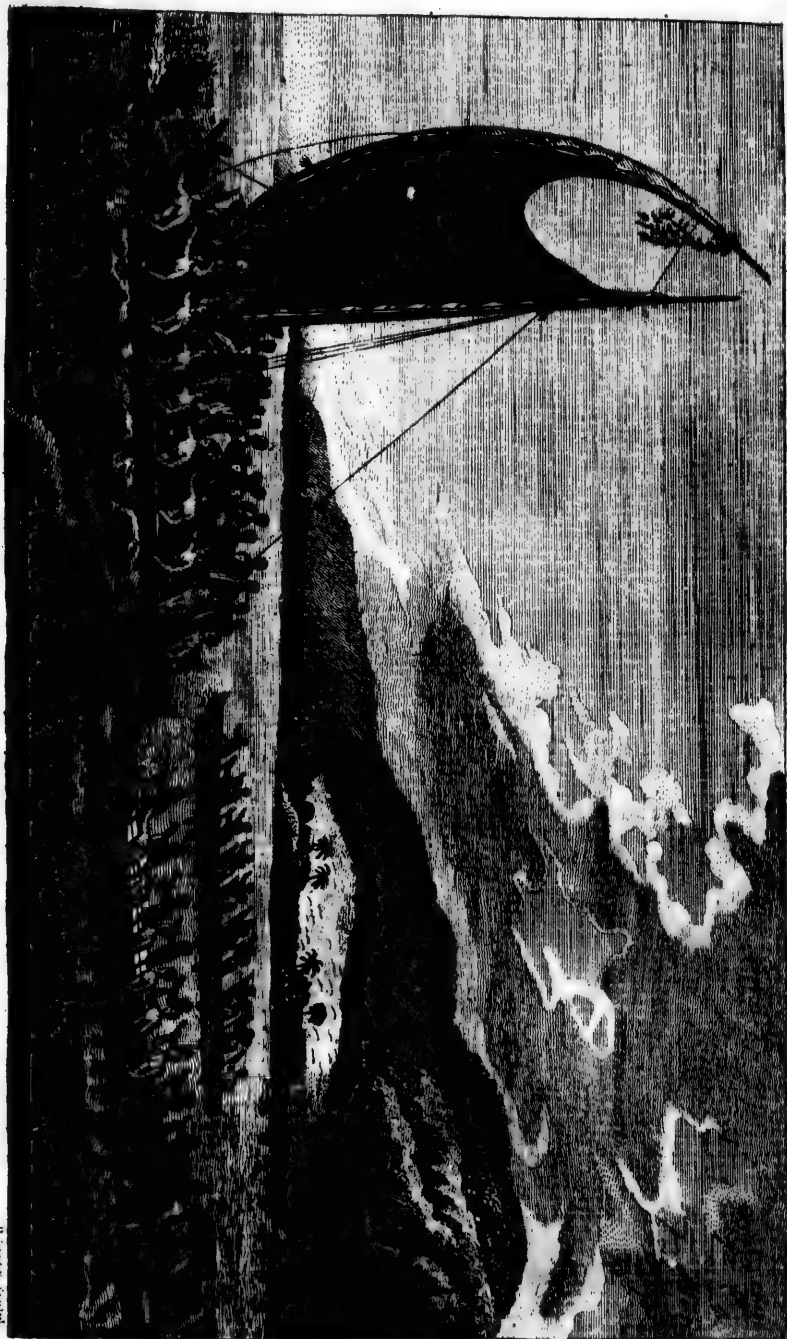
On Sunday the 24th, we were not a little surprized to find, that no canoes were permitted to put off, and that the natives confined themselves to their houses. At length however, we were informed, that the bay was *taboed*, and that all intercourse with us was interdicted, on account of the arrival of Terreehoo their king. Not apprehending an accident of this kind, the ships were deprived of their usual supply of vegetables.

On Monday the 25th, in the morning, we endeavoured, by threats and promises, to induce the inhabitants to approach us. At length, some of them were venturing to put off, and a chief was observed to be very active in driving them away. In order to make him desist, a musquet was instantly fired over his head, which operated as it was intended, and refreshments were soon after to be had as usual. In the afternoon, the ships were privately visited by Terreeoboo, attended only by one canoe, which had his wife and family on board. After staying till almost ten o'clock, he returned to the village of Kowrowa.

About noon the next day, the king, in a large canoe, with some attendants in two others, paddled from the village, in great state, towards the ships. Their appearance was noble and magnificent. Terreeoboo, and his chiefs, were in the first canoe, arrayed in feathered cloaks and helmets, and armed with spears and daggers. In the second, came Kaoo, the chief priest, together with his brethren, having their idols displayed on red cloth. These idols were figures of an enormous size, made of wicker-work, and curiously ornamented with small

E.
 . A pig
 om Koah
 e the pig
 to Koah.
 found, on
 one of the
 at circum-
 many in-
 position.
 rprized to
 , and that
 uses. At
 e bay was
 terdicted,
 heir king.
 the ships
 les.
 we endea-
 ne inhabi-
 them were
 to be very
 make him
 ead, which
 were soon
 the ships
 ed only by
 on board.
 eturned to

arge canoe,
 d from the
 Their ap-
 eoboo, and
 n feathered
 nd daggers.
 , together
 yed on red
 rmous size,
 ented with
 small



Cook's Voyages

small
large
a do
their
appe
lader
prief
great
did r
medi
were

W
our l
seeing
also, a
them
when
shoul
placee
a cur
beaut
feet.

Fou
attend
fugar-
boo's c
pledge
Pacific
consist
sonage
hogs ;
We co
gesture
the pro
we we
a piece
and, in
was the

small feathers of a variety of colours. Their eyes were large pearl oysters, with a black nut placed in the centre; a double row of the fangs of dogs was fixed in each of their mouths, which, as well as the rest of their features, appeared strangely distorted. The third canoe was laden with hogs and vegetables. As they advanced, the priests, in the second canoe, chanted their hymns with great solemnity. After paddling round the vessels, they did not come on board, as we expected, but made immediately towards the shore, at the beach where we were stationed.

When Mr King beheld them approaching, he ordered our little guard to receive the king; and Captain Cook, seeing that he intended to go on shore, went thither also, and landed almost at the same instant. We ushered them into the tent, and the king had hardly been seated, when he rose up, and gracefully threw over the Captain's shoulders, the rich feathered cloak that he himself wore, placed a helmet on his head, and presented him with a curious fan. Five or six curious cloaks, of great beauty and value, were spread at the Commodore's feet.

Four hogs were then brought forward by the king's attendants, together with bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and sugar-canes. Then followed the ceremony of Terreeo-hoo's changing names with Captain Cook; the strongest pledge of friendship among all the islanders of the Pacific Ocean. A solemn procession now advanced, consisting of priests, preceded by a venerable old personage, followed by a train of people leading large hogs; others being laden with potatoes, plantains, &c. We could instantly perceive, by the countenance and gestures of Kaireekaea, that the old man who headed the procession, was the chief priest, on whose bounty we were told we had so long subsisted. He wrapped a piece of red cloth round the shoulders of Capt. Cook, and, in the usual form, presented him with a pig. He was then seated next the king, and Kaireekaea, and his attendants

attendants began their vocal ceremonies, Kaoo and the chiefs assisting in the responses.

In the person of this king, we were surprized to recognize the same emaciated old man, who came on board the Resolution, from the N. E. side of the island of Mowee; and we perceived, that several of his attendants were the same persons who, at that time, continued with us the whole night. Among these were the king's two youngest sons, the eldest about the age of sixteen; and Maiha-Maiha, his nephew, whom we could not immediately recollect, having had his hair plastered over with a dirty paste and powder, which was no bad improvement to the most savage countenance we had ever seen.

The formalities of the meeting being ended, Captain Cook conducted Terreeboo, and several of his chiefs, on board the Resolution. They were received with every possible attention and respect; and, the Commodore, as a compensation for the feathered cloak, put a linen shirt upon the sovereign, and girt his own hanger round him. Kaoo, and about half a dozen other ancient chiefs, remained on shore.

All this time, not a canoe was permitted to appear in the bay, and those natives who did not confine themselves to their huts, lay prostrate on the ground. Before the king quitted the Resolution, he granted leave for the natives to trade with the ships, as usual; but the women (we know not on what account) were still interdicted by the *taboo*; that is, to remain at home, and not have any kind of intercourse with us.

The

T
totally
at all
hesitat
count
contin
stances
upon
places,
every
gratified
Variety
notice,
ran thro
opening

The Civility and Hospitality of the Natives—Much addicted to thieving—Their Alacrity in conducting a Party of us up the Country—A Boxing-Match described—Death of William Watman, a Seaman—Attention of the Priests at his Funeral—Ceremony of the Natives at his Funeral—A Grave-Stone erected—The Rail and Images on the Morai purchased—The Natives very inquisitive about our Departure—What they supposed to be the object of our Voyage—Entertained by the Buffoonery of one of the Natives—Magnificent Presents from Terreeoboo—The Natives regret our Departure—Wish to prevail on Mr King to remain amongst them—The Vessels quit the Island—The Resolution damaged in a Gale of Wind, and obliged to return.

THE behaviour of the inhabitants was so civil and inoffensive, that all apprehensions of danger were totally vanished. We trusted ourselves amongst them at all times, and upon all occasions, without the least hesitation. The officers ventured frequently up the country, either singly, or in small parties, and sometimes continued out the whole night. To relate all the instances of generosity and civility, which we experienced upon these occasions, would require volumes. In all places, the people flocked about us, anxious to afford every assistance in their power, and appeared highly gratified if we condescended to accept of their services. Variety of innocent arts were practised to attract our notice, or to delay our departure. The boys and girls ran through their villages before us, stopping us at every opening, where there was a commodious place to form

a group for dancing. We were, at one time, solicited to take a draught of the milk of cocoa nuts, or accept of such other refreshment as their huts afforded; at another we were encircled by a company of young women, who exerted their skill and agility in amusing us with songs and dances.

But though their gentleness and hospitality were pleasing to us, they were addicted to stealing, like all the other islanders of these seas. This was a distressing circumstance, and sometimes obliged us to exercise severity, which we should have been happy to have avoided, if it had not been essentially necessary. Some expert swimmers were one day detected under the ships, drawing out the filling nails from the sheathing, which they ingeniously performed with a flint stone, fastened to the end of a short stick. This practice was so injurious to our vessels, that we fired small shot at the offenders; but that they easily evaded, by diving under the ship's bottom. It therefore became highly necessary to make an example of one of them, by flogging him on board the *Discovery*.

A large party of gentlemen, from both ships, set out, about this time, on an excursion into the country, in order to examine its natural productions; an account of which will be hereafter given. At present, however, we shall observe, that it afforded Kaoa a fresh opportunity of exercising his civility and generosity. No sooner was he informed of their departure, than he sent after them a large quantity of provisions, with orders, that every assistance should be granted them by the inhabitants of those districts through which they were to pass. His conduct, on this occasion, was so delicate and disinterested, that even the people he employed were not permitted to accept of the smallest present. At the end of six days, the gentlemen returned, without having penetrated more than twenty miles into the island; owing partly to improper guides, and partly to the impracticability of the country.

On the 27th, the *Resolution's* rudder was unhung, and

and
pair.
the c
ple, t
come

Ca
by ill
at his
with
Capt
sent o
tables
a wee
quite

Not
native
evenin
were i
hibited
what c
though

A va
of grou
space w
which
of slot
standa
small b

The
signal,
advanc
hind, a
came f
head to
the spe
a vari
advanc
arms f
always

Vol.

and sent on shore, in order to undergo a thorough repair. The carpenters, at the same time, were sent into the country, under the guidance of some of Kaoo's people, to get planks for the head rail work, which was become rotten and decayed.

Captain Clerke, who was generally confined on board by ill health, paid Terreeoboo his first visit on the 28th, at his habitation on shore. The ceremonies observed with Captain Cook, were performed in honour of Captain Clerke; and, on his return, he received a present of thirty large hogs, and such a quantity of vegetables as could not be consumed, by his crew, in less than a week. This was the more extraordinary, as it was quite an unexpected visit.

Not having seen any of their sports or exercises, the natives, at our particular request, entertained us in the evening with a boxing match. Though these games were inferior, in every respect, to those we had seen exhibited at the Friendly Islands; yet, as they were somewhat different, a short account of them may not be thought improper.

A vast concourse of people assembled on an even spot of ground, not far distant from our tents. A long vacant space was left in the centre of them, at the upper end of which the judges presided, under three standards. Slips of cloth, of various colours, were pendant from these standards; as were the skins of two wild geese, some small birds, and a few bunches of feathers.

The sports being ready to begin, the judges gave the signal, and two combatants appeared in view. They advanced slowly, drawing up their feet very high behind, and rubbing their hands upon the soles. As they came forward, they frequently surveyed each other from head to foot, with an air of contempt, looking archly at the spectators, distorting their features, and practising a variety of unnatural gestures. When they were advanced within the reach of each other, they held both arms straight out before their faces, at which part they always aimed their blows. They struck with a full

swing of the arm, which to us had a very awkward appearance. They did not attempt to parry; but endeavoured to elude their adversary's attack, by stooping, or retreating. The battle was expeditiously decided; for if either of them fell, whether by accident, or from a blow, he was deemed vanquished; and the victor expressed his triumph by a variety of strange gestures, which usually excited a loud laugh among the spectators, for which purpose it seemed to be calculated. The successful combatant waited for a second antagonist; and, if again victorious, for a third; and so on, till he was at last defeated.

It was very singular, in these combats, that, when any two are preparing to attack each other, a third may advance, and make choice of either of them for his antagonist, when the other is under the necessity of withdrawing. If the combat proved long and tedious, or appeared unequal, a chief generally interfered, and concluded it by putting a stick between the combatants. As this exhibition was at our desire, it was universally expected that some of us would have engaged with the natives, but though our people received pressing invitations to bear a part, they did not hearken to the challenges, not having forgot the blows they received at the Friendly Islands.

William Watman, a seaman of the gunner's crew, died this day: this event is the more particularly mentioned, as death had hitherto been uncommon amongst us. He was a man in years, and much respected for his attachment to Captain Cook. He had served twenty-one years as a marine, and then entered as a seaman in 1772, on board the *Resolution*, and served with the Commodore in his voyage towards the south pole. On their return, he got admittance into Greenwich Hospital, through the interest of Captain Cook, at the same time with himself; and, anxious to follow the fortunes of his benefactor, he also quitted it with him, on his appointment to the command of the present expedition. He had been often subject to slight fevers, in the course

of

of the
bay;
he the
return
the d
in tw

At
nest
being
breth
great
was p
they a
pig, t
three
hogs,

We
ed the
name
ture f
not re
main,

Our
tain C
the p
his do
hende
pious
expre
wood
While
them
forme
deferi

Th
they
even
per t
exce

of the voyage, and was infirm when he arrived in the bay; where, having been sent for a few days on shore, he thought himself perfectly restored, and requested to return on board. His request was complied with; but the day following he had a stroke of the palsy, which in two days afterwards, put a period to his life.

At the request of Terreeoboo, the remains of this honest seaman were buried in the morai; the ceremony being performed with great solemnity. Kaoo and his brethren were present at the funeral, who behaved with great decorum, and paid due attention while the service was performing. On our beginning to fill up the grave, they approached it with great awe, and threw in a dead pig, together with some cocoa-nuts and plantains. For three successive nights they surrounded it, sacrificing hogs, and reciting hymns and prayers till morning.

We erected a post at the head of the grave, and nailed thereon a piece of board; on which was inscribed the name and age of the deceased, and the day of his departure from this life. These they assured us they would not remove, and they will probably be permitted to remain, so long as such frail materials can endure.

Our ships were much in want of fuel, therefore Captain Cook desired Mr King to treat with the priests, for the purchase of the rail on the morai. Mr King had his doubts about the decency of this overture, and apprehended that the bare mention of it might be deemed impious; but in this he was exceedingly mistaken. They expressed no kind of surprize at the application, and the wood was delivered without the least stipulation. Whilst our people were taking it away, he saw one of them with a carved image; and, upon inquiry, was informed, that the whole semicircle (as mentioned in the description of the morai) had been carried to the boats.

Though the natives were spectators of this business, they did not seem to resent it; but, on the contrary, had even assisted in the removal. Mr King thought proper to mention the particulars to Kaoo; who seemed exceedingly indifferent about the matter, begging him

only

only to restore the center image ; which was immediately done, and it was conveyed to one of the priest's houses.

The king, and his chiefs, had, for some time, been very importunate to know the time of our departure. Mr King's curiosity was excited, from this circumstance, to know the opinion these people had entertained of us, and what they supposed to be the objects of our voyage. He took considerable pains to satisfy himself on these points ; but the only information he could get was, that they supposed we had left our native country on account of the scantiness of provisions, and that we had visited them for the sole purpose of filling our bellies. This conclusion was natural enough, considering the meagre appearance of some of our crew, the voracity with which we devoured their fresh provisions, and our anxiety to purchase as much of it as we were able. One circumstance may be added to these, which puzzled them exceedingly ; that of our having no women with us.

It was matter of entertainment to see the natives patting the bellies of the sailors (who were much improved in sleekness since their arrival at the bay) and telling them, in the best manner they could, that it was time for them to depart ; but, if they would return the next bread-fruit season, they should be better able to supply them. We had now continued sixteen days in the bay, during which time our consumption of hogs and vegetables had been so enormous, that we need not be surprized at their wishing to see us take our leave. But Terreeoboo had, perhaps, no other view, in his enquires, than a desire of having sufficient notice, to prepare suitable presents for us at our departure ; for, when we informed him of our intention to quit the island in two days, a kind of proclamation was immediately made, requiring the natives to bring in their hogs and vegetables, for Terreeoboo to present to the *Orono*.

At the beach, we were this day much entertained, with the buffooneries of one of the natives. In his hand

he

he held
describ
neck ;
which
loose.
grimac
which,
the wh
made a
the ma
the orn

Wre
sion for
few fire
effectua
strike th
than suc
respect,
nishmen

The c
to cut p
had now
from the
We exp
peared
we were
per perf
went far
they fou
circumst
the diffic
so long c
dations c
with pro

The 4
Terreeob
tend him
rival the
on the g

he held an instrument of music, such as we have already described; bits of sea-weed were fastened round his neck; and, round each leg, some strong netting; on which were fixed some rows of dogs teeth, hanging loose. His dancing was accompanied with strange grimaces, and unnatural distortions of the features; which, though sometimes highly ridiculous, was upon the whole, without meaning or expression. Mr Webber made a drawing of this person; the manner in which the maro is tied; the figure of the instrument, and of the ornaments round the legs.

Wrestling and boxing matches afforded us diversion for the evening; and we, in return, exhibited the few fireworks we had remaining. Nothing could more effectually excite the admiration of these islanders, or strike them with more exalted ideas of our superiority, than such a representation. Though this was, in every respect, much inferior to that at Hapaee, yet the astonishment of the people was equally great.

The carpenters which had been sent up the country, to cut planks for the head rail-work of the Resolution, had now been gone three days; and, not having heard from them, we began to be alarmed for their safety. We expressed our apprehensions to old Kaoo, who appeared equally concerned with ourselves; but while we were planning measures with him, for sending proper persons after them, they all safely arrived. They went farther into the country than they expected, before they found any trees suitable for their purpose. This circumstance, together with the badness of the roads, and the difficulty of conveying the timber to the ships, had so long detained them. They bestowed high commendations on their guides, who not only supplied them with provisions, but faithfully protected their tools.

The 4th of February being fixed for our departure, Terreeoboo invited Captain Cook and Mr King, to attend him, on the 3d, to Kaoo's residence. On our arrival there, we saw large quantities of cloth lie scattered on the ground; abundance of red and yellow feathers, fastened

fastened to the fibres of cocoa-nut husks ; and plenty of hatchets and iron ware, which had been received from us in barter. Not far from these was deposited an immense quantity of various kinds of vegetables ; and, at a little distance, a large herd of hogs. We supposed, at first, that the whole was intended as a present for us ; but we were informed, by Kaireekaea, that it was a tribute to the king, from the inhabitants of that district. And, we were no sooner seated, than the bundles were brought, and laid severally at Terreeoboo's feet ; and the cloth, feathers, and iron, were displayed before him.

The king was perfectly satisfied with this mark of duty from his people ; and selected about a third of the iron utensils, a third of the feathers, and some pieces of cloth ; he ordered these to be set aside by themselves ; and the remainder of the cloth, hogs, vegetables, &c. were afterwards presented to Captain Cook and Mr King. The value and magnitude of this present, far exceeded any thing that we had met with. The whole was immediately conveyed on board. The large hogs were selected, in order to be salted for sea store ; but the smaller pigs, and the vegetables, were divided between the crews.

We left the morai, and got our observatories on board. The *taboo* was removed, and, with it, its magical effects. As soon as we had quitted the place, the people rushed in, and vigilantly searched ; hoping to find some valuable articles left behind. Mr King being the last on shore, and waiting for the return of the boat, the inhabitants crowded about him, and having prevailed on him to sit down among them, expressed their regret at our separation. It was even with difficulty that they would suffer him to depart. He was, indeed, highly esteemed among them, as will appear from the following relation.

Having had, while we were in the bay, the command of the party on shore, he became more acquainted with the natives, and they with him, than those who were required to be on board. He experienced great kind-

kind
but th
unbou

He
he so l
ed wit
main l
ing kin
alledgi
propo
concea
King's
withou
Cook,
request
The C
to a pro
he coul
thither
lige the

On T
ing, we
sailed on
noea.
vey of
hoping
kakooa
meant to
had been

On th
weather,
A great
noes ; an
effeem fe
present o
Havin
bruary, v
on the 6
bay, whi

kindness and civility from the inhabitants in general, but the friendship shewn by the priests was constant and unbounded.

He was anxious to conciliate their esteem; in which he so happily succeeded, that, when they were acquainted with the time of our departure, he was urged to remain behind, and received overtures of the most flattering kind. When he endeavoured to excuse himself, by alledging, that Captain Cook would not permit it, they proposed to conduct him to the mountains, and there conceal him till the departure of the ships. On Mr King's assuring them, that the Captain would not sail without him, the king and Kaoo repaired to Captain Cook, (whom they supposed to be his father) formally requesting that he might be suffered to remain behind. The Commodore, unwilling to give a positive refusal, to a proposal so generously intended, assured them, that he could not then part with him; but he should return thither the next year, when he would endeavour to oblige them.

On Thursday the 4th of February, early in the morning, we unmoored, and the *Resolution* and *Discovery* sailed out of the bay; attended by a vast number of canoes. It was Captain Cook's intention to finish the survey of Owhyhee, before he went to the other islands, hoping to meet with a road more sheltered than Karakooa Bay; and, if he should not succeed here, he meant to examine the S. E. part of Mowee, where he had been informed, there was a most excellent harbour.

On the 5th, and the following day, we had calm weather, and consequently our progress was but slow. A great number of the natives followed us in their canoes; and Terreeoboo gave an additional proof of his esteem for the Commodore, by sending after him a large present of hogs and vegetables.

Having a light breeze, in the night of the 5th of February, we made some progress to the northward; and, on the 6th, in the morning, we were abreast of a deep bay, which the natives call Tee-yah-yah. We flattered our-

ourselves with hopes of finding a commodious harbour in this bay, as we saw some fine streams of water to the N. E. and the whole appeared to be well sheltered. These observations seeming to tally with the accounts given us by Koah, who now accompanied Captain Cook, the Master was sent in the pinnace, with Koah as his guide, to observe and examine the bay; Koah having first altered his name, out of compliment to us, to that of Britannee.

The weather became gloomy in the afternoon, and such violent gusts of wind blew off the land, that we were obliged to take in all the sails, and bring to, under the mizen-stay-sail. The canoes all left us as soon as the gale began; and Mr Bligh, on his return, preserved an old woman and two men from drowning, whose canoe had been overfet in the storm. We had several women remaining on board, whom the natives, in their hurry to depart, had left to shift for themselves.

Mr Bligh reported, that he had landed at a village on the north side of the bay, where he was shewn some wells of water, that would not, by any means, answer our purpose; that he proceeded further into the bay; where, instead of meeting with good anchorage, he found the shores were low, and a flat bed of coral rocks extended along the coast, and upwards of a mile from the land; the depth of water, on the outside, being twenty fathoms. During this survey, Britannee had contrived to slip away, being, perhaps, afraid of returning, as his information had proved erroneous.

The weather became more moderate in the evening, and we again made sail; but it blew so violently about midnight, as to split the fore and main-top-sails. We bent fresh sails in the morning of the 7th, and had a light breeze, and fair weather. Being now about four or five leagues from the shore, and the weather very unsettled, the canoes would not venture off, so that our guests were under the necessity of remaining with us, though much against their inclination; for they were

all

and
wh
the
mus
quit
prie
as w
tions
foun
cutte
Com
to pu
of the
villag
alarm
impos
ple, a
to con
King,
to Te
both h
this af
Cap
the lau
with h
nine
villag
ple, as
making
Perceiv
step wa
sons, v
board
with th
immed
where
awoke
of the
vinced t
Vol. II

and Mr King proceeded to the beach : his first business, when he arrived on shore, was to issue strict orders to the marines to continue within the tent, to charge their muskets with ball, and not on any consideration, to quit their arms. He then attended old Kaoo and the priests at their respective huts, and explained to them, as well as he was able, the reason of the hostile preparations, which had so exceedingly alarmed them. He found they were no strangers to the circumstance of the cutter's being stolen, and assured them, that though the Commodore was not only resolved to recover it, but also to punish, in the most exemplary manner, the authors of the theft; yet that they, and all the inhabitants of the village, on our side, had not the least occasion to be alarmed, or to apprehend the least danger from us. He importuned the priests to communicate this to the people, and intreat them not to entertain an idea of fear, but to continue peaceable and quiet. Kaoo interrogated Mr King, with great emotion, if any harm was to happen to Terrecoboo? He assured him there was not; and both he and his brethren appeared much satisfied with this assurance.

Captain Cook, having in the mean time, called off the launch, from the N. point of the bay, and taken it with him, landed at Kowrowa, with the lieutenant and nine marines. He proceeded immediately into the village, where he was respectfully received; the people, as usual, prostrating themselves before him, and making their accustomed offerings of small hogs. Perceiving that his design was not suspected, his next step was to inquire for the king, and the two boys, his sons, who had been almost continually his guests on board the Resolution. The boys presently returned with the natives, who had been searching for them, and immediately conducted Captain Cook to the habitation where Terrecoboo had slept. The old man had just awoke; and after some conversation respecting the loss of the cutter, from which the Commodore was convinced that he was not in any wise privy to it, he invited

him to accompany him, and spend the day on board the *Resolution*. The king accepted the invitation, and arose immediately to accompany him.

Every thing had now a prosperous appearance ; the two boys were already in the pinnace, and the rest of the party approaching the water side, when a woman, named Kanee-kabareea, the mother of the boys, and one of Terreeoboo's favourite wives, followed him, beseeching him, with tears and entreaties, not to venture to go on board. Two chiefs, who came with her, took hold of him, and insisting he should proceed no farther, obliged him to sit down. The islanders, now collecting in vast numbers along the shore, who had probably been alarmed by the discharging of the great guns, and the hostile appearances in the bay, gathered together round Captain Cook and Terreeoboo. Thus situated, the lieutenant of marines, perceiving that his men were huddled together in the crowd, and consequently unable to use their arms, if there should appear to be a necessity for it, proposed to Captain Cook, to draw them up along the rocks, close to the edge of the water. The populace making way for them to pass, the lieutenant drew them up in a line ; within about thirty yards of the place where Terreeoboo was sitting.

The old king continued, all this time, on the ground, bearing the most visible marks of terror and dejection in his countenance. Captain Cook, unwilling to abandon the object which occasioned him to come ashore, urged him most earnestly to proceed ; whilst, on the other hand, if the king expressed any inclination to follow him, the chiefs, who surrounded him, interposed ; at first, they had recourse to prayers and entreaties, but afterwards to force and violence, and even insisted on his remaining on shore. Captain Cook, at length, perceiving that the alarm had spread too generally, and that there was not a probability of getting him off without much bloodshed, gave up the point ; at the same observing, to Mr Phillips, that, to compel him to go on board,

board, v
lives of

Notw
was aba
that his
accident
affair. T
some ca
had kille
his deat
then wa
proceedi
The fer
conspicu
sent awa
mats, an
natives
long iron
towards
and thre
quested
menaces,
small sho
mat, wh
therefore
Vollies o
of the cr
pabooa ;
from him
tain Coc
loaded w
the affail
which w
quetry,
people in
ment, re
out givin
rushed i
What fo

board, would probably occasion the loss of many of the lives of the inhabitants.

Notwithstanding this enterprize had now failed, and was abandoned by Captain Cook, yet it did not appear that his person was in the least degree of danger, till an accident happened, which occasioned a fatal turn to the affair. The boats, stationed across the bay, having fired at some canoes, for attempting to get out, unfortunately had killed one of their principal chiefs. Intelligence of his death arrived at the village where Captain Cook then was, just as he had parted from the king, and was proceeding with great deliberation towards the shore. The ferment it immediately occasioned, was but too conspicuous; the women and children were instantly sent away, and the men were soon clad in their war-mats, and armed with spears and stones. One of the natives having provided himself with a stone, and a long iron spike (called by the natives a *pabooa*) advanced towards the Captain, flourishing his weapon in defiance, and threatening to throw the stone. The Captain requested him to desist; but the islander repeating his menaces, he was highly provoked, and fired a load of small shot at him. The man was shielded in his war-mat, which the shot could not penetrate; his firing, therefore, served only to irritate and encourage them. Volleys of stones were thrown at the marines; and one of the *crees* attempted the life of Mr Phillips with his *pabooa*; but, not succeeding in the attempt, he received from him a blow with the butt end of his piece. Captain Cook immediately discharged his second barrel, loaded with ball, and killed one of the most violent of the assailants. A general attack with stones succeeded, which was followed on our part, by a discharge of musquetry, not only from the marines, but also from the people in the boats. The natives, to our great astonishment, received our fire with great firmness; and without giving time for the marines to charge again, they rushed in upon them with dreadful shouts and yells. What followed was a scene of horror and confusion,

which can more easily be conceived than properly related.

Four of the marines retreated among the rocks, and fell a sacrifice to the fury of the enemy; three others were dangerously wounded; and the Lieutenant stabbed between the shoulders with a *pahoa*; but having fortunately reserved his fire, shot the man from whom he had received the wound, at the instant he was preparing to repeat his blow. The last time our unfortunate Commodore was distinctly seen, he was standing at the water's edge, and ordering the boats to cease firing, and pull in.

It was imagined by some of those who were present, that the marines, and those who were in the boats, fired without Captain Cook's orders, and that he was anxious to prevent the farther effusion of blood; it is therefore probable, that, on this occasion, his humanity proved fatal to him: for it was observed, that while he faced the natives, no violence had been offered him; but, when he turned about, to give directions to the boats, he was stabbed in the back, and fell with his face into the water. A general shout was set up by the islanders on seeing him fall, and his body was dragged inhumanly on shore, where he was surrounded by the enemy, who snatching the dagger from each other's hands, displayed a savage eagerness to join in his destruction.

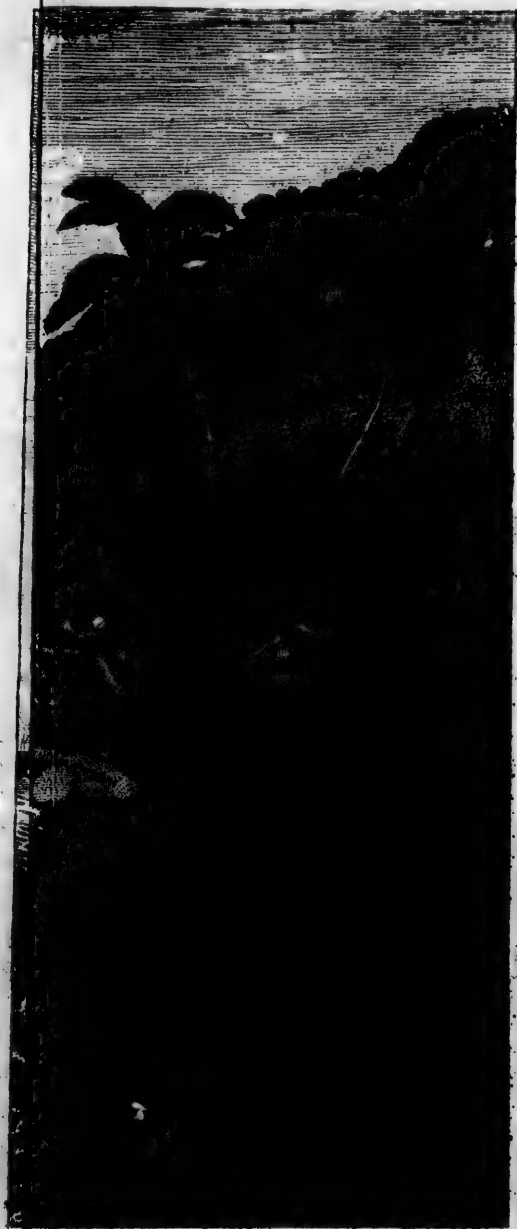
Such was the fate of our most excellent Commander! After a life, distinguished by such successful enterprise, his death can hardly be reckoned premature; since he lived to accomplish the great work for which he seemed particularly designed; being rather removed from the enjoyment, than the acquisition of glory. How sincerely his loss was lamented, by those who owed their security to his skill and conduct, and every consolation, to his tenderness and humanity, it is impossible to describe; and the task would be equally difficult to represent the horror, dejection, and dismay, which followed so dreadful and unexpected a catastrophe.

ly re-
s, and
others
stab-
having
whom
s pre-
nfortu-
anding
ceale

resent,
s, fired
nxious
erefore
proved
e faced
; but,
boats,
ce into
landers
manly
y, who
played

ander!
enter-
ature;
which
moved
How
d their
blation,
to de-
repre-
llowed

r The



OWHYHEE in 1779



THE DEATH of CAPTAIN JAMES COOK, F.R.S.



AIN JAMES COOK, F.R.S. at WHYHEE in 1779

o
v
h
f
v
b
h
p
n
a
f
t
w
t
p
f
t
w
h
t
o
f
a
A
p
h
f
f
t
f
f

Tr

I
illa
Lie
une
occ
of
he
the
wa

✧ The remaining Part of the Voyage is written

BY CAPTAIN KING.

Transactions at Owhyhee, subsequent to Captain Cook's Death—Bravery of Mr Phillips—Situation of the Party at the Morai—Bravery of one of the Natives—Various Skirmishes—A Piece of Captain Cook's Flesh brought—The Village of Kakooa burned by our People—The Bones of Captain Cook brought to us—They are committed to the Deep—The Ships leave Karakakooa Bay—Proceed to Woahoa—Disappointed in attempting to water, proceed to Atooi—The Natives not so friendly as before—Their great Insolence—Anchor off Oneebeew—General account of the Sandwich Islands.

IT has been already related that four of the marines who attended Captain Cook, were killed by the islanders on the spot. The rest, with Mr Phillips their Lieutenant, threw themselves into the water and escaped, under cover of a smart fire from the boats. On this occasion, a remarkable instance of gallant behaviour, and of affection for his men, was shewn by that officer. For he was scarcely got into the boat, when seeing one of the marines, who was a bad swimmer, struggling in the water, and in danger of being taken by the enemy, he
imme-

immediately jumped into the sea to his assistance, though much wounded himself; and after receiving a blow on the head from a stone, which had nearly sent him to the bottom, he caught the man by the hair, and brought him safe off.

Our people continued for some time to keep up a constant fire from the boats (which during the whole transaction, were not more than twenty yards from the land) in order to afford their unfortunate companions, if any of them should still remain alive, an opportunity of escaping. These efforts, seconded by a few guns that were fired at the same time from the Resolution, having forced the natives at last to retire, a small boat, manned by five of our young midshipmen, pulled toward the shore, where they saw the bodies, without any signs of life, lying on the ground; but judging it dangerous to attempt to bring them off, with so small a force, and their ammunition being nearly expended, they returned to the ships, leaving them in possession of the islands, together with ten stands of arms.

As soon as the general consternation, which the news of this calamity occasioned throughout both crews, had a little subsided, their attention was called to our party at the morai, where the mast and sails were on shore, with a guard of only six marines. It is impossible for me to describe the emotions of my own mind, during the time these transactions had been carrying on, at the other side of the bay. Being at the distance only of a short mile from the village of Kowrowa, we could see distinctly an immense crowd collected on the spot where Captain Cook had just before landed. We heard the firing of the musquetry, and could perceive some extraordinary bustle and agitation in the multitude. We afterwards saw the natives flying, the boats retire from the shore and passing and repassing, in great stillness, between the ships. I must confess that my heart soon misgave me. Where a life so dear and valuable was concerned, it was impossible not to be alarmed, by appearances both new and threatening. But, besides this

I knew
in his
given
always
him to
danger
receiving
perienc

My t
assure t
number
seemed
for wha
moleste
tinuing
this poss
Captain
we were
they me
be fired a
aimed, d
vincing p
cocoa-nu
were sitt
an exact l
the strong
mortified
tion of i
Captain C
y terms
hereafter
would ho
assistance
We exp
impatience
under the
were at le
with order
send th

I knew that a long and uninterrupted course of success, in his transactions with the natives of these seas, had given the Captain a degree of confidence that I was always fearful might, at some unlucky moment, put him too much off his guard; and I now saw all the dangers to which that confidence might lead, without receiving much consolation from considering the experience that had given rise to it.

My first care, on hearing the musquets fired, was to assure the people, who were assembled in considerable numbers round the wall of our consecrated field, and seemed equally at a loss with ourselves how to account for what they had seen and heard, that they should not be molested; and that, at all events, I was desirous of continuing on peaceable terms with them. We remained in this posture till the boats had returned on board, when Captain Clerke, observing through his telescope that we were surrounded by the natives, and apprehending they meant to attack us, ordered two four-pounders to be fired at them. Fortunately these guns, though well aimed, did no mischief, and yet gave the natives a convincing proof of their power. One of the balls broke a cocoa-nut tree in the middle, under which a party of them were sitting; and the other shivered a rock that stood in an exact line with them. As I had just before given them the strongest assurances of their safety, I was exceedingly mortified at this act of hostility; and to prevent a repetition of it, immediately dispatched a boat to acquaint Captain Clerke that at present I was on the most friendly terms with the natives; and that, if occasion should hereafter arise for altering my conduct toward them, I would hoist a jack, as a signal for him to afford us all the assistance in his power.

We expected the return of the boat with the utmost impatience; and after remaining a quarter of an hour, under the most torturing anxiety and suspense, our fears were at length confirmed, by the arrival of Mr Bligh, with orders to strike the tents as quickly as possible, and to send the sails that were repairing on board. Just at
the

the same moment, our friend Kaireekceea, having also received intelligence of the death of Captain Cook, from a native who arrived from the other side of the bay, came to me with sorrow and dejection in his countenance, to enquire if it was true.

Our situation was at this time extremely critical and important. Not only our own lives, but the event of the expedition, and the return of at least one of the ships, being involved in the same common danger. We had the mast of the Resolution, and the greatest part of our sails on shore, under the protection of only six marines: their loss would have been irreparable; and though the natives had not as yet shewn the smallest disposition to molest us, yet it was impossible to answer for the alteration, which the news of the transaction at Kowrowa might produce. I therefore thought it prudent to dissemble my belief of the death of Captain Cook, and to desire Kaireekceea to discourage the report; lest either the fear of our resentment, or the successful example of their countrymen, might lead them to seize the favourable opportunity, which at this time offered itself, of giving us a second blow. At the same time, I advised him to bring old Kaoo, and the rest of the priests, into a large house that was close to the morai; partly out of regard to their safety, in case it should have been necessary to proceed to extremities, and partly to have him near us, in order to make use of his authority with the people, if it could be instrumental in preserving peace.

Having placed the marines on the top of the morai, which formed a strong and advantageous post, and left the command with Mr Bligh, giving him the most positive directions to act entirely on the defensive, I went on board the Discovery, in order to represent to Captain Clerke the dangerous situation of our affairs. As soon as I quitted the spot, the natives began to annoy our people with stones; and I had scarcely reached the ship, before I heard the firing of the marines. I therefore returned instantly on shore, where I found things grow-

all
infa
T
for
leag
ware
drive
the f
so ex
nativ
ance,
rope
howe
a child
under
the w
the lan
not ha
the usu
of one
were al
A ga
obliged
the 8th
way; t
fective,
mast.
he shou
finding
was no
bably b
procurin
imagine
been pre
consider
good ha
for the
especiall
have dep
ing
Vol. II

all exceedingly sea-sick and many of them had left their infants on shore.

Though the weather continued squally, we stood in for the land in the afternoon; and, being within three leagues of it, we saw two men in a canoe, paddling towards us. We naturally conjectured that they had been driven off the shore, by the late violent gale; and stopped the ship's way, in order to take them in. They were so exhausted with fatigue, that had not one of the natives on board jumped into the canoe to their assistance, they would hardly have been able to fix it to the rope thrown out for that purpose. With difficulty, however, we got them up the ship's side, together with a child of about four years of age, which had been lashed under the thwarts of the canoe, with only its head above the water. They informed us, that they had quitted the land the morning before, since which time they had not had food or water. Provision was given them with the usual precautions, and the child entrusted to the care of one of the women; and, the next morning, they were all perfectly recovered.

A gale of wind coming on at midnight, we were obliged to double reef the top-sails. At day-break, on the 8th, we found that the fore-mast had again given way; the fishes being sprung, and the parts so very defective, as to make it absolutely necessary to unstep the mast. Captain Cook, for some time, hesitated, whether he should return to Karakakooa, or take the chance of finding a harbour in the islands to leeward. The bay was not so commodious, but that a better might probably be met with, either for repairing the masts, or procuring refreshments; the latter of which, it was imagined, the neighbourhood of Karakakooa had lately been pretty well drained of. It was, on the other hand, considered as an imprudent step, to leave a tolerable good harbour, which, once lost, could not be regained, for the mere possibility of meeting with a better; especially as the failure of such a contingency, might have deprived us of any resource.

We stood on towards the land, to give the natives on shore an opportunity of releasing their friends on board; and, about noon, when we were within a mile of the shore, several canoes came off to us, but so loaded with people, that no room could be found for any of our guests; the pinnace was therefore hoisted out to land them; and the Master who commanded it, was instructed to examine the S. coast of the bay for water, but returned without success.

Variable winds, and a strong current to the northward, retarded our progress in our return; and, in the evening of the 9th, about eight o'clock, it blew very hard from the S. E. which occasioned us to close reef the top-sails. Early in the morning of the 10th, in a heavy squall, we found ourselves close in with the breakers, to the northward of the W. point of Owhyhee. We had just room to avoid them, and fired several guns to alarm the Discovery, and apprise her of the danger.

The weather, in the forenoon, was more moderate, and a few canoes ventured to come off to us; when those on board them informed us, that much mischief had been occasioned by the late storms, and that a great many canoes had been lost. We kept beating to windward the remainder of the day; and, in the evening, were within a mile of the bay; but we stood off and on till day-light the next morning, when we anchored in our old station.

The

T
mast
the r
come
the r
to m
the o
mora
friend
for o
as bef
repai

The Behaviour of the Islanders, on our Return to Karakakooa Bay, somewhat mysterious—A Theft committed on board the Discovery—The Thieves pursued up the Country by Captain Cook and Mr King—Scuffle between the Natives and our People, in which Pareea receives a severe Blow—The Pinace attacked and plundered—Crew obliged to quit her—Captain Cook's Reflections on the Occasion—Attempt at the Observatory—The Discovery's Cutter stolen from the Buoy—Steps taken for its Recovery—Captain Cook goes on Shore to invite the King and his two Sons on board—His Wife and the Chiefs oppose his going—A Contest arises on the Occasion—Intelligence arrives of one of the Chiefs being killed by one of our People—The Consequences—A Chief threatens Captain Cook, and is shot by him—A general Attack ensues—Death of Captain Cook.

THE whole of the 11th, and part of the 12th of February, we were engaged in getting out the foremast, and conveying it on shore. Not only the head of the mast had sustained damage, but the heel was become exceedingly rotten, having a very large hole in the middle of it. Several days being probably required to make the necessary repairs, Mess. King and Bailly got the observatory on shore, and pitched their tents on the morai, guarded by a corporal, and six marines. A friendly intercourse was renewed with the priests, who, for our great security, *tabooed* the place with their wands as before. The sail-makers also repaired to the shore to repair the damages, in their department, sustained by

the late heavy gales. They occupied an habitation, lent us by the priests, adjoining to the morai.

Our reception, on coming to anchor, was so different from what it had been upon our first arrival, that we were all astonished : no shouts, bustle, or confusion, but a solitary deserted bay, with hardly a canoe stirring. Their curiosity, indeed, might be supposed to be diminished by this time ; but the hospitable treatment we had continually been favoured with, and the friendly footing on which we parted, induced us to expect that, on our return, they would have received us with the greatest demonstrations of joy.

Various were our conjectures on the cause of this extraordinary appearance, when the whole mystery was unravelled by the return of a boat, which we had sent on shore, bringing intelligence that Terreeoboo was absent, and that the bay was *tabooed*. This account appeared very satisfactory to many of us ; but others were of opinion, that there was, at this time, something very suspicious in the behaviour of the natives ; and that the *taboo*, or interdiction, on pretence of Terreeoboo's absence, was artfully contrived, to give him time to consult his chiefs in what manner we should be treated. We never could ascertain whether these suspicions were well founded, or whether the natives had given a true account. It is probable, indeed that our sudden return, for which they could assign no apparent cause, might create alarms in them ; yet the conduct of Terreeoboo, who, on his supposed arrival the next morning, immediately waited on Captain Cook ; and the natives, from that moment, renewing their friendly intercourse with us, seem to evince that they neither meant, nor apprehended, a different kind of conduct.

An account of another accident, similar to this, may be mentioned in support of this opinion, which happened to us on our first visit, the day before the king's arrival. A native having sold a hog on board the Resolution, and received the price agreed on, Pareea, who saw the transaction, advised the seller not to part with
his

his h
rence
pushed
bay, v
affron

The
difficu
of a p
so imp
be for
who, i
liged
where
ed by
tures a
conduc
Februar

At th
mander
form M
the bea
assisted
the sam
ceeding
give hin
with hin
to take
returned
had arm
tumultu
tended
proach t
Mr King
was dispe
went to
shore in t
cently ha
offenders
to throw

his hog, without an advanced price. For his interference in this business, he was harshly spoken to, and pushed away; and as the *taboo* was soon laid on the bay, we, at first, supposed it to be in consequence of the affront offered to the chief.

These two circumstances considered, it is extremely difficult to draw any certain conclusion from the actions of a people, with whose language and customs we are so imperfectly acquainted. Some idea, however, may be formed of the difficulties those have to encounter, who, in their intercourse with these strangers, are obliged to steer their course in the midst of uncertainty, where the most serious consequences may be occasioned by only imaginary offences. Whether these conjectures are erroneous or true, it is certain that things were conducted in their usual quiet course, till the 13th of February, in the afternoon.

At the approach of evening on that day, the commander of the Discovery's watering party, came to inform Mr King, that several chiefs were assembled near the beach, and were driving away the natives, who assisted the sailors in rolling the casks to the shore: at the same time declaring, that their behaviour seemed exceedingly suspicious, and that he imagined they would give him some farther disturbance. He sent a marine with him, agreeably to his request, but permitted him to take only his side-arms. The officer, in a short time, returned, and informed Mr King that the inhabitants had armed themselves with stones, and were become tumultuous. He therefore went himself to the spot, attended by a marine, with his musquet. At their approach the islanders threw away their stones, and, on Mr King's application to some of the chiefs, the mob was dispersed. Every thing being now quiet, Mr King went to meet Captain Cook, who was then coming on shore in the pinnace. He related to him what had recently happened, and received orders to fire a ball at the offenders, if they again behaved insolently, and began to throw stones. In consequence of these directions,
Mr

Mr King gave orders to the corporal, that the centinels pieces should be loaded with ball, instead of shot.

On our return to the tents, we heard a continued fire of musquets from the Discovery; which we perceived to be directed at a canoe, which was hastening towards the shore, with one of our small boats in pursuit of it. This firing, we concluded, was the consequence of some theft, and Captain Cook ordered Mr King to follow him with a marine armed, and to endeavour to seize the people as they landed. They accordingly ran to the place, where the canoe was expected to come ashore, but did not arrive in time; the people having quitted it, and fled into the country before their arrival.

At this time they did not know that the goods had been already restored; and thinking it probable, from what they had observed, that they might be of importance, they did not chuse to relinquish their endeavours to recover them; and, having inquired of the natives what course the people had taken, they pursued them till it was almost dark, when they supposed themselves to be about three miles from the tents; and, thinking the islanders amused them with false information in their pursuit, they gave up the search and returned.

A difference of a more serious nature had happened during their absence. The officer, who had been dispatched in the small boat after the thieves, and who was returning on board, with the booty that had been restored, seeing Captain Cook and Mr King engaged in the pursuit of the offenders, seized a canoe, which was drawn up on the shore. This canoe unfortunately belonged to Pareea, who, at that instant arriving from on board the Discovery, claimed his property, and protested his innocence. The officer persisted in detaining it, in which he was encouraged by the crew of the pinnace, then waiting for Captain Cook; in consequence of which a scuffle ensued, and Pareea was knocked down by a violent blow on the head, with an oar. Several of the natives, who had hitherto been peaceable spectators, began now to attack our people with such a shower of

stones

One
iwan
shore
native
Paree
from
He or
people
afterw
to get
it. Af
carryin
ticles o
what h
kill him
on board
be well
officers
over to
Capt
ed to hi
and Mr
fears tha
violent r
to suppo
It was th
evening
islander
This orde
and the
former c
posted on
if any m
eleven o
round the
great cau
covered, i
night one
tory, whe

ones, that they were forced to a precipitate retreat, and swam off to a rock, at a considerable distance from the shore. The pinnace was plundered immediately by the natives, and would have been entirely demolished, if Pareea had not interposed; who had not only recovered from his blow, but had also forgot it at the same instant. He ordered the crew to disperse, and beckoned to our people to come and take possession of the pinnace; and afterwards assured them that he would use his influence to get the things restored which had been taken out of it. After their departure, he followed them in his canoe, carrying them a midshipman's cap, and some other articles of the plunder; and, expressing much concern at what had happened, begged to know if the *arona* would kill him, and whether he might be permitted to come on board the next day? He was assured that he would be well received, and therefore joined noses with the officers (their usual token of friendship) and paddled over to Kowrowa.

Captain Cook, when these particulars were represented to him, was exceedingly concerned; and, when he and Mr King were returning on board, he expressed his fears that these islanders would oblige him to pursue violent measures; adding, they must not be permitted to suppose, that they had gained an advantage over us. It was then, however, too late to take any steps that evening; he therefore only gave orders that every islander should be immediately turned out of the ship. This order being executed, Mr King returned on shore; and the events of the day having much abated our former confidence in the natives, a double guard was posted on the morai, with orders to let Mr King know, if any men were seen lurking about the beach. At eleven o'clock, five of the natives were seen creeping round the bottom of the morai; they approached with great caution, and, at last, perceiving they were discovered, immediately retired out of sight. About midnight one of them ventured himself near the observatory, when a sentinel fired over him; on which they all fled,

fled and we had no farther disturbance during the remainder of the night.

At day-light the next morning Mr King went on board the Resolution, in order to get the time-keeper; and in his way thither was hailed by the Discovery, and received information that their cutter, had some time in the night been stolen, from the buoy, where it had been moored.

On Mr King's arrival on board, he found the marines were arming themselves, and Captain Cook busied in loading his double-barrelled gun. Whilst he was acquainting him with what had happened in the night at the morai, he eagerly interrupted him, and informed him of the loss of the Discovery's cutter, and of the preparations he was making to recover it. It was his usual practice in all the islands of this ocean, when any thing of consequence had been stolen from him, by some stratagem, to get the king, or some of the principal *Erees*, on board; where he detained them as hostages, till the property was restored. This method having hitherto proved successful, he meant to adopt on the present occasion; and gave orders to stop every canoe that should attempt to leave the bay; resolving to seize and destroy them if the cutter could not be recovered by peaceable means. In pursuance of which, the boats of both ships, properly manned and armed, were stationed across the bay; and before Mr King quitted the ship, some great guns were fired at two canoes, that were attempting to escape.

Between seven and eight o'clock Captain Cook and Mr King quitted the ship together; the former in the pinnace, with Mr Phillips, and nine marines, and the latter in the small boat. The last orders Mr King received from Captain Cook were, to quiet the minds of the people, on our side of the bay, by the strongest assurances that they should not be injured; to keep his people together, and to be continually on his guard. Captain Cook and Mr King then separated; the Captain going towards Kowrowa, where Terreeboo resided; and

ing
arm
incre
bodi
rates
bay,
Th
hind
ance
resolu
ver o
foot o
ing it
sible
stood
party
The
be par
ry off
ty, a v
dy and
and be
to retr
saw hi
being i
diers to
which
himself
Abor
ships b
walls
sent on
to some
desist fr
to fire.
to launc
nomica
quitted
Vol. I

ing every moment more alarming. The natives were arming, and putting on their mats; and their numbers increas'd very fast. I could also perceive several large bodies marching toward us, along the cliff which separates the village of Kakooa from the north side of the bay, where the village of Kowrowa is situated.

They began at first to attack us with stones, from behind the walls of their enclosures, and finding no resistance on our part, they soon grew more daring. A few resolute fellows having crept along the beach, under cover of the rocks, suddenly made their appearance at the foot of the morai, with a design as it seem'd, of storming it on the side next the sea, which was its only accessible part; and were not dislodged, till after they had stood a considerable number of shot, and seen one of their party fall.

The bravery of one of these assailants well deserves to be particularly mentioned. For, having returned to carry off his companion, amidst the fire of our whole party, a wound, which he received, made him quit the body and retire; but in a few minutes, he again appeared, and being again wounded, he was oblig'd a second time to retreat. At this moment I arriv'd at the morai, and saw him return the third time, bleeding and faint; and being inform'd of what had happened, I forbade the soldiers to fire, and he was suffer'd to carry off his friend; which he was just able to perform, and then fell down himself, and expired.

About this time, a strong reinforcement from both ships having landed, the natives retreated behind their walls; which giving me access to our friendly priests, I sent one of them to endeavour to bring their countrymen to some terms, and to propose to them, that if they would desist from throwing stones, I would not permit our men to fire. This truce was agreed to; and we were suffer'd to launch the mast, and carry off the sails and our astronomical apparatus unmolested. As soon as we had quitted the morai, they took possession of it, and some

of them threw a few stones, but without doing us any mischief.

It was half an hour past eleven o'clock when I got on board the *Discovery*, where I found no decisive plan had been adopted for our future proceedings. The restitution of the boat, and the recovery of the body of Captain Cook, were the objects which, on all hands, we agreed to insist on; and it was my opinion that some vigorous steps should be taken in case the demand of them was not immediately complied with. However, after mature deliberation, it was determined to accomplish these points by conciliatory measures, if possible.

During the time we were thus engaged in concerting some plan for our future conduct, a prodigious concourse of natives still kept possession of the shore; and some of them came off in canoes, and had the boldness to approach within pistol-shot of the ships, and to insult us by various marks of contempt and defiance. It was with great difficulty we could restrain the sailors from the use of their arms on these occasions; but as pacific measures had been resolved on, the canoes were suffered to return unmolested.

In pursuance of this plan, it was determined that I should proceed toward the shore, with the boats of both ships well manned and armed, with a view to bring the natives to a parley; and, if possible, to obtain a conference with some of the chiefs.

If this attempt succeeded, I was to demand the dead bodies, and particularly that of Capt. Cook; to threaten them with our vengeance in case of a refusal, but by no means to fire unless attacked, and not to land on any account whatever. These orders were delivered to me before the whole party, and in the most positive manner.

I left the ships about four o'clock in the afternoon, and as we approached the shore, I perceived every indication of a hostile reception. The whole crowd of natives was in motion; the women and children retiring; the men putting on their war-mats, and arming them-

the
serv
ston
had
plac
to th
misd
brin
gave
ed th
boat
gene
tion
med
they
all fa
arma
Th
ly di
suspi
a bol
ming
I tho
and t
a circ
cions
voura
told
friend
and t
preser
of the
part,
so nea
tears
tions
the pa
from
body

themselves with long spears and daggers. We also observed that since the morning, they had thrown up stone breast-works along the beach where Captain Cook had landed, probably in expectation of an attack at that place; and, as soon as we were within reach, they began to throw stones at us with slings, but without doing any mischief. Concluding therefore that all attempts to bring them to a parley would be in vain, unless I first gave them some ground for mutual confidence, I ordered the armed boats to stop, and went on in the small boat alone, with a white flag in my hand, which, by a general cry of joy from the natives, I had the satisfaction to find was instantly understood. The women immediately returned from the side of the hill, whither they had retired; the men threw off their mats; and all sat down together by the water-side, extending their arms, and inviting me to come on shore.

Though this behaviour was very expressive of a friendly disposition, yet I could not help entertaining some suspicions of its sincerity. But when I saw Koah, with a boldness and assurance altogether unaccountable, swimming off toward the boat, with a white flag in his hand, I thought it necessary to return this mark of confidence, and therefore received him into the boat, though armed; a circumstance which did not tend to lessen my suspicions. I must confess I had long harboured an unfavourable opinion of this man. The priests had always told us that he was of a malicious disposition, and no friend of ours; and the repeated detections of his fraud and treachery had convinced us of the truth of their representations. Add to all this, the shocking transaction of the morning, in which he was seen acting a principal part, made me feel the utmost horror at finding myself so near him; and as he came up to me with feigned tears and embraced me, I was so distrustful of his intentions that I could not help taking hold of the point of the pahooah, which he held in his hand, and turning it from me. I told him that I had come to demand the body of Captain Cook, and to declare war against them,

unless it was instantly restored. He assured me this should be done as soon as possible, and that he would go himself for this purpose; and after begging of me a piece of iron, with as much assurance as if nothing extraordinary had happened, he leaped into the sea, and swam ashore, calling out to his countrymen that we were all friends again.

We waited near an hour with great anxiety for his return; during which time, the rest of the boats had approached so near the shore, as to enter into conversation with a party of the natives at some distance from us; by whom they were plainly given to understand that the body had been cut to pieces, and carried up the country; but of this circumstance I was not informed till our return to the ships.

I began now to express some impatience at Koah's delay, upon which the chiefs pressed me exceedingly to come on shore; assuring me that if I would go myself to Terreeoboo, the body would certainly be restored to me. When they found they could not prevail on me to land, they attempted, under a pretence of wishing to converse with more ease, to decoy our boat among some rocks, where they would have had it in their power to cut us off from the rest. It was no difficult matter to see through these artifices; and I was therefore strongly inclined to break off all further communication with them, when a chief came to us, who was the particular friend of Captain Clerke, and of the officers of the Discovery. He told us he came from Terreeoboo to acquaint us, that the body was carried up the country, but it should be brought to us the next morning. There appeared a great deal of sincerity in his manner; and being asked if he told a falsehood, he hooked his two fore-fingers together, which is understood amongst these islanders as the sign of truth: in the use of which they are very scrupulous.

As I was now at a loss in what manner to proceed, I sent Mr Vancouver to acquaint Captain Clerke with all that had passed; that my opinion was, they meant not

to

to keep
sorry a
were f
late suc
contriv
Mr V
on boar
that if
town f

Whe
voured
temptu
disting
cloathes
a chief
man hol
but that
of our c
the mot

In cor
of what
position
were tak
in the ni
additional
guard-bo
to prevent
the night
the hills,
removing
quence c
have bee
count of
about to
our slain

We pa
ing, Koah
of cloth a
sent to m

to keep their word with us, and were so far from being sorry at what had happened, that, on the contrary, they were full of spirits and confidence on account of their late success, and sought only to gain time, till they could contrive some scheme for getting us into their power. Mr Vancouver came back with orders for me to return on board, having first given the natives to understand that if the body was not brought the next morning, the town should be destroyed.

When they saw that we were going off, they endeavoured to provoke us by the most insulting and contemptuous gestures. Some of our people said they could distinguish several of the natives parading about in the cloathes of our unfortunate comrade; and among them, a chief brandishing Captain Cook's hanger, and a woman holding the scabbard. Indeed there can be no doubt but that our behaviour had given them a mean opinion of our courage; for they could have but little notion of the motives of humanity that directed it.

In consequence of the report I made to Capt. Clerke, of what I conceived to be the present temper and disposition of these islanders, the most effectual measures were taken to guard against any attack they might make in the night. The boats were moored with top-chains; additional sentinels were posted on both ships; and guard-boats were stationed to row round them, in order to prevent the natives from cutting the cables. During the night we observed a prodigious number of lights on the hills, which made some of us imagine they were removing their effects back into the country, in consequence of our threats. But I rather believe them to have been the sacrifices that were performing on account of the war, in which they imagined themselves about to be engaged; and most probably the bodies of our slain countrymen were at that time burning.

We passed the night quietly, and early the next morning, Koah came alongside the Resolution with a present of cloth and a small pig, which he desired leave to present to me. I have mentioned before that I was supposed,

posed, by the natives, to be the son of Captain Cook; and as he in his life time had always suffered them to believe it, I was probably considered as the chief after his death. As soon as I came on deck, I questioned him about the body; and on his returning me nothing but evasive answers, I refused to accept his presents, and was going to dismiss him with some expressions of anger and resentment, had not Captain Clerke, judging it best at all events to keep up the appearance of friendship, thought it more proper that he should be treated with the usual respect.

This treacherous fellow came frequently to us during the course of the forenoon with some trifling present or other, and as I always observed him eyeing every part of the ship with great attention, I took care he should see we were well prepared for our defence.

He was exceedingly urgent both with Captain Clerke and myself to go on shore, laying all the blame of the detention of the bodies on the other Chiefs; and assuring us that every thing might be settled to our satisfaction by a personal interview with Terreeboob. However, his conduct was too suspicious to make it prudent to comply with this request; and indeed a fact came afterward to our knowledge, which proved the entire falsehood of his pretensions. For we were told that immediately after the action in which Captain Cook was killed, the old King had retired to a cave in the steep part of the mountain that hangs over the bay, which was accessible only by the help of ropes, and where he remained for many days, having his victuals let down to him by cords.

When Koah returned from the ships, we could perceive that his countrymen, who had been collected by break of day in vast crowds on the shore, thronged about him with great eagerness, as if to learn the intelligence he had acquired, and what was to be done in consequence of it. It is very probable that they expected we should attempt to put our threats in execution, and they seemed fully resolved to stand their ground.

During

During
in diff
march
so alar
enable
of an a
bay to

The
of the
this tim
concern
last det
terfere
for our
continua

The
the fore
penters
alteratio
comman
Clerke, L
Lieutena
promote
with Cap
Lieutena
interrupt
was agai
stationed

About
heard pa
seen, bot
were two
roared o
they pro
and had
When th
our feet,
neither-o
both piec

During the whole morning, we heard tonchs blowing in different parts of the coast; large parties were seen marching over the hills; and in short, appearances were so alarming, that we carried out a stream anchor to enable us to haul the ship abreast of the town in case of an attack, and stationed boats off the N. point of the bay to prevent a surprize from that quarter.

The breach of their engagement to restore the bodies of the slain, and the warlike posture in which they at this time appeared, occasioned fresh debates amongst us concerning the measures next to be pursued. It was at last determined, that nothing should be suffered to interfere with the repair of the mast, and the preparations for our departure; but that we should nevertheless, continue our negociations for the recovery of the bodies.

The greatest part of the day was taken up in getting the foremast into a proper situation on deck for the carpenters to work upon it, and in making the necessary alterations in the commissions of the officers. The command of the expedition having devolved on Capt. Clerke, he removed on board the Resolution, appointed Lieutenant Gore to be Captain of the Discovery, and promoted Mr Harvey, a midshipman, who had been with Captain Cook in his two last voyages, to the vacant Lieutenancy. During the whole day we met with no interruption from the natives, and at night the launch was again moored with a top-chain, and guard-boats stationed round both ships as before.

About eight o'clock, it being very dark, a canoe was heard paddling toward the ship; and as soon as it was seen, both the sentinels on deck fired into it. There were two persons in the canoe, and they immediately roared out "*Tinneet*," (which was the way in which they pronounced my name) and said they were friends, and had something for me belonging to Captain Cook. When they came on board, they threw themselves at our feet, and appeared exceedingly frightened. Luckily neither of them was hurt, notwithstanding the balls of both pieces had gone through the canoe. One of them

was the person whom I have mentioned before under the name of the *Taboo* man, who constantly attended Captain Cook with the circumstances of ceremony I have already described; and who, though a man of rank in the island, could scarcely be hindered from performing for him the lowest offices of a menial servant. After lamenting with abundance of tears, the loss of the *Orono*; he told us that he had brought us a part of his body. He then presented to us a small bundle wrapped up in cloth, which he brought under his arm; and it is impossible to describe the horror which seized us on finding it a piece of human flesh, about nine or ten pounds weight. This, he said, was all that remained of the body; that the rest was cut to pieces and burnt; but that the head and all the bones, except what belonged to the trunk, were in the possession of Terreeoboo and the other *Erees*; that what we saw had been allotted to Kaoo, the chief of the priests, to be made use of in some religious ceremony, and that he had sent it as a proof of his innocence and attachment to us.

This afforded an opportunity of informing ourselves whether they were cannibals, and we did not neglect it. We first tried by many indirect questions, put to each of them apart, to learn in what manner the rest of the bodies had been disposed of; and finding them very constant in one story, that after the flesh had been cut off it was all burnt, we at last put the direct question—Whether they had not eat some of it? They immediately shewed as much horror at the idea as any European would have done; and asked, very naturally, if that was the custom amongst us? They afterward asked us, with great earnestness and apparent apprehension, “When the *Orono* would come again, and what he would do to them on his return?” The same inquiry was frequently made afterwards by others; and this idea agrees with the general tenour of their conduct toward him, which shewed that they considered him as a being of a superior nature.

We pressed our two friendly visitors to remain on

board

board
this t
King
consec
vent v
in the
in retu
the Ch
countr
ing Ko
cable e
an opp
of the
as a cha

We
country
wa, of
his brot
nately o
at the
first ran

About
the preca
them till
again be
men on
discovere
had the s
covered t

During
loud how
we receiv
I was a li
most evide
positive re
still be per
us appear
situation w
nishing; no
Vol. II.—

board till morning, but in vain. They told us that if this transaction should come to the knowledge of the King or Chief, it might be attended with the most fatal consequences to their whole society; in order to prevent which, they had been obliged to come off to us in the dark, and the same precaution would be necessary in returning on shore. They informed us farther that the Chiefs were eager to revenge the death of their countrymen; and particularly cautioned us against trusting Koah, who, they said, was our mortal and implacable enemy, and desired nothing more ardently than an opportunity of fighting us; to which the blowing of the conchs we had heard in the morning was meant as a challenge.

We learned from these men that seventeen of their countrymen were killed in the first action at Kowro-wa, of whom five were chiefs; and that Kaneena and his brother, our very particular friends, were unfortunately of that number. Eight, they said, were killed at the observatory; three of whom were also of the first rank.

About eleven o'clock our two friends left us, and took the precaution to desire that our guard-boat might attend them till they had passed the Discovery, lest they should again be fired upon, which might alarm their countrymen on shore, and expose them to the danger of being discovered. This request was complied with; and we had the satisfaction to find that they got safe and undiscovered to land.

During the remainder of this night we heard the same loud howling and lamentations. Early in the morning we received another visit from Koah. I must confess, I was a little piqued to find that, notwithstanding the most evident marks of treachery in his conduct, and the positive testimony of our friends the priests, he should still be permitted to carry on the same farce, and to make us appear to be the dupes of his hypocrisy. Indeed our situation was become extremely awkward and unpromising; none of the purposes for which this pacific

course of proceeding had been adopted having hitherto been in the least forwarded by it. No satisfactory answer whatever had been given to our demands ; we did not seem to be at all advanced toward a reconciliation with the islanders ; they still kept in force on the shore, as if determined to resist any attempts we might make to land ; and yet the attempt was become absolutely necessary, as the completing our supply of water would not admit of any longer delay.

However it must be observed, in justice to the conduct of Captain Clerke, that it was very probable, from the great numbers of the natives, and from the resolution with which they seemed to expect us, an attack could not have been made without some danger ; and that the loss of a very few men might have been severely felt by us, during the remaining course of our voyage. Whereas the delaying the execution of our threats, though, on the one hand, it lessened their opinion of our prowess, had the effect of causing them to disperse on the other. For this day about noon, finding us persist in our inactivity, great bodies of them, after blowing their conchs, and using every mode of defiance, marched off, over the hills, and never appeared afterward. Those however, who remained, were not the less daring and insolent. One man had the audacity to come within musket-shot, a-head of the ship ; and, after slinging several stones at us, he waved Captain Cook's hat over his head, whilst his countrymen on shore were exulting, and encouraging his boldness. Our people were all in a flame at this insult, and, coming in a body on the quarter-deck, begged they might no longer be obliged to put up with these repeated provocations ; and requested me to obtain permission for them, from Captain Clerke, to avail themselves of the first fair occasion of revenging the death of their Commander. On my acquainting him with what was passing, he gave orders for some great guns to be fired at the natives on shore ; and promised the crew that, if they should meet with any mo-

lestation

* The w
hands, to
ward tol
the face fro

lestation at the watering-place, the next day, they should then be left at liberty to chastise them.

It is somewhat remarkable, that before we could bring our guns to bear, the islanders had suspected our intentions, from the stir they saw in the ship, and had retired behind their houses and walls. We were therefore obliged to fire in some measure at random; notwithstanding which, our shot produced all the effects that could have been desired. For soon after, we saw Koah paddling towards us, with extreme haste, and on his arrival, we learned that some people had been killed, and amongst the rest, Maiha-maiha, a principal chief, and a near relation to the king.*

Soon after the arrival of Koah, two boys swam off from the morai toward the ships, having each a long spear in his hand; and, after they had approached pretty near, they began to chant a song in a very solemn manner; the subject of which, from their often mentioning the word *prono*, and pointing to the village where Captain Cook was killed, we concluded to be the late calamitous disaster. Having sung in a plaintive strain for about twelve or fifteen minutes, during the whole of which time they remained in the water, they went on board the Discovery, and delivered their spears; and after making a short stay, returned on shore. Who sent them, or what was the object of this ceremony, we were never able to learn.

At night, the usual precautions were taken for the security of the ships; and as soon as it was dark, our two friends, who had visited us the night before, came off again. They assured us that though the effect of our great guns this afternoon had terrified the chiefs exceedingly, they had by no means laid aside their hostile intentions, and advised us to be on our guard.

4 Q 2

The

* The word *matee*, is commonly used, in the language of these islands, to express either killing or wounding; and we were afterward told, that this chief had only received a slight blow on the face from a stone which had been struck by one of the balls.

The next morning, the boats of both ships were sent ashore for water; and the Discovery was warped close to the beach, in order to cover that service. We soon found that the intelligence which the priests had sent us, was not without foundation; and that the natives were resolved to take every opportunity of annoying us, when it could be done without much risk.

Throughout all this group of islands, the villages, for the most part, are situated near the sea; and the adjacent ground is enclosed with stone walls, about three feet high. These, we at first imagined, were intended for the division of property; but we now discovered that they served, and probably were principally designed, for a defence against invasion. They consist of loose stones, and the inhabitants are very dexterous in shifting them, with great quickness, to such situations as the direction of the attack may require. In the sides of the mountain, which hangs over the bay, they have also little holes or caves, of considerable depth, the entrance of which is secured by a fence of the same kind. From behind both these defences the natives kept perpetually harassing our waterers with stones; nor could the small force we had on shore, with the advantage of musquets, compel them to retreat.

In this exposed situation, our people were so taken up in attending to their own safety, that they employed the whole forenoon in filling only one ton of water. As it was therefore impossible to perform this service, till their assailants were driven to a greater distance, the Discovery was ordered to dislodge them with her great guns; which being effected by a few discharges, the men laid down without molestation. However, the natives soon after made their appearance again, in their usual mode of attack; and it was now found absolutely necessary to burn down some straggling houses near the wall, behind which they had taken shelter. In executing these orders, I am sorry to add that our people were hurried into acts of unnecessary cruelty and devastation. Something ought certainly to be allowed to their resentment

of
the
loss
con
pre
mor
priv
T
whi
fore
fire;
gress
of ou
flame
fined
been
who
at the
cumfi
I migh
little so
Seve
escape
heads
The fa
all. A
shot at
bash, v
He wa
scribed
greater
kept tw
expired
first bro
At th
bound,
heads of
strongly
violent a

of the repeated insults, and contemptuous behaviour of the islanders, and to the natural desire of revenging the loss of their Commander. But at the same time, their conduct served strongly to convince me, that the utmost precaution is necessary in trusting, though but for a moment, the discretionary use of arms, in the hands of private seamen or soldiers, on such occasions.

Their orders were only to burn a few straggling huts, which afforded shelter to the natives. We were therefore a good deal surprised to see the whole village on fire; and before a boat, that was sent to stop the progress of the mischief, could reach the shore, the houses of our old and constant friends, the priests, were all in flames. I cannot enough lament the illness that confined me on board this day. The priests had always been under my protection; and unlickily, the officers who were then on duty, having been seldom on shore at the morai, were not much acquainted with the circumstances of the place. Had I been present myself, I might probably have been the means of saving their little society from destruction.

Several of the natives were shot, in making their escape from the flames; and our people cut off the heads of two of them, and brought them on board. The fate of one poor islander was much lamented by us all. As he was coming to the well for water, he was shot at by one of the marines. The ball struck his calibash, which he immediately threw from him and fled. He was pursued into one of the caves I have before described, and no lion could have defended his den with greater courage and fierceness; till, at last, after having kept two of our people at bay for a considerable time, he expired covered with wounds. It was this accident that first brought us acquainted with the use of these caverns.

At this time, an elderly man was taken prisoner, bound, and sent on board in the same boat with the heads of his two countrymen. I never saw horror so strongly pictured, as in the face of this man, nor so violent a transition to extravagant joy, as when he was untied,

untied, and told he might go away in safety. He shewed us he did not want gratitude, as he frequently afterward returned with presents of provisions; and also did us other services.

Soon after the village was destroyed, we saw coming down the hill, a man, attended by fifteen or twenty boys, holding pieces of white cloth, green boughs, plantains, &c. in their hands. I knew not how it happened that this peaceful embassy, as soon as they were within reach, received the fire of a party of our men. This however did not stop them. They continued their procession, and the officer on duty came up in time to prevent a second discharge. As they approached nearer, it was found to be our much esteemed friend Kaireek-keea, who had fled on our first setting fire to the village, and had now returned, and desired to be sent on board the Resolution.

When he arrived, we found him exceedingly grave and thoughtful. We endeavoured to make him understand the necessity we were under of setting fire to the village, by which his house, and those of his brethren, were unintentionally consumed. He expostulated a little with us on our want of friendship, and our ingratitude. And indeed, it was not till now that we learnt the whole extent of the injury we had done them. He told us that, relying on the promises I had made them, and on the assurances they had afterwards received from the men, who had brought us the remains of Captain Cook, they had not removed their effects back into the country, with the rest of the inhabitants, but had put every thing that was valuable of their own, as well as what they had collected from us, into a house close to the morai, where they had the mortification to see it all set on fire by ourselves.

On coming on board, he had seen the heads of his countrymen lying on the deck, at which he was exceedingly shocked, and desired with great earnestness that they might be thrown over-board. This request Capt. Clarke instantly ordered to be complied with.

In
board,
passed
heard
only c
occasi
It is
ances,
never
appreh
ashore.
some o
in flam
cried ou
The
ships.
keeping
own wa
ship, fin
plantain
never to
left his h
of promi
this recep
ed a part
waterers
who had
morning,
our peopl
which th
shoulders,
ed, a mou
The na
the want
made us to
us any far
called Eap
knew to be
with prefer
resents w

In the evening, the watering party returned on board, having met with no farther interruption. We passed a gloomy night; the cries and lamentations we heard on shore being far more dreadful than ever. Our only consolation was, the hope that we should have no occasion in future, for a repetition of such severities.

It is very extraordinary that amidst all these disturbances, the women of the island, who were on board, never offered to leave us, nor discovered the smallest apprehensions either for themselves or their friends ashore. So entirely unconcerned did they appear that some of them, who were on deck when the town was in flames, seemed to admire the sight, and frequently cried out, that it was *naitai*, or very fine.

The next morning, Koah came off as usual to the ships. As there existed no longer any necessity for keeping terms with him, I was allowed to have my own way. When he approached toward the side of the ship, singing his song, and offering me a hog, and some plantains, I ordered him to keep off, cautioning him never to appear again without Captain Cook's bones, lest his life should pay the forfeit of his frequent breach of promise. He did not appear much mortified with this reception, but went immediately on shore, and joined a party of his countrymen, who were pelting the waterers with stones. The body of the young man, who had been killed the day before, was found this morning, lying at the entrance of a cave; and some of our people went, and threw a mat over it. Soon after which they saw some men carrying him off on their shoulders, and could hear them singing, as they marched, a mournful song.

The natives being at last convinced that it was not the want of ability to punish them, which had hitherto made us tolerate their provocations, desisted from giving us any farther molestation; and in the evening, a chief called Eappo, who had seldom visited us, but whom we knew to be a man of the very first consequence, came with presents from Terreoboo to sue for peace. These presents were received, and he was dismissed with the same

same answer which had before been given, that until the remains of Capt. Cook should be restored, no peace would be granted. We learned from this person that the flesh of all the bodies of our people, together with the bones of the trunks, had been burnt; that the limb bones of the marines had been divided amongst the inferior chiefs; and that those of Captain Cook had been disposed of in the following manner: the head, to a great chief called Kahoo-opeon; the hair to Maia-maia; and the legs, thighs, and arms to Terreeoboo. After it was dark, many of the inhabitants came off with roots and other vegetables; and we also received two large presents of the same articles from Kaireekeea.

The 19th was chiefly taken up in sending and receiving the messages which passed between Capt. Clerke and Terreeoboo. Eappo was very pressing that one of our officers should go on shore; and in the mean time, offered to remain as an hostage on board. This request, however, it was not thought proper to comply with; and he left us with a promise of bringing the bones next day. At the beach the waterers did not meet with the least opposition from the natives; who, notwithstanding our cautious behaviour, came amongst us again, without the smallest appearance of diffidence or apprehension.

Early in the morning of the 20th, we had the satisfaction of getting the foremast stepped. It was an operation attended with great difficulty, and some danger; our ropes being so exceeding rotten that the purchase gave way several times.

Between ten and eleven o'clock, we saw a great number of people descending the hill, which is over the beach, in a kind of procession, each man carrying a sugar-cane or two on his shoulders, and bread-fruit, taro, and plantains in his hand. They were preceded by two drummers; who, when they came to the water-side, sat down by a white flag, and began to beat their drums, while those who had followed them, advanced one by one; and having deposited the presents they had brought, retired in the same order. Soon after,

Eappo

Eap
ing
havi
to be

Ca

bone

went

ed m

at the

vered

quant

cloak

ed us

to go

decen

We fo

which

of the

the wh

with th

the fac

short,

arms, v

the thig

the feet

the wh

fire, ex

them, a

with fa

them.

the sku

and feet

seized b

every m

The

on board

of Capt

some ot

great pa

Vol. II

Eappo came in sight, in his long feathered cloak, bearing something with great solemnity in his hands; and having placed himself on a rock, he made signs for a boat to be sent him.

Captain Clerke, conjecturing that he had brought the bones of Captain Cook, which proved to be the fact, went himself in the pinnace to receive them; and ordered me to attend him in the cutter. When we arrived at the beach, Eappo came into the pinnace, and delivered to the Captain the bones wrapped up in a large quantity of fine new cloth, and covered with a spotted cloak of black and white feathers. He afterward attended us to the Resolution, but could not be prevailed upon to go on board; probably not chusing, from a sense of decency, to be present at the opening of the bundle. We found in it both the hands of Captain Cook entire, which were well known from a remarkable scar on one of them, that divided the thumb from the fore finger, the whole length of the metacarpal bone; the skull, but with the scalp separated from it, and the bones that form the face wanting; the scalp with the hair upon it cut short, and the ears adhering to it; the bones of both arms, with the skin of the fore-arms hanging to them; the thigh and leg bones joined together, but without the feet. The ligaments of the joints were entire; and the whole bore evident marks of having been in the fire, except the hands, which had the flesh left upon them, and were cut in several places, and crammed with salt, apparently with an intention of preserving them. The scalp had a cut in the back part of it, but the skull was free from any fracture. The lower jaw and feet, which were wanting, Eappo told us, had been seized by different chiefs, and that Terreeoboo was using every means to recover them.

The next morning, Eappo, and the king's son, came on board, and brought with them the remaining bones of Captain Cook; the barrels of his gun, his shoes, and some other trifles that belonged to him. Eappo took great pains to convince us, that Terreeoboo, Maiha-

maiha, and himself, were most heartily desirous of peace; that they had given us the most convincing proof of it in their power; and that they had been prevented from giving it sooner by the other chiefs, many of whom were still our enemies. He lamented, with the greatest sorrow, the death of six chiefs we had killed, some of whom he said, were amongst our best friends. The cutter, he told us, was taken away by Pareea's people; very probably in revenge for the blow that had been given him; and that it had been broken up the next day. The arms of the marines, which we had also demanded, he assured us, had been carried off by the common people, and were irrecoverable; the bones of the chief alone having been preserved, as belonging to Terreoboo and the Erees.

Nothing now remained but to perform the last offices to our great and unfortunate Commander! Eappo was dismissed with orders to taboo all the bay; and, in the afternoon, the bones, having been put into a coffin, and the service read over them, they were committed to the deep with the usual military honours. What our feelings were on this occasion, I leave the world to conceive; those who were present know that it is not in my power to express them.

During the forenoon of the 22d, not a canoe was seen paddling in the bay; the taboo, which Eappo had laid on it the day before at our request, not being yet taken off. At length Eappo came off to us. We assured him, that we were now entirely satisfied; and that as the Orono was buried, all remembrance of what had passed was buried with him. We afterward desired him to take off the taboo, and to make it known that the people might bring their provisions as usual. The ships were soon surrounded with canoes, and many of the chiefs came on board, expressing great sorrow at what had happened, and their satisfaction at our reconciliation. Several of our friends who did not visit us, sent presents of large hogs, and other provisions. Amongst
the

the r
admi
As
o'clock
po, a
leave
of the
in gr
our l
good-
We
hoistin
In t
with l
W. bu
W. po
we tac
The
fed wi
same d
from t
parts,
pearing
On
an islan
north p
S. W. t
ed likel
the sigh
induced
water,
tended
few nat
us were
their ch
certainly
We v
brackish

the rest came the old treacherous Koah, but was refused admittance.

As we had now every thing ready for ~~sun~~, about eight o'clock this evening we dismissed all the natives; Eap-po, and the friendly Kaireekeea, took an affectionate leave of us. We immediately weighed, and stood out of the bay. The natives were collected on the shore in great numbers; and, as we passed along, received our last farewells with every mark of affection and good-will.

We got clear of the land about ten on the 22d, and hoisting in the boats, stood to the northward.

In the afternoon of the 24th, the weather being calm, with light airs from the west, we stood on to the N. N. W. but at sunset observing a shoal stretching from the W. point of Mowee, toward the middle of the passage, we tacked, and stood toward the south.

The S. W. side of this island, which we now had passed without being able to get near the shore, forms the same distant view with the N. E. as seen on our return from the north in November 1778, the mountainous parts, which are connected by a low, flat isthmus, appearing at first like two separate islands.

On the 27th, we got to the windward of Woahoo, an island we had seen at our first visit. Between the north point and a distant headland, which we saw to the S. W. the land bends inward considerably, and appeared likely to afford a good road. At a quarter past two the sight of a fine river, running through a deep valley, induced us to come to an anchor in thirteen fathoms water, with a sandy bottom. In the afternoon, I attended the two Captains on shore, where we found but few natives, and those mostly women; the men, they told us were gone to Morotoi to fight Tahyterree; but that their chief Perreoranee, who had stayed behind, would certainly visit us, as soon as he heard of our arrival.

We were much disappointed to find the water had a brackish taste, for two hundred yards up the river, owing

to the marshy ground through which it empties itself into the sea.

As the watering at this place would have been attended with great labour, Captain Clerke determined, without further loss of time, to proceed to Atooi. On the 28th, we bore away for that island, which we were in sight of by noon; and about sunset, were off its eastern extremity.

We passed the night in plying on and off, and at nine the next morning, came to an anchor in twenty-five fathoms water.

We had no sooner anchored in our old station, than several canoes came alongside of us; but we could observe, that they did not welcome us with the same cordiality in their manner, and satisfaction in their countenances, as when we were here before. As soon as they got on board, one of the men began to tell us that we had left a disorder amongst their women, of which several persons of both sexes had died.

Our principal object here was to water the ships with the utmost expedition; and I was sent on shore early in the afternoon. The gunner of the Resolution accompanied me to trade for provisions; and we had a guard of five marines. We found a considerable number of people collected upon the beach, who received us at first with great kindness; but as soon as we had got the casks on shore, began to be exceedingly troublesome. It was with great difficulty I was able to form a circle, according to our usual practice, for the convenience of our trading party; and had no sooner done it, than I saw a man laying hold of the bayonet of one of the soldiers musquets, and endeavouring with all his force, to wrench it out of his hand. On my coming up to them, the native let go his hold and retired; but returned in a moment, with a spear in one hand and a dagger in the other; and his countrymen had much ado to restrain him from trying his prowess with the soldier. This fray was occasioned by the latter's having given

give
to n
I
cum
the
cour
com
was
I fou
had
cask
could
boats.
I h
advan
fame
ling t
tainly
it; an
ceed i
traders
Tho
the na
they f
provok
tence
turned
directi
ors he
trippin
shoutin
ishness
steal th
force;
themselv
were ev
force th
for the r
me, yet t

given the man a slight prick with his bayonet, in order to make him keep without the line.

I now perceived that our situation required great circumspection and management; and accordingly gave the strictest orders that no one should fire, nor have recourse to any other act of violence, without positive commands. As soon as I had given these directions, I was called to the assistance of the watering party, where I found the natives equally inclined to mischief. They had demanded from our people a large hatchet for every cask of water; and this not being complied with, they could not suffer the sailors to roll them down to the boats.

I had no sooner joined them, than one of the natives advanced up to me with great insolence, and made the same claim. I told him that as a friend, I was very willing to present him with a hatchet, but that I should certainly carry off the water, without paying any thing for it; and I immediately ordered the pinnace men to proceed in their business, and called three marines from the traders to protect them.

Though this shew of spirit succeeded so far as to make the natives desist from any open attempt to interrupt us, they still continued to behave in the most teasing and provoking manner. Whilst some of them, under pretence of assisting the men in rolling down the casks, turned them out of their course, and gave them a wrong direction, others were stealing the hats from off the sailors heads, pulling them backward by their clothes, or tripping up their heels; the whole crowd, all this time, shouting and laughing, with a strange mixture of childishness and malice. They afterwards found means to steal the cooper's bucket, and took away his bag by force; but the objects they were most eager to possess themselves of, were the musquets of the marines, who were every instant complaining of their attempts to force them out of their hands. Though they continued for the most part, to pay great deference and respect to me, yet they did not suffer me to escape without contributing

buting my share to their stock of plunder. One of them came up to me with a familiar air, and with great management diverted my attention, whilst another, wrenching the hanger, which I held carelessly in my hand, from me, ran off with it like lightning.

It was in vain to think of repelling this insolence by force; guarding therefore against its effects, in the best manner we were able, we had nothing to do but to submit patiently to it. My apprehensions were however a little alarmed, by the information I soon after received from the serjeant of marines, who told me that, turning suddenly round, he saw a man behind me holding a dagger in the position of striking. As our people were separated into three small parties, one at the lake, filling casks, another rolling them down to the shore, and the third at some distance, purchasing provisions; it had once occurred to me that it might be proper to collect them all together, and to execute and protect one duty at a time. But on second thoughts, I judged it more advisable to let them continue where they were. In case of a real attack, our whole force, however advantageously disposed, could have made but a poor resistance. On the other hand, I thought it of some consequence to shew the natives we were under no fears; and what was still more material, the crowd was by this means kept divided, and a considerable part of them fully employed in bartering provisions.

While we were getting the casks into the launch, the natives perceiving the opportunity of plundering would soon be over, became every moment more daring and insolent. On this occasion I was indebted to the serjeant of marines for suggesting to me, the advantage that would arise from sending off his party first into the boats; by which means, the muskets of the soldiers, which, as I have already mentioned, were the objects the islanders had principally in view, would be removed out of their reach; and, in case of an attack, the marines themselves might be employed more effectually in our defence than if they were on shore.

We

We had now got every thing into the boats, and only the gunner, a seaman of the boat's crew, and myself, remained on shore. As the pinnace lay beyond the surf, through which we were obliged to swim, I told them to make the best of their way to it, and that I should follow them.

With this order I was surprised to find them both refuse to comply, and the consequence was a contest amongst us who should be the last on shore. It seems that some hasty words I had just before used to the sailor, which he thought reflected on his courage, was the cause of this odd fancy in him; and the old gunner finding a point of honour started, thought he could not well avoid taking a part in it. In this ridiculous situation we might have remained some time, had not our dispute been soon settled by the stones that began to fly about us, and by the cries of the people from the boats to make haste, as the natives were following us into the water with clubs and spears. I reached the side of the pinnace first, and finding the gunner was at some distance behind, and not yet entirely out of danger, I called out to the marines to fire one musquet. In the hurry of executing my orders they fired two; and when I got into the boat, I saw the natives running away, and one man with a woman sitting by him, left behind on the beach. The man made several attempts to rise, without being able; and it was with much regret, I perceived him to be wounded in the groin. The natives soon after returned and surrounded the wounded man, brandished their spears and daggers at us with an air of threatening and defiance; but before we reached the ships, we saw some persons, whom we supposed to be the Chiefs, now arrived, driving them away from the shore.

During our absence, Captain Clerke had been under the greatest anxiety for our safety. And these apprehensions were considerably increased, from his having entirely mistaken the drift of the conversation he had held with some natives who had been on board. The frequent mention of the name of Captain Cook, with other strong

strong and circumstantial descriptions of death and destruction, made him conclude that the knowledge of the unfortunate events at Owhyhee had reached them, and that these were what they alluded to; whereas all they had in view was to make known to him the wars that had arisen, in consequence of the goats that Captain Cook had left at Oneeheow, and the slaughter of the poor goats themselves, during the struggle for the property of them. Captain Clerke, applying this earnestness of conversation, and these terrible representations, to our calamitous transactions at Owhyhee, and to an indication of revenge kept his telescope fixed upon us, and the moment he saw the smoke of the musquets, ordered the boats to be manned and armed, and to put off to our assistance.

The next morning, March 2d, I was again ordered on shore with the watering party. The risk we had run the preceding day, determined Captain Clerke to send a considerable force from both ships for our guard, amounting in all to forty men under arms. This precaution however, was now unnecessary; for we found the beach left entirely to ourselves, and the ground between the landing place and the lake *tabooed* with small white flags. We concluded, from this appearance, that some of the chiefs had certainly visited this quarter; and that, not being able to stay, they had kindly and considerately taken this step for our greater security and convenience. We saw several men armed with long spears and daggers on the other side of the river on the right, but they did not offer to give us the least molestation. Their women came over and sat down on the banks close by us, and at noon we prevailed on some of the men to bring hogs and roots for our people, and to dress them for us. As soon as we had left the beach they came down to the sea-side, and one of them threw a stone at us; but his conduct, seeming to be highly disapproved of by all the rest, we did not think it proper to shew any resentment.

The

ma
the
and
try
rels
peo
goat
of p
pret
T
shore
pente
in ma
native
and v
and v
At
board
pahoo
and m
timber
tion it
On t
neoneo
the ship
him to
he appe
willin
and low
time, an
with for
and goin
that he v
respect u
appear s
at this ti
party, an
Vol. II.

The next day we completed our watering without meeting with any material difficulty. On our return to the ships, we found that several chiefs had been on board, and had made excuses for the behaviour of their countrymen, attributing their riotous conduct to the quarrels which subsisted at that time amongst the principal people of the island. The quarrel had arisen about the goats we had left at Oneehgow the last year; the right of property in which was claimed by Toneoneo, on the pretence of that island's being a dependency of his.

This, and the two following days, were employed on shore in completing the Discovery's water; and the carpenters were busy on board in caulking the ships, and in making other preparations for our next cruise. The natives desisted from giving us any further disturbance, and we procured from them a plentiful supply of pork and vegetables.

At this time an Indian brought a piece of iron on board the Discovery to be fashioned into the shape of a pahooa. It was carefully examined both by the officers and men, and appeared to be the bolt of some large ship timbers; but they were not able to discover to what nation it belonged.

On the 7th, we were surprised with a visit from Toneoneo. When he heard the dowager princess was in the ship, it was with great difficulty we could prevail on him to come on board, not from any apprehension that he appeared to entertain of his safety, but from an unwillingness to see her. Their meeting was with sulky and lowering looks on both sides. He staid but a short time, and seemed much dejected; but we remarked, with some surprise, that the women, both at his coming and going away, prostrated themselves before him; and that he was treated by all the natives on board with the respect usually paid to those of his rank. Indeed it must appear somewhat extraordinary, that a person who was at this time in a state of actual hostility with Teavee's party, and was even prepared for another battle, should

trust himself almost alone within the power of his enemies.

On the 8th, at nine in the morning, we weighed and sailed toward Oneeheow; and at three in the afternoon, anchored in twenty fathoms water, nearly on the same spot as in the year 1778.

On the 12th, the weather being moderate, the Master was sent to the N. W. side of the island to look for a more convenient place for anchoring. He returned in the evening, having found a fine bay with good anchorage; also to the eastward were four small wells of good water; the road to them level, and fit for rolling casks.

As we were now about to take our final leave of the Sandwich islands, it will not be improper to introduce here some general account of them, particularly Owhyhee.

This group consists of eleven islands. They are called by the natives; 1. Owhyhee. 2. Mowee. 3. Ranai, or Ornai. 4. Morotinee, or Morokinne. 5. Kahowrowee, or Tahoorowa. 6. Morotoi, or Morokoi. 7. Woahoo, or Oahoo. 8. Atooi, Atowi, or Towi, and sometimes Kowi. 9. Neeheehow, or Oneeheow. 10. Oreehoua, or Reehou; and 11. Tahooraa; and are all inhabited, excepting Morotinnee and Tahooraa. Besides the islands above enumerated, we were told by the Indians, that there is another called Modoopapapa, or Kamodoopapapa, which is low and sandy, and visited only for the purpose of catching turtle and sea-fowl.

They were named by Captain Cook the SANDWICH ISLANDS, in honour of the *Earl of Sandwich*, under whose administration he had enriched geography with so many splendid and important discoveries; a tribute justly due to that noble person for the liberal support these voyages derived from his power, in whatever could extend their utility, or promote their success; for the zeal with which he seconded the views of that great navigator; and, if I may be allowed to add the voice of private gratitude, for the generous protection, which

since

since the death of their unfortunate commander, he has afforded all the officers that served under him.

Owhyhee, the easternmost, and by much the largest of these islands, is of a triangular shape, and nearly equilateral. Its greatest length is $28\frac{1}{2}$ leagues; its breadth is 24 leagues; and it is about 255 geographical, or 293 English miles in circumference.

The coast to the N. E. which forms the eastern extremity of the island, is low and flat; the acclivity of the inland parts is very gradual, and the whole country covered with cocoa-nut and bread-fruit trees. This, as far as we could judge, is the finest part of the island, and we were afterward told that the King had a place of residence here. On doubling the east point of this island, we saw a mountain, called Mouna Roa, which is supposed to be at least 16,020 feet high, which exceeds the height of the Pico de Teyde, or Peak of Teneriffe, by 724 feet, according to Dr Heberden's computation.

The coast of Kaoo presents a prospect of the most horrid and dreary kind: the whole country appearing to have undergone a total change from the effects of some dreadful convulsion. The ground is every where covered with cinders, and intersected in many places with black streaks, which seem to mark the course of a lava that has flowed, not many ages back, from the mountain Roa to the shore. The southern promontory looks like the mere dregs of a volcano. The projecting headland is composed of broken and craggy rocks, piled irregularly on one another, and terminating in sharp points.

The neighbouring sea abounds with a variety of most excellent fish, with which, as well as with other provisions, we were always plentifully supplied. Off this part of the coast we could find no ground at less than a cable's length from the shore, with a hundred and sixty fathoms of line, excepting in a small bight to the eastward of the south point.

The quadrupeds in these, as in all the other islands that have been discovered in the South Sea, are confined

to three sorts, dogs, hogs, and rats. The dogs are of the same species with those of Otaheite, having short crooked legs, long backs, and pricked ears. I did not observe any variety in them, except in their skins; some having long and rough hair, and others being quite smooth. They are about the size of a common turnspit; exceedingly sluggish in their nature; though perhaps this may be more owing to the manner in which they are treated, than to any natural disposition in them. They are in general fed, and left to herd with the hogs; and I do not recollect one instance in which a dog was made a companion in the manner we do in Europe. Indeed, the custom of eating them is an insuperable bar to their admission into society; and as there is neither beasts of prey in the island, nor objects of chase, it is probable that the social qualities of the dog, its fidelity, attachment, and sagacity, will remain unknown to the natives.

The number of dogs in these islands did not appear to be nearly equal in proportion to those in Otaheite. But, on the other hand, they abound much more in hogs; and the breed is of a larger and weightier kind. The supply of provisions of this kind, which we got from them, was really astonishing. We were near four months either cruising off the coast, or in harbour at Owhyhee. During all this time, a large allowance of fresh pork was constantly served to both crews; so that our consumption was computed at about sixty puncheonsof five hundred weight each. Besides this, and the incredible waste, which, in the midst of such plenty, was not to be guarded against, sixty puncheons more were salted for sea store. The greatest part of this supply was drawn from the island of Owhyhee alone, and yet we could not perceive that it was at all drained, or even that the abundance had any way decreased.

The birds of these islands are as beautiful as any we have seen during the voyage, and are numerous, though not various. There are four which seem to belong to the *trochili*, or honey-suckers of Linnæus; one of which

is so
glo
It is
ceed
with
A th
riety
and y
of yel
thru
catche
which
Raven
colour
is diffe
birds,
red, an
cularly
to deriv
the ton
the tip
structur
very cor
that tribe
lowith c
Here
the whiff
a bird w
and feath
is usually
birds of P
or darker
The in
edly of th
Society a
Marquesa
might be
similarity

is something larger than a bullfinch ; its colour is a fine glossy black, the rump-vent and thighs a deep yellow. It is called by the natives *hooboo*. Another is of an exceeding bright scarlet colour; the wings black, and edged with white; and the tail black; its native name is *eeeeve*. A third, which seems to be either a young bird, or a variety of the foregoing, is variegated with red, brown, and yellow. The fourth is entirely green, with a tinge of yellow, and is called *akaicarooa*. There is a species of thrush, with a grey breast; and a small bird of the fly-catcher kind; a rail, with very short wings and no tail, which, on that account, we named *rallus ecaudatus*. Ravens are found here, but they are very scarce; their colour is dark brown, inclining to black; and their note is different from the European. Here are two small birds, both of one *genus*, that are very common; one is red, and generally seen about the cocoa-nut trees, particularly when they are in flower, from whence it seems to derive great part of its subsistence; the other is green; the tongues of both are long and ciliated, or fringed at the tip. A bird with a yellow head, which from the structure of its beak, we called a parroquet, is likewise very common. It however, by no means belongs to that tribe, but greatly resembles the *lexia flavicans*, or yellowish crossbill of Linnæus.

Here are also owls, plovers of two sorts, one very like the whistling plover of Europe; a large white pigeon; a bird with a long tail, whose colour is black, the vent and feathers under the wing (which is much longer than is usually seen in the generality of birds, except the birds of paradise) are yellow; and the common water or darker hen.

The inhabitants of the Sandwich Islands are undoubtedly of the same race with those of New Zealand, the Society and Friendly Islands, Easter Island, and the Marquesas. This fact, which, extraordinary as it is, might be thought sufficiently proved by the striking similarity of their manners and customs, and the general resem-

resemblance of their persons is established beyond all controversy, by the absolute identity of their language.

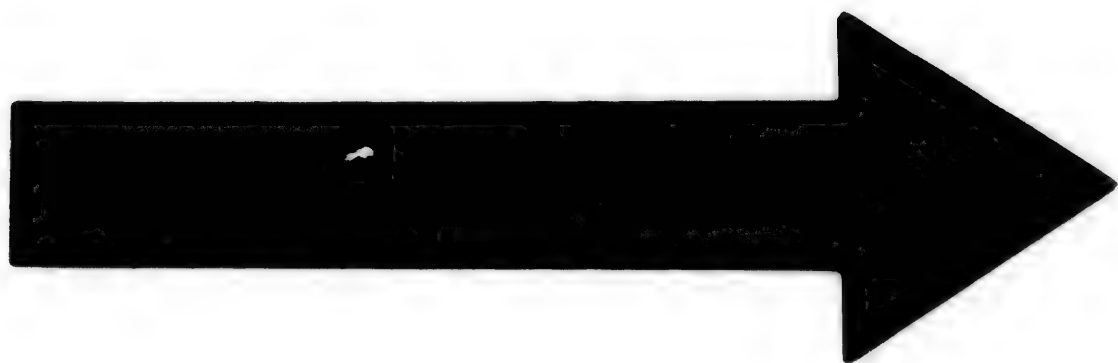
From what continent they originally emigrated, and by what steps they have spread through so vast a space, those who are curious in disquisitions of this nature, may perhaps not find it very difficult to conjecture. It has been already observed, that they bear strong marks of affinity to some of the Indian tribes that inhabit the Ladrões and Caroline islands; and the same affinity may again be traced amongst the Battas and the Malays. When these events happened, is not so easy to ascertain; it was probably not very lately, as they are extremely populous, and have no tradition of their own origin, but what is perfectly fabulous; whilst on the other hand, the unadulterated state of their general language, and the simplicity which prevails in their customs and manners, seem to indicate, that it could not have been at any very distant period.

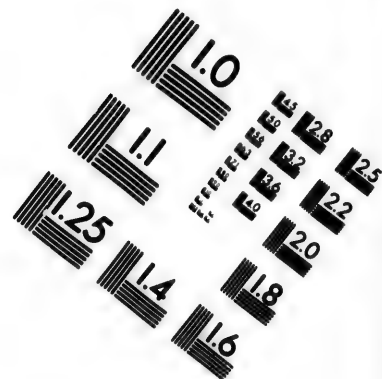
The natives of these islands are in general, above the middle size, and well made; they walk very gracefully, run nimbly, and are capable of bearing great fatigue; though, upon the whole, the men are somewhat inferior, in point of strength and activity, to the Friendly islanders, and the women less delicately limbed than those of Otaheite. Their complexion is rather darker than that of the Otaheitans, and they are not altogether so handsome a people. However, many of both sexes had fine open countenances; and the women in particular, had good eyes and teeth, and a sweetness and sensibility of look, which rendered them very engaging. Their hair is of a brownish black, and neither uniformly straight like that of the Indians of America, nor uniformly curling, as amongst the African negroes, but varying in this respect, like the hair of Europeans. One striking peculiarity, in the features of every part of this great nation, I do not remember to have seen any where mentioned, which is that, even in the handsomest faces, there is always a fulness of the nostril, without any flatness or spreading of the nose, that distinguishes them from Europeans.

Europeans. It is not improbable that this may be the effect of their usual mode of salutation, which is performed by pressing the ends of their noses together.

The same superiority that is observable in the persons of the *Erees*, through all the other islands, is found also here. Those whom we saw were, without exception, perfectly well formed; whereas the lower sort, besides their general inferiority, are subject to all the variety of make and figure that is seen in the populace of other countries. Instances of deformity are more frequent here, than in any of the other islands. Whilst we were cruising off Owhyhee, two dwarfs came on board, one an old man, four feet two inches high, but exactly proportioned, and the other a woman, nearly of the same height. We afterwards saw three natives, who were hump-backed, and a young man, born without hands or feet. Squinting is also very common amongst them; and a man, who they said, had been born blind, was brought to us to be cured. Besides these particular imperfections, they are in general very subject to boils and ulcers, which we attributed to the great quantity of salt they eat with their flesh and fish. The *Erees* are very free from these complaints; but many of them suffer still more dreadful effects from the immoderate use of the *ava*. Those who were the most affected by it, had their bodies covered with a white scurf, their eyes red and inflamed, their limbs emaciated, the whole frame trembling and paralytic, accompanied with a disability to raise the head. Though this drug does not appear universally to shorten life, as was evident from the cases of Terreeoboo, Kaoo, and some other chiefs, who were very old men, yet it invariably brings on an early and decrepid old age. It is fortunate that the use of it is made one of the peculiar privileges of the chiefs. The young son of Terreeoboo, who was about twelve years old, used to boast of his being admitted to drink *ava*, and shewed us, with great triumph, a small spot in his side that was growing scaly.

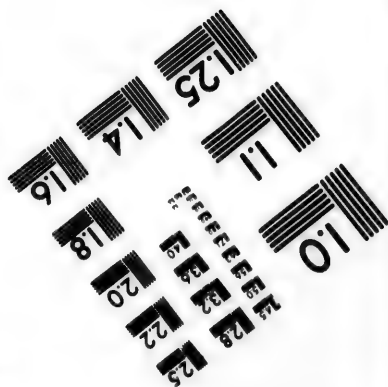
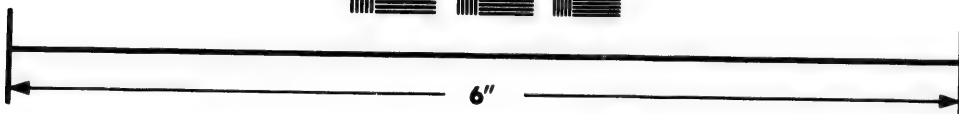
There





Resolution Test Chart Labels:

- 1.0
- 1.1
- 1.25
- 1.4
- 1.6
- 1.8
- 2.0
- 2.2
- 2.5
- 2.8
- 3.2
- 3.6
- 4.0
- 4.5
- 5.0
- 5.6
- 6.3
- 7.1
- 8.0
- 9.0
- 10.0



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.8 20 22 25 28
E E E E E
E E E E E

0.1
1.1
1.1
1.1
1.1
1.1

There is something very singular in the history of this pernicious drug. When Captain Cook first visited the Society islands, it was very little known among them. On his second voyage, he found the use of it very prevalent at Ulitea; but it had still gained very little ground at Otaheite. When we were last there, the dreadful havoc it had made was beyond belief, inasmuch that the Captain scarce knew many of his old acquaintances. At the Friendly Islands, it is constantly drunk by the chiefs, but so much diluted with water, that it does not appear to produce any bad effects. At Atooi also it is used with great moderation, and the chiefs are in consequence, a much finer set of men there than in any of the neighbouring islands. Our good friends, Kaireekaea and old Kaoo, were persuaded by us to refrain from it; and they recovered amazingly during the short time we afterward remained in the island.

Notwithstanding the irreparable loss we suffered from the sudden resentment and violence of these people, yet in justice to their general conduct, it must be acknowledged that they are of the most mild and affectionate disposition; equally remote from the extreme levity and fickleness of the Otaheiteans, and the distant gravity and reserve of the inhabitants of the Friendly Islands. They appear to live in the utmost harmony and friendship with one another. The women, who had children, were remarkable for their tender and constant attention to them; and the men would often lend their assistance in those domestic offices, with a willingness that does credit to their feelings.

It must however be observed, that they fall very short of the other islanders, in that best test of civilization, the respect paid to the women. Here they are not only deprived of the privilege of eating with the men, but the best sort of food are *tabooed*, or forbidden them. They are not allowed to eat pork, turtle, several kinds of fish, and some species of the plantains; and we were told that a poor girl got a terrible beating, for having eaten on board

bo
the
sel
per
reg

we
fem
wit
allo
pari
mar
kind
our
to re
with
In
these
peop
cepti
cour
rank
Th
comin
with
many
the if
from
purpo
We
their
woma
attenti
their
among
here.
The
the Fr
beards
Vol.

board our ship, one of these interdicted articles. In their domestic life, they appear to live almost by themselves, and though we did not observe any instance of personal ill-treatment, yet it was evident they had little regard or attention paid them.

The great hospitality and kindness with which we were received by them, have been already frequently remarked. The old people never failed of receiving us with tears of joy; seemed highly gratified with being allowed to touch us, and were constantly making comparisons between themselves and us, with the strongest marks of humility. The young women were not less kind and engaging; and till they found, notwithstanding our utmost endeavours to prevent it, that they had reason to repent of our acquaintance, attached themselves to us without the least reserve.

In justice however to the sex, it must be observed, that these ladies were probably all of the lower class of the people; for I am strongly inclined to believe, that excepting the few whose names are mentioned in the course of our narrative, we did not see any woman of rank during our stay amongst them.

Their natural capacity seems in no respect below the common standard of mankind. The eager curiosity with which they attended the armourer's forge, and the many expedients they had invented, even before we left the islands, for working the iron they had procured from us into such forms as were best adapted to their purposes, were strong proofs of docility and ingenuity.

We met with two instances of persons disordered in their minds; the one a man at Owhyhee, the other a woman at Oneeheow. It appeared, from the particular attention and respect paid to them, that the opinion of their being inspired by the divinity, which obtains among most of the nations of the East, is also received here.

The inhabitants of these islands differ from those of the Friendly isles, in suffering, almost universally, their beads to grow. There were indeed a few, amongst

whom was the old King, that cut it off entirely, and others that wore it only upon the upper lip. The same variety, in the manner of wearing the hair, is also observable here, as among the other islanders of the South Seas; besides which, they have a fashion, as far as we know, peculiar to themselves. They cut it close on each side of the head down to the ears.

Both sexes wear necklaces made of strings of small variegated shells; and an ornament, in the form of the handle of a cup, about two inches long, and half an inch broad, made of wood, stone, or ivory, finely polished, which is hung about the hair with fine threads of twisted hair, doubled sometimes an hundred fold. Instead of this ornament, some of them wear on their breasts a small human figure made of bone, suspended in the same manner.

The custom of *tattooing* the body, they have in common with the rest of the natives of the South Sea islands; but it is only at New Zealand, and the Sandwich islands, that they *tattoo* the face. They have a singular custom amongst them, the meaning of which we could never learn—that of *tattooing* the tip of the tongues of the females.

The dress of the men generally consists only of a piece of thick cloth called the *maro*, about ten or twelve inches broad, which they pass between the legs, and tie round the waist. This is the common dress of all ranks of people. Their mats, some of which are beautifully manufactured, are of various sizes, but mostly about five feet long and four broad. These they throw over their shoulders, and bring forward before; but they are seldom used, except in time of war, for which purpose they seem better adapted than for ordinary use, being of a thick and cumbersome texture, and capable of breaking the blow of a stone, or any blunt weapon. Their feet are generally bare, except when they have occasion to travel over the burnt stones, when they secure them with a sort of sandal, made of cords, twisted from the fibres of the cocoa-nut. Such is the ordinary dress of these islanders;

islanders; but they have another, appropriated to their Chiefs, and used on ceremonious occasions, consisting of a feathered cloak and helmet, which, in point of beauty and magnificence, is perhaps nearly equal to that of any nation in the world. These cloaks are made of different lengths in proportion to the rank of the wearer, some of them reaching no lower than the middle, others trailing on the ground. The inferior chiefs have also a short cloak, resembling the former, made of the long tail feathers of the cock, the tropic and man-of-war birds, with a broad border of the small and red yellow feathers, and a collar of the same.

These feathered dresses seemed to be exceedingly scarce, being appropriated to persons of the highest rank, and worn by the men only.

The exact resemblance between this habit, and the cloak and helmet formerly worn by the Spaniards, was too striking not to excite our curiosity to inquire, whether there were any probable grounds for supposing it to have been borrowed from them. After exerting every means in our power of obtaining information on this subject, we found that they had no immediate knowledge of any other nation whatever, nor any tradition remaining among them of these islands having been ever visited before by such ships as ours.

The common dress of the women bears a close resemblance to that of the men. They wrap round the waist a piece of cloth that reaches half way down the thighs, and sometimes in the cool of the evening they appeared with loose pieces of fine cloth thrown over their shoulders, like the women of Otaheite. The *pau* is another dress very frequently worn by the younger part of the sex. It is made of the thinnest and finest sort of cloth, wrapt several times round the waist, and descending to the leg, so as to have the appearance of a full short petticoat.

Their necklaces are made of shells, or of a hard, shining, red berry. Besides which they wear wreaths of dried flowers of the Indian mallow; and another

beautiful ornament, called *eraie*, which is generally put about the neck, but is sometimes tied like a garland round the hair, and sometimes worn in both these ways at once. It is a ruff, of the thickness of a finger, made in a curious manner of exceedingly small feathers, woven so close together, as to form a surface as smooth as that of the richest velvet. The ground was generally of a red colour, with alternate circles of green, yellow, and black.

At Atooi some of the women wore little figures of the turtle, neatly formed of wood or ivory, tied on their fingers in the manner we wear rings. Why this animal is thus particularly distinguished, I leave to the conjectures of the curious.

There remains to be mentioned another ornament (if such it may be called.) It is a kind of a mask, made of a large gourd, with holes cut in it for the eyes and nose. The top was stuck full of small green twigs, which at a distance had the appearance of an elegant waving plume; and from the lower part hung narrow stripes of cloth, resembling a beard. We never saw these masks worn but twice, and both times by a number of people together in a canoe, who came to the side of the ship, laughing and drolling, with an air of masquerading.

The food of the lower class of people consists principally of fish and vegetables; such as yams, sweet potatoes, tarrow, plantains, sugar-canes and bread-fruit. To these the people of a higher rank add the flesh of hogs and dogs, dressed in the same manner as at the Society islands. They also eat fowls of the same domestic kind with ours; but they are neither plentiful nor much esteemed by them. Their fish they salt, and preserve in gourd-shells; not as we at first imagined for the purpose of providing against any temporary scarcity, but from the preference they give to salted meats. For we also found that the *Erees* used to pickle pieces of pork in the same manner, and esteemed it a great delicacy.

They are exceedingly cleanly at their meals; and their mode of dressing both their animal and vegetable

food,

food, v
ours.
dose o
usual m
and ar
tioned,
plantain

The
simple,
the sun,
tire to r
canoes a
women
Towtows
fishing.

Their
nor reed
except d
they fun
tion of t
Islanders,

It is ve
are great
our draug
of squares
two feet l
eight squar
they mak
move from

There i
nder a p
ut and ru
he stones
onist wit
here he
re upon t
dds, of al
the part
Besides

food, was universally allowed to be greatly superior to ours. The chiefs constantly begin their meal with a dose of the extract of pepper-root, brewed after the usual manner. The women eat apart from the men, and are *tabooed*, or forbidden as has been already mentioned, the use of pork, turtle, and particular kinds of plantains.

The way of spending their time appears to be very simple, and to admit of little variety. They rise with the sun, and, after enjoying the cool of the evening, retire to rest a few hours after sunset. The making of canoes and mats forms the occupations of the *Erees*; the women are employed in manufacturing cloth, and the *Towtows* are principally engaged in the plantations and fishing.

Their music is of a rude kind, having neither flutes nor reeds nor instruments of any other sort that we saw, except drums of various sizes. But their songs, which they sung in parts, and accompany with a gentle motion of the arms, in the same manner as the Friendly Islanders, had a very pleasing effect.

It is very remarkable that the people of these islands are great gamblers. They have a game very much like our draughts; but, if one may judge from the number of squares, it is much more intricate. The board is about two feet long, and is divided into two hundred and thirty-eight squares; of which there are fourteen in a row, and they make use of black and white pebbles, which they move from square to square.

There is another game, which consists in hiding a stone under a piece of cloth, which one of the parties spreads out and rumples in such a manner that the place where the stone lies is difficult to be distinguished. The antagonist with a stick, then strikes the part of the cloth where he imagines the stone to be, and as the chances are upon the whole, considerably against his hitting it, odds, of all degrees, varying with the opinion of the skill of the parties, are laid on the side of him who hides.

Besides these games, they frequently amuse themselves

selves with racing-matches between the boys and girls; and here again they wager with great spirit. I saw a man, in a most violent rage, tearing his hair and beating his breast, after losing three hatchets at one of these races, which he had just before purchased from us with half his substance.

Swimming is not only a necessary art, in which both their men and women are more expert than any people we had hitherto seen, but a favourite diversion amongst them. One particular mode, in which they sometimes amused themselves with this exercise in Karakakooa Bay, appeared to us most perilous and extraordinary, and well deserving of a distinct relation.

The surf, which breaks on the coast round the bay, extends to the distance of about one hundred and fifty yards from the shore, within which space, the surges of the sea, accumulating from the shallowness of the water, are dashed against the beach with prodigious violence. Whenever from stormy weather, or any extraordinary swell at sea, the impetuosity of the surf is increased to its utmost height, they chuse that time for this amusement, which is performed in the following manner: Twenty or thirty of the natives, taking each a narrow board rounded at the ends, set out together from the shore. The first wave they meet they plunge under, and suffering it to roll over them rise beyond it, and make the best of their way by swimming out into the sea. The second wave is encountered in the same manner with the first; the great difficulty consisting in seizing the proper moment of diving under it, which, if missed, the person is caught by the surf, and driven back again with great violence, and all his dexterity is then required to prevent himself from being dashed against the rocks. As soon as they have gained, by these repeated efforts, the smooth water beyond the surf, they lay themselves at length on their board and prepare for their return. As the surf consists of a number of waves, of which every third is remarked to be always much larger than the others, and to flow higher on the shore, the rest breaking

in the intermediate space, their first object is to place themselves on the summit of the largest surge, by which they are driven along with amazing rapidity toward the shore. If by mistake they should place themselves on one of the smaller waves, which breaks before they reach the land, or should not be able to keep their plank in a proper direction to the top of the swell, they are left exposed to the fury of the next, and to avoid it are obliged again to dive and regain the place from which they set out. Those who succeed in their object of reaching the shore, have still the greatest danger to encounter. The coast being guarded by a chain of rocks, with here and there a small opening between them, they are obliged to steer their board through one of these, or, in case of failure, to quit it before they reach the rocks, and plunging under the wave make the best of their way back again. This is reckoned very disgraceful, and is also attended with the loss of the board, which I have often seen with great terror dashed to pieces, at the very moment the islander quitted it. The boldness and address with which we saw them perform these difficult and dangerous manœuvres, was altogether astonishing, and is scarcely to be credited.

An accident, of which I was a near spectator, shews at how early a period they are so far familiarized to the water, as both to lose all fears of it, and to set its dangers at defiance. A canoe being overset in which was a woman with her children, one of them an infant, who I am convinced was not more than four years old, seemed highly delighted with what had happened, swimming about at its ease, and playing a hundred tricks, till the canoe was put to rights again.

Besides the amusements I have already mentioned, the young children have one which was much played at, and showed no small degree of dexterity. They take a short stick with a peg sharpened at both ends, running through one extremity of it, and extending about an inch on each side; and throwing up a ball made of green

green leaves moulded together, and secured with twine, they catch it on the point of the peg; and immediately, throwing it up again from the peg, they turn the stick round, and thus keep catching it on each peg alternately, without missing it, for a considerable time. They are not less expert at another game of the same nature, tossing up in the air, and catching in their turns, a number of these balls; so that we frequently saw little children thus keep in motion five at a time. With this latter play the young people likewise divert themselves at the Friendly islands.

Their cloth is made of the same materials, and in the same manner as at the Friendly and Society islands. That which is designed to be painted is of a thick and strong texture, several folds being beat and incorporated together; after which it is cut in breadths about two or three feet wide, and is painted with great taste and regularity of design.

The business of painting belongs entirely to the women, and is called *kipparee*; and it is remarkable that they all gave the same name to our writing. The young women would often take the pen out of our hands, and shew us that they knew the use of it as well as we did, at the same time telling us that our pens were not so good as theirs. They looked upon a sheet of written paper, as a piece of cloth stripped after the fashion of our country, and it was not without the utmost difficulty that we could make them understand that our figures had a meaning in them which theirs had not.

Their mats are made of the leaves of the pandanus; and, as well as their cloths, are beautifully worked in a variety of patterns, and stained of different colours. Some have a ground of pale green, spotted with squares, of romboids of red: others are of a straw colour, spotted with green, and others are worked with beautiful stripes, either in straight or waving lines of red and brown. In this article of manufacture, whether we regard the strength, fineness, or beauty, they certainly excel the whole world.

Their

bor
or
but
Cor
ma
and
to o
T
and
of fir
tree,
our
the b
is ma
Th
some
twelv
purpo
respec
differ
their g
drical
tackle
their fa
bles &
likewit
shape o
keep th
scoring
them th
neat an
The
to three
district
ed at O
of these
by the
put the
Vol. II

Their fishing-hooks are made of mother-of-pearl, bone, or wood, pointed and barbed with small bones, or tortoise-shell. They are of various sizes and forms; but the most common are about three inches long.— Considering the materials of which these hooks are made, their strength and neatness are really astonishing; and in fact we found them, upon trial, much superior to our own.

The line which they use for fishing, for making nets, and for other domestic purposes, is of different degrees of fineness, and is made of the bark of the *touta*, or cloth tree, neatly and evenly twisted, in the same manner as our common twine. They have a finer sort, made of the bark of a small shrub called *areemak*; and the finest is made of human hair.

The gourds, which grow to so enormous a size, that some of them are capable of containing from ten to twelve gallons, are applied to all manner of domestic purposes; and in order to fit them the better to their respective uses, they have the ingenuity to give them different forms, by tying bandages round them during their growth. Thus, some of them are of a long cylindrical form, as best adapted to contain their fishing-tackle; others are of a dish form, and these serve to hold their salt, and salted provisions, their puddings, vegetables &c. which two sorts have neat close covers, made likewise of the gourd; others again are exactly the shape of a bottle with a long neck, and in these they keep their water. They have likewise a method of scoring them with a heated instrument, so as to give them the appearance of being painted, in a variety of neat and elegant designs.

The people of these islands are manifestly divided into three classes, the first are the Erees, or Chiefs, of each district; one of whom is superior to the rest, and is called at Owhyhee *Eree-taboo*, and *Eree Moe*. By the first of these words they express his absolute authority; and by the latter, all are obliged to prostrate themselves (or put themselves to sleep, as the word signifies) in his

presence. The second class are those who appear to enjoy a right of property, without authority. The third are the *towtows*, or servants, who have neither rank nor property.

The great power and high rank of Terrecoboo, the *Erce-taboo* of Owhyhee, was very evident from the manner in which he was received at Karakakooa, on his first arrival. All the natives were seen prostrated at the entrance of their houses; and the canoes for two days before were *tabooed*, or forbidden to go out, till he took off the restraint.

The Chiefs exercise their power over one another in the most haughty and oppressive manner. Of this I shall give two instances. A Chief of the lower order had behaved with great civility to one of our officers; and in return, I carried him on board, and introduced him to Captain Cook, who invited him to dine with us. While we were at table, Pareea, who was Chief of a superior order, entered, whose face but too plainly manifested his indignation at seeing our guest in so honourable a situation. He immediately seized him by the hair of the head, and was proceeding to drag him out of the cabin, when the Captain interfered; and after a deal of altercation, all the indulgence we could obtain, without coming to a quarrel with Pareea, was, that our guest should be suffered to remain, being seated upon the floor, whilst Pareea filled his place at the table. At another time, when Terrecoboo first came on board the *Resolution*, Maiha-maiha, who attended him, finding Pareea on deck, turned him out of the ship in the most ignominious manner.

The religion of these people resembles, in most of its principal features, that of the Society and Friendly islands. The Morais, their *Whattas*, their idols, their sacrifices, and their sacred songs, all of which they have in common with each other, are convincing proofs, that their religious notions are derived from the same source.

It has been mentioned, that the title of *Orono*, with all its honours, was given to Captain Cook; and it is also certain

certain that they regarded us, generally, as a race of people superior to themselves; and used often to say, that the great *Eatoa* dwelled in our country. The little image we have before mentioned, they said, was Terreeoboo's god; and that he also resided amongst us. They called him Koonoorackaiee.

In a bay to the Southward of Karakakooa, a party of our gentlemen were conducted to a large house, in which they found the black figure of a man, resting on his fingers and toes, with his hand inclined backward; the limbs well formed and exactly proportioned, and the whole beautifully polished. This figure the natives called *Mace*; and round it were placed thirteen others of rude and distorted shapes, which they said were the *Eatoas* of several deceased Chiefs, whose names they recounted. The place was full of whattas, on which lay the remains of their offerings. They likewise give a place in their houses to many ludicrous and some obscene idols, like the Priapus of the ancients.

Human sacrifices are more frequent here, according to the account of the natives themselves, than in any other islands we visited: These horrid rites are not only had recourse to upon the commencement of war, and preceding great battles, and other signal enterprises; but the death of any considerable Chief calls for a sacrifice of one or more *Tewterws*, according to his rank; and we were told that men were destined to suffer on the death of Terreeoboo.

To this class of their customs may also be referred that of knocking out their fore-teeth, as a propitiatory sacrifice to the *Eatoa*, to avert any danger or mischief to which they might be exposed.

The word *taboo*, implies, laying restraint upon persons and things. Thus they say, the natives were *tabooed*, or the bay was *tabooed*, and so of the rest. This word is also used to express any thing sacred, or eminent, or devoted. Thus the King of Owhyhee was called *Eree-taboo*; a human victim, *tangata-taboo*; and in the same manner among the Friendly islanders, Ton-

ga, the island where the King resides, is named *Tonga-taboo*. The women are said to be *tabooed* when they are forbidden to eat certain kind of meats.

Transactions during the Second Expedition to the North, by the Way of Kamischatka; and on the Return home, by the Way of Canton, and the Cape of Good Hope, from March 1779, to August 1780.

ON the 15th of March, at seven in the morning, we weighed anchor, and passing to the N. of Tahoorā, stood on to the S. W. On the 23d the wind, which had been moderate for some time, freshened and increased to a strong gale, which split some of our old sails, and made the running rigging very frequently give way. This gale lasted twelve hours; it then became more moderate, and continued so till the 25th at noon, when we entirely lost it, and had only a very light air.

On the 30th, the winds and unsettled state of the weather induced Captain Clerke to alter his plan, and at six in the evening, we began to steer N. W. which we continued till the 6th of April, when we lost the trade wind. As the old running ropes were constantly breaking in the late gales we reeved what new ones we had left, and made such other preparations, as were necessary for the very different climate with which we were now shortly to encounter. The fine weather we met with between the tropics had not been idly spent. The carpenters found sufficient employment in repairing the boats. The best bower cable had been so much damaged that we were obliged to cut forty fathoms from it. The airing of sails and other stores, which, from the leakiness of the decks and sides of the ships, were perpetually

petually
some part

Besides

themselves

ject the pr

nished a co

hands. T

Cook, of ai

washing th

gun-powde

For some t

sailors old j

and import

who are un

they are so

the care of t

very idea of

of infants.

their own

whole crew

finished. It

during our v

made them

attention to t

occurred to

that, upon o

ackets, and

kicked about

was generall

make anothe

course picke

asks, restore

In the afte

loating by t

welve or fou

the larboard-

een; whic

lands, had

umps, mak

petually subject to be wet, had now become a troublesome part of our duty.

Besides these cares, which had regard only to the ships themselves, there were others, which had for their object the preservation of the health of the crews that furnished a constant occupation to a great number of our hands. The standing orders, established by Captain Cook, of airing the bedding, placing fires between decks, washing them with vinegar, and smoking them with gun-powder, were observed without any intermission. For some time past, even the operation of mending the sailors old jackets had risen into a duty both of difficulty and importance. It may be necessary to inform those who are unacquainted with the habits of seamen, that they are so accustomed in ships of war to be directed in the care of themselves by their officers, that they lose the very idea of fore-sight, and contract the thoughtlessness of infants. I am sure that if our people had been left to their own discretion alone, we should have had the whole crew naked, before the voyage had been half finished. It was natural to expect that their experience, during our voyage to the North last year, would have made them sensible of the necessity of paying some attention to these matters; but if such reflections ever occurred to them, their impression was so transitory, that, upon our return to the tropical climates, their fur jackets, and the rest of their cold country clothes, were kicked about the decks as things of no value; though it was generally known, in both ships, that we were to make another voyage toward the pole. They were of course picked up by the officers; and, being put into trunks, restored about this time to the owners.

In the afternoon we observed some of the sheathing floating by the ship; and, on examination, found that twelve or fourteen feet had been washed off from under the larboard-bow, where we supposed the leak to have been; which, ever since our leaving the Sandwich Islands, had kept the people almost constantly at the pumps, making twelve inches water an hour. This day,

day, April 7th, we saw a number of small crabs of a pale blue colour; and had again, in company, a few albatrosses and sheerwaters.

On the 12th, the wind came gradually round to the E. and increased to so strong a gale, as obliged us to strike our top-gallant yards, and brought us under the lower sails, and the main top sail close reefed. Unfortunately we were upon the tack which was the most disadvantageous for our leak. But as we had always been able to keep it under with the hand-pumps, it gave us no great uneasiness, till the 13th, about six in the afternoon, when we were greatly alarmed by a sudden inundation that deluged the whole space between decks. The water, which had lodged in the coal-hole, not finding a sufficient vent into the well, had forced up the platforms over it, and in a moment set every thing afloat. Our situation was indeed exceedingly distressing; nor did we immediately see any means of relieving ourselves. At last we thought of cutting a hole through the bulkhead (or partition) that separated the coal-hole from the fore-hold, and by that means to make a passage for the body of the water into the well. As soon as a passage was made, the greatest part of the water emptied itself into the well, and enabled us to get out the rest with buckets. But the leak was now so much increased that we were obliged to keep one half of the people constantly pumping and baling till the noon of the 15th. Our men bore, with great cheerfulness, this excessive fatigue, which was much increased by their having no dry place to sleep in; and on this account we began to serve their full allowance of grog.

The weather now becoming more moderate, and the swell less heavy, we were enabled to clear away the rest of the casks from the fore-hold, and to open a sufficient passage for the water to the pumps.

As we were now approaching the place where a great extent of land is said to have been seen by Dema Gamu, we were glad of the opportunity which the course we were steering gave, of contributing to remove the doubt

if any
ed di
this d
fleere
while
whose
ploded
The
felt the
which
inconve
On t
the sails
ficulties
so leaky
sails in,
state of
On the
the after
but got n
of line.
flocks of
is usually
but we ha
time we h
On the
ropes wer
force ther
On the
in mount
N. & E. to
at three c
taken this
a thick fo
stood in to
dismal an
appears st
ne ground
levation,

if any should be still entertained, relative to this pretended discovery. After standing off and on, the whole of this day, without seeing any thing of the land, we again steered to the northward, not thinking it worth our while to lose time in search of an object, the opinion of whose existence had been already pretty generally exploded.

The sudden alteration from the sultry heat which we felt the beginning of this month to the extreme cold which we now experienced, was attended with great inconvenience to us.

On the 18th, we had a brisk gale that split almost all the sails we had bent. To add to Captain Clerke's difficulties, the sea was in general so rough, and the ships so leaky, that the sail-makers had no place to repair the sails in, except his apartments, which, in his declining state of health, was a serious inconvenience to him.

On the 21st, we saw a whale and a land bird; and in the afternoon, the water looking muddy, we sounded, but got no ground with an hundred and forty fathoms of line. During the three preceding days we saw large flocks of wild fowl, of a species resembling ducks. This is usually considered as a proof of the vicinity of land; but we had no other signs of it since the 16th, in which time we had run upward of an hundred and fifty leagues.

On the 22d, the cold was exceedingly severe, and the ropes were so frozen that it was with difficulty we could force them through the blocks.

On the 23d, at six in the morning, the land appeared in mountains covered with snow, and extending from N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. to S. W. a high conical rock, bearing S. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. at three or four leagues distance. We had no sooner taken this imperfect view, than we were covered with a thick fog. As soon as the weather cleared up, we stood in to make a nearer view of the land, and a more dismal and dreary prospect I never beheld. The coast appears straight and uniform, having no inlets or bays; the ground from the shore rises in hills of a moderate elevation, behind which are ranges of mountains, whose summits

summits were lost in the clouds. The whole scene was entirely covered with snow, except the sides of some of the cliffs, which rose too abruptly from the sea for the snow to lie upon them.

The wind continued blowing very strong from the N. E. with thick hazy weather and sleet, from the 24th till the 28th. The ship appeared to be a complete mass of ice; the throwds were so incruusted with it, as to measure in circumference more than double their usual size; and in short the experience of the oldest seamen among us had never met with any thing like the continued showers of sleet, and the extreme cold which we now encountered. Indeed the severity of the weather, added to the great difficulty of working the ships, and the labour of keeping the pumps constantly going, rendered the service too hard for many of the crew some of whom were frost-bitten, and others laid up with bad colds. Here we lost sight of the Discovery; but as we were now so near the place of rendezvous, this gave us no great uneasiness.

On the 28th, in the morning, the weather at last cleared, and the wind fell to a light breeze from the same quarter as before. We had a fine warm day, and as we now began to expect a thaw, the men were employed in breaking the ice from off the rigging, masts, and sails, in order to prevent its falling on our heads. About three in the afternoon, a fair wind sprung up from the southward, with which we stood in for Awatska bay, having regular soundings from twenty-two to seven fathoms.

The mouth of the bay opens in a N. N. W. direction. The land on the S. side, is of a moderate height; to the northward, it rises into a bluff head, which is the highest part of the coast. On the north head there is a look-out house, which when, the Russians expect any of their ships upon the coast, is used as a light house. There was a flag-staff on it; but we saw no sign of any person being there.

Having passed the mouth of the bay, which is about

four
tween
four,
flocks
wife
pigeon
our g
which
ka, w
confid
point
houses
in all t
withst
Russia
to be F
rous an
leave to
that ou
able tha
mity of
summer
feelings
would h
Durin
tide, and
the bay,
Oonalas
our cou
having
we got
from the
accomp
and cu
hind to
I belie
or the b
could no
town.
Vol. II

four miles long, we opened a large circular basin of twenty-five miles in circumference; and at half past four, came to an anchor in six fathoms water. Great flocks of wild-fowl were seen of various species; likewise ravens, eagles, and large flights of Greenland pigeons. We examined every corner of the bay with our glasses in search of the town of St Peter and St Paul; which, according to the accounts given us at Oonalashka, we had conceived to be a place of some strength and consideration. At length we discovered, on a narrow point of the land to the N. N. E. a few miserable log-houses and some conical huts, raised on poles, amounting in all to about thirty; which, from their situation, notwithstanding all the respect we wished to entertain for a Russian *ostrog*, we were under the necessity of concluding to be Petropaulowka. However in justice to the generous and hospitable treatment we found here, I shall beg leave to anticipate the reader's curiosity, by assuring him that our disappointment proved to be more of a laughable than a serious nature. For in this wretched extremity of the earth, barricaded with ice, and covered with summer snow, in a poor miserable port, we met with feelings of humanity, joined to a greatness of mind, which would have done honour to any nation or climate.

During the night much ice drifted by us with the tide, and at daylight I was sent with the boats to examine the bay, and deliver the letters we had brought from Oonalashka to the Russian commander. We directed our course toward the village I have just mentioned, and having proceeded as far as we were able with the boats, we got upon the ice, which extended near half a mile from the shore. Mr Webber and two of the seamen accompanied me, whilst the master took the pinnace and cutter to finish the survey, leaving the jolly-boat behind to carry us back.

I believe the inhabitants had not yet seen either the ship or the boats; for even after we had got on the ice, we could not perceive any signs of a living creature in the town. By the time we had advanced a little way on the

ice, we observed a few men hurrying backward and forward, and presently after a sledge drawn by dogs with one of the inhabitants in it, came down to the sea-side opposite to us. Whilst we were gazing at this unusual sight, and admiring the great civility of this stranger, which we imagined had brought him to our assistance, the man, after viewing us for some time very attentively, turned short round, and went off with great speed toward the *ostrog*. We were not less chagrined than disappointed at this abrupt departure, as we began to find our journey over the ice attended not only with great difficulty, but even with danger. We sunk at every step almost knee deep in the snow, and though we found tolerable footing at the bottom, yet the weak parts of the ice not being discoverable, we were constantly exposed to the risk of breaking through it. This accident at last actually happened to myself; for, stepping on quickly over a suspicious spot, in order to press with less weight upon it, I came upon a second before I could stop myself, which broke under me, and in I fell. Luckily, I rose clear of the ice; and a man that was a little way behind with a boat-hook throwing it to me, I laid it across some loose pieces near me, and by that means was enabled to get upon firm ice again.

When we were within a quarter of a mile of the *ostrog*, we perceived a body of armed men marching towards us, consisting of about thirty soldiers, headed by a decent looking person, with a cane in his hand. He halted within a few yards of us, and drew up his men in a martial and good order. I delivered to him Ismyloff's letters, and endeavoured to make him understand, as well as I could (though I afterward found in vain), that we were English, and had brought them papers from Onalashka. After having examined us attentively, he began to conduct us toward the village in great silence and solemnity, frequently halting his men to form them in different manners, and make them perform several parts of their manual exercise.

Though I was all this time in my wet clothes shivering

ing
con
ly ab
this
the
the h
whic
order
host
son, v
port.
the ot
a tow
ka, w
usually
It is
the pre
nor inc
the ice
them v
rison v
field pi
der's ho
powder
The
tained,
Nothing
behavio
sioned b
hot, but
ed my
to do, b
we wer
doubt v
the shor
with for
soup an
sliced, v
large bi

ing with cold, and sufficiently inclined to the most unconditional submission, without having my fears violently alarmed, yet it was impossible not to be diverted with this military parade, notwithstanding it was attended with the most unreasonable delay. At length we arrived at the house of the commanding officer of the party, into which we were ushered; and after no small stir in giving orders, and disposing of the military without doors, our host made his appearance, accompanied by another person, whom we understood to be the secretary of the port. One of Ismyloff's letters was now opened, and the other sent off by a special messenger, to Bolcheretsk, a town on the west side of the peninsula, of Kamtschatka, where the Russian commander of this province usually resides.

It is very remarkable that they had not seen the ship the preceding day, when we came to anchor in the bay, nor indeed this morning, till our boats were pretty near the ice. The panic with which the discovery had struck them we found had been very considerable. The garrison was immediately put under arms. Two small field pieces were placed at the entrance of the commander's house, and pointed toward our boats; and shot, powder, and lighted matches, were all ready at hand.

The officer, in whose house we were at present entertained, was a serjeant, and the commander of the *efreg*. Nothing could exceed the kindness and hospitality of his behaviour, after he had recovered from the alarm occasioned by our arrival. We found the house insufferably hot, but exceedingly neat and clean. After I had changed my clothes, which the serjeant's civility enabled me to do, by furnishing me with a complete suit of his own, we were invited to sit down to dinner, which I have no doubt was the best he could procure; and, considering the shortness of time he had to provide it, was managed with some ingenuity. As there was not time to prepare soup and bouilli, we had in their stead some cold beef sliced, with hot water poured over it. We had next a large bird roasted, of a species with which I was unacquainted

quainted but of a very excellent taste. After having eaten a part of this, it was taken off, and we were served with fish dressed two different ways; and soon after the bird again made its appearance in savory and sweet *pates*. Our liquor, of which I shall have to speak hereafter, was of the kind called by the Russians *quafs*, and was much the worst part of the entertainment. The serjeant's wife brought in several dishes herself, and was not permitted to sit down at table. Having finished our repast, during which it is hardly necessary to remark that our conversation was confined to a few bows, and other signs of mutual respect, we endeavoured to open to our host the cause and objects of our visit to this port. As Ismyloff had probably written to them on the same subject in the letters we had before delivered, he appeared very readily to conceive our meaning; but as there was unfortunately no one in the place that could talk any other language except Russian or Kamtschadale, we found the utmost difficulty in comprehending the information he meant to convey to us. After some time spent in these endeavours to understand one another, we conceived the sum of the intelligence we had procured to be, that though no supply, either of provisions or naval stores were to be had at this place, yet that these articles were in great plenty at Bolcheretsk. That the commander would most probably be very willing to give us what we wanted; but that, till the serjeant had received orders from him, neither he nor his people, nor the natives, could even venture to go on board the ship.

It was now time for us to take our leave; and, as my clothes were still too wet to put on, I was obliged to have recourse again to the serjeant's benevolence, for his leave to carry those I had borrowed of him on board. This request was complied with very cheerfully, and a sledge, drawn by five dogs, with a driver, was immediately provided for each of our party. The sailors were highly delighted with this mode of conveyance; and what diverted them still more was, that the two boat-hooks had also a sledge appropriated to themselves.

These

Thes
well
ed, t
safety
for us
On
towan
and m
work
ble du
their v
with g
tles of
ceptabl
return
trouta
for tho
rious k
shy tha

In th
very sta
to her a
by us.
on the 2
they fou
when th
the entra
firing gu
ing after
tured in.
The fo
drive int
to inquir
Commam
serjeant's
quence o
rival. B
hundred
St Paul's

These sledges are so light, and their construction so well adapted to the purposes for which they are intended, that they went with great expedition, and perfect safety over the ice, which it would have been impossible for us, with all our caution, to have passed on foot.

On our return, we found the boats towing the ships toward the village; and at seven we got close to the ice, and moored. Next morning the carpenters were set to work to stop the leak, which had given us so much trouble during our last run. Several of our gentlemen paid their visits to the serjeant, by whom they were received with great civility; and Capt. Clerke sent him two bottles of rum, which he understood would be the most acceptable present he could make him, and received in return some fine fowls of the grouse kind, and twenty trouts. Our sportsmen met with but indifferent success; for though the bay swarmed with flocks of ducks of various kinds, and Greenland pigeons, yet they were so shy that they could not come within shot of them.

In the morning of the 1st of May, seeing the Discovery standing into the bay, a boat was immediately sent to her assistance; and in the afternoon she moored close by us. They told us that after the weather cleared up on the 28th, the day on which she had parted company, they found themselves to leeward of the bay, and that when they got abreast of it the following day, and saw the entrance choaked up with ice, they stood off, after firing guns, concluding we could not be here; but finding afterward it was only loose drift ice, they had ventured in.

The following morning, on our observing two sledges drive into the village, Captain Clerke sent me on shore, to inquire whether any message was arrived from the Commander of Kamtschatka, which, according to the serjeant's account, might now be expected, in consequence of the intelligence that had been sent of our arrival. Bolcheretfk, by the usual route, is about one hundred and thirty-five English miles from St Peter and St Paul's. Our dispatches were sent off in a sledge drawn

drawn by dogs, on the 29th, about noon. And the answer arrived, as we afterwards found, early this morning; so that they were only a little more than three days and a half in performing a journey of two hundred and seventy miles.

The return of the Commander's answer was, however, concealed from us for the present; and I was told, on my arrival at the serjeant's, that we should hear from him the next day. Whilst I was on shore, the boat which had brought me, together with another belonging to the Discovery, were set fast in the ice, which a southerly wind had driven from the other side of the bay. On seeing them entangled, the Discovery's launch had been sent to their assistance, but soon shared the same fate; and in a short time, the ice had surrounded them near a quarter of a mile deep. This obliged us to stay on shore till evening, when finding no prospect of getting the boats off, some of us went in sledges to the edge of the ice, and were taken off by boats sent from the ship, and the rest staid on shore all night.

It continued to freeze hard during the night, but before morning, on the 24th, a change of wind drifted away the floating ice, and set the boats at liberty, without their having sustained the smallest damage.

About ten o'clock in the forenoon, we saw several sledges driving down to the edge of the ice, and sent a boat to conduct the persons who were in them on board. One of these was a Russian merchant from Bolcheretsk, named Fedositsch, and the other a German, called Port, who had brought a letter from Major Behm, the Commander of Kamtschatka, to Captain Clerke. When they had got to the edge of the ice, and saw distinctly the size of the ships, which lay within about two hundred yards from them, they appeared to be exceedingly alarmed; and before they would venture to embark, desired two of our boat's crew might be left on shore as hostages for their safety. We afterwards found that Himyloff, in his letter to the Commander, had misrepresented us, for what reasons we could not conceive.

as two small trading boats, and that the serjeant, who had only seen the ships at a distance, had not in his dispatches, rectified the mistake.

When they arrived on board, we still found from their cautious and timorous behaviour, that they were under some unaccountable apprehensions; and an uncommon degree of satisfaction was visible in their countenances, on the German's finding a person amongst us, with whom he could converse. This was Mr Webber, who spoke that language exceedingly well. Mr Port being introduced to Captain Clerke, delivered to him the Commander's letter, which was written in German, inviting him and his officers to Bolcheretsk. Mr Port, at the same time acquainted him, that the Major had conceived a very wrong idea of the size of the ships, and of the service we were engaged in; Ismyloff in his letter, having represented us as two small English packet boats, and cautioned him to be on his guard; insinuating that he suspected us to be no better than pirates. In consequence of this letter, he said, there had been various conjectures formed about us at Bolcheretsk; that the Major thought it most probable we were on a trading scheme, and for that reason had sent down a merchant to us; but that the officer who was second in command, was of opinion we were French, and come with some hostile intention, and were for taking measures accordingly.

We could not help being much diverted with the fears and apprehensions of these good people, and particularly with the account Mr Port gave us of the serjeant's wary proceedings the day before. On seeing me come on shore, in company with some other gentlemen, he had made him, and the merchant, who arrived in the sledges we had seen come in the morning, hide themselves in his kitchen, and listen to our conversation with one another, in hopes that by this means, they might discover whether we were really English or not.

Being now enabled to converse with the Russians, by the aid of our interpreter, our first enquiries were directed

rected to the means of procuring a supply of fresh provisions and naval stores; from the want of which we had been for some time in great distress. On inquiry, it appeared that the whole stock of live cattle, which the country about the bay could furnish, amounted only to two heifers; and these the serjeant very readily promised to procure us. Our applications were next made to the merchant, but we found the terms, upon which he offered to serve us, so exorbitant, that Captain Clerke thought it necessary to send an officer to visit the Commander at Bolcheretsk, and to inquire into the price of stores at that place.

Captain Clerke having thought proper to fix on me for this service, I received orders together with Mr Webber, who was to accompany me as an interpreter, to be ready to set out the next day.

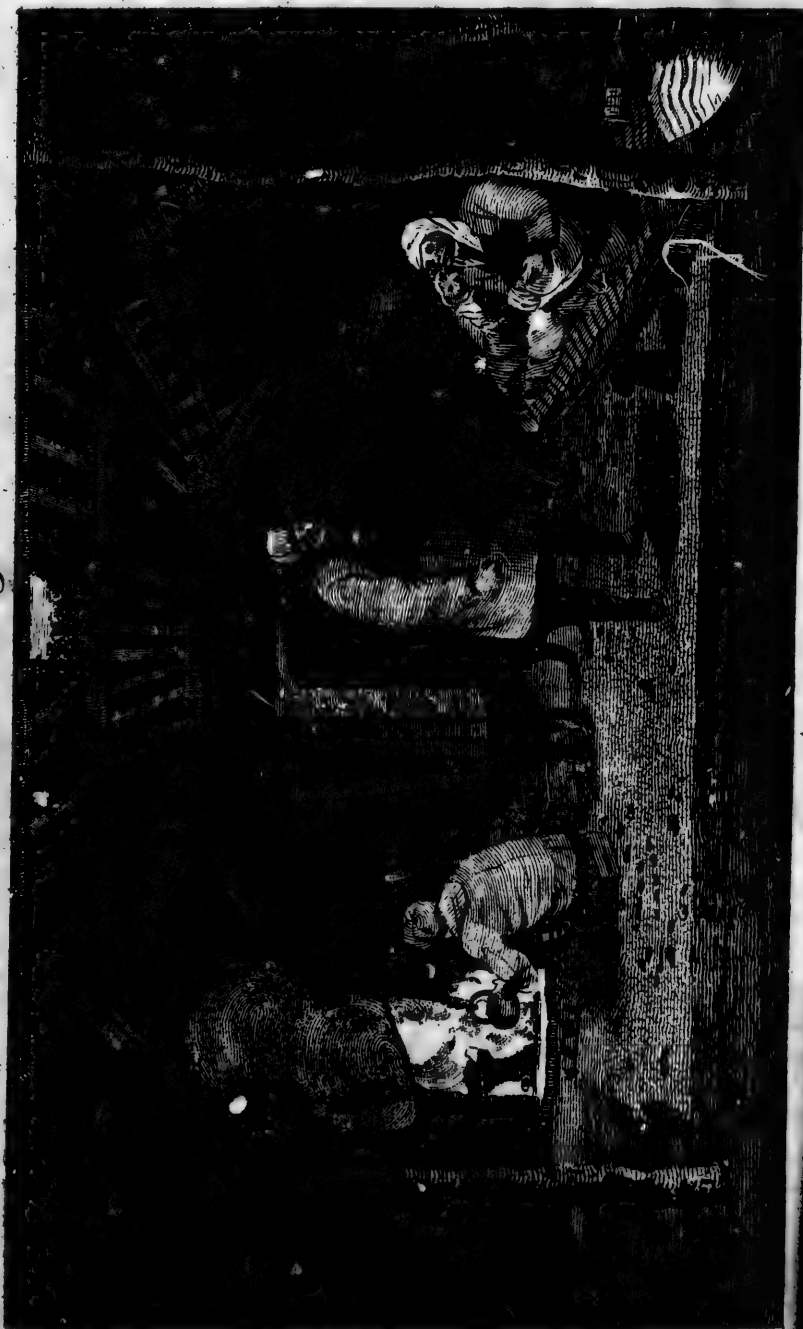
Captain Gore was now added to our party, and we were attended by Messrs Port and Fedositsch, with two cossacks, and were provided by our conductors with warm furred cloathing; a precaution which we soon found very necessary, as it began to snow briskly just after we set out. At eight o'clock, being stopped by shoal water, about a mile from the mouth of the river, some small canoes belonging to the Kamtschadales, took up us and our baggage, and carried us over a spit of sand, which is thrown up by the rapidity of the river, and which they told us was continually shifting. When we had crossed this shoal, the water again deepened; and here we found a commodious boat, built and shaped like a Norway yawl, ready to convey us up the river, together with canoes for our baggage.

The mouth of the Awatik is about a quarter of a mile broad; and as we advanced, it narrowed very gradually.

We were pushed forward by six men, with long poles, for ten hours. The fatigue the men had already undergone, and the difficulty of navigating the river, which would have been much increased by the darkness of the night, obliged us to give up all thoughts of continuing our journey that evening.

We

re
it
e
to
de
h
ce
n-
of
ne
/r
rr,
ve
wo
th
on
uft
by
er,
ok
ad,
nd
en
nd
ike
to-
f a
ra-
lea,
er-
ich
the
ng
We



W
had
or C
comi
better
river.
lashee
skins,
for us
ple be
expert
the sea
watersfi
some
were en
fed out
This
river, an
houles r
summer
ling of t
Russian
like all t
apartmen
it, was a
househol
not less
our host,
compensa
Whilst
guests of a
been scare
habitable g
shape was
examinatio
ford Lond
lence, ou
be anxio
us. Th
Vol. II.—N

We set out as soon as it was light in the morning, and had not advanced far before we were met by the *Toion*, or Chief of Karatchin, who had been apprized of our coming and had provided canoes that were lighter, and better contrived for navigating the higher parts of the river. A commodious vessel, consisting of two canoes lashed close together with cross spars, lined with bear skins, and furnished with fur cloaks, was also provided for us. We now went on very rapidly, the *Toion*'s people being both stout and fresh, and remarkable for their expertness in this business. At ten we got to the *ostrog*, the seat of his command, when we were received at the waterside by the Kamtschadale men and women, and some Russian servants belonging to Fedositsch, who were employed in making canoes. They were all dressed out in their best clothes.

This *ostrog* was pleasantly situated by the side of the river, and consisted of three log-houses; three *jourts*, or houses made under ground; and nineteen *balagans*, or summer habitations. We were conducted to the dwelling of the *Toion*, who was a plain decent man, born of a Russian woman by a Kamtschadale father. His house, like all the rest in this country, was divided into two apartments. A long narrow table, with a bench round it, was all the furniture we saw in the outer; and the household stuff of the inner, which was the kitchen, was not less simple and scanty. But the kind attention of our host, and the hearty welcome we received, more than compensated for the poverty of his lodgings.

Whilst we were at dinner in this miserable hut, the guests of a people, with whose existence we had before been scarcely acquainted, and at the extremity of the habitable globe, a solitary half-worn pewter spoon, whose shape was familiar to us, attracted our attention; and on examination we found it stamped on the back with the word *London*. I cannot pass over this circumstance in silence, out of gratitude for the many pleasant thoughts, the anxious hopes, and tender remembrances it excited in us. Those who have experienced the effects that

long absence and extreme distance from their native country produce on the mind, will readily conceive the pleasure such trifling incidents can give.

We were now to quit the river, and perform the next part of our journey on sledges.

After walking about the village, which contained nothing remarkable, we returned to supper, and afterwards took a short repose; but we were soon awakened by the melancholy howlings of the dogs, which continued all the time our baggage was lashing upon the sledges; but as soon as they were yoked, and we were all prepared to set out, this changed into a light cheerful yelping, which intirely ceased the instant they marched off.— But before we set out, the reader may expect to be made more particularly acquainted with this curious mode of travelling.

I brought one of these sledges over with me, and it is now in the possession of Sir Ashton Lever.* The body is about four feet and a half long, and a foot wide, made in the form of a crescent of light tough wood, strongly bound together with wicker work; which, in those belonging to the better sort of people, is elegantly stained of a red and blue colour, and the seat covered with bear skins, or other furs. It is supported by four legs, about two feet high, which rest on two long flat pieces of wood, five or six inches broad, extending a foot at each end beyond the body of the sledge. They are seldom used to carry more than one person at a time, who sits aside, resting his feet on the lower part of the sledge, and carrying his provisions and other necessaries behind him. The dogs are usually five in number, yoked two and two, with a leader. With this view, the leader is always trained up with a particular degree of care and attention; some of them rising to a most extraordinary value on account of their docility and steadiness; inso-much that for one of these, I am well assured, forty roubles (or seven pounds) was no unusual price. The driver

* Now transferred with the Museum to Mr Parkinson.

tive
the

next

and no-
wards
by the
ed all
; but
pared
elping,
off.—
e made
ode of

and it is
ne body
e, made
strongly
hose be-
y stained
with bear
gs, about
pieces of
t at each
e seldom
who fits
edge, and
s behind
oked two
leader is
care and
aordinary
efs; info
forty rou
The dri



Cook's Voyages

nfon.

ver is also
the purpo
to the sno
dogs, or e
lazy, or ob
them by t
their dexte
and forms
indeed, no
ful in a p
depends;
to loose his
unless their
they will i
stop till the

The dog
dried and
miserable
and never
We were
continue t
they woul
twenty mil
the Pomer

As we d
each of us
from the st
borious bu
considerabl
we were u
of the hills
vided with
sledges on
ral miles to
sack to atte
in his busi
minute, to
pany. Our
in which C

ver is also provided with a crooked stick, which answers the purpose both of whip and reins; as by striking it into the snow, he is enabled to moderate the speed of the dogs, or even to stop them entirely; and when they are lazy, or otherwise inattentive to his voice, he chastises them by throwing it at them. Upon these occasions their dexterity in picking it up again is very remarkable, and forms the principal difficulty of their art. But it is indeed, not surprising that they should labour to be skilful in a practice, upon which their safety so materially depends; for they say, that if the driver should happen to loose his stick, the dogs will instantly perceive it; and unless their leader be of the most sober and resolute kind, they will immediately run a-head full speed, and never stop till they are quite spent.

The dogs are fed, during the winter, on the offals of dried and stinking fish; but are always deprived of this miserable food a day before they set out on a journey, and never suffered to eat before they reach the end of it. We were also told, that it was not unusual for them to continue thus fasting two entire days, in which time they would perform a journey of one hundred and twenty miles. These dogs are in shape somewhat like the Pomeranean breed, but considerably larger.

As we did not chuse to trust to our own skill, we had each of us a man to drive and guide the sledge, which from the state the roads were now in, proved a very laborious business. For as the thaw had advanced very considerably in the vallies, through which our road lay, we were under the necessity of keeping along the sides of the hills; and this obliged our guides, who were provided with snow-shoes for that purpose, to support the sledges on the lower sides with their shoulders, for several miles together. I had a very good humoured Cosack to attend me, who was, however, so very unskilful in his business, that we were overturned almost every minute, to the great entertainment of the rest of the company. Our party consisted, in all, of ten sledge. That in which Captain Gore was carried, was made of two

lashed together, and abundantly provided with furs and bear-skins; it had ten dogs, yoked four abreast; as had also some of those that were heavy laden with baggage.

When we had proceeded about four miles, it began to rain; which, added to the darkness of the night, threw us all into confusion. It was at last agreed that we should remain where we were till day-light; and accordingly we came to anchor in the snow (for I cannot better express the manner in which the sledges were secured) and wrapping ourselves up in our furs, waited patiently for the morning. About three o'clock we were called on to set out, our guides being apprehensive that if we waited longer we might be stopped by the thaw, and neither be able to proceed nor to return. After encountering many difficulties, which were principally occasioned by the bad condition of the road, at two in the afternoon we got safe to an *ostrog*, called Natcheechin.

Natcheechin is a very inconsiderable *ostrog*, having only one log-house, the residence of the *Taion*; five *balagans*, and one *jourt*. We were received here in the same hospitable manner as at Karatchin, and in the afternoon we went to visit a remarkable hot spring which is near this village. We saw, at some distance, the steam rising from it, as from a boiling caldron; and as we approached, perceived the air had a strong sulphureous smell. The main spring forms a basin, of about three feet in diameter; besides which, there are a number of lesser springs, of the same degree of heat, in the adjacent grounds; so that the whole spot, to the extent of near an acre, was so hot, that we could not stand two minutes in the same place. The water flowing from these springs is collected in a small bathing pond, and afterward forms a little rivulet; which, at the distance of about an hundred and fifty yards, falls into the river. The bath they told us had wrought great cures in several disorders, such as rheumatisms, swelled and contracted joints, and scorbutic ulcers.

The

The
in canoes
shallows
with great
and shoals
boats. T
but unvar
the most
thing to d
of a bear,
a passage
and the fo
ver under
severity of
mained on
At day-l
of the mor
plain, cover
forenoon w
is compute
nearly of th
serjeant, wi
days waitin
patched a li
our approa
formed wit
growing m
ed by shoals
As we a
serve, from
we were to
been for so
and our tra
mixture of
shions. Th
Commande
ceived, and
he had almo
what the sati

The next morning we embarked on the Bolchoireka in canoes. We found ourselves greatly impeded by the shallows; and though the stream in many places ran with great rapidity, yet every half mile we had rippings and shoals, over which we were obliged to haul the boats. The country on each side was very romantic, but unvaried; the river running between mountains of the most craggy and barren aspect, where there was nothing to diversify the scene, but now and then the sight of a bear, and the flights of wild-fowl. So uninteresting a passage leaves me nothing farther to say, than that this and the following night we slept on the banks of the river under our *marquee*, and suffered very much from the severity of the weather and the snow, which still remained on the ground.

At day-light, on the 12th, we found we had got clear of the mountains, and were entering a low extensive plain, covered with shrubby trees. About nine in the forenoon we arrived at an *ostrog*, called Opatchin, which is computed to be fifty miles from Natchekin, and is nearly of the same size as Karatchin. We found here a serjeant, with four Russian soldiers, who had been two days waiting for our arrival; and who immediately dispatched a light boat to Bolcheretk with intelligence of our approach. The remainder of our passage was performed with great facility and expedition, the river growing more rapid as we descended, and less obstructed by shoals.

As we approached the capital, we were sorry to observe, from an appearance of much stir and bustle, that we were to be received in form. Decent clothes had been for some time a scarce commodity amongst us; and our travelling dresses were made up of a burlesque mixture of European, Indian, and Kamtschadale fashions. The manner in which we were received by the Commander, was the most engaging that could be conceived, and increased my mortification at finding, that he had almost entirely forgot the French language; so that the satisfaction of conversing with him was wholly con-

confined to Mr Webber, who spoke the German, his native tongue.

In company with Major Behm was Captain Shmaleff, the second in command, and another officer, with the whole body of the merchants of the place. They conducted us to the Commander's house, where we were received by his lady with great civility, and found tea and other refreshments prepared for us. After the first compliments were over, Mr Webber was desired to acquaint the Major with the object of our journey, with our want of naval stores, flour, and fresh provisions, and other necessaries for the ships crews.

About seven o'clock, the Commander, conceiving we might be fatigued with our journey, and desirous of taking some repose, begged he might conduct us to our lodgings. In our way we passed by two guard-houses, where the men were turned out under arms, in compliment to Captain Gore; and were afterward brought to a very neat and decent house, which the Major gave us to understand was to be our residence during our stay. Two sentinels were posted at the door; and, in a house adjoining, there was a serjeant's guard. Here the Major took his leave, with a promise to see us the next day. A soldier, called a *putproperfschack*, whose rank is between that of a serjeant and corporal, along with our fellow-traveller Port, were appointed to be our male domestics; besides whom, there was a house-keeper and a cook, who had orders to obey Port's directions in dressing us a supper, according our own mode of cookery.

Early in the morning, we received the compliments of the Commander, of Capt. Shmaleff, and of the principal inhabitants of the town, who all honoured us with visits soon after. The two first having sent for Port, after we were gone to rest, and inquired of him, what articles we seemed to be most in want of on board the ships; we found them prepared to insist on our sharing with the garrison under their command, in what little stock of provisions they had remaining.

We
strange
tion, t
of the
Capt. C
Victua
ly refus
ped us
not ob
ance in
Englis

In r
bestow
howev
and m
which
mande
to disc
ed that
accepta
with a
the dis
judged
mind,
cation
confide
be dese

I ha
as I ho
one vic
of Asia
had be
and im
Exce
I have
worth
boy, to
daught

We

We agreed to accept the liberality of these hospitable strangers, with the best grace we could ; but on condition, that we might be made acquainted with the price of the articles we were to be supplied with ; and that Capt. Clerke should give bills to the amount upon the Victualling Office in London. This the Major positively refused ; and whenever it was afterward urged, stopped us short, by telling us, he was certain, that he could not oblige his mistress more, than in giving every assistance in his power to her good friends and allies the English.

In return for such singular generosity, we had little to bestow but our admiration and our thanks. Fortunately, however, Capt. Clerke had sent by me a set of prints and maps, belonging to the last voyage of Capt. Cook, which he desired me to present in his name to the Commander ; who being an enthusiast in every thing relating to discoveries, received it with a satisfaction which shewed that though a trifle, nothing could have been more acceptable. Captain Clerke had likewise entrusted me with a discretionary power, of shewing him a chart of the discoveries made in the present voyage ; and as I judged, that a person in his situation, and of his turn of mind, would be exceedingly gratified by a communication of this sort, I made no scruple to repose in him a confidence, of which his whole conduct shewed him to be deserving.

I had the pleasure to find, that he felt this compliment as I hoped he would, and was much struck at seeing in one view, the whole of that coast, as well on the side of Asia as on that of America, of which his countrymen had been so many years employed in acquiring a partial and imperfect knowledge.

Excepting this mark of confidence, and the set of prints I have already mentioned, we had brought nothing worth his acceptance. I prevailed on his son, a young boy, to accept a silver watch ; and I made his little daughter happy with two pair of ear-rings, of French
paste.

paste. Besides these trifles, I gave Captain Shmaleff a thermometer I had used on my journey.

We dined this day at the Commander's who studious on every occasion, to gratify our curiosity, had, besides a number of dishes dressed in our own way, prepared a great variety of others, after the Russian and Kamtschadale manner. The afternoon was employed in taking a view of the town, and of the adjacent country, Bolcheretsk is situated in a low swampy plain, that extends to the sea of Okotsk, being about forty miles long, and of a considerable breadth. It lies on the N. side of the Bolchoireka, (or great river.) Below the town, the river is from six to eight feet deep, and about a quarter of a mile broad. There is no corn of any species, cultivated in this part of the country; and Major Behm informed me, that his was the only garden that had yet been planted. I saw about twenty or thirty cows; and the Major had six stout horses. These, and their dogs, are the only tame animals they possess; the necessity they are under of keeping great numbers of the latter, making it impossible to bring up any cattle, that are not in size and strength a match for them. For, during the summer season, their dogs are entirely let loose, and left to provide for themselves; which makes them so exceedingly ravenous, that they will sometimes even attack the bullocks.

The houses in Bolcheretsk are all of one fashion, being built of logs and thatched. That of the Commander is much larger than the rest, consisting of three rooms of a considerable size, neatly papered, and which might have been reckoned handsome, if the *talc* with which the windows were covered, had not given them a poor and disagreeable appearance. The inhabitants, taken all together, amount to between five and six hundred.

The next morning we applied privately to the merchant Fedositch, to purchase some tobacco for the sailors, who had been upward of a twelvemonth without this favourite commodity. However this, like all our other transactions of the same kind, came immediately

Shmaleff a

no studious
ad, besides
prepared a
Kamtscha-
d in taking
untry, Bol-
hat extends
s long, and
N. side of
the town,
out a quar-
ny species,
Major Behm
hat had yet
cows; and
their dogs,
ecessity they
latter, mak-
t are not in
during the
ose, and left
n so exceed-
n attack the

shion, being
Commander
ree rooms of
hich might
with which
hem a poor
tants, taken
c hundred.
to the mer-
for the sail-
nth without
like all our
immediately
to



Count von Sivers

to the M
 prised to
 ing upw
 might be
 rison und
 time, the
 as many
 we were
 dulged in
 Madame
 consisting
 other little
 wishes, th
 of service
 profusion
 strain, bein
 a share, bu

We dine
 afternoon,
 us with an
 dancing.
 of this rude
 the Russian
 and was pe
 sons at a tim
 the feet scar
 sian dance w
 whimsical id
 It is intend
 gestures of t
 the knees be
 the tricks an
 As our jo
 time than w
 might prove
 under the no
 evening, wit
 We were mo
 us, that if we

Vol. II.—N

to the Major's knowledge; and we were soon after surprised to find, in our house, four bags of tobacco, weighing upward of a hundred pounds each, which he begged might be presented in the name of himself, and the garrison under his command, to our sailors. At the same time, they had sent us twenty loaves of fine sugar, and as many pounds of tea, being articles they understood we were in great want of, which they begged to be indulged in presenting to the officers. Along with these, Madame Behm had also sent a present for Captain Clerke, consisting of fresh butter, honey, figs, rice, and some other little things of the same kind, attended with many wishes, that in his infirm state of health, they might be of service to him. It was in vain we tried to oppose this profusion of bounty, which I was really anxious to restrain, being convinced that they were giving away, not a share, but almost the whole stock of the garrison.

We dined this day with Captain Shmaleff, and in the afternoon, in order to vary our amusements, he treated us with an exhibition of the Russian and Kamtschadale dancing. No description can convey an adequate idea of this rude and uncouth entertainment. The figure of the Russian dance was much like those of our hornpipes, and was performed either single, or by two or four persons at a time. Their steps were short and quick, with the feet scarce raised from the ground. But if the Russian dance was ridiculous, the Kamtschadale was the most whimsical idea that ever entered into any people's heads. It is intended to represent the awkward and clumsy gestures of the bear. The body was always bowed, and the knees bent, whilst the arms were used in imitating the tricks and attitudes of that animal.

As our journey to Bolcheretsk had taken up more time than we expected, and were told that our return might prove still more difficult and tedious, we were under the necessity of acquainting the Commander this evening, with our intention of setting out the next day. We were most agreeably surprised, when the Major told us, that if we could stay one day longer, he would ac-

company us; as he should feel great pleasure in returning with us to Saint Peter and Saint Paul's, that he might himself be a witness of every thing done for us, that it was in their power to do.

In return for the few trifles I had given to the children of Major Behm, I was next morning, the 15th, presented by his little boy, with a most magnificent Kamtschadale dress, which shall be described in its proper place. It was of the kind worn by the principal *Toions* of the country, on ceremonious occasions; and, as I was afterward told by Fedositch, could not have been purchased for one hundred and twenty roubles. At the same time I had a present from his daughter, of a handsome sable muff.

We afterwards dined with the Commander, who, in order to let us see as much of the manners of the inhabitants, and of the customs of the country, as our time would permit, invited the whole of the better sort of people in the village to his house this evening. All the women appeared very splendidly dressed, after the Kamtschadale fashion. The whole was like some enchanted scene in the midst of the wildest and most dreary country in the world. Our entertainment again consisted of dancing and singing.

The next morning, being fixed for our departure, we retired early to our lodgings, where the first things we saw were three travelling dresses, made after the fashion of the country, which the Major had provided for us. Indeed, what with his liberal presents, and the kindness of Captain Shmaleff, and many other individuals, who all begged to throw in their mite, together with the ample stock of provisions he had sent us for our journey, we had amassed no inconsiderable load of baggage.

Early in the morning, every thing being ready for our departure, we were invited to call on Madame Behm, in our way to the boats, and take our leave of her; and our minds were impressed with sentiments of the warmest gratitude, for the attentive, benevolent, and generous treatment we had met with at Bolcheretsk, on leaving

our lod
were dr
the tow
and, as
of the p
Major
taking le
ed down
drums a
some re
down to
When w
cheers, w
were dou
our friend
another c
During
pleased w
and their
the differe
could not
countenan
pressions o
leave them
We had
from Bolch
of the Ma
same time,
expect to fe
best and he
more at see
than a shir
it actually
As Major
ing the shi
the town,
marking, th
bad state of
dent to dis

our lodgings. All the foldiers belonging to the garrison were drawn up on one fide, and the male inhabitants of the town, drefled out in their beft clothes, on the other ; and, as foon as we came out of the houfe, the wholebody of the people joined in a melancholy fong, which the Major told us, it was ufual in that country, to fmg on taking leave of their friends. In this manner we marched down to the Commander's houfe, preceded by the drums and mufic of the garrison. After partaking of fome refrefhment that was prepared for us, we went down to the waterfide, accompanied by the ladies. When we put off, the whole company gave us three cheers, which we returned from the boat ; and, as we were doubling a point, where for the laft time we faw our friendly entertainers, they took their farewel in another cheer.

During the courfe of our journey, we were much pleafed with the great good-will with which the *Toions*, and their *Kamtſchadales*, afforded us their affiftance at the different *oftrags* through which we paffed ; and I could not but obferve the pleafure that appeared in their countenances, on feeing the Major, and their ftrong expreffions of forrow, on hearing he was fo foon going to leave them.

We had difpatched a meffenger to Captain Clerke, from *Bolcheretſk*, with an account of our reception, and of the Major's intention of returning with us ; at the fame time, apprizing him of the day he might probably expect to fee us. The Major was much ftruck at the robuft and healthy appearance of the boats crews, and ftill more at feeing moft of them without any other covering than a ſhirt and trowfers, although at the very moment it actually ſnowed.

As Major Behm, had expreffed his intentions of viſiting the ſhips before he landed, as foon as we arrived off the town, I defired to receive his commands ; when remarking, that from the account we had given of the very bad ſtate of Captain Clerke's health, it might be imprudent to diſturb him at fo late an hour (it being now paſt

nine o'clock,) he thought it he said, most adviseable to remain that night on shore. Accordingly, after attending him to the serjeant's house, I took my leave, and went on board. It was with the utmost concern I found that, in the fortnight we had been absent, this excellent officer was much altered for the worse.

As soon as I had dispatched this business, I returned to the Major, and the next morning conducted him to the ships; where, on his arrival, he was saluted with thirteen guns, and received with every other mark of distinction that it was in our power to pay him.

After visiting the Captain, and taking a view of both the ships, he returned to dinner on board the Resolution; and, in the afternoon, the various curiosities we had collected in the course of our voyage were shewn him, and a complete assortment of every article presented to him by Captain Clerke. On this occasion I must not pass over an instance of great generosity and gratitude in the sailors of both ships; who, when they were told of the handsome present of tobacco that was made them by the Major, desired, entirely of their own accord, that their grog might be stopped, and their allowance of spirits presented, on their part, to the garrison of Bolcheretsk. We could not but admire so extraordinary a sacrifice; and that they might not suffer by it, Captain Clerke and the rest of the officers substituted, in the room of the very small quantity the Major could be prevailed on to accept, the same quantity of rum. This, with a dozen or two of Cape wine for Madame Behm, and such other little presents as were in our power to bestow, were accepted in the most obliging manner.

Major Behm having resigned the command of Kamtschatka, intended to set out in a short time for Petersburg; and he now offered to charge himself with any dispatches we might trust to his care. This was an opportunity not to be neglected; and accordingly Capt. Clerke acquainted him, that he would take the liberty of sending by him some papers relating to our voyage, to be delivered to our Ambassador at the Russian Court.

Our

Our first intentions were to send only a small journal of our proceedings; but afterward, Capt. Clerke being persuaded that the whole account of our discoveries might safely be trusted to a person who had given such striking proofs both of his public and private virtues, and considering that we had a very hazardous part of the voyage still to undertake, determined to send by him the whole of the journal of our late Commander, with that part of his own which completed the period from Captain Cook's death till our arrival at Kamtscharka; together with a chart of all our discoveries. Mr Bayly and myself thought it also proper to send a general account of our proceedings to the Board of Longitude.

During the three following days, the Major was entertained alternately in the two ships in the best manner we were able. On the 25th he took his leave, and was saluted with thirteen guns; and the sailors, at their own desire, gave him three cheers. The next morning Mr Webber and myself attended him a few miles up the Awatka river.

Short as our acquaintance had been with Major Behm, his noble and disinterested conduct had inspired us with the highest respect and esteem for him. The intrinsic value of the private presents we received from him, exclusive of the stores, must have amounted to upwards of two hundred pounds. But this generosity was far exceeded by the delicacy with which all his favours were conferred. "The service in which you are employed," he would often say, "is for the general advantage of mankind, and therefore gives you a right, not merely to the offices of humanity, but to the privileges of citizens, whatever country you may be thrown. I am sure I am acting agreeably to the wishes of my mistress, in affording you all the relief in our power; and I cannot forget either her character or my own honour, so much as to suffer for the performance of a duty."

I shall now proceed to relate the transactions that passed in the harbour of St Peter and St Paul during our absence. On the 7th of May, soon after we had left the bay,

bay, a large piece of ice drove across the cut-water of the Resolution, and brought home the small bower anchor. This obliged them to weigh the other anchor and moor again. The carpenters who were employed in stopping the leak, were obliged to take off a great part of the sheathing from the bows, and found many of the trunnels so very loose and rotten, as to be easily drawn out with the fingers.

On the 15th, the beach being clear of ice, the people were sent to haul the seine, and caught an abundant supply of fine flat-fish for both the ships' companies. Indeed from this time, during the whole of our stay in the harbour, we were absolutely overpowered with the quantities of fish which came in from every quarter. The Discovery's people surrounded at one time so great a quantity in their seine, that they were obliged to throw a vast number out, lest the net should be broken to pieces.

The snow now began to disappear very rapidly, and abundance of wild garlic, celery, and nettle tops were gathered for the use of the crews. The birch-trees were also tapped, and the sweet juice, which they yielded in great quantities; was constantly mixed with the men's allowance of brandy.

The next day, a small bullock, which had been procured for the ship's companies by the serjeant, was killed. It was served out to both crews for their Sunday's dinner, being the first piece of fresh beef they had tasted since our departure from the Cape of Good Hope in December 1776, a period of near two years and a half.

This evening died John Macintosh, the carpenter's mate, after having laboured under a dysentery ever since our departure from the Sandwich Islands. He was the fourth person we lost by sickness during the voyage.

I have already mentioned that Captain Clerke's health continued daily to decline, notwithstanding the salutary change of diet which the country of Kamtschatka afforded him.

On the 1st of June we got on board nine thousand pound weight of rye flour, with which we were supplied

from the
covery
immed
had no
Good
pleted

June
disappo
obliged
guns, i
respects

On th
were sen
nei o/tro
in a dire
eight fo
for sea.

the paco

Before
a rumbl
and whe
of the sh
inch thi
and dark
cano mo
was so th
body of
afternoon
blowed b
about the
from the
cinders f
change f
dreadful
of the at
producece
We were
of the mo
The af

from the stores of St Peter and St Paul's; and the Discovery had a proportional quantity. The men were immediately put on full allowance of bread, which they had not been indulged in since our leaving the Cape of Good Hope. The same day our watering was completed, having got on board sixty-five tons.

June 4, we had fresh breezes and hard rain, which disappointed us in our design of dressing the ships, and obliged us to content ourselves with firing twenty-one guns, in honour of the day, and celebrating it in other respects in the best manner we were able.

On the 6th, twenty head of cattle, of a moderate size, were sent us by the Commander's orders from the Verchnei *ostrog*, which is near a hundred miles from this place in a direct line. They arrived in good condition. The eight following days were employed in making ready for sea. We now sent our journals to the Major, also the packet that was to be forwarded by express.

Before day-light on the 15th, we were surprised with a rumbling noise, resembling distant hollow thunder; and when the day broke we found the decks and sides of the ships covered with a fine dust like emery, near an inch thick. The air at the same time continued loaded and darkened with this substance; and, toward the volcano mountain, situated to the north of the harbour, it was so thick and black, that we could not distinguish the body of the hill. About twelve o'clock, and during the afternoon, the explosions became louder, and were followed by showers of cinders, which were in general about the size of peas; though many were picked up from the deck larger than an hazel nut. Along with the cinders fell several small stones, which had undergone no change from the action of fire. In the evening we had dreadful thunder and lightning, which with the darkness of the atmosphere, and the sulphureous smell of the air, produced altogether a most awful and terrifying effect. We were at this time about eight leagues from the foot of the mountain.

The aspect of the country was now very different from what

what it had been on our first arrival. The snow had disappeared, and the sides of the hills were covered with a beautiful verdure.

As it was Captain Clerke's intention to keep as much in sight of the coast of Kamtschatka as the weather would permit, the volcano was still seen throwing up immense volumes of smoke; and we had no soundings with one hundred and fifty fathoms, at the distance of four leagues from the shore.

On the 22d, we passed a dead whale, which emitted a horrid stench, perceivable at upwards of a league's distance; it was covered with a great number of sea-birds that were feasting on it.

On the 24th, we saw a great number of gulls, and were witnesses to the disgusting mode of feeding of the arctic gull, which has procured it the name of the parasite, and which, if the reader is not already acquainted with it, he will find in the note below.*

During the 29th and 30th, we saw numbers of whales, large seals, and sea hories; also gulls, sea parrots, and albatrosses. We took the advantage of a little calm weather to try for fish, and caught abundance of fine cod. The depth of water from sixty-five to seventy-five fathoms.

At noon, on the 6th of July, we passed a considerable number of large masses of ice; and, observing that it still adhered in several places to the shore on the continent of Asia, we were not much surprised to fall in, at three in the afternoon, with an extensive body of it, stretching away to the westward. This sight gave great discouragement to our hopes of advancing much farther northward this year than we had the preceding.

Having little wind in the afternoon, we hoisted out the

* This bird which is somewhat larger than the common gull, pursues the latter kind whenever it meets them; the gull, after flying for some time with loud screams, and evident marks of great terror, drops its dung, which its pursuer immediately darts at and catches before it falls into the sea.

the boats
numbers
returned
ingly shy
always m

We ha
westward
opening,
had there
the presen

On the
and in the
them in p
numbers o
people we
returning
killing and
who went
able instan
the approx
their cubs u
them into
or wound
and carrie
were going
be traced b
water, wh
ward obser
surface, as
dreadful b
young had
came so en
her two tu

At eight
eastward, v
the southw
bodies of ic
with an ea
having got

Vol. II. N

the boats in pursuit of the sea horses, which were in great numbers on the detached pieces of ice; but they soon returned without success; these animals being exceedingly shy, and before they could come within gun-shot always making their retreat into the water.

We had sailed by the 9th near forty leagues to westward along the edge of the ice, without seeing any opening, or a clear sea to the northward beyond it, and had therefore no prospect of advancing farther N. for the present.

On the 10th, we passed several whales in the forenoon; and in the afternoon hoisted out the boats again, and sent them in pursuit of the sea-horses, which were in great numbers on the pieces of ice that surrounded us. Our people were more successful than they had been before, returning with three large ones and a young one, besides killing and wounding several others. The gentlemen who went on this party were witnesses of several remarkable instances of parental affection in those animals. On the approach of our boats towards the ice, they all took their cubs under their fins, and endeavoured to escape with them into the sea. Several, whose young were killed or wounded and left floating on the surface, rose again and carried them down, sometimes just as our people were going to take them up into the boat; and might be traced bearing them to a great distance through the water, which was coloured with their blood: we afterward observed their bringing them, at times, above the surface, as if for air, and again diving under it with a dreadful bellowing. The female, in particular, whose young had been destroyed, and taken into the boat, became so enraged, that she attacked the cutter, and struck her two tusks through the bottom of it.

At eight in the evening, a breeze sprung up to the eastward, with which we still continued our course to the southward, and at twelve fell in with numerous large bodies of ice. We endeavoured to push through them with an easy sail, for fear of damaging the ship; and, having got a little farther to the southward, nothing was

to be seen but one compact field of ice, stretching to the South West, South East, and North East, as far as the eye could reach.

We continued to steer northward, with a moderate southerly breeze and fair weather, till the 13th at ten in the forenoon, when we again found ourselves close in with a solid field of ice, to which we could see no limits from the mast head. This at once dashed all our hopes of penetrating farther.

Captain Clerke now resolved to make one more and final attempt on the American coast, for Baffin's or Hudson's Bay, since we had been able to advance the farthest on this side last year. Accordingly we kept working the remaining part of the day to the windward, with a fresh easterly breeze.

On the 16th, in the forenoon, we found ourselves embayed; the ice having taken a sudden turn to the S. E. and in one compact body surrounding us on all sides, except on the south quarter. We therefore hauled our wind to the southward, being at this time in twenty-six fathoms water; and, as we supposed, about twenty-five leagues from the coast of America. Having now a brisk gale, we close reefed the fore and main-top-sails, furlled the mizen-top-sail, and got the top-gallant-yards down upon deck. At eight in the evening, finding the depth of water had decreased to twenty-two fathoms, which we considered as a proof of our near approach to the American coast, we tacked and stood to the N.

On the 18th, at five in the morning, we passed some small logs of drift-wood, and saw abundance of sea-parrots, and the small ice birds, and likewise a number of whales. It is remarkable that, though we saw no sea-horses on the body of the ice, yet they were in herds and in greater numbers on the detachments than we had ever observed before. About nine in the evening, a white bear was seen swimming close by the Discovery; it afterwards made to the ice on which were also two others.

On

On

Crooks Voyages.



C
ing
no c
sord
mar
trate
leagu
sealo
In
ter, t
boat,
larger
being
might
were n
ter bei

The

Fro
Fro
Hei
Circ
Brea

Wei
Wei

These
fresh me
but was
the sea-
again pe
their salt
At eig
ening, a
can coal
leagues, a
by the ic
along the

On the 19th at one in the morning, the weather clearing up, we were so completely embayed that there was no opening left, but to the S. to which quarter we accordingly directed our course, returning through a remarkably smooth water. We were never able to penetrate farther N. than at this time, and this was five leagues short of the point to which we advanced last season.

In the afternoon we saw two white bears in the water, to which we immediately gave chase in the jolly boat, and had the good fortune to kill them both. The larger, which probably was the dam of the younger, being shot first, the other would not quit it, though it might easily have escaped on the ice while the men were reloading, but remained swimming about till, after being fired upon several times, it was shot dead.

The dimensions of the larger were as follow :

	Feet.	Inches.
From the snout to the end of the tail	7	2
From the snout to the shoulder-bone	2	3
Height of the shoulder	4	3
Circumference near the fore legs	4	10
Breadth of the fore paw		10
	lb.	
Weight of the four quarters	436	
Weight of the four quarters of the smallest	256	

These animals afforded us a few excellent meals of fresh meat. The flesh had indeed a strong fishy taste, but was in every respect infinitely superior to that of the sea-horse; which, nevertheless, our people were again persuaded, without much difficulty, to prefer to their salted provisions.

At eight in the morning of the 21st, the wind freshening, and the fog clearing away, we saw the American coast to the S. E. at the distance of eight or ten leagues, and hauled in for it; but were stopped again by the ice, and obliged to bear away to the westward along the edge of it.

Thus a connected solid field of ice rendering every effort we could make to a nearer approach to the land fruitless, and joining, as we judged to it, we took a last farewell of a N. E. passage to Old England. I shall beg leave to give, in Captain Clerke's own words, the reason of this his final determination, as well as of his future plans; and this the rather as it is the last transaction his health permitted him to write down.

"It is now impossible to proceed the least farther to the northward upon this coast (America); and it is equally as improbable that this amazing mass of ice should be dissolved by the few remaining summer-weeks which will terminate this season; but it will continue, it is to be believed, as it now is, an insurmountable barrier to every attempt we can possibly make. I therefore think it the best step that can be taken, for the good of the service, to trace the sea over to the Asiatic coast, and to try if I can find any opening that will admit me farther N. if not, to see what more is to be done upon that coast, where I hope cannot much flatter myself, to meet with better success; for the sea is now so choked with ice, that a passage I fear is totally out of the question."

Captain Clerke having determined, for the reasons just assigned, to give up all farther attempts on the coast of America, and to make his last efforts in search of a passage on the coast of the opposite continent, we continued, during the afternoon of the 21st of July, to steer to the W. N. W. through much loose ice. At ten at night, discovering the main body of it through the fog, right ahead, and almost close to us, and being unwilling to take a southerly course, so long as we could possibly avoid it, we hauled our wind, which was easterly, and stood to the northward; but, in an hour after, the weather clearing up, and finding ourselves surrounded by a compact field of ice on every side, except to the S. S. W. we tacked and stood on in that direction in order to get clear of it.

In the morning of the 23d, the clear water, in which

w
an
af
w
th
ed
sev
at
fo
stop
she
able
sea
upon
mov
escap
way
leewa
unsa
ting
sails,
In
about
from
creas
gloom
on us,
comin
Our ap
when
after, b
change
ting all
were so
great de
come ve
she fell
On th
with ha

we continued to stand to and fro, did not exceed a mile and an half, and was every instant lessening. At length, after using our utmost endeavours to clear the loose ice, we were driven to the necessity of forcing a passage to the southward, which, at half past seven, we accomplished, but not without subjecting the ship to some very severe shocks. The Discovery was less successful. For, at eleven, when they had nigh got clear out, she became so entangled by several large pieces that her way was stopped, and immediately dropping bodily to leeward, she fell, broadside foremost on the edge of a considerable body of ice; and having at the same time an open sea to windward, the surf caused her to strike violently upon it. This mass at length either so far broke, or moved, as to set them at liberty to make another trial to escape; but, unfortunately, before the ship gathered way enough to be under command, she again fell to leeward on another fragment; and the swell making it unsafe to lie to windward, and finding no chance of getting clear, they pushed into a small opening, furled their sails, and made fast with ice hooks.

In this dangerous situation we saw them at noon, about three miles from us, bearing N. W. a fresh gale from the S. E. driving more ice to the N. W. and increasing the body that lay between us. To add to the gloomy apprehensions which began to force themselves on us, at half past four in the afternoon, the weather becoming thick and hazy, we lost sight of the Discovery. Our apprehensions for her safety did not cease till nine, when we heard her guns in answer to ours; and soon after, being hailed by her, were informed that, upon the change of wind, the ice began to separate; and that setting all their sails, they forced a passage through it. We were sorry to find that the Discovery had rubbed off a great deal of the sheathing from the bows, and was become very leaky from the strokes she had received when she fell upon the edge of the ice.

On the 24th, we had fresh breezes from the S. W. with hazy weather, and kept running to the S. E. till eleven

eleven in the forenoon, when a large body of loose ice, extending from N. N. E. round by the E. to S. S. E. and to which (though the weather was tolerably clear) we could see no end, again obstructed our course. At four in the afternoon it became calm, and we hoisted out the boats in pursuit of the sea-horses, which were in prodigious herds on every side of us. We killed ten of them, which were as many as we could make use of for eating, or for converting into lamp oil.

As it was now necessary to come to some determination with respect to the course we were next to steer, Captain Clerke sent a boat with the carpenters on board the *Discovery*, to inquire into the particulars of the damage she had sustained. They returned in the evening with the report that the damages they had received would require three weeks to repair.

Thus, finding a farther advance to the northward, as well as a nearer approach to either continent, obstructed by a sea blocked up with ice, we judged it both injurious to the service, as well as fruitless with respect to the design of our voyage, to make any farther attempts toward a passage. This, added to the representations of Capt. Gore, determined Capt. Clerke to sail for Awatska bay, to repair our damages there; and, before the winter should set in, to explore the coast of Japan.

I will not endeavour to conceal the joy that brightened the countenances of every individual, as soon as Captain Clerke's resolutions were made known. We were all heartily sick of a navigation full of danger, and in which the utmost perseverance had not been repaid with the smallest probability of success. We therefore turned our faces home, after an absence of three years, with a delight and satisfaction which, notwithstanding the tedious voyage we had still to make, and the immense distance we had to run, were as freely entertained, and perhaps as fully enjoyed, as if we had been already in sight of the land's-end.

On the 28th and 29th, the wind being contrary, we made but slow progress to the southward, and had no land

land in
which t
rectured
Capta
his bed;
ceive the
proceed
linning v
morning
blew from
We accor
standing t
ry. On
course was
five in the
tain on the
Mountain,
had light at
ing day, an
forty fathom
On the 2
morning, de
the thirty-ei
sumption, w
left England
whole voyag
him a melan
nimity with
spirits, which
resignation to
It was impos
gree of comp
been a contin
to which a s
which he at la
rom his earli
uring the w
at between t
tioned in t

land in sight till seven in the evening of the 30th; from which time, to the 17th of August, nothing interesting occurred.

Captain Clerke was now no longer able to get out of his bed; he therefore desired that the officers would receive their orders from me, and directed that we should proceed with all speed to Awatska bay. The wind continuing westerly, we stood on to the S. till early on the morning of the 19th, when, after a few hours rain, it blew from the eastward, and freshened to a strong gale. We accordingly made the most of it, while it lasted, by standing to the westward under all the sail we could carry. On the 20th, the wind shifting to the S. W. our course was to the W. N. W. On the 21st, at half past five in the morning, we saw a very high peaked mountain on the coast of Kamtschatka, called Cheepoonskoi Mountain, twenty-five or thirty leagues distant. We had light airs the remaining part of this and the following day, and got no soundings with one hundred and forty fathoms of line.

On the 22d of August 1779, at nine o'clock in the morning, departed this life Captain Charles Clerke, in the thirty-eighth year of his age. He died of a consumption, which had evidently commenced before he left England, and of which he had lingered during the whole voyage. His very gradual decay had long made him a melancholy object to his friends; yet the equanimity with which he bore it, the constant flow of good spirits, which continued to the last hour, and a cheerful resignation to his fate, afforded them some consolation. It was impossible not to feel a more than common degree of compassion for a person whose whole life had been a continued scene of those difficulties and hardships to which a seaman's occupation is subject, and under which he at last sunk. He was brought up to the Navy from his earliest youth, and had been in several actions during the war which began in 1756, particularly in that between the *Bellona* and *Courageaux*, where, being stationed in the mizen-top, he was carried overboard with

with the mast, but was taken up without having received any hurt. He was Midshipman in the *Dolphin*, commanded by Commodore Byron, on her first voyage round the world, and afterward served on the American station. In 1768, he made his second voyage round the world in the *Endeavour*, as Master's Mate, and, by the promotion which took place during the expedition, he returned a Lieutenant. His third voyage round the world was in the *Resolution*, of which he was appointed the Second Lieutenant; and soon after his return in 1775, he was promoted to the rank of Master and Commander. When the present expedition was ordered to be fitted out, he was appointed to the *Discovery* to accompany Captain Cook, and, by the death of the latter, succeeded, as has been already mentioned, to the chief command.

It would be doing his memory extreme injustice not to say that, during the short time the expedition was under his direction, he was most zealous and anxious for its success. His health about the time the principal command devolved upon him, began to decline very rapidly, and was every way unequal to encounter the rigours of a high northern climate. But the vigour and activity of his mind had in no shape suffered by the decay of his body: and though he knew that by delaying his return to a warmer climate, he was giving up the only chance that remained for his recovery, yet careful and jealous to the last degree that a regard to his own situation should never bias his judgment to the prejudice of the service, he persevered in the search of a passage till it was the opinion of every officer in both ships, that it was impracticable, and that any farther attempts would not only be fruitless but dangerous.

I sent Mr Williamson to acquaint Captain Gore with the death of Captain Clerke, and received a letter from him, ordering me to use all my endeavours to keep in company with the *Discovery*; and, in case of a separation, to make the best of my way to the harbour of St Peter and St Paul. We had light airs in the afternoon, which

which last
noon, a fr
stood in f
the evenin
five leagu
turned up
head till c
anchored
of St Pet
on account
and were

We ha
serjeant, v
on board
deceased
we told h
contained
ing off an
acquaint
himself of
he request
sent with

The er
when we
damage h
ostrog, of t

In the
the new c
death; a
solution,
and Mr I
had serve
the forme
nancy.

rangemer
The D
great dam
the carpe
pairing h

which lasted through the forenoon of the 23d. At noon, a fresh breeze springing up from the eastward, we stood in for the entrance of Awatska bay; and, at six in the evening, saw it bearing W. N. W. half W. distant five leagues. At nine next morning we weighed, and turned up the bay with light airs, and the boats still ahead till one; when, by the help of a fresh breeze, we anchored before three in the afternoon, in the harbour of St Peter and St Paul, with our ensign half staff up, on account of our carrying the body of our late Captain; and were soon after followed by the Discovery.

We had no sooner anchored, than our old friend the serjeant, who was still the commander of the place, came on board with a present of berries, intended for our poor deceased Captain. He was exceedingly affected when we told him of his death, and shewed him the coffin that contained his body. He signified his intentions of sending off an express to the Commander at Bolcheretsk, to acquaint him with our arrival, and Capt. Gore, availed himself of that occasion of writing him a letter, in which he requested that sixteen head of black cattle might be sent with all possible expedition.

The eruption of the volcano, which was so violent when we sailed out of the bay, we found had done no damage here, notwithstanding stones had fallen at the *ostrog*, of the size of a goose's egg.

In the morning of the 25th, Captain Gore made out the new commissions in consequence of Captain Clerke's death; appointing himself to the command of the Resolution, and me to the command of the Discovery; and Mr Lanyan, Master's Mate of the Resolution, who had served in that capacity on board the Adventure in the former voyage, was promoted to the vacant Lieutenancy. These promotions produced several other arrangements of course.

The Discovery, as has been mentioned, had suffered great damage from the ice; Captain Gore therefore sent the carpenters of the Resolution to assist our own in repairing her. A tent was next erected, for the accom-

modation of such of our people as were employed on shore; and a party were sent a mile into the country, to the northward of the harbour, to fell timber. The observatories were erected at the W. end of the village, near a tent, in which Captain Gore and myself took up our abode.

The farther we proceeded in removing the sheathing, the more we discovered of the decayed state of the ship's hull. The next morning eight feet of a plank in the wale were found to be so exceedingly rotten as to make it necessary to shift it. This left us for some time at a stand, as nothing was to be found, in either ship, wherewith to replace it. The carpenters were therefore sent on shore in the afternoon in search of a tree big enough for the purpose. Luckily they found a birch of sufficient size; this was shaped on the spot, and brought on board the next morning.

As the season was now so far advanced, I was fearful lest any delay or hinderance should arise, on our parts, to Captain Gore's farther views of discovery, and therefore gave orders that no more sheathing should be ripped off than was absolutely necessary for repairing the damages sustained by the ice. All hands were, at present, busily employed in separate duties, that every thing might be in readiness for sea against the time our carpenters should have finished their work. We set apart four men to haul the seine for salmon, which were caught in great abundance, and found to be of an excellent quality. After supplying the immediate wants of both ships, we faked down near a hoghead a day.

On Sunday afternoon, August the 29th, we paid the last offices to Captain Clerke. The officers and men of both ships walked in procession to the grave, whilst the ships fired minute guns; and the service being ended, the marines fired three vollies. He was interred under a tree, which stands on a rising ground, in the valley to the N. side of the harbour, where the hospital and store houses are situated. All the Russians in the gar-

rison were
and solemn

The ne
a letter f
which we
the cattle
few days;
sent comm
ately on t
from Oke

On the
shore retu
bing the
shingle ba
had been
the deck,
tion amon
respectibil

The Re
some dam
ice.

About t
of a specie
dance, thi
making be
procure su
At all eve
medicine f
sious of f
procure, b
brought on
the time w
copper wa
many plac
orders tha
as possible
for those v
of this kin
copper, or

rison were assembled, and attended with great respect and solemnity.

The next day an ensign arrived from Bolcheretsk with a letter from the commander to Captain Gore; by which we understood that orders had been given about the cattle; and that they might be expected here in a few days; and moreover that Captain Shmaleff, the present commander, would himself pay us a visit immediately on the arrival of a sloop which was daily expected from Okotsk.

On the 5th of September the parties that were on shore returned on board, and were employed in scrubbing the ship's bottom, and getting in eight tons of shingle ballast. We also got up two of our guns, that had been stowed in the forehold, and mounted them on the deck, being now about to visit nations, our reception amongst whom might a good deal depend on the respectability of our appearance.

The Resolution hauled on shore on the 8th to repair some damages, which she had also received among the ice.

About this time we began to brew a strong decoction of a species of dwarf-pine that grows here in great abundance, thinking that it might hereafter be useful in making beer, and that we should probably be able to procure sugar or molasses to ferment with it at Canton. At all events, I was sure it would be serviceable as a medicine for the scurvy; and was more particularly desirous of supplying myself with as much of it as I could procure, because most of the preventatives we had brought out were either used or spoiled by keeping. By the time we had prepared a hoghead of it, the ship's copper was discovered to be very thin, and cracked in many places. This obliged me to desist, and to give orders that it should be used as sparingly, for the future, as possible. It might perhaps be an useful precaution for those who may hereafter be engaged in long voyages of this kind, either to provide themselves with a spare copper, or to see that the copper usually furnished be of

the strongest kind. The various extra-services in which it will be found necessary to employ them, and especially the important one of making antiscorbutic decoctions, seem absolutely to require some such provision; and I should rather recommend the former on account of the additional quantity of fuel that would be consumed in heating thick coppers.

We had a constant course of dry weather till this day, when there came on a heavy rain, accompanied with strong squalls of wind, which obliged us to strike our yards and topmasts.

The 12th, being Sunday, was kept as a day of rest; but the weather unfortunately continuing foul, our men could not derive the advantage from it we wished, by gathering the berries that grew in great quantities and varieties on the coast; and taking other pastime on shore.

On Wednesday we had finished the stowage of the holds; got on board all our wood and water, and were ready to put to sea at a day's notice; but the cattle were not yet arrived from Verchnei, and as fresh provisions were the most important article of our wants, we could not think of taking our departure without them. We therefore thought this a favourable opportunity of taking some amusement on shore. Accordingly Captain Gore proposed a party of bear-hunting, which we all very readily came into.

We did not set out on this expedition till Friday the 17th, in order to give a day's rest to the Hospodin Ivaskin, a new acquaintance that was to be of our party, and who came down here on Wednesday.

Having given orders to the first Lieutenant of both ships to let the rigging have such repair as the supply of stores we had lately received would permit we set out on our hunting party, under the direction of the corporal of the Kamtschadales.

We directed our course to the northward, toward a pool of water that lies near the mouth of the river Paratounca, and which was a known haunt of the bears. We had

had scarce
to the ea
with our
it was in
were to t
of an un
which en
the dang
returned
the beach
pose; an
crossed th
harbour.

And h
we could
get withi
changed
in great n
fell out v
little prey
land, we
of shootin
some me
failure, b
from hea

Our K
success in
being too
the conse
Ivaskin,
Captain C

Accord
we set ou
meaning
at Saint
along the
the flat p
These lak
and about

had scarce landed when unfortunately the wind changed to the eastward, and destroyed all hopes of coming up with our game; for the Kamtschadales assured us that it was in vain to expect to meet with bears whilst we were to the windward; owing to their being possessed of an uncommon acuteness in scenting their pursuers, which enabled them under such circumstances, to avoid the danger, whilst it is yet at a very great distance. We returned therefore to the boat and passed the night on the beach, having brought a tent with us for that purpose; and the next day, by the advice of our guides, crossed the bay, and went to the head of Rakoweena harbour.

And here, though we saw several bears at a distance, we could never, with all our management, contrive to get within shot of them. Our diversion was therefore changed to spearing of salmon, which we saw pushing in great numbers through the surf into a small river. It fell out very opportunely that the water afforded us a little prey; for, besides our ill success in the chase by land, we had also been disappointed in our expectations of shooting wild fowl, on a supply of which we had in some measure depended for our subsistence, and, on its failure, began to think that we had been full long absent from head-quarters.

Our Kamtschadales now discovered that the want of success in not meeting with game was owing to the party being too large, and to the unavoidable noise that was the consequence of it. We therefore agreed to separate; Ivaskin, the corporal, and myself, forming one party; Captain Gore, and the rest of the company, the other.

Accordingly, after passing the night under our tent, we set out on the morning of the 19th, by different routes, meaning to take a circuit round the country, and meet at Saint Peter and Saint Paul. Ivaskin conducted us along the side of a number of small lakes, with which the flat part of this country seems much to abound. These lakes are from half a mile to two miles in length, and about half a mile broad; the water is fresh and clear,
and

and they are full of a red coloured fish, resembling, both in shape and size, a small salmon; of which a more particular description will be given hereafter. The banks of these lakes were covered with the fragments of fish that the bears had half eaten, and which caused an intolerable stench. We often came upon the spots which the bears had just left, but were never able even to come within sight of them.

It was night before we reached the ships, and we had then been twelve hours upon our legs. However, we forgot the fatigues and ill success of our expedition over a good supper.

The 22d, being the anniversary of his Majesty's coronation, twenty-one guns were fired, and the handsomest feast our situation would allow of was prepared in honour of the day. As we were sitting down to dinner, the arrival of Captain Shmaleff was announced. This was a most agreeable surprize; in the first place, because he arrived so opportunely to partake of the good fare and festivity of the occasion; and, in the next, because in our last accounts of him, we were given to understand, that the effects of a severe illness had made him unequal to the journey. He acquainted us, that our not having received the sixteen head of black cattle we had desired might be sent down, was owing to the very heavy rains at Verchnei, which had prevented their setting out; the next day, on coming on board the *Resolution*, he was saluted with eleven guns. Specimens of all our curiosities were presented to him; and Captain Gore added to them a gold watch and a fowling piece.

The next day he was entertained on board the *Discovery*; and on the 25th he took leave of us to return to Bolcheretsk. He could not be prevailed on to lengthen his visit.

The next day I set on foot another hunting party, and put myself under the direction of the clerk of the parish, who was a celebrated bear-hunter. We arrived by sunset at the side of one of the larger lakes. The next step

was

was to
we were
grass and
edge.
the plea
parts ro
gratified
seemed t
lay hid.
light; an
yards, th
time. T
and made
roaring, n
of all three
ed to form
nued to m
Kamtschad
ed, they the
for the pre
and the nig
turned hom
sity till mor
place to wh
female, and
As the acc
to give the r
this sport is u
a few more
better able to
When the
he bears, wh
first step is t
re the freshe
ealment, and
ing by, or a
the place o
unters next
eir firelock

was to conceal ourselves as much as possible; and this we were able to do very effectually among some long grass and brush-wood that grew close to the water's edge. We had not lain long in ambush before we had the pleasure to hear the growlings of bears in different parts round about us; and our expectations were soon gratified by the sight of one of them in the water, which seemed to be swimming directly to the place where we lay hid. The moon at this time gave a considerable light; and when the animal had advanced about fifteen yards, three of us fired at it pretty nearly at the same time. The beast immediately turned short on one side, and made a noise which could not properly be called roaring, nor growling, nor yelling, but was a mixture of all three, and horrible beyond description. It retreated to some thick bushes at a little distance, and continued to make the same terrible noise; and though the Kamtschadales were persuaded it was mortally wounded, they thought it most adviseable not to rouse it again for the present. It was at this time past nine o'clock, and the night threatening a change of weather, we returned home, and deferred the gratification of our curiosity till morning, when we found the bear dead in the place to which it had been watched, it proved to be a female, and beyond the common size.

As the account of our first hunting party will be apt to give the reader a wrong idea of the method in which this sport is usually conducted, it may not be amiss to add a few more words on the subject; and which I am the better able to do since this last expedition.

When the natives come to the ground frequented by the bears, which they contrive to reach about sun-set, the first step is to look for their tracks, to examine which are the freshest and the best situated, with a view to concealment, and, taking aim at the beast, either as he passes by, or advancing in front, or going from them. The place of ambushade being determined upon, the hunters next fix in the ground the crutches upon which their firelocks are made to rest, pointing them in the direction

direction they mean to make their shot. This done, they kneel or lie down, as the circumstances of the cover require; and, with their spears by their side, wait for their game. These precautions are chiefly taken in order to make sure of their mark; for if the bear be not rendered incapable of pursuit by the first shot, the consequences are often fatal. He immediately makes toward the place from whence the noise and smoke issue, and attacks his adversaries with great fury. It is impossible for them to reload, as the animal is seldom at more than twelve or fifteen yards distance when he is fired at; so that, if he does not fall, they immediately put themselves in a posture to receive him upon their spears; and their safety greatly depends on their giving him a mortal stab as he first comes upon them.

There are two seasons of the year when this diversion is more particularly dangerous: in the spring when the bears first come forth after having subsisted, as is universally asserted here, on sucking their paws through the winter; and especially if the frost happens to be severe, and the ice not to be broken up in the lake at that time, by which means they are deprived of their ordinary and expected food. Under these circumstances they soon become exceedingly famished, and fierce and savage in proportion. They will pursue the natives by the scent. The other season, in which it is dangerous to come in their way, is at the time of their copulation, which is generally about this time of the year.

An extraordinary instance of natural affection in these animals hath been already mentioned. The chase affords a variety of a similar nature, and not less affecting; many of which were related to me. The Kamtschadales derive great advantage in hunting from this circumstance. They never venture to fire upon a young bear when the mother is near; for, if the cub drops, she becomes enraged to a degree little short of madness; and, if she gets sight of the enemy, will only quit her revenge with her life. On the contrary, if the dam be shot, the cubs will not leave her side, even after she has

been de-
ing, by a
of the d
to the hu

The K
obligatio
have hith
They con
physic an
these ani
what the
have beco
among th
external a
wise for t
one's sens
of the Ka
attitude an
various fun
work of all
selves mo

No occu
30th, whe
in the chur
ber, with
Clerke's ag
in which h
also affixed
board, with

On the 2
bour, the d
and that the
pital and m
Captain G
or six days
The boats, p
by received
paring me
opper, I w

Vol. II.—N

been dead a long time; but continue about her, shewing, by a variety of affecting actions and gestures, marks of the deepest affliction, and thus become an easy prey to the hunters.

The Kamtschadales very thankfully acknowledge their obligations to the bears for what little advancement they have hitherto made, either in the sciences or polite arts. They confess that they owe to them all their skill both in physic and surgery; that by remarking with what herbs these animals rub the wounds they have received, and what they have recourse to when sick and languid, they have become acquainted with most of the simples in use among them, either in the way of internal medicine, or external application; they acknowledge the bears likewise for their dancing masters. Indeed the evidence of one's senses puts this out of dispute; for the bear-dance of the Kamtschadales is an exact counterpart of every attitude and gesture peculiar to this animal, through its various functions; and this is the foundation and ground work of all their other dances, and what they value themselves most upon.

No occurrence worth mentioning took place till the 30th, when Captain Gore went to Paratounca to put up in the church there an escutcheon, prepared by Mr Webster, with an inscription upon it, setting forth Captain Clerke's age and rank, and the object of the expedition in which he was engaged at the time of his decease. We also affixed to the tree, under which he was buried, a board, with an inscription upon it to the same effect.

On the 2d of October both ships warped out of the harbour, the day before the cattle arrived from Verchnei; and that the men might receive the full benefit of this capital and much-longed-for supply, by consuming it fresh, Captain Gore came to a determination of staying five or six days longer. Nor was this time idly employed. The boats, pumps, sails, and rigging, of both ships, thereby received an additional repair. And Captain Gore, sparing me some molasses, and the use of the Resolution's copper, I was enabled to brew a fortnight's beer for the

crew, and to make a farther provision of ten puncheons of strong spruce essence. The present supply was the more acceptable, as our last cask of spirits, except a small quantity left in reserve for cases of necessity, was now serving out.

On the 5th, we received, from Bolcheretsk, a fresh supply of tea, sugar, and tobacco.

At four in the afternoon of the 9th, we unmoored; but whilst we were, with great difficulty, weighing our last anchor, I was told that the drummer of the marines had left the boat, and that he was last seen with a Kamtschadale woman. I therefore got the serjeant to send parties of soldiers, in different directions, in search of him, whilst some of our sailors went to a well-known haunt of his in the neighbourhood, where they found him, and brought him on board. We now took our leave of this place.

Kamtschatka is the name of a peninsula situated on the eastern coast of Asia, running nearly N. and S.

It is bounded on the N. by the country of the Koriaks; to the S. and E. by the N. pacific ocean; and to the W. by the sea of Okotsk. A chain of high mountains stretches the whole length of the country, from N. to S. dividing it nearly into two equal parts, whence a great number of rivers take their rise, and empty themselves on each side into the pacific ocean and the sea of Okotsk.

If I may judge of the soil, from what I saw of its vegetable productions, I should not hesitate in pronouncing it barren in the extreme. The whole bore a more striking resemblance to Newfoundland, than to any other part of the world I had ever seen.

It is natural to suppose that the severity of the climate must be in due proportion to the general sterility of the soil, of which it is probably the cause. The first time we saw this country was in the beginning of May, 1779, when the whole face of it was covered with snow, from six to eight feet deep. On our return, the 24th of August, the foliage of the trees, and all sorts of vegetation, seemed

seemed
the begin
covered
westerly.

I do not
ning durin
volcano; a
are very f
never but
the cold an
that for se
bitants wa
fir even
frost-bitten
they have

This per
three have,
We have a
the neighbo
others not
given of the

The volca
ground bet
chick. The
eruptions p
terminates i
year 1739,
which reduc
mountains.
which spread
it was dissip
ground to the
off, who was
ta to the Kan
ne mountain,
an alarming s
re-runner o
ree shocks of
ch, convince

seemed to be in the utmost state of perfection; but, at the beginning of October, the tops of the hills were again covered with new fallen snow, the wind continuing westerly.

I do not remember that we had either thunder or lightning during our stay, excepting on the eruption of the *volcano*; and, from the account of the inhabitants, they are very seldom troubled with storms of this kind, and never but in a slight degree. Major Behm told us that the cold and inclemency of the winter of 1779 was such, that for several weeks all intercourse between the inhabitants was entirely stopped, every one being afraid to stir even from one house to another, for fear of being frost-bitten. To avoid the hurricanes, and severe winters, they have subterraneous habitations.

This peninsula abounds in *volcanos*, of which only three have, for some time past, been subject to eruptions. We have already mentioned that which is situated in the neighbourhood of Awatska. Besides this there are others not less remarkable, according to the account given of them by Krascheninicoff.

The *volcano* of Tolbatchick is situated on a neck of ground between the river of Kamschatka and Tolbatchick. The mountain, from the summit of which the eruptions proceeded, is of a considerable height, and terminates in pointed rocks. In the beginning of the year 1739, there issued from it a whirlwind of flames, which reduced to ashes the forests of the neighbouring mountains. This was succeeded by a cloud of smoke, which spread over and darkened the whole country, till it was dissipated by a shower of cinders that covered the ground to the distance of thirty miles. Mr Krascheninicoff, who was at this time on a journey from Bolchoireta to the Kamtschatka *ostrog*, at no great distance from the mountain, relates that the eruption was preceded by an alarming sound in the woods, which he thought the pre-runner of some dreadful storm or hurricane, till three shocks of an earthquake, at about a minute's interval, convinced him of its real cause; but that he was

hindered from approaching nearer the mountain, by the cinders that fell, and prevented him from proceeding on his journey.

The third *volcano* is on the top of the highest mountain of Kamtschatka. A thick smoke never ceases to ascend from its summit, and it has frequent eruptions of the most violent and dreadful kind, some of which were much talked of, and seemed to be fresh in the memories of the Kamtschadales.

The country is likewise said to contain numerous springs of hot water. Krascheninickoff makes mention of two very extraordinary pits or wells, at the bottom of which the waters is seen to boil as in a caldron, with prodigious force and impetuosity; at the same time a dreadful noise issues out of them, and so thick a vapour that a man cannot be seen through it.

The birch was by far the most common tree we saw; and of this we remarked three sorts. Two of them fit for timber, and differing only in the texture and colour of the bark; the third of a dwarfish kind. This tree is applied to a great variety of uses by the inhabitants. The liquor which, on tapping, it yields in great abundance, they drink without mixture, or any preparation, as we had frequent opportunities of observing upon our journey to Bolcheretsk; and found it ourselves pleasant and refreshing, but somewhat purgative. The bark they convert into vessels for almost all their domestic and kitchen purposes; and it is of the wood of this tree the sledges and canoes are also made.

The country produces great variety of berries; blue-berries, partridge-berries, cran-berries, crow-berries, and black-berries. These the natives gather at proper seasons, and preserve by boiling them in thick jam, without sugar. They make no inconsiderable part of their winter provisions, and are used as sauce to their dried and salted fish; of which kind of food they are unquestionably excellent correctives.

We met with several wholesome vegetables in a wild state, and in great quantities, such as wild celery, angelica,

lica, che-
patches
hips, and

There
contribu
in silence
produces
of which
they cut
bundles
der of th
it into t
spindle;
tier, acc
may be c

The r
the num
can ever
ployed
common
the *isati*
tain rat,
wolveren
wolves;

The f
they are
lours.
the Eur
black;
quite wh
and of a
America
hunters
some cal
by the
common
contriva

The f
larger th

lica, chervil, garlic, and onions. Upon some few patches of ground in the vallies we found excellent turnips, and turnip-radishes.

There is a vulgar and well-known plant, which, as it contributes to their subsistence, must not be passed over in silence. This is the nettle, which, as the country produces neither hemp nor flax, supplies the materials, of which are made their fishing-nets. For this purpose they cut it down in August; and, after hanging it up in bundles in the shade, under their *balagans*, the remainder of the summer, treat it like hemp. They then spin it into thread with their fingers, and twist it round a spindle; after which they twine several threads together, according to the different purposes for which it may be designed.

The real riches of this country must always consist in the number of wild animals it produces; and no labour can ever be turned to so good account as what is employed upon their furrieries. Their animals are the common fox; the stoat, or *ermine*; the *zibeline*, or sable; the *isatis*, or arctic fox; the varying hare; the mountain rat, or earless marmot; the weasel; the glutton or *wolverene*; the *argali*, or wild sheep; rein-deer; bears; wolves; dogs,

The fox is the most general object of the chase; and they are found in great numbers, and of variety of colours. The most common is the same in species with the European; but some are of a dark chestnut; some black; others of a stone colour; and there were a few quite white. Their fur is exceedingly thick and fine, and of a quality much superior to those of Siberia or America. A variety of artifices are made use of by the hunters to catch this animal. Traps of different sorts, some calculated to fall upon them, others to catch them by the feet, others by the head, are amongst the most common; to which may be added several ingenious contrivances for taking them in nets.

The fables of Kamtschatka are said to be considerably larger than those of Siberia, and their fur much thicker and

and brighter. The *apparatus* of the fable hunters consists of a rifle barrel gun, of an exceeding small bore, a net, and a few bricks; with the first they shoot them when they see them on the trees; the net is to surround the hollow trees in which, when pursued, they take refuge; and the bricks are heated, and put into the cavities, in order to smoke them out.

The mountain-rat, or earless marmot, is a beautiful little animal, considerably smaller than a squirrel; and, like it, feeds upon roots, berries, the cedar apple, &c. which it eats sitting upon its hind-legs, and holding them up to its mouth with the paws. Its skin is much valued by the Kamischadales, is both warm and light, and of a bright shining colour, forming, like the plumage of some birds, various colours when viewed in different lights.

The stoat, or *ermine*, is here held in no estimation, and, consequently, never engages the attention of the hunters, because, as I have heard, its fur is of an ordinary kind. I saw many of these little animals running about; and we bought several of their skins, which were of a bad white, and of a dirty yellow about the belly. The common weasel is also neglected, and for the same reason.

On the contrary, the skin of the glutton, or *wolverene*, is here in the highest repute; insomuch that a Kamischadale looks upon himself as most richly attired, when a small quantity of this fur is seen upon him. The women adorn their hair with its pats, which are white, and considered as an extraordinary piece of finery; and they have a superstitious opinion, that the angels are clad with the skins of those animals. It is said that this creature is easily tamed, and taught a number of pleasant tricks. †

Having

† Krascheninickoff relates, that this small animal frequently destroys deer, and the wild mountain sheep, in the following way; they scatter at the bottom of the trees bark and moss, which those animals are fond of; and whilst they are picking it up drop suddenly upon them, and, fastening behind the head, suck out their eyes.

* The Kamischadales kill bears. They fasten a noose, within which they place a stick, and then, by pulling it, they draw the bear in, and sometimes by

Have
own k
of killi
saw we
ble in t

Their
excellen
comfort
their do
fat, is co

The w
season t
panies, i

There
parts of
of Awat
should ne
carriage,
to the ne
seem fully
in their p

The arg
lieve unkr
nia,) is he
but in gain
the goat.
weighing,
thirty pou
These crea
only the n
their way
astonishing
and small o

Having already had occasion to speak as fully as my own knowledge enables me of the bears, and the method of killing them, I shall only here observe, that all those I saw were of a dun brown colour; they are seldom visible in the winter months.*

Their skins are exceedingly useful. They make both excellent warm mattresses, and coverings for their beds; comfortable bonnets and gloves, and good collars for their dog's harness. Their flesh, and particularly the fat, is considered as very delicious.

The wolves are only seen in the winter; at which season they prowl about, as I was told, in large companies, in search of prey.

There are rein-deer, both wild and tame, in several parts of the peninsula, but none in the neighbourhood of Awatska. It is somewhat singular that this nation should never have used the rein-deer for the purposes of carriage, in the same manner as their neighbours, both to the north and the eastward. Their dogs, indeed, seem fully sufficient for all the demands of the natives in their present state.

The *argali*, or wild mountain-sheep, an animal I believe unknown in Europe (except in Corsica and Sardinia,) is here in great plenty. Its skin is like the deer's, but in gait, and general appearance, it partakes more of the goat. It has two large twisted horns, sometimes weighing, when at a full growth, from twenty-five to thirty pounds, which, in running, it rests upon its back. These creatures are exceedingly nimble and swift, haunt only the most craggy and mountainous parts, and make their way among the steepest rocks with an agility that is astonishing. The natives work their horns into spoons, and small cups and platters; and have frequently one
of

* The Koriacks make use of a very simple method of catching bears. They suspend, between the forks of a tree, a running noose, within which they fasten a bait, which the animal endeavouring to pull away, is caught sometimes by the neck, and sometimes by the legs.

of a smaller size hanging to a belt, which serves them to drink out of in their hunting expeditions. This animal is gregarious. I frequently tasted the flesh of them, and thought it had a very sweet and delicate flavour.

I have already observed, that the dogs of this country are, in shape and mien, exceedingly like the Pomeranian, with this difference, that they are a great deal larger, and the hair somewhat coarser. They are of a variety of colours; but the most general is a light dun, or dirty cream-colour. Toward the end of May they are all turned loose, and left to provide for themselves through the summer, being sure to return to their respective homes when the snow begins to fall. Their food in the winter consists entirely of the head, entrails, and back bones of salmon; which are put aside and dried for that purpose; and with this diet they are fed but sparingly. The number of dogs must needs be very great, since five are yoked to a sledge, and a sledge carries but one person; so that, on our journey to Bolcheretsk, we required no fewer than an hundred and thirty nine at the two stages of Karatchin and Natchikin. It is also to be remarked, that they never make use of bitches for the draft, nor dogs, but those that are cut. The whelps are trained to this business by being tied to stakes with light leathern thongs, which are made to stretch, and having their victuals placed at a proper distance out of their reach; so that, by constantly pulling and labouring in order to come at their food, they acquire both the strength of limbs, and the habit of drawing, that are necessary for their future destination.

The coasts and bays of this country are frequented by almost every kind of northern sea fowl; and amongst the rest are sea-eagles, but not as at Oonalashka, in great numbers. The rivers inland (if I may judge from what I saw in our journey to Bolcheretsk) are stored with numerous flocks of wild ducks of various species; one kind of which, in particular, has a most beautiful plumage, and is called by the natives, *a-an gitche*, a word intended to express its cry, which is not less singular

than

than
at eq
Th
whic
drake
In
veral
they v
falcon
This
two so
said to
general
remem
abunda
was ma
from the
times co
Fish
with wh
this pen
draw an
from gr
greater j
is in ot
inhabitar
dog, cou
Whale
and on th
are turne
the soles
other pur
fully stor
The whi
ing toget
make net
the under
work the
with whi
Vol. II.

than agreeable ; consisting of three distinct notes, rising at equal intervals above each other.

There is another species called the mountain-duck, which, Steller says, is peculiar to Kamtschatka. The drake is covered with plumage of extraordinary beauty.

In the woods through which we passed, were seen several eagles of a prodigious size ; but of what species they were I cannot pretend to determine. Of the hawk, falcon, and bustard-kind, there are great numbers.

This country likewise affords woodcocks, snipes, and two sorts of grouse, or moor-game. Swans are also said to be in great plenty ; and, in their entertainments, generally to make a part of the repast, though I do not remember to have seen one on any occasion. The vast abundance of wild-fowl, with which the country is stored, was manifest from the numerous presents we received from the *Taion* of St Peter and St Paul ; and which sometimes consisted of twenty brace.

Fish may be considered as the staple article of food with which Providence hath supplied the inhabitants of this peninsula ; who, in general, must never expect to draw any considerable part of their sustenance either from grain or cattle. In short, fish may with much greater justice be here called the staff of life, than bread is in other countries ; since it appears that neither the inhabitants, nor the only domestic animal they have, the dog, could exist without it.

Whales are frequently seen, both in the sea of Okotsk, and on the side of the eastern ocean : and, when caught, are turned to a variety of uses. Of the skin they make the soles of their shoes, and straps and thongs for various other purposes. The flesh they eat, and the fat is carefully stored both for kitchen use and for their lamps. The whiskers are found to be the best materials for sewing together the seams of their canoes ; they likewise make nets of them for the larger kind of fish ; and with the under jaw-bones their sledges are shod. They also work the bones into knives ; and formerly the chains, with which their dogs are tied, were made of that material.

terial, though at present iron ones are generally used. The intestines they clean, then blow and dry like bladders, and it is in these their oil and grease is stored; and of the nerves and veins, which are both strong, and slip readily, they make excellent snares; so that there is no part of the whale which here does not find its use.

Notwithstanding they have abundance of flat-fish, cod, and herring, it is on the salmon fishery alone that the Kamtschadales depend for their winter provisions. Of these, it is said by naturalists, there are to be found on this coast all the different species that are known to exist, and which the natives formerly characterised by the different months in which they ascend the rivers. Their length is generally about three feet and a half; they are very deep in proportion, and their average weight is from thirty to forty pounds. The tail is not forked, but straight. The back is of a dark blue, spotted with black; in other respects they are much like our common salmon. They ascend the river with extraordinary velocity, insomuch that the water is sensibly agitated by their motion; and the Kamtschadales, who are always on the watch for them about the time they are expected, judge of their approach by this circumstance, and immediately let drop their nets before them.

The manner in which they draw their nets within the bay of Awatska, is as follows: They tie one end of the net to a large stone at the water's edge; they then push off in a canoe about twenty yards in a right line, dropping their net as they advance, after which they turn and run out the remainder of the net in a line parallel to the shore; in this position they wait, concealing themselves very carefully in the boat, and keeping a sharp look-out for the fish, which always direct their course close in with the shore, and whose approach is announced by a rippling in the water, till they find that the shoal has advanced beyond the boat, when they shoot the canoe to shore in a direct line, and never fail of inclosing their prey.

The lakes, that have a communication with the sea, which

which
with fi
salmon
could
worth
not de
dogs du
quantity
your va
The I
try is mi
in a very
chuse the
the way,
used. C
over each
poles fine
misdemea
ka such o
or heinou
likewise th
poral, wh
in his abse
By an e
soever can
formed, th
few) the
such severi
der it.
The con
exports, is
cipally by
present Em
gether carr
every artic
and we we
lation in so
Our sailors
from the c

which was the case with all those that I saw, abound with fish that have very much the resemblance of small salmon, and are from four to six pounds weight. I could not understand that the inhabitants thought it worth their while to fish for them. As these lakes are not deep, they become an easy prey to the bears and dogs during the summer; and, if I might judge from the quantity of bones to be seen upon the banks, they devour vast numbers of them.

The Russian government, established over this country is mild and equitable, considered as a military one, in a very high degree. The natives are permitted to chuse their own magistrates from among themselves, in the way, and with the same powers, they had ever been used. One of these, under the title of *Toion*, presides over each *ostrog*; is the referee in all differences; imposes fines, and inflicts punishments for all crimes and misdemeanors; referring to the governor of Kamtschatka such only as he does not chuse, from their intricacy or heinousness, to decide upon himself. The *Toion* has likewise the appointment of a civil officer, called a Corporal, who assists him in the execution of his office, and in his absence acts as his deputy.

By an edict of the present Empress, no crime whatsoever can be punished with death. But we were informed, that in cases of murder (of which there are very few) the punishment of the *kneut* is administered with such severity, that the offender for the most part dies under it.

The commerce of this country, as far as concerns the exports, is entirely confined to furs, and carried on principally by a company of merchants, instituted by the present Empress. Formerly this commerce was altogether carried on in the way of barter, but of late years every article is bought and sold for ready money only; and we were surprised at the quantity of specie in circulation in so poor a country. The furs sell at a high price. Our sailors brought a great number of furs with them from the coast of America, and were not less astonished

than delighted with the quantity of silver the merchants paid down for them ; but, on finding neither gin shops to resort to, nor tobacco, or any thing else that they cared for, to be had for money, the roubles soon became troublesome companions, and I often observed them kicking them about the deck.

Notwithstanding the general intercourse that, for the last forty years, hath taken place between the natives, the Russians, and Cossacks, the former are not more distinguished from the latter by their features and general figure, then by their habits and cast of mind : their stature is much below the common size. This Major Behm attributes in a great measure, to their marrying so early ; both sexes generally entering into the conjugal state at the age of thirteen or fourteen. Their industry is abundantly conspicuous, without being contrasted with the laziness of their Russian and Cossack inmates, who are fond of intermarrying with them : and, as it should seem, for no other reason, but that they may be supported in sloth and inactivity.

Their houses are only to be found in towns, which are called *ostrags*. St Peter and St Paul consists of about thirty habitations.

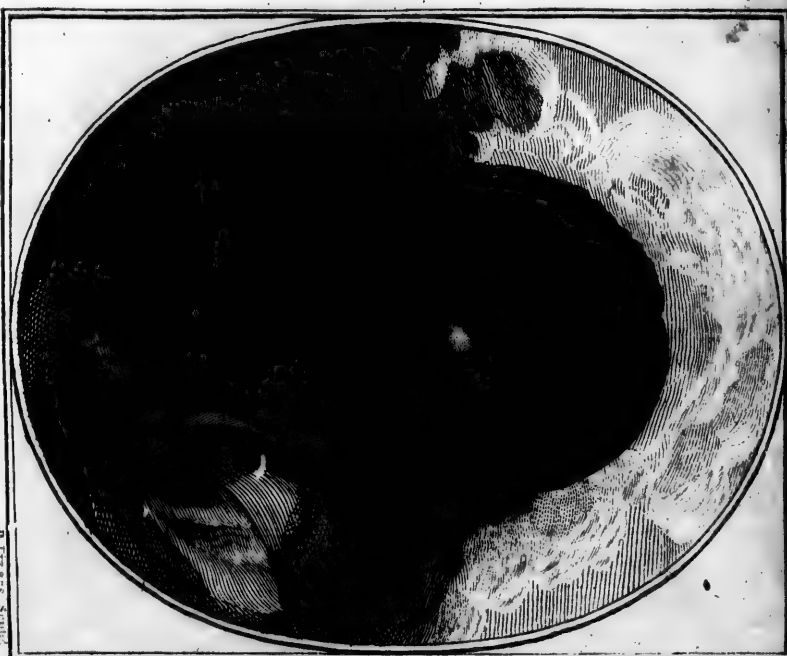
The outermost garment of the men's dress is of the shape of a carter's frock. Those worn in summer are of nankeen ; in winter they are made of skins, most commonly of the deer or dog, tanned on one side, the hair being left on the other, which is worn innermost. Under this is a close jacket of nankeen, or other cotton stuffs, and beneath that a shirt of thin Persian silk, of a blue, red, or yellow colour. The remaining part of their dress consists of a pair of tight trowsers, or long breeches of leather, reaching down to the calf of the leg ; of a pair of dog or deer-skin boots, with the hair innermost ; and of a fur cap with two flaps, which are generally tied up close to the head, but in bad weather are let to fall round the shoulders.

I shall here conclude the account of Kamtschatka, and proceed with our voyage.

Our



AMEAN and WOMAN of KANTSCHATKA



By G. S. Smith.

Our
left a d
of the
passage
turn to
for the
Gore de
in writi
might n
opinion
mous, a
conditio
unsafe to
navigate
otherwis
that it w
of that if
Kuriles,
lie neare
sented as
Russian a
fortunate
harbours,
either as
may be
means of
neighbou
object wa
and after
northwar

This pl
Gore, in
Macao ;
October,
we steered
At midni
noon of
seventy f
profitably

Our instructions from the Board of Admiralty having left a discretionary power with the commanding Officer of the expedition, in case of failure in the search of a passage from the Pacific into the Atlantic Ocean, to return to England by whatever route he should think best for the farther improvement of geography, Captain Gore demanded of the principal officers their sentiments, in writing, respecting the manner in which these orders might most effectually be obeyed. The result of our opinions, which he had the satisfaction to find unanimous, and entirely coinciding with his own, that the condition of the ships, of the sails and cordage, made it unsafe to attempt, at so advanced a season of the year, to navigate the sea between Japan and Asia, which would otherwise have afforded the largest field for discovery; that it was therefore adviseable to keep to the eastward of that island, and in our way thither to run along the Kuriles, and examine more particularly the islands that lie nearest the northern coast of Japan, which are represented as of a considerable size, and independent of the Russian and Japanese governments. Should we be so fortunate as to find in these any safe and commodious harbours, we conceived they might be of importance, either as places of shelter for any future navigators, who may be employed in exploring these seas, or as the means of opening a commercial intercourse among the neighbouring dominions of the two empires. Our next object was to survey the coast of the Japanese islands, and afterward to make the coast of China, as far to the northward as we were able, and run along it to Macao.

This plan being adopted, I received orders from Capt. Gore, in case of separation, to proceed immediately to Macao; and, at six o'clock in the evening of the 9th of October, having cleared the entrance of Awatska Bay, we steered to the S. E. with the wind N. W. and by W. At midnight we had a dead calm, which continued till noon of the 10th. Being in soundings of sixty and seventy fathoms water, we employed our time very profitably in catching cod, which were exceedingly fine
and

and plentiful; in the afternoon a breeze sprung up from the W. with which we stood along the coast to the southward.

From the 10th to the 21st, we had very blowing weather. In the afternoon of the 21st, the leach-rope of the Resolution's fore-top-sail gave way, and split the sail. As this accident had often happened to us in Captain Cook's life time, he had ordered the foot and leach-ropes of the top-sails to be taken out, and larger fixed in their stead; and as these also proved unequal to the strain that was on them, it is evident that the proper proportion of strength between those ropes and the sail is exceedingly miscalculated in our service. This day a land bird perched on the rigging, and was taken; it was larger than a sparrow, but in other respects very like one.

The gale now abated gradually; so that in the morning of the 22d, we let out the reefs of the top-sails, and made more sail. In the afternoon, another little wanderer from the land pitched on the ship, and was so worn out with fatigue, that it suffered itself to be taken immediately, and died a few hours afterward. It was not bigger than a wren, had a tuft of yellow feathers on its head, and the rest of its plumage like that of the linnnet. The sparrow, being stronger, lived a long time. These birds plainly indicating, that we could not be at any great distance from the land, and the wind, after varying a little, fixing in the evening at N. we had hopes of making the land, and we hauled up to the W. N. W. in which direction the southernmost islands, seen by Spanberg, and said to be inhabited by hairy men, lay at the distance of about fifty leagues. But the wind not keeping pace with our wishes, blew in such light airs, that we made little way till eight the next morning, when we had a fresh breeze from the S. S. W. with which we continued to steer W. N. W. till the evening. We had strong squally gales attended with rain, and, having passed in the course of the day several patches of green grass, and seen a shag, many small land birds, and

flocks

flocks of
signs of
whole
steered
ing of t
W. and
when th
fresh gal
Thus
W. toget
with, and
its becom
tain Gore
search for
a course
the night,
gale, with
we saw fl
rigging, a
a degree o
been long
long grass,
These sign
us to try fo
ninety fath
degrees shi
on to the W
the pleasur
which prov
We stood
leagues of t
of fifty-eigh
The countr
range of m
pleasing var
of several to
shore, in ple
Being qu
use of our ti

flocks of gulls, it was not thought prudent, with all these signs of the vicinity of land, to stand on during the whole night. We therefore tacked at midnight, and steered a few hours to the S. E. and, at four in the morning of the 24th, again directed our course to the W. N. W. and carried a press of sail till seven in the evening, when the wind shifted from S. S. W. to N. and blew a fresh gale.

Thus disappointed in our endeavours to get to the N. W. together with the boisterous weather we had met with, and the little likelihood, at this time of the year, of its becoming more favourable to our views, were Captain Gore's motives for now finally giving up all farther search for the islands to the N. of Japan, and for shaping a course W. S. W. for the N. part of that Island. In the night, the wind shifted to the N. E. and blew a fresh gale, with hard rain and hazy weather. On the 25th, we saw flights of wild ducks; a pigeon lighted on our rigging, and many birds, like linnets, flew about us with a degree of vigour that seemed to prove they had not been long upon the wing. We also passed patches of long grass, and a piece of either sugar cane or bamboo. These signs that land was at no great distance induced us to try for soundings; but we found no ground with ninety fathoms of line. Toward evening, the wind by degrees shifted round to the S. with which we still kept on to the W. S. W. and at day-break of the 26th, we had the pleasure of descrying high land to the westward, which proved to be Japan.

We stood on till nine, when we were within two leagues of the land, bearing W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and had soundings of fifty-eight fathoms, with a bottom of very fine sand. The country is of a moderate height, consists of a double range of mountains; it abounds with wood, and has a pleasing variety of hills and dales. We saw the smoke of several towns or villages, and many houses near the shore, in pleasant and cultivated situations.

Being quite calm we were willing to make the best use of our time, and put our fishing lines overboard in

ten

ten fathoms water, but without any success. As this was the only amusement our circumstances admitted, the disappointment was very sensibly felt, and made us look back with regret to the cod-banks of the dreary regions we had left, which had supplied us with so many wholesome meals, and, by the diversion they afforded, had given a variety to the wearisome succession of gales and calms, and the tedious repetition of the same nautical observations. At two in the afternoon, the breeze freshened from the southward, and by four had brought us under close-reefed topsails, and obliged us to stand off to the S. E. In consequence of this course, and the haziness of the weather, the land soon disappeared.

On the 29th, at nine o'clock, the wind shifting to the southward, and the sky lowering, we tacked and stood off to the E. and soon after we saw a vessel close in with the land, standing along the shore to the northward; and another in the offing, coming down on us before the wind. Objects of any kind, belonging to a country so famous, and yet so little known, it will be easily conceived, must have excited a general curiosity, and accordingly every soul on board was upon deck, in an instant, to gaze at them. As the vessel to windward approached us, she hauled farther off shore; upon which, fearing that we should alarm them by the appearance of a pursuit, we brought the ships to, and she passed ahead of us, at the distance of about half a mile. It would have been easy for us to have spoken with them; but perceiving by their manœuvres, that they were much frightened, Captain Gore was not willing to augment their terrors; and, thinking that we should have many better opportunities of communication with this people, suffered them to go off without interruption. Our distance did not permit us to remark any particulars regarding the men on board, who seemed to be about six in number.

At noon the wind freshened, and brought with it a good deal of rain; by three it had increased so much that we were reduced to our courses; at the same time, the

sea ran a
have seen

At eight
without
sudden
wailed be
exceedin
split on b
long ben
of late ha
cially wh
became
variable

From
we conti
settled w
On both
several pi
from one
these stor
of variou
barnicles,
saw two
had many

We co
winds fro
currence
of wind f
fore-sail,
pass much
ties of t
Japan and
great vol
part of th

On the
for the so
observed
when seen
canic erat

Vol. II.

sea ran as high as any one on board ever remembered to have seen it.

At eight in the evening, the gale shifted to the W. without abating the least in violence, and, by raising a sudden swell, in a contrary direction to that which prevailed before, occasioned the ships to strain and labour exceedingly. During the storm, several of the sails were split on board the *Resolution*. Indeed they had been so long bent, and were worn so thin, that this accident had of late happened to us almost daily in both ships; especially when being stiff and heavy with the rain, they became less able to bear the shocks of the violent and variable winds we at this time experienced.

From the 29th of October to the 5th of November, we continued our course to the S. E. having very unsettled weather, attended with much lightning and rain. On both days we passed great quantities of pumice stone, several pieces of which we took up, and found to weigh from one ounce to three pounds. We conjectured that these stones had been thrown into the sea by eruptions of various dates, as many of them were covered with barnacles, and others quite bare. At the same time we saw two wild ducks, and several small land birds, and had many porpusses playing round us.

We continued our course to the S. W. having the winds from the northward, without any remarkable occurrence till the 12th, when we had a most violent gale of wind from the same quarter, which reduced us to the fore-sail, and mizen stay-sail. We still continued to pass much pumice stone; indeed, the prodigious quantities of this substance, which float in the sea between Japan and the Bashee islands, seem to indicate that some great volcanic convulsion must have happened in this part of the Pacific Ocean.

On the 15th we saw three islands, and bore away for the south point of the largest, upon which we observed a high barren hill, flattish at the top, and when seen from the W. S. W. presents an evident volcanic crater. The earth, rock or sand, for it was not

easy to distinguish of which its surface is composed, exhibited various colours, and a considerable part we conjectured to be sulphur, both from its appearance to the eye, and the strong sulphureous smell which we perceived, as we approached the point. Some of the officers on board the Resolution, which passed nearer the land, thought they saw steams rising from the top of the hill. From these circumstances, Captain Gore gave it the name of *Sulphur Island*.

Captain Gore now directed his course to the W. S. W. for the Bashee islands, hoping to procure at them such a supply of refreshments as would help to shorten his stay at Macao.

We proceeded, without any occurrence worth remarking, with a fresh breeze from the N. E. till the 22d, when it increased to a strong gale, with violent squalls of wind and rain, which brought us under close reefed top-sails.

During the whole of the 23d and 24th it rained incessantly, and the wind still blew a storm; a heavy sea rolled down on us from the N. and in the afternoon we had violent flashes of lightning from the same quarter. During the night there was an eclipse of the moon, but the rain prevented our making any observation; unfortunately, at the time of the greatest darkness, a seaman, in stowing the main top-mast stay-sail, fell overboard; but laying hold of a rope, which providentially was hanging out of the fore-chains into the water, and the ship being quickly brought in the wind, he was got on board without any other hurt than a slight bruise on his shoulder.

As our situation in longitude was now to the West of the Bashee, according to Mr Dalrymple's maps, I perceived that Captain Gore was governed, in the course he was steering, by the opinions of Commodore Byron and Captain Wallis, with whom he sailed when they passed these islands. The gale, at this time, had not in the least abated; and Captain Gore, still conceiving that the islands must undoubtedly lie to the westward, brought

brought the ships to, with their heads to the N. W. under the fore-sail, and ballanced mizen.

At six in the morning of the 26th, the wind having considerably abated, we bore away W. set the top-sails, and let out the reefs. We saw this day a flock of ducks, and many tropic birds, also dolphins and porpusses, and still continued to pass several pumice stones. We spent the night upon our jacks, and at six in the morning of the 27th, again bore away W. in search of the Bashees.

I now began to be a little apprehensive lest, in searching for those islands, we should get so much to the southward as to be obliged to pass to leeward of the Pratas. In this case it might have been exceedingly difficult for such bad sailing ships as ours to fetch Macao; particularly should the wind continue to blow, as it now did, from the N. N. E. and N. As I had some doubts whether Mr Dalrymple's charts were on board the Resolution, I made sail and hailed her; and having acquainted Captain Gore with my apprehensions of being driven to the southward, he informed me that he should continue on his course for the day, as he was still in hopes of finding Admiral Byron's longitude right; and therefore ordered me to spread a few miles to the S.

At noon the weather became hazy; and at six having got to the westward of the Bashees, Captain Gore hauled his wind to the N. W. under on easy sail, the wind blowing very strong, and their being every appearance of a dirty boisterous night. At four in the morning of the 21th, we saw the Resolution, then half a mile ahead of us, wear, and immediately perceived breakers close under our lee. At daylight we saw the island of Prata.

For the remaining part of the day we carried a press of sail, and kept the wind, which was N. E. by N. in order to secure our passage to Macao. It was fortunate that toward evening the wind favoured us, by changing two points more to the E. for had the wind and weather

continued the same as during the preceding week, I doubt whether we could have fetched that port; in which case we must have borne away for Batavia; a place we all dreaded exceedingly, from the sad havoc the unhealthiness of the climate had made in the crews of the former ships that had been out on discovery, and had touched there.

In the forenoon of the 29th, we passed several Chinese fishing-boats, who eyed us with great indifference. We were sorry to find the sea covered with the wrecks of boats that had been lost, as we conjectured, in the late boisterous weather. Being now nearly in the latitude of the Lema islands, we bore away W. by N. and, after running twenty-two miles, saw one of them nine or ten leagues to the westward.

In the morning of the 30th, we ran along the Lema isles. At seven o'clock, we had precisely the same view of these islands, as is represented in a plate of Lord Anson's voyage. At nine o'clock, a Chinese boat, which had been before with the Resolution, came alongside, and wanted to put on board us a pilot, which however we declined, as it was our business to follow our consort. We soon after passed the rock marked R. in Lord Anson's plate; but, instead of hauling up to the northward of the grand Ladrone island, as was done in the Centurion, we proceeded to leeward.

It is hardly necessary to caution the mariner not to take this course, as the danger is sufficiently obvious; for should the wind blow strong, and the current set with it, it will be extremely difficult to fetch Macao. Our fears of missing this port, and being forced to Batavia, added to the strong and eager desires of hearing news from Europe, made us rejoice to see the Resolution soon after fire a gun, and hoist her colours as a signal for a pilot. On repeating the signal, we saw an excellent race between four Chinese boats; and Captain Gore, having engaged with the man, who arrived first, to carry the ship to the Typa for thirty dollars, sent me word that as we could easily follow, that expence might be saved

saved to
the Res
without
began to
ed a viol
agreeing
In obe
by the Bo
demand
other pap
ting to th
these orde
firmness.
of our offi
themselves
for their o
which the
to have su
the other
structions
papers, wh
fall into th
and imperfe
our labours
who, thoug
been the au
fore as I ha
acquainted
the reasons
yield a ready
that any pa
sent to the A
sence, and k
of the Board
of the Voyag
faithfully be
It is with t
proposals me
compliance

saved to us. Soon after, a second pilot, getting on board the *Resolution*, insisted on conducting the ship, and, without further ceremony, laid hold of the wheel, and began to order the sails to be trimmed. This occasioned a violent dispute, which at last was compromised by agreeing to go sharers in the money.

In obedience to the instructions given to Capt. Cook by the Board of Admiralty, it now became necessary to demand of the officers and men their journals, and what other papers they might have in their possession, relating to the history of our voyage. The execution of these orders seemed to require some delicacy as well as firmness. I could not be ignorant that the greatest part of our officers, and several of the seamen, had amused themselves with writing accounts of our proceedings for their own private satisfaction, or that of their friends, which they might be unwilling, in their present form, to have submitted to the inspection of strangers. On the other hand, I could not consistently with the instructions we had received, leave in their custody papers, which, either from carelessness or design, might fall into the hands of printers, and give rise to spurious and imperfect accounts of the voyage, to the discredit of our labours, and perhaps to the prejudice of officers, who, though innocent, might be suspected of having been the authors of such publications. As soon therefore as I had assembled the ship's company on deck, I acquainted them with the orders we had received, and the reasons which I thought ought to induce them to yield a ready obedience. At the same time I told them, that any papers, which they were desirous not to have sent to the Admiralty, should be sealed up in their presence, and kept in my own custody, till the intentions of the Board, with regard to publications of the History of the Voyage, were fulfilled; after which, they should faithfully be restored back to them.

It is with the greatest satisfaction I can relate that my proposals met with the approbation and the cheerful compliance both of the officers and men; and I am persuaded

persuaded that every scrap of paper, containing any transactions relating to the voyage, were given up. Indeed it is doing bare justice to the seamen of this ship to declare that they were the most obedient, and the best disposed men I ever knew, though almost all of them were very young, and had never before served in a ship of war.

We kept working to windward till six in the evening, when we came to anchor on the 1st of December.

In the forenoon of the 2d, one of the Chinese contractors, who are called *Compradors*, went on board the *Resolution*, and sold to Captain Gore two hundred pounds weight of beef, together with a considerable quantity of greens, oranges, and eggs.

In the evening, Captain Gore sent me on shore to visit the Portuguese Governor, and to request his assistance in procuring refreshments for our crews, which he thought might be done on more reasonable terms than the *Comprador* would undertake to furnish them. At the same time, I took a list of the naval stores, of which both vessels were greatly in want, with an intention of proceeding immediately to Canton, and applying to the servants of the East India Company, who were at that time resident there. On my arrival at the citadel, the Fort-major informed me that the Governor was sick, and not able to see company; on my acquainting the Major with my desire of proceeding immediately to Canton, he told me that they could not venture to furnish me with a boat, till leave was obtained from the *Hoppo*, or officer of the customs; and that the application for this purpose must be made to the Chinese government at Canton.

The mortification I felt at meeting with this unexpected delay, could only be equalled by the extreme impatience with which we had so long waited for an opportunity of receiving intelligence from Europe. It often happens, that in the eager pursuit of an object, we overlook the easiest and most obvious means of attaining it. This was actually my case at present; for I was re-
turning

turning under great dejection to the ship, when the Portuguese officer who attended me, asked me, if I did not mean to visit the English gentlemen at Macao. I need not add with what transport I received the information this question conveyed to me; nor the anxious hopes and fears, the conflict between curiosity and apprehension, which passed in my mind, as we walked toward the house of one of our countrymen.

In this state of agitation, it was not surprising, that our reception, though no way deficient in civility or kindness, should appear cold and formal. In our inquiries, as far as they related to objects of private concern, we met, as was indeed to be expected, with little or no satisfaction; but the events of a public nature, which had happened since our departure, now, for the first time, burst all at once upon us, overwhelmed every other feeling, and left us, for some time, almost without the power of reflection. For several days we continued questioning each other about the truth of what we had heard, as if desirous of seeking in doubt and suspense, for that relief and consolation which the reality of our calamities appeared totally to exclude. These sensations were succeeded by the most poignant regret at finding ourselves cut off at such a distance from the scene where we imagined the fate of fleets and armies was every moment deciding.

On the 9th, Captain Gore received an answer from the Committee of the English Supercargoes at Canton, in which they assured him that their best endeavours should be used to procure the supplies we stood in need of, as expeditiously as possible: and that a passport should be sent for one of his officers.

The following day, an English merchant, from one of our settlements in the East Indies, applied to Captain Gore for the assistance of a few hands to navigate a vessel, he had purchased at Macao, up to Canton. Captain Gore judging this a good opportunity for me to proceed to that place, gave orders that I should take along with me my Second Lieutenant, the Lieutenant of marines, and

and ten seamen. Though this was not precisely the mode in which I could have wished to visit Canton; yet as it was very uncertain when the passport might arrive, and my presence might contribute materially to the expediting of our supplies, I did not hesitate to put myself on board, having left orders with Mr Williamson to get the Discovery ready for sea as soon as possible. As we approached the Bocca Tygris, which is thirteen leagues from Macao, the Chinese coast appears in white cliffs.

We did not arrive at Wampu, which is only nine leagues from the Bocca Tygris, till the 18th. Wampu is a small Chinese town, off which the ships of the different nations, who trade here, lie in order to take in their lading.

From Wampu I immediately proceeded in a *sampane*, or Chinese boat, to Canton, which is about two leagues and a half higher up the river. These boats are the neatest and most convenient for passengers I ever saw. They are of various sizes, almost flat at the bottom, very broad upon the beam, and narrow at the head and stern, which are raised and ornamented; the middle, where we sat, was arched over with a roof of bamboo, which may be raised or lowered at pleasure: in the sides were small windows with shutters, and the apartment was furnished with handsome mats, chairs, and tables. In the stern was placed a small waxen idol, in a case of gilt leather, before which stood a pot containing lighted tapers made of dry chips, or matches and gum. The hire of this boat was a Spanish dollar.

I reached Canton a little after it was dark, and landed at the English factory, where, though my arrival was very unexpected, I was received with every mark of attention and civility. The Select Committee at this time consisted of Mr Fitzhugh the President, Mr Bovan and Mr Rapier. They immediately gave me an account of such stores as the India ships were able to afford us. Wishing therefore to make my stay here as short as possible, I requested the gentlemen to procure boats for me the next day to convey the stores; but I was soon informed, that

that a
rapidl
compl
pensab
I wa
withou
ced tov
measur
brough
acquain
down fr
cured, a
being th
chase of
on the 2
As Ca
market fo
with me
perty of
them at th
which gav
quainted w
ing acquai
these circu
to some O
me a fair p
ber of the
the place,
grity; and
himself me
fit to himf
examined t
could not v
lars for ther
sold for in K
half their v
driving a ba
one thousan
dred; then c
Vol. II.—N

that a business of that kind was not to be transacted so rapidly in this country ; that many forms were to be complied with ; and in short that patience was an indispensable virtue in China.

I waited several days for the event of our application, without understanding that the matter was at all advanced toward a conclusion. Whilst I was doubting what measures to pursue, the commander of a country ship brought me a letter from Captain Gore, in which he acquainted me that he had engaged him to bring us down from Canton, and to deliver the stores we had procured, at his own risk in the *Typa*. All our difficulties being thus removed, I had leisure to attend to the purchase of our provisions and stores, which was completed on the 26th.

As Canton was likely to be the most advantageous market for furs, I was desired by Captain Gore to carry with me about twenty sea-otters skins, chiefly the property of our deceased Commanders, and to dispose of them at the best price I could procure ; a commission, which gave me an opportunity of becoming a little acquainted with the genius of the Chinese for trade. Having acquainted some of the English supercargoes with these circumstances, I desired them to recommend me to some Chinese merchant of credit, who would offer me a fair price. I was accordingly directed to a member of the *Hong*, a society of the principal merchants of the place, who assured me I might depend on his integrity ; and that, in a case of this sort, he should consider himself merely as an agent, without looking for any profit to himself. Having laid my goods before him, he examined them with great care, and told me that he could not venture to offer more than three hundred dollars for them. As I knew from the price our skins had sold for in Kamtschatka that he had not offered me one half their value, I found myself under the necessity of driving a bargain. In my turn, I therefore demanded one thousand ; my Chinese then advanced to five hundred ; then offered me a private present of tea and porcelain,

lain, amounting to one hundred more; then the same sum in money; and lastly, rose to seven hundred dollars, on which I fell to nine hundred. At last, being tired of the contest, I consented to and received eight hundred.

The ill state of health, which at this time I laboured under, left me little reason to lament the very narrow limits within which the policy of the Chinese obliges every European at Canton to confine his curiosity. I should otherwise have felt exceedingly tantalized with living under the walls of so great a city, full of objects of novelty, without being able to enter it. The following observations, collected from the information with which I have been obligingly furnished by several English gentlemen, who were a long time resident at Canton, may not be unacceptable to the public.

Canton, including the old and new town, and the suburbs, is about ten miles in circuit. Le Comte estimated the number of inhabitants at 1,500,000; Du Hald at 1,000,000: and M. Sonnerat says he has ascertained them to be no more than 75,000. The following circumstances may perhaps lead the reader to form a judgment with tolerable accuracy on this subject.

A Chinese house, undoubtedly, occupies more space than is usually taken up by houses in Europe; but the proportion suggested by M. Sonnerat, of four or five to one, certainly goes much beyond the truth. To this should be added that a great many houses in the suburbs of Canton, are occupied for commercial purposes only, by merchants and rich tradesmen, whose families live entirely within the city. On the other hand, a Chinese family appears to consist, on an average, of more persons than an European. A *Mandarine*, according to his rank and substance, has from five to twenty wives. A merchant, from three to five. One of this class at Canton had indeed twenty-five wives, and thirty-six children; but this was mentioned to me as a very extraordinary instance. An opulent tradesman has usually two; and the lower class of people very rarely more than one. Their servants

fl
te
sa
w
up
for
wh
at
app
low
(for
near
to b
T
the
that
and
of so
thou
a few
Th
irreg
most
of br
court
chan
ment
are b
Th
built

wants are at least double in number to those employed by persons of the same condition in Europe. If then, we suppose a Chinese family one-third larger, and a European house two-thirds less than each other, a Chinese city will contain only half the number of inhabitants contained in a European town of the same size. According to these *data*, the city and suburbs of Canton may probably contain about one hundred and fifty thousand.

With respect to the number of inhabited *sampanes*, or floating habitations, I found different opinions were entertained; but none placing them lower than forty thousand. They are moored in rows close to each other, with a narrow passage at intervals for the boats to pass up and down the river. As the Tygris at Canton is somewhat wider than the Thames at London, and the whole river is covered in this manner for the extent of at least a mile, this account of their number does not appear to me in the least exaggerated; and if it be allowed the number of inhabitants in the *sampanes* alone (for each of them contains one family) must amount to nearly three times the number supposed by M. Sonnerat to be in the whole city.

The military force of the province of which Canton is the capital, amounts to fifty thousand men. It is said, that twenty thousand are stationed in and about the city; and as a proof of this, I was assured that on the occasion of some disturbance that had happened at Canton, thirty thousand men were drawn together within the space of a few hours.

The streets are long, and most of them narrow and irregular; but well paved with large stones, and, for the most part, kept exceedingly clean. The houses are built of brick one story high, having generally two or three courts backward, in which are the warehouses for merchandize; and in the houses, within the city, the apartments for the women. A very few of the meanest sort are built of wood.

The houses belonging to the European factors are built on an handsome quay, with a regular facade of two
5 D 2 stories



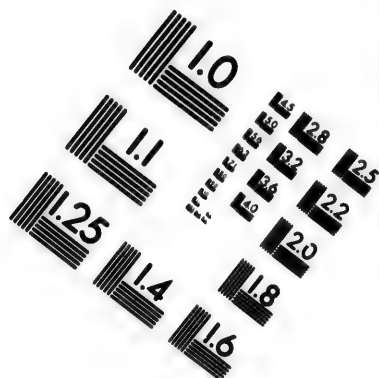
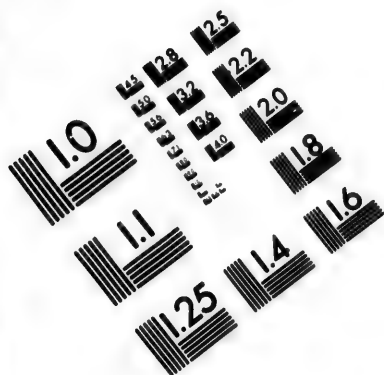
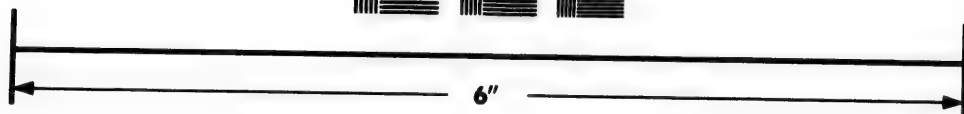
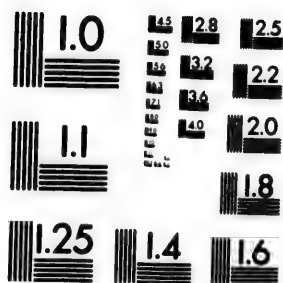


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.5 1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5
2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0

10

stories toward the river, and disposed within, partly after the European, and partly after the Chinese manner. Adjoining to these are a number of houses belonging to the Chinese, and hired out to the commanders of ships and merchants who make an occasional stay. The English supercargoes live together at a common table, which is kept by the company. The time of their residence seldom exceeds eight months annually. They very rarely pay any visits within the walls of Canton, except on public occasions.

During my stay at Canton, I was carried by one of the English gentlemen to visit a person of the first consequence in the place. We were received in a long room or gallery, at the upper end of which stood a table with a large chair behind it, and a row of chairs extending from it on each side down the room. Being previously instructed that the point of civility consisted in remaining as long unseated as possible, I readily acquitted myself of this piece of *etiquette*; after which we were entertained with tea, and some preserved and fresh fruits. Our host was very fat, with a heavy dull countenance, and of great gravity in his deportment. He spoke a little broken English and Portuguese; and, after we had taken our refreshment, he carried us about his house and garden, and, having shewed us all the improvements he was making, we departed.

In the evening of the 26th, I took my leave of the supercargoes, having thanked them for their many obliging favours; amongst which I must not forget to mention an handsome present of tea for the use of the ships companies, and a large collection of English periodical publications. The latter we found a valuable acquisition, as they both served to amuse our impatience during our tedious voyage home, and enabled us to return not total strangers to what had been transacting in our native country. At one o'clock the next morning we left Canton, and arrived at Macao about the same hour the day following, having passed down a channel which lies to the westward of that by which we had come up.

During

on
eve
mer
a fe
pres
The
was
not f
was g
quant
were
and o
The
return
to mak
mutiny
The
Chinese
whimsi
arrival h
both of
age had
time it
almost t
clothes
skins, an
in the co
mixed ar
of China
On the
Resolutio
ter; and
both that
earn any
people ha
making a

During our absence a brisk trade had been carrying on with the Chinese for the sea-otter skins, which had every day been rising in their value. One of our seamen sold his stock alone for eight hundred dollars; and a few prime skins, which were clean and had been well preserved, were sold for one hundred and twenty each. The whole amount of the value in specie and goods that was got for the furs in both ships, I am confident did not fall short of two thousand pounds sterling; and it was generally supposed that at least two thirds of the quantity we had originally got from the Americans were spoiled and worn out, or had been given away and otherwise disposed of in Kamtschatka.

The rage with which our seamen were possessed to return to Cook's River, and by another cargo of skins to make their fortunes at one time, was not far short of mutiny.

The barter which had been carrying on with the Chinese for our sea-otter skins, had produced a very whimsical change in the dress of all our crew. On our arrival here, nothing could exceed the ragged appearance both of the younger officers and seamen; for as our voyage had already exceeded, by near a twelvemonth, the time it was at first imagined we should remain at sea, almost the whole of our original stock of European clothes had been long worn out, or patched up with skins, and the various manufactures we had met with in the course of our discoveries. These were now again mixed and eked out with the gaudiest silks and cotton of China.

On the 11th of January, two seamen belonging to the Resolution found means to run off with a six-oared cutter; and, notwithstanding diligent search was made, both that and the following day, we were never able to learn any tidings of her. It was supposed, that these people had been seduced by the prevailing notion of making a fortune by returning to the fur islands.

PRICES

CAPTAIN COOK'S THIRD VOYAGE.

PRICES OF LABOUR IN CHINA.

	£.	s.	d.	
A coolee, or porter - - -	0	0	8	per day.
A taylor - - -	0	0	5	and rice
A handicraftsman - - -	0	0	8	
A common labourer, from 3d. to 5d.				
A woman's labour considerably cheaper.				

On the 12th of January, 1780, at noon, we unmoored and scaled the guns, which on board my ship, now amounted to ten; so that, by means of four additional ports, we could if occasion required fight seven on a side.

We thought it our duty to provide ourselves with these means of defence, though we had some reason to believe that the generosity of our enemies had in a great measure rendered them superfluous. We were informed at Canton that the public prints, which had arrived last from England, made mention of instructions having been found on board all the French ships of war, captured in Europe, directing their commanders, in case of falling in with the ships that sailed under the command of Captain Cook, to suffer them to proceed on their voyage without molestation. The same orders were also said to have been given by the American Congress to the vessels employed in their service. As this intelligence was farther confirmed by the private letters of several of the supercargoes, Captain Gore thought himself bound, in return for the liberal exceptions made in our favour, to refrain from availing himself of any opportunities of capture, which these might afford, and to preserve throughout his voyage the strictest neutrality.

At two in the afternoon, on the 13th, having got under sail, the Resolution saluted the fort of Macao with eleven guns, which was returned with the same number. At five, the wind dropping, the ship missed stays, and drove into shallow water; but, by carrying out an anchor, she was hauled off without receiving the smallest damage. The weather continuing calm, we were obliged to warp out into the entrance of the Type, which

which w
the next
from the
and Wu

In the
Pulo Co
the island
six fatho
kept the
the S. E.
W. & W.
our distan

As soon
fired a gu
arrival, an
effect. I
sent to cr
motive for

None c
notwithst
Gore thou
them. V
hill, to th
we arrive
without, l
rify the i
alone. I
was in a
the most v
ticularly th
ful of doll
and the fo
numbers, l
our visit.

stood, and
all our wa
man to cor
should be
our first co

which we gained by eight o'clock, and lay there till nine the next morning; when, by the help of a fresh breeze from the E. we stood to the southward between Potoe and Wungboo.

In the morning of the 20th, we steered W. by S. for Pulo Condore; and at half past twelve we got sight of the island. At six we anchored with the best bower in six fathoms, veered away two-thirds of the cable, and kept the ship steady with a stream anchor and cable to the S. E. The harbour bore N. by W. and W. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. the opening at the upper end S. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. our distance from the nearest shore a quarter of a mile.

As soon as we were come to anchor, Captain Gore fired a gun, with a view of apprising the natives of our arrival, and drawing them toward the shore, but without effect. Early in the morning of the 21st, parties were sent to cut wood, which was Captain Gore's principal motive for coming hither.

None of the natives having yet made their appearance, notwithstanding a second gun had been fired, Captain Gore thought it advisable to land, and go in search of them. We proceeded through a thick wood, up a steep hill, to the distance of a mile, when after descending, we arrived at some huts; I ordered the party to stay without, lest the sight of so many armed men should terrify the inhabitants, whilst I entered and reconnoitred alone. I found in one of the huts an elderly man, who was in a great fright, and preparing to make off with the most valuable effects. However, a few signs, particularly that most significant one of holding out a handful of dollars, and then pointing to a herd of buffaloes and the fowls that were running about the huts in great numbers, left him without any doubts as to the objects of our visit. He pointed toward a place where the town stood, and made us comprehend that, by going thither, all our wants would be supplied. He ordered a young man to conduct us to the town as soon as an obstacle should be removed of which we were not aware. On our first coming out of the wood, a herd of buffaloes to the

the number of twenty at least, came running towards us, tossing up their heads, snuffing the air, and roaring in a hideous manner. They had followed us to the huts, and stood drawn up in a body at a little distance; and the old man made us understand that it would be exceedingly dangerous for us to move till they were driven into the woods; but so enraged were the animals grown at the sight of us, that this was not effected without a good deal of time and difficulty. The men not being able to accomplish it, we were surprised to see them call to their assistance a few little boys, who soon drove them out of sight. Afterward, we had occasion to observe that in driving these animals, and securing them, which is done by putting a rope through a hole which is made in their nostrils, little boys were also employed, who could stroke and handle them with impunity at times when the men durst not approach them. Having got rid of the buffaloes, we were conducted to the town, which consists of between twenty and thirty houses, built close together; besides six or seven others that are scattered about the beach. The roof, the two ends, and the side fronting the country, are neatly constructed of reeds; the opposite side, facing the sea, is entirely open; but, by means of a sort of bamboo screens, they can exclude or let in as much of the sun and air as they please. We observed likewise other large screens or partitions, for the purpose of dividing, as occasion required, the single room of which the house properly speaking consists, into separate apartments.

We were conducted to the largest house in the town, belonging to their Chief, or, as they called him, their Captain.

By means of my money, and pointing at different objects in sight, I had no difficulty in making a man, who seemed to be the principal person of the company, comprehend the main business of our errand; and I as readily understood from him that the Chief or Captain was absent, but would soon return; and that, without his consent, no purchases of any kind could be made.

After

At
turne
that
time
for
Gore
had
alarm
ter us
made
a doll
care a
chose

At
veral
time
they

Cap
find
He wa
which
but fin
ingly
much
seven

Early
both
which
were ob
at no
of the
found
that it
a buffal
who we
that, bet
of the bu
tempt b
chaled e
Vol. II

After walking about the town for some time, we returned to the Captain's house, and were sorry to find that he was not yet arrived; and the more so, as the time was almost elapsed which Captain Gore had fixed for our return to the boat. When we returned, Capt. Gore felt peculiar satisfaction at seeing us; for, as we had exceeded our time near an hour, he began to be alarmed for our safety, and was preparing to march after us. Three men, who guided us in our return, were made exceedingly happy on our presenting them with a dollar each for their trouble, and intrusting to their care a bottle of rum for the *Mandarine*. One of them chose to accompany us on board.

At two in the afternoon we joined the ships, and several of our shooting parties returned about the same time from the woods, having had little success, though they saw a great variety of birds and animals.

Captain Gore's inquiries were now solely directed to find out what supplies could be obtained from the island. He was informed that there was plenty of buffaloes, which might be purchased for four or five dollars a head; but finding that Captain Gore thought that sum exceedingly moderate, and would willingly give for them a much greater, the price was afterward raised upon us to seven and eight dollars.

Early in the morning of the 23d, the launches of both ships were sent to the town to fetch the buffaloes which we had given orders to be purchased; but they were obliged to wait till it was high water, as they could at no other time get through the opening at the head of the harbour. On their arrival at the village, they found the surf breaking on the beach with such force that it was with the utmost difficulty each launch brought a buffalo on board in the evening; and the officers, who were sent on this service, gave it as their opinion that, between the violence of the surf and the fierceness of the buffaloes, it would be extremely imprudent to attempt bringing any more off in this way. We had purchased eight; and were now at a loss in what manner to

proceed to get them on board. It was at last concluded that they should be driven through the wood, and over the hill down to the bay, where Captain Gore and I had landed the day before, which, being sheltered from the wind, was more free from surf. The plan was accordingly put in execution; but the untractableness and prodigious strength of the buffaloes, rendered it a tedious and difficult operation. The method of conducting them was by passing ropes through their nostrils, and round their horns; but, having been once enraged at the sight of our men, they became so furious, that they sometimes broke the trees, to which we were often under the necessity of tying them. Sometimes they tore asunder the cartilage of the nostril, through which the ropes ran, and got loose. On these occasions, all the exertions of our men to recover them, would have been ineffectual, without the assistance of some young boys, whom these animals would permit to approach them, and by whose little managements their rage was soon appeased. And when at length they were got down to the beach, it was by their aid, in twisting ropes round their legs in the manner they were directed, that we were enabled to throw them down, and by that means to get them into the boats. A circumstance respecting these animals, which I thought no less singular than this gentleness toward, and, as it should seem, affection for, little children, was, that they had not been twenty-four hours on board before they became the tamest of all creatures. I kept two of them, a male and female, for a considerable time, thinking that a breed of animals of such strength and size, weighing when dressed, seven hundred pounds weight, would be a valuable acquisition, I was inclined to have brought them with me to England; but my intention was frustrated by an incurable hurt that one of them received at sea.

Besides the buffaloes, of which we understood there were several large herds in this island, we purchased from the natives some remarkably fine fat hogs, of the Chinese breed. They brought us three or four of a wild

wild
quen
about
was d
was o
species
ing-sq
brane,
the bell
ing out
tree to t
great ab
Amor
and plan
oranges,
The in
and Coc
short stat
healthy at
disposition
On the
as soon as
S. S. W.
On the
tried for f
hour, till w
the bottom
On the 5
the distance
re ten, ele
ocks or sh
The countr
dge, and th
e land, an
at and mar
ose thick f
orning, no
e island, til
e shores

wild fort; and our sportsmen reported that they frequently met with their tracks in the woods, which also abound with monkees and squirrels, but so shy that it was difficult to shoot them. One species of the squirrel was of a beautiful shining black colour; and another species striped brown and white. This is called the flying-squirrel, from its being provided with a thin membrane, resembling a bat's wing, extending on each side the belly from the neck to the thighs, which, on stretching out their legs, spreads and enables them to fly from tree to tree, at a considerable distance. Lizards were in great abundance.

Amongst its vegetable improvements are fields of rice, and plantains, various kinds of pompions, cocoa-nuts, oranges, shaddocks, and pomegranates.

The inhabitants, who are fugitives from Cambodia and Cochin China, are not numerous. They are of a short stature, and very swarthy, and of a weak and unhealthy aspect; but, as far as we could judge, of a gentle disposition.

On the 28th of January, 1780, we unmoored, and, as soon as we were clear off the harbour, steered S. S. W.

On the 2d of February, at eight in the morning, we tried for soundings, continuing to do the same every hour, till we had passed the Straits of Sunda, and found the bottom with twenty-three fathoms of line.

On the 5th we approached the coast of Sumatra. At the distance of two or three miles from the shore there are ten, eleven, twelve, or thirteen fathoms, free from rocks or shoals; however, the lead is the surest guide. The country is covered with wood down to the water's edge, and the shores are so low, that the sea overflows the land, and washes the trunks of the trees. To this flat and marshy situation of the shore, we may attribute those thick fogs and vapours which we perceived every morning, not without dread and horror, hanging over the island, till they were dispersed by the rays of the sun. The shores of Banca, which are opposite, are much

bolder; and the country inland rises to a moderate height, and appears to be well wooded throughout.

On the 17th, at four in the afternoon, we saw two sail in the Straits of Sunda. Not knowing to what nation they might belong, we cleared for action; and at six came to an anchor. The ships now hoisting Dutch colours, Captain Gore sent a boat on board for intelligence. We had a continuance of rain, thunder, and lightning.

Early in the afternoon, the boat returned with an account that the large ship was a Dutch East-Indiaman, bound for Europe; and the other a packet from Batavia, with orders for the several ships lying in the Straits. It is the custom for the Dutch ships as soon as their lading is nearly completed, to leave Batavia, on account of its extreme unwholesomeness, and proceed to some of the more healthy islands in the Straits, where they wait for the remainder of their cargo and their dispatches. Notwithstanding this precaution, the Indiaman had lost, since her departure from Batavia, four men, and had as many more whose recovery was despaired of. She had lain here a fortnight, and was now about to proceed to water at Cracatoa, having just received final orders by the packet.

At seven in the morning of the 9th, we weighed, and at half after ten I received orders from Captain Gore to make sail toward a Dutch ship, which now hove in sight to the southward, and which we supposed to be from Europe; and, according to the nature of the intelligence we could procure from her, either to join him at Cracatoa, where he intended to stop, for the purpose of supplying the ships with arrack, or to proceed to the S. E. end of Prince's island, and there take in our water and wait for him.

I accordingly bore down toward the Dutch ship which soon after came to an anchor to the eastward when the wind slackening, and the current still setting very strong through the strait to the S. W. we found it impossible

impossible
her as t

Nex
and lea
and th
she sail
Great
with a
ships a
Captain

At t
over fo
half a
been h
was sen
place.
of his
was fo
bed, w
seasons
supplie
as well
This, t
the oth
ing, an

The
brough
tles; b

In th
variabl
till two
from th
were o
that nig
hour th
by a bro
next da

Of t
ceeding

impossible to fetch her, and having therefore got as near her as the tide would permit, we also dropt anchor.

Next morning Mr Williamson got on board the ship, and learnt that she had been seven months from Europe, and three from the Cape of Good Hope; that, before she sailed, France and Spain had declared war against Great Britain; and that she left Sir Edward Hughes, with a squadron of men of war and a fleet of East-India ships at the Cape. I immediately sent a boat to acquaint Captain Gore with the intelligence we had received.

At three o'clock in the morning of the 12th, we stood over for Prince's island, and came to an anchor within half a mile of the shore. Lieutenant Lannyon, who had been here before with Captain Cook in the year 1770, was sent along with the master to look for the watering-place. The brook from which, according to the best of his recollection, the Endeavour had been supplied, was found quite salt. Further inland they saw a dry bed, where the water seemed to have lodged in rainy seasons; and about a cable's length below, another run, supplied from an extensive pool, the bottom of which, as well as the surface was covered with dead leaves. This, though a little brackish, being much preferable to the other, we began watering here early the next morning, and finished the same day.

The natives who came to us soon after we anchored, brought a plentiful supply of large fowls, and some turtles; but the last for the most part, were very small.

In the forenoon of the 18th, we had heavy rains and variable winds, which prevented our getting under way till two in the afternoon, when a light wind sprung up from the northward; but this soon after leaving us, we were obliged to drop our anchor again at eight o'clock that night in fifty fathoms water, and wait till the same hour the next morning. At that time, being favoured by a breeze from the N. W. we broke ground, and the next day had entirely lost sight of this place.

Of this island I shall only observe that we were exceedingly struck with the great general resemblance of
the

the natives, both in figure, colour, manners, and even language, to the nations we had been so much conversant with in the South Seas.

Here we were well supplied with small turtle and fowls of a moderate size; the last were sold at the rate of ten for a Spanish dollar. The natives also brought us many hog-deer, and a prodigious number of monkeys, to our great annoyance, as most of our sailors provided themselves with one, if not two of these troublesome animals.

From the time of our entering these Straits we began to experience the powerful effects of this pestilential climate. Two of our people fell dangerously ill of malignant putrid fevers; which however we prevented from spreading by putting the patients apart from the rest in the most airy births; and we had the singular satisfaction of escaping from these fatal seas without the loss of a single life; probably owing to the vigorous health of the crews, and the strict attention now become habitual in our men to the salutary regulations introduced amongst us by Captain Cook.

We were no sooner clear of Prince's island, than we had a gentle breeze from the W. N. W. but this did not last long; for the wind became again variable, and continued so for several days, when it grew squally, and blew fresh from the N.

It had hitherto been Captain Gore's intention to proceed directly to St Helena, without stopping at the Cape, but the rudder of the Resolution having been for some time complaining, and, on being examined, reported to be in a dangerous state, he resolved to steer immediately for the Cape, as the most eligible place both for the recovery of his sick and for procuring a new main-piece to the rudder.

On the 8th of April, we passed pretty close to the sail seen on the 6th, but did not hail her. She was clumsy in figure, and, to appearance, unskilfully managed; yet she out-sailed us exceedingly. The colours which she

hoisted

hoisted
posed

In the
down the
packet
cruising
ships.

Monf.
had sailed
Helena

The n
found ly
diamen,
tion salut
ber was n

Mr Br
us as soo
surprised
Dutch sh
had touch
we were i
hands left
the Disco
these peop
and malici

On the
Town; an
tenberg the
every poss
Brandt had
Cook, as w
ter, and he
expressions

The Gov
with us hac
unmolested
had suffice
ready deli
stephens, in

hoisted were different from any we had seen; some supposed them to be Portuguese, others Imperial.

In the forenoon of the 10th, a snow was seen bearing down to us, which proved to be an English East-India packet that had left Table Bay three days before, and was cruising with orders for the China fleet, and other India ships. She told us that, about three weeks before, Mons. Trongoller's squadron, consisting of six ships, had sailed from the Cape, and was gone to cruize off St Helena for our East-India fleet.

The next morning we stood into Simon's Bay. We found lying here the Nassau and Southampton East-Indiamen, waiting for convoy for Europe. The Resolution saluted the fort with eleven guns, and the same number was returned.

Mr Brandt, the Governor of this place, came to visit us as soon as we had anchored. He appeared much surprised to see our crew in so healthy a condition, as the Dutch ship that had left Macao on our arrival there, and had touched at the Cape some time before, reported that we were in a most wretched state, having only fourteen hands left on board the Resolution, and seven on board the Discovery. It is not easy to conceive the motive these people could have had for propagating so wanton and malicious a falsehood.

On the 15th, I accompanied Captain Gore to Cape Town; and the next morning we waited on Baron Plettenberg the Governor, by whom we were received with every possible attention and civility. Both he and Mr Brandt had conceived a great personal affection for Capt. Cook, as well as the highest admiration, of his character, and heard the recital of his misfortune with many expressions of unaffected sorrow.

The Governor informed us that the powers at war with us had given orders to their cruisers to let us pass unmolested. This, as far as related to the French, we had sufficient reason to think true; as Mr Brandt had already delivered to Captain Gore a letter from Mr Stephens, inclosing a copy of Mons. de Sartine's orders
taken

taken on board the *Licorne*. With respect to the Americans, the matter still rested on report; but Baron Piettenberg assured us that he had been expressly told by the commander of a Spanish ship, which had touched at the Cape, that he, and all the officers of his nation, had received orders to the same effect.

During our stay at the Cape we met with every proof of the most friendly disposition toward us, both in the Governor and principal persons of the place, as well Africans as Europeans. At our first arrival, Colonel Gordon, the Commander of the Dutch forces, with whom, on our former visit here, I had the happiness of being on a footing of intimacy and friendship, was absent on a journey into the interior part of Africa, but returned before our departure. He had on this occasion, penetrated farther up the country, than any other traveller had done before him, and made great additions to the valuable collection of natural curiosities with which he has enriched the Museum of the Prince of Orange; and it is with great pleasure I can congratulate the public on his intentions to give the world, from his own hand, a history of his travels.

Having completed our victualling, and furnished ourselves with the necessary supply of naval stores, we sailed out of the bay on the 9th of May.

On the 12th of June, we passed the equator for the fourth time during this voyage.

On the 12th of August, we made the western coast of Ireland; and, after a fruitless attempt to get into Port Galway, from whence it was Captain Gore's intention to have sent the journals and maps of our voyage to London, we were obliged, by strong southerly winds, to steer to the northward. On the 22d of August, at eleven in the morning, both ships came to an anchor at Stromness; and on the 4th day of October the ships arrived safe at the Nore, after an absence of four years, two months, and twenty-two days.

In the course of our voyage, the *Resolution* lost but five men by sickness, three of whom were in a precarious state

sta
co
the
the
as t
den
T
four
reme
no o
appe
durin
val w
oatme
been p
found
could l
age.
I can
the nec
vian ba
posed to
pened, v
of the m
stood in
the who
in such v
It is ve
a voyage
a day tog
first time
off the co
we met w
proof of

END

Vol. II.—

state of health at our departure from England ; the Discovery did not lose a man. An unremitting attention to the regulations established by Captain Cook, with which the world is already acquainted, may be justly considered as the principal cause, under the blessing of Divine Providence, of this singular success.

The preventives we principally relied on were four, krout and portable soup. As to the antiscorbutic remedies, with which we were amply supplied, we had no opportunity of trying their effects, as there did not appear the slightest symptoms of the scurvy in either ship, during the whole voyage. About the time of our arrival we opened some casks of biscuit, flour, malt, pease, oatmeal, and groats, which, by way of experiment, had been put up in small casks, lined with tin frail, and found all, except the pease, in a much better state than could have been expected in the usual manner of packing.

I cannot neglect this opportunity of recommending the necessity of allowing a sufficient quantity of Peruvian bark to such of his Majesty's ships as may be exposed to the influence of unwholesome climates. It happened, very fortunately in the Discovery, that only one of the men that had fevers in the Straits of Sunda, stood in need of this medicine, as he alone consumed the whole quantity usually carried out by the Surgeons in such vessels as ours.

It is very extraordinary that in so long and hazardous a voyage, the two ships never lost sight of each other for a day together, except twice ; which was owing, the first time, to an accident that happened to the Discovery off the coast of Owhyhee ; and the second, to the fogs we met with at the entrance of Awatka bay : a strong proof of the merit of the subaltern officers.

END OF THE THIRD AND LAST VOYAGE.

1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of subscribers. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

2. The second part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of subscribers. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

3. The third part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of subscribers. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

4. The fourth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of subscribers. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

5. The fifth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of subscribers. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

6. The sixth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of subscribers. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

7. The seventh part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of subscribers. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

8. The eighth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of subscribers. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

9. The ninth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of subscribers. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

10. The tenth part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which appears to be a directory or a list of subscribers. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are listed below them.

V

10

I

Ho

M

RAC

An Account

JOURNAL
OF A
VOYAGE

UNDERTAKEN BY ORDER OF
HIS PRESENT MAJESTY,
FOR MAKING DISCOVERIES TOWARDS THE
NORTH POLE,
BY THE
HON. COMMODORE PHIPPS,
AND
CAPTAIN LUTWIDGE,
IN HIS
MAJESTY'S SLOOPS
RACEHORSE AND CARCASE.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,

An Account of the several VOYAGES undertaken for the Discovery of a
North-East Passage to China and Japan.

T H E

INTRODUCTION.

IT is fortunate for commerce, and the intercourse of nations, that there is implanted in man's nature a desire of novelty, which no present gratification can satisfy; that when he has visited one region of the earth, he is still, like Alexander, sighing for another to explore; and that, after having escaped one danger in his progress, he is no less eager to encounter others, that may chance to obstruct him in the course of his pursuits.

If the history of former hardships could have deterred men from engaging in new adventures, the Voyage, the particulars of which we are now about to relate, would probably never have been undertaken. The dreary regions that surround the Poles are so little accustomed to feel the kindly influences of the enlivening sun, and are so destitute of the ordinary productions of the earth in happier climates, that little less than one whole quarter of the globe is, by its sterility, rendered uninhabitable by human beings, and but thinly occupied by a very inconsiderable number of the race of quadrupeds.—The many and almost insuperable difficulties that must therefore be expected in traversing these forlorn deserts, where no relief is to be expected, but from the favourable interposition of that power, whose merciful providence extends to the remotest corners of the earth, are, upon reflection, enough to cool the ardour of the most enterprising, and to stagger the resolution of the most intrepid.

In the contention between powers, equally formed by nature to meet an opposition, it may be glorious to overcome; but to encounter raging seas, tremendous rocks,

rocks,
in atte
as the
hardie
self an
and su
compli
home v
This
brief rec
dertaker
to Chin
The f
Willoug
the æra
to the lat
gined, of
by a stor
the river
death with
cise accou
having sai
latitude, a
affirming,
than New
by the Du
only a fog
Wood, an
sion to spe
To Sir
roughs, af
Elizabeth.
better fort
success. H
far N. as
strait that d
Sammoyds
he eastern
ea, whence

rocks, and bulwarks of solid ice, and desperately to persist in attempts, to prevail against such formidable enemies; as the conflict is hopeless, so the event is certain. The hardiest and most skilful navigator, after exposing himself and his companions to the most perilous dangers, and suffering in proportion to his hardness the most complicated distresses, must at last submit to return home without success, or perish by his perseverance.

This observation will be sufficiently justified, by a brief recapitulation of the Voyages that have been undertaken, with a view to the discovery of a N. E. passage to China and Japan.

The first who attempted this discovery was Sir Hugh Willoughby, with three ships, so early as the year 1553, the æra of perilous enterprizes. This gentleman sailed to the latitude of 75 degrees N. within sight, as it is imagined, of New Greenland, now called Spitsbergen; but by a storm was driven back, and obliged to winter in the river Arzena, in Lapland, where he was frozen to death with all his company. He left upon his table a concise account of all his discoveries, in which he mentions, having sailed within sight of a country in a very high latitude, about which geographers are divided; some affirming, as has been said, that it could be no other than New Greenland, afterwards discovered, and named by the Dutch Spitsbergen; others, that what he saw was only a fog-bank; and of this latter opinion is Captain Wood, an able navigator, of whom we shall have occasion to speak hereafter.

To Sir Hugh Willoughby succeeded Captain Burrells, afterwards Comptroller of the Navy to Queen Elizabeth. This gentleman attempted the passage with better fortune, and returned full of hope, but without success. He passed the N. cape in 1556, advanced as far N. as the 78th degree, discovered the Wygate, or strait that divides Nova Zembla from the country of the Sammoys, now subject to Russia: and having passed the easternmost point of that strait, arrived at an open sea, whence he returned, having as he imagined, discovered

ed

ed the passage so painfully sought, and so ardently desired. Some affirm, his discoveries extended beyond the 80th degree of latitude, to a country altogether desolate, where the mountains were blue and the vallies snow.

Be that as it may, the favourable report of Captain Burroughs encouraged Queen Elizabeth to fit out two stout vessels to perfect the discovery. The command of these ships was given to the Captains Jackman and Pett, who, in 1580, sailed through the same strait that had been discovered by Burroughs, and entered the eastern sea; where the ice poured in so fast upon them, and the weather became so tempestuous, that after enduring incredible hardships, and sustaining the most dreadful shocks of ice and seas, terrible even in the relation, they were driven back and separated; and neither Pett nor his ship or crew were ever heard of afterwards.

After this disaster and disappointment, the desire of visiting the frozen seas to the N. E. began to abate among the English, but was assumed by the Dutch with an obstinate perseverance, peculiar to that phlegmatic nation. The first Dutchman we read of who made the attempt was John Cornelius, of whose voyage, in 1595, we have but a very imperfect account; he was followed however in 1606 by William Barrans, or, as some write, Barents, an able and experienced seaman and mathematician, who being supplied with every necessary for so hazardous a voyage, by the generosity and patronage of Prince Maurice, proceeded in the course which had been pointed out to him by the English navigators; but having passed the Wygate, found the like incumbrances, and the like tempests which the English had experienced; and not being able to bear up against them, returned thoroughly convinced, that the wished-for passage was not to be attained in that direction. However, he traversed the coast of Nova Zembla, gave names to several promontories and head-lands, and planned to himself a new course to steer, by which he hoped to accomplish what he had failed in discovering, by following the

steps of the
mated ra
entered u
fully pre
of the wh
Seas, had
farther t
purposely
mined to
should ar
was pers
changing
structions

In this
of Nova Z
degree, h
ice, that e
withstand
and his sh
part of his
greater m
the attempt
try where
ed to have
utmost ef
the flesh
others die

In this
they endu
and ingen
their brok
ner, they
at Colu, th
perfecting

It was
private adv
numeral
upon the
cel, in w

steps

steps of those who had gone before him. In 1607, animated rather than discouraged by disappointment, he entered upon his second voyage, with the spirit of a man fully prepossessed with success. He had heard, that some of the whalers, who had now begun to frequent the N. Seas, had, either by design or accident, advanced much farther to the northward than those who had been purposely fitted out upon discoveries; he therefore determined to steer to the northward of Nova Zembla, till he should arrive at the height of the Pole, under which he was persuaded he should find an open sea; and, by changing his course to the southward, avoid those obstructions which had retarded his passage to the N. E.

In this hope he continued till he arrived on the coast of Nova Zembla, where, before he had reached the 77th degree, he was so rudely attacked by the mountains of ice, that every where assailed him, that not being able to withstand their fury, he was driven against the rocks, and his ship dashed to pieces. Barents and the greatest part of his crew got safe to land, but it was to experience greater misery than those underwent who perished in the attempt. They were obliged to winter in a country where no living creature besides themselves appeared to have existence; and where, notwithstanding their utmost efforts to preserve their bodies from the cold, the flesh perished upon the bones of some of them, and others died of the most excruciating pains.

In this extremity, and notwithstanding the anguish they endured, those who survived had still the fortitude and ingenuity to frame a pinnace from the wreck of their broken ship, in which, at the approach of summer, they made sail for Lapland; but before they arrived at Colu, their Captain died, and with him the hopes of perfecting his discovery.

It was now the active season for naval enterprize. Private adventurers began to fit out ships for the N. Seas. Innumerable sea animals had been observed to bask upon the ice; the tusks of whose jaws were found to excel, in whiteness, the finest ivory, and their carcases

to yield plenty of excellent oil. In the infancy of the whale fishery, these were pursued with the same eagerness, with which both the English and Dutch endeavour at this day to make the whales their prey, and perhaps with no less profit. In following these, many islands were discovered to which they resorted, and, in course of time, the seas that were so formidable to the first discoverers, became frequented at the proper seasons by the ships of every nation.

Foreign navigators, however, were more sanguine in their notions of a N. W. passage, than of the existence of a passage to the N. E. and it was not till many unsuccessful trials had been made to discover the former, that the latter was again attempted. The celebrated Hudson, who discovered the straits that lead to the great western bay, which still bear his name; after he had exerted his skill in vain to find a passage westward, was persuaded at last to undertake a voyage in search of a passage to the N. E. This he performed in 1610, but being discouraged by the miscarriages of others, and the fatal issue that had attended their obstinate perseverance, on viewing the face of the country, examining the currents, and traversing an immense continent of ice, that stretched along the ocean, in a direction from E. S. E. to W. N. W. he concluded, that no passage could be practicable in that direction, and therefore returned without making any other material discovery.

From this time till the year 1676, the prosecution of this discovery was totally neglected by the English; and though the Dutch whalers amused the world with wonderful relations of their near approach to the Pole, yet little credit was given to their reports till the arrival of one John Wood, who had accompanied Sir John Narborough in his voyage to the S. Sea with a view to establish a new trade with the Chilians, and natives of that vast tract of country reaching from the Straits of Magellan to the confines of Peru.

This able and enterprizing navigator, being himself an excellent mathematician and geographer, and reading in

the
iste
wa
his
ind
Cha
disc
wou
men
M
to sha
vailin
himse
be fitt
provid
ther, a
a Pink
which
ed with
on the
most pr
through
These
out for t
ed to dir
Captain
perous.
On th
of the N
June cast
they cont
stores.
On Sa
tinued th
Polar circ
sets. At
yard in th
which, ho
began to g
Vol. II.—

the Philosophical Transactions a paper, by which the existence of a N. E. passage to the eastern or Indian ocean was plausibly asserted, and this exactly coinciding with his own notions of the construction of the globe, he was induced, by this and other reasons, to apply to King Charles the Second for a commission to prosecute the discovery; the accomplishment whereof, it was said, would add to the glory of his Majesty's reign, and immensely to the wealth and prosperity of his kingdoms.

Many about the Court of that needy Prince, hoping to share in the profits of the voyage, were earnest in prevailing with his Majesty to forward the design, who being himself fond of novelty, ordered the Speedwell frigate to be fitted out at his own charge, manned, victualled, and provided with every necessary; while the Duke, his brother, and seven other courtiers, joined in the purchase of a Pink of one hundred and 20 tons, to accompany her, which they likewise manned and victualled, and furnished with merchandizes, such as were thought marketable on the coasts of Tartary or Japan; the countries they most probably would first fall in with after their passage through the north sea.

These ships being in readiness, and commissions made out for their Commanders, Captain Wood was appointed to direct the expedition, on board the Speedwell, and Captain Flaws to bear him company on board the Prosperous.

On the 21th of May 1676, they sailed from the Buoy of the Nore, with the wind at S. W. and on the 4th of June cast anchor off Lerwick, in Brassef Sound, where they continued six days, to take in water and recruit their stores.

On Saturday the 10th they weighed anchor and continued their voyage; and on the 15th they entered the Polar circle, where the sun at that season of the year never sets. At noon the Speedwell broke her main-top-sail-yard in the flings, the first disaster that had happened, which, however, was easily repaired. The weather now began to grow hazy, a circumstance that frequently hap-

pens in the Polar regions, and darkens the air with the obscurity of night.

From this time till June 22, when they fell in with the ice in latitude 75 d. 59 m. N. nothing material occurred. On that day, at noon, they observed a continent of ice stretching to an imperceptible distance, in a direction from E. S. E. and W. N. W. They bore away along the ice till the 28th, when they found it join to the land of Nova Zembla.

On the 29th they stood away to the S. to get clear of the ice; but unfortunately found themselves embayed in it. At 11 at night the Prosperous bore down upon the Speedwell, crying out, ice upon the weather-bow, on which the Speedwell, clapt the helm hard a weather, and veered out the main-sail to ware the ship; but before she could be brought too on the other tack, she struck on a ledge of rocks, and stuck fast. They fired guns of distress, but were not heard, and the fog being so thick, that land could not be discerned, though close to the stern of their ship; no relief was now to be expected, but from Providence and their own endeavours. In such a situation, no description can equal the relation of the Captain himself, who, in the language of the times, has given the following full and pathetic account.

"Here, says he, we lay beating upon the rock in a most frightful manner, for the space of three or four hours, using all possible means to save the ship, but in vain: for it blew so hard, that it was wholly out of our power to carry out an anchor capable to do us any service. At length we saw land close under our stern, to the great amazement of us all, which before we could not see for the foggy weather; so I commanded the men to get out the boats before our mast came by the board, which was done. I sent the boatswain towards the shore in the pinnace, to see if there was any possibility of landing, which I much feared, because the sea ran so high. In half an hour he returned with this answer, that it was impossible to land a man, the snow being in high cliffs, the shore was inaccessible. This was bad tidings: so then

th
a
h
ap
cl
sm
th
I t
me
to
wit
on
and
to t
defi
man
pow
own
but a
so th
other
ed to
mean
Prosp
being
and f
to lea
long
than
possib
got h
fible
to the
so kin
quart
the b
had b
to the
ed up

then it was high time to think on the safety of our souls, and we went altogether to prayers, to beseech God to have mercy on us, for now nothing but individual ruin appeared before our eyes. After prayers, the weather cleared up a little, and looking over the stern, I saw a small beach directly with the stern of the ship, where I thought there might be some chance of getting on shore. I therefore sent off the pinnace a second time, with some men in her to be first landed, but she durst not venture to attempt the beach. I then ordered out the long-boat with twenty men to land, who attempted it, and got safe on shore. They in the pinnace seeing that, followed, and landed their men likewise, and both vessels returned to the ship without any accident. The men on shore desired some fire-arms and ammunition, for there were many bears in sight. I therefore ordered two barrels of powder, some small arms, some provisions, with my own papers and money, to be put on board the pinnace; but as she put off from the ship's side, a sea overset her, so that all was lost, with the life of one man, and several others taken up for dead. The pinnace likewise was dashed to pieces, to our great sorrow, as by that disaster, one means of escaping from this dismal country, in case the Prosperous deserted us, was cut off. The long-boat being on board, and the sea running high, the boatwain and some others would compel me and the Lieutenant to leave the ship, saying it was impossible for her to live long in that sea, and that they had rather be drowned than I; but desiring me when I came on shore, if it were possible, to send the boat again for them. Before we got half way to shore the ship overset, so making all possible haste to land the men we had on board, I went off to the ship again, to save those poor men who had been so kind to me before. With great hazard I got to the quarter of the ship, and they came down the ladder into the boat, only one man was left behind for dead, who had before been cast away in the pinnace; so I returned to the shore, though very wet and cold. We then hauled up the boat, and went up the land about a flight shot,

where our men were making a fire and a tent with canvas and oars, which we had saved for that purpose, in which we all lay that night wet and weary. The next morning the man we left on board having recovered, got upon the mizzen-mast, and prayed to be taken on shore, but it blew so hard, and the sea ran so high, that though he was a very pretty sailor, none would venture to bring him off.

The weather continuing blowing with extreme fogs, and with frost and snow, and all the ill-compacted weather that could be imagined put together, we built more tents to preserve ourselves; and the ship breaking to pieces, came all on shore to the same place where we landed, which served us for shelter and firing. Besides, there came to us some hogheads of flour, and brandy in good store, which was no little comfort in our great extremity. We now lay between hope and despair, praying for fair weather, that Captain Flawes might find us, which it was impossible for him ever to do while the weather continued foggy; but fearing at the same time that he might be cast away as well as we.

But supposing we never were to see him again, I was resolved to try the utmost to save as many as I could in the long boat. In order thereunto we raised her two feet, and laid a deck upon her to keep the sea out as much as possible; and with this boat, and thirty men, for she would carry no more, I intended to row and sail to Russia, but the crew not being satisfied who should be the men, began to be very unruly in their mind and behaviour, every one having as much reason to save himself as another, some holding consultation to save the boat, and all to run the like fortune; but here brandy was our best friend, for it kept the men always fox'd, so that in all their designs I could prevent them. Some were in the mind to go by land, but that I knew was impossible to any man; neither had we provisions nor ammunition to defend us from the wild beasts; so the passage by land being impracticable, and no passage by sea to be attempted till forty men were destroyed, I will

will leave
were no
position

The w
rain, and
which w
it cleared
cried out
set fire, to
which he
boat to u
lation of t
that had l
left it in th
o'clock we
we had sa
would pro
once more
the most p
is bare bein
of moss, be
product of
surface, abo
ice, a thing
cliffs, which
Kent, the sea
hanging, mo
now, which
creation."

Thus far
at by the
may be affirm
the north
ion, and w
er navigator
tasted it el
t he could
s four hund
Being all e

will leave it to the consideration of any, whether we were not in a deplorable condition, without the interposition of Divine Providence.

The weather continued still very bad, with fogs, snow, rain, and frost, till the 9th day of our being on shore, which was the 8th day of July, when in the morning it cleared up, and to our great joy one of our people cried out a sail, which proved Captain Flawes; so we set fire to our town, that he might see where we were, which he presently discovered, so came up, and sent his boat to us; but before I went off, I wrote a brief relation of the intention of the voyage, with the accident that had befallen us, and put it into a glass bottle, and left it in the fortification I had there built; so by twelve o'clock we all got safe on board, but left all on shore that we had saved from the ship; for we much feared it would prove foggy again, and that we should be driven once more on this miserable country; a country, for the most part, covered perpetually with snow, and what is bare being like bogs, on whose surface grows a kind of moss, bearing a blue and yellow flower, the whole product of the earth in this desolate region. Under the surface, about two feet deep, we came to a firm body of ice, a thing never heard of before; and against the ice cliffs, which are as high as either of the forelands in Kent, the sea has washed underneath, and the arch overhanging, most fearful to behold, supports mountains of snow, which, I believe, hath lain there ever since the creation."

Thus far in Captain Wood's own words. He adds, that by the tides setting directly in upon the shore, it may be affirmed with certainty, that there is no passage to the northward. One thing remarkable in his relation, and which seems to contradict the report of former navigators, is, that the sea is there saltier than he had tasted it elsewhere, and the clearest in the world, for that he could see the shells at the bottom, though the sea is four hundred and eighty feet deep.

Being all embarked on board the *Prosperous*, on the 9th

10th of July they changed their course, and steered for England; and on the 23d of August, they arrived safe in the Thames, without any remarkable accident intervening.

After the miscarriage of this voyage, on which the highest expectations had been formed, the most experienced navigators in England seemed to agree, that a passage by the N. or N. E. had no existence. They were the more confirmed in this error, for an error it is, by the reasons assigned by Captain Wood, for changing his opinion on this matter; for, before he went upon the discovery, he was fully persuaded himself, and likewise persuaded many others, that nothing was more certain. When, however, he first saw the ice, he imagined it was only that which joined to Greenland, and that no solid body of ice extended farther from land than twenty leagues; in this persuasion he altered his course, and coasted along in the direction in which the ice lay, expecting, at every cape or head-land of ice, after running a certain distance, to find an opening into the Polar ocean; but after running two or three glasses to the northward in one bay, he found himself entangled in another; and thus it continued till his ship was wrecked. By this experiment, he found the opinion of Barents confuted, namely, "that by steering the middle course between Spitsbergen and Nova Zembla, an open sea might be attained, in which a ship might safely sail as far as the Pole." From his own experience, he therefore pronounced, that all the Dutch relations were forgeries which asserted, that any man had ever been under the Pole; verily believing, that there be no land to the northward of 80 d. that the sea is there frozen, and always continues so; and grounding his opinion upon this remark, that if the body of ice which he saw were to be conveyed ten degrees more to the southward, many centuries of years would elapse before it would be melted.

To this positive assertion, however, may be opposed the testimony of many credible persons, some of whom

have the latitude, is no rea

Amon member

considera

caused to

is this re

" Beir

" went

" my th

" severab

" who se

" the Gr

" it was

" home,

" him ho

" man) 2

" but on

" to an ea

" caught

" Greenl

" came b

" ed into

" the tru

" was tru

" and ma

" justify

" they ha

" him, if

" He an

" asked h

" ice? F

" Pole.

" He told

" sterda

" have a

have themselves sailed beyond the 80th degree of N. latitude, and others, upon evidence, whose veracity there is no reasonable cause to bring in question.

Among the latter, the testimony of Mr Joseph Moxon, member of the Royal Society of London, must have considerable weight. In a paper which this gentleman caused to be printed in the Philosophical Transactions, is this remarkable relation.

" Being about twenty years ago in Amsterdam, I
" went into a public house to drink a cup of beer for
" my thirst; and sitting by the public fire, among
" several people, there happened a seamen to come in,
" who seeing a friend of his there, who he knew went
" the Greenland voyage, wondered to see him, because
" it was not yet time for the Greenland fleet to come
" home, and asked him, what accident had brought
" him home so soon? His friend (who was the steers-
" man) answered, that their ships went not out to fish,
" but only to take in the lading of the fleet, to bring it
" to an early market. But, said he, before the fleet had
" caught fish enough to lade us, we, by order of the
" Greenland Company, sailed unto the North Pole, and
" came back again. Whereupon, says Moxon, I enter-
" ed into discourse with him, and seemed to question
" the truth of what he said; but he did assure me it
" was true, and that the ship was then in Amsterdam,
" and many of the seamen belonging to her ready to
" justify the truth of it; and told me, moreover, that
" they had sailed two degrees beyond the Pole. I ask-
" him, if they found no land or islands about the Pole?
" He answered, no; there was a free and open sea. I
" asked him if they did not meet with a great deal of
" ice? He told me, no; they saw no ice about the
" Pole. I asked him, what weather they had there?
" He told me, fine warm weather, such as was at Am-
" sterдам in the summer time, and as hot. I should
" have asked him more questions, but that he was en-
" gaged in discourse with his friend, and I could not,
" in modesty, interrupt them longer. But I believe
" the

" the steersman spoke truth ; for he seemed a plain,
 " honest, and unaffectitious person, and one who could
 " have no design upon me."

To authenticate this relation it has been observed, that under the Poles, the sun in June being 23 d. high, and having little or no depression towards the horizon, always, as it were, swimming about in the same elevation, might invigorate that part of the hemisphere with more heat than he does our climate ; when he is, in the winter, no more than 15 d. at the highest, and but eight hours above the horizon ; in which space the earth has time to cool, and to lose, in the night, the influences of heat which it receives in the day.

Another report upon like evidence was made to King Charles the Second, by Capt. Goulden, who being a Greenland whaler himself, spoke with two Hollanders in the North Seas, that had sailed within one degree of the Pole, where they met with no ice, but a hollow grown sea, like that in the Bay of Biscay.

A still more credible testimony is, that about the year 1670, application being made to the States General for a charter to incorporate a company of merchants to trade to Japan and China, by a new passage to the N. E. the then East India Company opposed it, and that so effectually, that their High Mightinesses refused to grant what the merchants requested.

At that time it was talked of in Holland, as a matter of no difficulty to sail to Japan by the way of Greenland ; and it was publicly asserted and believed, that several Dutch ships had actually done it. The merchants being required to verify this fact, desired that the Journals of the Greenland Squadron of 555 might be produced ; in seven of which there was notice taken of a ship which that year had sailed as high as the latitude of 89 ; and three journals of that ship being produced, they all agreed, as to one observation taken by the master, August 1, 1655, in 88 d. 56 m. N.

But a proof incontestible, is the testimony of Captain Hudson, who sailed in 1607 to the latitude of 81 d.

30 m.

30
we
A
ed i
adv
whi
and
coas
cour
It
coun
for t
taken
land,
the p
the R
taken
sage f
dorma
But
Great,
which
maritin
nished
people
and wh
vers, th
use of
of build
for after
out Eur
municat
discover
ropean
With
terprizes
though
of the at
The c
Vol. II.

30 m. N. where he arrived on the 16th of July, the weather being then pretty warm.

Add to all these, that the Dutch, who were employed in 1670, in endeavouring to find a N. E. passage, advanced within a very few degrees of that open sea, which is now commonly navigated by the Russians, and which would infallibly have brought them to the coasts of China and Japan, had they persevered in the course they were pursuing.

It does not appear, however, from any authentic accounts that we can collect, that any voyage, professedly for the discovery of a N. E. passage, has been undertaken by either public or private adventurers in England, since that of Captain Wood in the year 1670, till the present year: and it is more than probable that if the Russian discoveries on the N. of Asia had never taken place, the thoughts of finding a practicable passage from Europe in that direction, would have lain dormant for ever.

But the vast and enterprising genius of Peter the Great, in forcing his subjects out of that obscurity in which they had long been involved, has opened to the maritime powers new sources of commerce, and furnished fresh motives for new enterprizes. From a people unacquainted with a vessel bigger than a bark, and who knew no navigation but that of their own rivers, that wonderful Prince not only taught them the use of ships, but instructed them in the true principles of building and equipping them. Nay, he did more; for after making himself known and admired throughout Europe, he conceived the design of opening a communication with the remotest parts of the globe, and discovering to the world new countries which no European nation had ever yet explored.

With this design he planned one of the boldest enterprizes that ever entered into the heart of man; and though he did not survive to see it executed, the glory of the achievement is wholly his.

The country of Kamtschatka was as much unknown

to his predecessors as it was to the rest of the civilized nations of the earth; yet he formed the design of making that savage country the centre of the most glorious achievements.

It was in the last year of this great monarch's life, that he commissioned Captain Behring to traverse the wild, and then almost desolate, country of Siberia, and to continue his route to Kamtschatka, where he was to build one or more vessels, in order to discover whether the country towards the north, of which at that time they had no distinct knowledge, was a part of America, or not; and if it was, his instructions authorised him to endeavour, by every possible means, to seek and cultivate the acquaintance of some European people, and to learn from them the state of the country at which he should arrive. If he failed in this, he was to make such discoveries as circumstances should present, and commit to writing the result of his observations for the use of his Imperial master.

To enter minutely into the particulars of Captain Behring's journey and voyage, would carry us beyond the limits prescribed for this Introduction: let it suffice to say, that after surmounting incredible difficulties, and suffering hardships which none but a Russian could have survived, he executed his commission successfully, and returned to Petersburg in safety, after an absence of five years, in which time, besides his voyage by sea, he had travelled, in going and returning, eighteen thousand miles by land.

It is from the second enterprize of this astonishing man, and from the subsequent voyages of the Russians, that we are able to ascertain the existence of a N. E. passage; and it is from thence, and from the late voyage of Captain Phipps, that, we think, we may fairly infer the practicability of it.

It was some time about the year 1740, that Captain Behring embarked on his second voyage from Kamtschatka, of which all that we know is, that he sailed southward to the isles of Japan, and from thence eastward

w
he
pr
an
he
his
mo
inh
not
wen
Cap
Fr
from
of Ja
voya
from
it app
betwe
times
open.
latitud
and at
themse
is mar
longitu
procee
N. and
tired fo
from t
of Asia
east lon
ing pas
and sail
English
straits t
thing ca
a N. E.
merated
Dutch

ward about 80 leagues. At that distance from Japan he discovered land, which he coasted N. W. still approaching to the N. E. cape of Asia, which he doubled, and named Cape Shelvghenski, not daring to land till he arrived at the mouth of a great river, where, sending his boats with most of his crew on shore, they never more returned, being either killed or detained by the inhabitants, which made his discovery incomplete; for not having men sufficient left to navigate the ship, she went on shore on an uninhabited island, where the Captain unfortunately died.

From this voyage, however, we learn that the sea, from the N. E. cape of Kamtschatka, is open to the isles of Japan, and from a subsequent account of Russian voyages, published in the Philosophical Transactions, from a paper communicated by the celebrated Euler, it appears that they passed along in small vessels, coasting between Nova Zembla and the continent, at divers times in the middle of summer, when those seas were open. The first expedition was from the river Oby, latitude 66 d. N. longitude 65 d. E. from London, and at the approach of winter, the vessels sheltered themselves by going up the Janiska, the mouth of which is marked in our maps in latitude 70 d. N. and in longitude 82 d. E. whence the next summer they proceeded to the mouth of the Lena, in latitude 72 d. N. and in longitude 115 d. into which they again retired for the winter season. The third expedition was from the mouth of this river, to the farthest N. cape of Asia, in 72 d. of N. latitude, and in 172 d. of east longitude from London. Thus the Russians having passed between the continent and Nova Zembla, and sailed as far as the easternmost N. cape, and the English and Dutch having repeatedly sailed through the straits that divide Nova Zembla from the continent, nothing can be a plainer demonstration of the reality of a N. E. passage, than the sum of the voyages here enumerated, when added together. The English and Dutch sail to Wygatz, or the strait of Nova Zembla;

the Russians sail from Wygatz to the N. cape of Asia; and Behring from the N. cape to Japan. This is an incontrovertible demonstration; yet it is obvious, that this course can never be practicable to ships employed in trade. The Russians, by taking the advantage of an open sea and mild weather, in three years time accomplished but part of a voyage, which, by the Cape of Good Hope, may be made in less than one. Who, therefore, would run the hazard of so desperate a passage, for the sake of reaping imaginary advantages by an intercourse with savages, who, for aught we know, have nothing to exchange for European commodities, but the skins of bears, or the bones of monsters?

But though the passage to the northern countries of the E. was known to be impracticable to European navigators in this direction, it was worthy the greatness of a maritime people, to endeavour to determine the possibility of attaining the same end by another course.

The miscarriage and death of Barents, and the shipwreck of Captain Wood, had left the question undetermined, whether the regions adjoining to the Pole are land or water, frozen or open sea. The advantages from this discovery, besides the glory resulting from it, had the decision terminated in favour of navigation, would have been immensely great. To have opened a new channel of commerce at a time when our trade is languishing, would have revived the drooping hopes of our manufacturers, and retained at home the numerous emigrants, who, for want of employment in their own country, are seeking new habitations, and new means of living in remote settlements, of the certainty of which they have no experience.

It must be acknowledged, to the lasting honour of the noble Lord who presided at the head of the Admiralty Board, and who patronized the undertaking, that the means to render it successful were in every respect proportioned to the importance of the discovery.

The vessels that were made choice of were the properest that could be devised. Bomb-ketches are in the first

first inf
best ad
abound
fides the
seasoned
shocks a
they mu
furnishec
sails and
the sever
happens
most temp
Nor wa
comfortab
servation c
ping their
killing and
in the best
be good an
butts of por
that they mi
the rigour
Their pease
vided with
readiness, th
vacancies fil
that fire mig
when cold,
add to this,
n board, v
muffard, &c
ore thought
onsiderable
se any sho
which rende
mes's men,
n Island in
ouths, and
ge; the S

first instance stoutly built, and not being over large, are best adapted for navigating seas that are known to abound with shoals and covered rocks: these vessels, besides their natural strength, were sheathed with plank of seasoned oak three inches thick, to fortify them against the shocks and pressure of the ice, that, in their progress, they must infallibly encounter. They were, besides, furnished with a double set of ice poles, anchors, cables, sails and rigging, to provide against the terrible effects of the severe and tempestuous weather, that frequently happens in high latitudes, even in the middle of the most temperate seasons.

Nor was his lordship less careful to provide for the comfortable subsistence of the men, than for the preservation of their lives, by his wise directions in equipping their ships. His first care was, to issue orders for killing and curing a sufficient quantity of beef and pork in the best manner possible, that their provisions might be good and fresh; and his next, to cause one hundred butts of porter to be brewed with the best malt and hops, that they might have proper drink to fortify them against the rigour of the climate they were about to pass. Their pease, oatmeal, rice, and molasses, were all provided with equal care, and when all things were in readiness, the beer was stowed in the holds, and the vacancies filled up with coals, which served as ballast, that fire might not be wanting to warm and dry them when cold, or wet with labour, or with watching. Add to this, that a double quantity of spirits were put on board, with a large proportion of wine, vinegar, mustard, &c. &c. and what, we believe, was never before thought of in the fitting out of any King's ships, a considerable quantity of tea and sugar for the sick, in case any should be seized with that dreadful disorder, which rendered ship provisions loathsome to Capt. James's men, who were constrained to winter in Charlton Island in 1632. These men fell sick, and had sore mouths, and could neither eat beef, pork, fish, nor potatoes; the Surgeon was every morning and evening obliged

obliged to pick their teeth, and cut away the pieces of rotten flesh from their gums, yet they could eat nothing but bread pounded in a mortar, and fried in oil, on which they subsisted for several months. In case of accidents of this kind, and that tea should fail to answer the purposes of nourishment, a quantity of portable soup was likewise provided. And to complete the whole, a stock of warm clothing was laid in, consisting of six fearnought jackets for each man, two milled caps, two pair of fearnought trowsers, four pair of milled stockings, and an excellent pair of boots, with a dozen pair of milled mitts, two cotton shirts, and two handkerchiefs.

Thus equipped and provided, the command of the Race Horie was given to the Hon. Constantine Phipps, now Lord Mulgrave, as Commodore, and that of the Carcase to Captain Skiffington Lutwych; the first mounting eight six pounders and fourteen swivels, burthen three hundred and fifty tons; the latter four six pounders and fourteen swivels, burthen three hundred tons.

JOURNAL

V
N O R
ALL the
board
three pound
proclamation
should volu
the 3d of Ju
to weigh; b
having been
as through
ained leave
en of her co
he eight six
with a qua
number of
discharge.
On Friday
N. and a f
continued the
ppening ti
ade the fig
and, and in

JOURNAL
OF A
VOYAGE

TO DISCOVER THE
NORTH EAST PASSAGE.

ALL things being now in readiness, the officers on board, and the men paid their bounty-money of three pounds per man, according to his Majesty's royal proclamation, for the encouragement of those who should voluntarily enter to undertake the voyage, on the 3d of June 1773, the Commodore made the signal to weigh; but previous to their departure, the Carcase having been judged too deep to navigate those heavy seas through which she was to pass, the Captain obtained leave from the Board of Admiralty to re-land ten of her complement of men, and to put ashore six of the eight six pounders, with which she was equipped, with a quantity of provisions, proportioned to the number of men that it had been thought proper to discharge.

On Friday the 4th being off Sheerness, the wind W. by N. and a fresh breeze, they took their departure, and continued their voyage without any material occurrence happening till Tuesday the 15th, when the Commodore made the signal to lie to. They were then off Brasley land, and many fishing-boats from Shetland being in sight,

sight, the men were invited on board, and some fish purchased of them at a cheap rate.

On the 17th they took a new departure from Shetland, but the day following the fog thickened so much, that it almost approached to total darkness. During the continuance of the fog, the Commadore kept firing guns and beating drums, to prevent the Carcase from losing company. As it was impossible that one could see the other at a ship's length, it was found the more necessary to repeat and return the firing, lest they should run foul of each other before they could be apprized of their danger. About five in the morning the mist cleared up, and about nine the Commadore being in sight, made the signal to the Carcase to steer N. E. They were then in latitude 60 d. 52 m. N. by observation; the N. end of Shetland Island bearing N. by W. one half W. seven or eight leagues.

On the 17th they observed a sail to the N. E. which the Commadore brought to, and spoke with. The breeze fresh, the weather hazy, and the wind variable the Carcase carried away her main-top-mast studding sail yard; which however was very soon supplied. Latitude this day by observation 62 d. 53 m. N.

Friday the 18th, being in the latitude of 65 d. 9 m. N. the clothing allowed by the Government, of which notice has already been taken in the Introduction, was delivered out, and officers as well as men received their full proportion. This day the weather continued as before.

Saturday the 19th the weather varied to every point of the compass, the Commadore brought to, and spoke with the Carcase. Made sail about three in the morning, and at nine a large swell. Tacked and stood to the eastward. Latitude 66 d. 1 m. N. longitude from London 33 m. W.

Sunday the 20th they pursued their course to the eastward, with the wind N. W. but variable; high breezes and clear air. They were now within the Polar circle, and at midnight had an observation of the sun

and
board
weig
to wh
Caver
the w
on the
dred a
Mon
observe
yet feel
set in fe
Comm
rough c
She hap
Mr Win
barked o
cute the
heavy sea
able to c
the Ham
taken leav
voyage, th
in the mo
case pursu
Tuesday
Carcase.
had reach
N. being o
from their
nothing re
either of th
and then sn
easily repair
was thick,
ship to the
information
voyage with
Wednesda
Vol. II.—N

and found their latitude 66 d. 52 m. N. Sounded on board the Commodore with a lead of one hundred weight, and a line of seven hundred and eighty fathom, to which was fastened a thermometer of Lord George Cavendish's construction. They found no bottom, but the water was eleven degrees colder at that depth than on the surface. The Carcase sounded with four hundred and fifty fathoms only.

Monday 21, light breezes and cloudy weather. They observed a whale on the N. E. quarter, the first they had yet seen in the north seas. The weather now began to set in severe; the nights cold and the days cloudy. The Commodore observing a whaling snow with Hambo-rough colours flying, fired a shot, and brought her to. She happened to be homeward bound with seals, and Mr Windham, a gentleman of fortune, who had embarked on board the Commodore, with a view to prosecute the voyage, finding nothing but foul weather and heavy seas, to gratify his curiosity, and being withal unable to endure the sea sickness, took passage on board the Hamburger, in order to return home; and having taken leave of his friends, by wishing them a happy voyage, the Snow's boat took him on board about seven in the morning, and at eight the Commodore and Carcase pursued their voyage.

Tuesday 22, the articles of war were read on board the Carcase. The weather began to be piercing cold; they had reached the 70th d. of N. latitude, in a course nearly N. being only 14 m. to the eastward of London; and from their leaving Shetland to this day, they had seen nothing remarkable; nor had any accident befallen either of the ships worth relating, except that of now and then snapping a rope, or breaking a yard; incidents easily repaired. This day it poured with rain; the air was thick, and the rain froze as it fell. Saw a large ship to the N. W. standing southward, but wanting no information that she could give, they pursued their voyage without speaking to her.

Wednesday 23, the rain continued; the weather hazy;

heard three guns fire at a distance, but saw no ship or other object. The whales are here in no great plenty, and few ships appear in the open sea in pursuit of them. They generally at this season frequent the bays and creeks near the shore, and only break away when they are pursued or wounded.

On Thursday the 24th, the Commodore changed his course to E. N. E. and on the 25th they were in latitude 74 d. 7 m. N. and in 8 d. 32 m. E. longitude from London. Served out to the ship's company plenty of mustard, pepper, vinegar, &c. The weather extremely cold and variable. At eight in the evening thick fog; at two in the morning fresh breezes; at eight clear weather; at eleven squally; and at noon calm, with sleet and snow.

On Saturday the 26th, at midnight, they had an observation, and found themselves in latitude 74 d. 17 m. N. fresh gales, sometimes rain, sleet, and snow; at seven in the morning clear weather and an open sea.

Sunday the 27th, light airs from the southward, and cloudy weather; much warmer than the preceding day. It is remarkable, that the vicissitudes of heat and cold are more frequent here than in the more southerly latitudes. It often changes from temperate to extreme cold, and that suddenly.

It should seem likewise, that the ice frequently changes its place in this latitude; or that it is more solid near land than in the open sea; for, on the 23d of June 1676, Captain Wood, being more to the eastward, fell in with ice right ahead, not more than a league distant. He steered along it, thinking it had openings, but found them to be bays. He founded, and found ground at one hundred and fifty eight fathom, soft green oar. In some places he found pieces of ice driving off a mile from the main body in strange shapes, resembling ships, trees, buildings, beasts, fishes, and even men. The main body of ice being low and craggy, he could see hills of a blue colour at a distance, and valleys that were white as snow. In some places he observed drift wood

among

among
it fre
farth
ship-
ducti
that l
found
ships,
Mon
breezes
Tues
gitude
land, w
a consul
pearance
day they
land man
tude 79
their latitu
is probable
for refraCti
presented
half, which
not over fa
must come f
whalers had
them sudde
Wednesd
ner. Half
red and tw
black Point
by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E
half past
W. quart
the E. S
d fifteen fa
Thursday
night: th
nt E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S

among the ice. Some of the ice he melted, and found it fresh and good. This navigator never could advance farther to the N; but in seeking to penetrate the ice was ship-wrecked, as has been already related in the Introduction. He therefore judged the ice impenetrable, and that land or ice surrounded the Pole. Our navigators found also much wood in this latitude floating about the ships, and saw great flocks of birds.

Monday 28, the weather altered; the wind W. Fresh breezes, with rain and sleet. Latter part thick fog.

Tuesday 29, being in latitude 78 d. N. and in longitude 6 d. 29 m. E. from London, came in sight of land, when the ships brought to, and the Captains held a consultation concerning their future course. The appearance of the land lay from E. S. E. to N. E. and this day they spoke with the Marquis of Rockingham Greenland man, who, by their reckoning, were then in latitude 79 d. 40 m. N. though by that of the Commodore, their latitude was only 78 d. 3. m. This difference, it is probable, arises from not making the proper allowance for refraction in this high latitude. The Greenlandman presented each of the Commanders with a deer and half, which they found well-flavoured venison, though not over fat. He likewise informed them that he had just come from the ice, and that the day before, three whalers had been crushed to pieces by its closing upon them suddenly.

Wednesday 30, pursued their course. Cloudy weather. Half past four in the morning sounded, one hundred and twelve fathoms, soft blue mud. At this time Black Point, so called from its dark appearance, bore N. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. at the distance of seven or eight leagues. At half past seven, in the morning, saw two sail in the W. quarter. At half past twelve tacked and stood to the E. Sounded, and found ground at one hundred and fifteen fathom.

Thursday July 1, light breezes and clear weather at night: the sun as bright as at noon day. Black Point E. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. distant seven leagues. At three in the

morning made Charles's Island, and at nine saw a sail to the westward whaleing; they were then in latitude 78 d. 18 m. N. by observation. Sounded, and found the same depth as before.

Friday 2, light airs and moderate weather. Lay to, and took the altitude of a mountain, which they named Mount Parnassus; found it from the level of the sea to be three thousand nine hundred and sixty feet high, covered with snow, and at a distance resembling an ancient building, with something like a turret at top. The foot of this mountain, with the hills adjoining, have sometimes a very fiery appearance, and the ice and snow on their sides resembling trees and shrubs, glisten with a brilliancy that exceeds the splendor of the brightest gems. When this happens, a violent storm generally succeeds. Here they shot some sea-fowl, but of an oily taste.

Saturday 3, proved a perfect calm. They spoke with a Hollander, who foretold, that a degree or two farther N. was the utmost extent of their progress this season. Having doubled Cape Cold, they anchored in fifteen fathom water, about three miles from the land, and sent the boats ashore for water, which they found in abundance, pouring down in little streams from the rocks. At five in the afternoon, by the mean of four azimuths, the variation was found to be 18 d. 36 m. W. Sounded, and found only sixty-five fathoms, soft brown mud. Mount Parnassus E. N. E. three or four leagues.—Among other reasons which Captain Wood gave for wishing to be employed on the discovery of the N. E. passage, one was, that he might have an opportunity of approaching the Pole, in order to settle an hypothesis, which he had long framed, whereby the inclination of the magnetical needle under the horizon, in all latitudes and in all longitudes with the variation of the compass, might be exactly determined. This navigator imagined two magnetical Poles to exist: and that, by approaching the one, he should be able to determine the position of the other. It does not appear, that he ever explained his hypothesis, and there never has been but one man, whose name was

William

W
thi
S
ed,
Ha
ber
in f
gitu
forty
M
fifteen
Race
were
was
and g
which
Headl
Tue
and ill
afterno
of pack
firing
pany.
the ice
dore bo
At half
the S. E.
At half
volleys
from E.
of land.
five or f
Wedn
found th
creasing
Observin
up, and
were in
they cou

Williams, since his time, who pretended to know any thing of the matter.

Saturday 4, light breezes and hazy weather. Sounded, and only twenty fathoms deep; rocky ground. Hacluit's Headland, or the northermost point of Spitzbergen, bearing N. by E. seven leagues. Many whalers in sight. Latitude by observation 79 d. 34 m. N. longitude from London 8 d. 10 m. E. Thermometer forty-seven.

Monday 5, at two in the afternoon sounded, and only fifteen fathom water; rocky ground. Thick fog. The Racehorse fired guns, as signals to keep company, which were answered by the Carcase. A dreadful crackling was heard at a distance, which proved the dashing and grinding of the loose pieces of ice against each other, which is heard at many leagues distance. Hacluit's Headland S. E. by S. distance six or seven leagues.

Tuesday 6, proved very foggy; the breezes slight, and islands of ice beginning to appear. At three in the afternoon the Commodore hauled up from a large body of packed ice, and the fog thickening, both ships kept firing volleys of small arms, to prevent their losing company. At half past ten in the evening, the extremes of the ice stretching from N. W. to E. N. E. the Commodore bore away; and at half past twelve lost sight of it. At half past one in the morning heard a violent surf to the S. E. At two tacked and stood to the westward. At half past five the fog gathering, they began firing volleys of small arms. At six saw the ice stretching from E. by S. to N. by E. and at seven was within sight of land. At ten Cloven Cliff stood E. S. E. distant about five or six leagues.

Wednesday the 7th, the weather cloudy. They found themselves beset among the loose ice, which increasing continually, gave them incredible trouble. Observing that it thickened to the eastward, they hauled up, and stood to the westward; but in tacking, they were in danger of running foul. It was with difficulty they could keep any course, for the drifts of ice came so

so thick, as to whirl the ships about, as if in a whirlpool.

Thursday 8, the weather still remaining cloudy, and the wind variable, both ships continued to be entangled in the ice; and the Carcase being driven to leeward, hoisted out her long-boat to tow up with the Commodore. But the ice closing very fast, it was impossible for the boats to live. Orders were then given to tack and stand to the southward; but the ships not being able to make head against the accumulation of ice that continually gathered round them, were under a necessity of applying to their ice anchors and poles, in order to warp through it. At half past eight in the evening, the ice beginning to open, they again hoisted out their boats, and with difficulty towed the ships round a cape of ice projecting from the main body, and at last got clear. At ten the boats were hoisted on board. In extricating themselves from this dangerous situation, the Racehorse had her best bower anchor snapt in the shank, close to the stock, and the Carcase lost her starboard bumpkin and head-rails.

It frequently happens, that ships beset among the ice in the manner above related, perish by being dashed to pieces against the solid fields of ice, or crushed by the broken pieces crowding upon one another, and rising so fast about the ship, as to exceed the height of her sides, and then there is no escaping. They were told by some experienced seamen, that the ice rises out of the sea as high sometimes as mountains, and that several of these mountains, by striking together and receding, form these islands of ice that are frequently seen in the lower latitudes, driving up and down the sea as the wind and tides direct them.

The greatest danger to be apprehended, is, however, from the loose ice; for the whalers often moor their ships to the solid fields of ice, that at certain seasons seem to rest upon the earth, and appear fixed to it, and there find the best fishing. In such situations it often happens, that little or no loose ice is to be seen; yet presently, upon a change of wind, or the blowing of a storm,

storm
some
the a
in let
Th
larger
which
solid
rent a
ing, th
nay, it
ice ag
of the
a man
own v
Frid
lost fig
ing, th
weathe
addition
them;
now ev
Satur
weather
pieces o
but non
now be
practical
very of
holding
officer o
in the ex
case, as
example
and snow
ing and
precautio
could no
that every

storm, it shall pour in upon them so suddenly, that they sometimes perish in it. It is not possible to account for the astonishing quantity that will gather in this manner in less than an hour's time.

Though it seems to be agreed, that many of the largest fields of ice are frozen to the depth of the sea in which they are found, and that they are bedded on the solid earth, yet it is equally certain, that they are often rent asunder by the raging billows; and that in breaking, they produce the most terrifying noise in nature; nay, it is asserted, that the clashing of the pieces of loose ice against each other, on any extraordinary agitation of the waves, is attended with a roaring so loud, that a man who is near it can hardly hear the sound of his own voice.

Friday the 9th, they hauled up to the westward, and lost sight one of the other; but about nine next morning, they came in sight, and joined company. The weather being now piercing cold, the people had an additional quantity of porter and brandy delivered to them; two quarts of porter and a pint of brandy being now every man's daily allowance.

Saturday July the 10th, the breeze fresh, and the weather cloudy. They sailed between numberless pieces of ice, among which they saw several whales, but none of the whalers in pursuit of them. The ice now becoming solid and compact, they found it impracticable to continue their course. And the discovery of a passage to the Pole in that direction (upon holding a consultation) appearing impracticable to every officer on board of both ships, the Commodore, at seven in the evening, hauled close to the wind; and the *Carcass*, as soon as she could extricate herself, followed his example. The weather continuing foggy, with rain and snow, the sailors were almost worn out with turning and winding; and although they used the utmost precaution in working through the narrows, yet they could not always avoid striking against the mountains that every where surrounded them. During this night's work,

work, they steered a hundred different courses, to follow the channels.

Sunday 11, having worked out of the ice, they sailed along the main body, which appeared perfectly solid and compact, without any passage or inlet. This immense mass of ice extended N. E. as far as they could see from the mast head; and, no doubt, might be a continuation of that in which they were engaged a few days before. The sea was now tolerably clear, for they met with no more fields, and only a few detached islands. At half past one in the morning they saw the land from S. by W. to S. S. E. At three in the morning they tacked; Cloven Cliff bearing S. S. E. six miles. At seven tacked again. At eight the Commodore bore away, and the Carcase stood after him. Cloven Cliff S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. two or three leagues, latitude 79 d. 56 m. N.

Monday 12, at eight in the evening, Cloven Cliff bearing W. S. W. four or five miles, they founded in fifteen fathoms water, and found a rocky bottom. Saw several English and Dutch Greenlanders at anchor in the Norways: that being their rendezvous to the northward, they never chuse to proceed farther. Here they found the current setting so fast to eastward, that they were forced to come to an anchor to keep from drifting on the ice; the swell from westward being so great, that had that happened, it would of consequence have staved the ships. At five in the morning a breeze from N. N. E. springing up, they weighed, and made sail. At eight Hacluit's Headland W. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. six or seven leagues, at noon latitude 80 d. 2 m. N.

Tuesday 13, the weather being clear and calm, and a strong easterly current setting in, at eight in the evening they came to with their stream anchors and hausers in forty fathoms water; but at nine a breeze springing up from the eastward, they weighed, and next day came to an anchor in Smearingburgh Harbour. Cloven Cliff E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. one mile. W. point of Voogle-land N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W.

1 V
 fath
 H
 in fr
 emp
 had
 TH
 of m
 hills
 that f
 those
 are co
 rain in
 By loc
 sand d
 ships,
 fill the
 more
 These
 and are
 country
 upon t
 brilliant
 the ever
 glass, at
 bright b
 ble colo
 gems in
 hold, all
 fills the
 Smear
 discover
 conveni
 whales,
 Here al
 lage, and
 tlers all
 of the v
 stoves, k
 Vol. II.

W. distant one mile and a half; soundings fifteen fathom, sandy bottom.

Here they remained between five and six days, to take in fresh water, during which time our journalist was employed in surveying the country, which to a stranger had a very awful and romantic appearance.

The country is stoney, and as far as can be seen, full of mountains, precipices, and rocks. Between these are hills of ice, generated, as it should seem, by the torrents that flow from the melting of the snow on the sides of those towering elevations, which being once congealed, are continually increased by the snow in winter, and the rain in summer, which often freezes as soon as it falls. By looking on these hills, a stranger may fancy a thousand different shapes of trees, castles, churches, ruins, ships, whales, monsters, and all the various forms that fill the universe. Of the ice-hills there are seven, that more particularly attract the notice of a stranger.--- These are known by the name of the seven ice-burghs. and are thought to be the highest of the kind in that country. When the air is clear, and the sun shines full upon these mountains, the prospect is inconceivably brilliant. They sometimes put on the bright glow of the evening rays of the setting sun, when reflected upon glass, at his going down; sometimes they appear of a bright blue, like sapphire, and sometimes like the variable colours of a prism, exceeding in lustre the richest gems in the world, disposed in shapes wonderful to behold, all glittering with a lustre that dazzles the eye, and fills the air with astonishing brightness.

Smearinburgh harbour, where they landed, was first discovered by the Dutch. Here they erected sheds and conveniences for boiling the oil from the fat of the whales, instead of barrelling it up to be boiled at home. Here also, allured by the hope of gain, they built a village, and endeavoured to fix a colony: but the first settlers all perished in the ensuing winter. The remains of the village may be traced to this day; and their stoves, kettles, kardels, troughs, ovens, and other imple-

ments, remained in the shape of solid ice long after the utensils themselves were decayed. Our voyagers were told, that the Russians have lately attempted the same thing, and that ten out of fifteen perished last winter in this second attempt.

Where every object is new, it is not easy for a stranger to fix which first to admire. The rocks are striking objects: before a storm they exhibit a fiery appearance, and the sun looks pale upon them, the snow giving the air a bright reflection. Their summits are almost always involved in clouds, so that it is but just possible to see the tops of them. Some of these rocks are but one stone from bottom to top, appearing like an old decayed ruin. Others consist of huge masses, veined differently, like marble, with red, white, and yellow, and probably, were they to be sawed and polished, would equal, if not excel, the finest Egyptian marble we now so much admire. Perhaps the distance and danger of carrying large blocks of stones, may be the reason that no trials have been made to manufacture them. On the southerly and westerly sides of these rocks grow all the plants, herbs, and mosses peculiar to this country; on the northerly and easterly sides the wind strikes so cold when it blows from these quarters, that it perishes every kind of vegetable.—— These plants grow to perfection in a very short time. Till the middle of May the whole country is locked up in ice; about the beginning of July the plants are in flower, and about the latter end of the same month, or beginning of August, they have perfected their seed. The earth owes its fertility, in a great measure, to the dung of birds, who build and breed their young here in the summer, and in the winter repair to more favourable climates.

The plants that are most common in Spitzbergen are scurvy-grass and crow-foot; there are besides small house-leek, and a plant with aloe-leaves; an herb like stone-crop; some small snake-weed; mouse-ear; wood-strawberry; periwinkle; and an herb peculiar to the country,

coun
of th
fix
roun
leaf;
an a
depth
plants
the w
Th
which
eggs,
birds
Some,
others
The w
not to
rocks,
flocks;
with th
Ther
kind of
Hudson
fowl, bu
The i
rara. H
his plum
bright y
and alon
The
white b
can subs
vered w
ly to be
the ocea
cured in
er clima
immense
over con

country, which they call the rock-plant. The leaves of this plant are in shape like a man's tongue, above six feet long, of a dull yellow colour. The stalk is round and smooth, and of the same colour with the leaf; it rises tapering, and smells like musk. It is an aquatic, and rises in height in proportion to the depth of water in which it is found. There are other plants and herbs, but these are the chief. Of flowers, the white poppy seems the principal.

The rocks and precipices are full of fissures and clefts, which afford convenient harbour for birds to lay their eggs, and breed their young in safety. Most of these birds are water-fowl, and seek their food in the sea.—Some, indeed, are birds of prey; and pursue and kill others for their own sustenance, but these are rare.—The water-fowl eat strong and fishy, and their fat is not to be endured. They are so numerous about the rocks, as sometimes to darken the air when they rise in flocks; and they scream so horribly, that the rocks ring with their noise.

There are a few small birds like our snipes, and a kind of snow-bird, but different from that found about Hudson's bay. The gentlemen shot some of the water fowl, but they were strong and ill tasted.

The ice-bird is a very beautiful little bird, but very rare. He is in size and shape like a turtle-dove, but his plumage, when the sun shines upon him, is of a bright yellow, like the golden ring in the peacock's tail, and almost dazzles the eye to look upon it.

The other inhabitants of this forlorn country are white bears, deer, and foxes. How these creatures can subsist in the winter, when the whole earth is covered with snow, and the sea locked up in ice, is hardly to be conceived. It has been said, indeed, that when the ocean is all frozen over, and no sustenance to be procured in this country, they travel southerly to the warmer climates, where food proper for them abounds in the immense forests of the northern continent. But whoever considers the vast distance between Spitsbergen

and

and the nearest parts of the northern continent, will be as much at a loss to account for the subsistence of these creatures in their journey, as in the desolate regions where they undoubtedly remain. The bear is by far the best accommodated to the climate, of which he is an inhabitant. He is equally at home on land and water, and hunts diligently for his prey in both. In summer he finds plenty of food from the refuse of the whales, sea-horses, and seals, which is thrown into the sea by the whalers, and cover the shores during the time of whaling; and they have besides a wonderful sagacity in smelling out the carcases of the dead, let them be ever so deeply buried in the earth, or covered with stones. The dead therefore that annually are buried here may contribute, in some degree, to the subsistence of a few of these creatures in winter; but the question will still recur, how the race of them subsisted before the whale-fishery had existence, and before men found the way to this inhospitable shore. Disquisitions of this kind, as they are beyond the reach of human comprehension, serve only to raise our admiration of that omnipotent Being to whom nothing is impossible.

These creatures, as they differ in nothing but their colour and size from those commonly shewn in England, need no description.

The foxes differ little in shape from those we are acquainted with, but in colour there is no similitude.— Their heads are black, and their bodies white. As they are beasts of prey, if they do not provide in summer for the long recess of winter, it were, one would think, almost impossible for them to survive; yet they are seen in plenty, though by their subtlety and swiftness, they are not easy to be caught.

The Dutch seamen report, that when they are hungry they will feign themselves dead, and when the ravenous birds come to feed upon them, they rise and make them their prey.

But the most wonderful thing of all is, how the deer can survive an eight months famine. Like ours they feed

feed
tables
for ei
plant,
ever.
a chun
to be f
man h
ence m
never
here, f
winter
Amp
sounds
adapted
sea-dogs
lers & va
their lad
The f
it is a cr
more rare
name; fo
and a lan
elephant.
He has a
but shape
than any
tapers all
lump, and
His tusks
old boar,
more, in p
breeds the
covered w
and thicke
when he is
like those d
swims, and

feed upon nothing, that can be perceived, but the vegetables which the earth spontaneously produces; and yet for eight months in the year, the earth produces neither plant, herb, shrub, or blade of any kind of grass whatever. They are besides, but thinly clothed for so severe a climate, and what seems still worse, there is not a bush to be seen to shelter them, within the distance that any man has yet discovered. The means of their subsistence must therefore remain among the secrets of nature, never to be disclosed, as no human being can ever live here, so as to be able to trace these creatures to their winter's residence.

Amphibious creatures abound the most about the sounds and bays of Spitzbergen, and they seem best adapted to endure the climate. These are the seals, or sea-dogs, and morfes, or sea-horses; of which the whalers avail themselves, when disappointed in completing their lading with the fat of whales.

The seal is sufficiently known; but the sea-horse, as it is a creature peculiar to high latitudes, is therefore more rare. It is not easy to say how he came by his name; for there is no more likeness between a sea-horse and a land-horse, than there is between a whale and an elephant. The sea-horse is not unlike the seal in shape. He has a large round head, larger than that of a bull, but shaped more like that of a pug-dog without ears, than any other animal we are acquainted with. He tapers all the way down to the tail, like the fish we call a lump, and his size is equal to that of the largest sized ox. His tusks close over his under jaw, like those of a very old boar, and are in length from one foot to two or more, in proportion to the size and age of the animal that breeds them. His skin is thicker than that of a bull, and covered with short mouse-coloured hair, which is sleeker and thicker, just as he happens to be in or out of season when he is caught. His paws, before and behind, are like those of a mole, and serve him for oars when he swims, and for legs to crawl when he goes upon the ice,

or on shore. He is a fierce animal, but being unwieldy when on land, or on the ice, is easily overcome.

These animals are always found in herds, sometimes of many hundreds together, and if one is attacked, the rest make a common cause, and stand by one another till the last gasp. If they are attacked in the water, they will fight desperately, and will even attempt the boats of their pursuers, if any of them are wounded, and not mortally. Some of them have been known to make holes in the bottom of the boat with their tusks, in defence of their young. Their eyes are large, and they have two holes in the upper part of the neck, out of which they eject the water, in like manner as it is ejected by whales.

Though the sea about Spitzbergen is full of fish, yet they rather appear to be designed by Providence for the sustenance of one another, than for the food of man. The mackarel, of which there are no great plenty, seem not only to be the most wholesome, and the most palatable, but also the most beautiful. They appear to be a different species from those caught upon our coasts. The upper part of the back is of a vivid blue; the other part as low as the belly of a gem-like green on an azure ground. Underneath the belly the colour is a transparent white, and the fins shine like polished silver. All the colours glow when alive in the sea with such a richness, that fancy can hardly form to itself any thing in nature more beautiful. Almost all the other fish on this coast are of an oily nature, and of a very indifferent flavour.

The saw, or sword-fish, is remarkable not only for the oddity of his shape, but also for his enmity to the whale. This fish takes his name from a broad flat bone, in length from two to four feet, which projects from his nose, and tapers to a point. On each side, it has teeth like a comb, at the distance of a finger's breadth asunder. He is also furnished with a double row of fins, and is of astonishing strength in the water. His length from ten to twenty feet. He seems to be formed for war, and war is his profession. The conflict be-

twixt him gives over
victorious

The victor
fight but
rated he
tude, he
like other
by the n
tormentin
those of
with four
are hard,
to the wh
carvers, l
and behin
He has,
which he
can no oth
whole pie
back like t
a shield w
tenderest p
his sheath,
as if eaten

They for
but in the
little rills, c
summer; a
Some are o
but they ar
have drank
from the us
seas, and th
On board
who receiv
for his disco
fresh at sea, t
the course

twixt

twixt him and the whale is dreadful, yet he never gives over till his sword is broken, or he comes off victorious.

The whale is a harmless fish, and is never known to fight but in his own defence. Yet when he is exasperated he rages dreadfully. Though from his magnitude, he may be called the sovereign of the seas; yet, like other sovereigns, he is liable to be vexed and hurt by the meanest reptiles. The whale's louse is a most tormenting little animal. Its scales are as hard as those of our prawns; its head is like the louse's head, with four horns, two that serve as feelers, the other two are hard, and curved, and serve as clenchers, to fix him to the whale. On his chest, underneath, he has two carvers, like scythes, with which he collects his food, and behind these are four feet, that serve him for oars. He has, moreover, six other clenchers behind, with which he can rivet himself so closely to his prey, that he can no otherwise be disengaged, but by cutting out the whole piece to which he is joined. He is jointed on the back like the tail of a lobster, and his tail covers him like a shield when he is feeding. He fixes himself on the tenderest parts of the whale's body, between his fins, on his sheath, and on his lips, and eats pieces out of his flesh, as if eaten by vultures.

They found no springs of fresh-water in Spitzbergen; but in the valleys, between the mountains, are many little rills, caused by the rain and melting of the snow in summer; and from these rills the ships are supplied. Some are of opinion, that this water is unwholesome, but they are more nice than wise. The whaling people have drank of it for ages, and have found no ill effects from the use of it. Ice taken up in the middle of these seas, and thawed, yields also good fresh water.

On board the *Racehorse*, Dr Irvine, the gentleman who received the premium by a grant of parliament for his discovery of an easy process for making salt-water fresh at sea, tried many experiments at Spitzbergen, and in the course of the voyage; the result of which will appear

pear at a proper time. That gentleman had formed a project for preserving flesh meat fresh and sweet in long voyages, but it did not answer in this.

In calm weather they remarked, that the sea about the islands appeared uncommonly still and smooth; that it was not suddenly moved at the first approach of blowing weather; but that when the storm continued, the waves swelled gradually, and rose to an incredible height.— These swelling waves successively follow one another, and roll along before the wind, foaming and raging in a frightful manner, yet they are thought less dangerous than those that break short, and are less mountainous.

They observed likewise, that the ice that rested on the ground was not stationary, but that it changed place; and they learnt also, that in some seasons there was no ice, where this season they were in danger of being embayed. There does not, however, from thence appear the least reason to conclude, that any practicable passage to the Indian ocean can ever be found in this direction; for were it certain that there was always open under the Pole, yet great bulwarks of ice evidently surround it, sometimes at a less, and sometimes at a greater distance. Moreover, were it possible that chance should direct some fortunate adventurer to an opening at one time, it would be more than a million to one, if the same opening were passable to the next who should attempt it.

There are many harbours about Spitsbergen, besides that of Smearingburg, where ships employed in the whale fishery take shelter in stormy weather; and there are some islands, such as Charles's Island, the Clifted Rock, Red-Hill, Hacluit's Headland, &c. that serve as land-marks, by which seamen direct their course. These islands are full of the nests of birds; but their eggs are as nauseous as the flesh of the fowls that lay them. The sailors sometimes eat them, but they are filthy food. Even the geese and ducks on the neighbouring islands eat fishy and strong.

The air about Spitsbergen is never free from insects.

If you
in the
body.
myria
and w
to m
tered
away.

It is
togeth
whale
ence b
mosph
other,
look a
dazzlin
bright
obscur
ship to

Wh
tions, a
gaged
water,
ing the
scrubbi
The C
Robins
tions, b
have c
From su
observer
discover
be expe
island, i
during t
erected t
ly visite
not only

Vol. II.

If you look through the sun-beams transversely as you sit in the shade, or where you see the rays confined in a body, instead of dark motes, as are seen here, you see myriads of shining particles that sparkle like diamonds; and when the sun shines hot, as it sometimes does, so as to melt the tar in the seams of ships when they lie sheltered from the wind, these shining atoms seem to melt away, and descend like dew.

It is seldom that the air continues clear for many days together in this climate; when that happens, the whalers are generally successful. There is no difference between night and day in the appearance of the atmosphere about Spitsbergen, one being as light as the other, only when the sun is to the northward, you may look at him with the naked eye, as at the moon, without dazzling. The fogs here come on so suddenly, that from bright sun-shine, you are presently involved in such obscurity, that you can hardly see from one end of the ship to the other.

While our journalist was busy in making his observations, all belonging to the ships were differently engaged in one employment or other; some in taking in water, some in fishing, some in hunting, some in handling the sails, and spreading them out to dry, some in scrubbing the ship, and some in viewing the country. The Commanders and officers, with Mr Lyon, Mr Robinson, &c. busied themselves in making observations, being furnished with an apparatus, that is said to have cost at least one thousand five hundred pounds. From such a set of instruments, in the hands of the ablest observers the nation can boast, some very considerable discoveries in the phenomena of the polar regions may be expected. They landed their instruments in a small island, in Vogle Sound, and had several opportunities during their stay of using them to advantage. Having erected two tents, the Captains from the fishery frequently visited the observers, and expressed their admiration, not only at the perfection of the instruments, but like-

wife at the dexterity with which they were accommodated.

The ice began to set in apace, yet the weather was hot. The thermometer from fifty-six in the cabin, rose to ninety in the open air. It was still ten degrees higher on the top of a mountain to which it was carried. The island on which the experiments were made, they called Marble Island, from the rock by which it is formed. Having watered, and finished their observations, the ships prepared to depart.

Monday, July the 19th, the Commodore made the signal to weigh; at two in the afternoon the ships were under sail, and as soon as they had made their offing, stood to the eastward. At three they tacked and steered northward; and before four were again entangled among the loose ice, through which they sailed, directing their course along the main body, which lay from N. W. to S. S. E.

Tuesday the 20th, they continued their course along the ice, but could discover no opening, though they searched every creek, and left no bay or turning unexamined. This day they observed what the sailors call a mock-sun, a phenomenon well enough known in this climate. Hacluit's Headland bore S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. forty-six leagues; the weather cloudy, with rain; excessive cold. Thermometer 37 d. 46 m.

Wednesday the 21st, the severity of the weather increasing, an additional quantity of brandy was served out to the people, and every comfortable refreshment afforded them, that they themselves could wish or require. The course of the ice lay this day N. E.

Thursday 22d, nothing remarkable.

Friday the 23d, they saw land from E. by S. to S. E. by S. At four in the morning, Hacluit's Headland bore S. E. ten leagues; the wind variable, and the weather cold, with sleet and snow. Thermometer 40 d.

Sunday 25th, they had gentle breezes, with cloudy weather, and were engaged among some pieces of ice, separated from the main body, which kept them continually

tinu
amo
then
could
again
four
the s
strong
the C
strong
becam
Mon
fight o
open p
of its fe
they sav
fin's Isla
fathom
out the l
and to e
long, ver
Though
hardly fo
markable
mer to lay
not of on
geese, duc
news, rot
peculiar to
numerous
men who
ing their st
While th
valiant offic
after having
bears makin
in the wat
travelling t
man in com

tinually tacking and luffing. At length they entered among mountains and islands of ice, which came upon them so fast, that it was with the utmost difficulty they could proceed; the Carcase having several times struck against them with such violence, as to raise her head four feet out of the water. They now imagined, from the solidity and extent of these islands, that the late strong gales had caused a separation from the main body, the Commodore therefore changed his course with a strong gale to the eastward; in the morning the weather became moderate.

Monday 26th, at seven in the morning, they came in sight of Red-hill, a small mount which commands an open plain, known by the name of Deers-field, by reason of its fertile appearance, it being the only spot on which they saw no drifts of snow. To the eastward lies Muffin's Island. Here they sounded, and found forty-five fathom water; rocky ground. Captain Lutwich sent out the long boat, with orders to sound along the shore, and to examine the soil. This island is about a mile long, very low, and looks at a distance like a black speck. Though the soil is mostly sand and loose stones, and hardly so much as a green weed upon it, yet it is remarkable for the number of birds that resort to it in summer to lay their eggs, and breed their young; and these not of one kind only, but of many different sorts, as geese, ducks, burgo-masters, ice-birds, malamucks, kirnews, rotgers, and almost every other species of birds peculiar to the climate; insomuch, that the eggs were so numerous, and lay so thick upon the ground, that the men who landed found it difficult to walk without filling their shoes.

While the crew of the boat, ten in number, with their valiant officer at their head, were examining the island, after having sounded the shores, they observed two white bears making towards them, one upon the ice, the other in the water. Major Buz, for that was their officer's travelling title, like Falstaff, was always the boldest man in company over a cup of sack, and minded killing

a bear no more than killing a gnat ; but seeing the bears approach very fast, especially that which came in the water, he ordered his men to fire while yet the enemy was at a distance, as he did not think it prudent to hazard the lives of his little company in close fight. All of them pointed their muskets, and some of the party obeyed orders ; but the greater part judging it safer to depend upon a reserved fire, when they had seemingly discharged their pieces, pretended to retreat. The Major, a full fathom in the belly, endeavoured to waddle after his companions ; but being soon out of breath, and seeing the bear that came in the water had just reached the shore, thought of nothing now but falling the first sacrifice. His hair already stood an end ; and looking behind him, he saw the bear at no great distance, with his nose in the air snuffing the scent. He had all the reason in the world to believe it was him that he scented, and he had scarce breath enough left to call to his men to halt. In this critical situation he unfortunately dropt his gun, and in stooping to recover it stumbled against a goose-nest, fell squash upon his belly into it, and had very nigh smothered the dam upon her eggs. The old saying is, Misfortunes seldom come alone. Before he could well rise, the enraged gander came flying to the assistance of his half-smothered consort, and making a dart at the eye of the assailant, very narrowly missed his mark, but discharged his fury plump upon his nose. The danger now being pressing, and the battle serious, the bear near, and the gander ready for a second attack, the men, who had not fled far, thought it high time to return to the relief of their leader. Overjoyed to see them about him, but frightened at the bear just behind him, he had forgot the gander that was over his head, against which one of the men having levelled his piece, fired, and he fell dead at the Major's feet. Animated now by the death of one enemy, he recovered his gun, and faced about to assist in the attack of the second. By this time the bear was scarce ten yards from him, and beginning to growl, the Major just in the instant was seized

seized with
back, tha
impede t
in a man
entangle
longer, h
had brou
their lea
his arms,
ground, a
fold, mak
his force,
the streng
lance full
now, says
for the be
good hun
they, you
ther bear
to be trou
ready acc
death of c
ordering f
remaining

On this
The sea-h
in the wat
ged in the
torious ; b
that there
were willi
well as in
cordingly
to assist in
ever, that t
bear came
vanced so
the whole
said, had no

seized with a looseness, dropt his accoutrements, and fell back, that he might not be in the way of his party, to impede the engagement. In the hurry he was in, for in a man of such valour we must not say the fright, he entangled his buttons, and not being able to hold any longer, he filled his breeches. The crew in an instant had brought down the bear, and now it was time for their leader to do something great. Having recovered his arms, and seeing the poor beast grovelling on the ground, and growling out his last, like a ram in a pin-fold, making a short race backwards in order to redouble his force, he came with nine long strides forwards, and with the strength and fierceness of an enraged bull, thrust his lance full four feet deep in the dying bear's belly. And now, says the Major, cocking his hat, have not I done for the bear bravely? The sailors, who are always in a good humour upon such occasions; But Captain, said they, you have but half done your work, you have another bear to kill yet. The Major, whose situation began to be troublesome, content with the honour he had already acquired, My lads, said he, as I have been the death of one bear, sure six of you may kill the other; so ordering four of them to row him on board, he left the remaining six to kill the other bear.

On this island two bears were killed, and a sea-horse. The sea-horse made a desperate defence, being attacked in the water; and had there been only one boat engaged in the combat, he certainly would have come off victorious; but the crew of the Racehorse having learnt that there were bears and sea-horses on this little spot, were willing to share in the sport of hunting them, as well as in the pleasure of tasting their flesh. They accordingly landed in their boats, and came in good time to assist in pursuing the conquest. It happened, however, that their ammunition being almost spent, one great bear came up to revenge the death of his fellows, and advanced so furiously, growling and barking, that he put the whole company to flight, and some of them, it is said, had no great reason to laugh at the Major.

On

On sounding the shores, they remarked, that when the N. islands bear N. forty-five E. seven or eight leagues, and Red-hill E. by S. five miles, there is generally from twenty-five to thirty fathom hard ground; but that closer in shore, when Red-hill bears E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. about one mile, it increases to one hundred and fifteen fathom, with soft black mud. The current about one mile an hour to the N. E.

Tuesday 27th, the air being perfectly serene, and the weather moderate, the fishes seemed to enjoy the temperature, and to express it by their sporting. The whales were seen spouting their fountains towards the skies, and the fin-fish following their example. They likewise this day saw dolphins; the whole prospect in short was more pleasing and picturesque than they had yet beheld in this remote region. The very ice in which they were beset looked beautiful, and put forth a thousand glittering forms, and the tops of the mountains, which they could see like sparkling gems at a vast distance, had the appearance of so many silver stars illuminating a new firmament. But this flattering prospect did not continue long. By an accurate observation, they were now in latitude 80 d. 47 m. N. and in longitude 21 d. 10 m. E. from London; and in sight of seven islands to the N. to which they directed their course.

Wednesday 28th, they had fresh easterly breezes, which, from moderate weather the day before, changed to piercing cold. At midnight the west end of Weygate straits bore S. by E. so that they were now in the very spot where Barents had supposed an opening would be found into the polar sea. Yet so far from it, they could discover nothing from the mast-head but a continued continent of solid ice, except the islands already mentioned. On this ice, however, there were many bears, some of which came so near the ships as to be shot dead with small arms. These bears are very good eating, and where no better is to be purchased, the whalers account them as good as beef. They are many of them larger than the largest oxen, and weigh heavier. In many

many
unless
blow v
their b
ters we
it was t
Muffin
weight.
Thur
ice, they
make th
opening
der the c
land, wh
fied with
situation
On try
ter they h
the ice wa
ter, which
cy of the c
Tuesday
the main b
shine, mad
failing in,
for severe r
ed many o
tant appear
them; but
men had fo
At one in th
in sixteen f
om. They
art of the
ght, distan
Saturday
ght lay E.
be an ill
cent, but f

many parts of their body they are musket proof; and unless they are hit on the open chest, or on the flank, a blow with a musket ball will hardly make them turn their backs. Some of the bears killed in these encounters weighed from seven to eight hundred weight; and it was thought, that the bear that routed the sailors on Muffin's Island, could not weigh less than a thousand weight. He was, indeed, a very monster!

Thursday 29, sailing among innumerable islands of ice, they found the main body too solid for the ships to make the least impression upon it, and finding no opening, the Commodore resolved to send a party under the command of the first Lieutenant to examine the land, which at a distance appeared like a plain, diversified with hills and mountains, and exhibited in their situation a tolerable landscape.

On trying the water, it was less salt than any sea water they had ever tasted; and they found likewise, that the ice was no other than a body of congealed fresh water, which they imagined had been frozen in the infancy of the earth.

Tuesday 30, the weather being clear, they ran close to the main body of the ice, and the sun continuing to shine, made them almost forget the climate they were sailing in, but it was not long before they had reason for severe recollection. In coasting along, they observed many openings, and were in hopes, from their distant appearance, that a passage might be made between them; but upon trial it was found, as the Dutch fishermen had foretold, that these appearances were deceitful. At one in the morning fine clear sun-shine, they sounded in sixteen fathom water, and found small stones at bottom. They were then about four miles from the N. E. part of the northernmost land; the easternmost land in sight, distant about five or six leagues.

Saturday 31, at midnight, the easternmost land in sight lay E. N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. which they could not make out to be an island. They rather judged it to be a continent, but found it impossible to determine with certainty,

tainy, as it lay beyond their reach. At nine in the morning the Carcase hoisted out her cutter, and filled her empty water-casks with water from the ice. On this ice lie great quantities of snow, and as soon as a pit is dug, it fills with fine soft clear water, not inferior to that of many land springs. At noon they sounded in ninety-five fathoms, the ground soft mud. This day a bear came over the ice to visit them, the first they had seen since they left Muffin's island. They saluted him with a volley of small arms, and he returned the compliment, by turning his back upon them. Their longitude was this day 21 d. 26 m. E. by time-keeper. Thermometer forty-five.

Sunday August 1, proved a day of trial. Lying to among the close ice, with the loose ice driving fast to shore, the Commodore was desirous of surveying the westernmost of the seven islands, which appeared the highest, in order to judge, from the prospect on the hills, of the possibility of proceeding farther on the discovery. With this view they carried out their ice anchors, and made both ships fast to the main body, a practice very common with the fishing ships that annually frequent those seas. Of the reconnoitring party, were the Captains, the second Lieutenants, one of the mathematicians, the pilots, and some chosen sailors selected from both ships. They set out about two in the morning, and sometimes sailing, sometimes drawing their boats over the ice, they with difficulty reached the shore, where the first objects they saw were a herd of deer, so very tame, that they seemed as curious to gaze at the strangers, as the strangers were pleased to see them; for they came five or six together so near, that they might have been killed with the thrust of a bayonet; a proof that animals are not naturally afraid of man, till by the fate of their associates, they are taught the danger of approaching them; a proof too, that animals are not destitute of reflection, otherwise how should they conclude, that what has befallen their fellow animals, will certainly happen to them, if they run the like risque. The gentlemen however

ho
be
abs
C
in n
cove
edly
A
and r
the g
noon
which
twent
hazine
which
an obl
with th
Ther
two shi
the dista
ty miles
easily ha
main bo
the cont
to set.
Their
discovere
tised by
loss of the
that they
engaged;
that one o
minds ar
on the m
all hands
enough t
which tha
served fro
The sh
Vol. II.

however, suffered only one of these fearless innocents to be fired at, and that was done by a sailor when they were absent on observation.

On this island they gathered some scurvy-grass, and in many places they could perceive the sides of the hills covered with the verdure on which these deer undoubtedly fed.

After having ascended the highest hills on the sea-coast, and taken a view of the country and the ocean all round, the gentlemen descended, and about five in the afternoon embarked again on their return to the ships, at which they arrived safe about ten, after an absence of twenty hours. They were greatly disappointed by the haziness of the weather on the tops of the mountains, which confined the prospect, and prevented their taking an observation with the instruments they had carried with them for that purpose.

There is here a small variation in the journals of the two ships; that kept on board the Commodore making the distance between the island and the ships near twenty miles; the other only five leagues, which might easily happen, as the ships shifted their stations with the main body of ice, sometimes driving N. W. sometimes the contrary course, as the wind and tides happened to set.

Their situation now began to be serious, and it was discovered too late, that by grappling to the ice, as practised by the Greenlandmen, they had endangered the loss of the ships, the loose ice closing so fast about them, that they found it absolutely impossible to get them disengaged; and there was, besides, great reason to fear, that one or both would soon be crushed to pieces. Great minds are ever most distinguished by their expedients on the most alarming occasions. The Commodore set all hands to work to form a dock in the solid ice, large enough to moor both ships; and by the alacrity with which that service was performed, the ships were preserved from the danger of immediate destruction.

The ships being thus far secured, the officers, pilots,

and masters, were all summoned on board the Commodore, to consult on what further was to be done in their present unpromising situation; when it was unanimously agreed, that their deliverance was hopeless; and that they must either provide to winter upon the adjacent islands, or attempt to launch their boats into the open sea, which was already at a considerable distance; for the loose-ice had poured into the bay in which they were at anchor with so much rapidity, and in such astonishing quantities, that the open sea was already far out of sight. Before any thing farther was undertaken, the men were ordered to their quarters, that they might refresh themselves with sleep.

While their Commanders preserve their fortitude, the sailors never lose their courage. They rose in the morning with as much alacrity and unconcern, as if they had been sailing with a fine breeze in the British Channel.

August 2, it was now thought adviseable to make one desperate attempt to extricate the ships, by cutting a channel to the westward into the open sea. The scooping out the dock with so much expedition, by a party only of one ship, raised high expectations of what might be performed by the united labours of both the crews. No body of men ever undertook a work of such difficulty with so much cheerfulness and confidence of success, as the sailors observed on this occasion. Their ice-saws, axes, sledges, poles, and the whole group of sea-tools, were in an instant all employed in facilitating the work; but after cutting through blocks of solid ice from eight to fifteen feet deep, and coming to others of many fathoms that exceeded the powers of man to separate, that was laid aside as a hopeless project; and another more promising, though not less laborious, adopted in its room.

On the third of August, after the men had again refreshed themselves with sleep, it was resolved to fit up the boats belonging to both the ships with such coverings as were most easy to be accommodated, and of lightest convenience; and by skating them over the ice, endeavour to launch them in the open sea. Could this be effected,

effect
north
at th
ing t
W
tion,
order
the n
the s
those
hunting
haps b
board
their vi
this day
the seco
rage in
ever, he
ger.
On th
in fitting
had been
ready me
ter they h
that in th
of spars o
them of
the bodie
tree nor
islands, ne
in that lat
the trees t
a great di
Thoug
like being
frequent t
wood from
proceed h
being now

effected, they hoped, that by sailing and rowing to the northernmost harbour of Spitsbergen, they might arrive at that island, before the departure of the last ships belonging to the fishery for Europe.

While the boats were getting ready for this expedition, a second party were dispatched to the island, with orders to take the distance, as exact as it was possible, to the nearest open sea. As all the people belonging to the ships were not to be engaged in these services, those who were unemployed diverted themselves in hunting and killing the bears, that now, attracted perhaps by the savoury smell of the provisions dressed on board the ships, came every day over the ice to repeat their visits. Several of these were killed occasionally, and this day they fought a sea-horse, in which engagement the second Lieutenant of the *Carcase* signalized his courage in the most desperate rencounter, in which, however, he succeeded, though his life was in imminent danger.

On the 4th the carpenters, &c. were still employed in fitting up the boats. The pilots, who the day before had been sent to make observations on the islands already mentioned, made their report, that the nearest water they had seen was about ten leagues to the westward; that in their passage they had met with great numbers of spars of pine trees, floating about the island, some of them of considerable size, with the bark rotted off, and the bodies much worm-eaten; that there was neither tree nor shrub to be seen growing on any of the seven islands, nor upon any land that they had yet discovered in that latitude, nor for ten degrees farther S. and that the trees they had seen must therefore have come from a great distance.

Though there is nothing new in this observation, the like being annually observed by all the navigators who frequent those seas in the summer, and who collect their wood from those drifts, yet the country whence they proceed has hitherto been thought a mystery. But it being now certain, that many of the great rivers that

flow through the northernmost parts of Russia, empty themselves into this sea ; and that there is an open communication throughout the different parts of it at different seasons of the year, there seems very little reason to doubt, but that those trees are torn up by land floods, and are precipitated into the sea by the rapidity of the streams.

It has indeed been objected, that all the wood that is found floating in this manner about the islands in high latitudes, is to a piece barked and worm-eaten ; and that if these trees were torn up and precipitated into the sea in the manner above supposed, some of it would appear found and unbarked, as in its first state. To this it may be answered, that were the course of the tides to run as constantly to the northward, as the course of the rivers runs into the sea, this objection would be unanswerable. But the very reverse is known to be the fact ; and that neither the winds nor the tides tend to the northwards for any considerable part of the year ; so that from the time these trees enter the ocean, it must, in the ordinary course of things, be many ages before they can reach the latitudes in which they are now found. Because, if they are driven northwards by the strength of a storm from the S. they will be driven in another direction by the next storm that happens from another quarter ; and all the while the calm continues, they will be driven to and fro by the tides, which, as has been observed, seldom set long to the N. therefore, being in continual motion for ages, or being cast upon the shore by tempests, or high tides, and lying there exposed to the air, till tempests or high tides return them again to the ocean, they will, in a long progression of time, be reduced to the state in which they are constantly found. This solution is, however, offered with diffidence. The fact is certain, of much wood being annually found about the islands in question ; and it is of little importance whence it proceeds, as a passage by the N. E. to China will probably never more be sought.

On the 5th they had gentle breezes ; but about four
in

in th
them
fixed
E. w
passag
wind
ter, f
the le
were
about
Ear
the Ca
their v
recting
out qu
the sea
had set
time of
and her
the dan
from th
remain
crew fr
lumps o
left, out
singly, l
and divi
portion
piece th
at the cu
they also
have dra
to have
this poo
young.
but just
lump of
others b
them, a

in the morning small fleet. The ice still surrounding them, and appearing to grow more and more solid and fixed, those who had till now retained hopes that the S. E. wind would again disunite its substance, and open a passage for their deliverance, began to despair, as the wind had blown for twenty-four hours from that quarter, from which alone they could have relief, and not the least alteration to be perceived. The men, however, were as joyous as ever, and shewed not the least concern about the danger of their situation.

Early in the morning, the man at the mast-head of the Carcase gave notice, that three bears were making their way very fast over the ice, and that they were directing their course towards the ship. They had, without question, been invited by the scent of the blubber of the sea-horse killed a few days before, which the men had set on fire, and which was burning on the ice at the time of their approach. They proved to be a she-bear and her two cubs; but the cubs were nearly as large as the dam. They ran eagerly to the fire, and drew out from the flames part of the flesh of the sea-horse that remained unconsumed, and eat it voraciously. The crew from the ship, by way of diversion, threw great lumps of the flesh of the sea-horse which they had still left, out upon the ice, which the old bear fetched away singly, laid each lump before her cubs as she brought it, and dividing it, gave each a share, reserving but a small portion to herself. As she was fetching away the last piece they had to bestow, they levelled their musquets at the cubs, and shot them both dead; and in her retreat, they also wounded the dam, but not mortally. It would have drawn tears of pity from any but unfeeling minds, to have marked the affectionate concern expressed by this poor beast, in the dying moments of her expiring young. Though she was sorely wounded, and could but just crawl to the place where they lay, she carried the lump of flesh she had fetched away, as she had done the others before, tore it in pieces, and laid it down before them, and when she saw that they refused to eat, she laid

laid her paws first upon one, and then upon the other, and endeavoured to raise them up. All this while it was pitiful to hear her moan. When she found she could not stir them, she went off, and when she had got at some distance, looked back and moaned; and that not availing her to entice them away, she returned, and smelling round them, began to lick their wounds. She went off a second time, as before, and having crawled a few paces, looked again behind her, and for some time stood moaning. But still her cubs not rising to follow her, she returned to them again, and with signs of inexpressible fondness, went round one and round the other, pawing them, and moaning. Finding at last that they were cold and lifeless, she raised her head towards the ship, and, like Caliban in the Tempest, growled a curse upon the murderers, which they returned with a volley of musquet-balls. She fell between her cubs, and died licking their wounds. If what is related by a voyager of credit in the last century be true, the filial fondness of these animals is no less remarkable than the maternal. The young ones, says he, keep constantly close to the old ones. We observed that two young ones and an old one would not leave one another, for if one ran away, it turned back again immediately, as soon as it heard the others in danger, as if it would come to help them. The old one ran to the young one, and the young one to the old one; and rather than they would leave one another, they would suffer themselves to be all killed.

Friday the 6th, the weather calm, but foggy, and the winds variable; they discovered that the drift of the ship with the whole body of ice, inclined fast to the eastward; and that they were already embayed in the very middle of the seven islands. They therefore sent off the pilots of both ships, with a party of sailors, to the northernmost island, to see what discoveries could be made from the promontories there. They returned at night, after a fatiguing journey, with a dismal account, that nothing was to be seen from thence but a vast continent of ice, of which there was no end; and that the thought of wintering

winter
that of
Satur
to the
were a
weathe
in orde
good fo
an open
provisio
in deliv
and in p
take alon
own por
found lo
bread loa
when nig
to sleep.
Thursd
ordered to
each ship,
pointed to
along the
formed in
racter of a
with which
danger. I
honour to
Commodo
to take care
should hap
make use of
prove it.
vious to th
order issued
whatever r
clothes than
ccasion, th
annels, and

wintering in such a situation was more dreadful, than that of perishing by instant death.

Saturday 7, the wind set in N. N. E. veered to the N. to the N. E. and E. piercing cold. This day the boats were all brought in readiness on the ice, fitted with weather clothes about thirteen inches above the gunnels. in order to keep off the cold as much as possible, if by good fortune they should be enabled to launch them in an open sea. They were employed chiefly in boiling provisions to put in the boats for the intended voyage; in delivering out bags to the men to carry their bread, and in packing up such necessaries as every one could take along with him; for now every man was to be his own porter, the necessary provisions and liquors being found load enough for the boats, and twenty-five days bread load enough for each man. This being adjusted, when night approached they were all ordered on board to sleep.

Thursday 8, at six in the morning all hands were ordered to turn out, and a detachment of fifty men from each ship, headed by their respective officers, were appointed to begin the hard task of hauling the launches along the ice. The bravest and gallantest actions performed in war, do not so strikingly mark the true character of a sea Commander, as the readiness and alacrity with which his orders are obeyed in times of imminent danger. Every one now strove who should have the honour to be lifted in the band of haulers, of whom the Commodore took the direction, leaving Capt. Lutwych to take care of both the ships, that if any favourable turn should happen in the disposition of the ice, he might make use of the remaining part of both the crews to improve it. Upon a general consultation of officers, previous to this undertaking, it had been agreed, and an order issued accordingly, that no person on board, of whatever rank, should encumber himself with more clothes than what he wore upon his back. Upon this occasion, therefore, the officers dressed themselves inannels, and the common men put on the clothes which the

the officers had thrown off. It was inconceivably laughable to see these motley bands yoked in their new harness; and, to say the truth, there was not one solemn face among the two companies. That headed by the Commodore drew stoutly for the honour of their leader, and that headed by their Lieutenants had their music to play to them, that they might dance it away, and keep pace with the Commander in chief. Indeed the officers who headed them were deservedly beloved as well as their Commanders, particularly Lieutenant Beard, whose steady and uniform conduct in times of the greatest danger, cannot be sufficiently admired or applauded. Neither swayed by passion, nor disconcerted by the sudden embarrassments that often intervened, his conduct was always calm, and his orders resolute. He never was heard, during the whole voyage on the most pressing emergencies, to enforce his commands with an oath, or to call a sailor by any other than his usual name; and so sensible were they of his manly behaviour, that, when the ship was paid off at Deptford, they were only prevented by his most earnest request from stripping themselves to their shirts, to cover the streets with their clothes, that he might not tread in the dirt in going to take coach.

In six hours, with the utmost efforts of human labour, they had only proceeded a single mile; and now it was time for them to dine, and recruit their almost exhausted spirits. As the Commodore had laboured with them, it was in character that he should dine with them also; and an accident happened that made it necessary for him so to do. The Cook, with his mates, (who were bringing the Commodore and the officers their dinners under covers) to keep out the cold after coming from a warm fire-side, had made a little too free with the brandy bottle before they set out, and before they had got half way to the launches, the liquor began to operate; the Cooks were sometimes very near boarding each other, sometimes they hauled off, and sometimes steered right ahead. At length coming to a chasm, or parting of the

ice
m
wa
va
wh
in
acc
floo
after
mer
him
gem
slip
man,
all the
forted
let his
the tie
modor
them a
He's c
mean
modor
my cor
my hea
the rep
and ple
turtle.
the offi
pers wi
They
word v
changed
that the
parting.
two com
pres.
assist in
their pre
Vol. II.

ice, which they were obliged to leap, down came the master Cook, with dish, cover, meat and all; and what was still worse, though it was not then thought of much value, the Commodore's common service of plate, which the Cook carried for the officers to dine on, fell in the chasm, and instantly sunk to the bottom. This accident brought the Cook a little to himself, and he now stood pausing whether he should jump down the gulph after the plate, or proceed to the Commodore to beg mercy, and make his apology. His mates persuaded him to the latter, as the Commodore was a kind hearted gentleman, and would never take a man's life away for a slip on the ice. Besides it was a great jump for a fat man, and Commodore, they were sure, had rather lose all the plate in the great cabin, than lose Cookie. Comforted a little by this speech, the Cook proceeded, but let his mates go on first with what remained, to carry the tidings of what befel the rest. When the Commodore had heard the story, he judged how it was with them all. But where is the Cook, said he to the mates? He's crying behind, an' please your Honour. In the mean time the Cook came up. Cook, said the Commodore, bring me your dinner. I will dine to-day with my comrades. My dinner! Ay, a pound of flesh next my heart, if your Honour likes it. The promptness of the reply shewed the sincerity of the Cook's good-will, and pleased the Commodore better than a feast upon turtle. He dismissed him with a smile, and partook with the officers in what was left, who made up their dinners with a mess from the common men.

They had just begun to renew their labour, when word was brought, that the whole body of ice had changed its situation, and was moving to the westward; that the ships were both a-float: and that the ice was parting. The joy which this news diffused through the two companies of haulers is easier to conceive than express. They instantly shook off their harness, ran to assist in working the ships, and once more to resume their proper employments. When they arrived at the

ships, Captain Lutwych, who was no less beloved by his men than the Commodore, had by his example and his judicious directions done wonders. Both ships were not only a-float, with their sails set, but actually cut and warped through the ice near half a mile. This ray of hope, however, was soon darkened; the body of ice suddenly assumed its former direction to the eastward, and closed upon them again as fast as ever. While the ships remained in the ice dock, they were lashed together for their greater security, but now being launched and a-float, the ice pressed upon them with such weight, that it was every moment expected that the hawser would break that held them together; orders were therefore given, that the hawser should be slackened, and the ships released.

For the remainder of the evening, and till two in the morning, the drift continued eastward, and all that while the ships were in danger of being crushed by the closing of the channel in which they rode. They had now drifted two miles to the eastward; the men were worn out with fatigue in defending the ships with their ice-poles from being engulfed; and now nothing but scenes of horror and perdition appeared before their eyes. But the Omnipotent, in the very moment, when every hope of deliverance from their own united endeavours had relinquished them, interposed in their favour, and caused the winds to blow, and the ice to part in an astonishing manner, rending and cracking with a tremendous noise, surpassing that of the loudest thunder. At this very instant the whole continent of ice, which before was extended beyond the reach of sight from the highest mountains, moved together in various directions, splitting and dividing into vast bodies, and forming hills and plains of various figures and dimensions. All hearts were now again revived, and the prospect of being once more released from the frozen chains of the north, inspired the men with fresh vigour. Every officer and every idler on board laboured now for life. The sails were all spread, that the ships might have the full advantage

advantage of the breeze to force them through the channels that were already opened, and to help them, like wedges, to rend the clefts that were but just cracking.

While the major part of the crews were employed in warping the ships with ice-anchors, axes, saws, and poles, a party from both ships were dispatched to launch the boats. This was no easy task to accomplish. The ice, though split in many thousand pieces, was yet frozen like an island round the launches, and though it was of no great extent, yet the boats were of a weight hardly to be moved by the small force that could be spared to launch them. They were besides, by the driving of the ice, at more than five miles distance from the ships; and at this time no channels of communication were yet opened. But Providence was manifest even on this occasion; for the island on which the launches stood, parted while the men were hauling them, and by that lucky circumstance they were launched with great facility, without the loss of a man, though the ice cracked, as it were, under their feet.

The people on board had not been able to force their way with the ships much more than a mile, when the party in the launches joined them. And now, excited by what curiosity or instinct is not easy to determine, several bears came posting over the ice to be spectators of their departure, and advanced so near the ships, that they might have been easily mastered, had not the men been more seriously employed.

This day they altered their soundings from thirty to fifty fathoms, and from fifty to eighty and eighty five fathoms.

The breeze continuing fresh from E. S. E. and E. the ice seemed to open as fast as it had before closed when the wind blew westerly, and from the N. a strong presumptive proof of land to the eastward, which stopping the current of the loose ice in driving from the N. and W. closes it in of course, and renders it compact. On the contrary, when the wind blows off the land, and the current sets to the sea, the loose ice being no longer

ger opposed, disperses itself again in the ocean, where it again floats, till the same cause produces the same effect. If therefore the land which our voyagers saw on the 30th, and which they could not determine with certainty to be an island, should, upon some future occasion, be discovered to be a continent, then the closing of the loose ice so suddenly about the *seven islands*, and its crowding one piece upon another to a great height, when violently agitated by tempests from the N. or W. will be fully and naturally accounted for.

Tuesday the 10th, about two in the morning, the fog being thick, and the weather calm, and the men very much fatigued, they were ordered to their quarters, to refresh themselves with sleep. It was, besides, very cold, and much rain fell; and as the wind was variable, they could make but little progress. The ice, in the morning early, seemed rather to close upon them, than to divide; and being apprehensive for their boats, they attempted to hoist the launches on board, but that belonging the Carcase, being either too unwieldy, or the men too much fatigued to effect it, they slung her to the ship's side.

About eight the breeze sprung up fresh from the N. E. exceedingly cold, but opening the ice to the westward. They then made all the sail they could, driving with the loosening ice, and parting it wherever it was moveable with their whole force. Towards noon they lost sight of the *Seven Islands*. And in a very little while after, to their great joy, Spitzbergen was seen from the mast-head.

Wednesday 11th, the men who, with hard labour, cold and watching, were much dispirited, on the prospect of a speedy deliverance, and seeing the ice adhere in immoveable bodies, began, after a little refreshment, to resume their wonted cheerfulness. They had not till the second closing of the ice, after the attempt to dig a passage through it had proved ineffectual, and that the hauling the launches had been tried with little better success, discovered the least despondency. But when they

they h
which
peared
filled th
their of
effects
the har
pressed
apprehen
moment
that the
was char
Festivity
apprehen
there was

The ice
now time
course, the
appeared,
remarkabl
and comp
den might
mast; and
pillars, and
ing round
imagination
for, as has
that art or
fancied.

They co
pose ice;
W. and in
e S. W.
Thursda
way with
which t
ernoon t
ogle Sou
r miles.

they had exerted their utmost efforts, and Providence, which at first seemed to second their endeavours, appeared to have forsaken them; when their pilots had filled their minds with the terrors of their situation; and their officers had given the ships and their most valuable effects over for lost, the men then began to reflect on the hardships they were likely to suffer, and to be impressed with the sense of their common danger. Their apprehensions, however, were but temporary, and the moment they were released from their icy prison, and that they were within sight of a clear sea, their sorrow was changed to mirth, and their melancholy to rejoicing. Festivity and jollity took place of abstinence and gloomy apprehensions; and before they arrived at Spitsbergen, there was not a sailor on board with a serious face.

The ice that had parted from the main body, they had now time to admire. As it no longer obstructed their course, the various shapes in which the broken fragments appeared, were indeed very curious and amusing. One remarkable piece described a magnificent arch, so large and completely formed, that a sloop of considerable burden might have sailed through it without lowering her mast; another represented a church with windows and pillars, and domes; and a third, a table with icicles hanging round it like the fringes of a damask cloth. A fertile imagination might here find entertainment enough; for, as has already been observed, the similitude of all that art or nature has ever yet produced, might here be fancied.

They continued working all this day through the loose ice; Hacluit's Headland bearing S. thirty-nine W. and in their course saw a Dutch Greenlandman in the S. W. quarter.

Thursday the 12th, they cleared the ice, and bore away with all sails set for the harbour of Smearingburg, which they had before cast anchor. At two in the afternoon they anchored in North Bay, the N. part of Angle Sound, bearing N. forty-five E. distance about four miles. At half after four the Commodore made the

the signal to weigh; and at half past nine, came to an anchor in their former station, where they found four Dutch Greenlandmen lying in readiness to depart.--- These Dutchmen acquainted the Commodore, that all the English fishing ships set sail on the 10th of July, the day to which they are obliged by contract to stay, to entitle their owners to receive the bounty-money allowed by Parliament for the encouragement of that fishery.

About the same time the greatest part of the Dutch set sail likewise from Spitsbergen, on their voyage home; but it is a practice with these last, to take it by turns to wait till the severity of the weather obliges them to leave the coast, in order to pick up such men as may by accident have lost their ships in the ice; and who, notwithstanding, may have had the good fortune to save their lives by means of their boats. This is a very humane institution, and does credit to the Dutch Government. Did the British Government bear an equal regard for individuals, so many valuable subjects would never be suffered to migrate, as now continually hire ships to convey themselves to seek their fortunes in new settlements. It is estimated, that twelve thousand at least are yearly shipped off from Ireland, and not many less from England and Scotland, yet no measures are thought necessary to be taken to retain them at home.

The turn of waiting at Spitsbergen falls annually to the lot of about five Dutch ships, who are obliged to send out their boats daily in search of their unfortunate fellow subjects; some of these boats have themselves suffered severely, and have been detained seven or eight days by severe weather in these excursions, to the great anxiety of their friends.

The day of our voyagers return to Smearingburg Harbour being fine, the Commodore ordered a tent to be raised on the lower point to the S. W. where there was a level plain for the space of two miles, and when all the mathematical apparatus were again taken on shore for a second trial,

The

The
pendu
Harrit
hours;
varied
the ob
to Com
does h
careful
were m

The c
siderable
freshmen

Haclu
quently
on the N
in circum
grafs; an
two to th
mer, on v

The pe
ing the ri
ter, peying
ships for
that was fo

On the
chor, and

On the
have falle
bour. W

the contin
lose their f
passes the
no other th

The ac
already no
and it is n
may one d
ation in c

They found, on the examination of the vibration of the pendulum, that it differed from that at Greenwich, by Harrison's time-keeper, only two seconds in forty-eight hours; which time-keeper, at their arrival at Greenwich, varied only one second and a half from the time-pieces at the observatory there. Mr Robinson, who was articled to Commodore Phipps, from Christ's Hospital, and who does honour to that noble foundation, was particularly careful to note the result of all the observations that were made in this high latitude.

The ovens were also here taken on shore, and a considerable quantity of good soft bread baked for the refreshment of the men.

Haeluit's Headland, of which mention has been frequently made in the course of this voyage, is an island on the N. W. point of Spitzbergen, about fifteen miles in circumference, on which is found plenty of scurvy-grass; and in the valleys, some of which extend from two to three miles, there is store of other grass in summer, on which the deer is supposed to feed.

The people were now fully employed in overhauling the rigging, tarring the ship's sides, taking in water, peying and securing the masts, and in preparing the ships for pursuing their voyage upon discovery; or, if that was found impracticable, for returning home.

On the 16th, two of the Dutch ships weighed anchor, and sailed away in company.

On the 17th, vast pieces of broken ice, supposed to have fallen from the icebergs, came floating into harbour. When these pieces, which are undermined by the continual agitation of the sea in stormy weather, lose their support, they tumble with a crack that surpasses the loudest thunder; but they were told, that no other thunder was ever heard in this latitude.

The activity and enterprising spirit of the Russians already noticed, begin to manifest itself every where, and it is not improbable, but that the maritime powers may one day or other have cause to repent their emulation in contributing to aggrandize the naval power of that

that increasing people. The dominions of the Russian empire, are situated to command the trade of the universe; they are now actually erecting a yard for building ships at Kamtschatka, to improve their discoveries from that quarter, and to open a trade from thence to China. They have attempted to settle colonies, as our voyagers were told, on the southernmost districts of Spitzbergen, and those of the new settlers, who survived the first winter, were preparing to encounter the rigour of the climate in a second. This can only be done by way of experiment, to try if a settlement is practicable, for those now sent are said to be criminals.

During the six days which the ships anchored here to make observations, take in water, refresh the men, and refit, our journalist made several excursions to the adjoining islands, where the birds appeared in astonishing numbers; it being the season for bringing forth their young, and teaching them to fly, and to dive.

Of all the birds that breed in these islands, the burgo-master is the largest, and the most ravenous; he is so called by the Dutch, from his size and his authority, as he holds all the other birds in subjection. His bill is long and crooked, rather like that of the stork, than that of the hawk, and is of a yellow colour. He has a red ring about his eyes; is web-footed, but has but three claws on each foot. His wings are of a beautiful pearl colour, edged with white; his back a silver grey; his body white as snow, and his tail of the same colour, which when he flies he spreads like a fan. He builds his nest very high in the rocks, inaccessible either to bears or foxes. He preys upon all the other birds, and eats the carrion of fish or flesh, or whatever comes in his way. His cry is horrible, and when he screams, the malle-much, a bird as large as a duck, is so much intimidated, that she will sink down, and suffer him to devour her without opposition.

Our journalist found it very dangerous to pursue his way over the hills and precipices in this rugged country. The clefts on the mountains are like those in the ice, frequently

frequently
hazardous
so that
Many
in the
of reli
deform
the Cr
On
the 20
tide to
inches
On t
loose ic
longitud
On th
quarter.
On th
the Rac
a six-po
they cam
able wear
happenin
Septem
the Com
ven hund
were emp
the capsta
took the a
53 m. W.
Septemb
squalls, wi
weather.
their longi
moon, to b
4 d. 45 m.
The ship
together, w
Septembe
Vol. II. No

frequently impassable; but they are abundantly more hazardous, being sometimes concealed under the snow, so that a traveller is engulfed before he is aware.— Many have been entombed in these clefts, and perished in the hearing of their companions, without a possibility of relief. To a contemplative mind, however, even the deformities of nature are not unpleasing, the wisdom of the Creator being manifest in all his works.

On the 19th of August the ships unmoored, and on the 20th they cleared the harbour. They found the tide to flow N. E. and S. W. and to rise three feet seven inches perpendicular height.

On the 22d they again found themselves beset with loose ice. They were then in latitude 80 d. 14 m. N. longitude 5 d. 44 m. E.

On the 22d they had a heavy sea from the S. W. quarter.

On the 23d, the Carcase, being a heavier sailer than the Racehorse, lost sight of the Commodore, and fired a six-pounder, which was answered. In the evening they came in sight, and pursued their course with favourable weather, and without any thing worthy of notice happening till

September 5, when, being clear and calm weather, the Commodore sounded, and found ground with seven hundred fathoms, very soft mud. The people were employed eight hours in heaving up the lead with the capstan. At three in the morning the sun risen, took the amplitude, and found the variation to be 22 d. 53 m. W.

September 7, at five in the afternoon, they had heavy squalls, with rain; at seven in the morning moderate weather. This day, in 60 d. 15 m. W. they found their longitude, corrected by observation of sun and moon, to be 5 d. 59 m. E. longitude, by time-keeper, 4 d. 45 m. E. a very remarkable difference.

The ships pursued their course home in company together, with high seas and variable weather, till

September 11, when, at half after ten, the night dark,

and the weather moderate, the wind all at once veered to the southward, and a strong gale with a great sea came on. The ships parted, and never more came in sight till they met off Harwich, on the English coast.

Our journalist being on board the Carcase, can now only relate what happened to that sloop, till her arrival in the River Thames.

When the gale came on, the Commodore's lights not appearing, the Carcase fired a six pounder, but that shot not being returned by the Racehorse, it was concluded, that the Commodore was at too great a distance to hear the signal. At four in the morning, the gale increasing, they close-reefed the top-sails, and employed all hands in lashing and securing the boats and booms, and preparing to withstand the threatening storm.— At this time they were in latitude 57 d. 44. m. N. the Naze of Norway bearing S. eighty-eight E. distant thirty-one leagues.

Sunday, September 12, fresh gales, with frequent showers of rain; handed gib and stay-sail; at two in the afternoon hard squalls and violent showers of rain; handed fore and mizen top-sail; saw a sail to southward standing to eastward; cloudy and obscure sky; at ten at night came on suddenly a very heavy squall; handed all the top-sails; strong gale, with severe showers of rain. At midnight, blowing a violent storm of wind, reefed and handed the main-sail and fore-sail; lowered down the lower yards, balanced the mizen, and laid the ship to under it, with her head to the westward; the sea making a free passage over the ship. Shipped such heavy seas, washed all the provisions and casks that were lashed on the deck, overboard; kept two pumps continually going; obliged to skuttle the boats to prevent their being washed overboard. At four in the morning shipped such heavy seas, as washed all the booms and spars that had been with all possible care secured on the deck, overboard. The ship mostly under water. No sight of the Commodore; under great apprehensions for his safety, as his vessel laboured much

more

more
carpe
board
was i
washe
could
moder
yards u
squalls
tled the
Sept
shippin
more m
yards, a
no wate
gib; ve
the even
of the r
brown f
weather,
ward. A
eight saw
dore, ma
At nine
She pro
Bremen.
4 m. N.
Septem
courses.
top-sail.
westward.
cloudy.
certain w
three grea
S. forty-fi
Septem
all reefs, a
the afterno
her to. S

more than ours. At this time one of the mates, the carpenter, and a fore-mast man, were washed over-board. The carpenter, a very careful sober man, who was in the waste, securing the hatches and stores, was washed in and out at the ports three times before he could secure himself. At ten in the morning rather moderate. Set the mizen-stay-fail; swayed the lower yards up, and set the courses. At half past eleven strong squalls and heavy gusts; handed both courses; and settled the lower yards.

September 13, strong gales and squally. Continually shipping heavy seas. At three in the afternoon rather more moderate; set reef courses; swayed up the lower yards, and set the main-top-fail. The ship now making no water; at seven in the evening set fore-top-fail and gib; very heavy sea from S. W. quarter. At eight in the evening moderate and cloudy; let the third reef out of the main-top-fail; founded thirty-five fathoms, fine brown sand. At one in the morning light airs, hazy weather, and great sea. Wore ship, and stood to westward. At four fresh breezes, with rain. At half past eight saw a sail to eastward; supposing it the Commodore, made the private signal, and fired a six-pounder. At nine bore down upon her, and brought her to.—She proved a Hollander from Archangel, bound to Bremen.—Course S. forty-two W. latitude 56 d. 4 m. N.

September 14, strong gales, and cloudy; under reef courses. At two in the afternoon moderate; set main-top-fail. At three set fore-top-fail; a great sea from westward. At seven in the evening moderate and cloudy. Out the third reef of the main-top-fail; uncertain weather; squally, and at times much rain; at three great fog. This day, at noon, Flamborough-head S. forty-six W. distance thirty leagues.

September 15, light breezes, and clear weather; out all reefs, and swayed up the lower yards. At four in the afternoon saw a sail to S. E. bore down and brought her to. She proved to be a Prussian fisherman, had

been ten days from Edinburgh; hoisted out the small cutter; the second Lieutenant went on board of her, and bought a fine cargo of fish. At five the boat returned; we hoisted her on board, with plenty of mackerel and herrings. Made sail, and stood to S. W. sounded every half hour; found from thirteen to fifteen and eighteen fathoms, fine brown sand, mixed with black shells. At seven in the evening took the first reef, and hauled in the top-sails; fresh gales, and cloudy. At two in the morning deepened in water to twenty fathom. Took in second reef of the top-sails; tacked ship, and stood to N. W. At five in the morning got into fifteen fathom; and at seven into ten. At nine in the morning close reefed the top-sails, and at ten handed them; very fresh gale, and violent rain.

September 16, rather more moderate; set the main-top-sail; squally, with rain; a confused sea from W. N. W. At five in the afternoon soundings from five to twelve, from twenty-seven to thirty-two and thirty-four fathoms, fine brown sand, black specks; fresh gales and cloudy. At eight took in first and second reefs of top-sails; at eleven at night close reefed the main and fore-top-sail, and handed the mizen; fresh gales, and cloudy weather. At four in the morning shoaled water to twenty-two fathoms; brown sand and broken shells. At five saw several sail to N. W. fired, and brought one of them to. At eight shook the first and second reefs out of the top-sail; hove down upon a sloop, which came from Gravesend; took on board the master, as a pilot to carry the ship through Yarmouth Roads; put on board one man in his room, and ordered his vessel to follow us. Stood to the southward.

September 17, fresh breezes, and cloudy weather; kept the lead going every half hour; found our sounding from ten to twelve fathoms, fine brown sand. At six in the afternoon fresh gales; close reefed the main-top-sail; soundings from ten to sixteen fathom; broken shells and large stones. At seven close reefed the main-top-sail; kept a light in the poop lanthorn for the sloop.

At

At t
der
nigh
and
vessel
mizer
blew
wind
ther n
reefed
the firs
had sp
land b
ven be
reefs o
saw Cr
five lea
Septe
the the
bower-c
anchor.
stood to
the N. W
breezes,
sails, and
ing, to c
S. W.
bower in
to half a
Nefs ligh
the morn
four weig
from Win
king seve
gallant-sa
Road, wi
and clay.
two miles
to the No

At ten strong gales; handed the top-sails; laid her to under the main-sail; handed the fore-sail. At eleven at night got into five fathom; but deepened to eight, nine, and ten fathom, brown sand. Lost sight of the fishing vessel; fired several guns, and made a signal in the mizen-shroud. On setting the fore-top-sail stay-sail, it blew to pieces; bent a new one. A violent gale of wind; shipped a great quantity of water. At four rather moderate; set the fore-sail. At midnight set close reefed top-sails. At half past six tacked; at seven saw the fishing vessel; bore down and spoke with her, who had split her main-sail in the night. At ten saw the land bearing S. W. by W. and S. and by W. At eleven being clear and moderate weather, shook all the reefs out of the top-sails, and set the top-gallant sail; saw Cromer light-house, bearing S. 55 d. W. distance five leagues.

September 19, fresh breezes and clear weather; bent the sheet-cable, and hauled a range of the best and small bower-cables; bent both buoy-ropes and buoys to the anchor. At five light breezes and fair; tacked and stood to the southward. At six tacked and stood to the N. W. Cromer N. W. and by N. four miles; light breezes, and pleasant weather; handed in top-gallant sails, and handed the main-sail. At seven in the evening, to our great joy, saw Yarmouth church, bearing S. W. At ten at night came to anchor with the best bower in twelve fathom, fine sand and clay, veered out to half a cable, and handed all the sails. Winterstone Ness lights bore S. and by W. four miles. At two in the morning fresh breezes and cloudy. At half past four weighed, and made sail. Employed in working from Winterstone Ness lights to Yarmouth Roads, making several tacks. At seven in the morning set top-gallant-sails; at nine came to an anchor in Yarmouth Road, with best bower in seven fathoms water; sand and clay. Yarmouth church S. fifteen W. distance two miles. Came on board a pilot to carry the ship to the North.

September

September 20, fresh breezes and clear weather; sent down top-gallant-yards, and got every thing clear for striking tokens. At five in the afternoon moored the ship. Yarmouth church W. S. W. two miles.

September 21, fresh gales and cloudy, with frequent rain. At four in the afternoon sent down top-gallant-mast. At eight in the morning sent the long-boat on shore for water. We were this day visited by several of the inhabitants of Norwich and Yarmouth, who were genteelly entertained by the officers, but we could get no intelligence of the Commodore.

September 23, dark cloudy weather. At six in the evening swayed up the top-mast, and lower yards; the wind veered to N. W. we prepared to unmoor. Fresh gales, with frequent flashes of lightning. At seven in the morning set on top-gallant-mast, and began to unmoor. At eight veered away upon the best bower, and took up the small bower anchor. At nine weighed and made sail. At ten got up the top-gallant-yards, in company with several ships.

Saturday 25, at five came to an anchor in eleven fathoms. Orford light-house E. by S. four miles. This day some religious books were distributed among the sailors, which had been sent on board by some pious person for their particular perusal.

Sunday 26, at six in the evening came to with the best bower in seven fathoms water; Balfey church W. by S. At two in the morning weighed, and came to sail; Harwich lights N. W. by W. To their great surprise, saw the Racehorse at anchor. Hoisted out the cutter, and Capt. Lutwyth waited on the Commodore, from whom he learnt, that in the storm of the twelfth they had all their boats washed overboard; and, to ease the ship, were obliged to heave all their guns over-board, except two. Came to anchor; Harwich church N. W.

Monday 27, at two in the afternoon weighed, and came to sail in company with the Racehorse. At eight in the evening came to in the Swin. At five in the morning weighed, in company as before. Turning up
the

the
N. M
T
half
six c
Shoe
came
foren
order
Nore
We
half p
worki
the be
Woolv
alongfi
Thur
ting ou
evening
a large
shrouds
ing cam
Bedford
and beg
Thus
mined t
navigatio
Wood h
be found
From
with in h
that the
the Poles
either a
filled up
It has
vigable a
second de
that in fo

the Swin at half past nine, came to ; Whitaker Beacon N. N. E. one mile.

Tuesday 28, fresh breezes and cloudy weather. At half past three weighed, and came to sail. At half past six came to with the best bower in six fathom water ; Shoe Beacon N. W. At half past five weighed, and came to sail. Working to windward at eleven in the forenoon, the Commodore's boat came on board, with orders to proceed to Deptford. At noon came to at the Nore with the best bower.

Wednesday 29, light breezes and fair weather. At half past five weighed, and made sail. Employed in working up the river. At half past ten came to with the best bower in the Gallions, in three fathoms water. Woolwich church N. by S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At noon a hoy came alongside for the gunner's stores.

Thursday 30, employed most of the afternoon in getting out the guns, and gunner's stores. At nine in the evening weighed, and came to sail. At ten run foul of a large transport, and carried away the larboard mizen-shrouds, and part of the channel. At one in the morning came to anchor at Deptford. Warped alongside the Bedford Hulk, and moored. At six unbent the sails, and began to unrig.

Thus ended a voyage, which seems to have determined the question so much agitated concerning the navigation to the North Pole, and proved what Captain Wood had before asserted, that no passage would ever be found practicable in that direction.

From the quantities of ice which that navigator met with in latitude 76 N. he concluded, indeed erroneously, that the 80th degree would bound the passage towards the Poles, and that from thence the Polar region was either a continued continent of solid ice, or that land filled up the intermediate space.

It has been found, however, that those seas are navigable as far as between the eighty-first and eighty-second degrees of latitude ; and it may possibly happen, that in some future years, they may be found navigable

a degree or two farther : but it may now with certainty be concluded, that a course under the Pole can never be pursued for the purpose of commerce.

We have already shewn incontestibly, that the north sea communicates with the eastern sea, and that the passage to China and Japan may be performed with difficulty by a N. E. course, by watching the opportunity, when a few days in the year the north sea is open. But who would think of exposing a ship's company to the hazard of being frozen to death in a tedious, uncertain, and dangerous passage, when a safe, certain, and, one may say, speedy passage at all times lies open before them.

From Behring's discoveries to the east of Japan, and from the continent he there met with, there seems reason to believe, that the land seen by Commodore Phipps to the eastward of the Seven Islands, might be a continuation of that continent. In that case it is not improbable, but that either that continent may join to the western part of America, or that it may extend southward, and form a part of that continent so much sought after in the southern hemisphere.

A small premium of two or three thousand pounds, secured by Parliament, to be paid to the owner or owners of any Greenland fishing ship, that should be fortunate enough to discover such a continent to the eastward or northward of the *Seven Islands*, might possibly have a better effect, than many expensive expeditions fitted out solely for the purposes of such discovery. This, by a trading nation, were it only to improve the science of geography, would surely be well bestowed.

It is true, indeed, that the reward secured by Parliament for the discovery of a N. W. passage, has not yet been attended with that success, with which the promoters of the bill had flattered themselves and the public from the liberal spirit with which it was granted.

The Hudson's Bay Company, though bound by their charter to further and promote the discovery, were generally

generally
and
Capta
ship
public
thousa
report
it. T
credite
Middl
with t
of priv
already

The
true lig
" of a
" west
" tage
" vanta
" publi
" make
" there
" ing t
" throu
" and th
" ships
" for fu
" Poun
secute th
intereste
" subject
" the sai
" this di
" ance, a
" said, ad
" they m
" covey.
Such w
reward th
Vol. II.—

generally suspected, from interested motives, to oppose and discourage every attempt to accomplish it. And Captain Middleton, who in 1740 was sent in a king's ship upon that service, returning without success, was publicly charged with having received a bribe of five thousand pounds to defeat the undertaking, and by his report to discourage any farther attempts in pursuit of it. This charge was strongly supported, and generally credited; and Mr Dobbs, by whose interest Captain Middleton was employed, had the address to prevail with the then ministry, to preclude any future scheme of private corruption, by promoting the public reward already mentioned.

The preamble to the act will state this matter in the true light; it sets forth, "That, whereas the discovery of a N. W. passage through Hudson's Streight to the western ocean would be of great benefit and advantage to this kingdom, and that it would be of great advantage to the adventurers to attempt the same, if a public reward was given to such persons as should make a perfect discovery of the said passage; it is therefore enacted, that if any ships or vessels belonging to his Majesty's subjects shall find out and sail through any passage by sea between Hudson's Bay and the western ocean of America, the owners of such ships or vessels shall be entitled to receive as a reward for such discovery the sum of TWENTY THOUSAND POUNDS." And as a farther encouragement to prosecute this discovery, and to prevent obstructions from interested persons, it was enacted, "that all persons, subjects of his Majesty, residing in any place where the said adventurers may come in the prosecution of this discovery, shall give the said adventurers all assistance, and shall no way obstruct, molest, or refuse the said adventurers reasonable succour in any distress they may fall into in the prosecution of this discovery."

Such was the encouragement, and such the liberal reward that was and is secured by Parliament to the fortunate

fortunate discoverers of a N. W. passage to the Great Pacific Ocean ; a passage which, it is generally believed, would open a trade with nations on the northern continent of America, wholly unknown to the maritime powers of Europe, and supposed, from their situation, to abound in commodities equally rare and precious with those of any other country under the sun.

The fair prospect of acquiring fame by enlarging commerce, the hope of obtaining the parliamentary reward, and the desire of exposing the disingenuity of Captain Middleton, were incitements sufficient to prevail with Mr Dobbs to solicit the equipment of two ships for another voyage, which he made not the least doubt would find out the passage so long sought for in vain, and by the advantages attending the discovery, exceed the most sanguine expectations of the adventurers.

The command of this expedition was given to Captain Ellis, who, on the 31st of May, 1746, passed Yarmouth in the Dobb's Galley, accompanied by the California sloop, and convoyed to the North Sea by the Loo man of war. But in proportion as Mr Dobbs had flattered the avarice of the adventurers who were to share in the reward, and had elated himself with the thoughts of triumphing over the disgrace of Captain Middleton, so it happened, that when the ships returned without having effected any one thing of consequence, the chagrin of the former for having advanced their money on a visionary project, and the mortification of the latter in not being able to support his charge, were increased by every circumstance that could aggravate the disappointment. Captain Middleton now triumphed in his turn, and no ship from England has since been induced to undertake the voyage, notwithstanding the greatness of the reward.

It is now, however, believed, that Government have in contemplation another voyage to the north, to which that of Captain Phipps was only the prelude ; but there is reason to conclude, from what has already been said of these later attempts, and from the ill success of former undertakings,

undertakings, that the discovery of a N. W. passage is not the sole object in view. The figure of the earth, the phenomena of the winds, the variation of the compass, and the attraction of the magnet, are points yet unsettled, of infinite importance to navigation; and it is not impossible, but that a more careful examination of the polar regions may lead to the solution of problems, that have hitherto baffled the enquiries of the ablest navigators.

A very slender acquaintance with the difficulties and hardships attending northern discoveries, will fully account for our knowledge of the countries surrounding the Pole being still very imperfect. A brief recapitulation of the sufferings of those to whom we are most indebted for our information, will not, we hope, be thought an improper conclusion to a voyage solely undertaken with a view to enlarge it.

The first who conceived the idea of exploring the northern regions was Sebastian Cabot. That enterprising navigator, long before Magellan thought of a passage to the Pacific Ocean by the S. W. had made two voyages, with a view to direct his course to the same sea by the N. W. In these voyages, he discovered Newfoundland, the coast of the Esquimaux Indians, and had penetrated as far as the 64th degree of latitude, when a mutiny among his men, or rather an obstinate refusal to proceed any further, obliged him to return; yet he died in the persuasion that a passage in that direction certainly existed, and that he should have found it but for the opposition of his crew.

The next, who, prepossessed with the same notion, undertook a voyage for discoveries towards the north, was Sir Martin Forbisher. He discovered Greenland, and in the latitude of 62 d. N. passed a streight, which, though it still holds a place in our maps, has never been found navigable since. He made two other voyages, discovered many bays and capes, to which he gave names, but returned without attaining the principal ob-

ject of his voyage, though, like his predecessor, he asserted the certainty of its existence to his latest hour.

To him succeeded Sir Humphrey Gilbert, who in 1583, traversed the coast of Labradore, entered the mouth of the great river St Lawrence, and, surrounding the island of Newfoundland, laid the foundation of the cod fishery, which has been prosecuted with immense advantage to his country ever since.

The rapid progress of discoveries in the southern hemisphere, which about this time were attended with vast profit to the adventurers, re-animated cotemporary navigators to prosecute, with more ardour than ever, their enterprizes towards the north. The more the Pacific Ocean became known, the firmer the belief prevailed, that a passage into it by way of the north must certainly exist, and that whoever could discover it, would not only immortalize his name, but enrich his country.

The merchants of that time were no less eager to embark their money, than the navigators were to hazard their persons in any new project, where the hope of gain appeared to be well founded. A company therefore of wealthy persons, in London, agreed to join a company of merchants in the west, and to fit out two ships for the discovery of a passage, which all agreed was practicable, though none could tell readily where to find it. To the command of this expedition Captain John Davis was strongly recommended, as an able navigator, and of a bold and enterprising spirit. Accordingly, on the 7th of June, 1685, he set sail from Dartmouth, in the *Sun-shine* of fifty tons, and accompanied by the *Moon-shine* of thirty-five tons, having on board both vessels forty-two hardy seamen. On the 10th of July they were alarmed by a mighty roaring, which was the more terrible, as the fog was so thick, that they could not see each other at a ship's length. It proved only the crackling of the islands of ice, which was then not very well understood. On the breaking up of the fog they discovered land, which, from its horrid appearance, they
named

nam
64
In t
the
pco
ill fa
Engl
bring
simpl
of M
on the
southe
of the
bears t
streigh
shore,
being n
expresse
after an
thern co
promisin
sulting w
turn hom
to the we
The w
cold, on t
On the 12
Desolation
the port o
The acc
so well rec
joining in a
again emp
force.
On the 7
Mermaid, o
and Moon-
thirteen tons
In the lati

named *the Land of Desolation*. On the 24th they were in 64 d. 15 m. N. the sea open and the weather moderate. In this latitude they discovered land, and conversed with the natives, who appeared to be a harmless, hospitable people, polite in their manners, neatly habited, and not ill favoured. These friendly people, observing that the English admired their furs, went up in the country to bring down more, with which they traded with much simplicity. To an adjoining hill Davis gave the name of Mount Raleigh, from which he took his departure on the 8th of August, and on the 11th doubled the southernmost cape in view, to which he gave the name of the *Cape of God's Mercy*, and entered a streight, which bears the name of the Discoverer to this day. In this streight he sailed sixty leagues, and on the 14th went on shore, and found evident signs of human inhabitants, being met by a pack of dogs (twenty in number) that expressed their joy, as if their masters had been returned after an interval of absence. One of those had on a leather collar. The Captain was highly pleased with the promising appearance of the new streights, and consulting with the master, agreed to report, upon their return home, that they had found the wished-for passage to the western sea.

The weather changing from temperate to excessive cold, on the 20th it was resolved to set sail for England. On the 12th of September they fell in with the land of Desolation, and on the 30th of the same month entered the port of Dartmouth, without the loss of a man.

The account Captain Davis gave to his owners was so well received, that other merchants were desirous of joining in a second expedition, and accordingly he was again employed, and furnished with a much greater force.

On the 7th of May he sailed from Dartmouth in the *Mermaid*, of 120 tons, in company with the *Sun-shine* and *Moon-shine* as before, and an additional pinnacle of thirteen tons, called the *North Star*.

In the latitude of 60 d. N. Captain Davis divided his force,

force, ordering the Sun-shine and North Star to seek a passage between Greenland and Iceland, while the Mermaid and Moon-shine continued their course to the freight as before. In the latitude of 64 d. and longitude 58 d. 30 m. N. from London, they fell again in with the land, and met the same people with whom they had traded the former year. Overjoyed to meet, they renewed their acquaintance, and while the English was preparing a pinnace to facilitate their discoveries, the natives came in numbers to carry on trade. As soon as the pinnace was fitted for sea, Captain Davis dispatched her to examine the inlets on the coast, and to trace their course up the main land; but that was productive of no essential discovery.

Though the natives attended them with an obsequious diligence, yet on their kindling a fire in their manner, and using some strange ceremonies, Captain Davis, supposing them to be using idolatrous sorceries, first thrust the priest into the smoke, and then encouraged his men to tread out the flame, and to spurn the reeking coals into the sea. Unable to bear the insult, the natives for the first time began to shew resentment. They seized the boat from the stern of the Moon-shine, cut the cable belonging to the Mermaid, made prize of the implements that lay upon the shore, and, in short, declared open hostilities against the aggressors, who, in return discharged their artillery among them, which instantly dispersed them.

No civilities, however, that could be shewn them, after the indignity offered to their priest, could ever after reconcile them, and the year following they found an opportunity to take a severe revenge. In the mean time one of them being made prisoner, was taken on board the Mermaid; who, after recovering his fright, trimmed up his darts, repaired his fishing tackle, picked oakum, and set his hand to any thing he was set about; and, after a time, became a very pleasant companion on board.

On the 17th of July, in latitude 63 d. 8 m. N. they

fe
ba
no
co
pe
rop
the
the
orde
intre
rega
and
hope
child
Move
the M
turnin
secute
opposi
33 m.
withou
in a fin
the nati
fail to
course to
a high p
to the S.
On do
away to
they arri
failed ten
aboundin
they staic
coasting a
flattered
strong cur
westward,
ing, but th
On the

fell in with a continent of ice, very high, like land, with bays and capes, and, till they examined it closely, could not be convinced that it was a mere congelation. They coasted till the 30th, when the weather became so tempestuous and foggy, and withal so cold, that the shrouds, ropes, and sails, were frozen and glazed with ice; and the men, who the year before found the sea open, and the weather temperate, became so dispirited, that in an orderly manner they addressed their Commander, and intreated him to consider their present situation, to have regard to his own life, and the preservation of theirs; and not, through boldness and an indiscreet zeal for a hopeless discovery, leave their widows and fatherless children to blacken his memory with bitter curses. Moved with their pitiable representation, he discharged the Mermaid with those who were most desirous of returning home, and proceeded in the Moon-shine to prosecute his voyage. Changing his course to recover the opposite shore on the 1st of August, in latitude 66 d. 33 m. N. and longitude 70 d. W. he discovered land, without either ice or snow. On the 2d they cast anchor in a fine road, and in a day or two were visited by the natives who came to traffic. On the 14th they set sail to the westward, and on the 16th changed their course to the southward. On the 18th they discovered a high promontory to the N. W. which having no land to the S. recovered their hopes of a free passage.

On doubling the Cape, they found the land trending away to the S. in broken islands, and coasting along till they arrived at a fine opening, in latitude 57 d. they sailed ten leagues, with woods and lawns on each side, abounding with deer and game of every kind. Here they staid till the 1st of September, and then set sail, coasting along to the northward, where they were again flattered with the hopes of a passage, by observing a strong current rushing in between two lands to the westward, which they were very desirous of approaching, but the wind blew directly against them. On the 6th, returning to their former station, five of

of the crew fell into an ambuscade; for having ventured on shore unarmed in their boat, they were suddenly assaulted from the woods, two of them killed upon the spot, two grievously wounded, and the fifth made his escape by swimming, with an arrow sticking in his arm. The same evening a furious storm arose, which lasted till the 10th, in which time they in a manner unrigged their ship, and were about to cut away her masts by the board, the cable of their sheet anchor parted, and they every moment expected to be dashed upon the rocks, and to be made a prey by the savage cannibals of the country; but the storm abating, and the sea growing calm, they recovered their anchor on the 11th, and made sail for England.

About the beginning of October they arrived at Dartmouth, where they found the *Sun-shine*, but the *North Star* having parted company in a hard gale on the coast of Greenland, was never more heard of.

This undaunted mariner had yet the courage to undertake a third voyage, and then sailed as far as the 73d degree of N. latitude, but being deserted by his companions, was forced to return in great distress to his old port. Upon his return he wrote a letter to his patron, assuring him, that he had found an open sea in latitude 73 d. N. and a streight forty leagues broad, and concluded from thence that the passage was most certain.

From this period till the year 1610, we find no farther attempts made to revive this discovery; but in that year Mr Henry Hudson, one of the most celebrated mariners of his time, was prevailed upon to undertake a voyage that was purposely set on foot to make a trial of his skill. He sailed April the 7th, 1610, steering directly to Davis's Straights; he there changed his course to the westward, and struck out a new track that no mariner had ever sailed before, which led him through the streight that still bears his name into the great bay that bounds the American continent on the N. E. and seems to communicate by various openings with the north sea. Here he continued traversing for almost

al-
wa-
int-
wa-
in-
ift-
scar-
and-
wri-
and-
mon-
dete-
but i-
who-
Bu-
certa-
behin-
progr-
to fol-
The
man c-
troniz-
and ha-
track f-
veries
Afte-
in with
appear-
passage
the land
son, wh-
he kep-
and his
partridg-
rished by
was alm-
In 16
aminatio-
Straights
Vol. II.-

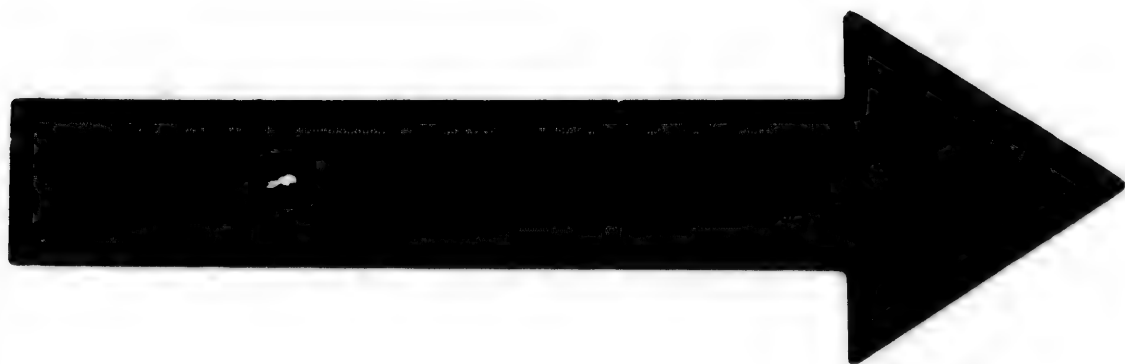
almost three months in search of a passage to the westward, but finding himself embayed, he stood to the S. intending to winter in the mildest latitude the Bay would admit; accordingly, he is said to have wintered in latitude 52 d. N. longitude 80 d. W. where on the 1st of November his ship was frozen in, and being scantily provided with provisions, the crew mutinied, and in the end most barbarously contrived, as the writer expresses it, to turn the Captain, the carpenter, and all the sick men out of the ship, who were never more heard of. After which the leaders of the mutiny determined to make the best of their way for England; but in their passage home not a few perished, and those who survived suffered unspeakable misery.

But notwithstanding this disaster, and that it was certainly known that the Captain and all who were left behind were either drowned, starved or murdered, the progress he had made in the discovery encouraged others to follow his track.

The next who adventured was Captain Button, a man of great abilities, courage, and experience. Patronized by Henry, Prince of Wales, he sailed in 1611, and having passed Hudson's Straights, pursued a different track from that of Captain Hudson, leaving his discoveries to the S. and shaping his course to the N. W.

After sailing more than two hundred leagues, he fell in with a large continent, which, from its mountainous appearance, he named New Wales; but finding no passage to the westward, he followed the direction of the land to the southward, till he arrived at Port Nelson, where he wintered in 63 d. 30. m. N. but, though he kept three fires in his ship constantly burning, and his company killed incredible numbers of white partridges and other wild fowl, yet many of his men perished by the severity of the cold, which in that climate was almost insupportable.

In 1615, Captain William Baffin undertook the examination of the extremity of that sea into which Davis's Straights opened a passage, and he so far succeeded, as to



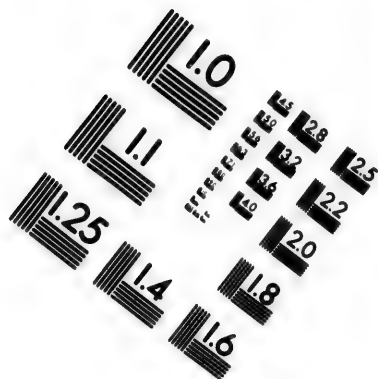
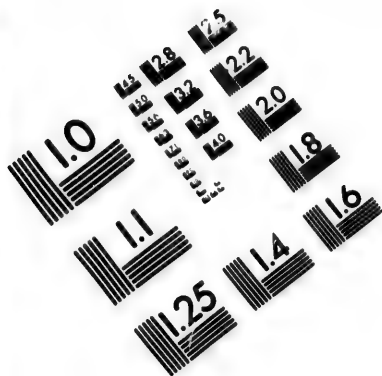
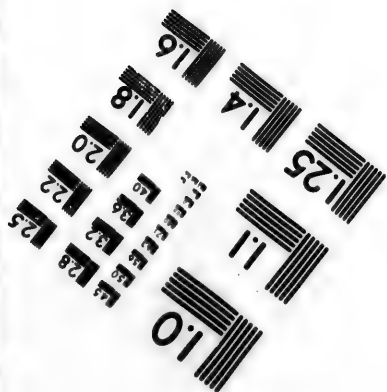
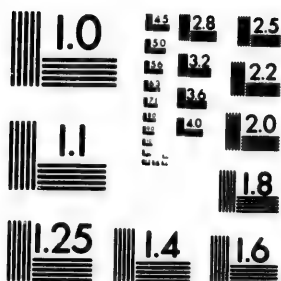


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

18
20
22
25

10

determine its extent, and to discover an outlet marked in our maps, by the name of Sir Thomas Smith's Sound, which is probably the only communication between our northern bays and the great Pacific Ocean, which nature, has provided, in order to maintain a general circulation, without which it is hardly possible to conceive, that equipoise of the globe could for a moment be preserved.

In 1619 Captain John Monk, at the instance of his Danish Majesty, undertook this discovery, and arrived safe at Cape Farewell, where, though the tackle of the ship was so frozen and full of icicles, that the mariners could not handle the ropes, yet next day it was so hot, that they were forced to work in their shirts. He entered Hudson's Streight in the month of July, and was forced to winter in latitude 63 d. 20 m. N. on an island that still retains his name; but the hardships he endured almost exceed belief. In May, 1620, he found himself alone in a cave dug in the earth, scarce alive, and almost morally certain that all his mariners were dead. As soon as the weather would permit he crawled forth, and found, of all his crew, only two left. By removing the snow, they found some fresh herbs underneath, and by eating them, recovered from the scurvy. Unable to navigate their ship, they abandoned her to the savages, and, by a wonderful providence, got safe to Norway in the pinnace. Being a man of uncommon resolution, he was still solicitous to perfect a discovery, which had baffled the researches of so many able navigators, and to acquire glory, by accomplishing that which they had failed to attain. He asserted the existence of such a passage so confidently, and laid down the method of finding it so plausibly, that he had persuaded the merchants of Norway to raise a joint stock to defray the expences of a second voyage; but applying to the King for his permission and protection, and relating to his own sufferings, and those of his companions in his former voyage, his Majesty told him, he had already been the death of too many of his subjects, and wonder-

ed

ed at his presumption to seek to murder more. To which Monk gave a quick reply, which provoked the King to strike him over his stomach with his cane. Whether the severity of the blow, or the sense of the indignity was the occasion, is not certain ; but he quitted the royal presence with marks of strong resentment, and retiring to his chamber, refused assistance, and three days after breathed his last.

Captain Luke Fox and Captain James were the next who professedly engaged in this discovery ; the first in a King's frigate, victualled for eighteen months ; the other in a small vessel of seventy tons, built at Bristol on purpose ; victualled and equipped by private adventurers.

Captain Fox departed in the spring of 1631, traced all the western bays discovered by former navigators, examined the westernmost part of Hudson's Bay and returned in 1632. He published a pompous account of his discoveries, which, however, was never much regarded.

On the 3d of May, 1631, Captain James set sail from the Severn's mouth, and on the 29th of June cleared Hudson's Streights, where he found himself so pestered with broken ice, as to put it out of his power to prosecute his discoveries to the N. W. as he had intended ; he therefore ordered his master to steer W. S. W. and on the 27th of July, after sustaining most dreadful shocks, found his ship enclosed so fast among the ice, that notwithstanding it blew a hard gale, and all sails set, she stirred no more than if she had been in a dry dock. It was now that the men first began to murmur, and the Captain himself was not without his fears, lest they should here be frozen up and obliged to winter in the middle of the sea. By an observation which they made upon the ice, they found that they were in latitude 58 d. 54 m. N.

On the 5th of next month to their great joy the ice opened, and on the 6th they were again in a clear sea. On the 12th, seeing some breakers a-head, and loosing

to clear them, the ship suddenly struck upon the rocks, and received three dreadful shocks, but the swell heaved her over, and on pumping she made no water.

They were now encumbered with rocks, as before they had been with ice, and in the most perilous situation that can be conceived, and so continued two nights and two days, every moment expecting to be dashed to pieces. On the fog's clearing up they saw land from the N. W. to the S. E. by E. with rocks and breakers. On the 16th they weighed and made sail, when a storm arose, and drove them within sight of Port Nelson. On the 17th they stood to the southward. On the 20th they made land, in latitude 57 d. N. where they cast anchor, and called it the Principality of South Wales.

Having weighed, on the 27th they set sail, and in the evening came in sight of higher land.

On the 29th they saw a sail, which proved to be Captain Fox, already mentioned. They spoke together, and, after exchanging mutual civilities, parted.

Captain James kept coasting along the shore to make discoveries, and Captain Fox made the best of his way for England.

The Captain now began to think of a convenient place to winter in. In this attempt they met with so many disasters, that at last having no hope left, they began to prepare themselves to make a good end of a miserable life. On the 19th they lost their shallop, though lashed to the ship by two hawsers, and, to their inexpressible grief, their boat was almost rendered irreparable.

Winter approached rapidly, the nights long, the days close and foggy, the seas rough, and nothing but shoals and broken land to navigate. Added to all these the men began to sicken, an universal dejection to prevail, and in proportion as their distresses increased, their strength to bear up against them grew less every day.

On the 4th of November, being in latitude 52 d. N. they fell in with an island, from which they found it impossible to depart. The men were quite worn down
with

with
the ro
in sno
on sho
contin
creased
fire-sid
The
end of
when th
This
discover
dleton,
opinion
reason to
passage, i
most cer
for merc

with fatigue, the sails so frozen as not to be unfurled, the rope congealed in the blocks, and the deck knee deep in snow. In this forlorn condition they built a tent on shore for the sick, and in this tent they kept fires continually burning night and day, but the cold increased so fast, that beer, and even spirits, froze by the fire-side.

The sufferings of the Captain and crew from the latter end of October when they landed, till the 2d of July, when they departed, are hardly to be paralleled.

This was the last voyage that was undertaken for the discovery of a N. W. passage, till that of Captain Middleton, already related. From, all which, and the opinion of Captain James after his return, there is great reason to conclude, that what we have said of a N. E. passage, is likewise true of a passage by the N. W. that it most certainly exists, but will never be found practicable for mercantile proposes.

DE-

DESCRIPTION

OF A

MAN OF WAR,

TRACING THE

ART OF SHIP-BUILDING,

FROM ITS COMMENCEMENT TO ITS PRESENT
DEGREE OF PERFECTION,

EXTRACTED FROM DOCTOR FOSTER'S

INTRODUCTION TO NORTHERN DISCOVERIES.

OF all the arts and professions which have at any time attracted my notice, none has ever appeared to me more astonishing and marvellous than that of navigation, in the state in which it is at present, an art which doubtless affords one of the most certain and irrefragable proofs of the amazing powers of the human understanding. This cannot be made more evident, than when, taking a retrospective view of the tottering, inartificial craft, to which navigation owes its origin, we compare it with a noble and majestic edifice, containing 1000 men, together with their provisions, drink, furniture, wearing-apparel, and other necessities for many months, besides 100 pieces of heavy ordnance; and bearing all this vast apparatus safely, and as it were on the wings of the wind, across immense seas to the most distant shores. We are so much accustomed to talk and to judge of many different subjects in the gross, that such particular and decomposed ideas as these oc-

cur to us
fessed of
be able to
The fol
delineate
to. But
of wood
uncouth
what poi
river, for
sons belo
of water
pushed ag
be confid
earliest sta
the beginn
and fasten
kind of ra
them to for
swim with
which they
canoe, how
vanced stat
direction g
ment as th
reason I chu
to a mere r
superior.
majestic flo
united labou
a great num
ened togeth
rendered so
penetrate in
direction to
ostly pieces o
so many mo
together with
cloth, for the

cur to us but seldom; and very frequently we are not possessed of a sufficient degree of speculative knowledge to be able to trace an idea of this kind up to first principles. The following example may serve for the present to delineate at full length, as it were, the idea above alluded to. But first I must premise, that a huge, unwieldy log of wood, with the greatest difficulty, and in the most uncouth manner, hollowed out on the inside, and somewhat pointed at both ends, and in this guise set on a river, for the purpose of transporting two or three persons belonging to one and the same family across a piece of water a few feet deep, by the assistance of a pole pushed against the ground, cannot with any propriety be considered as the image of navigation in its first and earliest state. For it seems evident to me, that people in the beginning only took three or four trunks of trees, and fastened them together, and then, by means of this kind of raft, got across such waters as were too deep for them to ford over, and across which they could not well swim with their children and various kinds of goods which they might wish to preserve from being wet. The canoe, however, is a specimen of the art in a more advanced state, as this kind of craft is capable of having direction given to it, and even of so capital an improvement as that of having a sail added to it. For which reason I chuse this vehicle for a standard, in preference to a mere raft, to which, imperfect as it is, it is so much superior. Let us, then, compare this with a large majestic floating edifice, the result of the ingenuity and united labour of many hundred hands, and composed of a great number of well-proportioned pieces, nicely fastened together by means of iron nails and bolts, and rendered so tight with tow and pitch, that no water can penetrate into it. Now, in order to give motion and direction to this enormous machine, some astonishingly lofty pieces of timber have been fixed upright in it, and so many moveable cross pieces have been added to it, together with such a variety of pieces of strong linen cloth, for the purpose of catching the wind, and of receiving

ceiving its impulse and propelling power, that the number of them amounts to upwards of 30. For changing the direction of these yards and sails, according to particular circumstances, it has also been requisite to add a vast quantity of cordage and tackling, and nevertheless, even all this would not be sufficient for the perfect direction and government of the vessel, if there was not fastened to the hinder part of it, by means of hinges and hooks, a moveable piece of wood, very small indeed in proportion to the whole machine; but the least inclination of which to either side is sufficient to give immediately a different direction to this enormous large mass, and that even in a storm, so that two men may direct and govern this swimming island with the same, or rather with greater ease than a single man can do a boat. But if, besides, we consider that, in a vessel like this, not a single piece is put in at random, but that every part of it has its determinate measure and proportion, and is fixed precisely in that place which is the most advantageous for it; that, throughout every part of it, there is distributed an astonishing quantity of blocks, stays, and pullies, for the purpose of diminishing the friction, and of accelerating the motion of these parts; that even the bellying and vaulted part of the fabric, together with its sharp termination underneath, are proportioned according to the nicest calculations, and the most accurately determined rules; that the length and the thickness of the masts, the size of the booms and yards, the length, width, and strength of the sails and tackling, are all in due proportion to one another, according to certain rules founded upon the principles of motion: when we consider all this, I say, our admiration increases more and more at this great masterpiece of human power and understanding. Still, however, there are wanting a few traits to complete this description. A man in health consumes, in the space of 24 hours, about eight pounds of victuals and drink; consequently 8000 lb. of provisions are required per day in such a ship. Now, let us suppose her to be fitted

ted
the
large
of br
there
the w
amou
twent
5100
weigh
deck,
pound
besides
pound
comple
64 lb. a
quired f
to the fa
tion to t
by way
set of sai
ther amo
wise, con
belonging
and vario
as also the
no incons
the weight
that one o
burthen, o
ed and gov
Now, the c
sufficient to
templative
the coast on
navigators d
to look upon
But the findi
ocean of mo
Vol. II.—N

ted out for three months only, and we shall find that she must be laden with 720,000 lb. of provisions. A large forty-two pounder weighs about 6100 lb. if made of brass, and about 5500 lb. if of iron; and generally there are 28 or 30 of these on board a ship of 100 guns, the weight of which, exclusive of that of their carriages, amounts to 183000 lb. on the second deck there are 30 twenty-four pounders, each of which weigh about 5100 lb. and therefore altogether, 153,000 lb. and the weight of the 26 or 28 twelve-pounders on the lower deck, amounts to about 75,400 lb. that of the 14 six-pounders, on the upper deck, to about 26,600 lb. and besides that, on the round tops, even there are three-pounders and swivels. Now, if to this we add, that the complete charge of a forty-two pounder weighs about 64 lb. and that at least upwards of 100 charges are required for each gun, we shall find this to amount nearly to the same weight as the guns themselves. In addition to this we must reflect, that every ship must have, by way of providing against exigencies at least another set of sails, cables, cordage, and tackling, which altogether amount to a considerable weight. The stores likewise, consisting of planks, pitch, and tow; the chests belonging to the officers and sailors; the surgeon's stores, and various other articles requisite on a long voyage; as also the small arms, bayonets, swords, and pistols, are no inconsiderable load; to which we must finally add the weight of the crew, which is not very trifling, so that one of these large ships carries at least 2162 tons burthen, or 4,324,000 lb. and at the same time is steered and governed with as much ease as the smallest boat. Now, the consideration of these circumstances alone are sufficient to excite the most serious reflections in a contemplative mind; and yet, if such a ship sailed along the coast only, and never lost sight of the shore, as the navigators of old used to do, we might still be tempted to look upon navigation as an easy and trifling business. But the finding the straightest and shortest way over an ocean of more than 60 or 80 degrees in longitude, and

30 or 40 in latitude; or across a tract from 4000 to 6000 miles in extent, by day or by night, in fair weather or in foul, as well when the sky is over-cast, as when it is clear, and often with no other guide than the compass (which does not even point directly to the N. in all places) and the being able to determine the true position of the ship at sea by the height of the sun, though this latter be enveloped in clouds, or to direct ones course by the moon and the stars with such exactness and precision, as not to make a mistake of the value of half a degree, or 30 miles; this at least shews the progress and great perfection of an art practised by a set of people of whose understandings many conceited and supercilious landmen have but a mean opinion, and whose plain and simple manners they frequently take the liberty of turning into ridicule.

A violent storm of wind will make us tremble with fear, even in a strong, well-built house, and in the midst of a populous city; yet we have seldom or never either seen or experienced the vast power of the enraged waves, when beat about by the winds, and dashed against each other, till they seem transformed into froth and vapour, and the whole surface of the ocean presents to the eye a confused scene of immense watery mountains, and bottomless precipices; and yet on such a sea as this the true seaman, provided he has but a good ship, rides with calm and unshaken courage, and thinks himself as safe in the midst of the ocean as in the best fortified castle.

This art, carried to that height of perfection in which we have described it, closely connects the most distant regions, furnishes the houses and spreads the tables of the luxurious natives of Europe with the rarities, dainties, and treasures of both the Indies, bears protection and safety to the remotest shores, and diffuses terror and destruction beyond the most extensive seas. In short, it is the greatest and most astonishing of all human inventions, and produced by the most vigorous exertion of the intellectual faculties of man, whom, in despite of his natural

natural
with
account
It is
that t
which
fore a
percep
system
into th
riodica
and up
ledge o
of its c
differen
gravitat
and of
mathem
vances
tributed
undoubt
yet arriv
ceive a d
tinually i
Before
tion, it m
cessive gr
have been
limited al
regard to
northern
gan at an
human kn
nations, b
merce, an
enlargeme
tries I mer
implicit co

natural debility and feebleness, it must necessarily inspire with the highest degree of pride, were he not on other accounts, but too liable to that failing.

It is, however, gradually, and by little and little only that this art has attained to that degree of perfection in which it now subsists, after having for whole ages before advanced towards it with a slow and almost imperceptible pace. A minute enquiry into the whole system of nature; into the powers of the loadstone; into the nature of the planets; their determinate periodical revolutions; their influence upon each other, and upon the winds and tides; a more accurate knowledge of the nature of the air; of its periodical currents; of its constituent parts, and of the various density of its different strata; a knowledge of the difference of the gravitating power at the different parts of the earth; and of many other sciences, in which, by the help of the mathematics in these later times only, considerable advances have been made, have also of late greatly contributed towards the perfection of navigation; and as undoubtedly these sciences are very far from having as yet arrived at their highest pitch, they must of course receive a daily increase, and by consequence likewise continually impart new improvements to this art.

Before navigation could attain to its present perfection, it must have advanced slowly through many successive gradations; and how rude and imperfect must it have been above 2000 years ago? How contracted and limited also must the ideas of mankind have been with regard to foreign countries and nations? This our northern part of the globe, however, and Europe, began at an early period to contribute to the extension of human knowledge in relation to foreign countries and nations, by means of voyages of discovery, by commerce, and by conquest. These three sources of the enlargement of our knowledge of people and countries I mention together, because we are used with an implicit confidence to repeat after the great Montequieu*,

quieu*, "that countries are now discovered by voyages on the sea, but that formerly the sea was discovered by the conquest of countries." And I may with great justice and mere chance likewise, as a source not less fruitful than the former. The peopling of the islands in the South Sea by a Malayan nation, is perhaps to be attributed to a mere accident alone. They probably set out for a neighbouring island, in order to see their friends, and were driven by a storm to an island, of which they had not the least previous knowledge. When in the year 1774, we landed for the second time at *Huabeine*, we found three men and a woman from the island of *O-mateiva*, or *O-matea*, who in their boat had been cast away on this former island by a storm; and Captain Cook, in his last voyage in 1777, found in an island at a great distance from *O-raiedea*, three countrymen of *Omai's*, who were the only survivors of 50 persons, the rest having been gradually destroyed by the storm, and by hunger and thirst.

* *Esprit des Loix*, lib. xxi. c. 7.

THE

NO

THE

VOYAGE

OF

GOVERNOR PHILLIP

TO

BOTANY BAY;

WITH AN

Account of the Establishment of the Colonies of

PORT JACKSON

AND

NORFOLK ISLAND.

ANECDOTES

O F

GOVERNOR PHILLIP.

ARTHUR PHILLIP is one of those officers, who, like Drake, Dampier, and Cook, has raised himself by his merit and his services, to distinction and command. His father was Jacob Phillip, a native of Frankfort, in Germany, who having settled in England, maintained his family and educated his son by teaching the languages. His mother was Elizabeth Breach, who married for her first husband, Captain Herbert of the navy, a kinsman of Lord Pembroke. Of her marriage with Jacob Phillip, was her son Arthur, born in the parish of Allhallows, Bread-street, within the city of London, on the 11th of October, 1738.

Being designed for a sea-faring life, he was very properly sent to the school of Greenwich, where he received an education suitable to his early propensities. At the age of sixteen he began his maritime career, under the deceased Captain Michael Everet of the navy, at the commencement of hostilities in 1755: and at the same time that he learned the rudiments of his profession under that able officer, he partook with him in the early misfortunes, and subsequent glories of the seven years war. Whatever opulence Phillip acquired from the capture of the Havannah, certain it is, that at the age of twenty-three, he there was made a Lieutenant into the Stirling Castle, on the 7th of June, 1761, by

Sir

Sir
pli
rin
ble
fou
the
ing,
duo
imp
who,
impo
But
Thofe
were n
familia
services
Spain.
skill an
struggle
was his
recent in
to fight
Portugue
his motiv
His re
knowing
was made
ship, on t
had little
ing to his
a higher f
the Ariadn
when he w
great epoch
is from this
he had little
prizes, being
the 23d of

Sir George Pococke, an excellent judge of naval accomplishments.

But of nautical exploits, however they may raise marine officers, there must be an end. Peace, with its blessings, was restored in 1763. And Phillip now found leisure to marry; and to settle at Lyndhurst, in the New Forest, where he amused himself with farming, and like other country gentlemen, discharged assiduously those provincial offices, which, however unimportant, occupy respectably the owners of land, who, in this island, require no office to make them important.

But sailors, like their own element, are seldom at rest. Those occupations, which pleased Phillip while they were new, no longer pleased him when they became familiar. And he hastened to offer his skill and his services to Portugal when it engaged in warfare with Spain. His offer was readily accepted, because such skill and services were necessary amidst an arduous struggle with a too powerful opponent. And, such was his conduct and such his success, that when the recent interference of France, in 1778, made it his duty to fight for his king, and to defend his country, the Portuguese court regretted his departure, but applauded his motive.

His return was doubtless approved by those who, knowing his value, could advance his rank: For he was made master and commander in the Basilisk fireship, on the 2d of September, 1779. But in her he had little opportunity of displaying his zeal, or of adding to his fame. This step, however, led him up to a higher situation; and he was made post-captain into the Ariadne frigate, on the 13th of November, 1781, when he was upwards of three and forty. This is the great epoch in the lives of our naval officers, because it is from this that they date their rank. In the Ariadne, he had little time for active adventures, or for gainful prizes, being appointed to the Europe of 64 guns, on the 23d of December, 1781. During the memorable
year

year 1782, Phillip promoted its enterprizes, and shared in its glories. And in January, 1783, he sailed with a reinforcement to the East Indies, where superior bravery contended against superior force, till the policy of our negociators put an end to unequal hostilities by a necessary peace.

The activity or the zeal of Phillip was now turned to more peaceful objects. And when it was determined to form a settlement on that part of New Holland, denominated New South Wales, he was thought of as a proper officer to conduct an enterprize, which required professional knowledge, and habitual prudence. His equipment, his voyage, and his settlement in the other hemisphere, will be found in the following narrative. When the time shall arrive that the European settlers on Sydney Cove demand their historian, these authentic anecdotes of their pristine legislator will be sought for as curious, and considered as important.

A VOYAGE

F
forma
canno
cellent
confid
sent rei
various
and ve
An
policy,
a fixed
excites
sent out
ledge w
employe
visit to
nature o
specting
which w
every po
should be
yet gradu
times inte
Vol. II.—

A
V O Y A G E

T O
N E W S O U T H W A L E S.

FROM voyages undertaken expressly for the purpose of discovery, the public naturally looks for information of various kinds: and it is a fact which we cannot but contemplate with pleasure, that by the excellent publications subsequent to such enterprizes, very considerable additions have been made, during the present reign, to our general knowledge of the globe, of the various tribes by which it is peopled, and of the animals and vegetables to which it gives support.

An expedition occasioned by motives of legislative policy, carried on by public authority, and concluded by a fixed establishment in a country very remote, not only excites an unusual interest concerning the fate of those sent out, but promises to lead us to some points of knowledge which, by the former mode, however judiciously employed, could not have been attained. A transient visit to the coast of a great continent cannot, in the nature of things, produce a complete information respecting its inhabitants, productions, soil, or climate: all which when contemplated by resident observers, in every possible circumstance of variation, though they should be viewed with less philosophical acuteness, must yet gradually become more fully known: Errors, sometimes inseparable from hasty observation, will then be

Vol. II.—No 48.

5 S
corrected

corrected by infallible experience; and many objects will present themselves to view, which before had escaped notice, or had happened to be so situated that they could not be observed.

The full discovery of the extent of New Holland, by our illustrious navigator, Capt. Cook, has formed a singular epocha in geography; a doubt having arisen from it, whether to a land of such magnitude the name of island or that of continent may more properly be applied. To this question it may be answered, that though the etymology of the word island, and of others synonymous to it, points out only a land surrounded by the sea, or by any water, (in which sense the term is applicable even to the largest portions of the habitable globe) yet it is certain that, in the usual acceptation, an island is conceived to signify a land of only moderate extent, surrounded by the sea. To define at what point of magnitude precisely, a country so situated shall begin to be a continent, could not answer any purpose of utility: but the best and clearest rule for removing the doubt appears to be the following: As long as the peculiar advantages of an insular situation can be enjoyed by the inhabitants of such a country, let it have the title of an island; when it exceeds those limits, let it be considered as a continent. Now the first and principal advantage of an island, is that of being capable of a convenient union under one government, and of deriving thence a security from all external attacks, except by sea. In lands of very great magnitude such an union is difficult, if not impracticable, and a distinction founded on this circumstance, is therefore sufficient for convenience at least, if not for speculative accuracy. If we suppose this extent to be something about one thousand miles each way, without, however, affecting much rigour in the limitation, the claim of New Holland to be called a continent, will be indisputable: The greatest extent of that vast country being, from E. to W. about two thousand four hundred English miles, and, from N. to S. not less than two thousand three hundred.

To

a
E
on
ha
ex
to
the
the
pla
T
man
was,
remo
ence
perio
Vin
labour
imped
times,
whom
for cap
vices d
out und
prove,
accordi
The
colonies
necessary
the bur
useless b
returns
arisen, in
The indi
proved in
frequentl
tude, they
were alto
gradually

To New South Wales England has the claim which a tacit consent has generally made decisive among the European States, that of prior discovery. The whole of that eastern coast, except the very southern point, having been untouched by any navigator, till it was explored by Captain Cook. This consideration, added to the more favourable accounts given of this side of the continent than of the other, was sufficient to decide the choice of the British government, in appointing a place for the banishment of a certain class of criminals.

The cause of the determination to send out in this manner the convicts under sentence of transportation, was, as is well known, the necessary cessation of their removal to America, and the inconveniencies experienced in other modes of destination adopted after that period.

Virginia, greatly in want, at its first settlement, of labourers to clear away the impenetrable forests which impeded all cultivation, was willing, from very early times, to receive as servants, those English criminals whom our Courts of Law deemed not sufficiently guilty for capital punishment. The planters hired their services during a limited term; and they were latterly sent out under the care of contractors, who were obliged to prove, by certificates, that they had disposed of them according to the intention of the law.

The benefits of this regulation were various. The colonies received by it, at an easy rate, an assistance very necessary; and the mother country was relieved from the burthen of subjects, who at home were not only useless but pernicious: besides which, the mercantile returns on this account alone, are reported to have arisen, in latter times, to a very considerable amount. The individuals themselves, doubtless, in some instances, proved incorrigible; but it happened also, not very unfrequently, that, during the period of their legal servitude, they became reconciled to a life of honest industry, were altogether reformed in their manners, and rising gradually by laudable efforts, to situations of advantage,

independence, and estimation, contributed honourably to the population and prosperity of their new country.

By the contest in America, and the subsequent separation of the thirteen Colonies, this traffic was of course destroyed. Other expedients, well known to the public, have since been tried; some of which proved highly objectionable; and all have been found to want some of the principal advantages experienced from the usual mode of transportation.—The deliberations upon this subject, which more than once employed the attention of Parliament, produced at length the plan of which this narrative displays the first result. On December 6, 1786, the proper orders were issued by his Majesty in Council, and an Act establishing a Court of Judicature in the place of settlement, and making such other regulations as the occasion required, received the sanction of the whole legislature early in the year 1787.

To expatiate upon the principles of penal law is foreign to the purpose of this work, but thus much is evident to the plainest apprehension, that the objects most to be desired in it are the restriction of the number of capital inflictions, as far as is consistent with the security of society; and the employment of every method that can be devised for rendering the guilty persons serviceable to the public, and just to themselves; for correcting their moral depravity, inducing habits of industry, and arming them in future against the temptations by which they have been once ensnared.

For effectuating these beneficial purposes, well regulated penitentiary houses seem, in speculation, to afford the fairest opportunity; and a plan of this kind, formed by the united efforts of Judge Blackstone, Mr Eden, and Mr Howard, was adopted by Parliament in the year 1779. Difficulties however occurred which prevented the execution of this design: a circumstance which will be something the less regretted when it shall be considered, that it is perhaps the fate of this theory, in common with many others of a very pleasing nature, to be more attractive in contemplation than efficacious in real practice.

tice.
is lia
best
com
little
to the
of suc
of the
laxed
tentiar
all affo
fined,

In fo
ed, are
ments
account
ployed
This me
Thames
the bene
temptati
ploymen
public ey
Englishm
quiesces
chains an
and comp
infliction
ill placed
ing a cha
time grow
impel ther
It remai
sible to th
employing
rising settle
on the east
and carried
neficial as p

tice. A perfect design, carried on by imperfect agents, is liable to lose the chief part of its excellence; and the best digested plan of confinement must in execution be committed, chiefly to men not much enlightened, very little armed against corruption, and constantly exposed to the danger of it. The vigilance which in the infancy of such institutions effectually watches over the conduct of these public servants, will always in a little time be relaxed; and it will readily be conceived that a large penitentiary house, very corruptly governed, would be, of all associations, one of the most pernicious to those confined, and most dangerous to the peace of society.

In some countries, malefactors not capitally convicted, are sentenced to the galleys or the mines; punishments often more cruel than death, and here, on many accounts, impracticable. In other places they are employed in public works, under the care of overseers. This method has been partially tried in England on the Thames, but has been found by no means to produce the benefits expected from it. There is, therefore, little temptation to pursue it to a further extent. The employment of criminals in works carried on under the public eye, is perhaps too repugnant to the feelings of Englishmen ever to be tolerated. Reason, indeed, acquiesces in the melancholy necessity of punishing, but chains and badges of servitude are unpleasing objects, and compassion will always revolt at the sight of actual infliction. Convicts so employed would either by an ill placed charity be rewarded, or the people, undergoing a change of character far from desirable, would in time grow callous to those impressions which naturally impel them to give relief.

It remains therefore, that we adhere as much as possible to the practice approved by long experience, of employing the services of such criminals in remote and rising settlements. For this purpose the establishment on the eastern coast of New Holland has been projected, and carried on with every precaution to render it as beneficial as possible. That some difficulties will arise in the

the commencement of such an undertaking must be expected; but it is required by no moral obligation that convicts should be conveyed to a place of perfect convenience and security; and though the voluntary emigrants and honourable servants of the state, must in some measure, be involved for a time in the same disadvantages, yet to have resisted difficulties is often finally an advantage rather than an evil; and there are probably few persons so circumstanced who will repine at moderate hardships, when they reflect that by undergoing them they are rendering an essential and an honourable service to their country.

The Squadron destined to carry into execution the above design, began to assemble at its appointed rendezvous, the Mother Bank, within the Isle of Wight, about the 16th of March, 1787. This small fleet consisted of the following ships: His Majesty's frigate *Sirius*, Captain John Hunter, and his Majesty's armed tender *Supply*, commanded by Lieutenant H. L. Ball. Three store-ships, the *Golden Grove*, *Fishburn*, and *Borrowdale*, for carrying provisions and stores for two years; including instruments of husbandry, clothing for the troops and convicts, and other necessities; and lastly, six transports, the *Scarborough*, and *Lady Penrhyn*, from Portsmouth; the *Friendship*, and *Charlotte*, from Plymouth; the *Prince of Wales*, and the *Alexander*, from Woolwich. These were to carry the convicts, with a detachment of marines in each, proportioned to the nature of the service; the largest where resistance was most to be expected, namely, in those ships which carried the greatest number of male convicts. Altogether they formed a little squadron of eleven sail.

They only who know the nature of such equipments, and consider the particular necessity in the present instance for a variety of articles not usually provided, can judge properly of the time required for furnishing out this fleet. Such persons will doubtless be the least surprised at being told that nearly two months had elapsed before the ships were enabled to quit this station, and

pro-

proc
few a
preha
place
male
be left
tion o
media
appreh
omissio
supplie
This
in mak
their fir
ges the
tainty o
turbuler
same tim
people;
to rende
enough
the trans
escape.
who com
remained
spect's fu
neither fi
of any k
When
the comp
transports
a Captain
vates, wit
victs. Th
with eight
the Alexa
marines,
male. In
marines,

proceed upon their voyage: and that even then some few articles were either unprepared, or, through misapprehension, neglected. The former circumstance took place respecting some part of the cloathing for the female convicts, which, being unfinished, was obliged to be left behind; the latter, with respect to the ammunition of the marines, which was furnished only for immediate service, instead of being, as the Commodore apprehended, completed at their first embarkation: an omission which, in the course of the voyage, was easily supplied.

This necessary interval was very usefully employed, in making the convicts fully sensible of the nature of their situation; in pointing out to them the advantages they would derive from good conduct, and the certainty of severe and immediate punishment in case of turbulence or mutiny. Useful regulations were at the same time established for the effectual governing of these people; and such measures were taken as could not fail to render abortive any plan they might be desperate enough to form for resisting authority, seizing any of the transports, or effecting, at any favourable period, an escape. We have, however, the testimony of those who commanded, that their behaviour, while the ships remained in port, was regular, humble, and in all respects suitable to their situation: such as could excite neither suspicion nor alarm, nor require the exertion of any kind of severity.

When the fleet was at length prepared for sailing, the complement of convicts and marines on board the transports were thus arranged. The *Friendship* carried a Captain and forty-four marines, subalterns and privates, with seventy-seven male and twenty female convicts. The *Charlotte*, a Captain and forty-three men, with eighty-eight male and twenty female convicts. In the *Alexander*, were two Lieutenants and thirty-five marines, with two hundred and thirteen convicts, all male. In the *Scarborough*, a Captain and thirty-three marines, with male convicts only, two hundred and eight

eight in number. The Prince of Wales transport had two Lieutenants and thirty marines, with an hundred convicts, all female. And the Lady Penryhn, a Captain, two Lieutenants, and only three privates, with one hundred and two female convicts. Ten marines, of different denominations, were also sent as supernumeraries on board the Sirius. The whole complement of marines, including officers, amounted to two hundred and twelve; besides which, twenty-eight women, wives of marines, carrying with them seventeen children, were permitted to accompany their husbands. The number of convicts was seven hundred and seventy-eight, of whom five hundred and fifty-eight were men. Two, however, on board the Alexander, received a full pardon before the departure of the fleet, and consequently remained in England.

Governor Phillip, on his arrival at the station, hoisted his flag on board the Sirius, as Commodore of the squadron, and the embarkation being completed, and the time requiring his departure, at day break on the 13th of May, he gave the signal to weigh anchor.—To the distance of about an hundred leagues clear of the channel, his Majesty's frigate Hyena, of twenty-four guns, was ordered to attend the fleet, in order to bring intelligence of its passage through that most difficult part of the voyage; with any dispatches which it might be requisite for the Governor to send home.

On the 20th of May, the ships being then in latitude 47 d. 57 m. and longitude 12 d. 14 m. W. of London, the Hyena returned. She brought, however, no exact account of the state of the transports; for the sea at that time ran so high, that the Governor found it difficult even to sit to write, and quite impracticable to send on board the several ships for exact reports of their situation, and of the behaviour of the convicts. All, however, had not been perfectly tranquil; the convicts in the Scarborough, confiding probably in their numbers, had formed a plan for gaining possession of that ship, which the officers had happily detected and frustrated.

This

This
the
of th
The
separ
ther
this k
We
fleet a
tive co
rious e
time at
indulge
of such
afford a
might f
ces, and
that from
powerful
matic an
the diffic
from var
haps, we
right was
and such
from nati
culties lik
secured fr
it must ap
navigation
of its vast
kind; tha
along the
great effor
Crete from
sends out a
The hig
tween the
and shoals,
Vol. II.—N

This information was received from them just before the Hyena sailed, and the Governor had ordered two of the ringleaders on board the Sirius for punishment. These men, after receiving a proper chastisement, were separated from their party by being removed into another ship, the Prince of Wales. No other attempt of this kind was made during the voyage.

We may now consider the adventurers in this small fleet as finally detached, for the present, from their native country; looking forward, doubtless with very various emotions, to that unknown region, which, for a time at least, they were destined to inhabit. If we would indulge a speculative curiosity, concerning the tendency of such an enterprize, there are few topics which would afford an ampler scope for conjecture. The sanguine might form expectations of extraordinary consequences, and be justified, in some degree, by the reflection, that from smaller, and not more respectable beginnings, powerful empires have frequently arisen. The phlegmatic and apprehensive might magnify to themselves the difficulties of the undertaking, and prognosticate, from various causes, the total failure of it. Both, perhaps, would be wrong. The opinion nearest to the right was probably formed by the Governor himself, and such others among the leaders of the expedition, as from native courage, felt themselves superior to all difficulties likely to occur; and by native good sense were secured from the seduction of romantic reveries. To all it must appear a striking proof of the flourishing state of navigation in the present age, and a singular illustration of its vast progress since the early nautical efforts of mankind; that whereas the ancients coasted with timidity along the shores of the Mediterranean, and thought it a great effort to run across the narrow sea which separates Crete from Egypt. Great Britain, without hesitation, sends out a fleet to plant a settlement near the antipodes.

The high sea which had impeded the intercourse between the ships, as they were out of the reach of rocks and shoals, was not, in other respects, an unfavourable

circumstance. On the whole, therefore, the weather was reckoned fine, and the passage very prosperous from Spithead to Santa Cruz, in the Isle of Teneriffe, where the fleet anchored on the 3d of June.

The chief object proposed by Governor Phillip in touching at Teneriffe, was the obtaining a fresh supply of water and vegetables. It was advisable also at this period to give the people such advantages and refreshments, for the sake of health, as this place would readily supply, but which can only be obtained on shore. In this, and every port, the crews, soldiers, and convicts, were indulged with fresh meat, fruit, vegetables, and every thing which could conduce to preserve them from the complaints formerly inevitable in long voyages. The allowance was, to the marines, a pound of bread, a pound of beef, and a pint of wine per man, daily: the convicts had three quarters of a pound of beef, and of bread, but no wine. The fruits obtained here were only figs and mulberries, but these were plentiful and excellent. How successfully precautions of every kind, tending to this great end, were employed throughout the voyage, the reports of the number of sick and dead will sufficiently evince.

Captain Cook had very fully shown, how favourable such expeditions might be made to the health of those engaged in them; and Governor Phillip was happy enough to confirm the opinion, that the success of his great predecessor, in this essential point, was not in any degree the effect of chance, but arose from that care and attention of which he has humanely given us the detail; and which, in similar circumstances, may generally be expected to produce the same result. If the number of convicts who died between the time of embarkation and the arrival of the fleet at this place, should seem inconsistent with this assertion, it must be considered that the deaths were confined entirely to that class of people, many of whom were advanced in years, or labouring under diseases contracted in prison, or elsewhere, while they were yet on shore.

A week was passed at this place, during which time the weather was very moderate, the thermometer not exceeding 70 degrees of Fahrenheit's scale. The barometer stood at about 30 inches.

The Governor of the Canaries, at this time, was the Marquis de Brancifort, by birth a Sicilian. He was resident as usual at Santa Cruz, and paid to Governor Philip, and the other officers, a polite attention and respect, equally honourable to all parties. The port of Santa Cruz, though not remarkably fine, is yet the best in the Canaries, and the usual place at which vessels touch for refreshment; the residence of the Governor General is therefore fixed always in Teneriffe, for the sake of a more frequent intercourse with Europe: in preference to the great Canary Isle, which contains the metropolitan church, and the palace of the bishop. The Marquis de Brancifort has lately established some useful manufactures in Teneriffe.

Our ships were at length preparing to depart, when on the evening of the 9th of June, a convict belonging to the *Alexander*, having been employed on deck, found means to cut away the boat, and make a temporary escape; but he was missed and soon retaken. It is not probable that he had formed any definite plan of escape; the means of absconding must have been accidentally offered, and suddenly embraced, and for making such an attempt, the vague hope of liberty, without any certain prospect, would naturally afford sufficient temptation.

By the 10th of June the ships had completed their water, and early the next morning, the Governor gave the signal for weighing anchor, and the fleet pursued its course.

REPORT of the marines and convicts under medical treatment,
given in to Governor Phillip, June 4th, 1787.

Charlotte,	-	-	Marines	4
			Convicts	16
Alexander,	-	-	Marines	2
			Convicts	26
Scarborough,	-	-	Marine	1
			Convicts	9
Friendship,	-	-	Convicts	13
Lady Penryhn,	-	-	Convicts	11
Prince of Wales,	-	-	Marines	2
			Convicts	7
Total				
				Marines 9
				Convicts 72

Convicts dead since the first embark- ation	-	-	-	-	-	21
Children of Convicts	-	-	-	-	-	3

Of these only fifteen, and one child, had died
since the departure from Spithead.

Vegetables not having been so plentiful at Santa Cruz as to afford a sufficient supply, it was the intention of Governor Phillip to anchor for about twenty-four hours in the Bay of Port Praya. The islands on this side of the Atlantic, seem as if expressly placed to facilitate the navigation to and from the Cape of Good Hope: by offering to vessels, without any material variation from their course, admirable stations for supply and refreshment. About latitude 40, north, the Azores; in 33, the Madeiras; between 29 and 27, the Canaries; and between 18 and 16, the Islands of Cape Verd, successively offer themselves to the voyager, affording abundantly every species

species of accommodation his circumstances can require. On the Southern side of the Equator, a good harbour and abundance of turtles give some consequence even to the little barren island of Ascension; and St Helena, by the industry of the English settlers, has become the seat of plenty and of elegance. Without the assistance derived, in going or returning, from some of these places, the interval of near forty degrees on each side of the line, in a sea exposed to violent heat, and subject to tedious calms, would be sufficient to discourage even the navigators of the eighteenth century.

On the 18th of June, the fleet came in sight of the Cape Verd islands, and was directed by signal to steer for St Jago. But the want of favourable wind, and the opposition of a strong current making it probable that all the ships would not be able to get into the Bay, the Governor thought it best to change his plan. The signal for anchoring was hauled down, and the ships were directed to continue their first course; a circumstance of much disappointment to many individuals on board, who, as is natural in long voyages, were eager on every occasion to enjoy the refreshments of the shore. As an additional incitement to such wishes, the weather had now become hot; the thermometer stood at 82 d. which, though not an immoderate heat for a tropical climate, is sufficient to produce considerable annoyance. But, unmoved by any consideration except that of expedience, Governor Phillip persisted in conducting his ships to their next intended station, the harbour of Rio de Janeiro.

It may appear perhaps, on a slight consideration, rather extraordinary, that vessels bound to the Cape of Good Hope should find it expedient to touch at a harbour of South America. To run across the Atlantic, and take as a part of their course, that coast, the very existence of which was unknown to the first navigators of these seas, seems a very circuitous method of performing the voyage. A little examination will remove this apparent difficulty. The calms so frequent on the African side,

side, are of themselves a sufficient cause to induce a navigator to keep a very westerly course; and even the islands at which it is so often convenient to touch will carry him within a few degrees of the South American coast.—The returning tracks of Captain Cook's three voyages all run within a very small space of the 45th degree of west longitude, which is even ten degrees further to the west than the extremity of Cape St Roque: and that course appears to have been taken voluntarily, without any extraordinary inducement. But in the latitudes to which Governor Phillip's squadron had now arrived, the old and new continent approach so near to each other, that in avoiding the one it becomes necessary to run within a very moderate distance of the opposite land.

In the passage from the Cape Verd Islands, the fleet suffered for some time the inconvenience of great heat, attended by heavy rains. The heat, however, did not at any time exceed the point already specified, and the precautions unremittingly observed in all the ships happily continued efficacious in preventing any violent sickness. Nor did the oppression of the hot weather continue so long as in these latitudes might have been expected; for before they reached the equator the temperature had become much more moderate.

On July 5, 1787, being then in longitude 26 d. 10 m. W. from Greenwich, the Botany Bay fleet passed from the northern into the southern Hemisphere. About three weeks more of very favourable and pleasant weather conveyed them to Rio de Janeiro. On the 5th of August they anchored off the harbour, and on the evening of the 6th were at their station within it. The land of Cape Frio had been discovered some days before, but a deficiency of wind from that time a little slackened their course.

Rio de Janeiro, or January River, so called because discovered by Dias de Solis on the feast of St Januarius, (Sept. 19) 1525, is not in fact a river, though its name denotes

der
of
riv
7
Seb
on
the
wic
beer
disti
whic
mine
place
was f
1738
narro
to con
station
and t
situate
enterin
pointe
some f
very h
mouth
two, ca
chorage
named
Ther
by all n
3l. 128.
out, an
The en
this exp
that the
was no
of the P
assist the

denotes that it was then supposed to be so: it is an arm of the sea, into which a considerable number of small rivers descend.

The city of Rio de Janeiro, called by some writers St Sebastian, from the name of its tutelar patron, is situated on the west side of this bay, within less than a degree of the tropic of Capricorn, and about 43 d. W. of Greenwich. It is at present the capital of all Brasil, and has been for some time the residence of the Viceroy. These distinctions it obtained in preference to St Salvador, which was formerly the capital, by means of the diamond mines discovered in its vicinity, in the year 1770. The place increased rapidly by the wealth thus brought to it, was fortified and put under the care of a governor in 1738. The port is one of the finest in the world, very narrow at the entrance, and within capacious enough to contain more ships than ever were assembled at one station. It has soundings from twenty to one hundred and twenty fathoms. A hill shaped like a sugar loaf, situated on the west side, marks the proper bearing for entering the harbour: the situation of which is fully pointed out at the distance of two leagues and a half by some small islands, one of which, called Rodonda, is very high, and in form not unlike a haycock. The mouth of the harbour is defended by forts, particularly two, called Santa Cruz and Lozia; and the usual anchorage within it is before the city, N. of a small island named Dos Cobras.

There are in this port established fees, which are paid by all merchant ships, Portuguese as well as strangers: 3l. 12s. each on entering the bay, the same on going out, and 5s. 6d. a day while they remain at anchor. The entrance fee was demanded for the transports in this expedition, but when Governor Phillip had alledged that they were loaded with King's stores, the payment was no more insisted upon. Nevertheless, the Captain of the Port gave his attendance, with his boat's crew, to assist the ships in coming in, there being at that time only

only a light air, hardly sufficient to carry them up the bay.

In the narrative of Captain Cook's Voyage in 1768, we find, on his arrival at this place, great appearance of suspicion on the part of the Viceroy, harsh prohibitions of landing, even to the gentlemen employed in philosophical researches, and some proceedings rather of a violent nature. The reception given by the present Viceroy to Governor Phillip and his officers was very different: it was polite and flattering to a great degree, and free from every tincture of jealous caution.

Don Lewis de Varconcellos, the reigning Viceroy, belongs to one of the noblest families in Portugal; is brother to the Marquis of Castello Methor, and to the Count of Pombeiro. Governor Phillip, who served for some years as a Captain in the Portuguese navy, and is deservedly much honoured by that nation, was not personally unknown to the Viceroy, though known in a way which, in a less liberal mind, might have produced very different dispositions. There had been some difference between them, on a public account, in this port, when Governor Phillip commanded the *Europe*: each party had acted merely for the honour of the nation to which he belonged, and the Viceroy, with the true spirit of a man of honour, far from resenting a conduct so similar to his own, seemed now to make it his object to obliterate every recollection of offence. As soon as he was fully informed of the nature of Governor Phillip's commission, he gave it out in orders to the garrison that the same honours should be paid to that officer as to himself. This distinction the Governor modestly wished to decline, but was not permitted. His officers were all introduced to the Viceroy, and were, as well as himself, received with every possible mark of attention to them, and regard for their country. They were allowed to visit all parts of the city, and even to make excursions as far as five miles into the country, entirely unattended: an indulgence very unusual to strangers, and considering what we read of the jealousy of the Portuguese Government

ment

m
or

the
at
ple
thr
this
was
been
seed
flour
coffe
subst
hund
vanta
Ca
mates
genui
tentio
Provic
tion an
and sup
Cassava
ous.
prived
to cake
substitu
By th
the mil
ports fr
chased
withhel
of gover
The c
a strang
abundant
and the
corner o
Vol. II.

ment respecting its diamond mines, the more extraordinary.

Provisions were here so cheap, that notwithstanding the allowance of meat was fixed by Governor Phillip at twenty ounces a-day, the men were victualled completely, rice, fresh vegetables, and firing included, at three-pence three farthings a head. Wine was not at this season to be had, except from the retail dealers, less was therefore purchased than would otherwise have been taken. Rum, however, was laid in; and all such seeds and plants procured as were thought likely to flourish on the coast of New South Wales, particularly coffee, indigo, cotton, and the cochineal fig. As a substitute for bread, if it should become scarce, one hundred sacks of cassada, were purchased at a very advantageous price.

Cassada, the bread of thousands in the tropical climates, affords one of those instances in which the ingenuity of man might be said to triumph over the intentions of nature, were it not evidently the design of Providence that we should in all ways exert our invention and sagacity to the utmost, for our own security and support. It is the root of a shrub called *Cassada*, or *Cassava Jatropha*, and in its crude state is highly poisonous. By washing, pressure, and evaporation, it is deprived of all its noxious qualities, and being formed into cakes become a salubrious and not an unpalatable substitute for bread.

By the indulgence of the Viceroy, the deficiency in the military stores observed at the departure of the transports from England, was made up by a supply purchased from the royal arsenal; nor was any assistance withheld which either the place afforded, or the stores of government could furnish.

The circumstances which in this place most astonish a stranger, and particularly a Protestant, are, the great abundance of images dispersed throughout the city, and the devotion paid to them. They are placed at the corner of almost every street, and are never passed with-

out a respectful salutation; but at night they are constantly surrounded by their respective votaries, who offer up their prayers aloud, and make the earth resound in all quarters with the notes of their hymns. The strictness of manners in the inhabitants is not said to be at all equivalent to the warmth of this devotion; but in all countries and climates it is found much easier to perform external acts of reputed piety, than to acquire the internal habits so much more essential. It must be owned, however, that our people did not find the ladies so indulgent as some voyagers have represented them.

It was near a month before Governor Phillip could furnish his ships with every thing which it was necessary they should now procure. At length, on the 4th of September, he weighed anchor, and as he passed the fort, received from the Viceroy the last compliment it was in his power to pay, being saluted with twenty-one guns. The salute was returned by an equal number from the Sirius; and thus ended an intercourse honourable to both nations, and particularly to the principal officer employed in the service of each.

A prosperous course by sea, like a state of profound peace and tranquility in civil society, though most advantageous to those who enjoy it, is unfavourable to the purposes of narration. The striking facts which the writer exerts himself to record, and the reader is eager to peruse, arise only from difficult situations; uniform prosperity is described in very few words. Of this acceptable but unproductive kind was the passage of the Botany Bay fleet from Rio de Janeiro to the Cape of Good Hope; uniformly favourable, and not marked by any extraordinary incidents. This run, from about latitude 22 d. S. longitude 43 W. of London, to latitude 34 d. S. longitude 18 d. E. of London, a distance of about four thousand miles, was performed in thirty-nine days: for having left Rio on the 4th of September, on the 13th of October the ships came to anchor in Table Bay. Here they were to take their final refreshment, and lay in every kind of stock with which they were not already

air
bec
the
sea,
Ho
tory
almo
prin
cann
statio
wind
suffic
land.
Table
anch
shore,
fices w
dust, w
of this
sively
which
ship in
The ste
much se
from th
Bay. I
mousson d
of Augu
chor her
molested
this stati
False
cure than
winds, b
is howev
very heav
most all r

already provided. In this period no additional lives had been lost, except that of a single convict belonging to the Charlotte transport, who fell accidentally into the sea, and could not by any efforts be recovered.

Table Bay, on the N. W. side of the Cape of Good Hope, is named from the Table Mountain, a promontory of considerable elevation, at the foot of which, and almost in the centre of the Bay, stands Cape Town, the principal Dutch settlement in this territory. This Bay cannot properly be called a port, being by no means a station of security; it is exposed to all the violence of the winds which set into it from the sea; and is far from sufficiently secured from those which blow from the land. The gusts which descend from the summit of Table Mountain are sufficient to force ships from their anchors, and even violently to annoy persons on the shore, by destroying any tents or other temporary edifices which may be erected, and raising clouds of fine dust, which produce very troublesome effects. A gale of this kind, from the S. E. blew for three days successively when Capt. Cook lay here in his first voyage, at which time, he informs us, the Resolution was the only ship in the harbour that had not dragged her anchors. The storms from the sea are still more formidable; so much so, that ships have frequently been driven by them from their anchorage, and wrecked at the head of the Bay. But these accidents happen chiefly in the *quaade mousson* or winter months, from May 14 to the same day of August; during which time few ships venture to anchor here. Our fleet, arriving later, lay perfectly unmolested as long as it was necessary for it to remain in this station.

False Bay, on the S. E. side of the Cape, is more secure than Table Bay, during the prevalence of the N. W. winds, but still less so in strong gales from the S. E. It is however less frequented, being twenty-four miles of very heavy road distant from Cape Town, whence almost all necessaries must be procured. The most sheltered

tered part of False Bay is a recess on the west side called Simon's Bay.

The Cape of Good Hope, though popularly called, and perhaps pretty generally esteemed so, is not in truth the most southern point of Africa. The land which projects furthest to the S. is a point to the E. of it, called by the English Cape Lagullus; a name corrupted from the original Portuguese *das Agulhas*, which, as well as the French appellation, *des Aiguilles*, is descriptive of its form, and would rightly be translated Needle Cape. Three eminences, divided by very narrow passes, and appearing in a distant view like three summits of the same mountain, stand at the head of Table Bay.—They are however of different heights, by which difference, as well as by that of their shape, they may be distinguished. Table Mountain is so called from its appearance, as it terminates in a flat horizontal surface, from which the face of the rock descends almost perpendicularly. This mountain rises to about 3567 feet above the level of the sea. Devil's Head, called also Charles Mountain, is situated to the E. of the former, and is not above 3368 feet in height; and on the W. side of Table Mountain, Lion's Head, whose name is also meant to be descriptive, does not exceed 2764 feet. In the neighbourhood of the latter lies Constantia, a district consisting of two farms, wherein the famous wines of that name are produced.

Our voyagers found provisions less plentiful and less reasonable in price at Cape Town than they had been taught to expect. Board and lodging, which are to be had only in private houses, stood the officers in two rix-dollars a day, which is near nine shillings sterling. This town, the only place in the whole colony to which that title can be applied with propriety, is of no great extent; it does not in any part exceed two miles; and the country, colonized here by the Dutch, is in general so unfavourable to cultivation, that it is not without some astonishment that we find them able to raise provisions from it in sufficient abundance to supply themselves, and the ships

ships
Cape
Dut
pen
driv
extr
149
the s
lony
navig
peans
racter
tainin
so little
examp
as an u
are det
conten
most ev
But t
enough
Rio de
was no
to the
table, w
reason to
and dispe
at this ti
land were
preparati
sion of a
In the
visions w
not less t
bnt chiefly
ly enough
considerin
from a de

ships of so many nations which constantly resort to the Cape.

When we consider the vast advantages derived by the Dutch colonists from this traffic, and the almost indispensable necessity by which navigators of all nations are driven to seek refreshment there, it cannot but appear extraordinary, that from the discovery of the Cape in 1493, by Barthelemi Diaz, to the year 1650. when, at the suggestion of John Van Reibeck, the first Dutch colony was sent, a spot so very favourable to commerce and navigation should have remained unoccupied by Europeans. Perhaps all the perseverance of the Dutch character was necessary even to suggest the idea of maintaining an establishment in a soil so burnt by the sun, and so little disposed to repay the toil of the cultivator. The example and success of this people may serve, however, as an useful instruction to all who in great undertakings are deterred by trifling obstacles; and who, rather than contend with difficulties, are inclined to relinquish the most evident advantages.

But though the country near the Cape had not charms enough to render it as pleasing as that which surrounds Rio de Janeiro, yet the Governor, Mynheer Van Graaffe, was not far behind the Viceroy of Brazil in attention to the English officers. They were admitted to his table, where they were elegantly entertained, and had reason to be pleased in all respects with his behaviour and disposition. Yet the minds of his people were not at this time in a tranquil state; the accounts from Holland were such as occasioned much uneasiness, and great preparations were making at the fort, from apprehension of a rupture with some other power.

In the course of a month, the live stock and other provisions were procured; and the ships, having on board not less than five hundred animals of different kinds, but chiefly poultry, put on an appearance which naturally enough excited the idea of Noah's ark. This supply, considering that the country had previously suffered from a dearth, was very considerable; but it was purchased

chased of course at a higher expence considerably than it would have been in a time of greater plenty.

On the 12th of November the fleet let sail, and was for many days much delayed by strong winds from the S. E. On the 25th, being then only 80 leagues to the eastward of the Cape, Governor Phillip left the *Sirius* and went on board the *Supply* tender; in hopes by leaving the convoy, to gain sufficient time for examining the country round Botany Bay, so as to fix on the situation most eligible for the colony, before the transports should arrive. At the same time he ordered the agents for the transports, who were in the *Alexander*, to separate themselves from the convoy with that ship, the *Scarborough* and *Friendship*, which, as they were better sailers than the rest, might reasonably be expected sooner; in which case, by the labour of the convicts they had on board, much might be done in making the necessary preparations for landing the provisions and stores.

Major Ross, the Commandant of Marines, now left the *Sirius*, and went on board the *Scarborough*, that he might accompany that part of the detachment which probably would be landed first. Captain Hunter, in the *Sirius*, was to follow with the storeships, and the remainder of the transports; and he had the necessary instructions for his future proceedings, in case the *Supply* had met with any accident. Lieutenant Gidley King, since appointed Commandant of Norfolk Island, accompanied Governor Phillip in the *Supply*.

From this time to the 3d of January, 1788, the winds were as favourable as could be wished, blowing generally in very strong gales from the N. W. W. and S. W. Once only the wind had shifted to the E. but continued in that direction not more than a few hours. Thus assisted, the *Supply*, which sailed very indifferently, and turned out, from what she had suffered in the voyage, to be hardly a safe conveyance, performed in fifty-one days a voyage of more than seven thousand miles. On the day above-mentioned she was within sight of the coast of New South Wales. But the winds then became variable,

var
to
was
A
shor
plac
nor
arm
dow
cloat
bead
or ne
prese
accep
the sh
effect
addres
Gover
duct f
whom
them
their w
guinar
settlers
The
the bay
tensive
and, th
of a m
chor w
be exp
hard fr
Sever
parts of
tion to
In the n
consider
ly for a
and the

variable, and a current, which at times set very strongly to the southward, so much impeded her course, that it was not till the 18th that she arrived at Botany Bay.

At the very first landing of Governor Phillip on the shore of Botany Bay, an interview with the natives took place. They were all armed, but on seeing the Governor approach with signs of friendship, alone and unarmed, they readily returned his confidence by laying down their weapons. They were perfectly devoid of cloathing, yet seemed fond of ornaments, putting the beads and red baize that were given them, on their heads or necks, and appearing pleased to wear them. The presents offered by their new visitors were all readily accepted, nor did any kind of disagreement arise while the ships remained in Botany Bay. This very pleasing effect was produced in no small degree by the personal address, as well as by the great care and attention of the Governor. Nor were the orders which enforced a conduct so humane, more honourable to the persons from whom they originated, than the punctual execution of them was to the officers sent out: it was evident that their wishes coincided with their duty; and that a sanguinary temper was no longer to disgrace the European settlers in countries newly discovered.

The next care after landing was the examination of the bay itself, from which it appeared that, though extensive, it did not afford a shelter from the easterly winds: and, that, in consequence of its shallowness, ships even of a moderate draught, would always be obliged to anchor with the entrance of the bay open, where they must be exposed to a heavy sea, that rolls in whenever it blows hard from the eastward.

Several runs of fresh water were found in different parts of the bay, but there did not appear to be any situation to which there was not some very strong objection: In the northern part of it is a small creek, which runs a considerable way into the country, but it has water only for a boat, the sides of it are frequently overflowed, and the low lands near it are a perfect swamp. The western

western branch of the bay is continued to a great extent, but the officers sent to examine it could not find there any supply of fresh water, except in very small drains.

Point Sutherland offered the most eligible situation, having a run of good water, though not in very great abundance. But to this part of the harbour the ships could not approach, and the ground near it, even in the higher parts, was in general damp and spongy. Smaller numbers might indeed in several spots have found a comfortable residence, but no place was found in the whole circuit of Botany Bay which seemed at all calculated for the reception of so large a settlement.—

While this examination was carried on, the whole fleet had arrived. The Supply had not so much outailed the other ships as to give Governor Phillip the advantage he had expected in point of time. On the 19th of January, the Alexander, Scarborough, and Friendship, cast anchor in Botany Bay; and on the 20th, the Sirius, with the remainder of the convoy. These ships had all continued very healthy; they had not, however, yet arrived at their final station.

The openness of this bay, and the dampness of the soil, by which the people would probably be rendered unhealthy, had already determined the Governor to seek another situation. He resolved, therefore, to examine Port Jackson, a bay mentioned by Captain Cook as immediately to the N. of this. There he hoped to find, not only a better harbour, but a fitter place for the establishment of his new government. But that no time might be lost, in case of a disappointment in these particulars, the ground near Point Sutherland was ordered immediately to be cleared, and preparations to be made for landing, under the direction of the Lieutenant Governor.

These arrangements having been settled, Governor Phillip prepared to proceed to the examination of Port Jackson: and as the time of his absence, had he gone into the Supply, must have been very uncertain, he went round with three boats; taking with him Captain

Hunter

Hu
seve
mig
upo
at P
Her
was
satisf
in w
secur
Th
with
to one
ships
small
largest
mile in
trance
tingui
On
party c
of land
at first
used to
discard
offered
chief of
confide
iution.
whom
of the b
then bo
rines, w
by proc
nions, v
distance
words a
tage sho
on with
Vol. II

Hunter and several other officers, that by examining several parts of the harbour at once the greater dispatch might be made. On the 22d of January they set out upon this expedition, and early in the afternoon arrived at Port Jackson, which is distant about three leagues. Here all regret arising from the former disappointments was at once obliterated ; and Governor Phillip had the satisfaction to find one of the finest harbours in the world, in which a thousand sail of the line might ride in perfect security.

The different coves of this harbour were examined with all possible expedition, and the preference was given to one which had the finest spring of water, and in which ships can anchor so close to the shore, that at a very small expence quays may be constructed at which the largest vessels may unload. This cove is about half a mile in length, and a quarter of a mile across at the entrance. In honour of Lord Sydney, the Governor distinguished it by the name of Sydney Cove.

On the arrival of the boats at Port Jackson, a second party of the natives made its appearance near the place of landing. These also were armed with lances, and at first were very vociferous ; but the same gentle means used towards the others easily persuaded these also to discard their suspicions, and to accept whatsoever was offered. One man in particular, who appeared to be the chief of this tribe, shewed very singular marks both of confidence in his new friends, and of determined resolution. Under the guidance of Governor Phillip, to whom he voluntarily intrusted himself, he went to a part of the beach where the men belonging to the boats were then boiling their meat : when he approached the marines, who were drawn up near that place, and saw that by proceeding he should be separated from his companions, who remained with several of the officers at some distance, he stopped, and with great firmness, seemed by words and gestures to threaten revenge if any advantage should be taken of his situation. He then went on with perfect calmness to examine what was boiling

in the pot, and by the manner in which he expressed his admiration, made it evident that he intended to profit by what he saw. Governor Phillip contrived to make him understand that large shells might conveniently be used for the same purpose, and it is probable that by these hints, added to his own observation, he will be enabled to introduce the art of boiling among his countrymen. Hitherto they appear to have known no other way of dressing food than broiling. Their methods of kindling fire are probably very imperfect and laborious, for it is observed that they usually keep it burning, and are very rarely seen without either a fire actually made, or a piece of lighted wood, which they carry with them from place to place, and even in their canoes. The perpetual fires, which in some countries formed a part of the national religion, had perhaps no other origin than a similar inability to produce it at pleasure; and if we suppose the original flame to have been kindled by lightning, the fiction of its coming down from heaven will be found to deviate very little from the truth.

In passing near a point of land in this harbour the boats were perceived by a number of the natives, twenty of whom waded into the water unarmed, received what was offered them, and examined the boat with a curiosity which impressed a higher idea of them than any former accounts of their manners had suggested. This confidence, and manly behaviour, induced Governor Phillip, who was highly pleased with it, to give the place the name of Manly Cove. The same people afterwards joined the party at the place where they had landed to dine. They were then armed, two of them with shields and swords, the rest with lances only. The swords were made of wood, small in the gripe, and apparently less formidable than a good stick. One of these men had a kind of white clay rubbed upon the upper part of his face, so as to have the appearance of a mask. This ornament, if it can be called such, is not common among them, and is probably assumed only on particular occasions, or as

a
bee
nec
pear
coun
the
D
these
noco
nienc
wher
made
that li
Anoth
insult
used to
On
ficientl
spect
he was
On his
the gro
upper p
more pa
unfavour
concern
accordin
Port Jac
That
Cook in
Phillip, i
jects wer
refreshme
time: th
was nece
considera
ease, and
pearance
the ample

a distinction to a few individuals. One woman had been seen on the rocks as the boats passed, with her face, neck, and breasts thus painted, and to our people appeared the most disgusting figure imaginable; her own countrymen were perhaps delighted by the beauty of the effect.

During the preparation for dinner the curiosity of these visitors rendered them very troublesome, but an innocent contrivance altogether removed the inconvenience. Governor Phillip drew a circle round the place where the English were, and without much difficulty made the natives understand that they were not to pass that line: after which they sat down in perfect quietness. Another proof how tractable these people are, when no insult or injury is offered, and when proper means are used to influence the simplicity of their minds.

On the 24th of January, Governor Phillip having sufficiently explored Port Jackson, and found it in all respects highly calculated to receive such a settlement as he was appointed to establish, returned to Botany Bay. On his arrival there, the reports made to him, both of the ground which the people were clearing, and of the upper parts of the Bay, which in this interval had been more particularly examined, were in the greatest degree unfavourable. It was impossible after this to hesitate concerning the choice of a situation; and orders were accordingly issued for the removal of the whole fleet to Port Jackson.

That Botany Bay should have appeared to Captain Cook in a more advantageous light than to Governor Phillip, is not by any means extraordinary. Their objects were very different; the one required only shelter and refreshment for a small vessel, and during but a short time: the other had great numbers to provide for, and was necessitated to find a place wherein ships of very considerable burthen might approach the shore with ease, and lie at all times in perfect security. The appearance of the place is picturesque and pleasing, and the ample harvest it afforded, of botanical acquisitions,

made it interesting to the philosophical gentlemen engaged in that expedition ; but something more essential than beauty of appearance, and more necessary than philosophical riches, must be sought in a place where the permanent residence of multitudes is to be established.

Preparations for a general removal were now made with all convenient expedition : but on the morning of the 24th the greatest astonishment was spread throughout the fleet by the appearance of two ships, under French colours. In this remote region visitors from Europe were very little expected, and their arrival, while the cause of it remained unknown, produced in some minds a temporary apprehension, accompanied by a multiplicity of conjectures, many of them sufficiently ridiculous. Governor Phillip was the first to recollect that two ships had been sent out some time before from France for the purpose of discovery, and rightly concluded these to be the same. But as the opposition of the wind and a strong current prevented them at present from working into the harbour, and even drove them out of sight again to the south, he did not think proper to delay his departure for the sake of making further enquiry.

On the 25th of January, therefore, seven days after the arrival of the Supply, Governor Phillip quitted Botany Bay in the same ship, and sailed to Port Jackson. The rest of the fleet, under convoy of the Sirius, was ordered to follow, as soon as the abatement of the wind, which then blew a strong gale, should facilitate its working out of the Bay. The Supply was scarcely out of sight when the French ships again appeared off the mouth of the harbour, and a boat was immediately sent to them, with offers of every kind of information and assistance their situation could require. It was now learnt that these were, as the Governor had supposed, the Bouffole and the Astrolabe, on a voyage of discovery under the conduct of Monsieur La Peyrouse.

On the 26th, the transports and store ships, attended by the Sirius, finally evacuated Botany Bay ; and in

ver
the
tion
con
ture
ther
defi
vern
dispo
the t
with
transf
was b
lable
Th
They
coast
of So
had r
They
Sound
des N
M. la
but co
long v
ness ;
in a fu
funa,
Captai
unfortu
long b
His pa
whom
ments,
the bes
of a ch
treache
the ma
confidin

very short time they were all assembled in Sydney Cove, the place now destined for their port, and for the reception of the new settlement. The French ships had come to anchor in Botany Bay just before the departure of the *Sirius*; and during the intercourse which then took place, M. la Peyrouse had expressed a strong desire of having some letters conveyed to Europe. Governor Phillip was no sooner informed of this, than he dispatched an officer to him with full information of the time when it was probable our ships would sail, and with assurances that his letters should be punctually transmitted. By this officer the following intelligence was brought back concerning the voyage of the *Astrolable* and *Bouffole*.

These vessels had sailed from France in June 1785. They had touched at the Isle of Santa Catharina on the coast of Brazil, from thence had gone by the extremity of South America into the Pacific Ocean, where they had run along by the coasts of Chili and California. They had afterwards visited Easter Island, Nootka Sound, Cook's River, Kamtschatka, Manilla, the Isles des Navigateurs, Sandwich and the Friendly Islands. M. la Peyrouse had also anchored off Norfolk Island, but could not land, on account of the surf. In this long voyage he had not lost any of his people by sickness; but two boats crews had unfortunately perished in a surf on the N. W. coast of America; and at Masfuna, one of the Isles des Navigateurs, M. L'Angle, Captain of the *Astrolable*, had met with a fate still more unfortunate. That officer had gone ashore with two long boats for the purpose of filling some water casks. His party amounted to forty men, and the natives, from whom the French had received abundance of refreshments, and with whom they had been uniformly on the best terms, did not on their landing shew any signs of a change of disposition. Malice unprovoked, and treachery without a motive, seem inconsistent even with the manners of savages; the French officers therefore, confiding in this unbroken state of amity, had suffered their

their boats to lie aground. But whether it were that the friendly behaviour of the natives had proceeded only from fear, or that some unknown offence had been given, they seized the moment when the men were busied in getting out the boats, to make an attack equally furious and unexpected. The assault was made with stones, of which prodigious numbers were thrown with extraordinary force and accuracy of direction. To this treachery M. L'Angle fell a sacrifice, and with him twelve of his party, officers and men, the long-boats were destroyed, and the remainder of those who had gone ashore escaped with difficulty in their small boats. The ships in the mean time were under sail, and having passed a point of land that intercepted the view, knew nothing of this melancholy and unaccountable affray till the boats returned. This fatal result from too implicit a confidence, may, perhaps very properly, increase the caution of Europeans in their commerce with savages, but ought not to excite suspicion. The resentments of such people are sudden and sanguinary, and, where the intercourse of language is wanting, may easily be awakened by misapprehension: but it seems possible to treat them with sufficient marks of confidence, without abandoning the guards of prudence. Offence is often given by the men, while the officers are most studious to preserve harmony, and against the transports of rage which arise on such occasions, it is always necessary to be prepared. Perhaps, also, a degree of awe should always be kept up, even to preserve their friendship. It has been uniformly remarked by our people, that defenceless stragglers are generally ill-treated by the natives of New South Wales, while towards parties armed and on their guard, they behave in the most amicable manner.

The debarkation was now made at Sydney Cove, and the work of clearing the ground for the encampment, as well as for the storehouses and other buildings, was begun without loss of time. But the labour which attended this necessary operation was greater than can easily be imagined by those who were not spectators of it.

it.
gen
the
with
mag
but t
diffic
and t
duty
migh
colou
with
bled
succes
which
it enli
pleasin
week
who g
equally
scene t
continu
The pl
places
as to in
gularity
flight t
brough
landed
circumf
without
much o
had bee
among
tery pre
and the
kept the
For thos
fish or o

it. The coast, as well as the neighbouring country in general, is covered with wood; and though in this spot the trees stood more apart, and were less incumbered with underwood than in many other places, yet their magnitude was such as to render not only the felling, but the removal of them afterwards, a task of no small difficulty. By the habitual indolence of the convicts, and the want of proper overseers to keep them to their duty, their labour was rendered less efficient than it might have been. In the evening of the 26th the colours were displayed on shore, and the Governor, with several of his principal officers and others, assembled round the flag-staff, drank the king's health, and success to the settlement, with all that display of form which on such occasions is deemed propitious, because it enlivens the spirits, and fills the imagination with pleasing presages. From this time to the end of the first week in February all was hurry and exertion. They who gave orders and they who received them were equally occupied; nor is it easier to conceive a busier scene than this part of the coast exhibited during the continuance of these first efforts towards establishment. The plan of the encampment was quickly formed, and places were marked out for every different purpose, so as to introduce, as much as possible, strict order and regularity. The materials and frame work to construct a slight temporary habitation for the Governor, had been brought out from England ready formed: these were landed and put together with as much expedition as the circumstances would allow. Hospital tents were also without delay erected, for which there was soon but too much occasion. In the passage from the Cape there had been but little sickness, nor had many died even among the convicts; but soon after landing, a dysentery prevailed, which in several instances proved fatal, and the scurvy began to rage with a virulence which kept the hospital tents generally supplied with patients. For those afflicted with this disorder, the advantage of fish or other fresh provisions could but rarely be procured;

cured; nor were esculent vegetables often obtained in sufficient plenty to produce any material alleviation of the complaint. In the dysentery, the red gum of the tree which principally abounds on this coast, was found a very powerful remedy. The yellow gum has been discovered to possess the same property, but in an inferior degree.

The tree which yields the former kind of gum is very considerable in size, and grows to a great height before it puts out any branches. The red gum is usually compared to that called *sanguis draconis*, but differs from it by being perfectly soluble in water, whereas the other, being more properly a resin, will not dissolve except in spirits of wine. It may be drawn from the tree by tapping, or taken out of the veins of the wood when dry, in which it is copiously distributed. The leaves are long and narrow, not unlike those of a willow. The wood is heavy and fine grained, but being much intersected by the channels containing the gum, splits and warps in such a manner as soon to become entirely useless; especially when worked up, as necessity at first occasioned it to be, without having been properly seasoned.

The yellow gum as it is called, is strictly a resin, not being at all soluble in water; in appearance it strongly resembles gamboge, but has not the property of staining. The plant that produces it is low and small, with long grassy leaves; but the fructification of it shoots out in a singular manner from the centre of the leaves, on a single straight stem, to the height of twelve or fourteen feet. Of this stem, which is strong and light, like some of the reed class, the natives usually make their spears; sometimes pointing them with a piece of the same substance made sharp, but more frequently with bone. The resin is generally dug up out of the soil under the tree, not collected from it, and may perhaps be that which Tasman calls "gum lac of the ground."

The month of February was ushered in by a very violent storm of thunder and rain. The lightning struck

struck
been
were
The
that
ing
ting
over
fented.
Port
Cook;
or three
conduct
it much
that in
himself
curity, su
experien
cur in th
two mile
noble and
for the l
perfect se
It runs c
miles into
hundred
whose pro
Sydney C
five and fi
that form
yet so rock
trees could
them to se
tween the
principal r
other parts
is of variou
the south en
Between Sy
Vol. II.—N

struck and shivered a tree, under which a shed had been erected for some sheep, and five of those animals were at the same time unfortunately destroyed by it. The encampment still went on with great alacrity, so that in the beginning of this month the work of building public storehouses was undertaken; and unremitting diligence began, though very gradually, to triumph over the obstacles which the nature of the place presented.

Port Jackson was not visited or explored by Captain Cook; it was seen only at the distance of between two or three miles from the coast: had any good fortune conducted him into that harbour, he would have found it much more worthy of his attention as a seaman, than that in which he passed a week. Governor Phillip himself pronounces it to be a harbour, in extent and security, superior to any he has ever seen: and the most experienced navigators who were with him fully concur in that opinion. From an entrance not more than two miles across, Port Jackson gradually extends into a noble and capacious basin; having soundings sufficient for the largest vessels, and space to accommodate, in perfect security, any number that could be assembled. It runs chiefly in a western direction, about thirteen miles into the country, and contains not less than an hundred small coves, formed by narrow necks of land, whose projection affords admirable shelter from all winds. Sydney Cove lies on the S. side of the harbour, between five and six miles from the entrance. The necks of land that form the coves are mostly covered with timber, yet so rocky that it is not easy to comprehend how the trees could have found sufficient nourishment to bring them to so considerable a magnitude; but the soil between the rocks is very good, and into those spaces the principal roots have found their way.—The soil in other parts of the coast immediately about Port Jackson is of various qualities. That neck of land which divides the south end of the harbour from the sea is chiefly sand. Between Sydney Cove and Botany Bay the first space

is occupied by a wood, in some parts a mile and a half, in others three miles across; beyond that, is a kind of heath, poor, sandy, and full of swamps. As far as the eye can reach to the westward, the country is one continued wood. The head of the bay in Port Jackson, seemed at first to offer some advantages of ground, but as it is partly left dry at low water, and as the winds are much obstructed there by the woods and by the windings of the channel, it was deemed that it must probably be unhealthful, till the country can be cleared.

There are several parts of the harbour in which the trees stand at a greater distance from each other than in Sydney Cove; some of these which have small runs of water, and a promising soil, Governor Phillip purposed to cultivate as soon as hands could be spared; but the advantage of being able to land the stores and provisions with so much ease, unavoidably determined his choice of a place for the principal settlement. Had it been attempted to remove those necessities only one mile from the spot where they were landed, the undertaking probably would have been fruitless; so many were the obstacles to land carriage. At the head of Sydney Cove, therefore, Governor Phillip had fixed the seat of his government; but intent upon providing the best and earliest accommodation for those who were to be encamped with him; and wholly occupied by the continual necessity of giving directions, he had not yet found leisure for assuming regularly his powers and title of Governor. At length the hurry of the first preparations gave way to this more tranquil business.

The 7th of February, 1788, was the memorable day which established a regular form of Government on the coast of New South Wales. For obvious reasons, all possible solemnity was given to the proceedings necessary on this occasion. On a space previously cleared, the whole colony was assembled; the military drawn up, and under arms; the convicts stationed apart; and near the person of the Governor, those who were to hold the principal offices under him. The Royal Commission was then read by Mr D. Collins, the Judge Advocate.

voc
tute
in C
Wal
mity
to d
ritor
tude
the v
oning
the if
titude
S. and
fortifi
hereat
said in
courts
tents u
sons to
exigen
Gover
A tripl
the cer
and ad
for the
honour
ral ord
stinctly
situation
already
try: ye
placed
in time
of whic
ly had
were re
guilt.
one man
attempt

vocate. By this instrument Arthur Phillip was constituted and appointed Captain General and Governor in Chief in and over the territory, called New South Wales; extending from the northern cape, or extremity of the coast, called Cape York, in the latitude of 10 d. 37 m. S. to the southern extremity of the said territory of New South Wales; or South Cape, in the latitude of 43 d. 39 m. S. and of all the country inland to the westward, as far as the 135 d. of E. longitude reckoning from the meridian of Greenwich, including all the islands adjacent in the Pacific Ocean, within the latitudes aforesaid of 10 d. 37 m. S. and 43 d. 39 m. S. and of all towns, garrisons, castles, forts, and all other fortifications, or other military works which may be hereafter erected upon the said territory, or any of the said islands. The act of Parliament establishing the courts of judicature was next read; and lastly, the patents under the great seal, empowering the proper persons to convene and hold those courts whenever the exigency should require. The office of Lieutenant Governor was conferred on Major Ross, of the marines. A triple discharge of musquetry concluded this part of the ceremony; after which Governor Phillip advanced, and addressing first the private foldiers, thanked them for their steady good conduct on every occasion: an honour which was repeated to them in the next general orders. He then turned to the convicts, and distinctly explained to them the nature of their present situation. The greater part, he bade them recollect, had already forfeited their lives to the justice of their country: yet, by the lenity of its laws, they were now so placed that, by industry and good behaviour, they might in time regain the advantages and estimation in society of which they had deprived themselves. They not only had every encouragement to make that effort, but were removed almost entirely from every temptation to guilt. There was little in this infant community which one man could plunder from another, and any dishonest attempts in so small a society would almost infallibly be

discovered. To persons detected in such crimes, he would not promise any mercy; nor indeed to any who, under their circumstances, should presume to offend against the peace and good order of the settlement.—What mercy could do for them they had already experienced; nor could any good be now expected from those whom neither past warnings, nor the peculiarities of their present situation could preserve from guilt.—Against offenders, therefore, the rigour of the law would certainly be put in force: while they whose behaviour should in any degree promise reformation, might always depend upon encouragement fully proportioned to their deserts. He particularly noticed the illegal intercourse between the sexes, as an offence which encouraged a general profligacy of manners, and was in several ways injurious to society. To prevent this, he strongly recommended marriage, and promised every kind of countenance and assistance to those who, by entering into that state, should manifest their willingness to conform to the laws of morality and religion. Governor Phillip concluded his address, by declaring his earnest desire to promote the happiness of all who were under his government, and to render the settlement in New South Wales advantageous and honourable to his country.

This speech, which was received with universal acclamations, terminated the ceremonial peculiar to the day. Nor was it altogether without its proper effect: For we are informed, that in the course of the ensuing week fourteen marriages took place among the convicts.—The assembly was now dispersed, and the Governor proceeded to review the troops on the ground cleared for a parade: after which he gave a dinner to the officers, and the first evening of his government was concluded propitiously, in good order and innocent festivity, amidst the repetition of wishes for its prosperity.

A rising government could not easily be committed to better hands. Governor Phillip appears to have every

ry requ
trusted
sure it.
to make
it pleas
the nati
jection
and allia
was his
them wi
solved, t
less than
him to f
fortune,
been able
intention
hitherto
remained
habitants,
fire-arms
haviour o
hibitions,
wandered
their parts
though the
their confi
probably in
remain am
in some of
in their circ
Some of th
woods have
ed by the na
that in these
aggressors.
As the mo
gan to fall, v
ing shelter fo
expedited thi

ry requisite to ensure the success of the undertaking intrusted to him, as far as the qualities of one man can ensure it. Intelligent, active, persevering with firmness to make his authority respected, and mildness to render it pleasing, he was determined, if possible, to bring even the natives of New South Wales into a voluntary subjection; or at least to establish with them a strict amity and alliance. Induced also by motives of humanity, it was his determination, from his first landing, to treat them with the utmost kindness: and he was firmly resolved, that, whatever differences might arise, nothing less than the most absolute necessity should ever compel him to fire upon them. In this resolution, by good fortune, and by his own great address, he has happily been able to persevere. But notwithstanding this, his intentions of establishing a friendly intercourse have hitherto been frustrated. M. de la Peyrouse, while he remained in Botany Bay, had some quarrel with the inhabitants, which unfortunately obliged him to use his fire-arms against them: this affair, joined to the ill behaviour of some of the convicts, who in spite of all prohibitions, and at the risk of all consequences, have wandered out among them, has produced a shyness on their parts which it has not yet been possible to remove, though the properest means have been taken to regain their confidence. Their dislike to the Europeans is probably increased by discovering that they intend to remain among them, and that they interfere with them in some of their best fishing places, which doubtless are, in their circumstances, objects of very great importance. Some of the convicts who have straggled into the woods have been killed, and others dangerously wounded by the natives, but there is great reason to suppose that in these cases the convicts have usually been the aggressors.

As the month of February advanced heavy rains began to fall, which pointed out the necessity of procuring shelter for the people as soon as possible. To have expedited this work in the degree which was desirable,

a great number of artificers would have been required. But this advantage could not be had. Only six carpenters could be hired from all the ships; among the convicts no more than twelve were of this profession, and of them several were sick. These therefore together formed but a small party, in proportion to the work which was to be done. One hundred convicts were added as labourers; but with every effort it was found impossible to complete either the barracks for the men, or the huts for the officers, as soon as was desired. As late as the middle of May these were yet unfinished, as well as the hospital and the storehouse for those provisions which were not landed at first. The Governor himself at that time was still lodged in his temporary house of canvas, which was not perfectly impervious either to wind or weather.

On the 14th of February a party was sent out in the Supply, to settle on a small island to the N. W. of New Zealand, in latitude 29 d. S. and longitude 168 d. 10 m. E. from London, which was discovered and much commended by Captain Cook, and by him named Norfolk Island, in honour of the noble family to which that title belongs. To the office of superintendent and commandant of this island, and the settlement to be made upon it, Governor Phillip appointed Philip Gidley King, second lieutenant of his Majesty's ship Sirius, an officer much esteemed by him as of great merit in his profession; and highly spoken of in his letters as a man whose perseverance in that or any other service might fully be depended on. As it was known that there were no inhabitants on Norfolk Island, there was sent with Lieutenant King only a small detachment, consisting of one subaltern officer, and six marines, a very promising young man who was a midshipman, two men who understood the cultivation and dressing of flax, with nine men and six women convicts. That the nature of this settlement may be fully understood, a copy of the instructions delivered to Mr King at his departure is subjoined.

INSTRUCTIONS

INST

Super

FOR

WIT

mission

the sett

obey all

ceive fr

Captain

and its d

in my ab

You ar

tender Su

ceive you

visions ne

and on y

upon you

causing m

ant over th

After ha

yourself ar

shores and

to the culti

growing sp

cultivation

seeds of wh

regard as pu

are to send r

ity may be

what suppli

is left to you

raised as may

with the gre

on, and oth

and as such a

INSTRUCTIONS for PHILIP GIDLEY KING, *Esq*;
Superintendent and Commandant of the Settlement of NOR-
FOLK ISLAND.

WITH these instructions you will receive my Commission, appointing you to superintend and command the settlement to be formed in Norfolk Island, and to obey all such orders as you shall from time to time receive from me, his Majesty's Governor in Chief, and Captain General of the territory of New South Wales and its dependencies, or from the Lieutenant-Governor in my absence.

You are therefore to proceed in his Majesty's armed tender Supply, whose commander has my orders to receive you, with the men and women, stores and provisions necessary for forming the intended settlement; and on your landing on Norfolk Island you are to take upon you the execution of the trust reposed in you, causing my commission, appointing you superintendent over the said settlement, to be publicly read.

After having taken the necessary measures for securing yourself and people, and for the preservation of the stores and provisions, you are immediately to proceed to the cultivation of the Flax Plant, which you will find growing spontaneously on the island: as likewise to the cultivation of cotton, corn, and other plants, with the seeds of which you are furnished, and which you are to regard as public stock, and of the increase of which you are to send me an account, that I may know what quantity may be drawn from the island for public use, or what supplies it may be necessary to send hereafter. It is left to your discretion to use such part of the corn that is raised as may be found necessary; but this you are to do with the greatest economy; and as the corn, flax, cotton, and other grains are the property of the Crown, and as such are to be accounted for, you are to keep an exact

exact account of the increase, and you will in future receive directions for the disposal thereof.

You are to inform yourself of the nature of the soil, what proportion of land you find proper for the cultivation of corn, flax, and cotton, as likewise what quantity of cattle may be bred on the island, and the number of people you judge necessary for the above purpose. You will likewise observe what are the prevailing winds in the different seasons of the year, the best anchorage according to the season, the rise and fall of the tides, likewise when the dry and rainy seasons begin and end.

You will be furnished with a four oared boat, and you are not on any consideration to build, or to permit the building of any vessel or boat whatever that is decked; or of any boat or vessel that is not decked, whose length of keels exceeds twenty feet: and if by any accident any vessel or boat that exceeds twenty feet keel should be driven on the island, you are immediately to cause such boat or vessel to be scuttled, or otherwise rendered unserviceable, letting her remain in that situation until you receive further directions from me.

You will be furnished with six months provisions, within which time you will receive an additional supply, but as you will be able to procure fish and vegetables, you are to endeavour to make the provisions you receive serve as long as possible.

The convicts being the servants of the Crown, till the time for which they are sentenced is expired, their labour is to be for the public; and you are to take particular notice of their general good or bad behaviour, that they may hereafter be employed or rewarded according to their different merits.

You are to cause the Prayers of the Church of England to be read with all due solemnity every Sunday, and you are to enforce a due observance of religion and good order, transmitting to me, as often as opportunity offers, a full account of your particular situation and transactions.

You are not to permit any intercourse or trade with any ships or vessels that may stop at the island, whether

English

Eng
fels
then

G

Go
though
comm
ment
There
could
social
and wi
the dar
which,
when m
Toward
was cor
sentence
was exe
doned;
exiled to
kept on
robbed t
suffered,
from the
week's p
settled by
soldiers, i
their habi
of a moti
On the
long boat
Vol. II.—

English or of any other nation, unless such ships or vessels should be in distress, in which case you are to afford them such assistance as may be in your power.

Given under my hand, at Head Quarters in Port Jackson, New South Wales, this 12th day of February, 1778.

(Signed)

ARTHUR PHILLIP.

Governor Phillip soon found with great regret, though doubtless without much surprise, that in the community committed to his care the strict enforcement of the sanctions of law was peculiarly necessary. There were in it many individuals whom neither lenity could touch, nor rigour terrify; who, with all sense of social duty, appeared to have lost all value for life itself, and with the same wantonness exposed themselves to the darts of the savages, and to the severe punishments which, however reluctantly, every society must inflict when milder methods have been tried without success. Towards the latter end of February a criminal court was convened in which six of the convicts received sentence of death. One, who was head of the gang, was executed the same day; of the rest, one was pardoned; the other four were reprieved, and afterwards exiled to a small island within the bay, where they were kept on bread and water. These men had frequently robbed the stores, and the other convicts. He who suffered, and two others, had been detected in stealing from the stores the very day that they had received a week's provision; at a time when their allowance, as settled by the Navy Board, was the same as that of the soldiers, spirituous liquors excepted. So inveterate were their habits of dishonesty, that even the apparent want of a motive could not repress them.

On the 2d of March Governor Phillip went with a long boat and cutter to examine the broken land, men-

tioned by Captain Cook, about eight miles to the northward of Port Jackson, and by him named *Broken Bay*. This bay proved to be very extensive. The first night they slept in the boats, within a rocky point in the N. W. part of the bay, as the natives, though friendly, appeared to be numerous; and the next day, after passing a bar that had only water for small vessels, they entered a very extensive branch, from which the ebb tide came out so strong that the boats could not row against it in the stream; and here was deep water. This opening appeared to end in several small branches, and in a large lagoon which could not then be examined, as there was not time to seek a channel for the boats among the banks of sand and mud. Most of the land in the upper part of this branch was low and full of swamps. Pelicans and various other birds were here seen in great numbers. Among the rest an uncommon kind, called then the *Hooded Gull*, and supposed to be a non descript; but it appears from a drawing sent to England, to be of that species called by Mr Latham the *Caspian Tern*, and is described by him as the second variety of that species.

Leaving this N. W. branch they proceeded across the bay, and went into the S. W. branch. This is also very extensive; and from it runs a second opening to the westward, affording shelter for almost any number of ships. In this part, as far as could then be examined, there is water for vessels of the greatest burthen, the soundings being at the entrance seven fathoms, and in going up still more. Continual rains prevented them from taking a survey. The land here was found much higher than at Port Jackson, more rocky, and equally covered with timber. Large trees were seen growing even on the summits of the mountains, which appeared accessible only to birds. Immediately round the headland that forms the southern entrance into the bay, there is a third branch, which Governor Phillip thought the finest piece of water he had ever seen; and which therefore he thought worthy to be honoured with the name

nam
is of
Brita
entra
With
The
branc
land n
seen i
from l
inacce

In t
took pla
several
One of
remarka
in gener
less cheer
awe and
with muc
employed
frequently
breast. T
ty the seco
which was
gave their
nayed in t
Governor
eine, a nu
was now fi
n general
he left han
men, he at
the marriag
ut where v
irl of five
utilated;
other who
nom all t

name of *Pitt Water*. This, as well as the S. W. branch, is of sufficient extent to contain all the navy of Great Britain. But on a narrow bar which runs across the entrance it has only eighteen feet depth of water. Within the bar there are from seven to fifteen fathoms. The land is not so high in this part as in the S. W. branch, and there are some good situations where the land might be cultivated. Small springs of water were seen in most of the coves, and three cascades falling from heights, which the rains at that time rendered inaccessible.

In this excursion some interviews with the natives took place. When the party first landed in Broken Bay several women came down to the beach with the men. One of these, a young woman, was very talkative and remarkably cheerful. This was a singular instance, for in general they are observed on this coast to be much less cheerful than the men, and apparently under great awe and subjection. They certainly are not treated with much tenderness, and it is thought that they are employed chiefly in the canoes, in which women have frequently been seen with very young children at the breast. The lively young lady, when she joined the party the second day, in her canoe, stood up and gave a long which was far from unpleasing. The men very readily gave their assistance to the English in making a fire, and behaved in the most friendly manner. In a bay where Governor Phillip and his company landed to draw the seine, a number of the natives again came to them. It was now first observed by the Governor that the women in general had lost two joints from the middle finger of the left hand. As these appeared to be all married women, he at first conjectured this privation to be a part of the marriage ceremony; but going afterwards into a hut where were several women and children, he saw a girl of five or six years of age whose left hand was thus mutilated; and at the same time an old woman, and another who appeared to have had children, on both of whom all the fingers were perfect. Several instances

were afterwards observed of women with child, and of others that were evidently wives, who had not lost the two joints, and of children from whom they had been cut. Whatever be the occasion of this mutilation, it is performed on females only; and considering the imperfection of their instruments, must be a very painful operation. Nothing has been seen in the possession of these people that is at all calculated for performing such an amputation, except a shell fixed to a short stick, and used generally for pointing their spears, or for separating oysters from the rocks. More fingers than one are never cut: and in every instance it is the same finger that has suffered.

The men are distinguished in a different manner: their fingers are not mutilated, but most of them, as other voyagers have observed, want the right front tooth in the upper jaw. Governor Phillip having remarked this, pointed out to them that he had himself lost one of his front-teeth, which occasioned a great clamour; and it was thought that he derived some merit in their opinion from this circumstance. The perforation of the cartilage that divides the nostrils, and the strange disfiguring ornament of a long bone or stick thrust through it, was now observed, as described by Captain Cook; and the same appellation of sprit-sail yard, was ludicrously applied to it by the sailors. But several very old men were seen in this excursion who had not lost the tooth, nor had their noses prepared to receive that grotesque appendage: probably, therefore, these are marks of distinction: ambition must have its badge, and where cloaths, are not worn, the body itself must be compelled to bear them.

Whether the scars raised upon the skin were of the kind, or as Captain Cook understood by their signs, marks of sorrow for deceased friends, could not now be learned. They are of a very singular nature: sometimes the skin is raised from the flesh for several inches, appearing as if it were filled with wind, and forming a round surface of more than a quarter of an inch diameter. Their

die
bre
doe
put
ed a
othe
that
mar
not
finge
they
no at
with
conce
timidi
distan
men,
canoes
given t
with t
reserve
the jeal
dently
One
their ho
mother
is suppo
the can
ly draw
strike it
Whe
visited,
the bran
count of
rain. A
ved not
this tran
on the r
Having

dies are scarred in various parts, particularly about the breasts and arms, and frequently on the instep. Nor does the head always escape; one man in particular, putting aside the hair on the forepart of his head, showed a scar, and then pointing to one on the foot, and to others on different parts of the body, seemed to intimate that he thought himself much honoured by having these marks upon him from head to foot. The women did not appear equally forward to produce the mutilated finger; nor was it always possible to ascertain whether they had lost the joints or not. For though they made no attempt to secret themselves, nor seemed impressed with any idea that one part of the body more requires concealment than another, yet there was a shyness and timidity among them which frequently kept them at a distance. They never would approach so readily as the men, and sometimes would not even land from their canoes, but made signs that what was offered should be given to the men. We are not yet enough acquainted with the manners of the people to decide whether this reserve proceeds from the fears of the women, or from the jealousy of their husbands, by whom they are evidently kept in great subordination.

One of their modes of fishing was now observed: their hooks are made of the inside of a shell resembling mother of pearl. When a fish which has taken the bait is supposed to be too strong to be landed with the line, the canoe is paddled to shore, and while one man gently draws the fish along, another stands prepared to strike it with a spear: in this attempt they seldom fail.

When the southern branch of Broken Bay was first visited, the getting round the headland that separates the branches, was attended with some difficulty, on account of very heavy squalls of wind, accompanied with rain. An attempt was made to land, where there proved not to be sufficient water for the boat. During this transaction, an old man and a youth were standing on the rocks where the boat was trying to approach. Having seen how much our men laboured to get under

der land, they were very solicitous to point out the deepest water. Afterwards they brought fire, and seemed willing to render any service in their power. Two of the officers suffered themselves to be conducted by the old man to a cave at some distance, but declined going in, though he invited them by all the signs he could invent. This was rather unfortunate, as the rain was falling very violently, and the cave was found next day sufficiently large to have sheltered the whole party. The old man certainly took great pains to make this understood, but the motive of his earnestness unluckily was mistaken, and his visitors suffered for their suspicions. He afterwards assisted in clearing away the bushes, and making preparations for the people to sleep on shore, and next morning was rewarded with presents for his very friendly behaviour. Two days afterwards, when Governor Phillip returned to the same spot, the old man met him with a dance and a song of joy. His son was with him, and several of the natives: a hatchet was given them and other presents; and as the Governor was to return next day to Port Jackson, it was hoped that the friendship thus begun, and so studiously cultivated, would have continued firm. But as soon as it was dark, the old man stole a spade, and was caught with it in his hand. Governor Phillip thought it necessary, on this occasion, to shew some tokens of displeasure, and therefore when the delinquent approached, he gave him two or three slight slaps on the shoulder, and then pushed him away, at the same time pointing to the spade. This gentle chastisement at once destroyed their friendship. The old man immediately seized a spear, and coming close up to the Governor, poised it, and seemed determined to strike. But seeing that his threats were disregarded, (for his antagonist chose rather to risk the effects of his anger than to fire upon him) or perhaps dissuaded by something the other natives said, in a few moments he dropped the spear and went away. It was impossible not to be struck with the courage displayed by him on this occasion, for Governor Phillip at the time was not alone,

alone
From
pears
Wales
return
but in
notice
hatche
It w
return
knowl
with t
plan of
had er
dence,
human
by the v
howeve
reproach
The r
Govern
meant to
the coun
timber.
On the
tany Bay
set up two
with him
intercour
terval: b
time in p
ed on Go
be forwar
the Engli
same time
were of c
Some few
deavoured
were, with

alone, but had several officers and men about him. From this and other similar events, personal bravery appears to be a quality in which the natives of New South Wales are not by any means deficient. The old man returned the next morning with many other natives, but in order to convince him of his fault, he was less noticed than his companions, who were presented with hatchets and various other articles.

It was now the 9th of March, and Governor Phillip returned to Port Jackson: having gained some useful knowledge of the country, and maintained an intercourse with the natives without departing from his favourite plan of treating them with the utmost kindness. He had endeavoured at the same time to gain their confidence, if possible, and secure their friendship. If these humane endeavours were afterwards rendered fruitless by the wanton profligacy of some depraved individuals, however he might regret it, he could have no reason to reproach himself.

The rain, which was almost constant, prevented the Governor from returning by land, which otherwise he meant to have done, for the sake of exploring a part of the country which appeared to be good and free from timber.

On the 10th of March the French ships sailed from Botany Bay. M. de la Peyrouse during his stay there had set up two long boats, the frames of which he had brought with him from Europe. There had not been much intercourse between the French and English in this interval: both being too busily employed to waste their time in parties of pleasure. Captain Clonard had waited on Governor Phillip with the letters which were to be forwarded to the French ambassador; and a few of the English officers had gone over by land about the same time to pay a visit to Botany Bay; both parties were of course received with politeness and hospitality. Some few of the convicts contrived to abscond, and endeavoured to get admitted into the French ships, but were, with great propriety, rejected. Those vessels re-

turned

turned towards the N. where they were to make another voyage.

During the stay of M. de la Peyrouse in Botany Bay, Father Le Receveur, who had come out in the *Astrolabe* as a naturalist, died. His death was occasioned by wounds which he received in the unfortunate rencounter at the Navigator's Islands. A slight monument was erected to his memory, with the following inscription,

Hic jacet LE RECEVEUR,
E. F. F. Minimis Gallix Sacerdos,
Physicus in circumnavigatione
Mundi,
Duce DE LA PEYROUSE,
Ob. 17. Feb. 1788.

The monument being soon after destroyed by the natives, Governor Phillip caused the inscription to be engraved on copper, and affixed to a neighbouring tree. M. de la Peyrouse had paid a similar tribute of respect to the memory of Captain Clerke, at the harbour of St Peter and Paul in Kamtschatka.

On the 19th of this month, Lieutenant Ball arrived in the *Supply* from Norfolk Island. He had made that island on the 29th of February, but was five days off the coast before a place could be found at which it was possible to land the stores and provisions. So completely do the rocks surround the island, that it was not easy to find a place even to land a man. At length, however, they succeeded, having discovered at the S. W. end, a small opening in a reef that runs across a bay.—Here the people, provisions, and stores, were all put on shore in perfect safety. The Commandant wrote in high spirits at the promising appearance of his new territory; and subsequent accounts have proved, that the opinion he then formed was not erroneous. He described Norfolk Island as one entire wood, or rather as a garden overrun with the noblest pines, in straightness

size

fize, a
Noth
it has
found
garden
as were
vegeta
petition
the acc
though
greatly
Norfo
rence, a
small isla
the bed
cano. T
of pumic
mixed w
of its for
summit o
dle of the
has given
ceedingly
a strong a
a very tin
each of wh
ing mills:
springs hav
The clim
served from
the sea, and
winter, tha
interruption,
showers from
not indeed o
Island, but
which in all
these, and o
and goats, no
Vol. II.—No

size, and magnitude, far superior to any he had ever seen. Nothing can exceed the fertility of its soil. Wherever it has been since examined, a rich black mould has been found to the depth of five or six feet: and the grain and garden seeds which have been sown, such only excepted as were damaged in the carriage, or by the weevil, have vegetated with the utmost luxuriance. To prevent repetitions, it may perhaps be best to unite in this place the accounts which have been received of this island, though many of them will easily be perceived to be greatly posterior to this first return of the Supply.

Norfolk Island is about seven leagues in circumference, and if not originally formed, like many other small islands, by the eruption of volcanic matter from the bed of the sea, must doubtless have contained a volcano. This conclusion is formed from the vast quantity of pumice stone which is scattered in all parts of it, and mixed with the soil. The crater, or at least some traces of its former existence, will probably be found at the summit of a small mountain, which rises near the middle of the island. To this mountain the Commandant has given the name of *Mount Pitt*. The island is exceedingly well watered. At or near Mount Pitt, rises a strong and copious stream, which flowing through a very fine valley, divides itself into several branches, each of which retains sufficient force to be used in turning mills: and in various parts of the island excellent springs have been discovered.

The climate is pure, salubrious, and delightful, preserved from oppressive heats by constant breezes from the sea, and of so mild a temperature throughout the winter, that vegetation continues there without interruption, one crop succeeding another. Refreshing showers from time to time maintain perpetual verdure; not indeed of grass, for none has yet been seen upon the island, but of the trees, shrubs, and other vegetables which in all parts grow abundantly. On the leaves of these, and of some kinds in particular, the sheep, hogs, and goats, not only live, but thrive and fatten very much.

To the salubrity of the air every individual in this little colony can bear ample testimony, from the uninterrupted state of good health which has been in general enjoyed.

When our settlers landed, there was not a single acre clear of wood in the island, and the trees were so bound together by that kind of creeping shrub called supple jack, interwoven in all directions, as to render it very difficult to penetrate far among them. The Commandant, small as his numbers were at first, by indefatigable activity soon caused a space to be cleared sufficient for the requisite accommodations, and for the production of esculent vegetables of all kinds in the greatest abundance. When the last accounts arrived, three acres of barley were in a very thriving state, and ground was prepared to receive rice and Indian corn. In the wheat there had been a disappointment, the grain that was sown having been so much injured by the weevil, as to be unfit for vegetation. But the people were all at that time in commodious houses; and, according to the declarations of Mr King himself, in his letters to Governor Phillip, there was not a doubt that this colony would be in a situation to support itself intirely without assistance, in less than four years: and with very little in the intermediate time. Even two years would be more than sufficient for this purpose, could a proper supply of black cattle be sent.

Fish are caught in great plenty, and in the proper season very fine turtle. The woods are inhabited by innumerable tribes of birds, many of them very gay in plumage. The most useful are pigeons, which are very numerous, and a bird not unlike the Guinea fowl, except in colour, (being chiefly white) both of which were at first so tame as to suffer themselves to be taken by hand. Of plants that afford vegetables for the table, the chief are cabbage palm, the wild plantain, the fern tree, a kind of wild spinnage, and a tree which produces a diminutive fruit, bearing some resemblance to a currant. This, it is hoped, by transplanting and care, will be much improved in size and flavour.

But

But
ance
the f
other
maste
ter n
cloth,
ing in
tain th
quent
and ei
ten fee
rise to
is said
the bel
from it
fern tre
measuri
cellent
plant pr
oriental
growing
to Engla
The cl
sent to N
place.
is inclose
is a pass
flood, wh
dangerou
who was
attend the
his own
four men
quence of
man. Or
and there
be discove
men in st

But the productions which give the greatest importance to Norfolk Island are the pines and the flax plant, the former rising to a size and perfection unknown in other places, and promising the most valuable supply of masts and spars for our navy in the East Indies; the latter not less estimable for the purposes of making sail-cloth, cordage, and even the finest manufactures; growing in great plenty, and with such luxuriance as to attain the height of eight feet. The pines measure frequently one hundred and sixty, or even one hundred and eighty feet in height, and are sometimes nine or ten feet in diameter at the bottom of the trunk. They rise to about eighty feet without a branch; the wood is said to be of the best quality, almost as light as that of the best Norway masts; and the turpentine obtained from it is remarkable for purity and whiteness. The fern tree is found also of a great height for its species, measuring from seventy to eighty feet, and affords excellent food for the sheep and other small cattle. A plant producing pepper, and supposed to be the true oriental pepper, has been discovered lately in the island, growing in great plenty; and specimens have been sent to England, in order to ascertain this important point.

The chief disadvantage experienced by those who are sent to Norfolk Island, is the want of a good landing place. The bay which has been used for this purpose is inclosed by a reef of coral rock, through which there is a passage only for a boat; and during the tide of flood, when the wind is westerly, the landing is rather dangerous. In one of the debarkations a midshipman, who was ordered to lie within the reef, that he might attend the boats coming to shore, imprudently suffered his own boat to drive into the surf, and was lost with four men. He had been once before overfet in consequence of a similar inattention, and then had lost one man. On the coast of the island are several small bays, and there are still hopes that a better landing place may be discovered; but the necessity of employing all the men in sheltering themselves and the stores from the

weather, or in clearing ground for various purposes, has hitherto prevented Mr King from sending out any persons to complete the examination. Should this enquiry prove unsuccessful, it is proposed to attempt the blowing up of one or two small rocks, by which the reef is rendered dangerous. If this expedient also should fail, the evil must be borne with patience. In summer the landing will generally be sufficiently secure; and seamen, who have seen the bay of Riga, in the Baltic, declare, that it will at all times be safer for a ship to load with masts and spars at Norfolk Island, than in that place, where so many ships are freighted yearly.

Rats are the only quadrupeds which have been found in this island; and from these, as well as from the ants, it was feared the crops might suffer; but no great inconvenience has yet been experienced from them; and proper exertions seldom fail in a short time to reduce the number of such enemies, enough to make their depredations very inconsiderable. On the whole, Norfolk Island certainly deserves to be considered as an acquisition of some importance, and is likely to answer even the most sanguine expectations. Some canoes have been found on the rocks, which were supposed to have been driven from New Zealand; but the appearance of a fresh cocoa nut and a small piece of manufactured wood, which seemed to have been only a small time in the water, has lately suggested an idea that probably some inhabited island may lie at no great distance. There has not been as yet any opportunity to determine whether this opinion be well founded or not.

A small island, but entirely uninhabited, was discovered by Lieutenant Ball in his passage to Norfolk Island. In his return he examined it, and found that the shore abounded with turtle, but there was no good anchorage. He named it Lord Howe Island. It is in 31 d. 36 m. S. latitude, and 159 d. E. longitude. Part of this island being very high may be seen at the distance of sixteen leagues, and a rock to the S. E. of it, may be discerned

disce
25 m
reef
obse
could
to the
To
detac
an of
sisting
existe
mittee
eigh
seque
youth
to kno
authen
Phili
the orig
ceston
the son
ried the
at law.
for his
He deri
an early
he went
Captain
From th
five year
some acc
ed upon
ploymen
life. He
Liverpoo
tinued till
And hav
October
Byron, in

discerned even at eighteen leagues. In latitude 29 d. 25 m. S. longitude 159 d. 59 m. E. a very dangerous reef has since been seen. The ship from which it was observed was then four leagues to the southward, and it could not at that time be ascertained how far it extends to the northward.

To expedite the cultivation of Norfolk Island a fresh detachment was sent thither in October, consisting of an officer and eight marines, with thirty convicts, consisting of ten women and twenty men: Thus, there existed on this islet, when the last accounts were transmitted, forty-four men and sixteen women, who, having eighteen months provisions, lived comfortably on this sequestered spot, under the prudent management of a youthful ruler, of whose busy life the reader may wish to know all the particulars, which at present can be authentically told.

Philip Gidley King, who had the honour to conduct the original settlers to Norfolk Island, was born at Launceston in Cornwall, on the 23d of April, 1758. He is the son of Philip King, of that town, draper, who married the daughter of John Gidley, of Exeter, attorney at law. Much as he owes to his parents, he is indebted for his scholastic learning to Mr Bailey at Yarmouth. He derives, probably, some advantages from making an early choice of his profession. At the age of twelve, he went to the East Indies on board the Swallow frigate, Captain Shirley, by whom he was rated a midshipman. From this station he returned to England, at the end of five years, with much knowledge of his business, and some acquaintance with the world. In 1775, he entered upon real service; and has continued in active employment from that period to this great epoch of his life. He went to Virginia with Captain Bellew, in the Liverpool, during the year 1775: with whom he continued till the shipwreck of that frigate in Delaware Bay. And having entered on board the Princess Royal, in October 1778, he was made a Lieutenant by Admiral Byron, in the Renown. on the 26th of November following.

lowing. He returned to England in the subsequent year; and served in the Channel on board the Kite cutter, and Ariadne-frigate, till the beginning of 1783. With Captain Phillip he went to the East Indies, as Lieutenant of the Europe, in January 1783; from whence he returned on the restoration of complete peace, in May 1784. In this service it was, that Phillip and King became acquainted with the merit of each other. And when the expedition to New South Wales was projected, King was appointed Lieutenant of the Sirius, on the 25th of October, 1786, at the same time that Phillip was nominated Commander of the voyage.

On the 25th of March, the Charlotte, Lady Penryn, and Scarborough transports, having been cleared of all their stores, were discharged from government service, and left at liberty to proceed for China, whenever their commanders should think proper. The other ships were of necessity detained till the store-houses could be finished.

The month of April was not distinguished by any events that deserve to be related, except two expeditions of Governor Phillip for the purpose of exploring the country. On the first of these excursions he set out on the 15th with provisions for four days; attended by several officers, and a small party of marines. They landed at the head of a small cove, called Shell Cove, near the entrance of the harbour on the north side. Proceeding in this direction they arrived at a large lake, which they examined, though not without great labour. It was surrounded by a considerable extent of bog and marshy ground, in which, in the course of their progress, they were frequently plunged up to the waist. On this lake they first observed a black swan, which species, though proverbially rare in other parts of the world, is here by no means uncommon, being found on most of the lakes. This was a very noble bird, larger than the common swan, and equally beautiful in form. On being shot at, it rose and discovered that its wings were

we
rec
I
fwa
thin
whi
in t
strea
proc
the
obsta
and
flow,
the str
same
gained
vail, an
On
ceeded
covered
obstacle
in many
fifteen n
ed a ver
tains, to
most no
most sou
these wa
which th
almost co
among th
out maki
On the
undertake
near the h
country, b
and after
tempts to
relinquish

were edged with white: the bill was tinged with red.

In three days, with great difficulty they passed the swamps and marshes which lie near the harbour. Nothing can more fully point out the great improvement which may be made by the industry of a civilized people in this country, than the circumstances of the small streams which descend into Port Jackson. They all proceed from swamps produced by the stagnation of the water after rising from the springs. When the obstacles which impede their course can be removed, and free channels opened through which they may flow, the adjacent ground will gradually be drained, and the streams themselves will become more useful; at the same time habitable and salubrious situations will be gained in places where at present perpetual damps prevail, and the air itself appears to stagnate.

On leaving these low grounds, they found them succeeded by a rocky and barren country. The hills were covered with flowering shrubs, but by means of various obstacles the ascending and descending was difficult, and in many parts impracticable. At the distance of about fifteen miles from the sea-coast Governor Phillip obtained a very fine view of the inland country and its mountains, to several of which he now gave names. The most northern of them he named Carmarthen Hills, the most southern Lansdown Hills; one which lay between these was called Richmond Hill. From the manner in which these mountains appeared to rise, it was thought almost certain that a large river must descend from among them. But it was now necessary to return without making any further examination.

On the 22d another excursion of the same kind was undertaken: Governor Phillip landed with his party near the head of the harbour. Here they found a good country, but in a short time arrived at a very close cover; and after passing the chief part of the day in fruitless attempts to make their ways through it, were obliged to relinquish the attempt, and return. The next day, by keeping

keeping close to the banks of a small creek for about four miles, they contrived to pass the cover, and for the three succeeding days continued their course to the westward. The country through which they travelled was singularly fine, level, or rising in small hills of a very pleasing and picturesque appearance. The soil excellent, except in a few small spots where it was stony. The trees growing at the distance of from twenty to forty feet from each other, and in general entirely free from underwood, which was confined to the stony and barren spots. On the fifth day they ascended a small eminence, whence, for the first time in this second expedition, they saw Carmarthen and Lansdown Hills. The country round this hill was so beautiful, that Governor Phillip gave it the name of *Belle-vue*. They were still apparently thirty miles from the mountains which it had been their object to reach, and not having found it practicable, with the tents, arms, and other necessaries, to carry more than six days provisions, were obliged to return. Even with this small stock, the officers as well as men, had been under the necessity of carrying heavy loads. Water for the use of the day was always taken; for though it happened in every instance that pools of water were found which had remained after the rains, yet this was a supply on which they could not previously depend. The extraordinary difficulty of penetrating into this country had now been fully experienced; where unexpected delays from deep ravines and other obstacles, frequently force the traveller from his direct course, and baffle every conjecture concerning the time required for passing a certain tract. The utmost extent of this excursion in a direct line had not been more than thirty miles, and it had taken up five days. The return of the party was effected with much more ease; the track was made, and the trees marked the whole way where they had passed; with these assistances they reached their boats in a day and a half.

It was still the general opinion that the appearance of the country promised the discovery of a large river in

that
pursu
whic
Lans
impo
anxi
which
sign w
nor PH
time of
then co
quently
two last
found it
of a few
fatigue.

The co
and so fit
nor resol
as a suffic
more im
goodness
the native
its fertility
coast fish
where tha
with their
among th
of animal
the Englis
days they
two meals.
natives was
which wer
outs the bo
trees were
that of the
Phillip; pa
tently that i
Vol II. —N

that district, whenever the line now taken could be fully pursued. Another expedition was therefore planned, in which it was determined, if possible, to reach either Lansdown or Carmarthen Hills: and the hope of so important a discovery as that of a river made every one anxious to go, notwithstanding the great fatigue with which these undertakings were attended. But this design was for the present unavoidably deferred. Governor Phillip, who had not been perfectly well even at the time of setting out on the excursion to Broken Bay, had then contracted a severe pain in his side, by sleeping frequently on the wet ground. This complaint had in the two last journies received so much increase, that he found it absolutely necessary to allow himself the respite of a few weeks, before he again encountered so much fatigue.

The country explored in this last journey was so good and so fit for the purposes of cultivation, that the Governor resolved to send a detachment to settle there, as soon as a sufficient number could be spared from works of more immediate necessity. But notwithstanding the goodness of the soil it is a matter of astonishment how the natives, who know not how to avail themselves of its fertility, can subsist in the inland country. On the coast fish makes a considerable part of their food, but where that cannot be had, it seems hardly possible that with their spears, the only missile weapon yet observed among them, they should be able to procure any kind of animal food. With the assistance of their guns the English gentlemen could not obtain, in the last six days they were out, more than was barely sufficient for two meals. Yet, that these parts are frequented by the natives was undeniably proved by the temporary huts which were seen in several places. Near one of these huts the bones of a kangaroo were found, and several trees were seen on fire. A piece of a root resembling that of the fern tree was also picked up by Governor Phillip; part of this root had been chewed, and so recently that it was thought it could not have been left many

minutes. It seemed evident by several marks, that the natives had only fled at the approach of the English party, but so effectually did they conceal themselves, that not one was seen.

The number of the natives in these inland parts must, however, be very small. Whether these reside by choice where they must encounter so many difficulties, or whether they are driven from the society of those who inhabit the coast, has not yet been discovered. The huts seen here consisted of single pieces of bark, about eleven feet in length, and from four to six in breadth, bent in the middle while fresh from the tree, and set up so as to form an acute angle, not a little resembling cards set up by children. It was conjectured, that the chief use of these imperfect structures might be, to conceal them from the animals for which they must frequently be obliged to lie in wait. They may also afford shelter from a shower of rain to one or two who sit and lie under them. The bark of many trees was observed to be cut into notches, as if for the purpose of climbing; and in several there were holes, apparently the retreat of some animal, but enlarged by the natives for the purpose of catching the inhabitant. The enlargement of these holes, with their imperfect instruments, must itself be a work of time, and must require no little patience. In some places, where the hole was rather too high to be reached from the ground, boughs of trees were laid to facilitate the ascent. The animals that take refuge in those places are probably the squirrel, the opossum, or the kangaroo-rat. At the bottom of one of these trees, the skin of a flying squirrel was found.

In many places fires had lately been made; but in one only were seen any shells of oysters or muscles, and there not more than half a dozen. Fish-bones were not found at all, which seems to prove, that in their journeys inland these people do not carry with them any provisions of that kind. Kangaroos were frequently seen, but were so shy that it was very difficult to shoot them. With respect to these animals, it is rather an extraordinary circumstance,

cum
and
are f
count
boa i
progr
of the
to con
traord
one g
sufficie
rat and
has yet
pounds
kinds,
weight
hair is
the larg
taken, h
have liv
possible
known,
in this j
fed on g
been less
usual siz
non, tho
limits o
The tail
to be use
severe b
pursuit.
bably be
of fresh
upper an
been sho
The na
and unciv
tempt to

cumstance, that, notwithstanding their great shyness, and notwithstanding they are daily shot at, more of them are seen near the camp than in any other part of the country. The kangaroo, though it resembles the jerboa in the peculiarity of using only the hinder legs in progression, does not belong to that genus. The pouch of the female, in which the young are nursed, is thought to connect it rather with the opossum tribe. This extraordinary formation, hitherto esteemed peculiar to that one genus, seems, however, in New Holland, not to be sufficiently characteristic: it has been found both in the rat and the squirrel kind. The largest kangaroo which has yet been shot weighed about one hundred and forty pounds. But it has been discovered that there are two kinds, one of which seldom exceeds sixty pounds in weight: these live chiefly on the high grounds: their hair is of a reddish cast, and the head is shorter than in the larger sort. Young kangaroos which have been taken, have in a few days grown very tame, but none have lived more than two or three weeks. Yet it is still possible that when their proper food shall be better known, they may be domesticated. Near some water, in this journey, was found the dung of an animal that fed on grass, which, it was supposed, could not have been less than a horse. A kangaroo, so much above the usual size, would have been an extraordinary phenomenon, though no larger animal has yet been seen, and the limits of growth in that species are not ascertained. The tail of the kangaroo, which is very large, is found to be used as a weapon of offence, and has given such severe blows to dogs as to oblige them to desist from pursuit. Its flesh is coarse and lean, nor would it probably be used for food, where there was not a scarcity of fresh provisions. The disproportion between the upper and lower parts of this animal is greater than has been shown in any former delineations of it.

The natives of New South Wales, though in so rude and uncivilized a state as not even to have made an attempt towards clothing themselves, notwithstanding that

at times they evidently suffer from the cold and wet, are not without notions of sculpture. In all these excursions of Governor Phillip, and in the neighbourhood of Botany Bay and Port Jackson, the figures of animals, of shields, and weapons, and even of men, have been seen carved upon the rocks, roughly indeed, but sufficiently well to ascertain very fully what was the object intended. Fish were often represented, and in one place the form of a large lizard was sketched out with tolerable accuracy. On the top of one of the hills, the figure of a man in the attitude usually assumed by them when they begin to dance, was executed in a still superior style. That the arts of imitation and amusement should thus in any degree precede those of necessity, seems an exception to the rules laid down by theory for the progress of invention. But perhaps it may better be considered as a proof that the climate is never so severe as to make the provision of covering or shelter a matter of absolute necessity. Had these men been exposed to a colder atmosphere, they would doubtless have had clothes and houses, before they attempted to become sculptors.

In all the country hitherto explored, the parties have seldom gone a quarter of a mile without seeing trees which had been on fire. As violent thunder storms are not uncommon on this coast, it is not impossible that they may have been burnt by lightning, which the gum-tree is thought particularly to attract; but it is probable also that they have been set on fire by the natives. The gum-tree is highly combustible, and it is a common practice with them to kindle their fires at the root of one of these trees. When they quit a place they never extinguish the fire they have made, but leave it to burn out, or to communicate its flames to the tree, as accidental circumstances may determine.

Governor Phillip, on his return from this excursion, had the mortification to find that five ewes and a lamb had been killed very near the camp, and in the middle of the day. How this had happened was not known,

kn
be
lof
for
cou
an
are
part
The
and
ed,
in h
whic
two
Fro
of the
prefer
barley
would
mice.
it had
was se
fine ag
On
from L
having
with sq
her best
The thr
off the i
About
ing for v
the cam
back. H
for the fa
tives in
head. A
pierced w

known, but it was conjectured that they must have been killed by dogs belonging to the natives. The loss of any part of the stock of cattle was a serious misfortune, since it must be a considerable time before it could be replaced. Fish affords, in this place, only an uncertain resource: on some days great quantities are caught, though not sufficient to save any material part of the provisions; but at times it is very scarce. The three transports bound to China, sailed the 5th, 6th, and 8th of May; and the Supply having been caulked, sailed on the 6th to Lord Howe Island for turtle, in hopes of giving some check to the scurvy, with which the people were still so much affected that near two hundred were incapable of work.

From the great labour which attended the clearing of the ground it proved to be impracticable to sow at present more than eight or ten acres with wheat and barley: and it was apprehended that even this crop would suffer from the depredations of ants and field mice. In the beginning of May it was supposed, as it had been once or twice before, that the rainy season was set in; but in about a week the weather became fine again.

On the 25th of May, the Supply tender returned from Lord Howe Island, but unfortunately without having been able to procure any turtle. She had met with squally weather, and had been obliged to cut away her best bower anchor, but suffered no other damage. The three transports bound for China had all appeared off the island while the Supply remained there.

About this time one of the convicts who, in searching for vegetables, had gone a considerable way from the camp, returned very dangerously wounded in the back. He said, that another man who had gone out for the same purpose, had been carried off by the natives in his fight, after having been wounded in the head. A shirt and hat were afterwards found, both pierced with spears, in one of the huts of the natives; but

but no intelligence of the man could be gained. There could be little doubt that the convicts had been the aggressors, though the man who returned strongly denied having given any kind of provocation.

On the thirtieth of May, two men who had been employed in collecting rushes for thatch at some distance from the camp, were found dead. One of them had four spears in his body, one of which had pierced entirely through it: the other had not any marks of violence upon him. In this case it was clearly proved that the first injury had been offered by the unfortunate men, who paid so dearly for their dishonesty and disobedience of orders for they had been seen with a canoe, which they had taken from one of the fishing places.— These events were much regretted by Governor Phillip, as tending entirely to the frustration of the plan he had so much at heart, of conciliating the affections of the natives, and establishing a friendly intercourse with them.

As the rush-cutters tools had been carried away, the Governor thought it might be possible to discover the natives who had been concerned in this unfortunate affray; and to make them understand that the conduct of their assailants had been entirely unwarranted, and was very highly disapproved. He judged the attempt to be at least worth making, as it seemed the only way to restore that confidence which must have been interrupted by this affair. The next day, therefore, he went out with a small party, consisting altogether of twelve persons, and landed at the place where the men were killed. After traversing the country for more than twenty miles, they arrived at the north shore of Botany Bay, without having met with one of the natives.

In this place, at length, they saw about twenty canoes employed in fishing: and when the fires were made, and the party encamped to pass the night upon the beach, it was fully expected that some of those in the canoes would have joined them, but not one appeared.

The

Th
on
lon
min
ing
grea
belo
The
were
make
The
made
Gove
friend
with
the En
dred a
transac
that the
or incli
number
cepted o
stone ha
ble man
ed at a
wards br
were off
these pec
had been
and the G
ly terms,
of treatin
in order t
with all h
before he a
ship, a lan
which no
which in f

The next morning, though fifty canoes were drawn up on the beach, not a single person could be found belonging to them. Governor Phillip had now determined to return to Port Jackson; but as he went, keeping for some time near the sea-coast, he discovered a great number of the natives, apparently more than could belong to that district, assembled at the mouth of a cave. The party was within ten yards of them before they were perceived, and the Governor had hardly time to make his people halt before numbers appeared in arms. The man who seemed to take the lead, as he advanced made signs for the English to retire, but when he saw Governor Phillip approach alone, unarmed, and in a friendly manner, he gave his spear away, and met him with perfect confidence. In less than three minutes the English party found itself surrounded by one hundred and twelve men; but nothing occurred in this transaction which could in the least confirm the idea, that the natives were accustomed to act with treachery, or inclined to take any cruel advantage of superiority in numbers. The moment the offered friendship was accepted on their side, they laid down their spears and stone hatchets, and joined the party in the most amicable manner. Numbers of women and children remained at a small distance, some of whom the men afterwards brought down to receive the little articles which were offered as presents. Nothing was seen among these people which could at all prove that any of them had been engaged in the affray with the rush-cutters; and the Governor parted with them on the most friendly terms, but more convinced than ever of the necessity of treating them with a proper degree of confidence, in order to prevent disagreement. Had he gone up with all his party, or had he even hesitated a moment before he advanced himself, making the signals of friendship, a lance would probably have been thrown, after which nothing could have prevented a rencounter, which in such circumstances must have been fatal.

Here

Here was seen the finest stream of water that had hitherto been discovered in the country, but the cove into which it runs lies very open to the sea. When the natives saw that the English were going forward towards the next cove, one of them, an old man, made signs that he might be allowed to go first. He did so, and as soon as he had ascended the hill, called out, holding up both his hands, (the usual signal of amity among these people) to signify to the natives in the next cove that they who were advancing were friends. The Governor's party did not, however, descend to that cove, but saw about forty men, so that, unless they had assembled themselves on some particular occasion, they must be more numerous in that part than had been before imagined. Governor Phillip had calculated before, from the parties he had seen, that in Botany Bay, Port Jackson, Broken Bay, and all the intermediate country, the inhabitants could not exceed one thousand five hundred. In crossing the hills at this time between Botany Bay and Port Jackson, smoke was seen on the top of Lansdown Hills, which seems to prove beyond a doubt, that the country is inhabited as far as those mountains, which are not less than fifty miles from the sea.

Further enquiries having given some reason to suppose, that one of the natives had been murdered, and several wounded, previously to the attack made upon the rush-cutters, Governor Phillip on his return, proclaimed the reward of emancipation to any convict who should discover the aggressors. This step, if it did not in this instance procure any information, seemed likely to prevent such acts of violence in future.

No very good fortune had hitherto attended the live stock belonging to the settlement, but the heaviest blow was yet to come. About this time the two bulls and four cows, belonging to Government and to the Governor, having been left for a time by the man who was appointed to attend them, strayed into the woods, and though they were traced to some distance, never could

be r
time
T
due
and
fun-
twen
marin
fun-f
from
whol
not b
four
banish
ceived
in the
with t
charac
a sing
minior
to all
any th
mark a
good o
in mor
that of
It w
name
Govern
been fi
the sak
public
The bo
the we
north,
southw
includi
leaving
nearly
Vol. I

be recovered. This was a loss which must be for some time irreparable.

The fourth of June was not suffered to pass without due celebration. It was a day of remission from labour, and of general festivity throughout the settlement. At sun-rise the Sirius and Supply fired each a salute of twenty-one guns, and again at one o'clock, when the marines on shore also saluted with three volleys. At sun-set the same honours were a third time repeated from the ships; large bonfires were lighted, and the whole camp afforded a scene of joy. That there might not be any exception to the happiness of this day, the four convicts who had been reprieved from death, and banished to an island in the middle of the harbour, received a full pardon, and were sent for to bear their part in the general exultation. The Governor, in his letters, with that humanity which so strongly distinguishes his character, says, he trusts that on this day there was not a single heavy heart in this part of his Majesty's dominions. His own house was the centre of conviviality to all who could be admitted to that society, nor was any thing neglected which in such a situation could mark a day of celebrity, consistently with propriety and good order. Perhaps no birth-day was ever celebrated in more places, or more remote from each other, than that of his Majesty on this day.

It was now, it seems, first generally known, that the name of Cumberland County had been given by the Governor to this part of the territory. This name had been fixed before the assembling of the first courts, for the sake of preserving regularity in the form of the public acts, in which it is usual to name the country. The boundaries fixed for Cumberland County were, on the west, Carmarthen and Lansdown Hills: on the north, the northern parts of Broken Bay; and to the southward, the southern parts of Botany Bay. Thus including completely these three principal bays, and leaving the chief place of settlement at Sydney Cove nearly in the centre.

On the 22d of June was a slight shock of an earthquake, which did not last more than two or three seconds. It was felt by most people in the camp, and by the Governor himself, who heard at the same time a noise from the southward, which he took at first for the report of guns fired at a great distance.

On the 24th, a convict who had absconded on the 5th, having been guilty of a robbery, returned into the camp almost starved. He had hoped to subsist in the woods, but found it impossible. One of the natives gave him a fish, and then made signs for him to go away. He said, that afterwards he joined a party of the natives, who would have burnt him, but that with some difficulty he made his escape; and he pretended to have seen the remains of a human body actually lying on a fire, but little credit can be given to reports from such a quarter. He was of opinion that the natives were at this time in great distress for food, and said, that he had seen four of them dying in the woods, who made signs for something to eat, as if they were perishing through hunger. It is certain that very little fish could be caught at this time, and the convict seemed desirous to suggest the notion that they supplied their necessities occasionally with human flesh; but there seems to be no good foundation for such an opinion. This man was tried for his offence, pleaded guilty, and suffered with another criminal.

It was now sufficiently ascertained, that though the necessity of subsisting so long chiefly upon salt provisions, and of remaining encamped in very wet weather had produced the scurvy, and other disorders common in such circumstances, the climate itself wherein this new settlement is fixed is mild and salubrious. Heavy rains had generally attended the changes of the moon during the winter months, but there had not been any time that could properly be called a rainy season. The clearing away of the woods will of course assist the circulation of air, and continually increase the healthfulness of the place. Violent storms of thunder and lightning sometimes

some
varia
frequ
morn
Th
platio
dually
satisfac
than v
self up
appear
the clo
now a
overgro
underw
miscuo
selves;
which a
mediate
spot tol
than the
employ
increas
duces a
inextrica
ance of
opened,
at least
made the
mer conf
To thi
now at
which d
town, to
main gua
this space
permanen
cept in co
town be f

sometimes happened, and Governor Phillip observed the variation of his thermometer, in the shade, to amount frequently to thirty-three degrees, between eight in the morning and two in the afternoon.

There are few things more pleasing than the contemplation of order and useful arrangement, arising gradually out of tumult and confusion; and perhaps this satisfaction cannot any where be more fully enjoyed than where a settlement of civilized people is fixing itself upon a newly discovered or savage coast. The wild appearance of land entirely untouched by cultivation, the close and perplexed growing of trees, interrupted now and then by barren spots, bare rocks, or spaces overgrown with weeds, flowers, flowering shrubs, or underwood, scattered and intermingled in the most promiscuous manner, are the first objects that present themselves; afterwards, the irregular placing of the first tents which are pitched, or huts which are erected for immediate accommodation, wherever chance presents a spot tolerably free from obstacles, or more easily cleared than the rest, with the bustle of various hands busily employed in a number of the most incongruous works, increases rather than diminishes the disorder, and produces a confusion of effect, which for a time appears inextricable, and seems to threaten an endless continuance of perplexity. But by degrees large spaces are opened, plans are formed, lines marked, and a prospect at least of future regularity is clearly discerned, and is made the more striking by the recollection of the former confusion.

To this latter state the settlement at Sydney Cove had now at length arrived. Lines are there traced out which distinguish the principal street of an intended town, to be terminated by the Governor's house, the main guard, and the criminal court. In some parts of this space temporary barracks at present stand, but no permanent buildings will be suffered to be placed, except in conformity to the plan laid down. Should the town be still further extended in future, the form of

other streets is also traced in such a manner as to ensure a free circulation of air. The principal streets, according to this design, will be two hundred feet wide; the ground proposed for them to the southward is nearly level, and is altogether an excellent situation for buildings. It is proposed by Governor Phillip that when houses are to be built here, the grants of land shall be made with such clauses as will prevent the building of more than one house on one allotment, which is to consist of sixty feet in front, and one hundred and fifty feet in depth. These regulations will preserve a kind of uniformity in the buildings, prevent narrow streets, and exclude many inconveniences which a rapid increase of inhabitants might otherwise occasion hereafter. It has been also an object of the Governor's attention to place the public buildings in situations that will be eligible at all times, and particularly to give the storehouses and hospital sufficient space for future enlargement, should it be found necessary.

The first huts that were erected here were composed of very perishable materials, the soft wood of the cabbage palm, being only designed to afford immediate shelter. The necessity of using the wood quite green made it also the less likely to prove durable. The huts of the convicts were still more slight, being composed only of upright posts, wattled with slight twigs, and plastered up with clay. Barracks and huts were afterwards formed of materials rather more lasting. Buildings of stone might easily have been raised, had there been any means of procuring lime for mortar. The stone which has been found is of three sorts: A fine freestone, reckoned equal in goodness to that of Portland; an indifferent kind of sand stone, or firestone; and a sort which appears to contain a mixture of iron.

But neither chalk, nor any species of lime-stone has yet been discovered. In building a small house for the governor on the eastern side of the Cove, lime was made of oyster shells, collected in the neighbouring coves; but it cannot be expected that lime should be
supplied

suppl
for an
move
lic bu
ken to
destin
terials
to give
are no
bricks
have b
have b
is heav
and fr
found i
vious se
The
in a ver
and is l
On the
town, i
Govern
ing the
begun a
men hu
flow by
men, th
taking fo
lies near
part one
which d
that of a
danger o
of thunde
tion to h
lodged in
most com
the west
small obse

supplied in this manner for many buildings, or indeed for any of great extent. Till this discovery shall be removed by the discovery of chalk or lime-stone, the public buildings must go on very slowly, unless care be taken to send out those articles as ballast in all the ships destined for Port Jackson. In the mean time the materials can only be laid in clay, which makes it necessary to give great thickness to the walls, and even then they are not so firm as might be wished. Good clay for bricks is found near Sydney Cove, and very good bricks have been made. The wood from the specimens that have been received in England, appears to be good; it is heavy indeed, but fine grained, and apparently strong, and free from knots. The imperfections that were found in it at first arose probably from the want of previous seasoning.

The hospital is placed on the west side of the Cove, in a very healthful situation, entirely clear of the town; and is built in such a manner as to last for some years. On the high ground between the hospital and the town, if water can be found by sinking wells, it is the Governor's intention to erect the barracks, surrounding them with proper works. These were to have begun as soon as the transports were cleared, and the men huted, but the progress of work was rendered so slow by the want of an adequate number of able workmen, that it was necessary to postpone that undertaking for a time. The ground marked out for a church lies nearer to the town, so that this edifice will form in part one side of the principal parade. The design which demanded the more immediate execution was that of a storehouse, which might be secure from the danger of fire. In a country exposed to frequent storms of thunder and lightning, it was rather an uneasy situation to have all the provisions and other necessaries lodged in wooden buildings, covered with thatch of the most combustible kind. On the point of land that forms the west side of the Cove, and on an elevated spot, a small observatory has been raised under the direction of
Lieutenant

Lieutenant Dawes, who was charged by the Board of Longitude with the care of observing the expected comet. The longitude of this observatory is ascertained to be 159 d. 19 m. 30 f. E. from Greenwich, and the latitude 32 d. 52 m. 30 f. S. A small house, built by the Lieutenant Governor for himself, forms at present the corner of the parade; the principal street will be carried on at right angles with the front of this building. Instead of thatch, they now use shingles made from a tree in appearance like a fir, but producing a wood not unlike the English oak. This, though more secure than thatching, is not enough so for storehouses. For these, if slate-stone should not be found, tiles must be made of the clay which has been used for bricks. The principal farm is situated in the next cove to the east of the town, and less than half a mile from it. When the plan was drawn it contained about nine acres laid down in corn of different kinds. Later accounts speak of six acres of wheat, eight of barley, and six of other grain, as raised on the public account, and in a very promising way.

Sydney Cove lies open to the N. E. and is continued in a S. W. direction for near a thousand yards, gradually decreasing from the breadth of about one thousand four hundred feet, till it terminates in a point, where it receives a small stream of fresh water. The anchorage extends about two thousand feet up the cove, and has soundings in general of four fathoms near the shore, and five, six, or seven, nearer the middle of the channel. It is perfectly secure in all winds; and for a considerable way up on both sides, ships can lie almost close to the shore: nor are there, in any part of it, rocks or shallows to render the navigation dangerous. Such a situation could not fail to appear desirable to a discerning man, whose object it was to establish a settlement, which he knew must for some time depend for support on the importation of the principal necessaries of life.

It is supposed that metals of various kinds abound in the soil on which the town is placed. A convict, who had formerly been used to work in the Staffordshire lead mines,

min
they
ore:
whic
stock
verne
taine
herea
he str
diciou
people
ferent
greater
places
substan
provin
contin
lead.
brown,
with wh
plenty.
this clay
be separ
The c
whole, as
not ever
the soil, t
part, is fu
ccast. A
and the C
thrive exc
plentiful,
far to this
ellent cau
The orang
re improv
ble, the c
ed to any
articles of c

mines, declared very positively, that the ground which they were now clearing, contains a large quantity of that ore: and copper is supposed to lie under some rocks which were blown up in sinking a cellar for the public stock of spirituous liquors. It is the opinion of the Governor himself that several metals are actually contained in the earth hereabouts, and that mines may hereafter be worked to great advantage: but at present he strongly discourages any search of this kind, very judiciously discerning, that in the present situation of his people, which requires so many exertions of a very different nature, the discovering of a mine would be the greatest evil that could befall the settlement. In some places where they dug, in making wells, they found a substance which at first was taken for a metal, but which proving perfectly refractory in a very strong and long continued heat, has since been concluded to be black lead. The kind of pigment called by painters Spanish brown, is found in great abundance, and the white clay with which the natives paint themselves is still in greater plenty. The Abbe Le Receveur was of opinion, that this clay, if cleared from the sand, which might easily be separated, would make excellent porcelain.

The climate at Sydney Cove is considered, on the whole, as equal to the finest in Europe. The rains are not ever of long duration, and there are seldom any fogs: the soil, though in general light, and rather sandy in this part, is full as good as usually is found so near the seacoast. All the plants and fruit trees brought from Brasil and the Cape, which were not damaged in the passage, thrive exceedingly; and vegetables have now become plentiful, both the European sorts and such as are peculiar to this country. In the Governor's garden are excellent cauli-flowers, and melons very fine of their kinds. The orange trees flourish, and the fig trees and vines are improving still more rapidly. In a climate so favourable, the cultivation of the vine may doubtless be carried to any degree of perfection; and should not other articles of commerce divert the attention of the settlers from

from this point, the wines of New South Wales may, perhaps, hereafter be sought with avidity, and become an indispensable part of the luxury of European tables.

The rank grass under the trees, unfortunately proved fatal to all the sheep purchased by Governor Phillip, on his own and on the public account. Those which private individuals kept close to their own tents, and fed entirely there, were preserved. Hogs and poultry not only thrive but increase very fast; black cattle will doubtless succeed as well, and it will be easy in future to secure them from straying. The horses have not met with any accident.

The last dispatches from Governor Phillip bring an account of his having sent a small detachment up to that ground at the upper end of Port Jackson, which he discovered in one of his excursions to be so highly fit for cultivation. This party consisted of a captain, two lieutenants of marines, with twenty-five non-commissioned officers and privates: about fifty convicts were added as labourers. This spot is very pleasant, and has been named by the Governor *Rose-hill*. The flax-plant, which was seen at the first arrival of our people, has not been found since in any great abundance. A most ample supply of this valuable article may, however, always be obtained from Norfolk Island. Governor Phillip, when he judged the seeds to be ripe, ordered them to be collected; but at that time very few of the plants were found, and not any in the places where the greatest quantity had been seen. It is thought that the natives pull up the plant when it is in flower to make their fishing lines.

On the whole, notwithstanding the difficulties and disadvantages at first experienced, which, though great, were not more than must naturally be expected to occur in such an undertaking; notwithstanding the sicknesses which from various causes prevailed for some time among the people, the settlement at Sydney Cove wore a very promising aspect at the time when the late accounts were sent; and there can be no doubt that it

will

w
tic
Th
at
fou
lip
and
roc
tain
C
the
distr
the i
gene
ing p
tives
taken
been
about
to the
any p
means
was in
this ad
at a sm
have t
But the
very pr
chose, a
ly insta
unprov
were dr
ficer ha
boat.
Gove
small pa
and Bro
acres of
tion. H
Vol. II.

will be found hereafter fully to answer every expectation which was formed when the design was projected. The scantiness of the streams of fresh water was thought at first unfavourable, but good springs have since been found by digging. The house built for Governor Phillip stands about sixty-six feet above high-water mark, and there, by sinking a well about fifteen feet in the rock, an excellent spring of pure water has been obtained.

On the 9th of July, an effort was made by a party of the natives, which seems to indicate that they were still distressed for provisions, or that they very highly resent the incroachments made upon their fishing places. A general order had been issued to those sent out on fishing parties, to give a part of what was caught to the natives if they approached, however small the quantity taken might be; and by these means they had always been sent away apparently satisfied. But on this day, about twenty of them, armed with spears, came down to the spot where our men were fishing, and without any previous attempt to obtain their purpose by fair means, violently seized the greatest part of the fish which was in the seine. While this detachment performed this act of depredation, a much greater number stood at a small distance with their spears poised, ready to have thrown them if any resistance had been made. But the cockswain who commanded the fishing party, very prudently suffered them to take away what they chose, and they parted on good terms. This is the only instance in which these people have attempted any unprovoked act of violence, and to this they probably were driven by necessity. Since this transaction, an officer has always been sent down the harbour with the boat.

Governor Phillip went out about this time with a small party, to examine the land between Port Jackson and Broken Bay. Here were found many hundred acres of land, free from timber, and very fit for cultivation. He proceeded as far as Pitt Water, and saw several

ral of the natives, but none of them chose to approach. When the party returned to the boats near the mouth of the harbour, about sixty of these people, men, women and children, were assembled there. Some hours were passed with them in a peaceful and very friendly manner, but though in all this time they discovered no uneasiness, they seemed best pleased when their visitors were preparing to depart. This has always been the case, since it has been known among them that our people intend to remain on the coast. Many of the women were employed at this time in fishing, a service which is not uncommonly performed by them, the men being chiefly occupied in making canoes, spears, fish-gigs, and the other articles that constitute their small stock of necessary implements. Two women were here observed to be scarred on the shoulders like the men; this was the first instance in which they had been seen so marked.

The sailors who waited on the beach to take care of the boat saw about two hundred men assembled in two parties, who after some time drew themselves up on opposite sides, and from each party men advanced singly and threw their spears, guarding themselves at the same time with their shields. This seemed at first to be merely a kind of exercise, for the women belonging to both parties remained together on the beach; afterwards it had a more serious aspect, and the women are said to have run up and down in great agitation uttering violent shrieks. But it was not perceived that any men were killed.

As it had been supposed that many of the natives had left this part of the coast, on account of the great scarcity of fish, the different coves of the harbour were examined in one day. At this time, not more than sixty-seven canoes were counted, and about one hundred and thirty of the people were seen. But it was the season in which they make their new canoes, and large parties were known to be in the woods for that purpose.

A few days after this examination, Governor Phillip himself

hi
Ja
na
ha
me
but
any
you
the
wer
pear
to s
fish,
they
the
geth
kind
fruit
caten
retchi
qualit
cassad
scarce
of Sep
tween
it is th
situatio
any re
month
In co
these p
dition h
attained
have be
known
arts of l
to very
amongst
Some fr

himself went again to explore the coast between Port Jackson and Botany Bay. In this journey few of the natives were seen, but new proofs were observed of their having been distressed for food. In the preceding summer they would not eat either the shark or the stingray, but now even coarser meat was acceptable, and indeed any thing that could afford the smallest nourishment. A young whale had just been driven upon the coast, which they were busily employed in carrying away. All that were seen at this time had large pieces of it, which appeared to have been laid upon the fire only long enough to scorch the outside. In this state they always eat their fish, never broiling it for more than a few minutes; they broil also the fern root, and another root, of which the plant is not yet known; and they usually eat together in families. Among the fruits used by them is a kind of wild fig; and they eat also the kernels of that fruit which resembles a pine-apple. The latter, when eaten by some of the French seamen, occasioned violent retchings; possibly the natives may remove the noxious qualities, by some process like those employed upon the cassada. The winter months, in which fish is very scarce upon the coast, are June, July, August, and part of September. From the beaten paths that are seen between Port Jackson and Broken Bay, and in other parts, it is thought that the natives frequently change their situation, but it has not been perceived that they make any regular migrations to the northward in the winter months, or to the south in summer.

In consequence of the very extraordinary shyness of these people since the arrival of our settlement, little addition has been made to the knowledge of their manners attained by Captain Cook: but most of his observations have been confirmed. The whole, indeed, that can be known of a people, among whom civilization and the arts of life have made so small a progress, must amount to very little. The assertion that they have no nets, is amongst the very few that have been found erroneous. Some small nets have been brought over, the manufac-

ture of which is very curious. The twine of which they are made, appears to be composed of the fibres of the flax plant, with very little preparation; it is very strong, heavy, and so admirably well twisted as to have the appearance of the best whipcord. Governor Phillip mentions having had lines of their manufacture, which were made from the fur of some animal, and others that appeared to be of cotton. The meshes of their nets are formed of large loops, very artificially inserted into each other, but without any knots. At a small distance they have exactly the appearance of our common nets, but when they are closely examined the peculiar mode in which the loops are managed is very remarkable. Some ladies who have inspected one of these nets lately imported, declare that it is formed exactly on the same principle as the ground of point lace, except that it has only one turn of the thread instead of two, in every loop. This net appears to have been used either as a landing net, or for the purpose of carrying the fish when taken. They have also small hoop nets, in which they catch lobsters, and sea crayfish. Their canoes and other implements are very exactly described by Captain Cook.

The inhabitants of New South Wales have very few ornaments, except those which are impressed upon the skin itself, or laid on in the manner of paint. The men keep their beards short, it is thought by scorching off the hair, and several of them at the first arrival of our people seemed to take great delight in being shaved. They sometimes hang in their hair the teeth of dogs, and other animals, the claws of lobsters, and several small bones, which they fasten there by means of gum; but such ornaments have never been seen upon the women. Though they have not made any attempt towards clothing themselves, they are by no means insensible of the cold, and appear very much to dislike the rain. During a shower they have been observed to cover their heads with pieces of bark, and to shiver exceedingly. Governor Phillip was convinced by these circumstances that clothing would be very acceptable to them,

them
the
plied
amon
to fer
Th
of oil
by di
delica
they
unacc
piece
smell,
they
soon a
Wh
yet kn
eviden
been o
kind o
yards,
be ope
quite
ashes.
posed,
length
enough
fumed
lightly
the fur
perfected
in very
Whe
the nat
ment, v
perfect
teach th
amends
They fe

them, if they could be induced to come enough among the English to learn the use of it. He has therefore applied for a supply of frocks and jackets to distribute among them, which are to be made long and loose, and to serve for either men or women.

The bodies of these people in general smell strongly of oil, and the darkness of their colour is much increased by dirt. But though in these points they shew so little delicacy, they are not without emotions of disgust, when they meet with strong effluvia to which their organs are unaccustomed. One of them, after having touched a piece of pork, held out his finger for his companions to smell, with strong marks of distaste. Bread and meat they seldom refuse to take, but generally throw it away soon after. Fish they always accept very eagerly.

Whether they use any particular rites of burial is not yet known, but from the following account it seems evident that they burn their dead. The ground having been observed to be raised in several places, like the ruder kind of graves of the common people in our church yards, Governor Phillip caused some of these barrows to be opened. In one of them a jaw bone was found not quite consumed, but in general they contained only ashes. From the manner in which these ashes were disposed, it appeared that the body must have been laid at length, raised from the ground a few inches only, or just enough to admit a fire under it; and having been consumed in this posture, it must then have been covered lightly over with mould. Fern is usually spread upon the surface, with a few stones, to keep it from being dispersed by the wind. These graves have not been found in very great numbers, nor ever near their huts.

When the latest accounts arrived from Port Jackson, the natives still avoided all intercourse with our settlement, whether from dislike or from contempt is not perfectly clear: They think perhaps that we cannot teach them any thing of sufficient value to make them amends for our encroachments upon their fishing places. They seem to be among themselves perfectly honest, and often

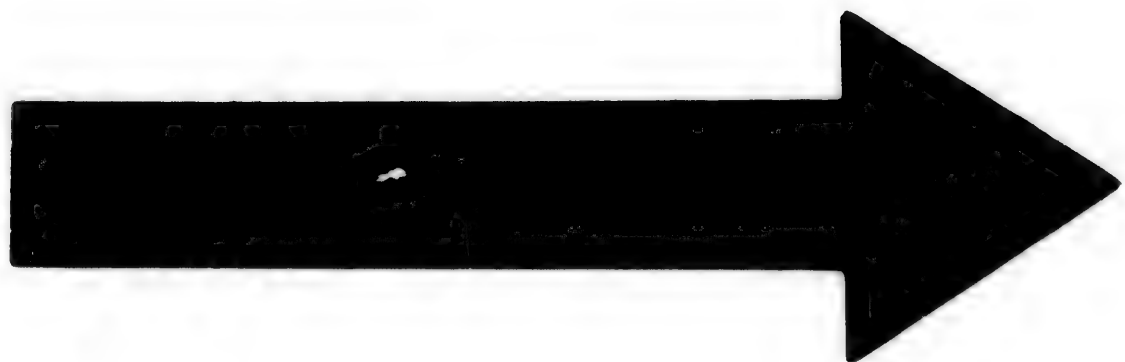
often leave their spears and other implements upon the beach, in full confidence of finding them untouched. But the convicts too frequently carry them off, and dispose of them to vessels coming to England, though at the hazard on one side of being prosecuted for theft, and on the other for purchasing stolen goods. Injuries of this nature they generally revenge on such stragglers as they happen to meet; and perhaps have already learnt to distinguish these freebooters, by their blue and yellow jackets, as they very early did the soldiers by their red clothes. Beyond these attacks they have not yet committed any open acts of hostility, except the seizing of the fish in the instance above related. They have not attempted to annoy the settlers by setting fire to the grass, as they did when Captain Cook was on the coast; nor have they, which is more important, shewn any desire to burn the crops of corn. So absolutely indispensable to the welfare of the settlement is the preservation of the grain, that an attempt of this kind must at all events be counteracted; but in no other case will any measures be adopted, or any effort made to drive them to a greater distance. Conciliation is the only plan intended to be pursued: But Governor Phillip, when he last wrote, seemed to despair of getting any of them to remain among his people, long enough for either to acquire the language of the other, except by constraint. Hitherto he has been unwilling to take this method, but if it can be done in such a manner as not to create any general alarm among them, it will probably turn out to be the kindest piece of violence that could be used. Whenever it shall be practicable, by any means, to explain to them the friendly disposition of Governor Phillip and his people towards them, and to make them understand, that the men from whom they receive occasional injuries, are already a disgraced class, and liable to severe punishment for such proceedings, they will then perhaps acquire sufficient confidence in their new countrymen to mix with them, to enrich themselves with some of their implements, and to learn and adopt some

some
may
com
terb
birth
shive
him
into
the y
and a
bene
A
the S
1788
Live
less w
had p
grain
The F
Novem
Port Ja
were al
comfor
unfini

some of the most useful and necessary of their arts. It may, indeed, admit of a doubt whether many of the accommodations of civilized life, be not more than counterbalanced by the artificial wants to which they give birth: but it is undeniably certain that to teach the shivering savage how to clothe his body, and to shelter himself completely from the cold and wet, and to put into the hands of men, ready to perish for one half of the year with hunger, the means of procuring constant and abundant provision, must be to confer upon them benefits of the highest value and importance.

According to the advices from Governor Phillip, the Sirius sailed for the Cape on the 2d of October, 1788, to purchase grain, flour, and other necessaries. Live stock was not to be procured by this ship, as being less wanted in the present state of the settlement, which had provisions in store for eighteen months, but not grain enough for seed, and for the support of cattle. The Fishburn and Golden Grove storeships sailed in November for England; the Supply was detained in Port Jackson for occasional use. At this time the officers were all in separate houses, and the whole detachment comfortably lodged, though the barracks were yet unfinished.

A S H O R T



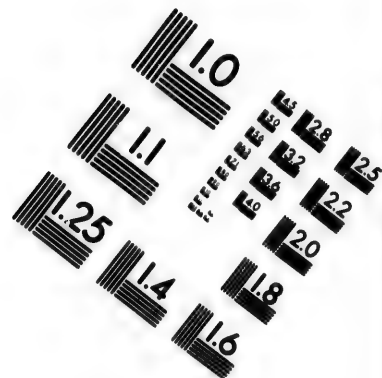
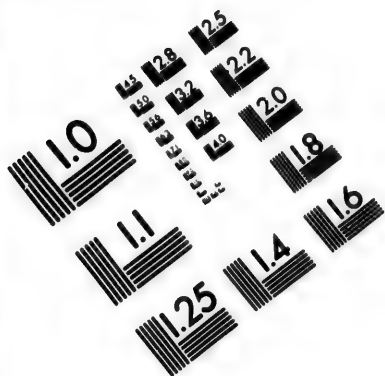
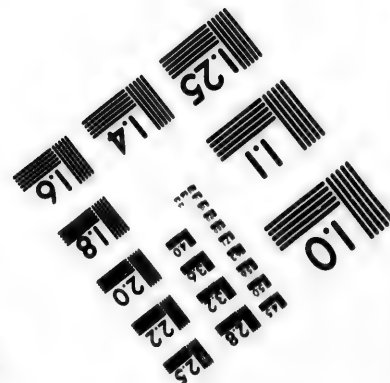
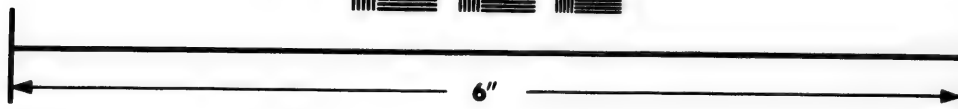
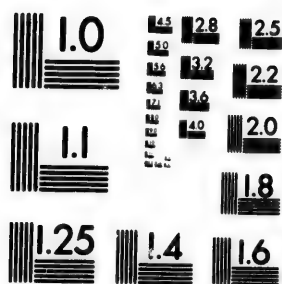


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18 20 22 25
E E E E E
E E E E E

10
E E E E E
E E E E E

A SHORT
ACCOUNT
OF
ANIMALS
IN
NEW SOUTH WALES.

THE great advantage of a scientific eye over that of the unlearned observer, in viewing the productions of nature, cannot be more strongly exemplified than by the present state of the natural history of Botany Bay, and its vicinity. The English who first visited this part of the coast, stayed there only a week, but having among them persons deeply versed in the study of nature, produced an account, to which the present settlers, after a residence of near eleven months when the last dispatches were dated, have been able to add but very little of importance. The properties and relations of many objects are known to the philosopher at first sight, his enquiries after novelty are conducted with sagacity, and when he cannot describe by name what he discovers, as being yet unnamed, he can at least refer it to its proper class and genus. The observation of unskilful persons is often detailed by trivial resemblances, while it passes by the marks which

are

Vol. II

are really characteristic. Governor Phillip, in one of his letters, remarking the prodigious variety of vegetable productions then before his eyes, laments, that among all the people with him there happens not to be one who has any tolerable knowledge of botany. This circumstance is perhaps less to be regretted than a deficiency in any other branch of natural knowledge. The researches of some gentlemen among the first voyagers were particularly directed to botanical discoveries, and a work which is now preparing, in a style of uncommon accuracy and elegance by one of the most illustrious of them, will probably discover that there was little left undone, even in their short stay, towards completing that branch of enquiry. Of quadrupeds the whole stock contained in the country appears to be confined to a very few species: Wolves have not been seen, though the tracks of them were so frequently thought to be detected on this coast by Captain Cook's party. Birds are numerous, but they belong in general to classes already known to naturalists; a few drawings however, and specimens of both, have been sent over. A short account of them is thrown together in this chapter. Of reptiles few have been seen that are at all curious. A large Lizard, of the *scincus* kind, with the remarkable peculiarity of a small spine or horn standing near the extremity of the tail, is said to be among some specimens sent over as private presents; and also a kind of frog, whose colour is blue; but these do not in other respects differ materially from the usual form of their respective species. The ants are fully described in Captain Cook's first voyage.

QUADRUPEDS.

The KANGUROO has been particularly described already.

THE SPOTTED OPOSSUM.

IT is perhaps the same which is slightly described in Captain Cook's first voyage as resembling a polecat, having the back spotted with white; and is there said to be called by the natives *Quoll*. The colour however is darker, being rather black than brown.

The *Spotted Opossum*, for so it may properly be named, is in length from the nose to the extremity of the tail about twenty-five inches, of which the tail itself takes up about nine or ten. The general colour of the animal is black, inclining to brown beneath; the neck and body spotted with irregular roundish patches of white; the ears are pretty large, and stand erect, the visage is pointed, the muzzle furnished with long slender hairs; the fore, as well as hind legs, from the knees downward, almost naked, and ash-coloured; on the fore feet are five claws, and on the hind, four and a thumb without a claw; the tail, for about an inch and an half from the root, covered with hairs of the same length as those on the body, from thence to the end with long ones not unlike that of a squirrel. The specimen from which the above account was taken, is a female, and has six teats placed in a circle, within the pouch.

Another animal of the opossum kind has been sent alive to the Rev. Dr Hamilton, Rector of St Martin's, Westminster, and is now living in the possession of Mr J. Hunter. It appears to be of the same sort as that mentioned in Captain Cook's first voyage, and that also which was found in Adventure Bay.

The countenance of this animal much resembles that of a fox, but its manners approach more nearly to those of



1. SQUIRREL OPOSSUM.
2. FLYING OPOSSUM.
3. KANGAROO.

Engraved by Bully P. Bourne.

of New South Wales.

of the
inac
eatin
ing i
to ho
it fits
upon
only

Th

or gre
of a y
es, ex
and p
above
ed wi
not fie
three
the up
jecting
marka
posed
in a p
hind le
all the
opossu
the fem
a field
and the
is the i
of the
Society
pursue

This i
siderably

of the squirrel. When disposed to sleep, or to remain inactive, it coils itself up into a round form ; but when eating, or on the watch for any purpose, sits up, throwing its tail behind it. In this posture it uses its fore feet to hold any thing, and to feed itself. When irritated, it sits still more erect on the hind legs, or throws itself upon its back, making a loud and harsh noise. It feeds only on vegetable substances.

The fur is long, but close and thick; of a mixed brown or greyish colour on the back, under the belly and neck, of a yellowish white. Its length is about eighteen inches, exclusive of the tail, which is twelve inches long, and prehensile. The face is three inches in length, broad above and very pointed at the muzzle, which is furnished with long whiskers. The eyes are very large, but not fierce. On the fore feet are five claws ; on the hind, three and a thumb. The teeth are two in the front of the upper jaw, and two in the lower ; the upper projecting beyond the under. In the Kangaroo it is remarkable that there are four teeth in the upper jaw, opposed to two in the under. The testicles are contained in a pendulous scrotum, between the two thighs of the hind legs, as in the common opossum. The affinity of all the quadrupeds yet discovered on this coast to the opossum kind, in the circumstance of the pouch in which the female receives and suckles her young, seems to open a field of investigation most interesting to the naturalist : and the public will doubtless learn with pleasure, that it is the intention of the most able comparative anatomist of the age, to give a paper on this subject to the Royal Society. It cannot, therefore, be necessary at present to pursue the enquiry any further,

VULPINE OPOSSUM.

This is not unlike the common fox in shape, but considerably inferior to it in respect to size, being, from the

point of the nose to the setting on of the tail, only twenty-six inches : the tail itself fifteen inches : the upper parts of the body are of a grisly colour, arising from a mixture of dusky and white hairs, with rufous-yellow tinge ; the head and shoulders partaking most of this last colour ; round the eyes blackish : above the nostrils ten or twelve black whiskers, four inches or more in length : all the under parts of the body are of a tawny buff-colour, deepest on the throat, where the bottom of the hairs are rust-colour : the tail is of the colour of the back for about one quarter of its length, from thence to the end, black : the toes on the fore feet are five in number, the inner one placed high up : on the hind feet four toes only : with a thumb, consisting of two joints, without a claw, placed high up at the base of the inner toe. The whole foot serving the purpose of a hand, as observable in many of the opossum genus. The legs are much shorter in proportion than those of the common fox : the ears about one inch and an half in length : in the upper jaw are six cutting teeth, and four grinders, with two small canine teeth placed at an equal distance between them : in the under jaw two long cutting teeth, not unlike those of a squirrel, and four grinders to answer those in the upper jaw, but no canine teeth.

NORFOLK ISLAND FLYING-SQUIRREL.

Size of the American grey squirrel, and the general colour of the upper parts very nearly resembling that animal ; the under parts white : from the nose to the tail runs a streak of dusky black, and another springs on each side of the head behind the nostrils, passing over the eyes and finishing behind them : ears not rising from the head : on each side of the body is a broad flap or membrane, as in other flying squirrels, which is united to both the fore and hind legs, as usual in many of this division:

divi
edge
is o
ther
are
legs
nine

" 7
The
blue,
of the
back :
yellow
blue :
middle
yellow
" In

To t
our pre
rather a
are red
near th

division: this membrane is black, fringed on the outer edge with white: the tail for two thirds of the length, is of an elegant ash colour, paler than the body, from thence to the end dusky black: the toes on the fore legs are five in number; those of the hinder uncertain, as the legs behind were wanting: length from head to rump nine inches; the tail is ten inches.

B I R D S.

BLUE BELLIED PARROT.

Described thus by Mr Latham.

“THE length of this beautiful parrot is fifteen inches. The bill is reddish: orbits black: head and throat dark blue, with a mixture of lighter blue feathers: back part of the head green; towards the throat yellow green: back and wings green: prime quills dusky, barred with yellow: breast red, mixed with yellow: belly of a fine blue: thighs green and yellow: tail cuneiform; the two middle feathers green; the others the same, but bright yellow on the outer edges: legs dusky.

“Inhabits Botany Bay in New Holland.”

Latham's Synopsis, vol. i. p. 213.

To this account little need be added, except that in our present specimens the parts there said to be blue are rather a bright lilac: the bill is a deep orange; and there are red spots on the back between the wings, and a few near the vent feathers.

TABUAN

TABUAN PARROT.

This bird has been seen by Mr Latham, and was by him referred to this species; of which however it seems a very remarkable variety: The prevalent colour of the head, neck and breast, being, instead of a deep crimson or purplish red, as in his description and plate, as well as in a fine specimen now in his own collection, a very bright scarlet: the blue marks across the lower part of the neck appears the same; but the blue feathers in the wings are entirely wanting; and the bill is not black.

Length twenty-four inches: bill brown, the upper mandible tinged with red: the head, neck, and all the under parts of the body a bright scarlet: the back and wings a fine green. On the lower part of the neck, between that and the back, a crescent of blue: the tail long and cuneiform, most of its feathers deep blue: the legs ash coloured: on the upper part of the wings a narrow line of lighter green.

PENNANTIAN PARROT.

Size of the scarlet lory, length sixteen inches: the bill of a blueish horn colour; the general colour of the plumage scarlet; the base of the under mandible and the chin covered with rich blue feathers: the back black, the feathers edged with crimson: wings blue, down the middle much paler than the rest: the quills and tail black, the feathers edged outwardly with blue, and three of the outer tail feathers, from the middle to the end, of a pale hoary blue: the tail is wedge shaped, the middle feathers eight inches in length; the outermost, or shortest, only four: the bottom of the thighs blue, legs dusky, claws black.

This beautiful bird is not unfrequent about *Port Jackson*,

son,
Par
Gen
ticular
from

M
"
black
other
each
vent
dark
form;
in len
per pa
ash co
middle
dusky

The
with r
of the
yellow
and th

The
tham's

son, and seems to correspond greatly with the *Pennantian Parrot*, described by Mr Latham in the supplement to his *General Synopsis of birds*, p. 61. differing in so few particulars, as to make us suppose it to differ only in sex from that species.

PACIFIC PAROQUET.

Mr Latham's description is this:

"Length twelve inches, bill of a silvery blue; end black: in some, the forehead and half the crown; in others, the forehead only, of a deep crimson: behind each eye a spot of the same colour: on each side of the vent a patch of the same: the plumage in general of a dark green, palest on the under parts: the tail is cuneiform; the two middle feathers are five inches and an half in length; the outer ones two inches and an half; upper parts of it the same green with the body; beneath ash colour: the outer edge of the wings, as far as the middle of the quills, deep blue; the end of the quills dusky: legs brown: claws black."

Latham's Synopsis, vol. i. p. 252.

The variety here observed has a brown bill, tinged with red at the end, and a cap of azure blue at the back of the head, interpersed with a few small feathers of a yellowish green; the top of the wings is of a yellow hue, and there are no blue feathers in the wings.

THE SACRED KING'S FISHER.

The following description is extracted from Mr Latham's Synopsis of Birds, vol. ii. p. 623.

"This

" This in size is rather less than a blackbird : the bill is black ; the lower mandible yellowish at the base : head, back, wings, and tail, blue tinged with green : the under parts of the body white, extending round the middle of the neck like a collar : legs blackish."

To which account we may add, that the bill is very strong at the base, and strong at the point ; that the feathers immediately above the bill are tinged with yellow ; and that the toes, as in most of this species, are three before and one behind.

SUPERB WARBLER, MALE.

" The length of this beautiful species is five inches and a half : the bill black : the feathers of the head are long, and stand erect like a full crest ; from the forehead to the crown they are of a bright blue ; from thence to the nape, black like velvet : through the eyes from the bill, a line of black ; beneath the eye springs a tuft of the same blue feathers ; beneath these and on the chin, it is of a deep blue almost black, and feeling like velvet : on the ears is another patch of blue, and across the back part of the head a band of the same, (in some specimens, the patches of blue under the eye and on the ear unite together, and join with the band at the nape) the whole giving the head a greater appearance of bulk than is natural : the hind part of the neck, and upper parts of the body and tail, deep blue black ; the under, pure white : wings, dusky ; shafts of the quills chestnut : the tail, two inches and a quarter long, and cuneiform ; the two outer feathers very short : legs dusky brown : claws black."

Latham's Synopsis, vol. iv. p. 501.

The

The disposition of the blue is found to differ in most of the specimens. In the present variety, the whole head is enveloped in blue, which terminates in an irregularly waving line, and is continued below the eye in a broad band, edged in the same manner, and running almost to a point, as low as the bottom of the neck on each side; but there is no band continued round the neck, which, both above and below, is of the deep blue like velvet, mentioned by Mr Latham. Some feathers of a very bright orange lie immediately under that blue, and above the wings.

SUPERB WARBLER, FEMALE.

When Mr Latham's Synopsis was published, the female of this species was entirely unknown; and it was conjectured by that author that the disposition of the blue might possibly mark the sexes. The female is now discovered to be entirely destitute of all the fine blue colours, both pale and dark, by which the male is adorned, except that there is a very narrow circle of azure round each eye, apparently on the skin only: all the upper feathers consist of shades of brown, and the whole throat and belly is pure white. Except from the shape and size, this bird would not be suspected at first sight to belong to the same species as the male: the epithet of *superb* applies very ill to the female.

CASPIAN TERN.

Mr Latham's description is as follows:

"Length nineteen or twenty inches: bill three inches, stout and of a pale yellow: nostrils pervious: the crown of the head black; the feathers longish, and forming a kind of penile crest at the nape; the rest of the head, neck, and under parts of the body, white:

Vol. II.—N^o 50.

6 F

back

back and wings pale cinereous grey : quills grey, with the ends dusky ; the inner webs, half way from the base, white : tail grey, forked : the end half of the other feathers white ; the last is exceeded by the first an inch : legs black. Supposed to inhabit China ; seen also, or very similar, from the Friendly Isles ; also found at Hapae, one of the Sandwich Islands."

NORFOLK ISLAND PETREL.

Length sixteen inches, bill one inch and a half long ; black, and very hooked at the tip : the head as far as the eyes, the chin and throat, waved, brown and dusky white : the rest of the body on the upper parts of a footy brown, the under of a deep ash colour ; the inner part of the quills, especially near the base, very pale, nearly white, and the wings, when closed, exceed the tail by about an inch : the tail is much rounded in shape, and consists of twelve feathers, of the same colour as the upper parts of the body : the legs are pale yellow, the outer toe black the whole length, the middle one half way from the tip, the webs also correspond, the outer one being black, except just at the base ; and the inner one black for about one third from the end : the claws black ; the spur, which serves in place of a back toe, is also black.

This inhabits Norfolk Island, and burrows in the sand like a rabbit, lying hid in the holes throughout the day, and coming out of evenings in quest of food. This bird appears to differ so very little from the dark grey Petrel of Cook's Voyage, that it is not improbable it may prove to be the same species. This is described in the *General Synopsis of Birds*, vol. vi. p. 399, under the name of *Grey Petrel* ; as also another species, in p. 400. by the name of *White-breasted Petrel*, differing only in the breast from our specimen.

BRONZE-

BRONZE-WINGED PIGEON.

Size of a large dove-house pigeon : general colour of the plumage ash-coloured, brown on the upper parts, the feathers margined with pale rufous ; the under parts pale ash-colour, with very pale margins : the wing coverts are much the same colour as the back, but the greater ones, or lower series, have each of them a large oval spot of bronze on the outer webs, near the ends, forming together, when the wings are closed, two bars of the most brilliant and beautiful bronze, changing into red, copper, and green, in different reflections of light : several of the feathers also among the other coverts have the same spots on them, but are irregularly placed : the quills are brown, with the inner webs, from the middle to the base, pale rufous ; as are the sides of the body and all the under wing coverts : the tail consists of sixteen feathers ; the two middle ones are brown, the others pale lead, or dove colour, with a bar of black near the tip : the bill is of a dull red : the forehead very pale, nearly white, passing a little way under the eye : the chin and throat pale grey : the legs are red.

This bird inhabits Norfolk Island ; and is clearly a non-descript species.

WHITE-FRONTED HERON.

This is little more than half the size of the common Heron : length 28 inches : the general colour plumage is bluish ash, inclining to lead colour : top of the head black, and a trifle crested ; the forehead, sides of the head, chin, and throat white, passing downwards, and finishing in a point about the middle of the neck before : on the lower part of the neck the feathers are long and loose, and of a pale rufous cinnamon colour ; all the other parts of

the body also incline to this last colour, but are much paler: the quills and tail are dark lead colour, nearly black: on the back the feathers are long and narrow, and hang part of the way on the tail: the bill is four inches long, and black; but the base half of the under mandible is yellowish: the legs are formed as in other herons, of a yellowish brown colour, and the claws are black.

This bird was sent from Port Jackson in New Holland, and as it has not been noticed by any author, we consider it as a new species.

WATTLED BEE-EATER.

The size of this bird is nearly that of a cuckow: length fourteen inches and a half: the bill one inch long, and of nearly the same shape and size as in the Poe Bird; the colour black; the general colour of the plumage is brown, palest on the under parts; most of the feathers are pointed in shape, and have a streak of white down the middle: the fore part of the head, as far as the eyes, is smooth, but the rest of the head appears full, the feathers being longer: from the gape of the bill a broad streak of silvery white passes under the eye, and beneath this, on each side of the throat, hangs a pendulous wattle, about half an inch in length, and of an orange colour: the wings, when closed, reach about one third on the tail, which is about half the length of the bird, and cuneiform in shape: both the quills and tail feathers are of a darker brown than the rest of the bird, and have the tips white: the middle of the belly is yellow: the legs are of a pale brown, the hind toe very stout, and the outer toe connected to the middle one as far as the first joint.

The above inhabits New Holland; it was received from Port Jackson, and is no doubt a non-descript species.

PSIT-

PSITTACEOUS HORNBILL.

The bird is about the size of a crow: the total length two feet three inches: the bill is large, stout at the base, much curved at the point, and channelled on the sides; the colour pale brown, inclining to yellow near the end: the nostrils are quite at the base, and are surrounded with a red skin, as the eye also, on the upper part: the head, neck, and under parts of the body are pale blue-grey; the upper parts of the body, wings, and tail, ash colour; and most of the feathers are tipped with dusky black, forming bars of that colour across the wings: the wings, when closed, reach to near three quarters of the length of the tail: the tail itself is long, and cuneiform, the two middle feathers measuring eleven inches, and the outer one on each side little more than seven; a bar of black crosses the whole near the end, and the tips of all the feathers are white: the legs are short and scaly, and the toes placed two forwards, and two backwards, as in those of the toucan or parrot genus: the colour of legs and claws black.

This bird was killed at Port Jackson, and we believe it to be hitherto non-descript.

Such is the account of the birds of which drawings or specimens have been obtained from Port Jackson or from Norfolk Island. Wild ducks, teal, quails, and other common species are numerous in both places, and the variety, as well as number of the small birds is considerable. Birds of the Cassowary or Emu kind have very frequently been seen; but they are so shy, and run so swiftly, that only one has yet been killed. That bird was shot near the camp, while Governor Phillip was absent on his first expedition to Broken Bay, and was thought by him to differ materially both from the ostrich and cassowary.

Supplemental

SIT-

Supplemental Account of Animals.

B I R D S.

BANKIAN COCKATOO.

THIS is about the size of the great white cockatoo; the length twenty-two inches. The bill is exceedingly short, and of a pale lead-colour. The head feathers are pretty long, so as to enable the bird to erect them into a crest at will: The colour of the head, neck, and under parts of the body are dusky brown, inclining to olive, darkest on the belly: the feathers of the top of the head and back part of the neck are edged with olive; the rest of the plumage on the upper part of the body, the wings, and tail, are of a glossy black; the last is pretty long and a little round at the end: the two middle feathers are wholly black: the others of a fine vermilion in the middle for about one-third, otherwise black; the outer edge of the exterior feather black the whole length. Legs black.

This bird was met with in New South Wales, and is supposed to be a variety, if not a different sex, from the Bankian Cockatoo described in the General Synopsis of Birds, Sup. p. 63. It varies, however, in not having the feathers of the head or those of the wing-coverts marked with buff-coloured spots; nor is the red part of the tail crossed with black bars, as in that bird.

With the above specimen was sent the head of another, which differed in having a mixture of yellow in various parts of it. We have been informed, that the red part of the tail in this last is barred with black, not unlike that described by Mr Latham in the Synopsis. From these circumstances it may be presumed, that this bird is subject to great variety.

RED.

RED-SHOULDERED PARRAKEET.

This bird is about the size of the Guinea Parrakeet. Total length ten inches and a half: the general colour of the plumage is green, inclining to yellow on the under parts: the top of the head, the outer edge of the wing, and some parts of the middle of the same are deep blue: all round the base of the bill crimson, with a mixture of the same on the fore part of the neck, but between the bill and eye is a mixture of yellow: the shoulders, and under parts of the wings are blood red: two or three of the inner quills, and the vent pale red: the greater quills dusky, fringed outwardly with yellow: the tail is greatly wedged in shape, the feathers at the base chestnut, towards the end dull blue: the bill and legs are brown.

This species inhabits New South Wales; and we believe it to be hitherto non-descript.

CRESTED GOAT-SUCKER.

This bird is somewhat smaller than our European species, measuring only nine inches and a half in length. The general colour of the plumage on the upper parts is dark-brown, mottled and crossed with obscure whitish bars: the quills are plain brown, but five or six of the outer ones marked with dusky white spots on the outer webs: the tail is rounded in shape, and marked with twelve narrow bars of a dusky white, mottled with black, as are the various whitish marks on the upper parts; the under parts of the body are more or less white; but the fore part of the neck and breast are crossed with numerous dusky bars: the bill is black, but the gape and within yellow; the sides of the mouth furnished with bristles, as in other goat-suckers; besides which, at the base of the bill are ten or twelve erect stiff bristles, thinly barbed

RED.

barbed on their sides, and standing perfectly upright as a crest, giving the bird a singular appearance: the legs are weak, longer than in most of the tribe, and of a pale yellow colour; claws brown.

NEW-HOLLAND CASSOWARY.

This is a species differing in many particulars from that generally known, and is a much larger bird, standing higher on its legs, and having the neck longer than in the common one. Total length seven feet two inches. The bill is not greatly different from that of the common Cassowary: but the horny appendage, or helmet on the top of the head, in this species is totally wanting: the whole of the head and neck is also covered with feathers, except the throat and fore part of the neck about half way, which are not so well feathered as the rest; whereas in the common Cassowary, the head and neck are bare and carunculated as in the turkey.

The plumage in general consists of a mixture of brown and grey, and the feathers are somewhat curled or bent at the ends in the natural state: the wings are so very short as to be totally useless for flight, and indeed, are scarcely to be distinguished from the rest of the plumage, were it not for their standing out a little. The long spines which are seen in the wings of the common sort, are in this not observable,—nor is there any appearance of a tail. The legs are stout, formed much as in the Galeated Cassowary, with the addition of their being jagged or sawed the whole of their length at the back part.

This bird is not uncommon in New Holland, as several of them have been seen about Botany Bay, and other parts. The one from which this description is taken, was shot within two miles of the settlement at Sydney Cove. The skin being sent over to England in spirits, has been put into attitude, and is now the property of Sir Joseph

nul
bein
end
ches
of th
head
with
exce
Th
Norf
cies.
have

The
less tha
The ho
short a
in leng
upper
belly:
of the h
tail is o
Vol. II

Joseph Banks, to whom it was presented by Lord Sydney. Although this bird cannot fly, it runs so swiftly, that a greyhound can scarcely overtake it. The flesh is said to be in taste not unlike beef.

WHITE GALLINULE.

This beautiful bird greatly resembles the purple Gallinule in shape and make, but is much superior in size, being as large as a dunghill fowl. The length from the end of the bill to that of the claws is two feet three inches: the bill is very stout, and the colour of it, the whole of the top of the head, and the irides red; the sides of the head round the eyes are reddish, very thinly sprinkled with white feathers; the whole of the plumage without exception is white. The legs the colour of the bill.

This species is pretty common on Lord Howe's Island, Norfolk Island, and other places, and is a very tame species. The other sex, supposed to be the male, is said to have some blue on the wings.

DOG OF NEW SOUTH WALES.

The height of this species, standing erect, is rather less than two feet: the length two feet and a half.—The head is formed much like that of a fox, the ears short and erect, with whiskers from one to two inches in length on the muzzle. The general colour of the upper part is pale brown, growing lighter towards the belly: the hind part of the fore legs, and the fore part of the hinder ones white, as are the feet of both: the tail is of a moderate length, somewhat bushy, but in a

less degree than that of the fox: the teeth are much the same as is usual in the genus.

This species inhabits New South Wales. The specimen from which this description was drawn (a female) is now alive in the possession of the Marchioness of Salisbury, at Hatfield-House, and was sent over as a present to Mr Nepean, from Governor Phillip. It has much of the manners of the dog, but is of a very savage nature, and not likely to change in this particular. It laps like other dogs, but neither barks nor growls if vexed or teased; instead of which, it erects the hairs of the whole body like bristles, and seems furious: it is very eager after its prey, and is fond of rabbits or chickens, raw, but will not touch dressed meat. From its fierceness and agility it has greatly the advantage of other animals much superior in size; for a very fine French fox-dog being put to it, in a moment it seized him by the loins, and would have soon put an end to his existence had not help been at hand. With the utmost ease it is able to leap over the back of an ass, and was very near worrying one to death, having fastened on it, so that the creature was not able to disengage himself without assistance; it has been also known to run down both deer and sheep.

A second of these is in the possession of Mr Lascelles, of which we have received much the same account in respect to its ferocity; from whence it is scarcely to be expected that this elegant animal will ever become familiar.

SPOTTED MARTIN.

The species is about the size of a large pole-cat, and measures from the tip of the nose to the setting on of the tail eighteen inches; the tail itself being nearly the same length. The visage is pointed in shape, and the whole

whole make of the animal does not ill resemble that of the *Fossane*. The general colour of the fur is black, marked all over with irregular blotches of white, the tail not excepted, which has an elegant appearance, and tapers gradually to a point.

The situation of the teeth and jaws is much the same as in the rest of the genus.

Inhabits the neighbourhood of Port Jackson.

KANGUROO RAT.

The upper jaw of this species has two cutting teeth in front, with three others on each side of them, and at a distance one false grinder, sharp at the edge, and channelled, or fluted, on the sides, and close to these, two true grinders: in the lower jaw are two long cutting teeth, formed like those of the squirrel, with three grinders, corresponding with those in the upper jaw.

The general shape of the body is not widely different from that of the *Kangaroo*, both in respect to the shortness of the fore legs and the peculiar construction of the hind ones; but the visage being strongly similar to that of the rat, and the colour of the whole not ill resembling that animal, it has obtained the name of the *Kangaroo Rat*.

This is an inhabitant of New Holland, and two of the species are now to be seen alive at the curious exhibition of animals over Exeter Exchange. One of these, being a female, has brought forth young.

THE LACED LIZARD.

This most elegant species is in length, from the nose to the end of the tail, about forty inches: in the mouth

are a few weak teeth, though rather sharp, at about a quarter of an inch distance one from another: the tongue is long and forked: the general shape is slender; and the ground colour of the skin, on the upper parts, a brownish or bluish black, whimsically marked with golden yellow; in some parts this colour is beautifully mottled or freckled, like some kinds of lace-work; in others, striped in various directions, particularly on the legs, which seem as if striped across with black and white: the under parts are yellow, crossed with single bars of black on the chin and throat, and double clouded ones on the belly: the toes are five in number on each foot, barred across with black and yellow, as the legs, and each furnished with a crooked black claw; the tail measures more in length than the whole of the body; towards the base, clouded and marked as the rest; but the further half banded with black and yellow, each band three inches broad, the end running to a very sharp point.

This beautiful Lizard is not uncommon at Port Jackson, where it is reputed a harmless species. Individuals vary much one from another, in respect to the length of the tail, as also in the colour of the markings; some having those parts marked with a pure silvery white, which in the above described are yellow.

BAG-THROATED BALISTES.

The size of this fish is uncertain. It agrees in many things with others of the genus, and does not greatly differ from one figured in Willughby's *Ichthyologia*, Tab. I. 22. but has the body longer in proportion. The erect horn or spine is placed over, and a little behind the eyes, as in Willughby's figure, attended with two shorter ones directly behind the first: the long spine is quite straight, sharp at the point, and deeply sawed on the back part. Another singularity presents itself in this

this
neat
poor
T
New
ing
nam
eatin

Of
is mu
severa
scribe
New
though
it is d
as it i
know
matter

The
was ta
an half
the tail
brown
side is a
under t
are ver
rows;
are plac
larger,
kind of

this species, which is, a deep pouch-like appendage beneath the throat, in shape not unlike what is called Hippocrates's sleeve, or rather a jelly bag.

This fish is found pretty commonly on the coast of New South Wales, and was called the Old Wife, having much resemblance in many things to the species so named. When skinned, it was thought pretty good eating.

A FISH OF NEW SOUTH WALES.

Of this fish it can only be said, that the ground colour is much the same as that of our mackarel, marked with several round, blue and white spots; and that it is described from a drawing, by Daniel Butler, sent from New South Wales, where it is in great plenty, and is thought to taste much like a dolphin. As to the genus, it is difficult to say with certainty to which it belongs, as it is deficient in the characteristics of those generally known; it is therefore left to the reader to settle this matter according to his own opinion.

PORT JACKSON SHARK.

The length of the specimen from which the drawing was taken, is two feet; and it is about five inches and an half over at the broadest part, from thence tapering to the tail; the skin is rough, and the colour, in general, brown, palest on the under parts: over the eye on each side is a prominence, or long ridge, of about three inches; under the middle of which the eyes are placed: the teeth are very numerous, there being at least ten or eleven rows; the forward teeth are small and sharp, but as they are placed more backward, they become more blunt and larger, and several rows are quite flat at top, forming a kind of bony palate, somewhat like that of the Wolf-fish;

fish; differing, however, in shape, being more inclined to square than round, which they are in that fish: the under jaw is furnished much in the same manner as the upper: the breathing holes are five in number, as is usual in the genus: on the back are two fins, and before each stands a strong spine, much as in the Prickly Hound, or Dog-fish: it has also two pectoral, and two ventral fins; but besides these, there is likewise an anal fin, placed at a middle distance between the last and the tail: the tail itself, is as it were divided, the upper part much longer than the under.

At first sight, the above might be taken for the Prickly Hound-fish, or *Squalus Spinax* of Linnæus, of which a good figure may be seen in *Willughby's Ichthyol.* Tab. B. 5. f. 1. but it differs first, in having the prominent ridge over the eyes, of a great length; secondly, in the formation of the teeth; thirdly, in having an anal fin, of which the Prickly Hound is destitute; all these circumstances concur to prove it a new species.

This was taken at Port Jackson, but to what size it may usually arrive cannot be determined; perhaps not to a great one, as the teeth appear very complete. Some sharks, however, of an enormous size have been seen and caught thereabouts, though of what sort cannot here be determined.

F I N I S.

P I

H

A Tup
A Vie
A Da
A Vie
Infide
A Ne
A Mar
A Yor
A Mar

A View
A Nativ
the
A Won
A View
The Re
A Boxin
A Nigh
A Nigh
A Fiato
Poulaho,
The Nat
Ton
A human
The Body

Directions to the Binder,

FOR PLACING THE PLATES IN COOK'S VOYAGES.

VOLUME I.

H HEAD of Captain Cook, to face the Title	<i>Page.</i> 27
A General Chart to Capt. Cook's Three Voyages	27
A Tupapow in Otaheite — — — — —	209
A View of Huaheine — — — — —	224
A Dance in Otaheite — — — — —	233
A View of a Perforated Rock — — — — —	281
Inside of a Hippah in New Zealand — — — — —	301
A New Zealand Chief and a Priest — — — — —	403
A Man and Woman of Van Diemen's Land — — — — —	723
A Young Woman of Otaheite dancing, &c. — — — — —	827
A Man and Woman of the Sandwich Islands — — — — —	866

VOLUME II.

A View of Christmas Harbour, in Kerguelen's Land	26
A Native of Otaheite and a New Zealand Warrior, defying their Enemies — — — — —	69
A Woman of Eaoo, and a Man of Mangea — — — — —	74
A View of Anamooka — — — — —	111
The Reception of Captain Cook in Hapae — — — — —	117
A Boxing Match in Hapae — — — — —	119
A Night Dance by Women in Hapae — — — — —	122
A Night Dance by Men in Hapae — — — — —	123
A Fiatooka, or Morai, in Tongataboo — — — — —	162
Poulaho, King of the Friendly Islands, drinking Kava	165
The Nathe, a Ceremony in honour of the King's Son in Tongataboo — — — — —	175
A human Sacrifice in a Morai in Otaheite — — — — —	244
The Body of Tee, a Chief, as preserved after Death in Otaheite	257

DIRECTIONS TO THE BINDER.

	Page.
A Morai in Atooi	361
An Offering before Capt. Cook in the Sandwich Islands	362
The Inside of a House in the Morai in Atooi	363
An Inland View in Atooi	379
A Canoe of the Sandwich Islands, the Rowers masked	392
The Sea Otter	427
A Man and Woman of Nootka Sound	430
A Man of the Sandwich Islands in a Mask, &c.	434
A View of the Habitations in Nootka Sound	440
The Inside of a House in Nootka Sound	441
A View of Snug Corner Cove in Prince William's Sound	468
Man and Woman of Prince William's Sound	472
The Tschutski and their Habitations	534
Sea Horses of Icy Cape	540
Inhabitants of Norton Sound and their Habitations	565
A Man and Woman of Oonalashka	583
Natives of Oonalashka, and their Habitations	585
Inside of a House in Oonalashka	586
A View of the Harbour of Karakakooa, in Owhyhee	611
Terreoboo, King of Owhyhee, bringing Presents to Capt. Cook	622
The Death of Captain James Cook, F. R. S. at Owhyhee, 1779	646
Inside of a Winter Habitation in Kamtschatka	707
A Man of Kamtschatka travelling in Winter	708
A View at Bolcheretzkoï, in Kamtschatka	714
White Bear	725
A Man and Woman of Kamtschatka	750
Animals in New South-Wales	956

ER.

Page.

la	361
-	362
-	363
-	379
l	392
-	427
-	430
-	434
-	440
-	441
nd	468
-	472
-	534
-	541
-	565
-	583
-	585
-	586
-	611
Capt.	622
syhee,	646
-	707
-	708
-	714
-	725
-	750
-	956